Delta Vector Control Drive
C2000 Series
User Manual

www.deltaww.com

DELTA

Smarter. Greener. Together.

Thank you for choosing this Delta Motor Drive.

This Instruction Manual provides instructions for advanced use of the C2000 series. Incorrect handling might cause an unexpected fault. Before using the inverter, always read this Instruction Manual to use the equipment to its optimum.

Safety Instructions

Do not attempt to install, operate, maintain or inspect the inverter until you have read through this Instruction Manual and appended documents carefully and can use the equipment correctly. Do not use the inverter until you have a full knowledge of the equipment, safety information and instructions.

Installation, operation, maintenance and inspection must be performed by qualified personnel. Here, qualified personnel means personnel who meets all the conditions below.

- A person who took a proper engineering training.
- A person who can access operating manuals for the protective devices (e.g. light curtain) connected to the safety control system. A person who has read and familiarized himself/herself with the manuals.

In this Instruction Manual, the safety instruction levels are classified into "DANGER" and "CAUTION".

DANGER:
Assumes that incorrect handling may cause hazardous conditions, resulting in death or severe injury.

CAUTION:
Assumes that incorrect handling may cause hazardous conditions, resulting in medium or slight injury, or may cause physical damage only.

Note that even the CAUTION level may lead to a serious consequence according to conditions. Please follow strictly the instructions of both levels because they are important to personnel safety.

General Safety Information and Precautions

In this manual special warnings that are important for the proper and safe use of the products are clearly identified as follows:

DANGER:

- AC input power must be disconnected before any wiring to the is made.
- Even if the power has been turned off, a charge may still remain in the DC-link capacitors with hazardous voltages before the POWER LED is OFF. Please do not touch the internal circuit and components.
- There are highly sensitive MOS components on the printed circuit boards. These components are especially sensitive to static electricity. Please do not touch these components or the circuit boards before taking anti-static measures. Never reassemble internal components or wiring.
- Ground the using the ground terminal. The grounding method must comply with the laws of the country where the is to be installed.
- DO NOT install the in a place subjected to high temperature, direct sunlight and inflammables.

CAUTION:

- Never connect the output terminals U/T1, V/T2 and W/T3 directly to the AC mains circuit power supply.
- Only qualified persons are allowed to install, wire and maintain the s.
- Even if the 3-phase AC motor is stop, a charge may still remain in the main circuit terminals of the with hazardous voltages.
- If the is stored in no charge condition for more than 3 months, the ambient temperature should not be higher than 30 °C. Storage longer than one year is not recommended, it could result in the degradation of the electrolytic capacitors.
- Pay attention to the following when transporting and installing this package (including wooden crate, wood stave and carton box):
  - If you need to sterilize, deform the wooden crate or carton box, please do not use steamed smoking sterilization or you will damage the VFD.
  - Please use other ways to sterilize or deform.
  - You may use high temperature to sterilize or deform. Leave the packaging materials in an environment of over 56 °C for 30 minutes.
  - It is strictly forbidden to use steamed smoking sterilization. The warranty does not covered VFD damaged by steamed smoking sterilization.

NOTE

DELTA reserves the right to make technical changes of this manual at any time without special notification. The current version of this manual is available on the website http://www.delta.com.tw/industrialautomation for download.

Symbols Used in the Manual

Use of instructions

Instructions concerning important information are marked separately and are displayed as follows:

NOTE Text of instruction

Use of numbering in the figures

Numbering within the figures is displayed by white numbers within black circles and is explained in a table following it using the same number, e.g.:

❶ ❷ ❸ ❹

Use of handling instructions

Handling instructions are steps that must be carried out in their exact sequence during startup, operation, maintenance and similar operations.

They are numbered consecutively (black numbers in white circles):

① Text.

② Text.

③ Text.

Use of footnotes in tables

Instructions in tables are explained in footnotes underneath the tables (in superscript). There is a footnote character at the appropriate position in the table (in superscript).

If there are several footnotes for one table then these are numbered consecutively underneath the table (black numbers in white circle, in superscript):

① Text.

② Text.

③ Text.

Contents

1 Introduction

1.1 Receiving and inspection. 1-1

1.2 Nameplate information 1-1

1.3 Model name. 1-2

1.4 Serial number 1-2

1.5 RFI jumper. 1-3

1.6 Dimensions 1-8

2 Unpacking

2.1 Unpacking 2-1

2.1.1 The lifting hook 2-17

3 Installation

3.1 Minimum mounting clearance and installation 3-1

4 Wiring

4.1 Wiring 4-2

4.1.1 Wiring diagram for frame A–C. 4-2

4.1.2 Wiring diagram for frame D and frames above 4-2

4.1.3 System wiring diagram 4-6

5 Main Circuit Terminals

5.1 Main circuit diagram 5-1

5.2 Main circuit terminals. 5-5

6 Control Terminals

6.1 Specifications of control terminal 6-4

6.2 Analog input terminals (AVI, ACI, AUI, ACM) 6-7

6.3 Remove the terminal block 6-8

7 Optional Accessories

7.1 All brake resistors and brake units used in AC motor drives 7-1

7.2 Non-fuse circuit breaker 7-5

7.3 Fuse specification chart. 7-6

7.4 AC/DC reactor 7-7

7.4.1 AC input/output reactor 7-7

7.4.2 DC reactor. 7-8

7.4.3 THD. 7-9

7.5 Zero phase reactors 7-10

7.6 EMI filter 7-12

7.7 Digital keypad 7-16

7.7.1 KPC-CE01. 7-16

7.7.2 Dimension 7-19

7.7.3 RJ45 extension lead for digital keypad 7-19

7.8 Panel mounting (MKC-KPPK) 7-20

7.9 Conduit box kit. 7-22

7.10 Fan kit 7-30

7.11 Flange mounting kit 7-44

7.12 USB/RS485 communication interface IFD6530 7-58

7.12.1 Introduction 7-58

7.12.2 Specifications 7-59

7.12.3 Preparations before driver installation. 7-60

7.12.4 Driver installation. 7-61

7.12.5 LED display 7-62

8 Option Cards

8.1 Removal of the front cover 8-1

8.2 Screw speciations for option card terminals 8-4

8.3 EMC-D42A 8-10

8.4 EMC-D611A 8-10

8.5 EMC-R6AA 8-10

8.6 EMC-BPS01 8-11

8.7 EMC-PG01L/EMC-PG02L. 8-11

8.7.1 Terminal description 8-11

8.7.2 Wiring diagram 8-13

8.8 EMC-PG01O/EMC-PG02O 8-14

8.8.1 Terminal description 8-14

8.8.2 Wiring diagram 8-16

8.9 EMC-PG01U/EMC-PG02U 8-17

8.9.1 Terminal description 8-17

8.9.2 Wiring diagram 8-19

8.10 EMC-PG01R 8-20

8.10.1 Terminal description 8-20

8.10.2 Wiring diagram 8-21

8.11 CMC-MOD01. 8-22

8.11.1 Features 8-22

8.11.2 Product file 8-22

8.11.3 Specifications 8-22

8.11.4 Install CMC-MOD01 to VFD-C2000 8-23

8.11.5 Communication parameters for VFD-C2000 connected to Ethernet. . 8-24

8.11.6 Disconnecting CMC-MOD01 from VFD-C2000. 8-24

8.11.7 Basic registers. 8-25

8.11.8 LED indicator & troubleshooting 8-26

8.12 CMC-PD01 8-27

8.12.1 Features 8-27

8.12.2 Product profile 8-27

8.12.3 Specifications 8-28

8.12.4 Installation 8-29

8.12.5 LED indicator & troubleshooting 8-29

8.13 CMC-DN01 8-30
 8.13.1 Functions. 8-30
 8.13.2 Product profile 8-30
 8.13.3 Specifications 8-31
 8.13.4 LED indicator & troubleshooting 8-32

8.14 CMC-EIP01 8-34
 8.14.1 Features 8-34
 8.14.2 Product profile 8-34
 8.14.3 Specifications 8-35
 8.14.4 Installation 8-35
 8.14.5 Connecting CMC-EIP01 to VFD-C2000 8-36
 8.14.6 Communication parameters for VFD-C2000 connected to Ethernet . . 8-37
 8.14.7 Disconnecting CMC-EIP01 from VFD-C2000 8-37
 8.14.8 LED indicator & troubleshooting 8-39

8.15 EMC-COP01 8-40
 8.15.1 RJ-45 pin definition 8-40
 8.15.2 Specifications 8-40
 8.15.3 CANopen communication cable 8-40
 8.15.4 CANopen dimensions 8-41

9 Specifications

9.1 230 V series. 9-1

9.2 460 V series. 9-3

9.3 General specifications 9-5

9.4 Environment for operation, storage and transportation 9-6

9.5 Specification for operation temperature and protection level 9-7

9.6 Derating of ambient temperature and altitude 9-8

10 Digital Keypad

10.1 Descriptions of digital keypad 10-1

10.2 Function of digital keypad KPC-CC01 10-5

10.3 TPEditor installation instruction 10-26
 10.3.1 TPEditor: setup & basic functions 10-26
 10.3.2 Edit startup page 10-27
 10.3.3 Edit main page & example of download 10-29

10.4 Digital keypad KPC-CC01 fault codes and descriptions 10-37

11 Summary of Parameter Settings

11.1 Drive parameters . . . 11-1
11.2 Basic parameters . . . 11-7
11.3 Digital input/output parameters . . . 11-9
11.4 Analog input/output parameters . . . 11-15
11.5 Multi-step speed parameters . . . 11-19
11.6 Motor parameters . . . 11-21
11.7 Protection parameters . . . 11-23
11.8 Special parameters . . . 11-28
11.9 High-function PID parameters . . . 11-30
11.10 Communication parameters . . . 11-31
11.11 Speed feedback control parameters . . . 11-35
11.12 Advanced parameters . . . 11-37

12 Description of Parameter Settings

12.1 Drive parameters . . . 12-1
12.2 Group 1: Basic parameters . . . 12-26
12.3 Digital input/output parameter . . . 12-41
12.4 Analog input/output parameter . . . 12-72
12.5 Multi-step speed parameters . . . 12-110
12.6 Motor parameters . . . 12-114
12.7 Protection parameters . . . 12-126
12.8 Special parameters . . . 12-160
12.9 High-function PID parameters . . . 12-172
12.10 Communication parameters . . . 12-184
12.10.1 Code description . . . 12-185
12.10.2 Data format . . . 12-186
12.10.3 Communication protocol . . . 12-187
12.10.4 Address list . . . 12-194
12.10.5 Exception response . . . 12-197
12.11 PID control . . . 12-207
12.12 Advanced parameters . . . 12-221

13 Warning Codes

14 Fault Codes and Descriptions

15 CANopen Overview

15.1 CANopen overview 15-2
15.1.1 CANopen protocol 15-2
15.1.2 CANopen communication protocol 15-3
15.2 Wiring for CANopen 15-6
15.3 CANopen communication interface description 15-7
15.3.1 CANopen control mode selection 15-7
15.3.2 DS402 standard control mode 15-8
15.3.3 By using Delta standard (Old definition, only support speed mode) . . 15-15
15.3.4 By using Delta standard (New definition) 15-16
15.3.5 DI/DO AI AO are controlled via CANopen 15-20
15.4 CANopen® supporting index 15-21
15.4.1 C2000 index 15-21
15.4.2 C2000 control index 15-22
15.5 CANopen® fault code 15-29
15.6 CANopen LED function 15-38

16 PLC Function Applications

16.1 PLC summary 16-1
16.1.1 Introduction 16-1
16.1.2 WPLSoft ladder diagram editing tool 16-1
16.2 Notes before PLC use 16-2
16.3 Turn on 16-4
16.3.1 Connect to PC 16-4
16.3.2 I/O device explanation 16-6
16.3.3 Installation of WPLSoft 16-6
16.3.4 Program writing 16-7
16.3.5 Program download 16-14
16.3.6 Program monitoring 16-14

16.4 Basic principles of PLC ladder diagrams . . . 16-15
16.4.1 Schematic diagram of PLC ladder diagram program scanning . . . 16-15
16.4.2 Introduction to ladder diagrams . . . 16-15
16.4.3 Using switches and sensors . . . 16-18
16.4.4 Overview of PLC ladder diagram editing . . . 16-19
16.4.5 Commonly-used basic program design examples . . . 16-23

16.5 Various PLC device functions . . . 16-28
16.5.1 Introduction to device functions . . . 16-29
16.5.2 Introduction to special relay functions (special M) . . . 16-34
16.5.3 Introduction to special register functions (special D) . . . 16-36
16.5.4 PLC Communication addresses for MODBUS® communication . . . 16-43

16.6 Introduction to the command window . . . 16-44
16.6.1 Overview of basic commands . . . 16-44
16.6.2 Detailed explanation of basic commands . . . 16-46
16.6.3 Overview of application commands . . . 16-61
16.6.4 Detailed explanation of applications commands . . . 16-65

16.7 Error display and handling . . . 16-135

16.8 CANopen® Master control applications . . . 16-136

16.9 Explanation of various PLC mode controls (speed, torque, homing, and position) . . . 16-149

16.10 Internal communications main node control . . . 16-156

16.11 Count function using MI8 . . . 16-160
16.11.1 High-speed count function . . . 16-160
16.11.2 Frequency calculation function . . . 16-161

16.12 MODBUS® remote IO control applications (MODRW) . . . 16-162

16.13 Calendar functions . . . 16-170

17 How to select the right AC motor drive

17.1 Capacity formulas . . . 17-2
17.1.1 When one AC motor drive operates one motor . . . 17-2
17.1.2 When one AC motor drive operates more than one motor . . . 17-2

17.2 General precaution . . . 17-4

17.3 How to choose a suitable motor . . . 17-5

18 Suggestions and Error Corrections for Standard AC Motor Drives

18.1 Maintenance and Inspections 18-2

18.2 Greasy dirt problem 18-6

18.3 Fiber dust problem. 18-7

18.4 Erosion problem 18-8

18.5 Industrial dust problem 18-9

18.6 Wiring and installation problem 18-10

18.7 Multi-function input/output terminals problem 18-11

19 EMC Standard Installation Guide

19.1 Introduction 19-1

19.1.1 What is EMC? 19-1

19.1.2 EMC for AC motor drive 19-1

19.2 How to prevent EMI 19-2

19.2.1 Types of EMI: Common-mode and differential-mode noise 19-2

19.2.2 How does EMI transmit? (Noise transmission path) 19-2

19.3 Solution to EMI: grounding 19-5

19.3.1 Protective grounding & functional grounding 19-5

19.3.2 Ground loops. 19-6

19.3.3 Earthing systems. 19-7

19.4 Solution to EMI: shielding 19-11

19.4.1 What is shielding? 19-11

19.4.2 How to reduce EMI by shielding? 19-12

19.5 Solution to EMI: filter 19-15

19.5.1 Filter 19-15

19.5.2 Harmonic interference. 19-18

20 Safety Torque off Function

20.1 The drive safety function failure rate 20-1
20.2 Safety torque off terminal function description 20-2
20.3 Wiring diagram 20-3
20.3.1 Internal STO circuit 20-3
20.3.2 Factory wiring of the terminals STO1, STO2, SCM1 and SCM2 . . . 20-3
20.3.3 The control loop wiring diagram: 20-4
20.4 Parameter 20-5
20.5 Operating sequence description 20-6
20.5.1 Normal operation status 20-6
20.5.2 STO · Pr. 06-44 = 0 · Pr. 02-35 = 0. 20-6
20.5.3 STO · Pr. 06-44 = 0 · Pr. 02-35 = 1. 20-7
20.5.4 STO · Pr. 06-44 = 1. 20-7
20.5.5 STL1 20-8
20.5.6 STL2 20-8
20.6 New error code for STO function. 20-9

1 Introduction

1.1 Receiving and inspection

After receiving the, please check for the following:

① Please inspect the unit after unpacking to assure it was not damaged during shipment. Make sure that the part number printed on the package corresponds with the part number indicated on the nameplate.

② Make sure that the voltage for the wiring lie within the range as indicated on the nameplate. Please install the according to this manual.

③ Before applying the power, please make sure that all the devices, including power, motor, control board and digital keypad, are connected correctly.

④ When wiring the, please make sure that the wiring of input terminals "R/L1, S/L2, T/L3" and output terminals "U/T1, V/T2, W/T3" are correct to prevent drive damage.

⑤ When power is applied, select the language and set parameter groups via the digital keypad (KPC-CC01). When executes trial run, please begin with a low speed and then gradually increases the speed untill the desired speed is reached.

1.2 Nameplate information

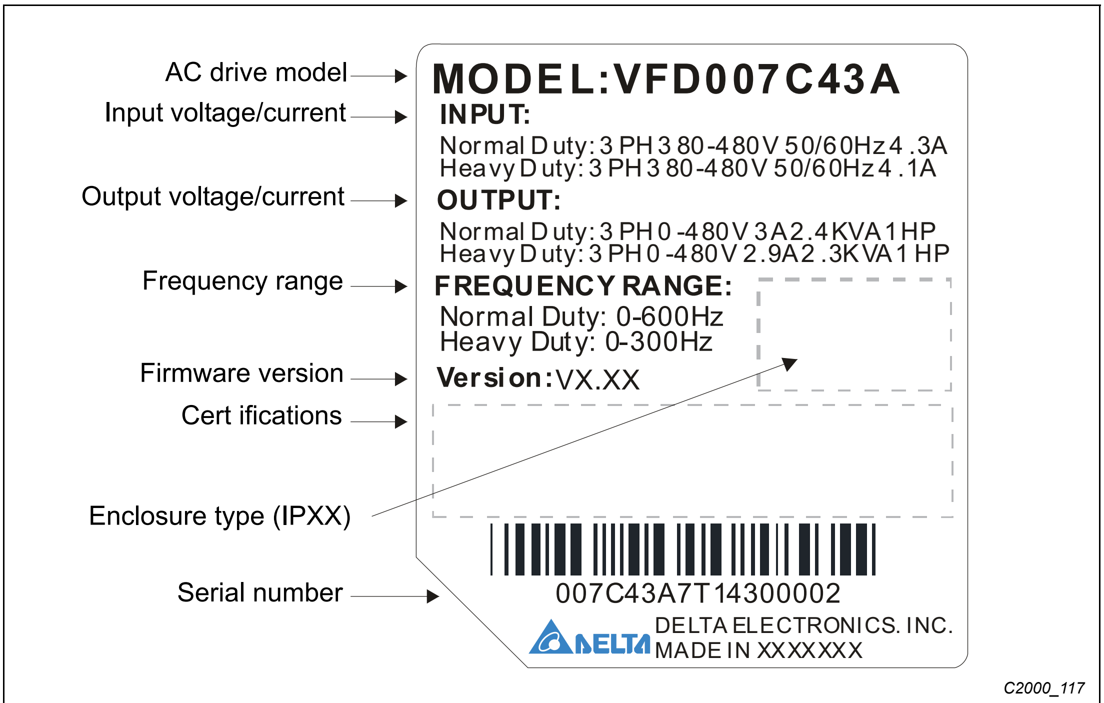


Fig. 1-1: Description of the nameplate

1.3 Model name

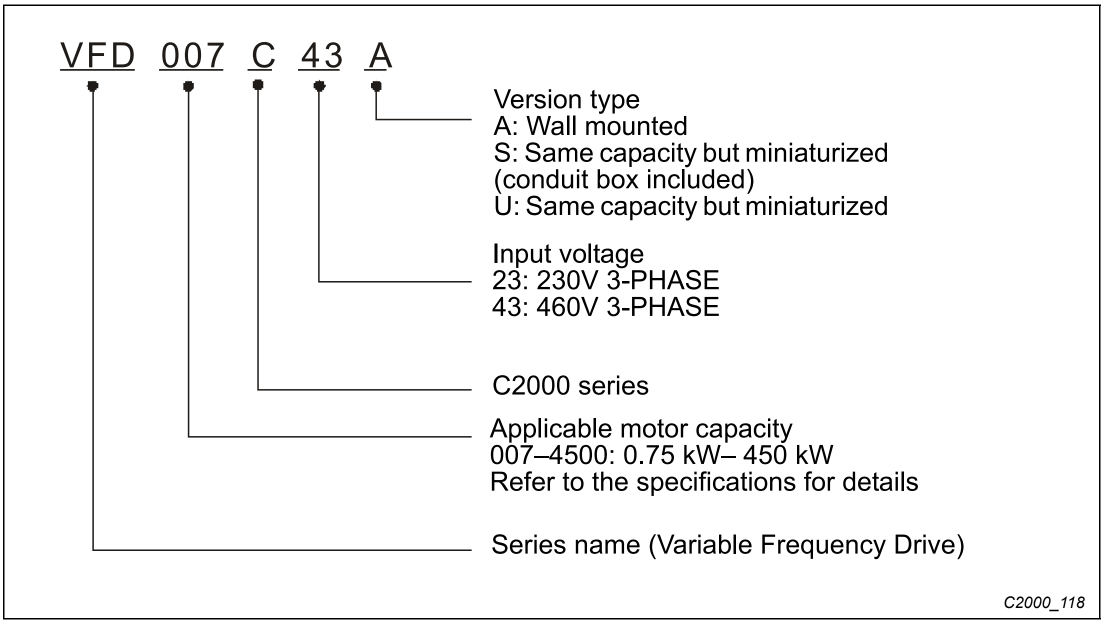


Fig. 1-2: Description of the model name

1.4 Serial number

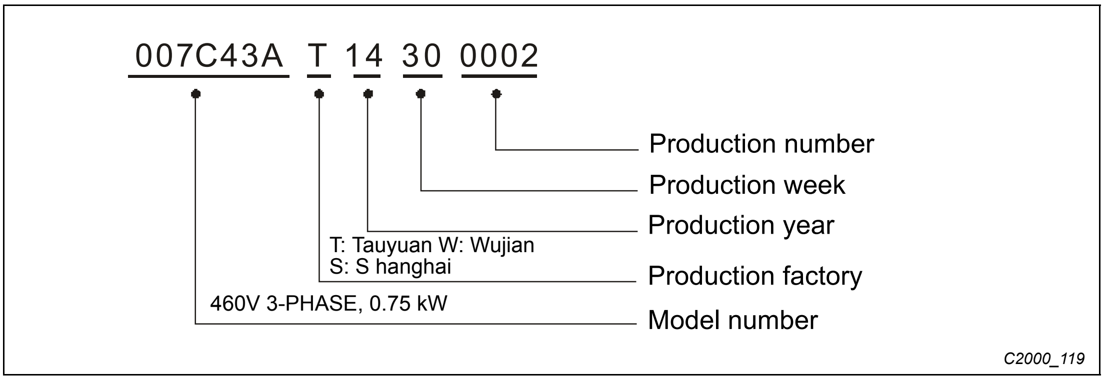


Fig. 1-3: Description of the serial number

1.5 RFI jumper

The frequency inverter can cause electromagnetic interference, which is emitted to the power line. An internal EMC filter is used to suppress the interference (Radio Frequency Interference) on the power line. Use the RFI jumper to enable/disable the EMC filter.

Frame A–C

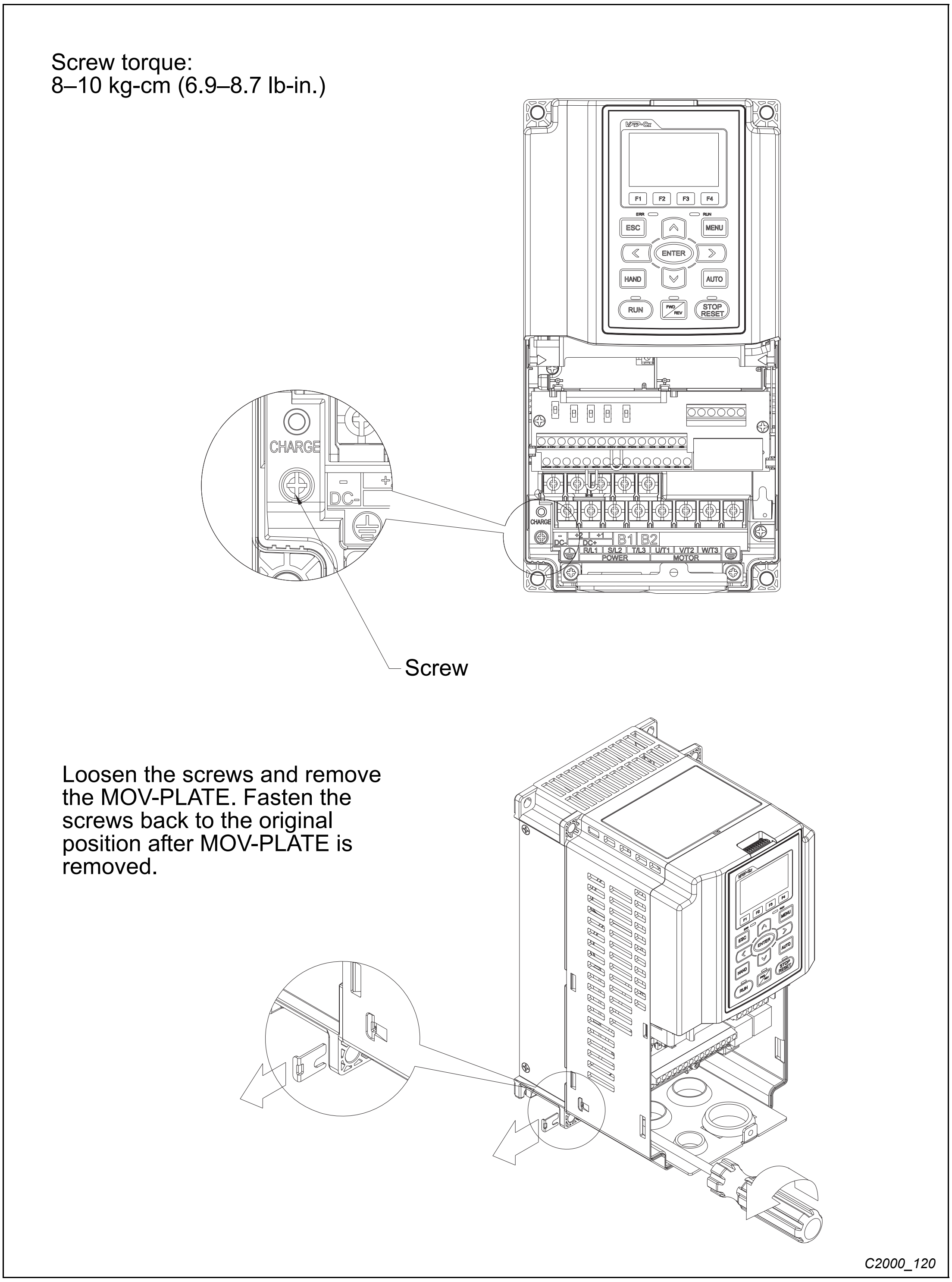
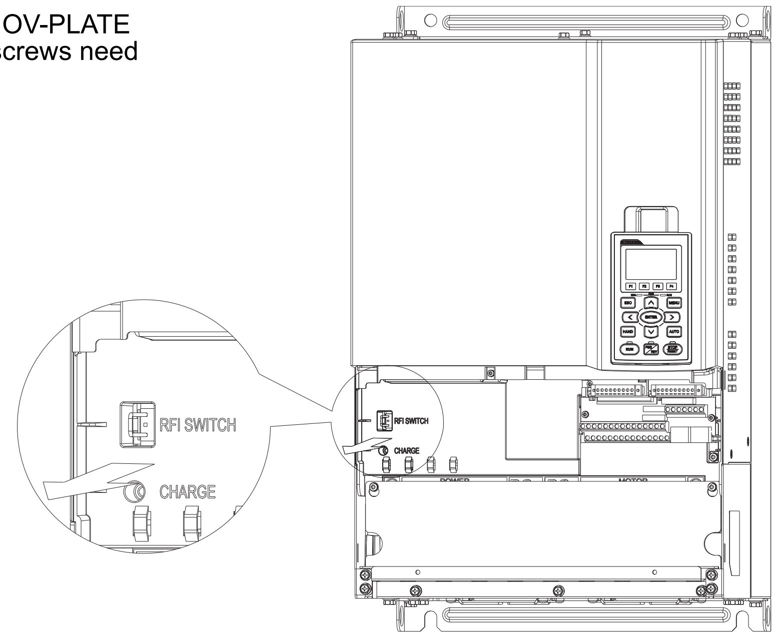


Fig. 1-4: Removal of the RFI jumper (frame size A-C)

Frame D–H

Remove the MOV-PLATE
by hands, no screws need
to be loosen.



C2000_121

Fig. 1-5: Removal of the RFI jumper (frame size D-H)

Isolating main power from ground

When the power distribution system of the is a floating ground system (IT) or an asymmetric ground system (TN), the RFI jumper must be cut off. Cutting off the short-circuit cable cuts off the internal RFI capacitor (filter capacitor) between the system's frame and the central circuits to avoid damaging the central circuits and (according to IEC 61800-3) reduce the ground leakage current.

Important points regarding ground connection:

- To ensure the safety of personnel, proper operation, and to reduce electromagnetic radiation, the must be properly grounded during installation.
- The diameter of the cables must meet the size specified by safety regulations.
- The shielded cable must be connected to the ground of the to meet safety regulations.
- The shielded cable can only be used as the ground for equipment when the aforementioned points are met.
- When installing multiple sets of frequency inverters, do not connect the grounds in series. The correct grounding is shown in Fig. 1-6.

NOTE The EU Directives must be observed for Grounding/Earthing (Low Voltage Directive).

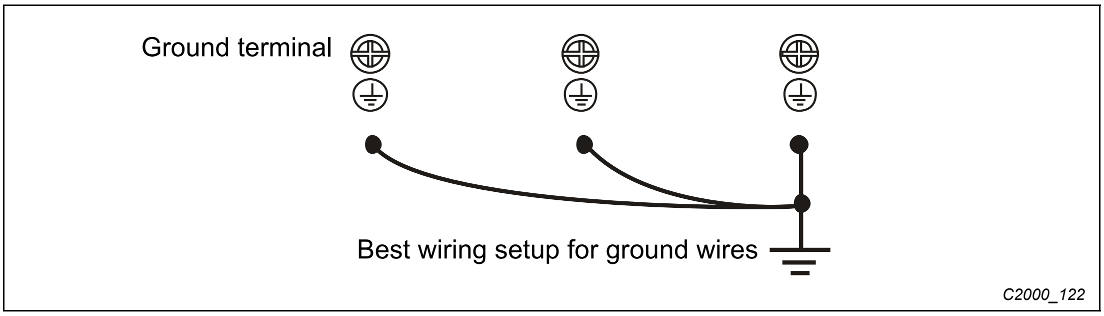


Fig. 1-6: Grounding multiple sets of frequency inverters.

Pay particular attention to the following points:

- After turning on the main power, do not cut the RFI jumper while the power is on.
- Make sure the main power is turned off before cutting the RFI jumper.
- Cutting the RFI jumper will also cut off the conductivity of the capacitor. Gap discharge may occur once the transient voltage exceeds 1000 V.

If the RFI jumper is cut, there will no longer be reliable electrical isolation. In other words, all controlled input and outputs can only be seen as low-voltage terminals with basic electrical isolation. Also, when the internal RFI capacitor is cut off, the will no longer be electromagnetic compatible.

- The RFI jumper may not be cut off if the main power is a grounded power system.
- The RFI jumper may not be cut off while conducting high voltage tests. When conducting a high voltage test to the entire facility, the main power and the motor must be disconnected if leakage current is too high.

Floating ground system (IT systems)

A floating ground system is also called IT system, ungrounded system, or high impedance/resistance (greater than 30 Ω) grounding system.

- Disconnect the ground cable from the internal EMC filter.
- In situations where EMC is required, check whether there is excess electromagnetic radiation affecting nearby low-voltage circuits. In some situations, the adapter and cable naturally provide enough suppression. If in doubt, install an extra electrostatic shielded cable on the power supply side between the main circuit and the control terminals to increase security.
- Do not install an external RFI/EMC filter, the EMC filter will pass through a filter capacitor, thus connecting power input to ground. This is very dangerous and can easily damage the .

Asymmetric ground system (Corner grounded TN systems)

CAUTION:
Do not remove the RFI jumper while the input terminal of the carries power. In the following four situations, the RFI jumper must be cut off. This is to prevent the system from grounding through the RFI capacitor, damaging the .

In the following situations the RFI jumper must be removed. This is to prevent the system from grounding through the RFI capacitor and damaging the frequency inverter.

RFI jumper must be cut off

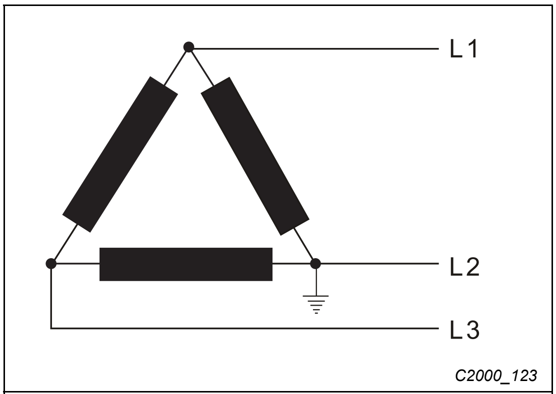


Fig. 1-7: Grounding at a corner in a triangle configuration

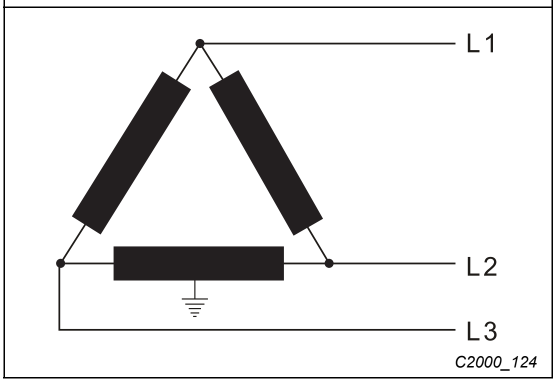


Fig. 1-8: Grounding at a midpoint in a polygonal configuration

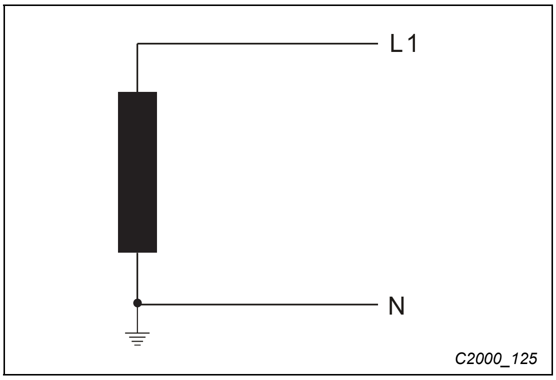


Fig. 1-9: Grounding at one end in a single-phase configuration

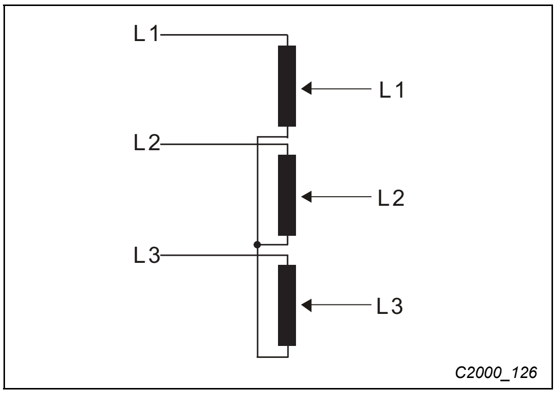


Fig. 1-10: No stable neutral grounding in a three-phase autotransformer configuration

RFI short-circuit can be used

Internal grounding through RFI capacitor, which reduces electromagnetic radiation. In a situation with higher requirements for electromagnetic compatibility, and using a symmetrical grounding power system, an EMC filter can be installed. As a reference, the diagram in Fig. 1-11 is a symmetrical grounding power system.

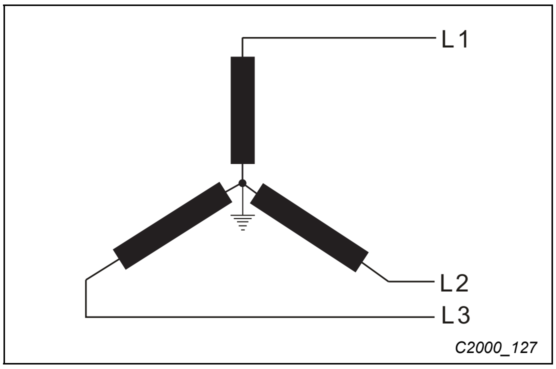


Fig. 1-11: Symmetrical grounding power system (star configuration)

1.6 Dimensions

Frame A

VFD007C23A, VFD007C43A/E, VFD015C23A, VFD015C43A/E, VFD022C23A, VFD022C43A/E, VFD037C23A, VFD037C43A/E, VFD040C43A/E, VFD055C43A/E

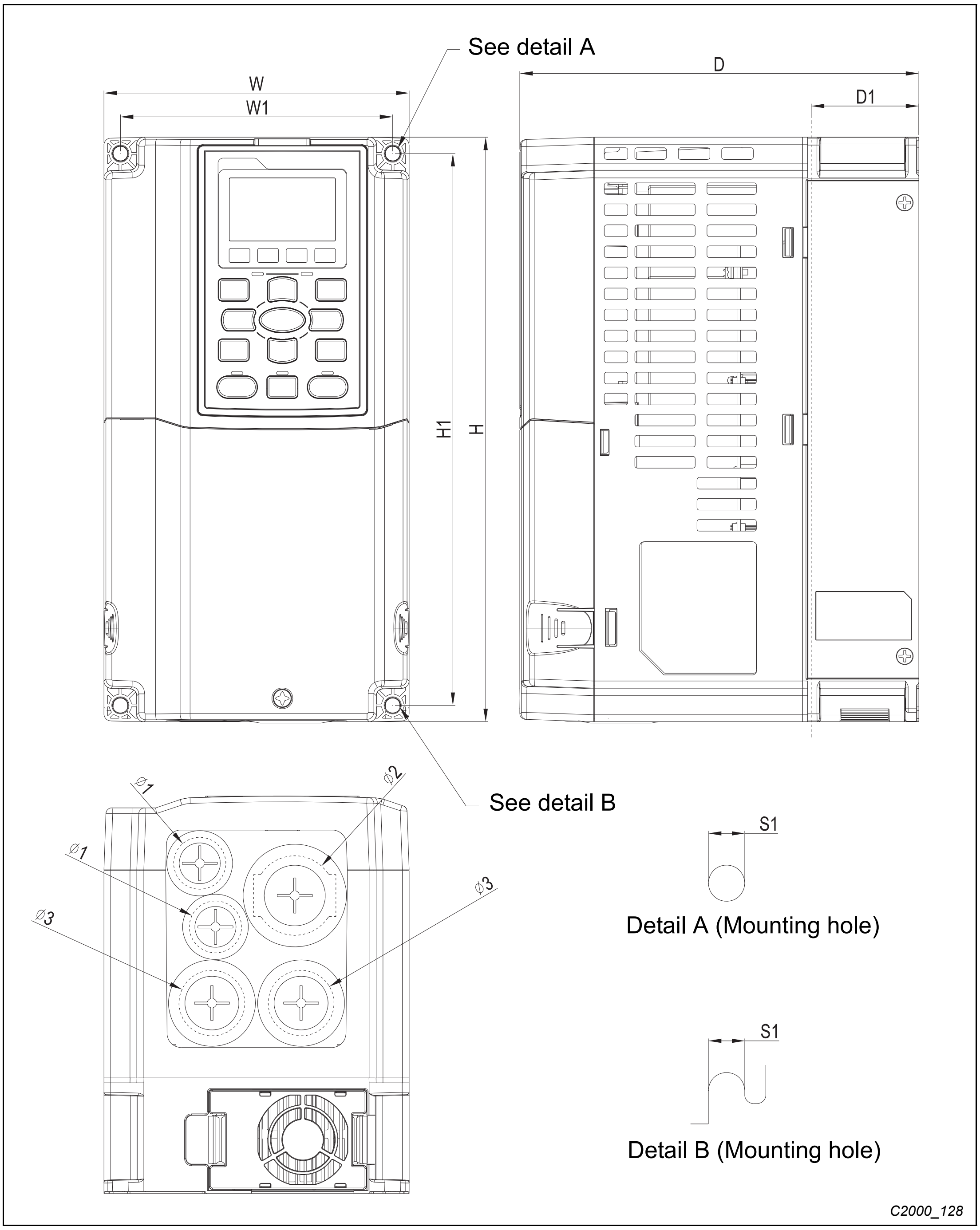


Fig. 1-12: Dimensions frame size A

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	D1*	S1	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
A	130.0 [5.12]	250.0 [9.84]	170.0 [6.69]	116.0 [4.57]	236.0 [9.29]	45.8 [1.80]	6.2 [0.24]	22.2 [0.87]	34.0 [1.34]	28.0 [1.10]

* Flange mounting

Frame B

VFD055C23A, VFD075C23A, VFD075C43A/E, VFD110C23A, VFD110C43A/E, VFD150C43A/E

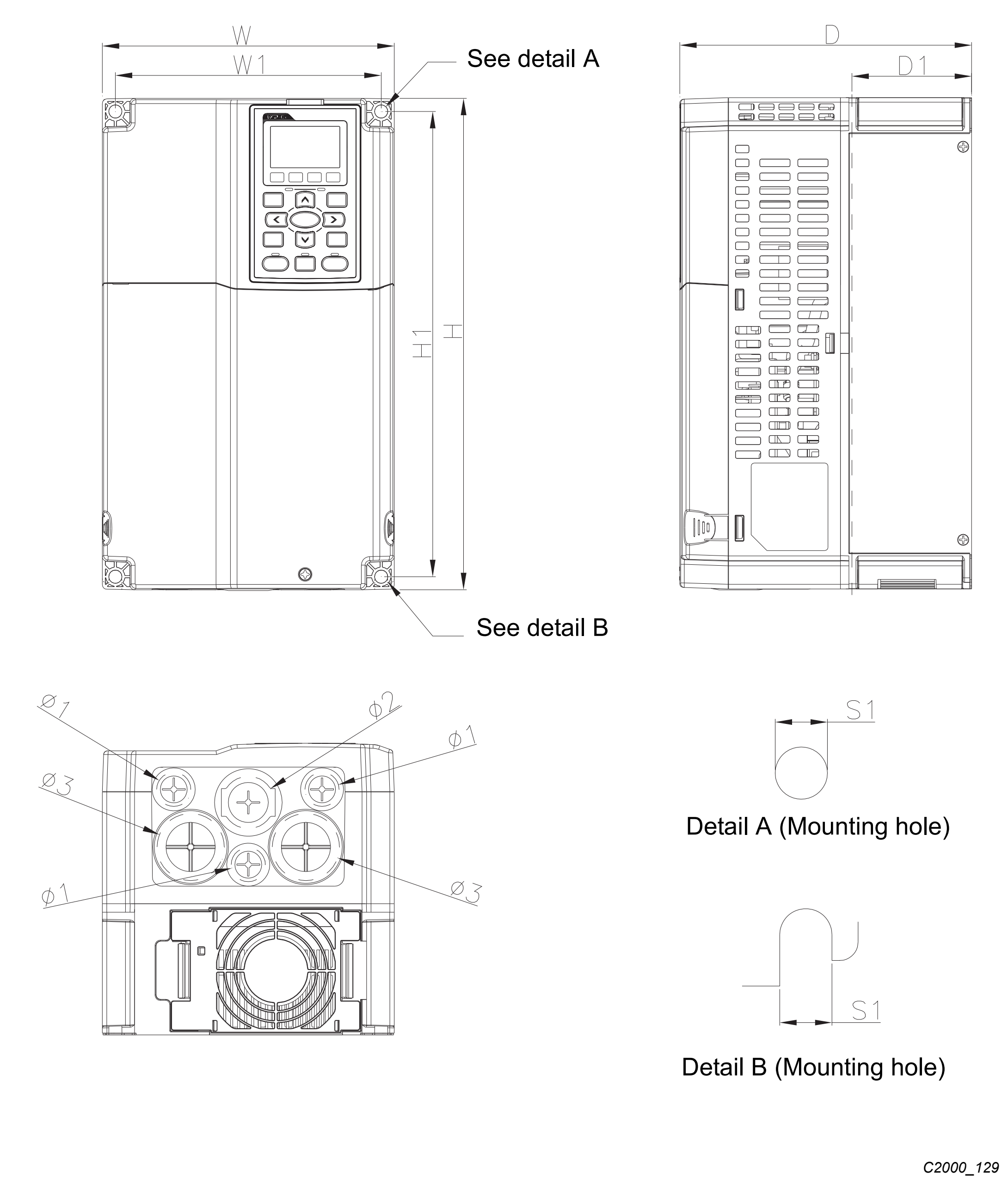


Fig. 1-13: Dimensions frame size B

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	D1*	S1	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
B	190.0 [7.48]	320.0 [12.60]	190.0 [7.48]	173.0 [6.81]	303.0 [11.93]	77.9 [3.07]	8.5 [0.33]	22.2 [0.87]	34.0 [1.34]	43.8 [1.72]

* Flange mounting

Frame C

VFD150C23A, VFD185C23A, VFD185C43A/E, VFD220C23A, VFD220C43A/E, VFD300C43A/E

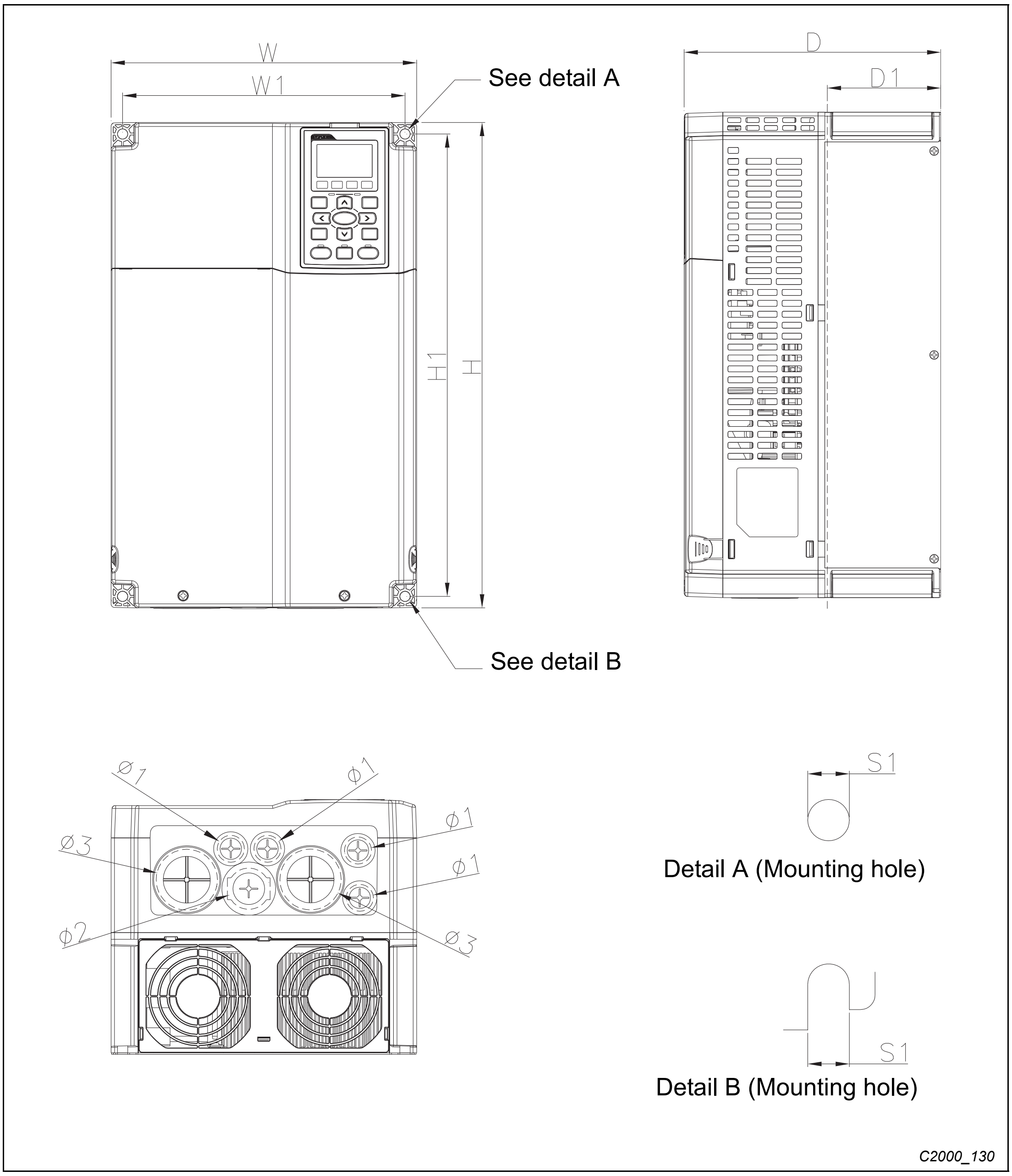


Fig. 1-14: Dimensions frame size C

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	D1*	S1	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
C	250.0 [9.84]	400.0 [15.75]	210.0 [8.27]	231.0 [9.09]	381.0 [15.00]	92.9 [3.66]	8.5 [0.33]	22.2 [0.87]	34.0 [1.34]	50.0 [1.97]

* Flange mounting

Frame D0

D0-1: VFD370C43S, VFD450C43S

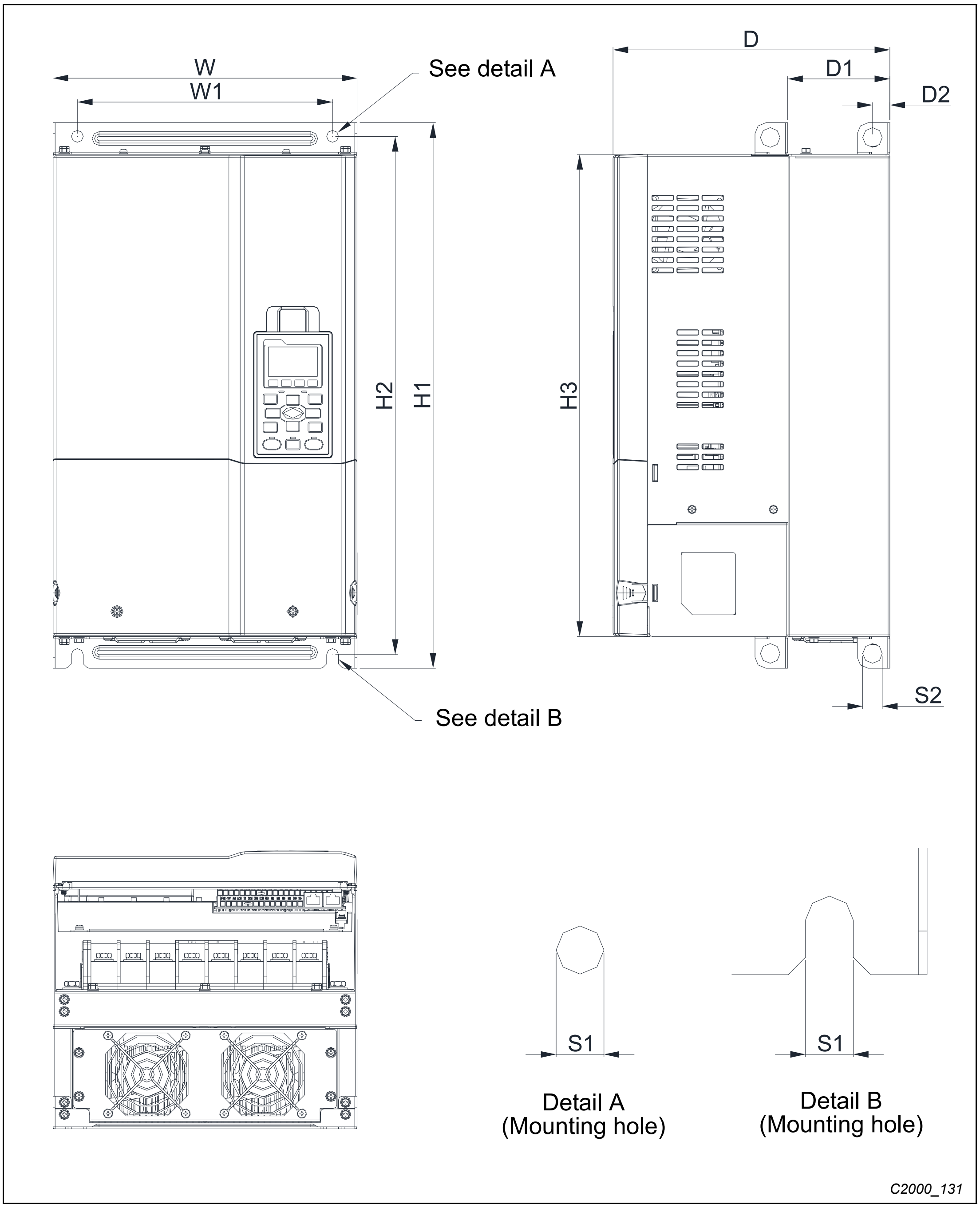


Fig. 1-15: Dimensions frame size D0-1

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H1	D	W1	H2	H3	D1*	D2	S1	S2
D0-1	280.0 [11.02]	500.0 [19.69]	255.0 [10.04]	235.0 [9.25]	475.0 [18.70]	442.0 [17.40]	94.2 [3.71]	16.0 [0.63]	11.0 [0.43]	18.0 [0.71]

* Flange mounting

Frame D0

D0-2: VFD370C43U, VFD450C43U

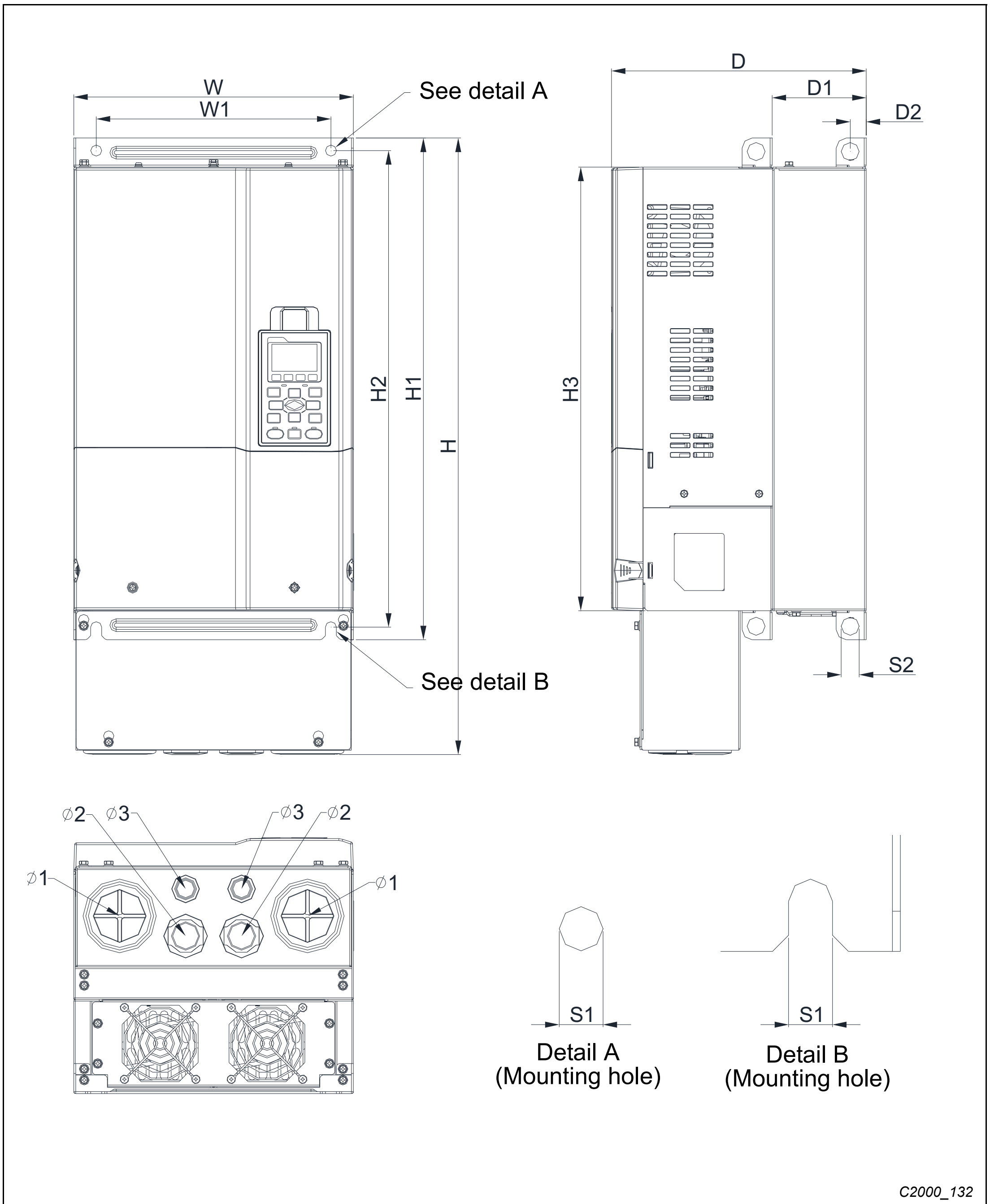


Fig. 1-16: Dimensions frame size D0-2

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	D1*	D2	S1	S2	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
D0-2	280.0 [11.02]	614.4 [24.19]	255.0 [10.04]	235.0 [9.25]	500.0 [19.69]	475.0 [18.70]	442.0 [17.40]	94.2 [3.71]	16.0 [0.63]	11.0 [0.43]	18.0 [0.71]	62.7 [2.47]	34.0 [1.34]	22.0 [0.87]

* Flange mounting

Frame D

D1: VFD300C23A, VFD370C23A, VFD550C43A, VFD750C43A

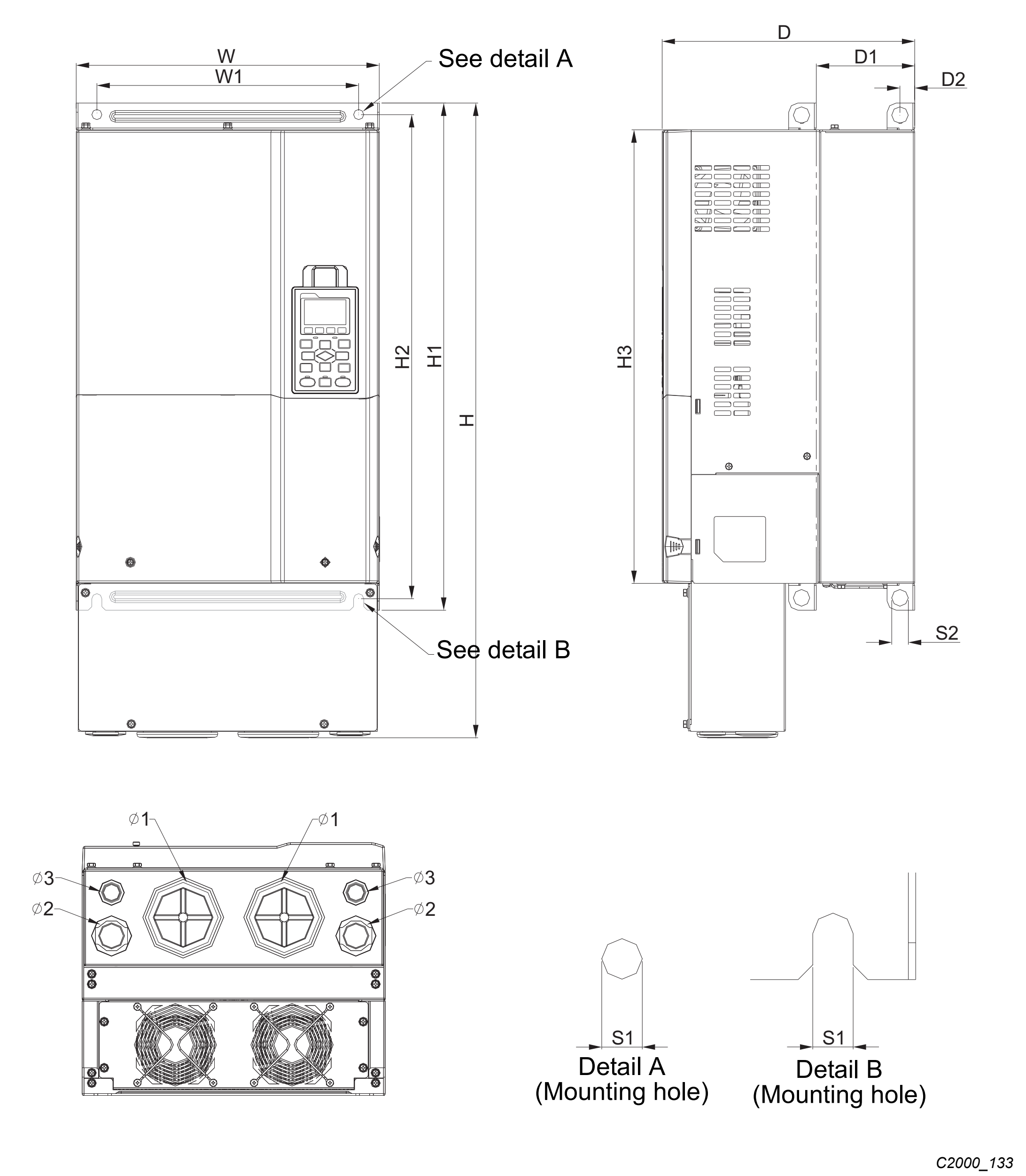


Fig. 1-17: Dimensions frame size D1

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	D1*	D2	S1	S2	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
D1	330.0 [12.99]	—	275.0 [10.83]	285.0 [11.22]	550.0 [21.65]	525.0 [20.67]	492.0 [19.37]	107.2 [4.22]	16.0 [0.63]	11.0 [0.43]	18.0 [0.71]	—	—	—

* Flange mounting

Frame D

D2: VFD300C23E, VFD370C23E, VFD550C43E, VFD750C43E

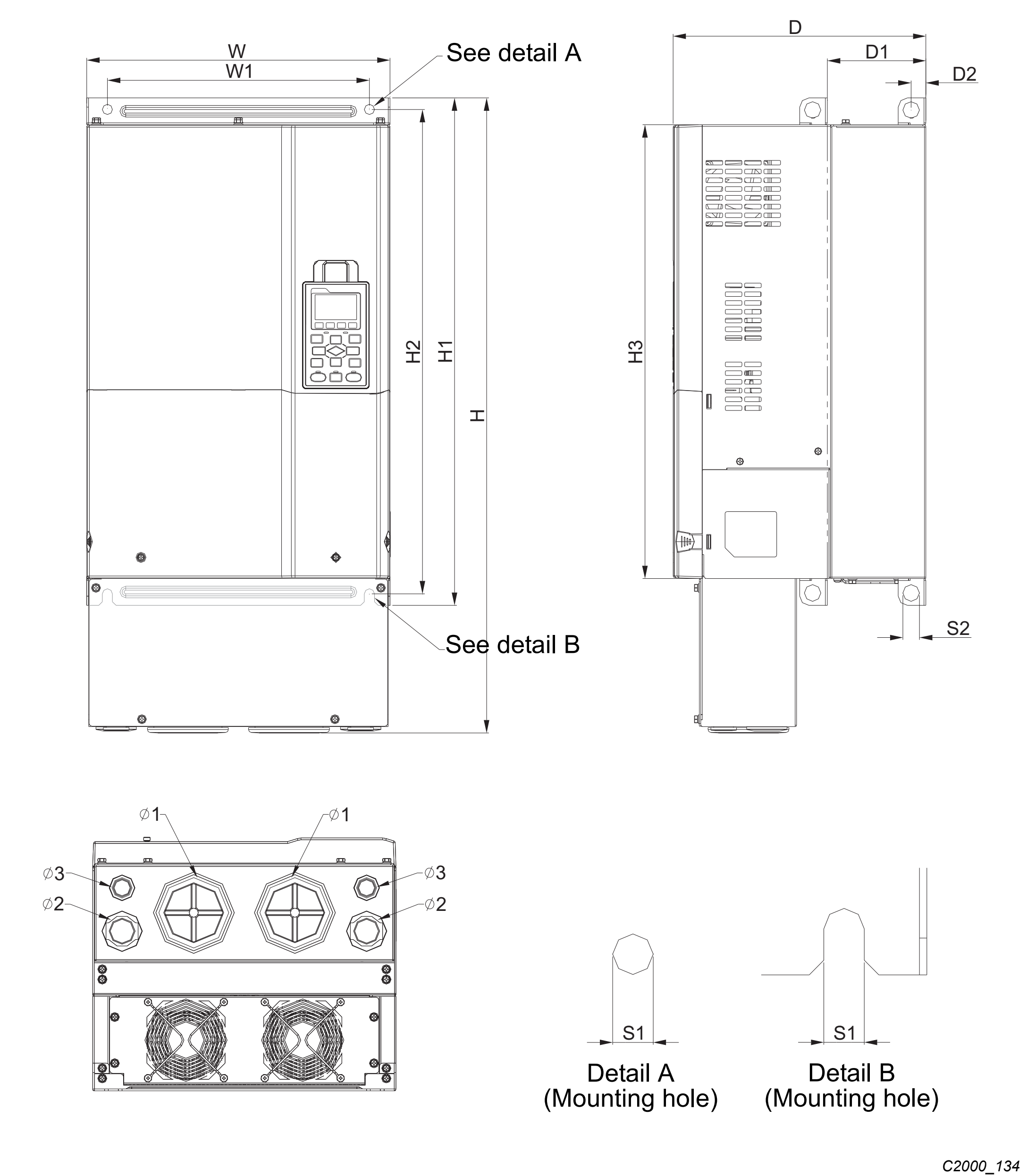


Fig. 1-18: Dimensions frame size D2

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	D1*	D2	S1	S2	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
D2	330.0 [12.99]	688.3 [27.10]	275.0 [10.83]	285.0 [11.22]	550.0 [21.65]	525.0 [20.67	492.0 [19.37]	107.2 [4.22]	16.0 [0.63]	11.0 [0.43]	18.0 [0.71]	76.2 [3.00]	34.0 [1.34]	22.0 [0.87]

* Flange mounting

Frame E

E1: VFD450C23A, VFD550C23A, VFD750C23A, VFD900C43A, VFD1100C43A

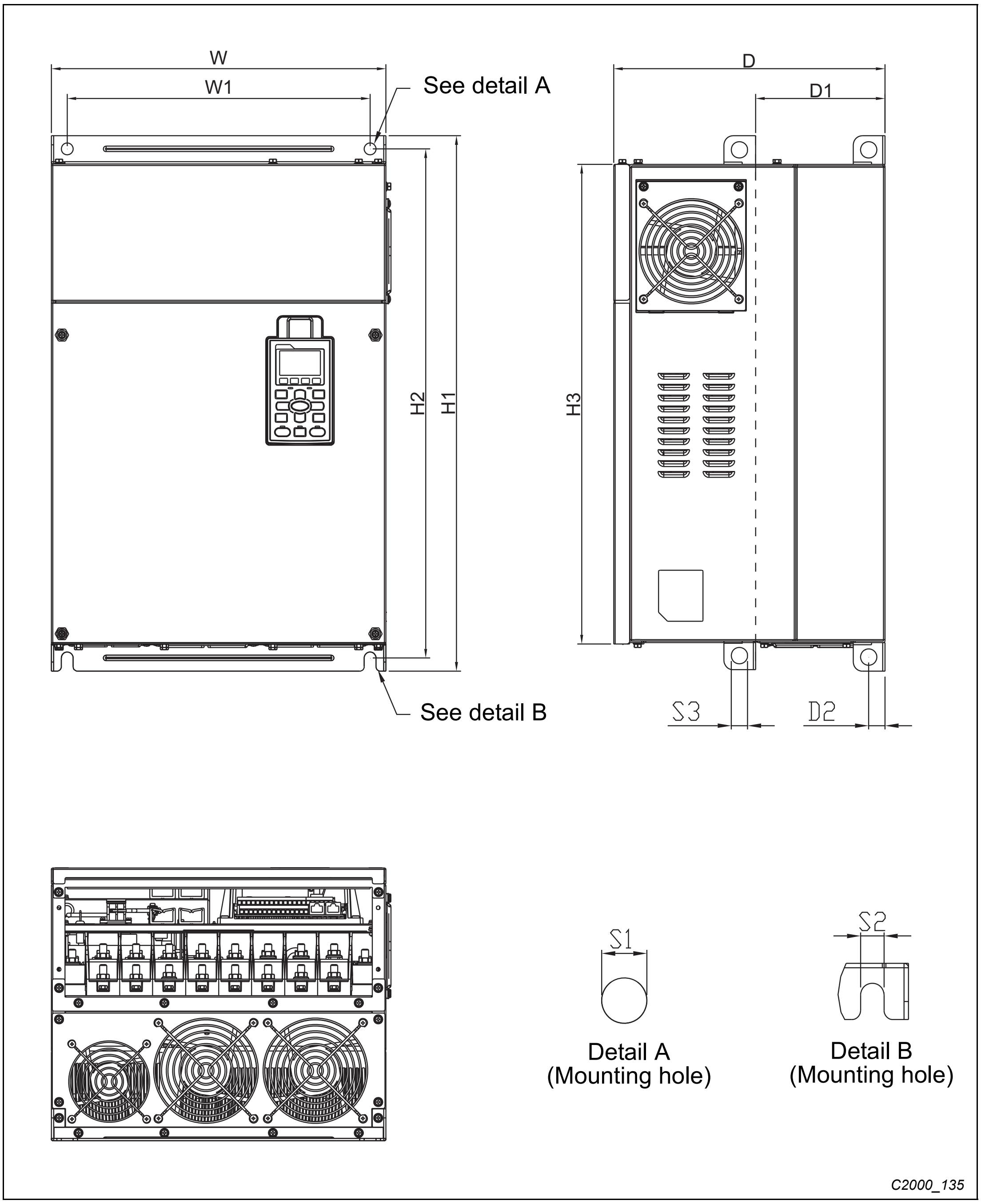


Fig. 1-19: Dimensions frame size E1

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	D1*	D2	S1, S2	S3	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
E1	370.0 [14.57]	—	300.0 [11.81]	335.0 [13.19]	589 [23.19]	560.0 [22.05]	528.0 [20.80]	143.0 [5.63]	18.0 [0.71]	13.0 [0.51]	18.0 [0.71]	—	—	—

* Flange mounting

Frame E

E2: VFD450C23E, VFD550C23E, VFD750C23E, VFD900C43E, VFD1100C43E

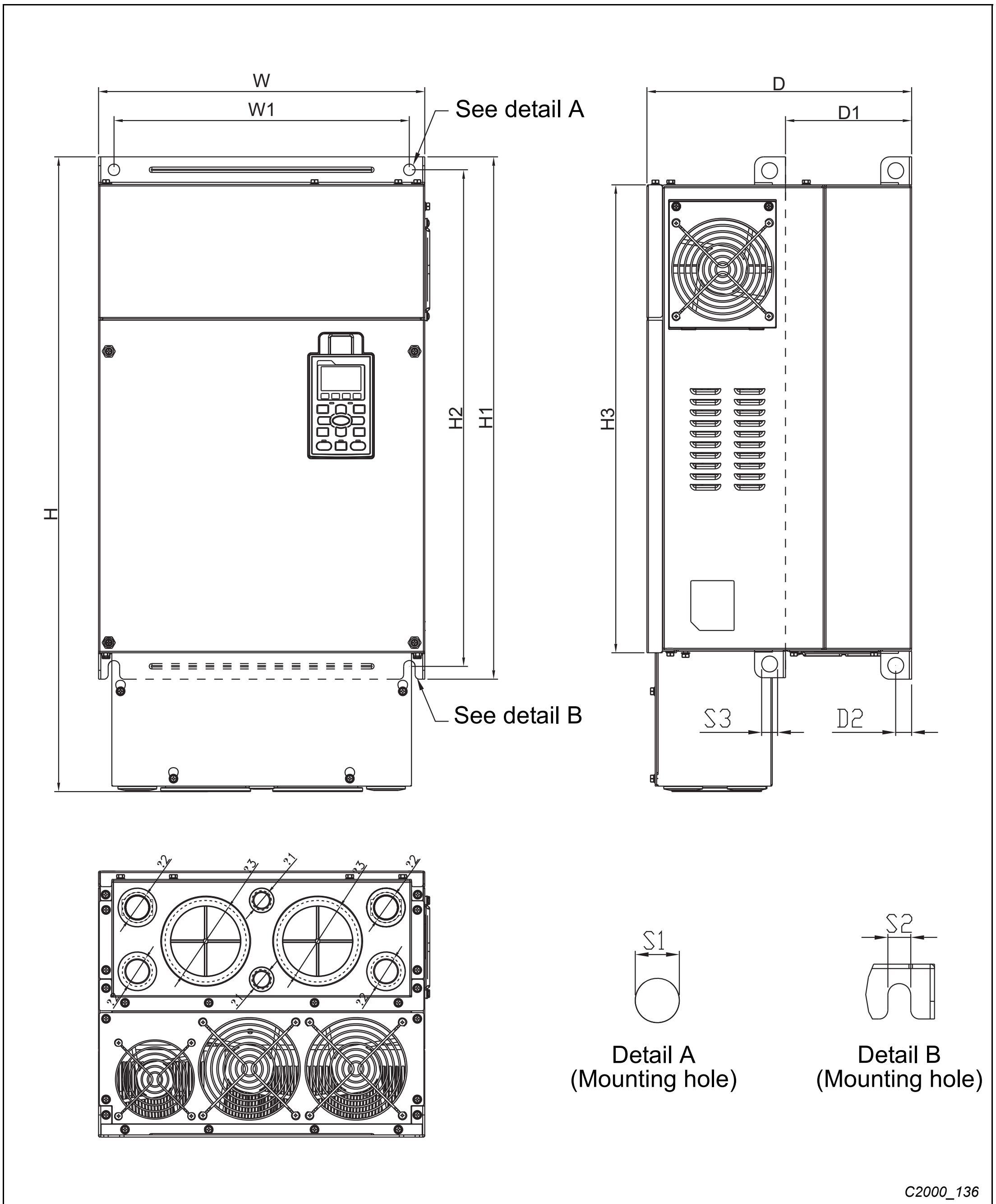


Fig. 1-20: Dimensions frame size E2

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	D1*	D2	S1, S2	S3	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
E2	370.0 [14.57]	715.8 [28.18]	300.0 [11.81]	335.0 [13.19]	589 [23.19]	560.0 [22.05]	528.0 [20.80]	143.0 [5.63]	18.0 [0.71]	13.0 [0.51]	18.0 [0.71]	22.0 [0.87]	34.0 [1.34]	92.0 [3.62]

* Flange mounting

Frame F

F1: VFD900C23A, VFD1320C43A, VFD1600C43A

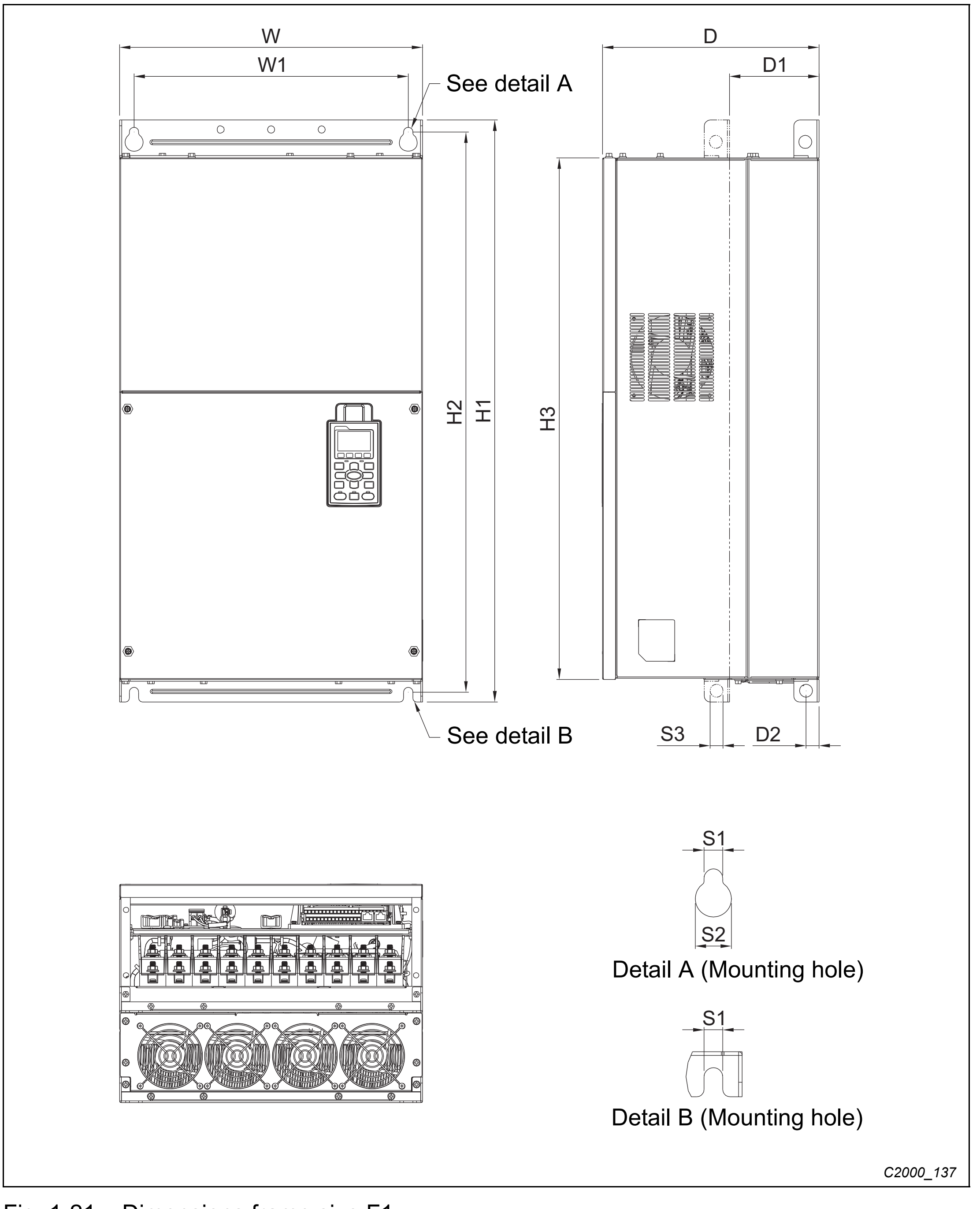


Fig. 1-21: Dimensions frame size F1

Unit: mm [inch]

Fra-me	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	D1*	D2	S1	S2	S3
F1	420.0 [16.54]	—	300.0 [11.81]	380.0 [14.96]	800.0 [31.50]	770.0 [30.32]	717.0 [28.23]	124.0 [4.88]	18.0 [0.71]	13.0 [0.51]	25.0 [0.98]	18.0 [0.71]

* Flange mounting

Frame F

F2: VFD900C23E, VFD1320C43E, VFD1600C43E

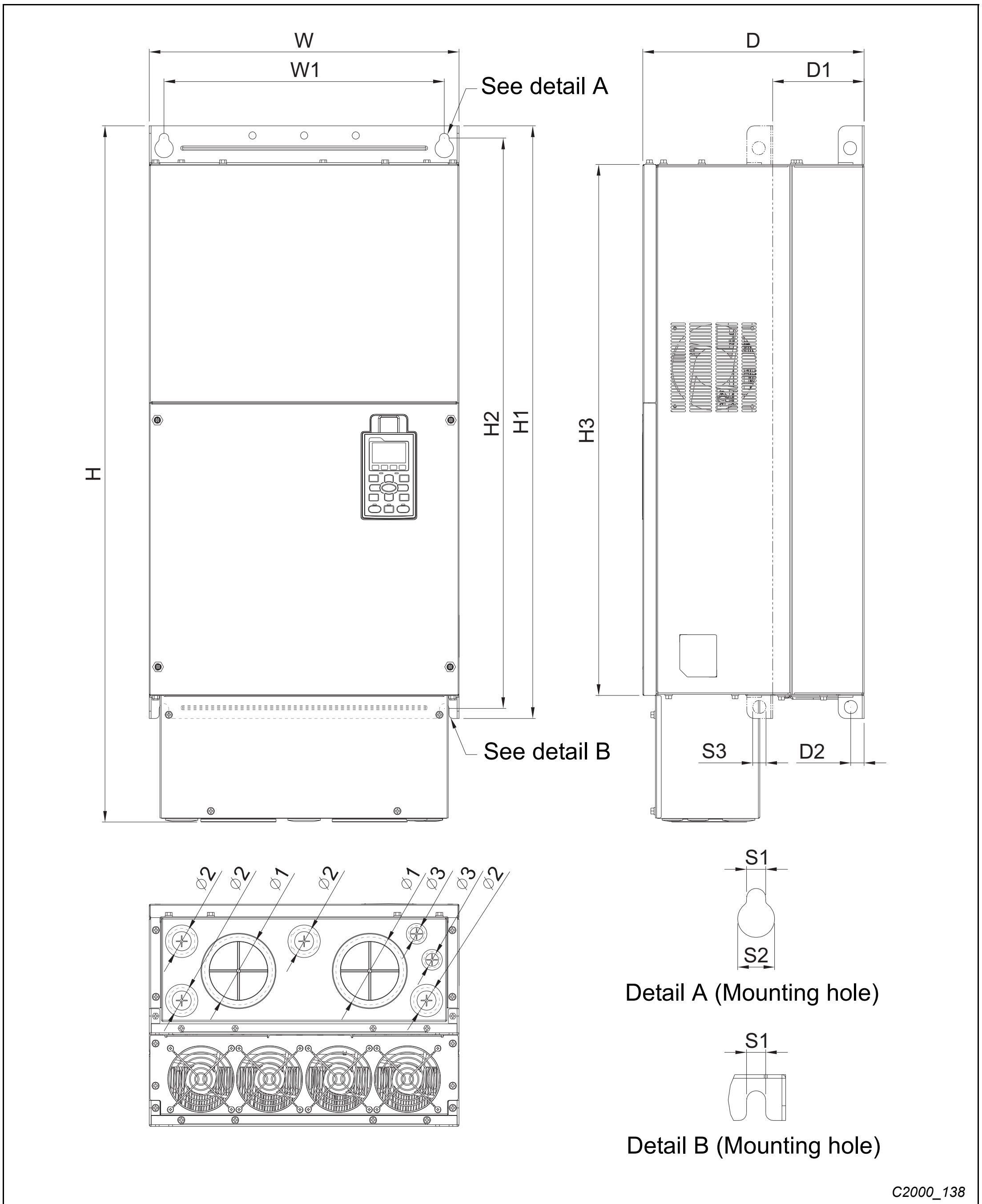


Fig. 1-22: Dimensions frame size F2

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	D1*	D2	S1	S2	S3
F2	420.0 [16.54]	940.0 [37.00]	300.0 [11.81]	380.0 [14.96]	800.0 [31.50]	770.0 [30.32]	717.0 [28.23]	124.0 [4.88]	18.0 [0.71]	13.0 [0.51]	25.0 [0.98]	18.0 [0.71]

Frame	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
F2	92.0 [3.62]	35.0 [1.38]	22.0 [0.87]

* Flange mounting

Frame G

G1: VFD1850C43A, VFD2200C43A

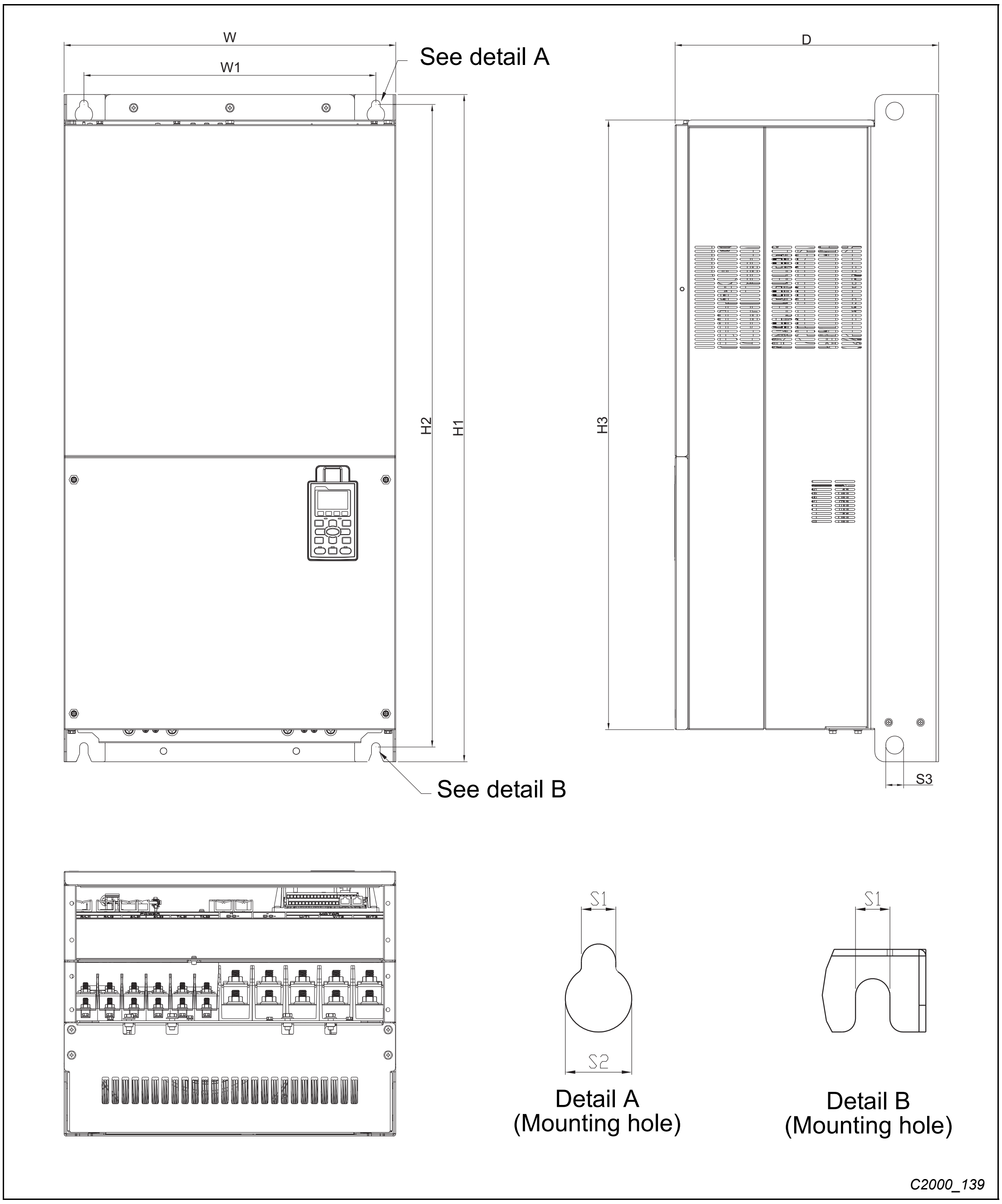


Fig. 1-23: Dimensions frame size G1

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	S1	S2	S3	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
G1	500.0 [19.69]	—	397.0 [15.63]	440.0 [217.32]	1000.0 [39.37]	963.0 [37.91]	913.6 [35.97]	13.0 [0.51]	26.5 [1.04]	27.0 [1.06]	—	—	—

Frame G

G2: VFD1850C43E, VFD2200C43E

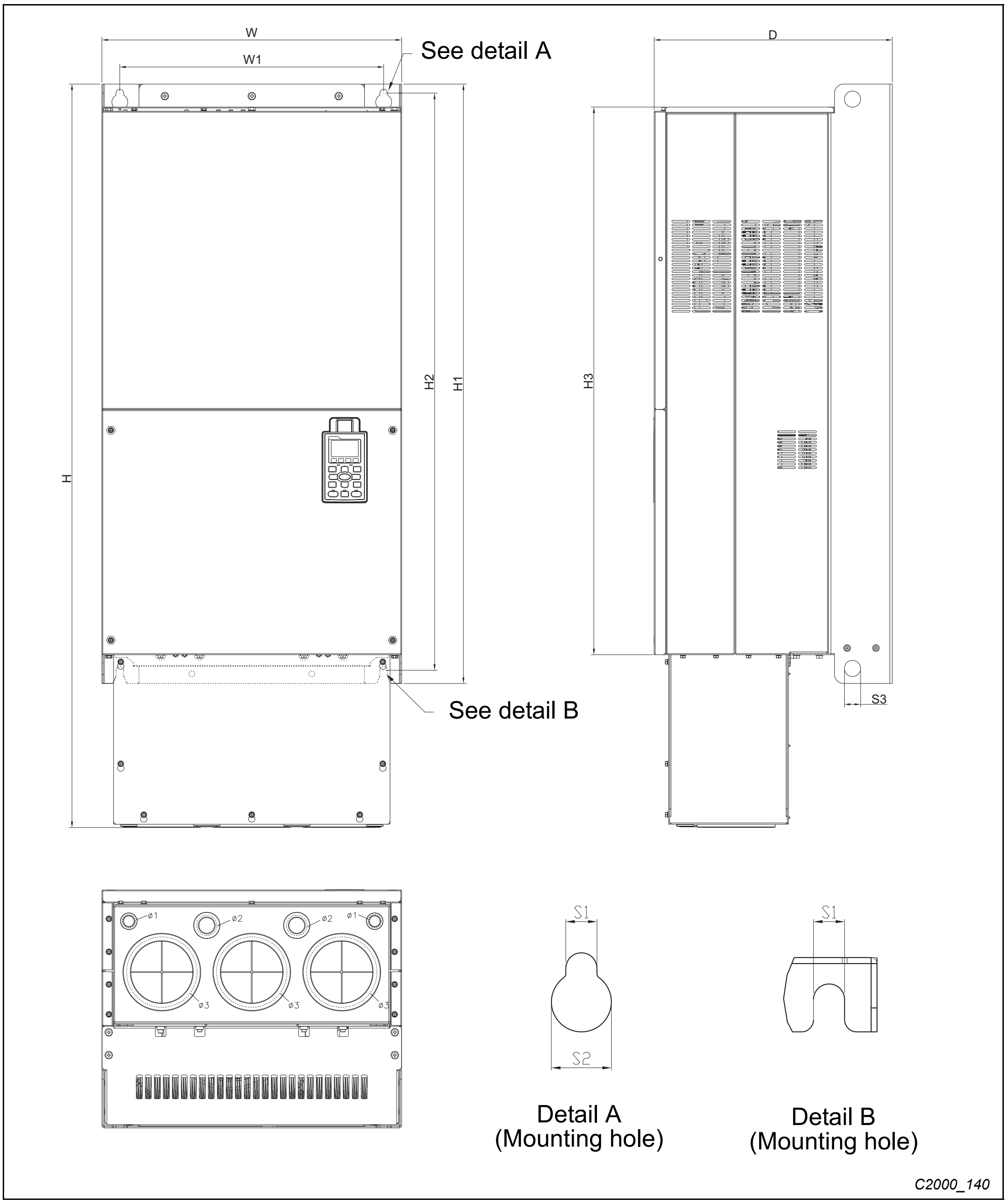


Fig. 1-24: Dimensions frame size G2

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	H1	H2	H3	S1	S2	S3	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
G2	500.0 [19.69]	1240.2 [48.83]	397.0 [15.63]	440.0 [217.32]	1000.0 [39.37]	963.0 [37.91]	913.6 [35.97]	13.0 [0.51]	26.5 [1.04]	27.0 [1.06]	22.0 [0.87]	34.0 [1.34]	117.5 [4.63]

Frame H

H1: VFD2800C43A, VFD3150C43A, VFD3550C43A, VFD4500C43A

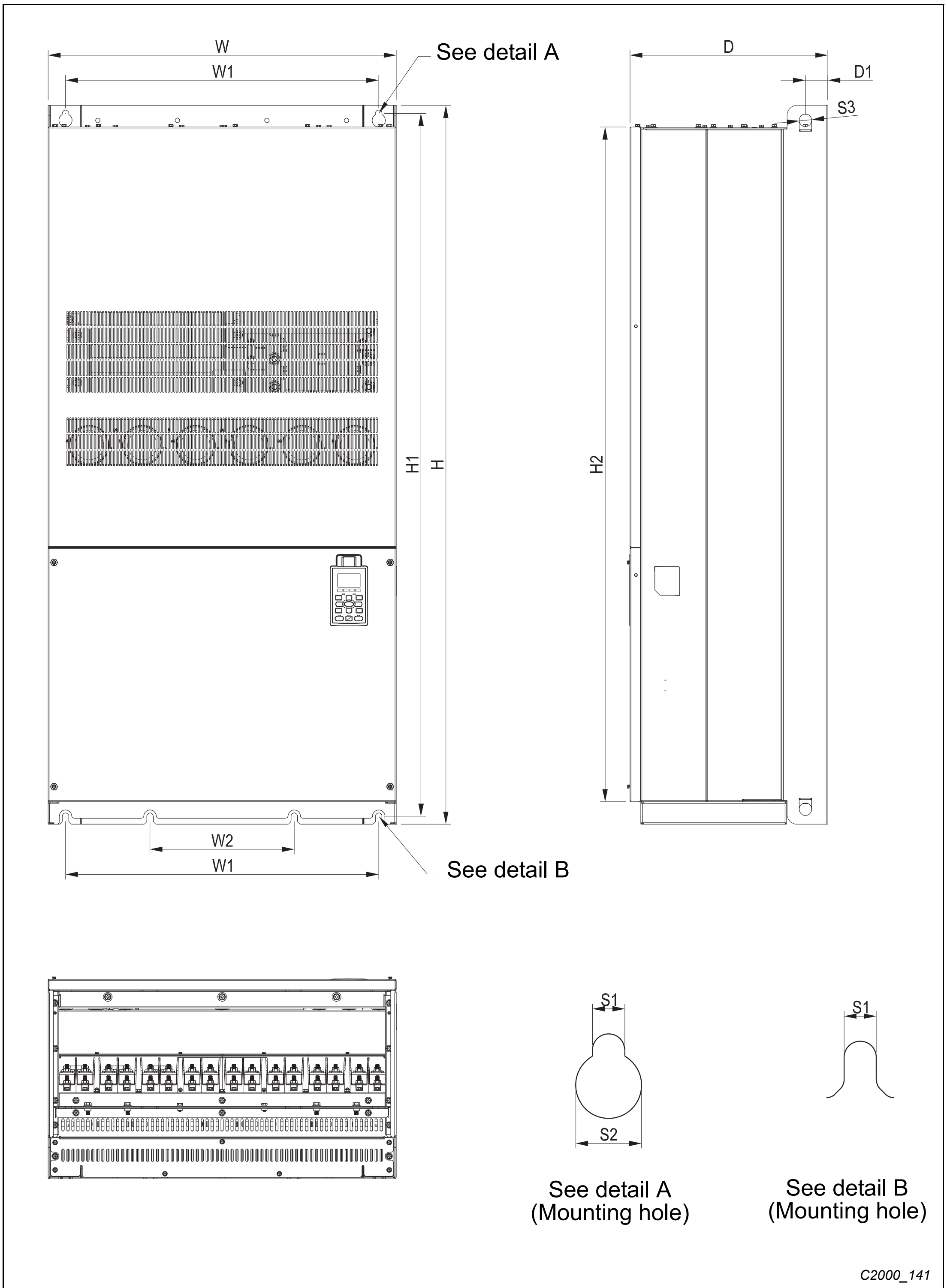


Fig. 1-25: Dimensions frame size H1

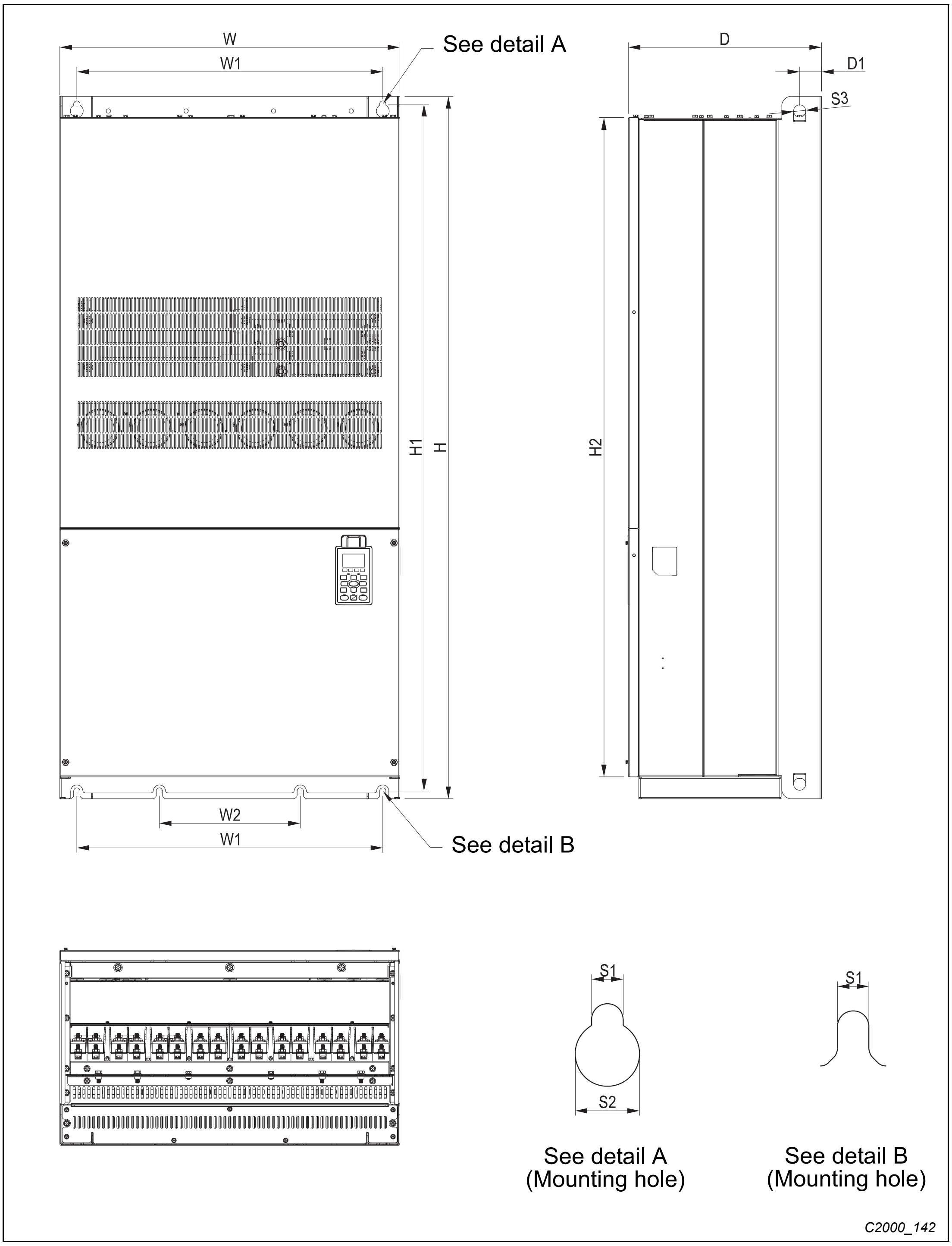


Fig. 1-26: Dimensions frame size H1

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	W2	W3	W4	W5	W6	H1	H2	H3	H4
H1	700.0 [27.56]	1435.0 [56.5]	398.0 [15.67]	630.0 [24.8]	290.0 [11.42]	—	—	—	—	1403.0 [55.24]	1346.6 [53.02]	—	—

Frame	H5	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	S1	S2	S3	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
H1	—	45.0 [1.77]	—	—	—	—	—	13.0 [0.51]	26.5 [1.04]	25.0 [0.98]	—	—	—

Frame H

H2: VFD2800C43E-1, VFD3150C43E-1, VFD3550C43E-1

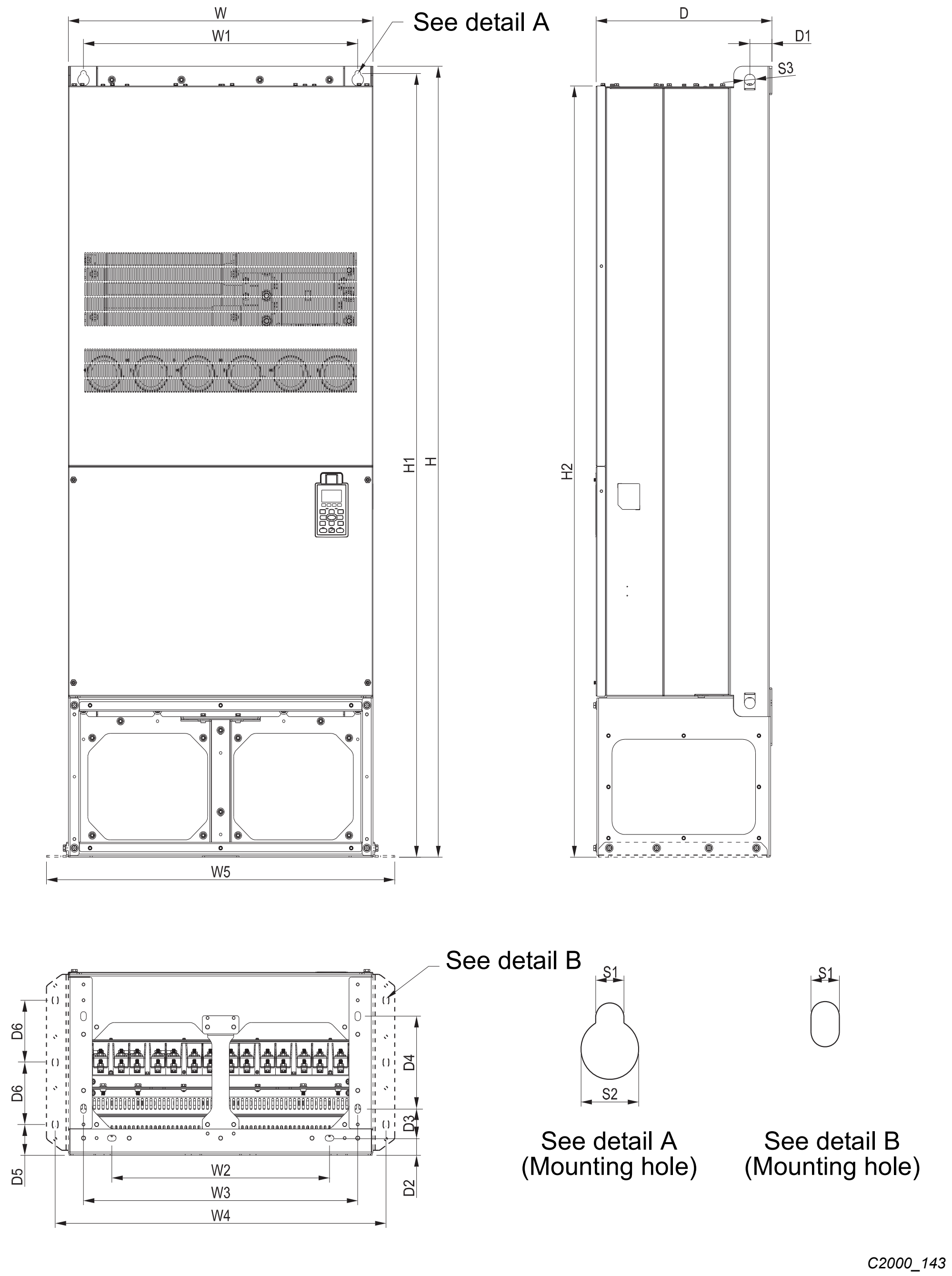


Fig. 1-27: Dimensions frame size H2

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	W2	W3	W4	W5	W6	H1	H2	H3	H4
H2	700.0 [27.56]	1745.0 [68.70]	404.0 [15.91]	630.0 [24.8]	500.0 [19.69]	630.0 [24.8]	760.0 [29.92]	800.0 [31.5]	—	1729.0 [68.07]	1701.6 [66.99]	—	—

Frame	H5	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	S1	S2	S3	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
H2	—	51.0 [2.01]	38.0 [1.50]	65.0 [2.56]	204.0 [8.03]	68.0 [2.68]	137.0 [5.39]	13.0 [0.51]	26.5 [1.04]	25.0 [0.98]	—	—	—

Frame H

H3: VFD2800C43E, VFD3150C43E, VFD3550C43E

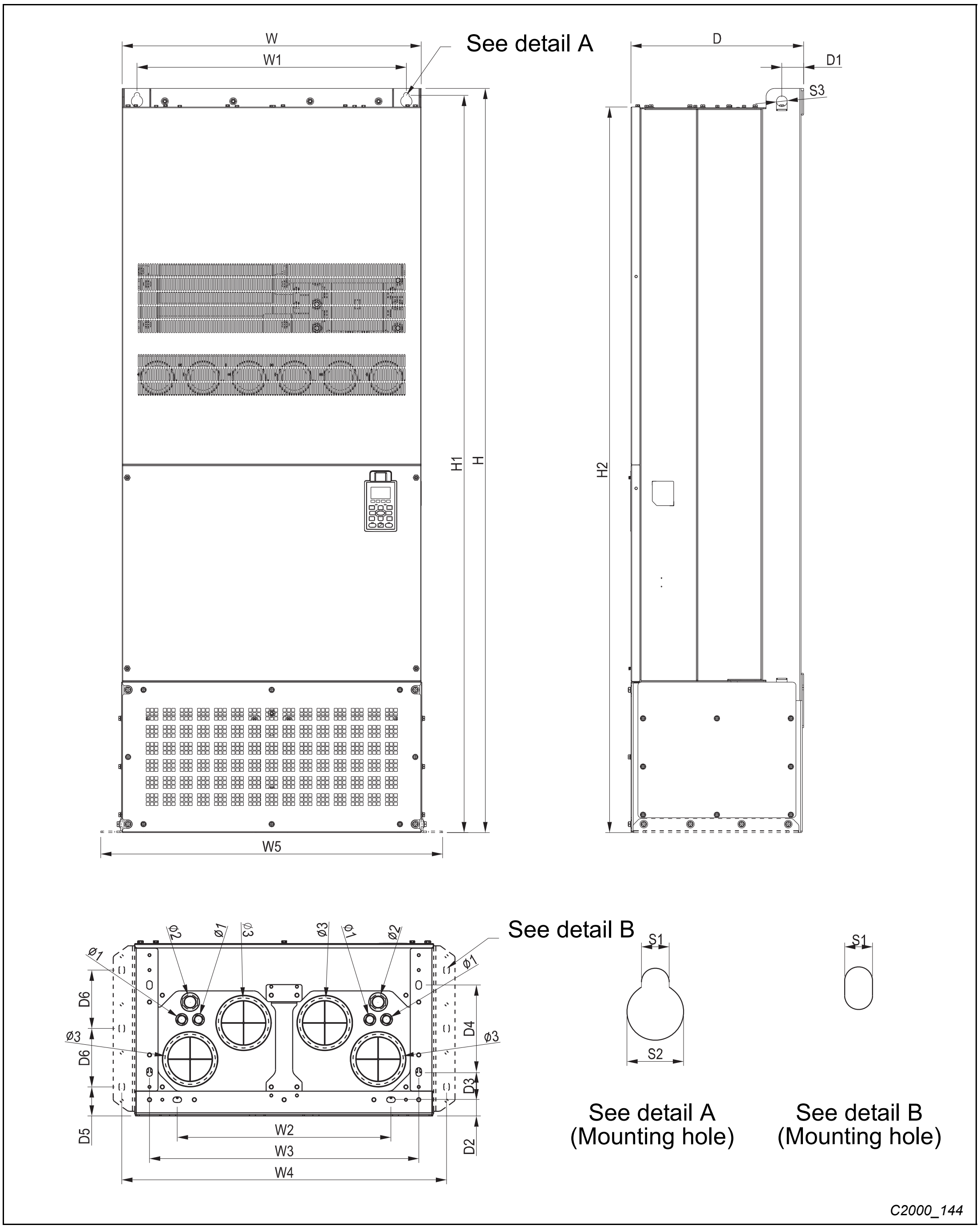


Fig. 1-28: Dimensions frame size H3

Unit: mm [inch]

Frame	W	H	D	W1	W2	W3	W4	W5	W6	H1	H2	H3	H4
H3	700.0 [27.56]	1745.0 [68.70]	404.0 [15.91]	630.0 [24.8]	500.0 [19.69]	630.0 [24.8]	760.0 [29.92]	800.0 [31.5]	—	1729.0 [68.07]	1701.6 [66.99]	—	—

Frame	H5	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	S1	S2	S3	Φ1	Φ2	Φ3
H3	—	51.0 [2.01]	38.0 [1.50]	65.0 [2.56]	204.0 [8.03]	68.0 [2.68]	137.0 [5.39]	13.0 [0.51]	26.5 [1.04]	25.0 [0.98]	22.0 [0.87]	34.0 [1.34]	117.5 [4.63]

Digital keypad

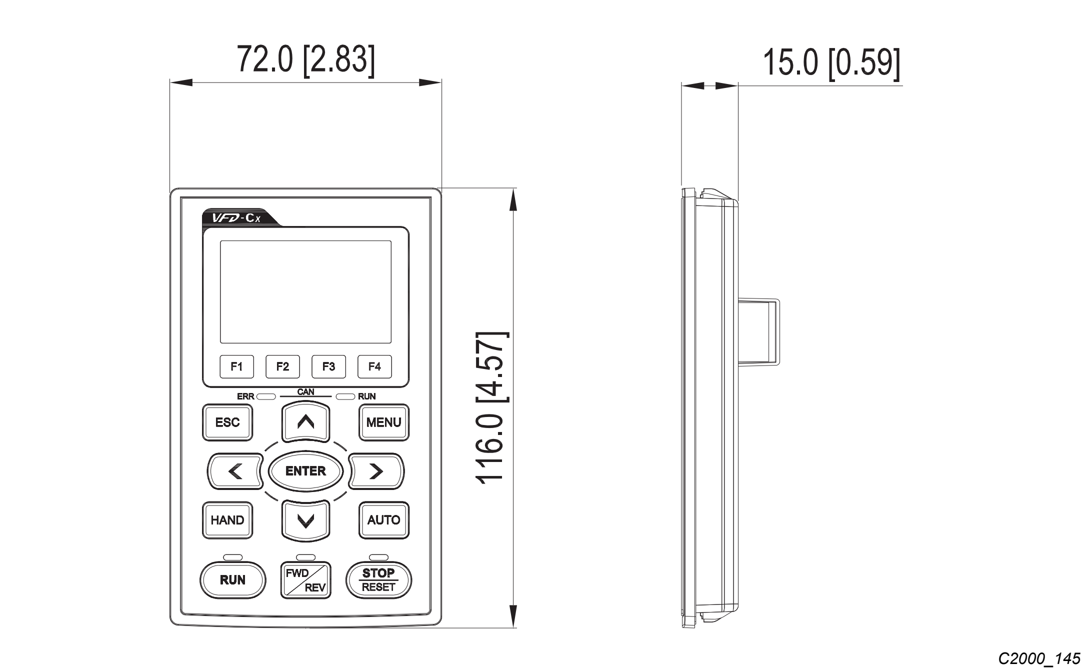


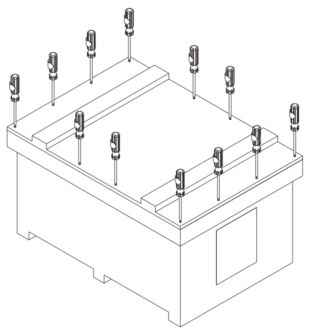
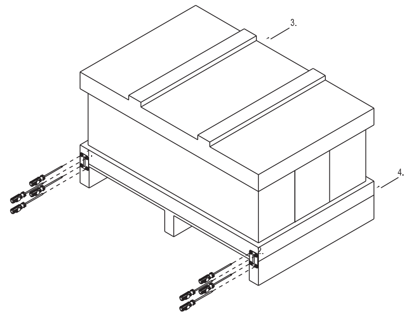
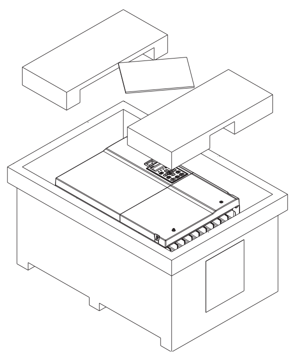
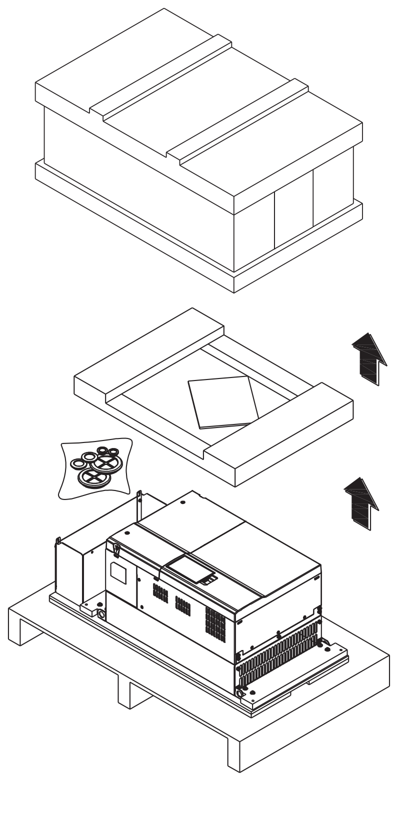
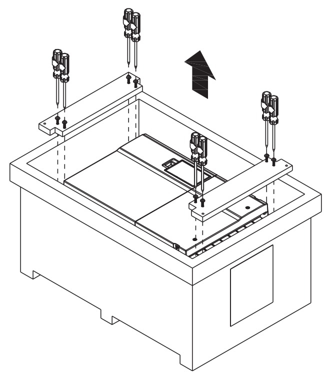
Fig. 1-29: Digital keypad KPC-CC01

2 Unpacking

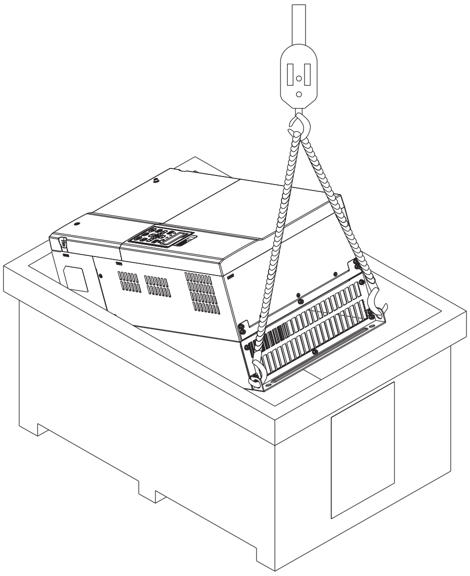
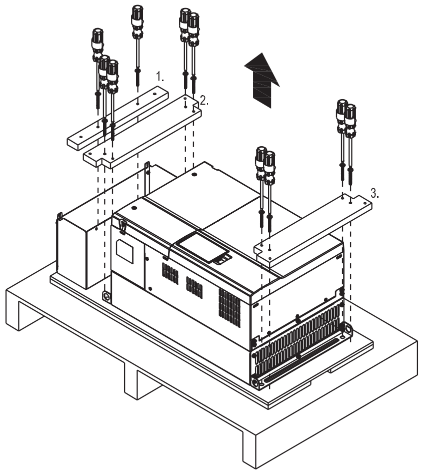
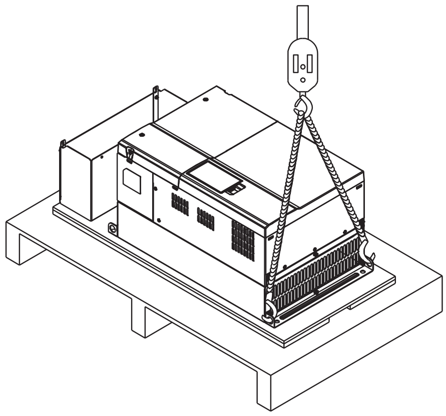
The should be kept in the shipping carton or crate before installation. In order to retain the warranty coverage, the should be stored properly when it is not to be used for an extended period of time.

2.1 Unpacking

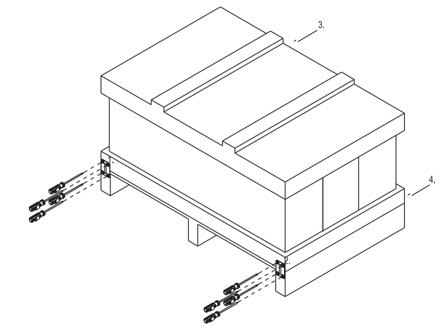
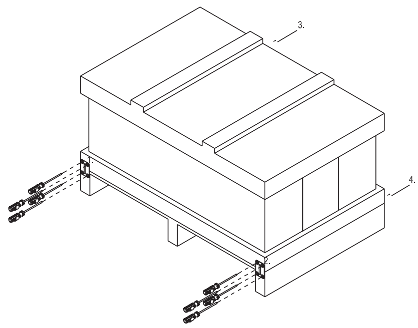
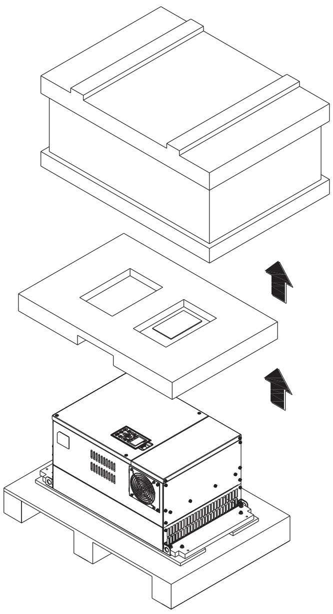
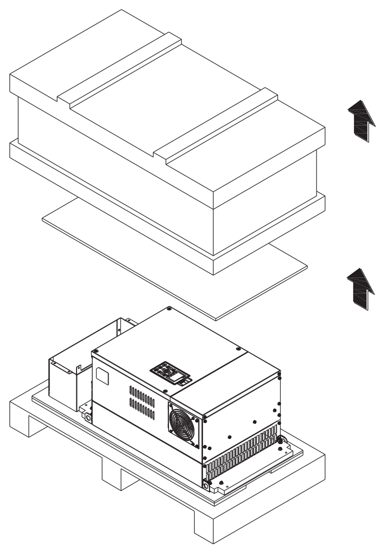
The is packed in the crate. Follows the following step for unpack.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Frame D</th></tr>
<tr><th>Crate 1 (VFDXXXCXXA)</th><th>Crate 2 (VFDXXXCXXE)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Loosen the 12 cover screws to open the crate.

C2000_325</td><td>Loosen the 4 screws on the iron plates. There are 4 iron plates and in total of 16 screws.

C2000_326</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remove the EPEs and manual.

C2000_327</td><td rowspan="2">Remove the crate cover, EPEs, rubber and manual.

C2000_328</td></tr>
<tr><td>Loosen the 8 screws that fastened on the pallet and remove the wooden plate.

C2000_329</td></tr>
</table>

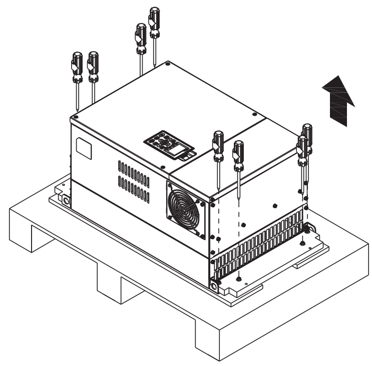
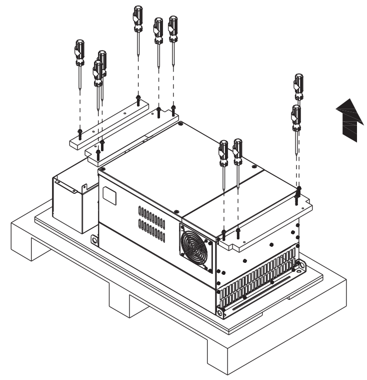
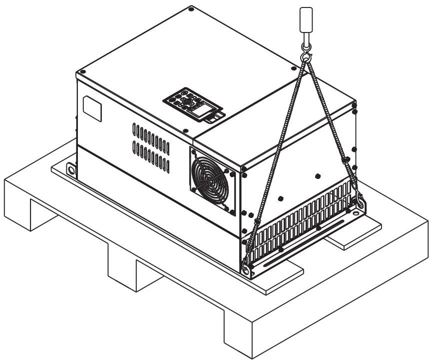
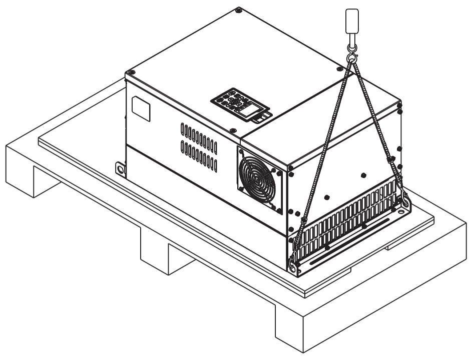
Tab. 2-1: Unpacking inverters of frame size D

Frame D	
Crate 1 (VFDXXXCXXA)	**Crate 2 (VFDXXXCXXE)**
Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.  C2000_330	Loosen the 10 screws on the pallet, remove the wooden plate.  C2000_331 Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.  C2000_332

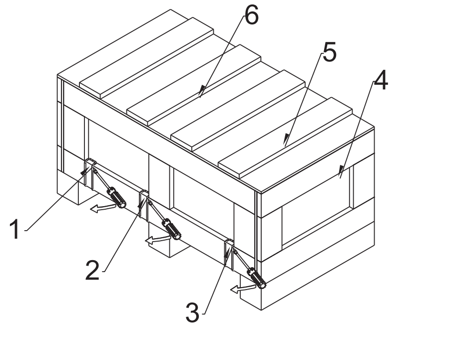
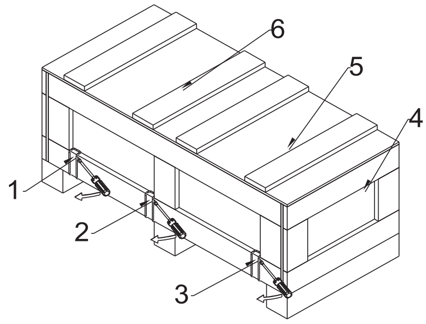
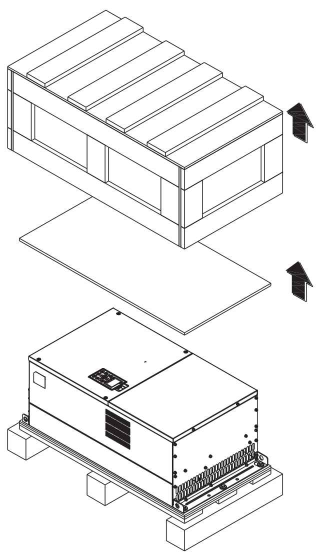
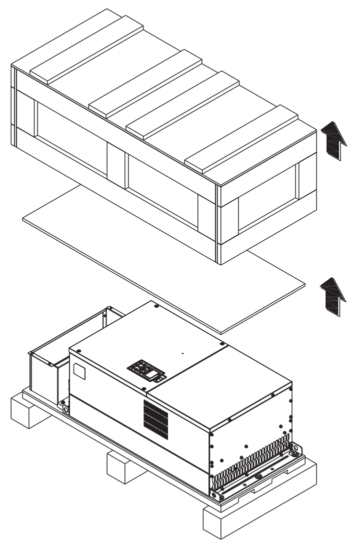
Tab. 2-2: Unpacking inverters of frame size D

Frame E	
Crate 1 (VFDXXXCXXA)	**Crate 2 (VFDXXXCXXE)**
Loosen the 4 screws on the iron plates. There are 4 iron plates and in total of 16 screws.  *C2000_333*	Loosen the 4 screws on the iron plates. There are 4 iron plates and in total of 16 screws.  *C2000_334*
Remove the crate cover, EPEs and manual.  *C2000_335*	Remove the crate cover, EPEs, rubbers and manual.  *C2000_336*

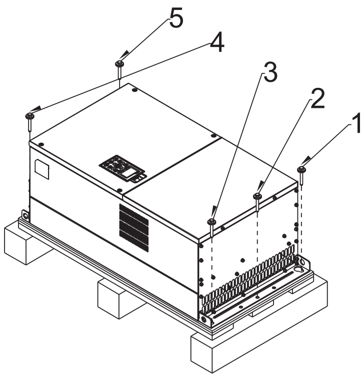
Tab. 2-3: Unpacking inverters of frame size E

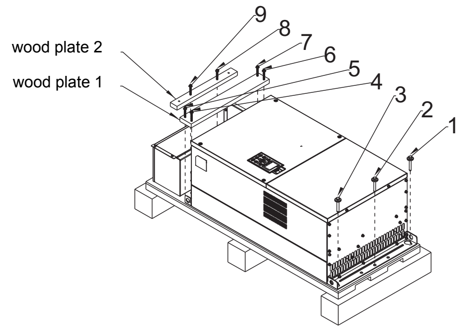
Frame E	
Crate 1 (VFDXXXCXXA)	**Crate 2 (VFDXXXCXXE)**
Loosen the 8 screws on the pallet as shown in the following figure.  *C2000_337*	Loosen the 10 screws on the pallet and remove the wooden plate.  *C2000_338*
Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.  *C2000_339*	Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.  *C2000_340*

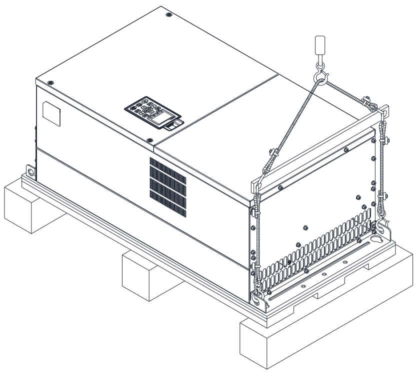
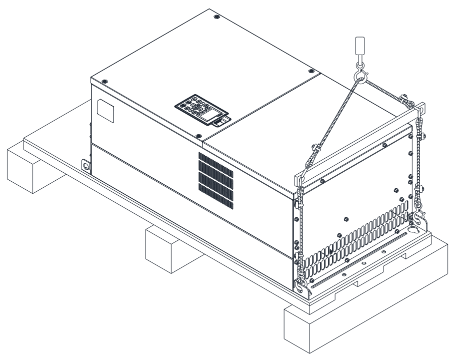
Tab. 2-4: Unpacking inverters of frame size E

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Frame F</th></tr>
<tr><th>Crate 1 (VFDXXXCXXA)</th><th>Crate 2 (VFDXXXCXXE)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Remove the 6 clips on the side of the crate with a flat-head screwdriver. (As shown in figure below)

C2000_341</td><td>Remove the 6 clips on the side of the crate with a flat-head screwdriver. (As shown in figure below)

C2000_342</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remove the crate cover, EPEs and manual.

C2000_343</td><td>Remove the crate cover, EPEs, rubbers and manual.

C2000_344</td></tr>
</table>

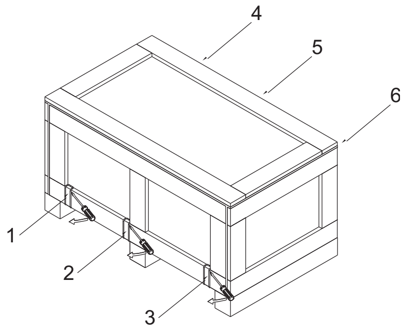
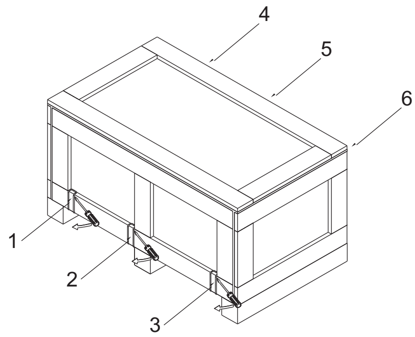
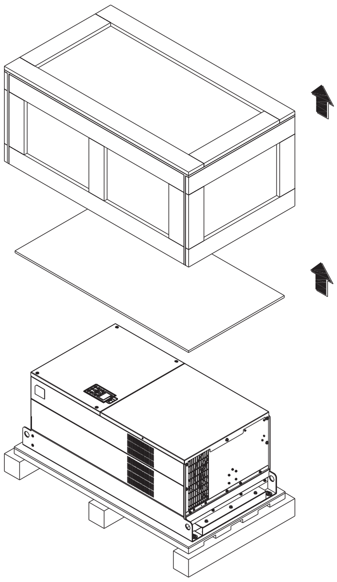
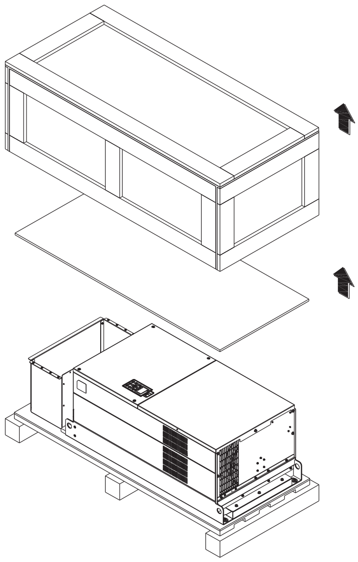
Tab. 2-5: Unpacking inverters of frame size F

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Frame F</th></tr>
<tr><th>Crate 1 (VFDXXXCXXA)</th><th>Crate 2 (VFDXXXCXXE)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Loosen the 5 screws on the pallet as shown in the following figure.


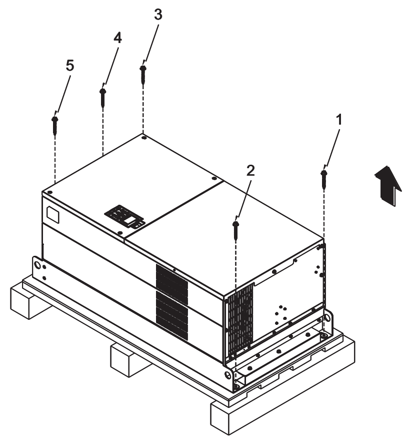
C2000_345</td><td>Loosen the 9 screws on the pallet and remove the wooden plate.


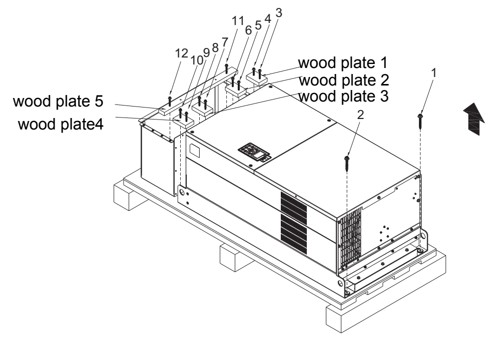
C2000_346</td></tr>
<tr><td>Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.

C2000_347</td><td>Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.

C2000_348</td></tr>
</table>

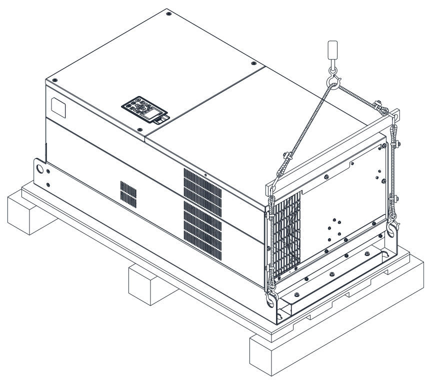
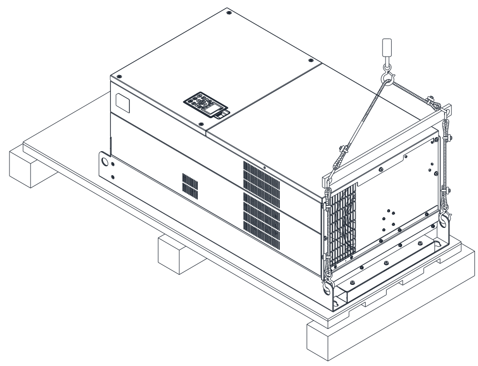
Tab. 2-6: Unpacking inverters of frame size F

Frame G	
Crate 1 (VFDXXXCXXA)	**Crate 2 (VFDXXXCXXE)**
Remove the 6 clips on the side of the crate with a flathead screwdriver. (As shown in figure below)  C2000_349	Remove the 6 clips on the side of the crate with a flathead screwdriver. (As shown in figure below)  C2000_350
Remove the crate cover, EPEs and manual.  C2000_351	Remove the crate cover, EPEs, rubber and manual.  C2000_352

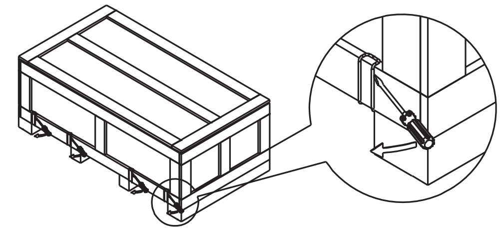
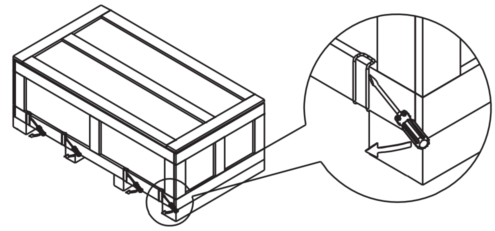
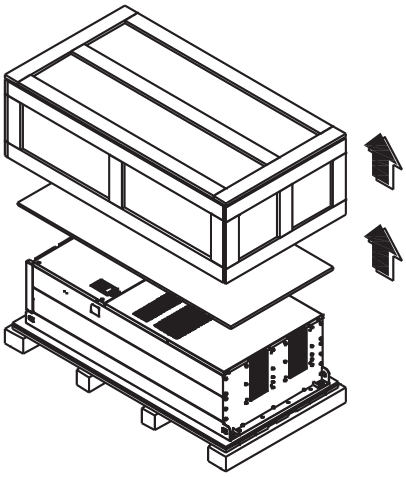
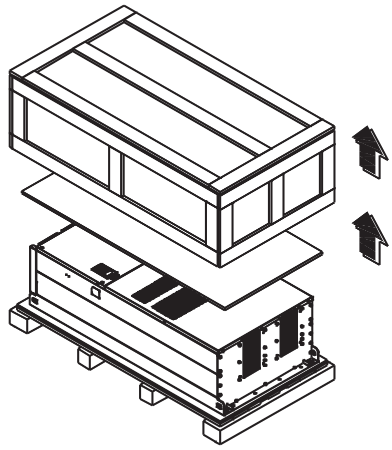
Tab. 2-7: Unpacking inverters of frame size G

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Frame G</th></tr>
<tr><th>Crate 1 (VFDXXXCXXA)</th><th>Crate 2 (VFDXXXCXXE)</th></tr>
<tr>
<td>Loosen the 5 screws as shown in following figure:


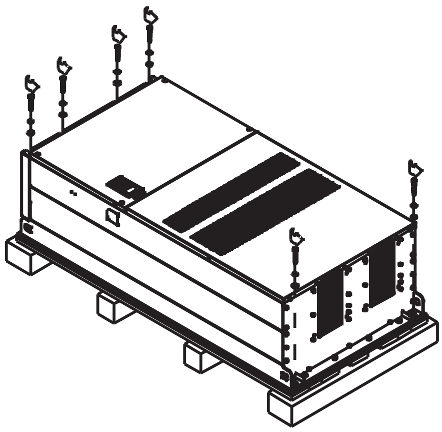
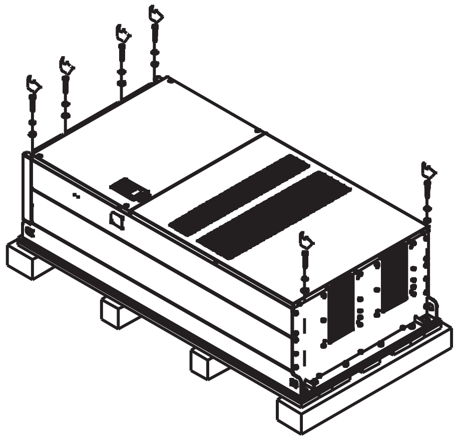
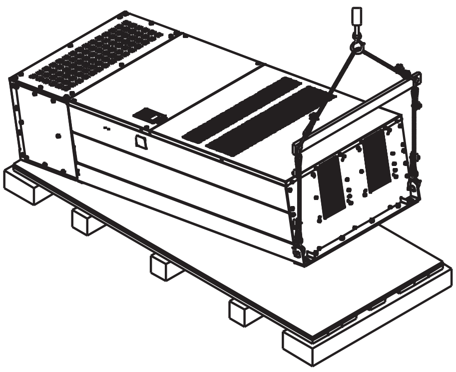
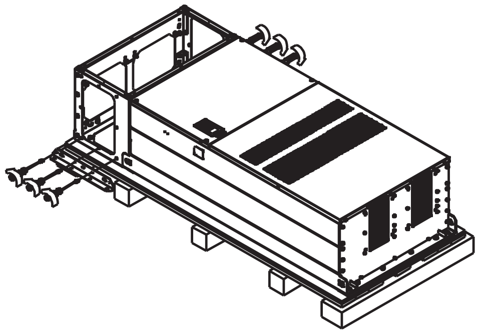
C2000_353</td>
<td>Loosen the 12 screws and remove the wooden plate.


C2000_354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.

C2000_355</td>
<td>Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.

C2000_356</td>
</tr>
</table>

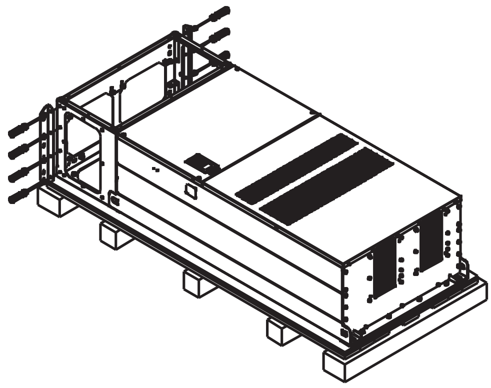
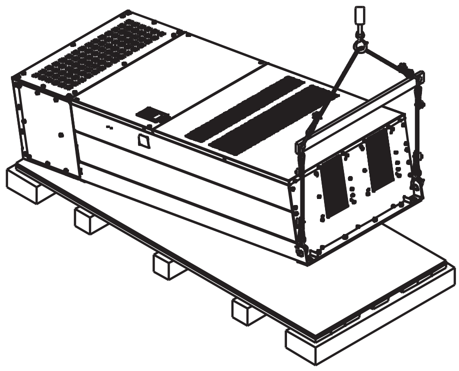
Tab. 2-8: Unpacking inverters of frame size G

Frame H	
Crate 1 (VFDXXXC43A)	**Crate 2 (VFDXXXC43E-1)**
Remove the 8 clips on the side of the crate with a flathead screwdriver. (As shown in figure below)  C2000_357	Remove the 8 clips on the side of the crate with a flathead screwdriver. (As shown in figure below)  C2000_358
Remove the crate cover, EPEs and manual.  C2000_359	Remove the crate cover, EPEs, rubbers and manual.  C2000_360

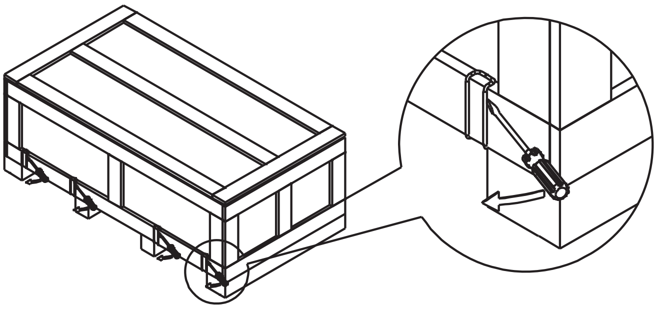
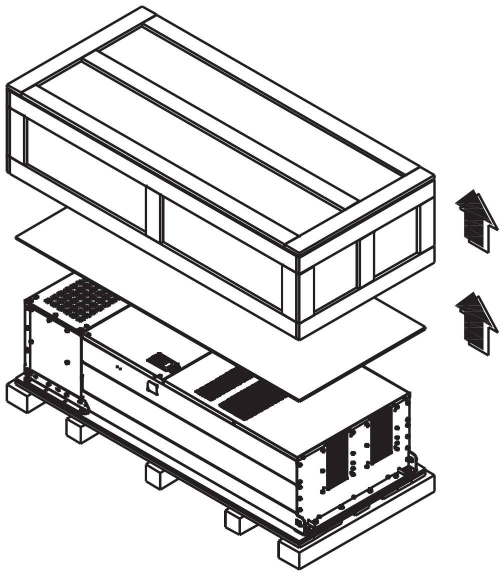
Tab. 2-9: Unpacking inverters of frame size H

Frame H	
Crate 1 (VFDXXXC43A)	**Crate 2 (VFDXXXC43E-1)**
Loosen the 6 screws on the top then remove 6 metal washers and 6 plastic washers as shown in figure below.  C2000_361	Loosen the 6 screws on the top then remove 6 metal washers and 6 plastic washers as shown in figure below.  C2000_362
Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.  C2000_363	Loosen 6 of the M6 screws on the side and remove the 2 plates, as shown in below. The removed screws and plates can be used to secure the from the external.  C2000_364

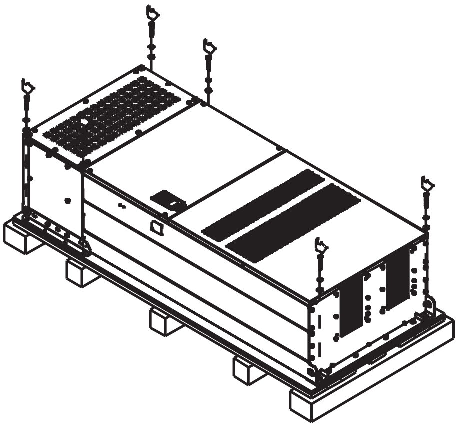
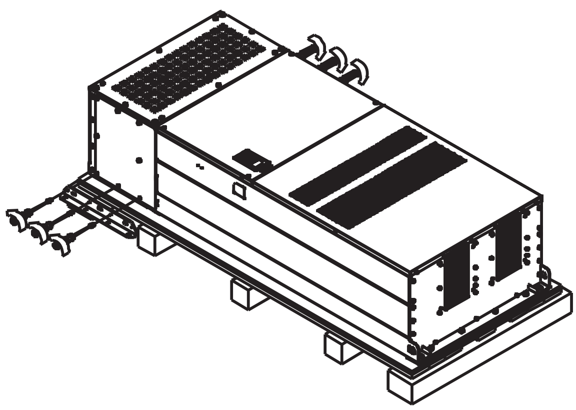
Tab. 2-10: Unpacking inverters of frame size H

Frame H	
Crate 1 (VFDXXXC43A)	**Crate 2 (VFDXXXC43E-1)**
	Secure the drive from the external. (Skip to the next step if this situation does not apply to you.) Loosen 8 of M8 screws on the both sides and place the 2 plates that were removed from the last step. Fix the plates to by fasten 8 of the M8 screws. (As shown in below) Torque: 150–180kg-cm (130.20–156.24lb-in.)  C2000_365
	Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.  C2000_366

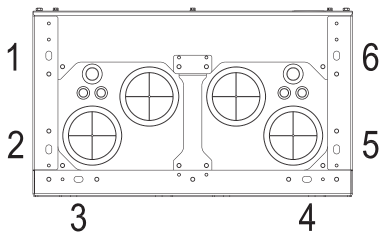
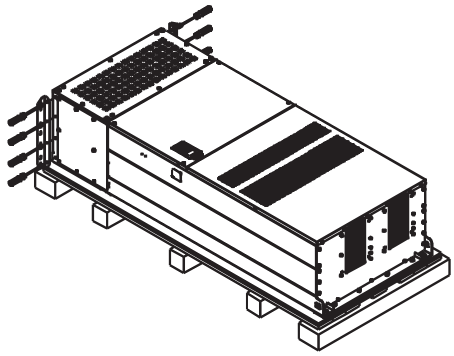
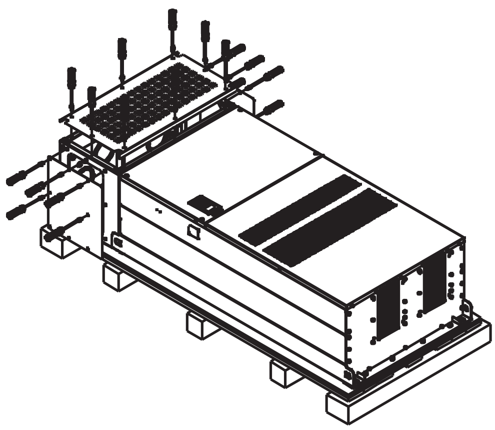
Tab. 2-11: Unpacking inverters of frame size H

Frame H
Crate 3 (VFDXXXC43E)
Use flathead screwdriver to remove the clips on the side of the crate, 8 clips in total.  C2000_367
Remove the crate cover, EPEs, rubber and manual.  C2000_368

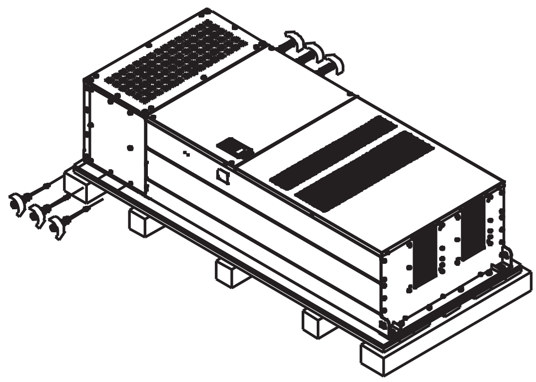
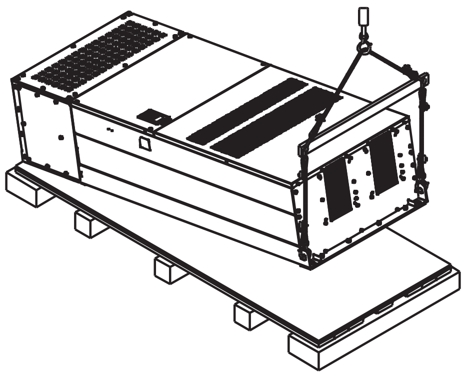
Tab. 2-12: Unpacking inverters of frame size H

Frame H
Crate 3 (VFDXXXC43E)
Loosen the 6 screws on the cover, remove 6 metal washers and 6 plastic washers as shown in below:  C2000_369
Loosen 6 of the M6 screws on the side and removes the 2 plates, as shown in following figure. The removed screws and plates can be used to secure from the external.  C2000_370

Tab. 2-13: Unpacking inverters of frame size H

Secure the drive from the internal	**Secure the drive from the external**
Loosen 18 of the M6 screws and remove the top cover as shown in figure 2. Mount the cover (figure 1) back to the drive by fasten the M6 screws to the two sides of the drive, as shown in figure 2. Torque: 35–45kg-cm (30.38–39.06lb-in.)  Figure 1 Top cover (Use M12 screws) *C2000_371*	Loosen 8 of the M8 screws on the both sides and place the 2 plates that were removed from the last step. Fix the plates to rive by fasten 8 of the M8 screws. (As shown in figure below). Torque: 150–180kg-cm (130.20–156.24lb-in.)  *C2000_372*
 Figure 2 *C2000_373*	

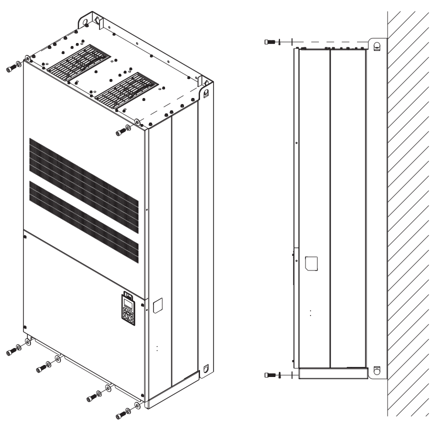
Tab. 2-14: Attachment of the inverter

Secure the drive from the internal	Secure the drive from the external.
Fasten 6 of the M6 screws back to the original position where it was removed. As shown in the figure:  C2000_374	
Lift the drive by hooking the lifting hole. It is now ready for installation.  C2000_375	

Tab. 2-15: Attachment of the inverter

Frame H Secure the drive

(VFDXXXC43A)

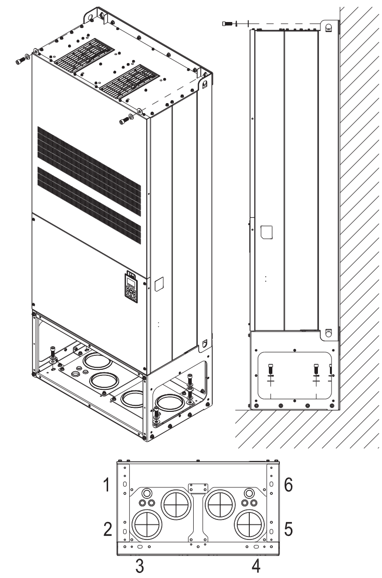


C2000_376

Screw	Torque
M12*6	340-420kg-cm [295.1-364.6lb-in.]

Tab. 2-16: Attachment of the inverter

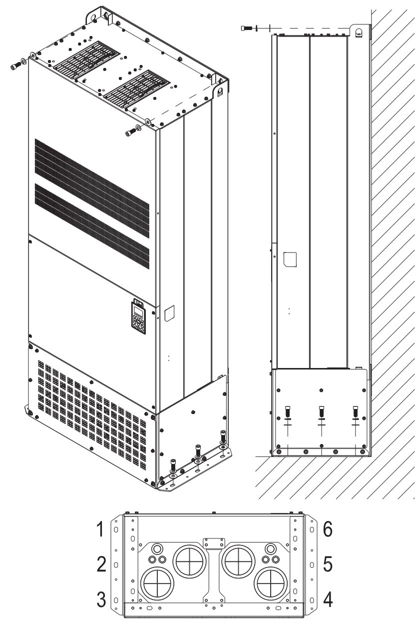
(VFDXXXC43E) & (VFDXXXC43E-1)



C2000_377

Secure the drive from the internal.

Screw	Torque
M12*8	340-420kg-cm [295.1-364.6lb-in.]



C2000_378

Secure the drive from the external.

Screw	Torque
M12*8	340-420kg-cm [295.1-364.6lb-in.]

Tab. 2-17: Attachment of the inverter

2.1.1 The lifting hook

The arrows indicate the location of the lifting holes of frame D to H, as shown in figure below 2-18:

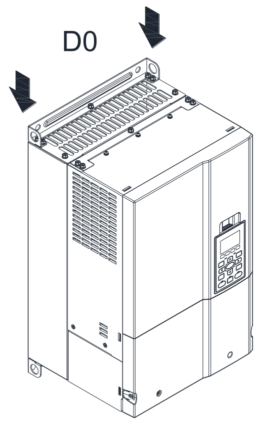


Figure 1

C2000_379

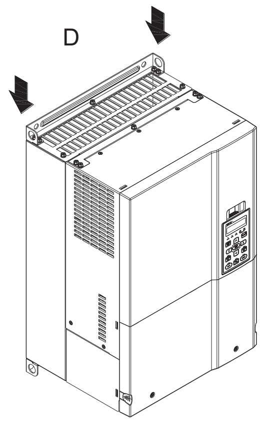


Figure 2

C2000_380

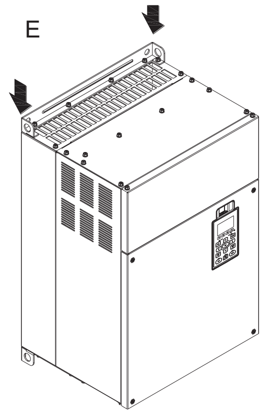


Figure 3

C2000_381

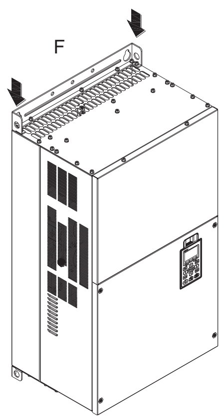


Figure 4

C2000_382

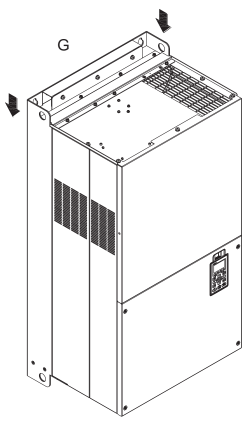


Figure 5

C2000_383

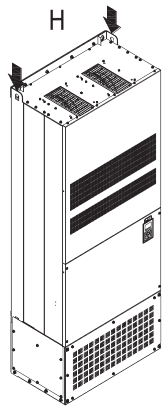


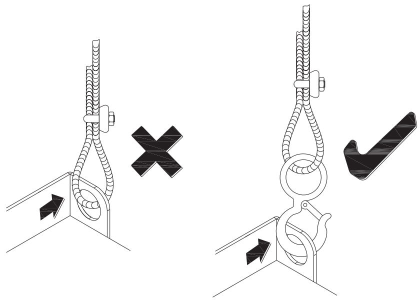
Figure 6

C2000_384

Tab. 2-18: Lifting the inverter

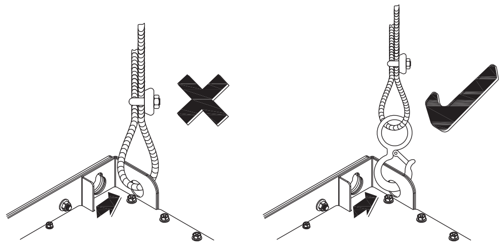
DANGER:
Ensure, that the equipment for lifting the frequency inverter is suitable and the lifting hook properly goes through the lifting hole. The following diagrams (fig. 2-1 and fig. 2-2) show the right handling. Otherwise, there is the risk of injury or damaging the device.

Applicable to Frame D0–E



C2000_385

Applicable to Frame F–H

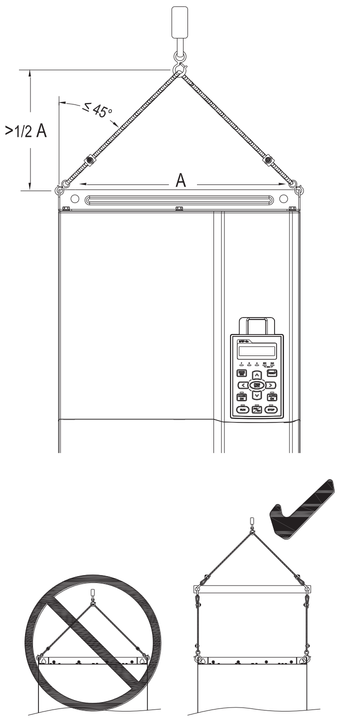


C2000_386

Fig. 2-1: Proper use of the lifting hook

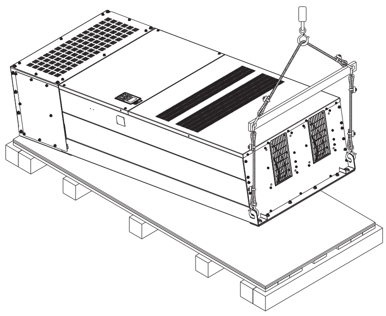
Ensure the angle between the lifting holes and the lifting device is within the specification, as shown in the following figure 2-2.

Applicable to Frame D0–E



C2000_387, C2000_388

Applicable to Frame F–H

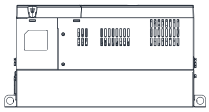
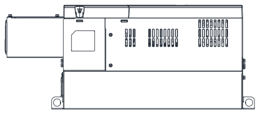
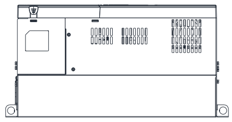
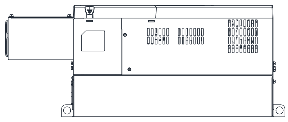
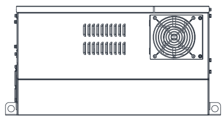
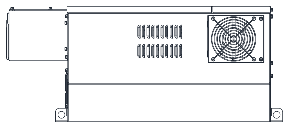
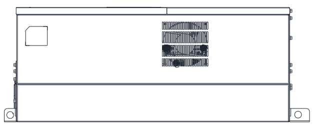
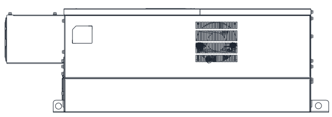


C2000_389

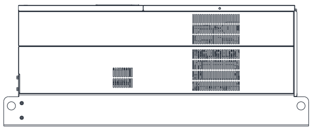
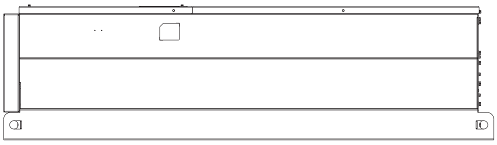
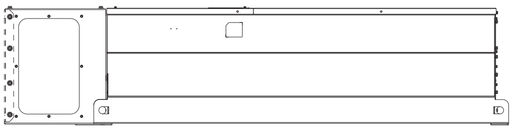
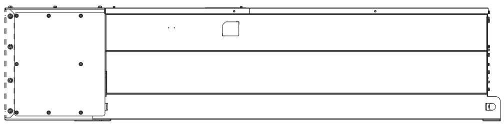
Fig. 2-2: Correct lifting method

DANGER:

The following tables (Tab. 2-19) show inverters with high weight.
Transport the product using the correct method that corresponds to the weight. Failure to observe this could lead to injuries or damages of the product.

Frame	Type		Weight
D0	VFDXXXXCXXA	 C2000_390_a	27 kg (59.5 lbs.)
	VFDXXXXCXXE	 C2000_390_b	29 kg (63.9 lbs.)
D	VFDXXXXCXXA	 C2000_390_c	37.6 kg (82.9 lbs.)
	VFDXXXXCXXE	 C2000_390_d	40 kg (88.2 lbs.)
E	VFDXXXXCXXA	 C2000_390_e	63.6 kg (140.2 lbs.)
	VFDXXXXCXXE	 C2000_390_f	66 kg (145.5 lbs.)
F	VFDXXXXCXXA	 C2000_390_g	85 kg (187.2 lbs.)
	VFDXXXXCXXE	 C2000_390_h	88 kg (193.8 lbs.)

Tab. 2-19: Weight of inverters (1)

Frame	Type	Weight
G	VFDXXXXCXXA  C2000_390_i	130 kg (286.5 lbs.)
	VFDXXXXCXXE  C2000_390_j	138 kg (304,2 lbs)
H1	VFD2800C43A; VFD3150C43A; VFD3550C43A; VFD4500C43A  C2000_391	235 kg (518.1 lbs)
H2	VFD2800C43E-1; VFD3150C43E-1; VFD3550C43E-1; VFD4500C43E-1  C2000_392	257 kg (566.6 lbs)
H3	VFD2800C43E; VFD3150C43E; VFD3550C43E; VFD4500C43E  C2000_393	263 kg (579.8 lbs)

Tab. 2-19: Weight of inverters (2)

3 Installation

3.1 Minimum mounting clearance and installation

NOTES

- Prevent fiber particles, scraps of paper, shredded wood saw dust, metal particles, etc. from adhering to the heat sink.
- Install the in a metal cabinet. When installing one drive below another one, use a metal separation between the s to prevent mutual heating and to prevent the risk of fire accident.
- Install the in Pollution Degree 2 environments only: normally only nonconductive pollution occurs and temporary conductivity caused by condensation is expected.

The appearances shown in the following figures are for reference only.

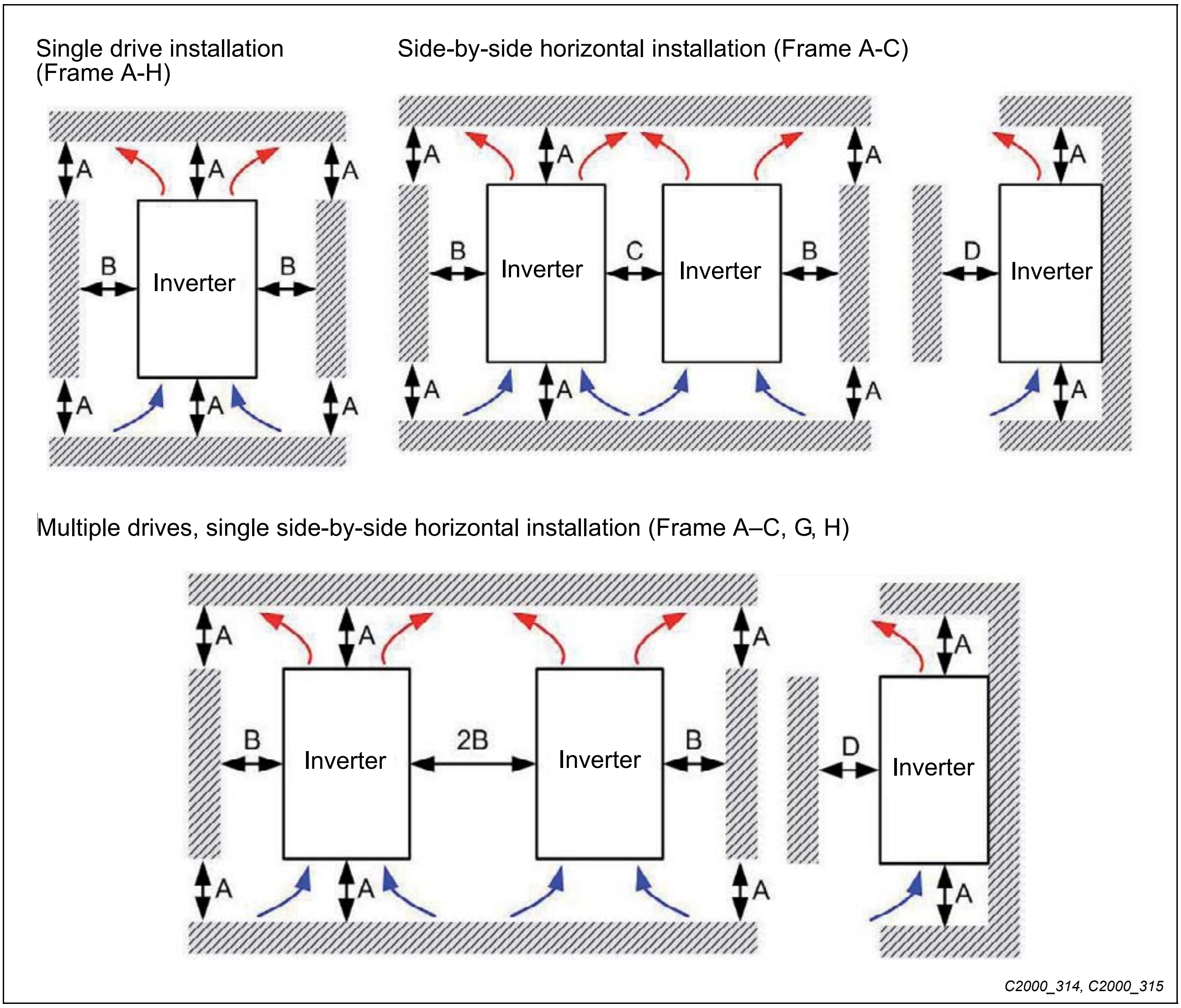
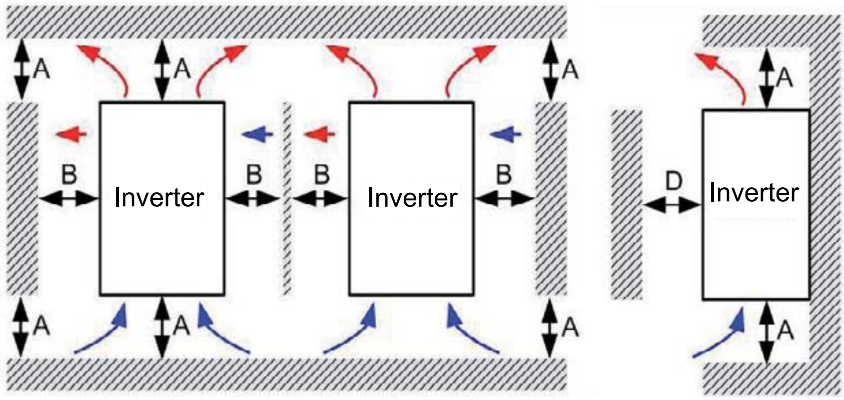


Fig. 3-1: Minimum mounting clearances

Airflow direction: ← (Blue arrow) inflow ← (Red arrow) outflow

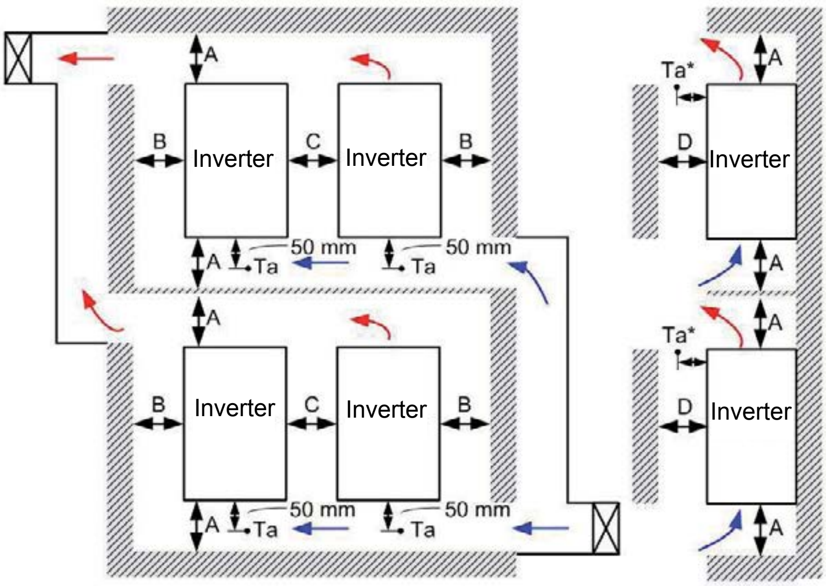
Multiple drives, side-by-side installation (Frame D0, D, E, F) Install metal separation between the drives.



Multiple drives side-by-side vertical installation (Frame A–H)

Ta: Frame A–G Ta*: Frame H

When installing one below another one (top-bottom installation), use a metal separation between the drives to prevent mutual heating. The temperature measured at the fan's inflow side must be lower than the temperature measured at the operation side. If the fan's inflow temperature is higher, use a thicker or larger size of metal seperature. Operation temperature is the temperature measured at 50mm away from the fan's inflow side. (As shown in the figure below)



C2000_316, C2000_317

Fig. 3-2: Minimum mounting clearances

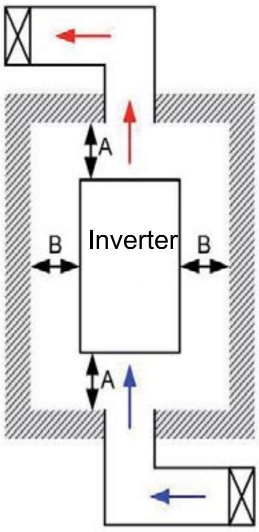
Frame	A (mm)	B (mm)	C (mm)	D (mm)
A–C	60	30	10	0
D0–F	100	50	-	0
G	200	100	-	0
H	350	0	0	200 (100, Ta=Ta*=40°C)

Tab. 3-1: Minimum mounting clearances

Frame	Inverter
A	VFD007C23A; VFD007C43A/E; VFD015C23A; VFD015C43A/E; VFD022C23A; VFD022C43A/E; VFD037C23A; VFD037C43A/E; VFD040C43A/E; VFD055C43A/E;
B	VFD055C23A; VFD75C23A; VFD075C43A/E; VFD110C23A; VFD110C43A/E; VFD150C43A/E;
C	VFD150C23A; VFD185C23A; VFD185C43A/E; VFD220C23A; VFD220C43A/E; VFD300C43A/E;
D	VFD370C43S; VFD450C43S; VFD370C43U; VFD450C43U;
D0	VFD300C23A/E; VFD370C23A/E; VFD550C43A/E; VFD750C43A/E;
E	VFD450C23A/E; VFD550C23A/E; VFD750C23A/E; VFD900C43A/E; VFD1100C43A/E;
F	VFD900C23A/E; VFD1320C43A/E; VFD1600C43A/E;
G	VFD1850C43A; VFD2200C43A; VFD1850C43E; VFD2200C43E;
H	VFD2800C43A; VFD3150C43A; VFD3550C43A; VFD4500C43A; VFD2800C43E-1; VFD3150C43E-1; VFD3550C43E-1; VFD4500C43E-1; VFD2800C43E; VFD3150C43E; VFD3550C43E; VFD4500C43E

Tab. 3-2: Relation between frame and inverter type

NOTES



- The minimum mounting clearances stated in the table 3-1 above applies to s frame A to D. A drive fails to follow the minimum mounting clearances may cause the fan to malfunction and heat dissipation problem.
- The mounting clearances stated in the figure is for installing the drive in an open area. To install the drive in a confined space (such as cabinet or electric box), please follow the following three rules:
  – Keep the minimum mounting clearances.
  – Install a ventilation equipment or an air conditioner to keep surrounding temperature lower than operation temperature.
  – Refer to parameter setting and set up Pr. 00-16, Pr. 00-17, and Pr. 06-55.
- The following table shows the heat dissipation and the required air volume when installing a single drive in a confined space. When installing multiple drives, the required air volume shall be multiplied by the number the drives.
- Refer to the chart 3-3 (Air flow rate for cooling and power dissipation) for ventilation equipment and air conditioner design and selection.
- Different control mode will affect the derating. See Pr. 06-55 for more information.
- Ambient temperature derating curve shows the derating status in different temperature in relation to different protection level.
- If UL Type 1 models need side by side installation, please remove top cover of Frame A–C, and please do not install conduit box of Frame D and above.

- The required airflow shown in chart is for installing single drive in a confined space.
- When installing the multiple drives, the required air volume should be the required air volume for single drive X the number of the drives.
- The heat dissipation shown in the chart is for installing single drive in a confined space.
- When installing the multiple drives, volume of heat dissipation should be the heat dissipated for single drive X the number of the drives.
- Heat dissipation for each model is calculated by rated voltage, current and default carrier.

Model No.	Air flow rate for cooling						Power dissipation of		
	Flow rate (cfm)			Flow rate (m^3/hr)			Power dissipation		
	External	Internal	Total	External	Internal	Total	Loss external (Heat sink)	Internal	Total
VFD007C23A	—	—	—	—	—	—	33	27	61
VFD015C23A	14	—	14	24	—	24	56	31	88
VFD022C23A	14	—	14	24	—	24	79	36	115
VFD037C23A	10	—	10	17	—	17	113	46	159
VFD055C23A	40	14	54	68	24	92	197	67	264
VFD075C23A	66	14	80	112	24	136	249	86	335
VFD110C23A	58	14	73	99	24	124	409	121	529
VFD150C23A	166	12	178	282	20	302	455	161	616
VFD185C23A	166	12	178	282	20	302	549	184	733
VFD220C23A	166	12	178	282	20	302	649	216	865
VFD300C23A/E	179	30	209	304	51	355	913	186	1099
VFD370C23A/E	179	30	209	304	51	355	1091	220	1311
VFD450C23A/E	228	73	301	387	124	511	1251	267	1518
VFD550C23A/E	228	73	301	387	124	511	1401	308	1709
VFD750C23A/E	246	73	319	418	124	542	1770	369	2139
VFD900C23A/E	224	112	336	381	190	571	2304	484	2788
VFD007C43A/E	—	—	—	—	—	—	33	25	59
VFD015C43A/E	—	—	—	—	—	—	45	29	74
VFD022C43A/E	14	—	14	24	—	24	71	33	104
VFD037C43A/E	10	—	10	17	—	17	103	38	141
VFD040C43A/E	10	—	10	17	—	17	116	42	158
VFD055C43A/E	10	—	10	17	—	17	134	46	180
VFD075C43A/E	40	14	54	68	24	92	216	76	292
VFD110C43A/E	66	14	80	112	24	136	287	93	380
VFD150C43A/E	58	14	73	99	24	124	396	122	518
VFD185C43A/E	99	21	120	168	36	204	369	138	507
VFD220C43A/E	99	21	120	168	36	204	476	158	635
VFD300C43A/E	126	21	147	214	36	250	655	211	866
VFD370C43A/E	179	30	209	304	51	355	809	184	993
VFD450C43A/E	179	30	209	304	51	355	929	218	1147
VFD550C43A/E	179	30	209	304	51	355	1156	257	1413
VFD750C43A/E	186	30	216	316	51	367	1408	334	1742
VFD900C43A/E	257	73	330	437	124	561	1693	399	2092
VFD1100C43A/E	223	73	296	379	124	503	2107	491	2599

Tab. 3-3: Air flow rate and power dissipation (1)

Model No.	Air flow rate for cooling						Power dissipation of		
	Flow rate (cfm)			Flow rate (m^3/hr)			Power dissipation		
	External	Internal	Total	External	Internal	Total	Loss external (Heat sink)	Internal	Total
VFD1320C43A/E	224	112	336	381	190	571	2502	579	3081
VFD1600C43A/E	289	112	401	491	190	681	3096	687	3783
VFD1850C43A/E			454			771			4589
VFD2200C43A/E			454			771			5772
VFD2800C43A/E			769			1307			6381
VFD3150C43A/E			769			1307			7156
VFD3550C43A/E			769			1307			8007
VFD4500C43A/E			769			1307			11894

Tab. 3-3: Air flow rate and power dissipation (2)

Normal control ambient temperature derating curve

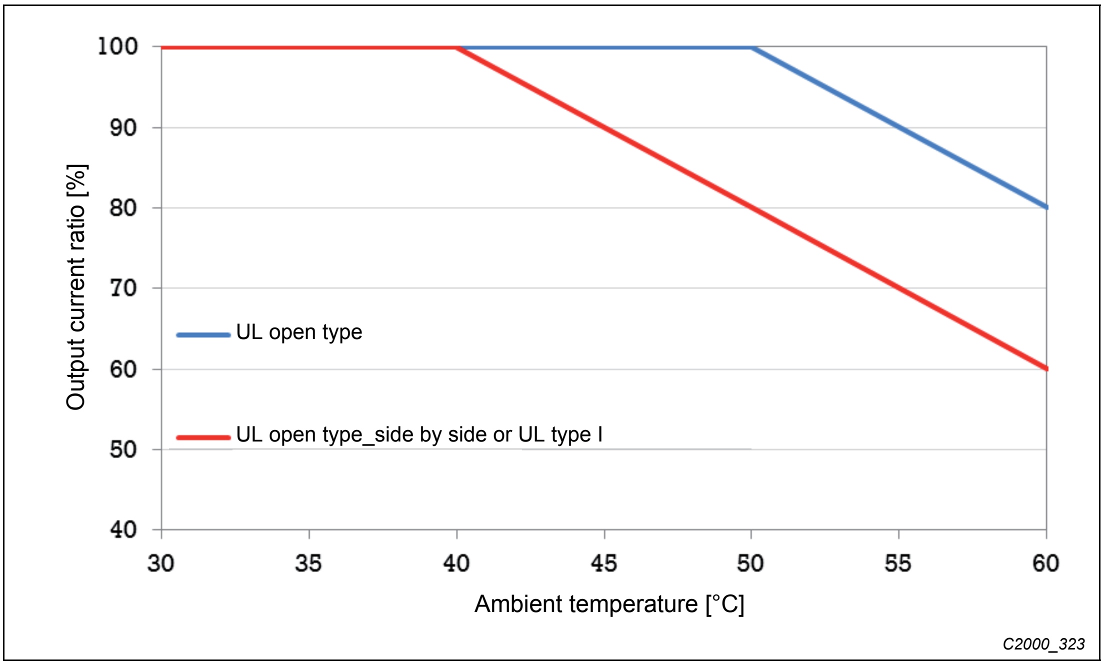


Fig. 3-3: Derating for high ambient temperature at normal control

Advanced control ambient temperature derating curve

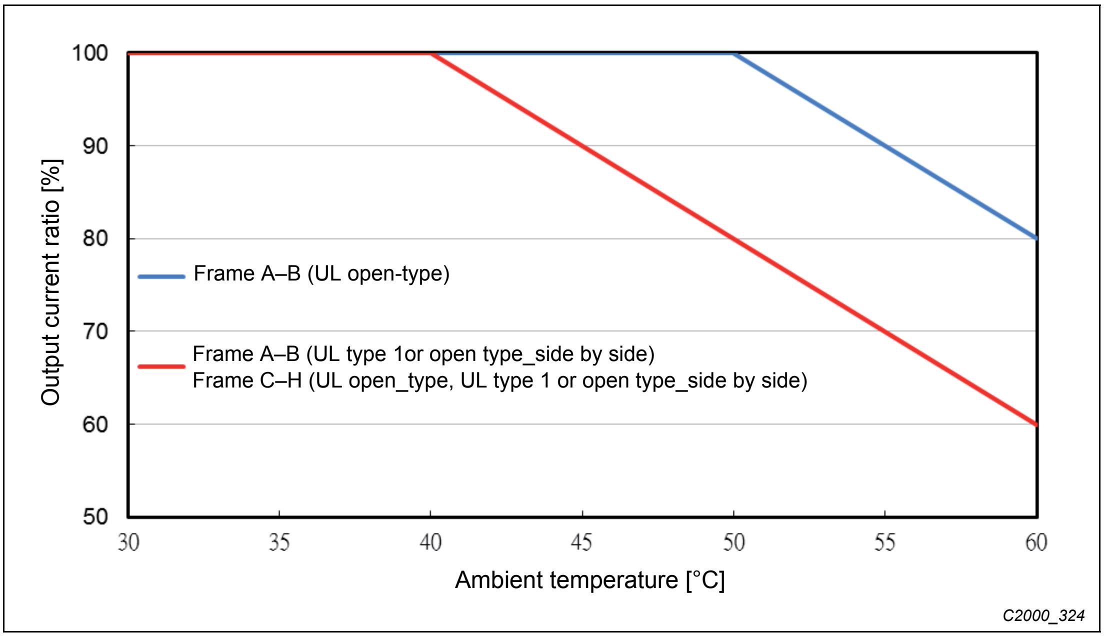


Fig. 3-4: Derating for high ambient temperature at advanced control

4 Wiring

After removing the front cover, examine if the power and control terminals are clearly noted. Please read following precautions before wiring.

- Make sure that power is only applied to the R/L1, S/L2, T/L3 terminals. Failure to comply may result in damage to the equipment. The voltage and current should lie within the range as indicated on the nameplate (Chapter 1-1).
- All the units must be grounded directly to a common ground terminal to prevent lightning strike or electric shock.
- Please make sure to fasten the screw of the main circuit terminals to prevent sparks which is made by the loose screws due to vibration.

DANGER:

- It is crucial to turn off the power before any wiring installation are made. A charge may still remain in the DC bus capacitors with hazardous voltages even if the power has been turned off therefore it is suggested for users to measure the remaining voltage before wiring. For your personnel safety, please do not perform any wiring before the voltage drops to a safe level < 25 V DC. Wiring installation with remaining voltage condition may cause sparks and short circuit.
- Only qualified personnel familiar with s is allowed to perform installation, wiring and commissioning. Make sure the power is turned off before wiring to prevent electric shock.

Caution:

- When wiring, please choose the wires with specification that complys with local regulation for your personnel safety.
- Check following items after finishing the wiring:
  - Are all connections correct?
  - Any loosen wires?
  - Any short-circuits between the terminals or to ground?

4.1 Wiring

4.1.1 Wiring diagram for frame A–C

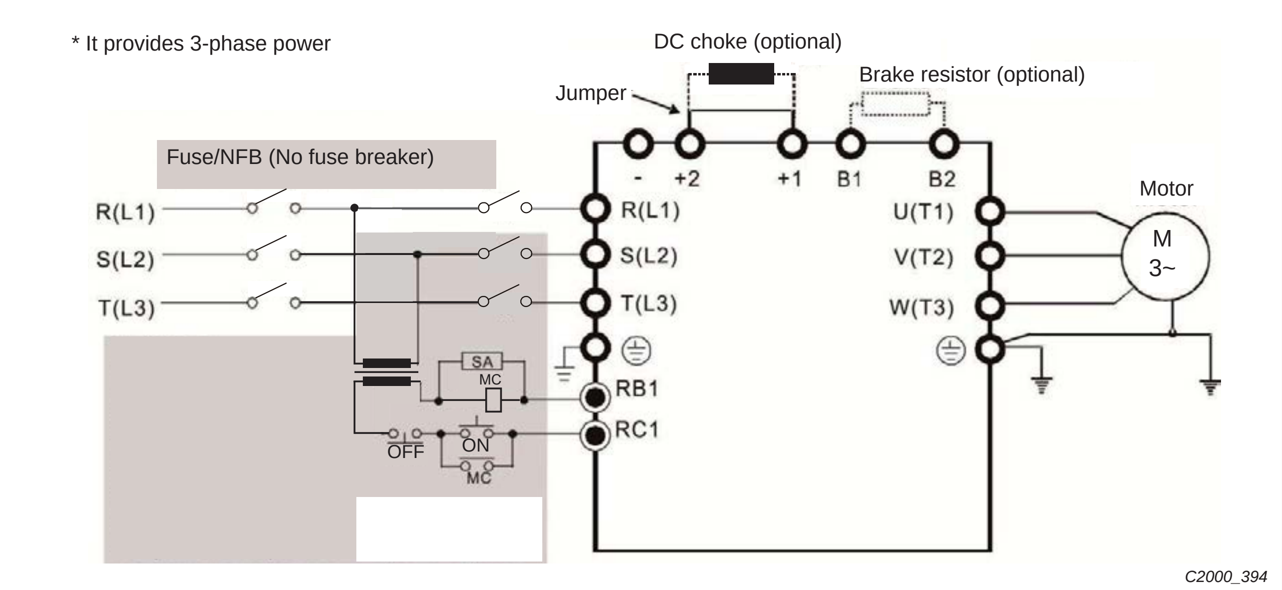


Fig. 4-1: Inverter wiring diagram for frame size A-C

NOTE It is the recommended to install a protective circuit at RB-RC to protect it from system damage. When fault occurs, the contact will switch ON to shut the power and protect the power system. Rb1 and RC1 is the multifunction output terminals.

4.1.2 Wiring diagram for frame D and frames above

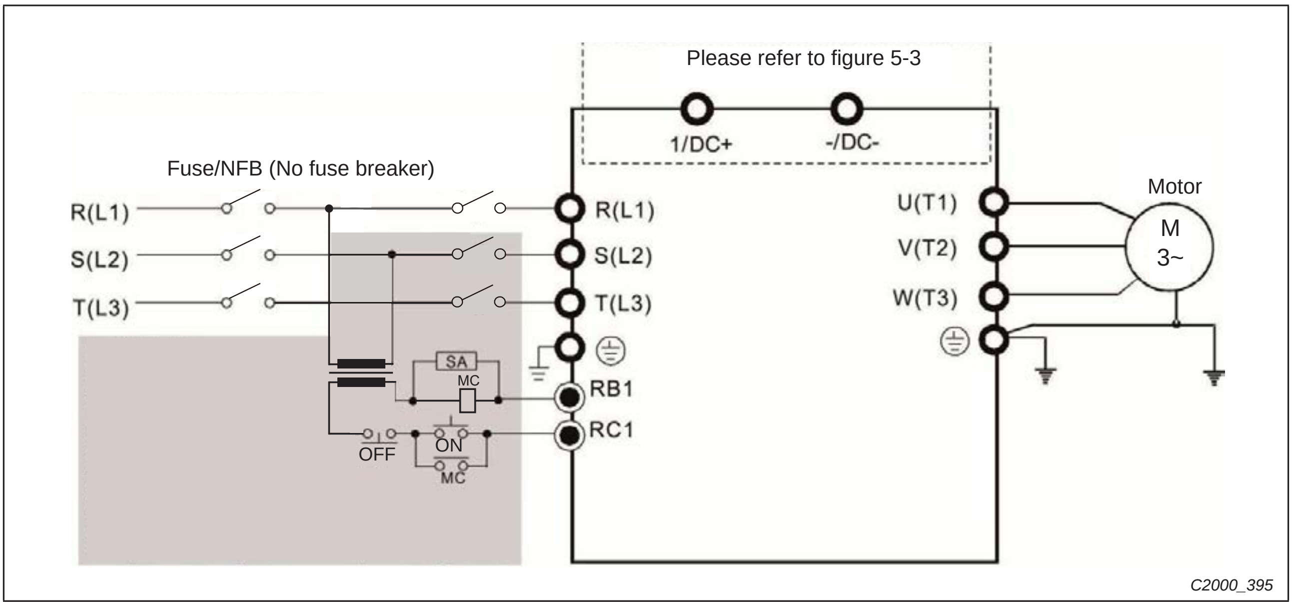


Fig. 4-2: Inverter wiring diagram for frame size D and above

NOTE It is the recommended to install a protective circuit at RB-RC to protect it from system damage. When fault occurs, the contact will switch ON to shut the power and protect the power system. Rb1 and RC1 is the multifunction output terminals.

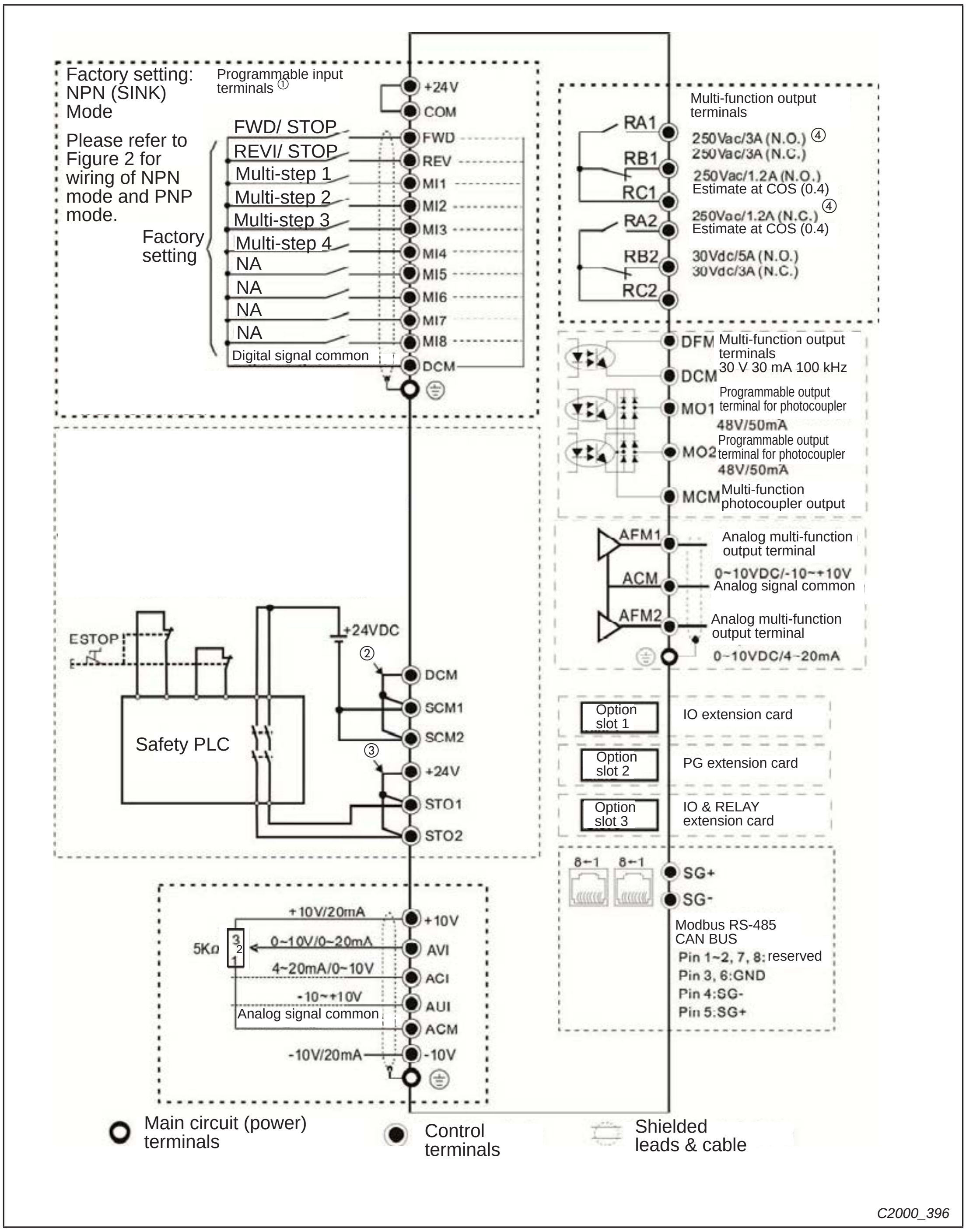


Fig. 4-3: Wiring of the input/output terminals

① See NOTES

② It is a short circuiting jumper installed between DCM, SCM1 and SCM2 when C2000 leaves the factory. Remove this short circuiting jumper before using the safety function while wiring.

③ It is a short circuiting jumper installed between +24V, STO1 and STO2 when C2000 leaves the factory. Remove this short circuiting jumper before using the safety function while wiring.

④ N.O. = normally open N.C. = normally closed

NOTES

- MI8 can input 100 kHz pulses.
- Do NOT apply the mains voltage directly to above terminals.

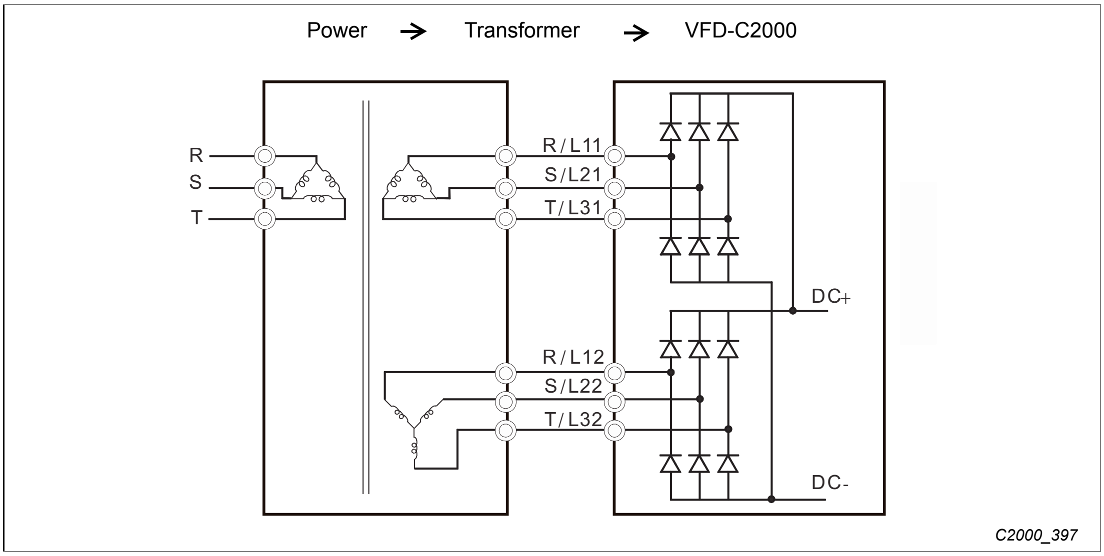


Fig. 4-4: Main circuit wiring diagram for framesize G and above

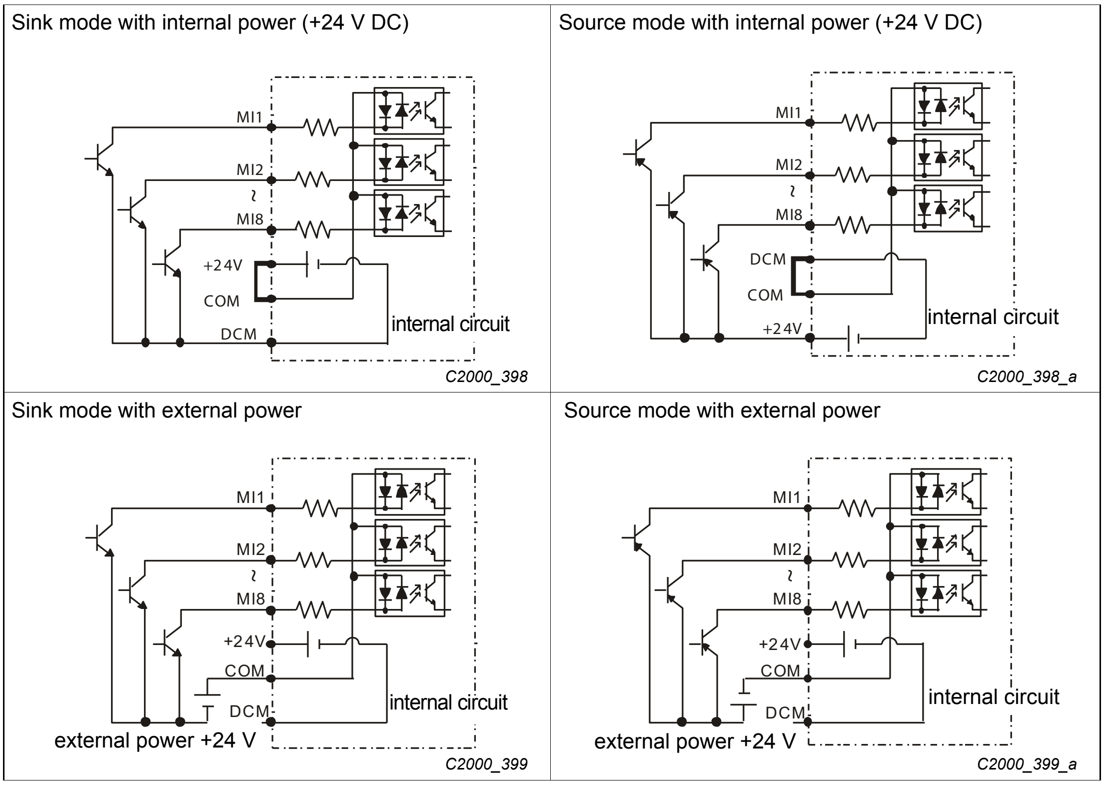


Fig. 4-5: Sink (NPN)/source (PNP) mode

DC-Link testcable for framesize E to H (inclusive common DC-Link or DC supply).

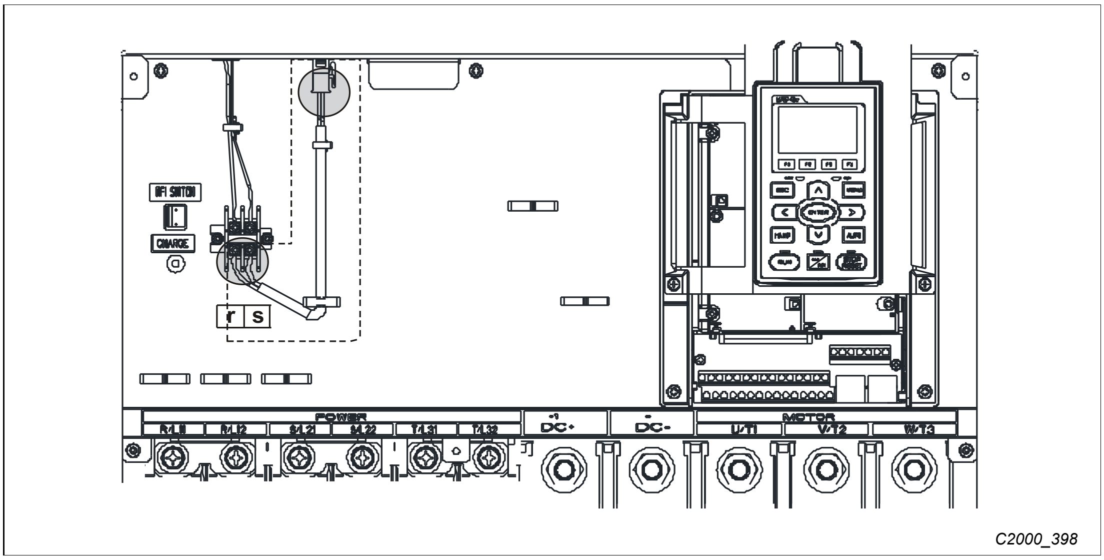


Fig. 4-6: Connection cable for DC-Link

- Applicable to Frame E–H
- Operation Instruction

  – When RST power is off, please disconnect terminal r and terminal s. (As circled in dotted line, uninstall the gray section and properly store cable r and cable s. Cable r and cable s are not available in optional accessories, do not dispose them.)

    After terminal r and terminal s are cleared, user may now connect new power source to terminal r and terminal s. Please connect 220 V AC for 220 V model and 440 V AC for 440 V model.

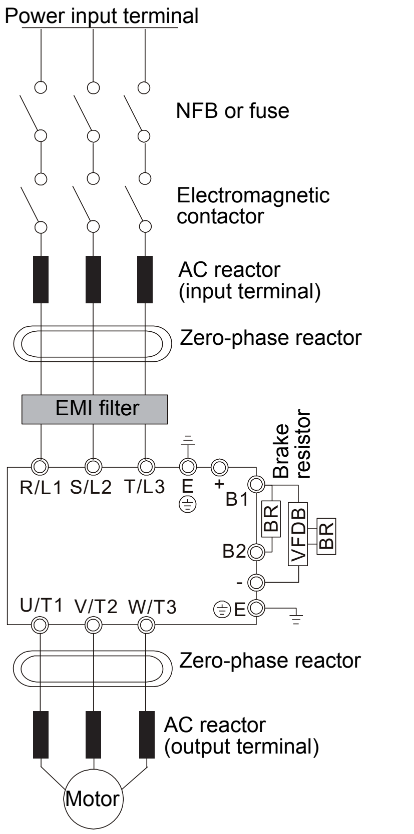
    When the drive power is on, if terminal r and terminal s are not connected to new power source (220 V AC for 220 V model and 440 V AC for 440 V model), the digital keypad will display an error message "ryF".

  – At internal power supply of the control circuit (via terminals RST), it is not required to remove terminal r and terminal s.

NOTE

The voltage for the separate power supply of the control circuit must me in the same power range as the voltage for the drive.. If in your case the drives are in different power range, please contact with us (Delta Industrial Automation Business Unit).

4.1.3 System wiring diagram



Power input terminal	Please supply power according to the rated power specifications indicated in the manual (refer to 9 Specifications Table)
NFB of fuse	There may be a large inrush current during power on. Refer to 7-2 NFB to select a suitable NFB or fuse.
Electromagnetic contactor	Switching ON/OFF the primary side of the electromagnetic contactor can turn the integrated elevator device ON/OFF, but frequent switching is a cause of machine failure. Do not use the electromagnetic contactor as the power switch for the integrated elevator drive; doing so will shorten the life of the integrated elevator drive
AC reactor (input terminal)	When the mian power supply capacity is greater than 500 kVA, or when it switches into the phase capacitor, the instantaneous peak voltage and current generated will destroy the internal circuit of the integrated elevator drive. It is recommended to install an input side AC reactor in the integrated elevator drive. This will also improve the power factor and reduce power harmonics . The wiring distance should be within 10 m. Please refer to 7-4.
Zero-phase reactor	Used to reduce radiated interference, especially in environments with audio devices and reduce input and output side interference. The effective range is AM band to 10 MHz. Please refer to 7-4.
EMI filter	Can be used to reduce electromagnetic interference.
Brake resistor	Used to shorten deceleration time of the motor. Please refer to 7-1.
AC reactor (output terminal)	The wiring lenght of the motor will affect the size of the reflected wave on the motor end. It is recommended to instal an AC reactor when the motor wiringlenght ist greater than 20 m. Refer to 7-4.

C2000_401

Fig. 4-7: System wiring diagram

5 Main Circuit Terminals

5.1 Main circuit diagram

For frame A–C

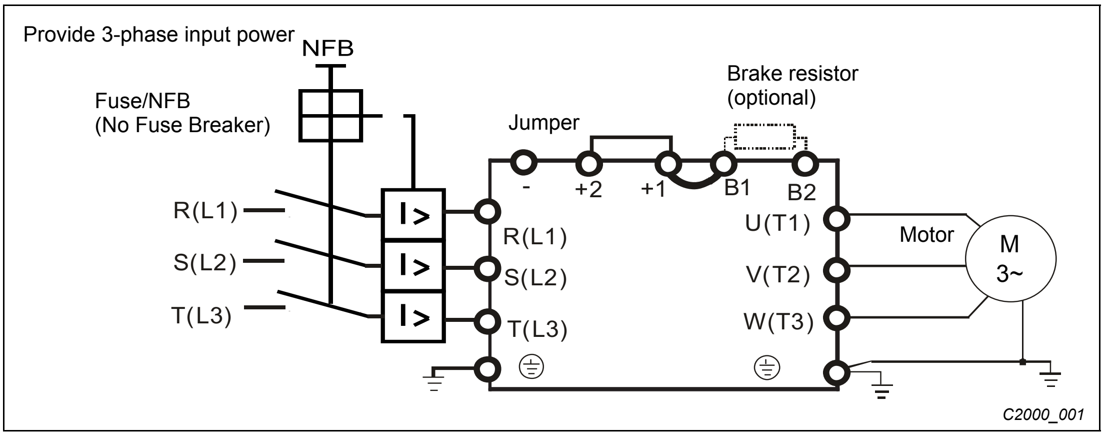


Fig. 5-1: Main circuit wiring diagram for frame A–C

For frame A–C

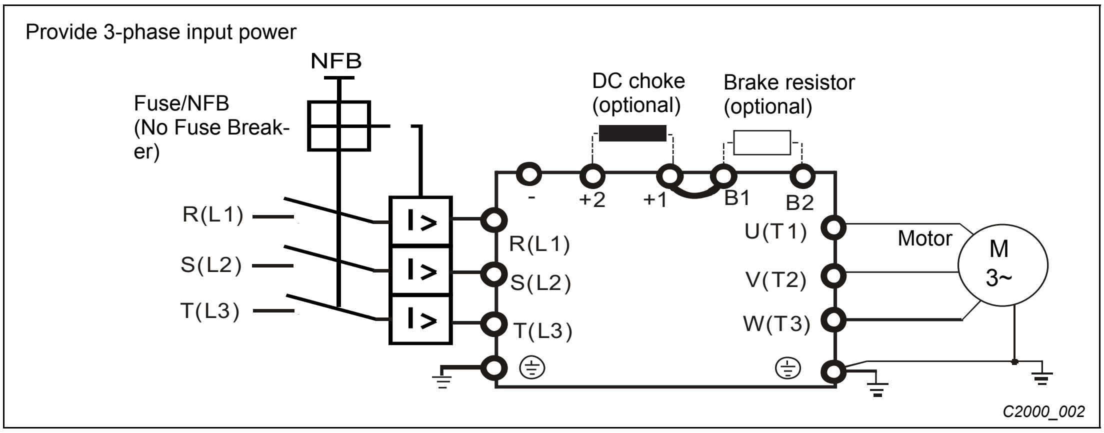


Fig. 5-2: Main circuit wiring diagram for frame A–C with DC choke

For frame D0 and above D0

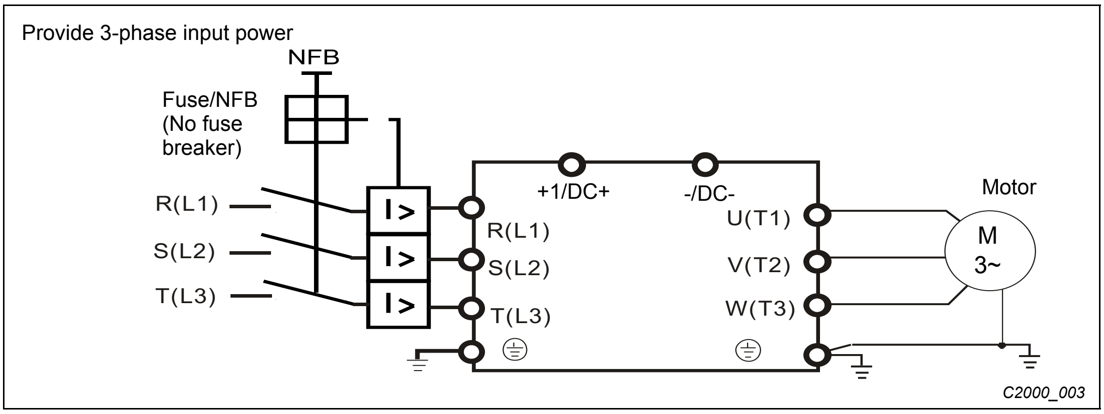


Fig. 5-3: Main circuit wiring diagram for frame D0 and above

For frame G and above

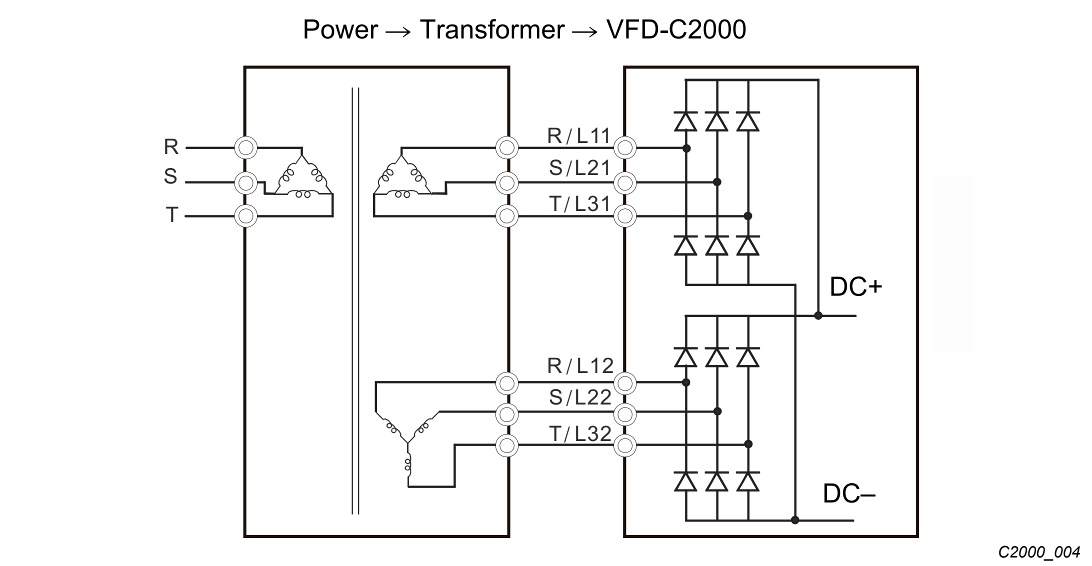


Fig. 5-4: Main circuit wiring diagram for frame G and above

NOTE Please remove short circuit plate of FRAME G and H if 12 pulse is implemented.

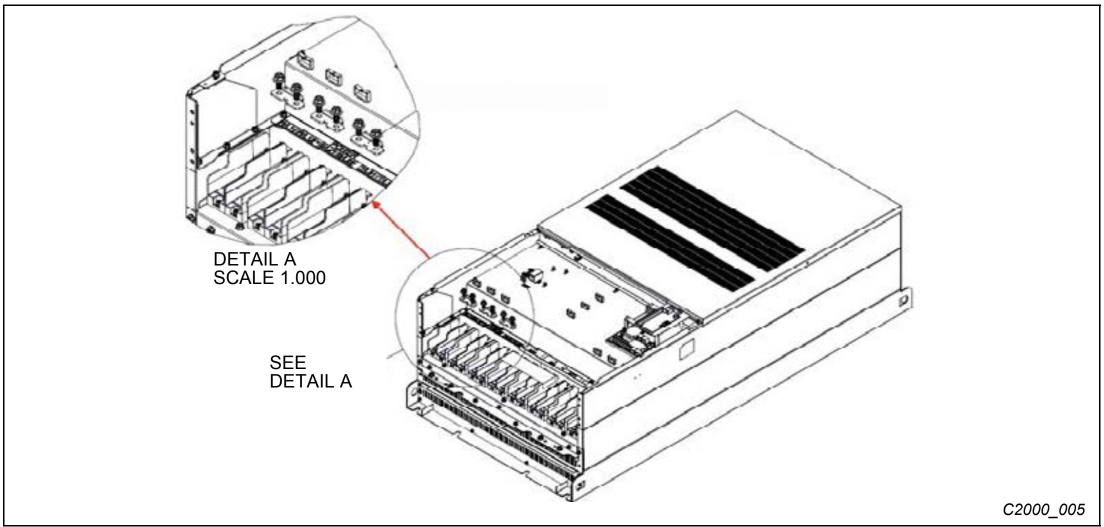


Fig. 5-5: Short circuit plate removement

NOTE Before implementing 12 pulse, consult Delta for more details.

Terminal	Description
R/L1, S/L2, T/L3	AC line input terminals 3-phase
U/T1, V/T2, W/T3	AC drive output terminals for connecting 3-phase induction motor
+1, +2	Applicable to frame A–C Connections for DC reactor to improve the power factor. It needs to remove the jumper for installation.
+1/DC+, -/DC-	Connections for brake unit (VFDB series) (for 230V models: ≤22 kW, built-in brake unit) (for 460V models: ≤30 kW, built-in brake unit) Common DC Bus
B1, B2	Connections for brake resistor (optional)
⏚	Earth connection, please comply with local regulations.

Tab. 5-1: Main power terminals

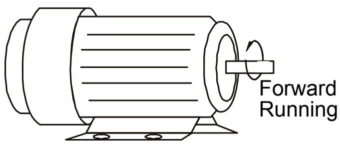
CAUTION

Main power terminals

- Do not connect 3-phase model to one-phase power. R/L1, S/L2 and T/L3 has no phase-sequence requirement, it can be used upon random selection.
- It is recommend to add a magnetic contactor (MC) to the power input wiring to cut off power quickly and reduce malfunction when activating the protection function of the . Both ends of the MC should have an R-C surge absorber.
- Fasten the screws in the main circuit terminal to prevent sparks condition made by the loose screws due to vibration.
- Please use voltage and current within the specification.
- When using a general GFCI (Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter), select a current sensor with sensitivity of 200 mA or above and not less than 0.1-second operation time to avoid nuisance tripping.
- Please use the shield wire or tube for the power wiring and ground the two ends of the shield wire or tube.
- Do NOT run/stop s by turning the power ON/OFF. Run/stop s by RUN/STOP command via control terminals or keypad. If you still need to run/stop s by turning power ON/OFF, it is recommended to do so only ONCE per hour.

Output terminals for main circuit

- When it needs to install the filter at the output side of terminals U/T1, V/T2, W/T3 on the Please use inductance filter. Do not use phase-compensation capacitors or L-C (Inductance-Capacitance) or R-C (Resistance-Capacitance), unless approved by Delta.
- DO NOT connect phase-compensation capacitors or surge absorbers at the output terminals of s.
- Use well-insulated motor, suitable for inverter operation.
- Note down the rated data and the torque force of the wiring when the output terminal is below 75 °C. This information provides the right wiring method to wire terminals (It corresponds to the terminals of the motor wire and non-motor wire).
- When the AC drive output terminals U/T1, V/T2, and W/T3 are connected to the motor terminals U/T1, V/T2, and W/T3, respectively, the motor will rotate counterclockwise (as viewed on the shaft end of the motor) when a forward operation command is received. To permanently reverse the direction of motor rotation, switch over any of the two motor leads.

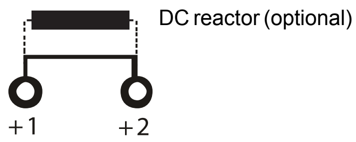


C2000_006

CAUTION

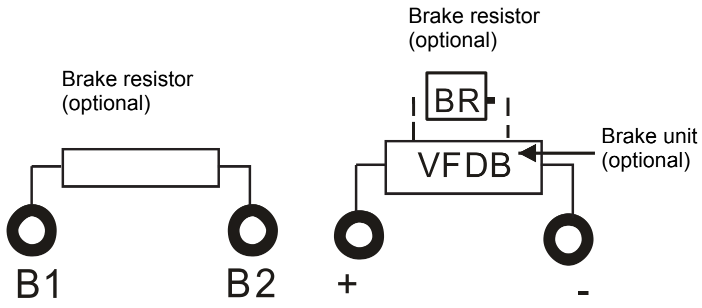
Connection terminals for DC reactor, the external brake resistor and a DC unit (brake unit or general reactor connection)

- This is the terminals used to connect the DC reactor to improve the power factor. For the factory setting, it connects the short-circuit object. Please remove this short-circuit object before connecting to the DC reactor.



C2000_007

- Connect a brake resistor or brake unit in applications with frequent deceleration ramps, short deceleration time, too low brake torque or requiring increased brake torque.

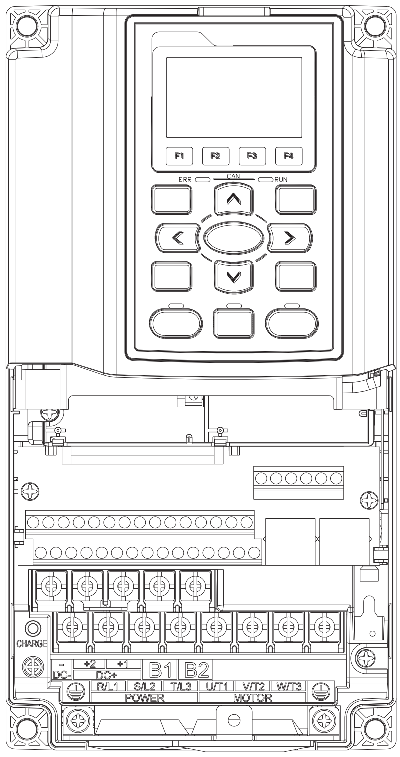


C2000_008

- The external brake resistor of Frame A, B and C should connect to the terminals (B1, B2) of s.
- For those models without built-in brake resistor, please connect external brake unit and brake resistor (both of them are optional) to increase brake torque.
- When the terminals +1, +2 and - are not used, please leave the terminals open.
- DO NOT connect [+1, -], [+2, -], [+1/DC+, -/DC-] or brake resistor directly to prevent drive damage.
- DC+ and DC- are connected by common DC bus, please refer to Chapter 5-1 (Main Circuit Terminal) for the wiring terminal specification and the wire gauge information.
- Please refer to the VFDB manual for more information on wire gauge when installing the brake unit.

5.2 Main circuit terminals

Frame A



C2000_009

Fig.5-6: View of frequency inverter frame A

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD007C23A		14 AWG (2.1 mm^2)	
VFD015C23A		12 AWG (3.3 mm^2)	
VFD022C23A		10 AWG (5.3 mm^2)	
VFD037C23A		8 AWG (8.4 mm^2)	
VFD007C43A		14 AWG (2.1 mm^2)	
VFD007C43E		14 AWG (2.1 mm^2)	
VFD015C43A		14 AWG (2.1 mm^2)	
VFD015C43E	8 AWG (8.4 mm^2)	14 AWG (2.1 mm^2)	M4 20 kg-cm (17.4 lb-in.) (1.962 Nm)
VFD022C43A		14 AWG (2.1 mm^2)	
VFD022C43E		14 AWG (2.1 mm^2)	
VFD037C43A		10 AWG (5.3 mm^2)	
VFD037C43E		10 AWG (5.3 mm^2)	
VFD040C43A		10 AWG (5.3 mm^2)	
VFD040C43E		10 AWG (5.3 mm^2)	
VFD055C43A		10 AWG (5.3 mm^2)	
VFD055C43E		10 AWG (5.3 mm^2)	

Tab. 5-2: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/L1, S/L2, T/L3, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, ⏚, B1, B2, +1, +2, –

NOTE UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.

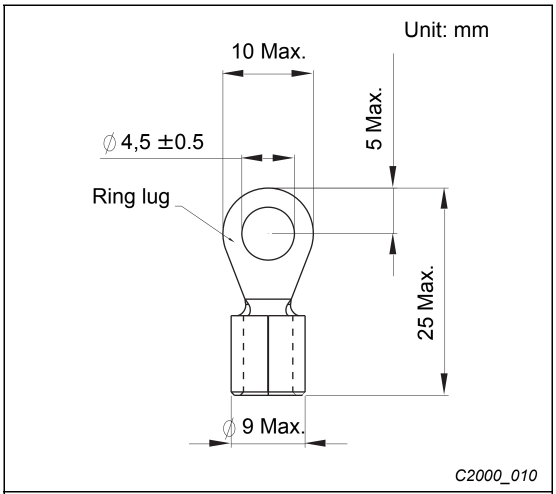


Fig. 5-7: Cable lug specification

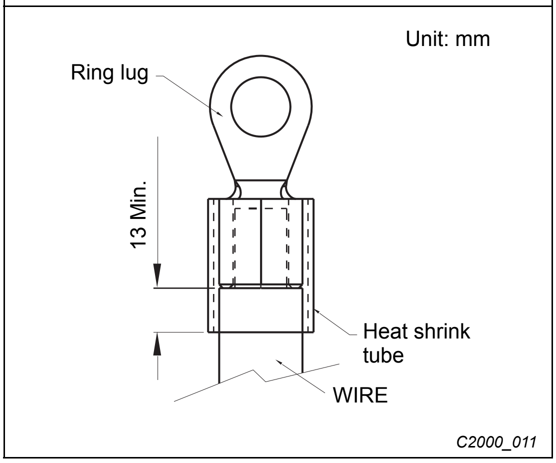


Fig. 5-8: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600 V, YDPU2).

Frame B

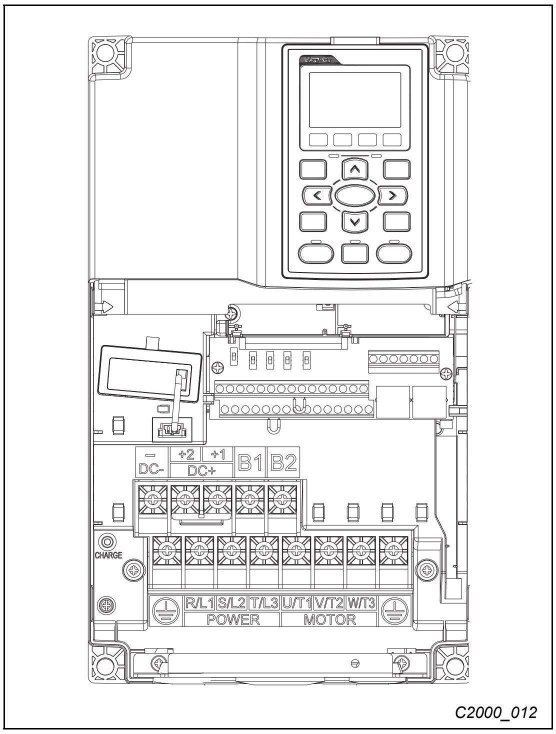


Fig. 5-9: View of frequency inverter frame B

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD055C23A①	4 AWG (21.2 mm^2)	8 AWG (8.4 mm^2)	M5 35 kg-cm (30.4 lb-in.) (3.434 Nm)
VFD075C23A①		6 AWG (13.3 mm^2)	
VFD110C23A②		4 AWG (21.2 mm^2)	
VFD075C43A①		8 AWG (8.4 mm^2)	
VFD075C43E①		8AWG (8.4 mm^2)	
VFD110C43A①		8 AWG (8.4 mm^2)	
VFD110C43E①		8 AWG (8.4 mm^2)	
VFD150C43A①		6 AWG (13.3 mm^2)	
VFD150C43E①		6 AWG (13.3 mm^2)	

Tab. 5-3: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/L1, S/L2, T/L3, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, ⏚, B1, B2, +1, +2, –

① UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.

② UL installation must use 600 V, 90 °C wire when surrounding temperature exceeds 45 °C.

NOTE

Terminal D+ [+2 & +1]: Torque: 45 kg-cm [39.0 lb-in.] (4.415 Nm) (±10 %)

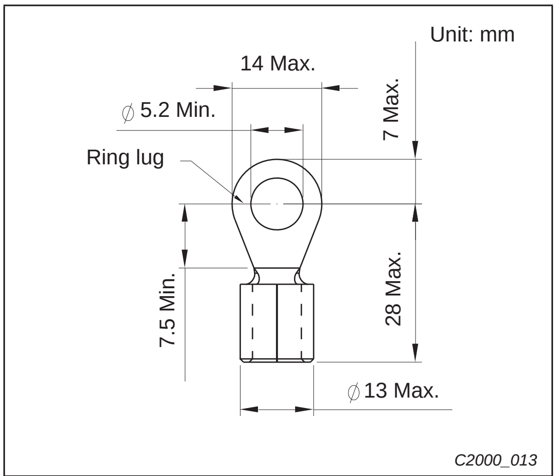


Fig. 5-10: Cable lug specification

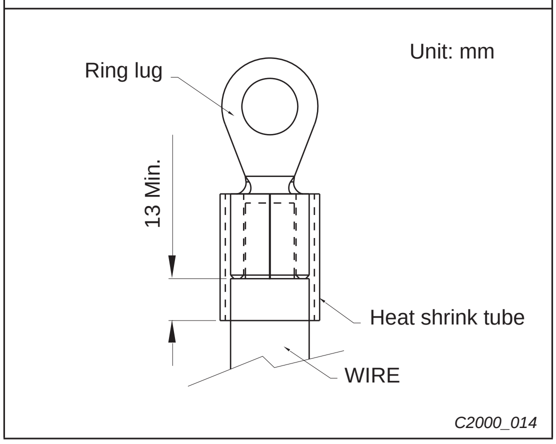


Fig. 5-11: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600V, YDPU2)

Frame C

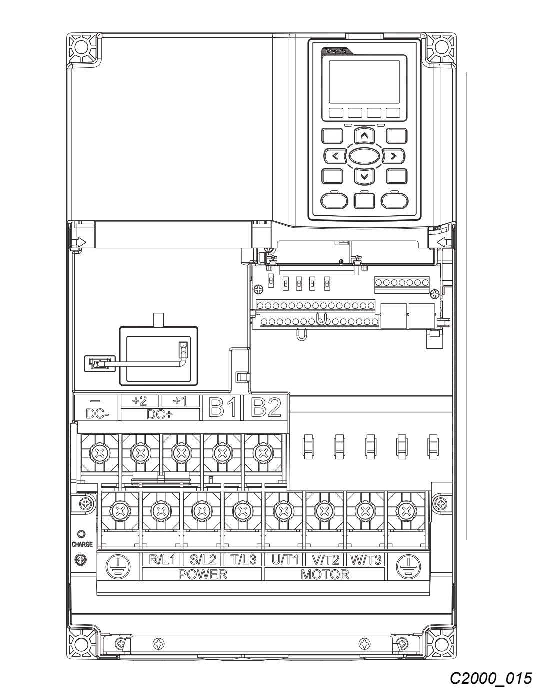


Fig. 5-12: View of frequency inverter frame C

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD150C23A①	1/0 AWG (53.5 mm²)	1 AWG (42.4 mm²)	M8 80 kg-cm (69.4 lb-in.) (7.85 Nm)
VFD185C23A①		1/0 AWG (53.5 mm²)	
VFD220C23A②		1/0 AWG (53.5 mm²)	
VFD185C43A①		4 AWG (21.2 mm²)	
VFD185C43E①		4 AWG (21.2 mm²)	
VFD220C43A①		4 AWG (21.2 mm²)	
VFD220C43E①		4 AWG (21.2 mm²)	
VFD300C43A①		2 AWG (33.6 mm²)	
VFD300C43E①		2 AWG (33.6 mm²)	

Tab. 5-4: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/L1, S/L2, T/L3, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, ⏚, B1, B2, +1, +2, –

① UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.

② UL installation must use 600 V, 90 °C wire when surrounding temperature exceeds 40 °C.

NOTE Terminal D+ [+2 & +1]: torque: 90 kg-cm [78.2 lb-in.] (8.83 Nm) (±10 %)

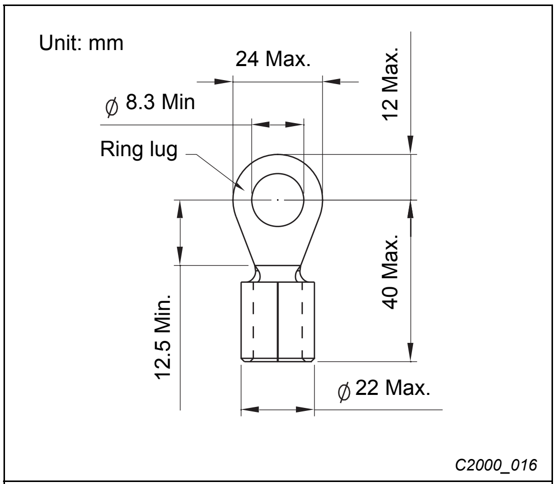


Fig. 5-13: Cable lug specification

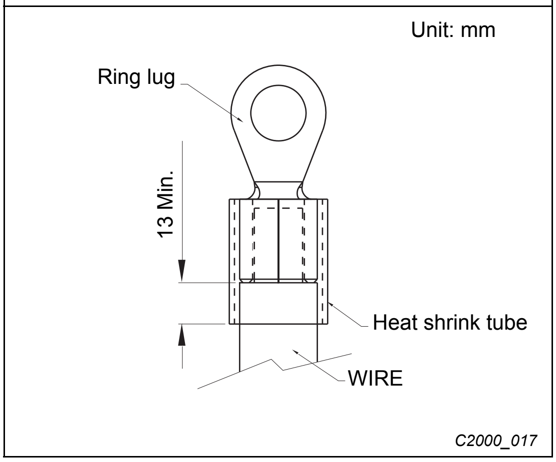


Fig. 5-14: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600 V, YDPU2)

Frame D0

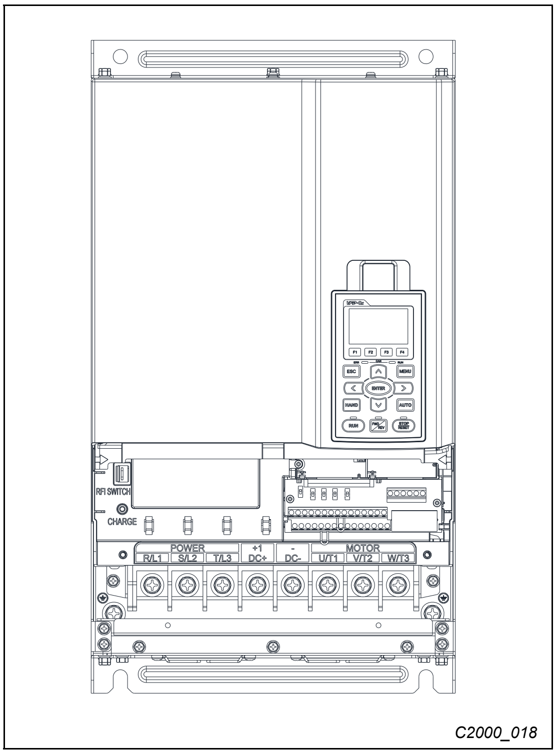


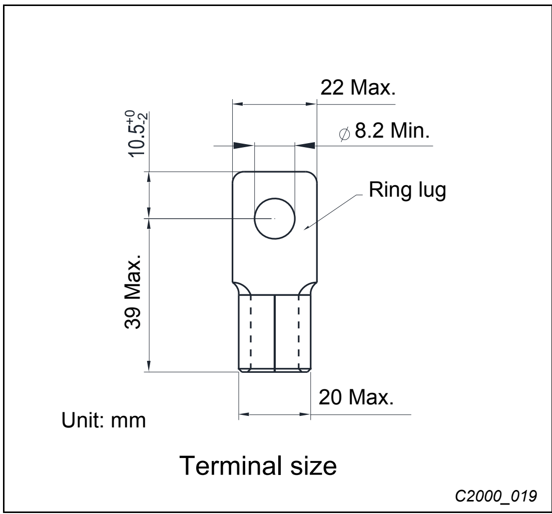
Fig. 5-15: View of frequency inverter frame D0

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD370C43S	2/0 AWG ($67.4\ mm^2$)	1/0 AWG ($53.5\ mm^2$)	M8 80 kg-cm (70 lb-in.) (7.85 Nm)
VFD450C43S		2/0 AWG ($67.4\ mm^2$)	
VFD370C43U		1/0 AWG ($53.5\ mm^2$)	
VFD450C43U		1/0 AWG ($53.5\ mm^2$)	

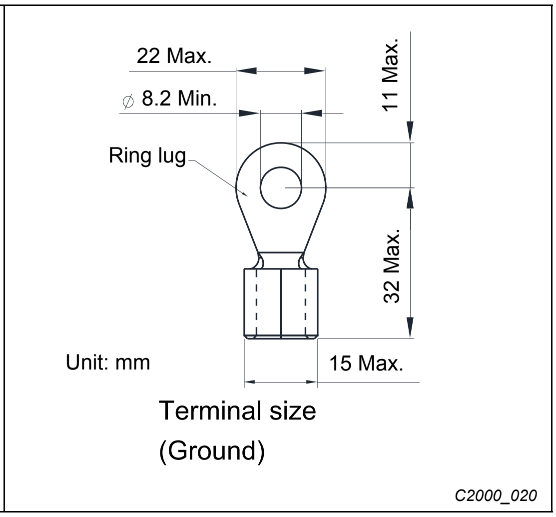
Tab. 5-5: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/L1, S/L2, T/L3, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, ⏚, +1/DC+, –/DC–

NOTE

UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.
Specification of grounding wire: 2AWG x 2 ($33.6\ mm^2$ x 2)



Terminal size



Terminal size (Ground)

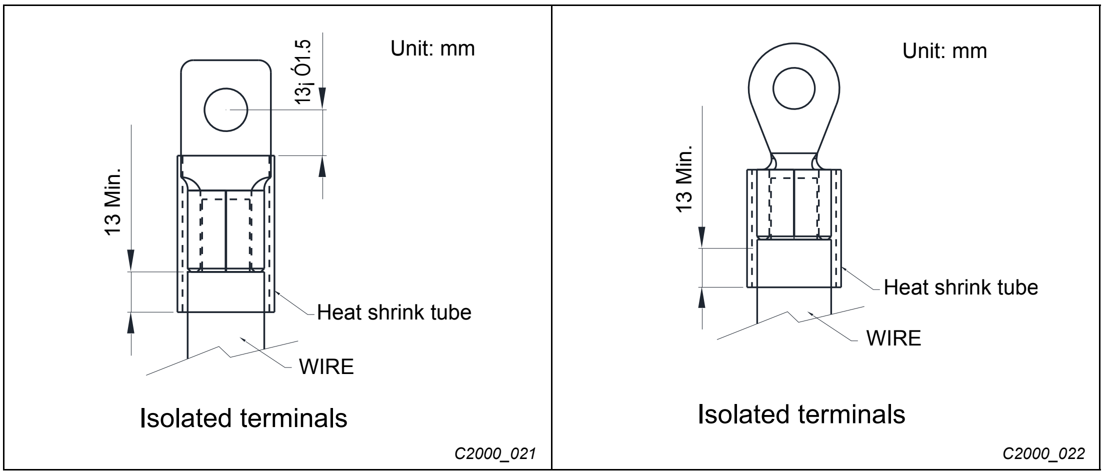


Fig. 5-16: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600 V, YDPU2)

Frame D

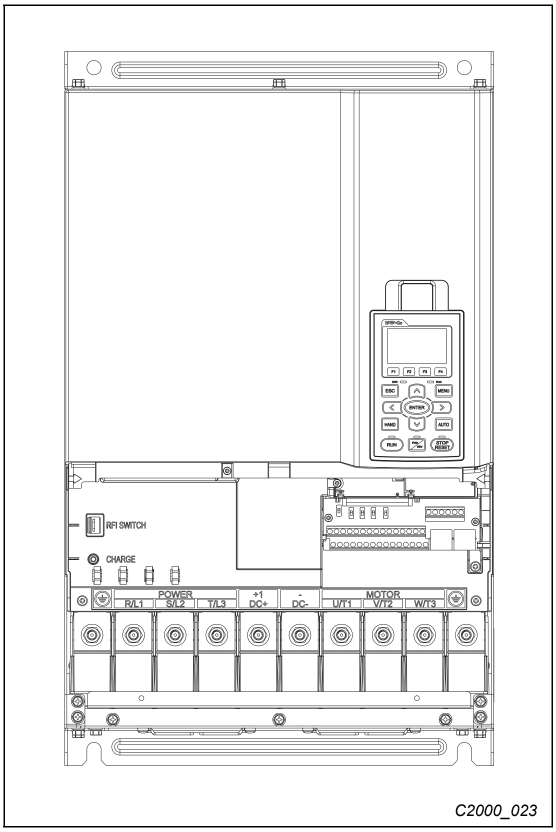


Fig. 5-17: View of frequency inverter frame D

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD300C23A	300MCM (152 mm^2)	4/0 AWG (107 mm^2)	M8 200 kg-cm (173 lb-in.) (19.62 Nm)
VFD370C23A		250MCM (127 mm^2)	
VFD550C43A		3/0 AWG (85 mm^2)	
VFD750C43A		300MCM (152 mm^2)	
VFD300C23E	4/0 AWG. (107 mm^2)	3/0 AWG (85 mm^2)	
VFD370C23E		4/0 AWG (107 mm^2)	
VFD370C43E		1/0 AWG (53.5 mm^2)	
VFD450C43E		1/0 AWG (53.5 mm^2)	
VFD550C43E		2/0 AWG (67.4 mm^2)	
VFD750C43E		4/0 AWG (107 mm^2)	

Tab. 5-6: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/L1, S/L2, T/L3, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, ⏚, +1/DC+, –/DC–

NOTE UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.

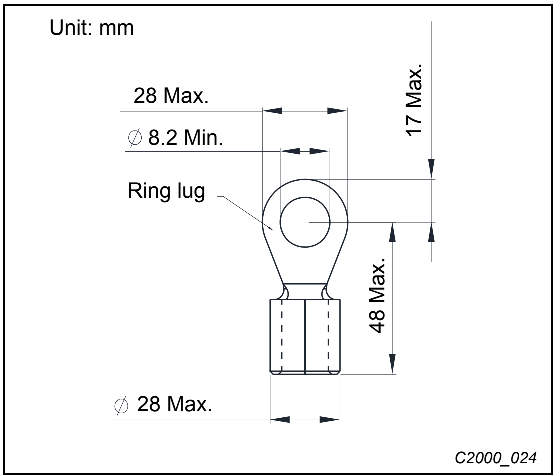


Fig. 5-18: Cable lug specification

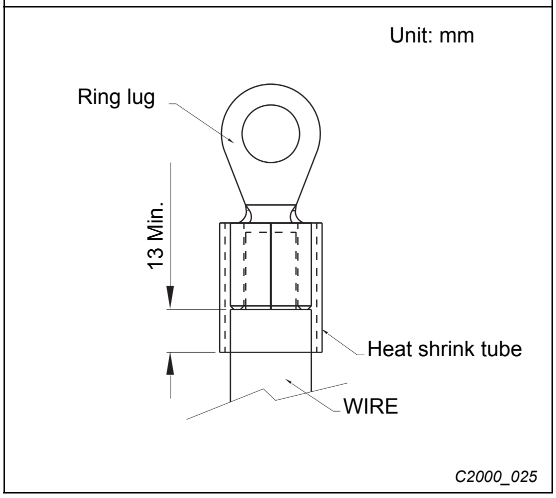


Fig. 5-19: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600 V, YDPU2)

Frame E

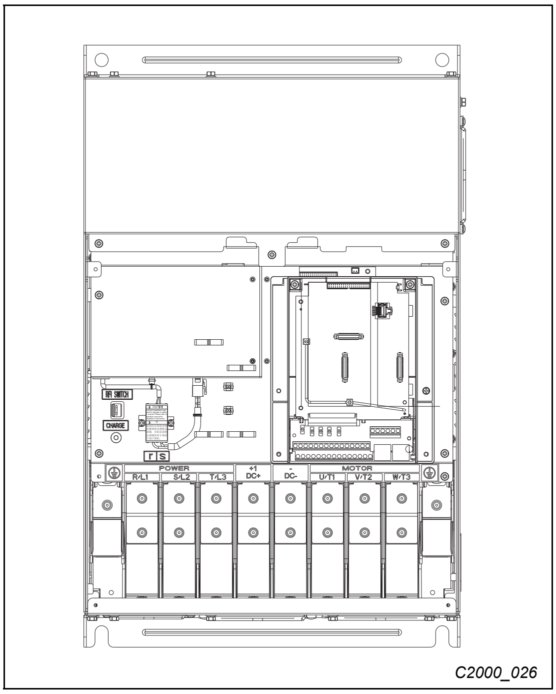


Fig. 5-20: View of frequency inverter frame E

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD450C23A	300MCM x 2 (152 mm ^{2} x 2)	1/0AWG x 2(53.5 mm^2 x 2)	M8 200 kg-cm (173 lb-in.) (19.62 Nm)
VFD550C23A		3/0AWG x 2 (85 mm^2 x 2)	
VFD750C23A		4/0 AWG x 2 (107 mm^2 x 2)	
VFD900C43A		1/0AWG x 2 (53.5 mm^2 x 2)	
VFD1100C43A		3/0AWG x 2 (85 mm^2 x 2)	
VFD450C23E	4/0 AWG x 2 (107 mm^2 x 2)	1/0AWG x 2 (53.5mm^2 x 2)	
VFD550C23E		2/0AWG x 2 (67.4 mm^2 x 2)	
VFD750C23E		3/0AWG x 2 (85 mm^2 x 2)	
VFD900C43E		1/0AWG x 2 (53.5 mm^2 x 2)	
VFD1100C43E		2/0AWG x 2 (67.4 mm^2 x 2)	

Tab. 5-7: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/L1, S/L2, T/L3, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, ⏚, +1/DC+, –/DC–

NOTE

UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only

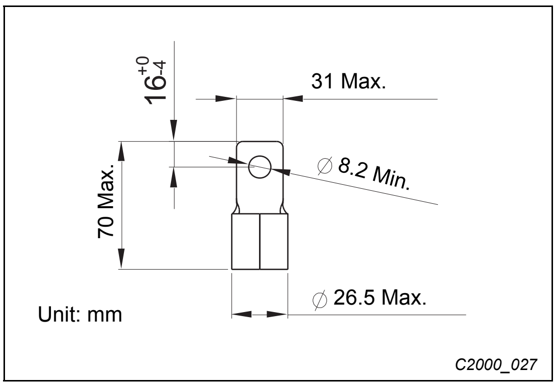


Fig. 5-21: Specification for ring lug

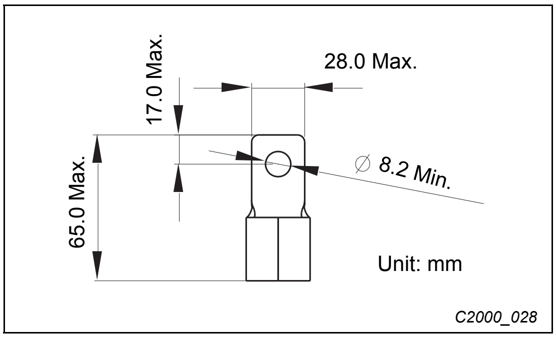


Fig. 5-22: Ring lug grounding wire

Specification of grounding wire ⏚: 300MCM [152 mm^2]; Torque: M8 180 kg-cm (156 lb-in.) (17.64 Nm) (±10 %)

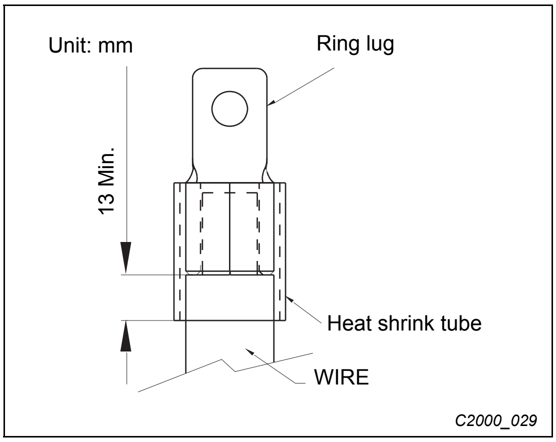


Fig. 5-23: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600C, YDPU2)

Frame F

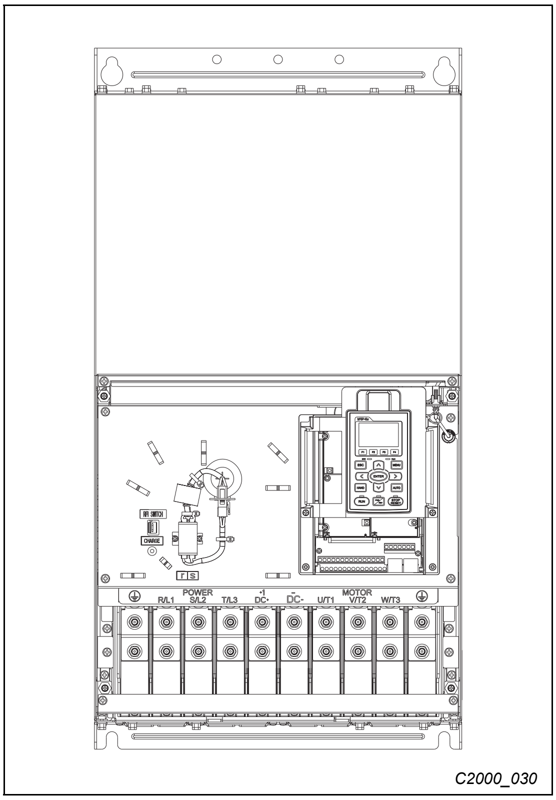


Fig. 5-24: View of frequency inverter frame F

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD900C23A①	300MCM x 2 ($152 mm^2$ x 2)	300MCMx x 2 ($152 mm^2$ x 2)	M8 200 kg-cm (173 lb-in.) (19.62 Nm)
VFD1320C43A②		4/0 AWG x 2 ($107 mm^2$ x 2)	
VFD1600C43A②		300MCM x 2 ($152 mm^2$)	
VFD900C23E①	4/0 AWG x 2 ($107 mm^2$ x 2)	4/0 AWG x 2 ($107 mm^2$ x 2)	
VFD1320C43E②		3/0AWG x 2 ($85 mm^2$ x 2)	
VFD1600C43E②		4/0 AWG x 2 ($107 mm^2$ x 2)	

Tab. 5-8: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/L1, S/L2, T/L3, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, ⏚, +1/ DC+, –/DC–

① UL installations must use 90 °C wire.

② UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.

NOTE

Specification of groundinwire ⏚: 300MCM x 2 [$152 mm^2$ x 2]
Torque: M8 200 kg-cm (173 lb-in.) (19.62 Nm) (±10 %)

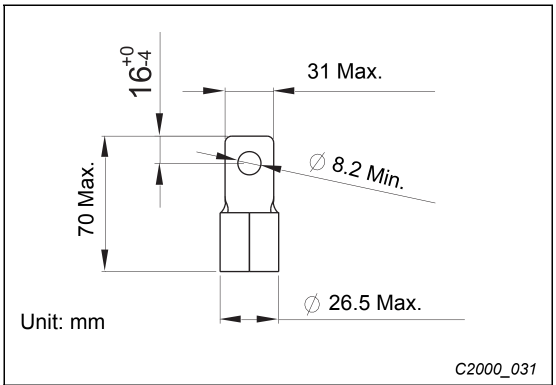


Fig. 5-25: Specification for ring lug

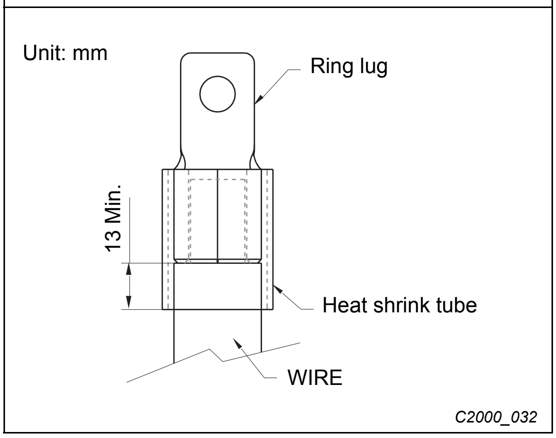
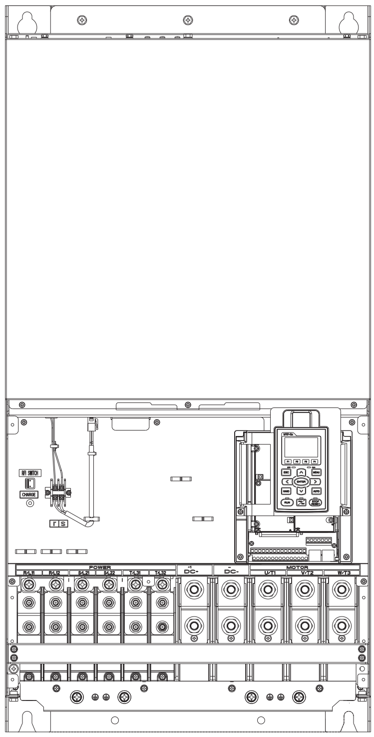


Fig. 5-26: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600C, YDPU2)

Frame G



C2000_033

Fig. 5-27: View of frequency inverter frame G

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD1850C43A①	300MCM x 4 ($152\ mm^2$ x 4)	2/0AWGx4 ($67.4\ mm^2$ x 4)	M8 200 kg-cm (173 lb-in.) (19.62 Nm)
VFD2200C43A②		3/0AWGx4 ($85\ mm^2$ x 4)	
VFD1850C43E①		1/0AWGx4 ($53.5\ mm^2$ x 4)	
VFD2200C43E①		2/0AWGx4 ($67.4\ mm^2$ x 4)	

Tab. 5-9: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/L11, R/L12, S/L21, S/L22, T/L31, T/L32

① UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.

② Use 600 V, 90 °C wire when the surrounding temperature is over 45 °C.

NOTE

Specification for grounding wire ⏚: 300MCM x 4 [$152\ mm^2$ x 4]

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD1850C43A①	500MCM x 2 ($253\ mm^2$ x 2)	400MCM x 2 ($203\ mm^2$ x 2)	M12 408 kg-cm (354 lb-in.) (40 Nm)
VFD2200C43A②		500MCM x 2 ($253\ mm^2$ x 2)	
VFD1850C43E①		300MCM x 2 ($152\ mm^2$ x 2)	
VFD2200C43E①		400MCM x 2 ($203\ mm^2$ x 2)	

Tab. 5-10: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, +1/DC+, –/DC–

① UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.

② Use 600 V, 90 °C wire when the surrounding temperature is over 45 °C.

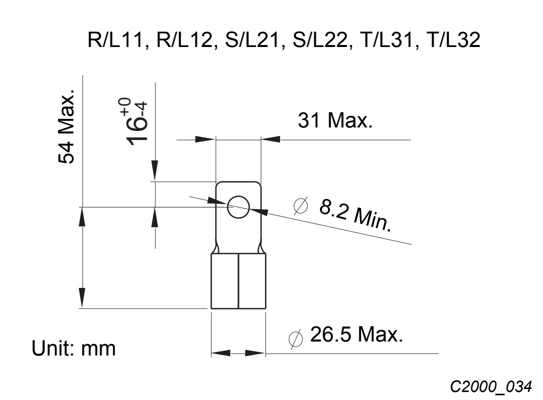


Fig. 5-28: Specification for using ring lug
Torque: M8 200 kg-cm
(173 lb-in.) (19.62 Nm) (±10 %)

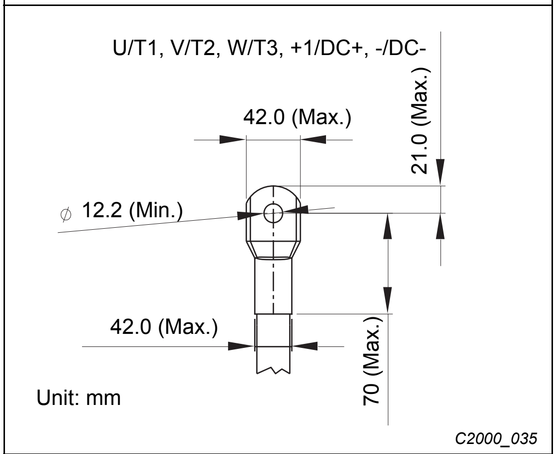


Fig. 5-29: Specification for using ring lug

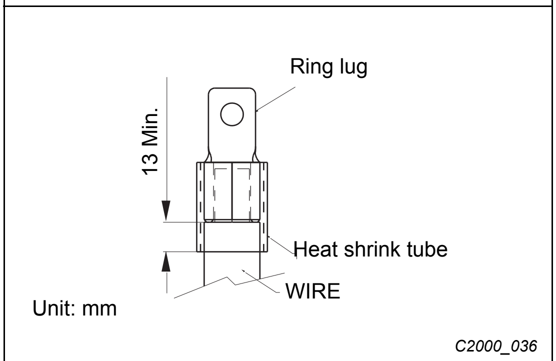


Fig. 5-30: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600C, YDPU2)

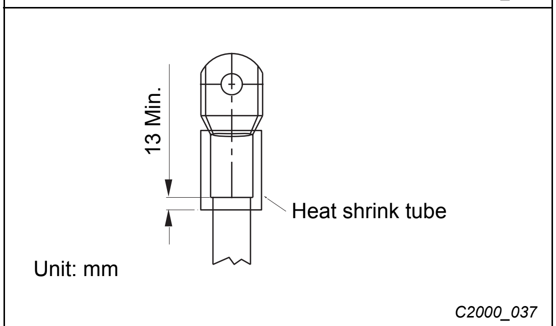


Fig. 5-31: Specification of insulated heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600C, YDPU2)

Frame H

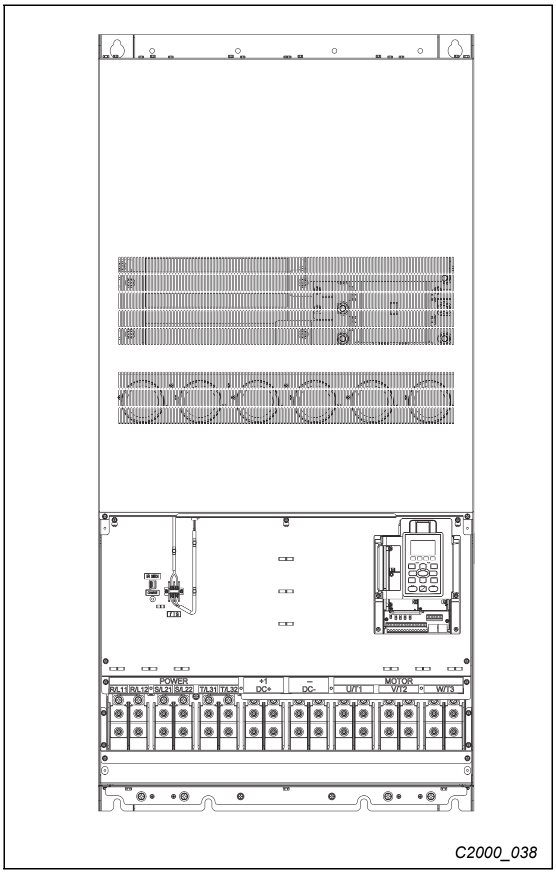


Fig. 5-32: View of frequency inverter frame H

Models	Max. wire gauge	Min. wire gauge	Torque (±10 %)
VFD2800C43A①		4/0 AWGx4 (107 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD3150C43A①		300MCMx4 (152 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD3550C43A①		300MCMx4 (152 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD4500C43A②		300MCMx4 (152 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD2800C43E-1①		3/0 AWGx4 (85 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD3150C43E-1①	300MCM x 4 (152 mm^2 x 4)	4/0 AWGx4 (107 mm^2 x 4)	M8 200 kg-cm (173 lb-in.) (19.62 Nm)
VFD3550C43E-1①		250MCMx4 (127 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD4500C43E-1②		300MCMx4 (152 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD2800C43E①		300MCMx4 (152 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD3150C43E①		4/0 AWGx4 (107 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD3550C43E①		300MCMx4 (152 mm^2 x 4)	
VFD4500C43E②		300MCMx4 (152 mm^2 x 4)	

Tab. 5-11: Usable wirings for main circuit terminals R/11, R12, S/21, S/22, T/31, T/32, U/T1, V/T2, W/T3, +1/DC+, –/DC–

① UL installations must use 600 V, 75 °C or 90 °C wire. Use copper wire only.

② need to use 90 °C wire.

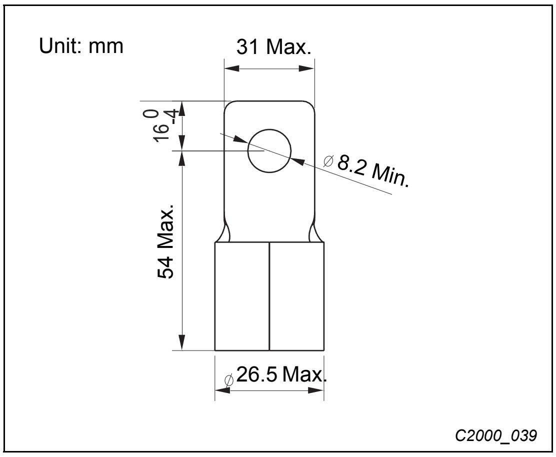


Fig. 5-33: Use of the ring lug

Specification of grounding wire ⏚: 300MCM x 4 [152 mm^2 x 4]; Torque: M8 200 kg-cm (173 lb-in.) (19.62 Nm) (±10 %)

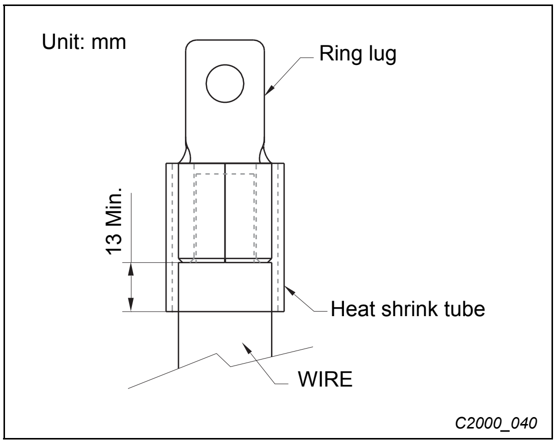
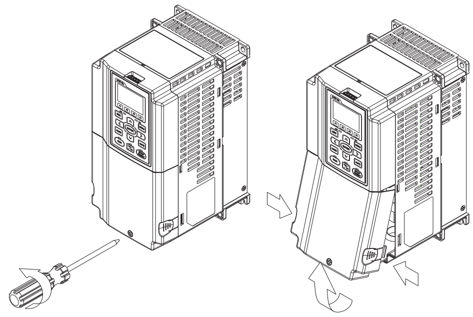
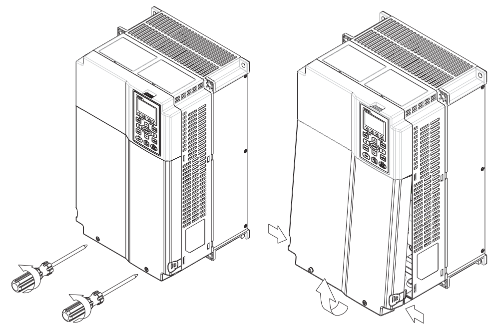
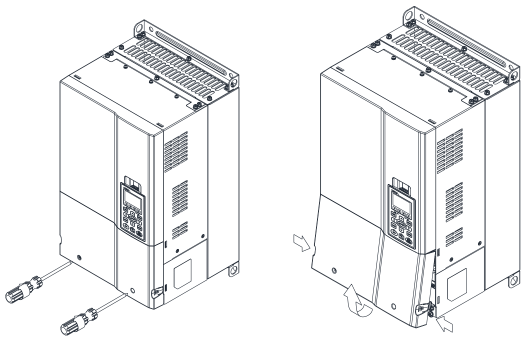


Fig. 5-34: Specification of heat shrink tubing that comply with UL (600C, YDPU2)

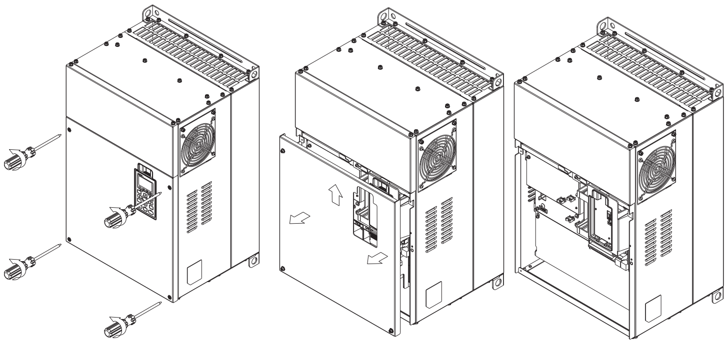
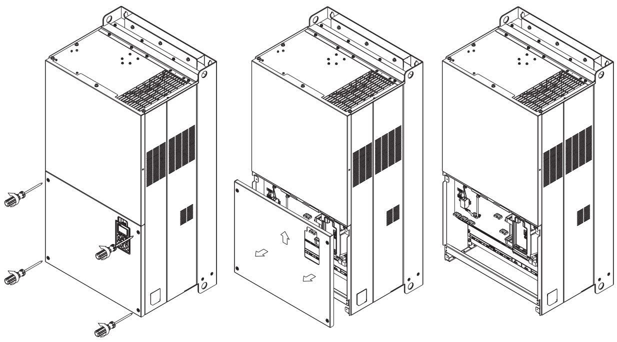
6 Control Terminals

Please remove the top cover before wiring the multi-function input and output terminals.

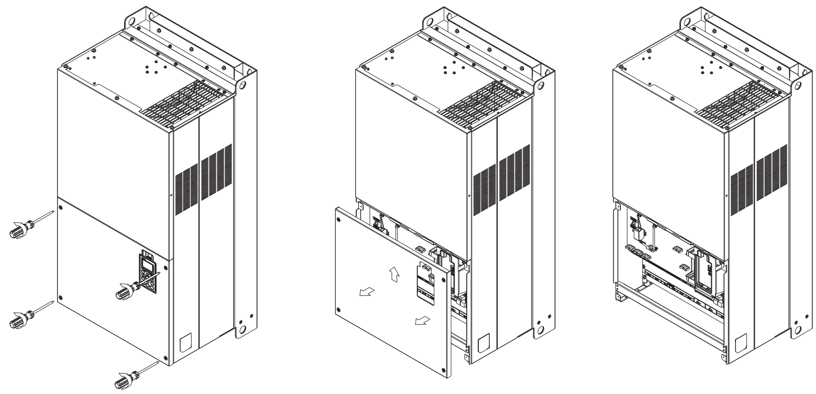
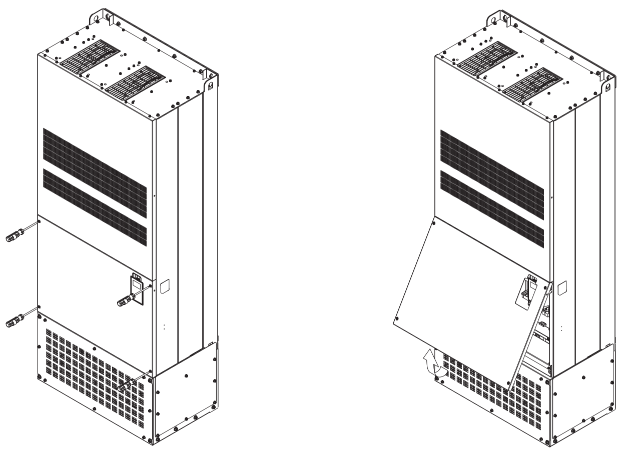
The drive appearances shown in the figures are for reference only, a real drive may look different.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Remove the cover for wiring</th></tr>
<tr>
<td>Frame A & B
Loosen the screws and press the tabs on both sides to remove the cover.
Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm [10.4–13 lb-in.]

C2000_402</td>
<td>Frame C
Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm [10.4–13 lb-in.]
Loosen the screws and press the tabs on both sides to remove the cover.

C2000_403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td colspan="2">Frame D0 & D
Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm [10.4–13 lb-in.] To remove the cover, lift it slightly and pull outward.
Loosen the screws and press the tabs on both sides to remove the cover.

C2000_404</td>
</tr>
</table>

Tab. 6-1: Frame A–D

Remove the cover for wiring.
Frame E Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm [10.4–13 lb-in.] To remove the cover, lift it slightly and pull outward.  C2000_405
Frame F Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm [10.4–13 lb-in.] To remove the cover, lift it slightly and pull outward.  C2000_406

Tab. 6-2: Frame E–F

Remove the cover for wiring.
Frame G Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm [10.4–13 lb-in.] To remove the cover, lift it slightly and pull outward.  C2000_407
Frame H Screw torque: 14–16 kg-cm [12.15–13.89 lb-in.] To remove the cover, lift it slightly and pull outward.  C2000_408

Tab. 6-3: Frame G–H

6.1 Specifications of control terminal

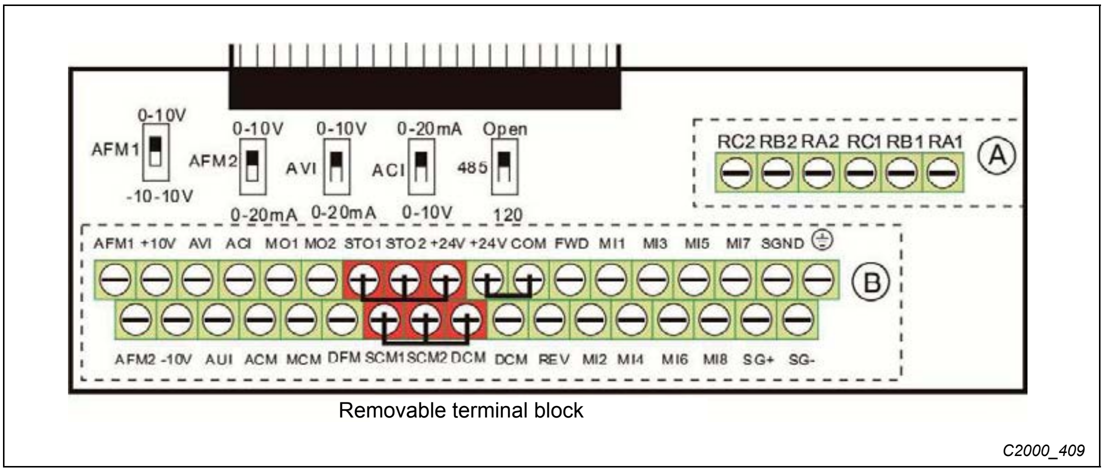


Fig. 6-1: Control terminals

Wire gauge: 26–16AWG (0.1281–1.318 mm^2)

Torque: (A) 5 kg-cm [4.31 Ib-in.] (0.49 Nm) (As shown in figure above)

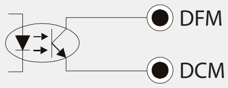
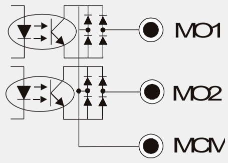
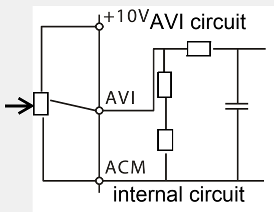
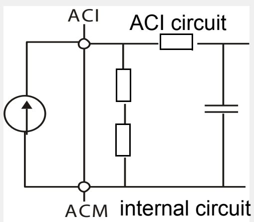
(B) 8 kg-cm [6.94 Ib-in.] (0.78 Nm) (As shown in figure above)

Wiring precautions

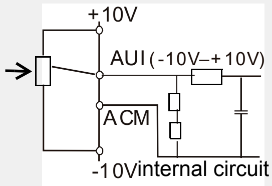
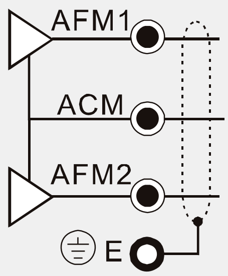
- Reserves 5 mm and properly install the wire into the terminal; fasten the installation by a slotted screwdriver. If the wire is stripped, sort the wire before install into the terminal.
- Flathead screwdriver: blade width 3.5 mm, tip thickness 0.6 mm.
- In the figure 6-1 above, the factory setting for SCM1-SCM2-DCM, STO1-STO2-+24V and +24 V-COM is short circuit and SINK mode (NPN); please refer to Chapter 4 Wiring for more detail.

Terminals	Terminal function	Factory setting (NPN mode)
+24V	Digital control signal common (Source)	+24 V 5 % 200 mA
COM	Digital control signal common (Sink)	Common for multi-function input terminals
FWD	Forward-stop command	FWD-DCM: ON → forward running OFF → deceleration to stop
REV	Reverse-stop command	REV-DCM: ON → reverse running OFF → deceleration to stop
MI1 – MI8	Multi-function input 1–8	Refer to parameters 02-01–02-08 to program the multi-function inputs MI1–MI8. Source mode ON: the activation current is 3.3 mA ≥11 V DC OFF: cut-off voltage ≤ 5 V DC Sink mode ON: the activation current is 3.3 mA ≤13 V DC OFF: cut-off voltage ≥ 19 V DC

Tab. 6-4: Description of the control terminals (1)

Terminals	Terminal function	Factory setting (NPN mode)
DFM	Digital frequency meter  C2000_410	Regard the pulse voltage as the output monitor signal Duty-cycle: 50 % Min. load impedance: 1 kΩ/100 pf Max. current: 30 mA Max. voltage: 30 V DC
DCM	Digital frequency signal common	
MO1	Multi-function output 1 (photocoupler)	The releases various monitor signals, such as drive in operation, frequency attained and overload indication, via transistor (open collector).
MO2	Multi-function output 2 (photocoupler)	 C2000_411
MCM	Multi-function output common	Max 48 V DC 50 mA
RA1	Multi-function relay output 1 (N.O.) a	Resistive Load: 3A (N.O.)/3A (N.C.) 250 V AC 5A (N.O.)/3A (N.C.) 30 V DC Inductive Load (COS 0.4): 1.2A (N.O.)/1.2A (N.C.) 250 V AC 2.0A (N.O.)/1.2A (N.C.) 30 V DC It is used to output each monitor signal, such as drive is in operation, frequency attained or overload indication
RB1	Multi-function relay output 1 (N.C.) b	
RC1	Multi-function relay common 1	
RA2	Multi-function relay output 2 (N.O.) a	
RB2	Multi-function relay output 2 (N.C.) b	
RC2	Multi-function relay common 2	
+10V	Potentiometer power supply	Analog frequency setting: +10 V DC 20 mA
-10V	Potentiometer power supply	Analog frequency setting: -10 V DC 20 mA
AVI	Analog voltage input  C2000_411_a	Impedance: 20 kΩ Range: 0–20 mA/4–20 mA/0–10 V = 0–Max. output frequency (Pr. 01-00) AVI switch, factory setting is 0–10 V
ACI	Analog current input  C2000_411_b	Impedance: 250 Ω Range: 0–20 mA/4–20 mA/0–10 V = 0 – Max. output frequency (Pr. 01-00) ACI Switch, factory setting is 4–20 mA

Tab. 6-4: Description of the control terminals (2)

Terminals	Terminal function	Factory setting (NPN mode)
AUI	Auxiliary analog voltage input  C2000_411_c	Impedance: 20 kΩ Range: -10–+10 V DC = 0 – max. output frequency (Pr. 01-00)
AFM1	Multi-function analog output  C2000_412	0–10 V max. output current 2 mA, max. load 5 kΩ -10–10 V maximum output current 2 mA, maximum load 5 kΩ output current: 2 mA max. Resolution: 0–10 V corresponds to max. operation frequency Range: 0–10 V → -10–+10 V AFM 1 switch, factory setting is 0–10 V
AFM2		0–10 V max. output current 2 mA, max. load 5 kΩ 0–20 mA max. load 500 Ω Output current: 20 mA max Resolution: 0–10 V corresponds to max. operation frequency Range: 0–10 V → 4–20 mA AFM 2 switch, factory setting is 0–10 V
ACM	Multi-function analog output common	Common for multi-function analog output terminals
STO1	Default setting is shorted Power removal safety function for EN 954-1 and IEC/EN 61508 When STO1–SCM1; STO2–SCM2 is activated, the activation current is 3.3 mA ≥11 V DC	
SCM1		
STO2		
SCM2		
SG+	Modbus RS485	
SG-		
SGND		
RJ-45	PIN 1,2,7,8: Reserved PIN 3, 6: SGND PIN 4: SG- PIN 5: SG+	

Tab. 6-4: Description of the control terminals (3)

NOTE

Wire size of analog control signals: 18 AWG (0.75 mm^2) with shielded wire.

6.2 Analog input terminals (AVI, ACI, AUI, ACM)

- Analog input signals are easily affected by external noise. Use shielded wiring and keep it as short as possible (<20 m) with proper grounding. If the noise is inductive, connecting the shield to terminal ACM can bring improvement.
- If the analog input signals are affected by noise from the , please connect a capacitor and ferrite core as indicated in the following diagram:

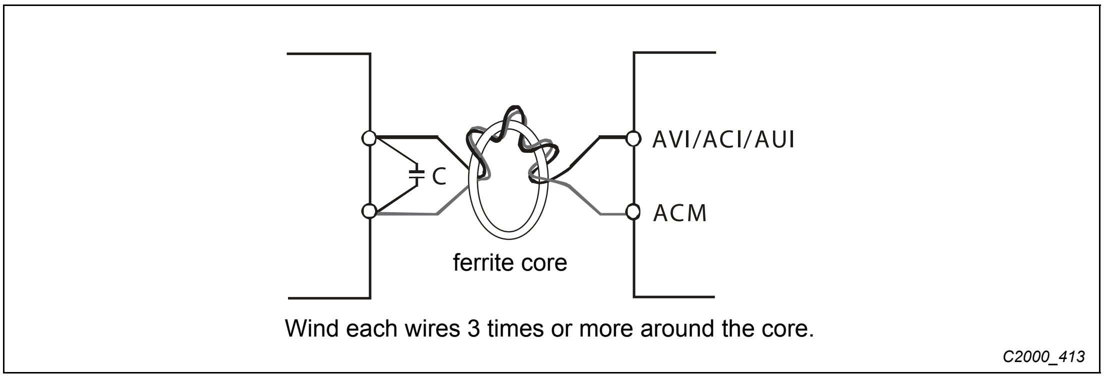


Fig. 6-2: Noise recuction by capacitator and ferrite core

Digital inputs (FWD, REV, MI1–MI8, COM)

- When using contacts or switches to control the digital inputs, please use high quality components to avoid contact bounce.
- The "COM" terminal is the common side of the photo-coupler. Any of wiring method, the "common point" of all photo-coupler must be the "COM".
- When the photo-coupler is using internal power supply, the switch connection for Sink and Source as below:

  MI-DCM: Sink mode

  MI-+24V: Source mode
- When the photo-coupler is using external power supply, please remove the short circuit cable between the +24V and COM terminals. The connection mode is Sink mode or Source mode is according to the below:

  The "+" of 24 V connecting to "COM: Sink mode

  The "–" of 24 V connecting to COM: Source mode

Transistor outputs (MO1, MO2, MCM)

- Make sure to connect the digital outputs to the right polarity.
- When connecting a relay to the digital outputs connect a surge absorber across the coil and check the polarity.

6.3 Remove the terminal block

① Loosen the screws by screwdriver. (As shown in figure below).

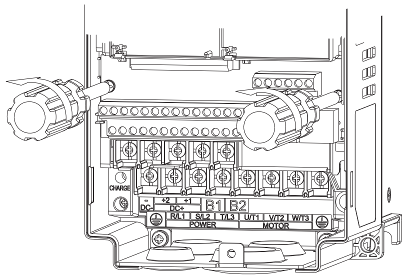


Fig. 6-3: Removing the screws

C2000_414

② Remove the control board by pulling it out for a distance 6–8 cm (as 1 in the figure 6-4) then lift the control board upward (as 2 in the figure 6-4).

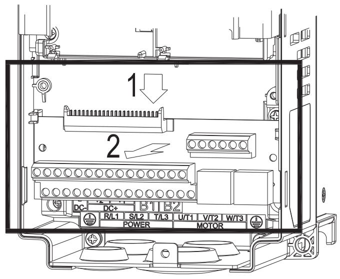


Fig. 6-4: Removing the control board

C2000_418

7 Optional Accessories

The optional accessories listed in this chapter are available upon request. Installing additional accessories to your drive would substantially improve the drive's performance. Please select an applicable accessory according to your need or contact the local distributor for suggestion.

7.1 All brake resistors and brake units used in AC motor drives

Applicable motor		125 % Braking torque ① 10 % ED						Max. brake torque②		
HP	kW	Braking torque [kg-m]	Brake unit VFDB④	Braking resistor series for each brake unit③		Resistor value spec. for each AC motor drive	Total braking current [A]	Min. resistor value [Ω]	Max. total braking current [A]	Peak power [kW]
1	0.7	0.5	—	BR080W200 x 1		80 W 200 Ω	1.9	63.3	6	2.3
2	1.5	1.0	—	BR200W091 x 1		200 W 91 Ω	4.2	47.5	8	3.0
3	2.2	1.5	—	BR300W070 x 1		300 W 70 Ω	5.4	38.0	10	3.8
5	3.7	2.5	—	BR400W040 x 1		400 W 40 Ω	9.5	19.0	20	7.6
7.5	5.5	3.7	—	BR1K0W020 x 1		1000 W 20 Ω	19	14.6	26	9.9
10	7.5	5.1	—	BR1K0W020 x 1		1000 W 20 Ω	19	14.6	26	9.9
15	11	7.5	—	BR1K5W013 x 1		1500 W 13 Ω	29	13.6	28	10.6
20	15	10.2	—	BR1K0W4P3 x 2	2 series	2000 W 8.6 Ω	44	8.3	46	17.5
25	18	12.2	—	BR1K0W4P3 x 2	2 series	2000 W 8.6 Ω	44	8.3	46	17.5
30	22	14.9	—	BR1K5W3P3 x 2	2 series	3000W 6.6 Ω	58	5.8	66	25.1
40	30	20.3	2015 x 2	BR1K0W5P1 x 2	2 series	4000 W 5.1 Ω	75	4.8	80	30.4
50	37	25.1	2022 x 2	BR1K2W3P9 x 2	2 series	4800 W 3.9 Ω	97	3.2	120	45.6
60	45	30.5	2022 x 2	BR1K5W3P3 x 2	2 series	6000 W 3.3 Ω	118	3.2	120	45.6
75	55	37.2	2022x3	BR1K2W3P9 x 2	2 series	7200 W 2.6 Ω	145	2.1	180	68.4
100	75	50.8	2022x4	BR1K2W3P9 x 2	2 series	9600 W 2 Ω	190	1.6	240	91.2
125	90	60.9	2022x4	BR1K5W3P3 x 2	2 series	12000 W 1.65 Ω	230	1.6	240	91.2

Tab. 7-1: Brake data for AC drive units with 230 V power supply

① Calculation for 125 % brake toque: (kw) x 125 % x0.8; where 0.8 is motor efficiency.
Because there is a resistor limit of power consumption, the longest operation time for 10 % ED is 10 sec (on: 10 sec/off: 90 sec).

② Please refer to the Brake Performance Curve for "Operation Duration & ED" vs. "Braking Current".

③ For heat dissipation, a resistor of 400 W or lower should be fixed to the frame and maintain the surface temperature below 50 °C; a resistor of 1000 W and above should maintain the surface temperature below 350 °C.

④ Please refer to VFDB series Braking Module Instruction for more detail on braking resistor.

Applicable motor		125 % Braking torque ① 10 % ED							Max. brake torque②		
HP	kW	Braking torque [kg-m]	Brake unit VFDB④	Braking resistor series for each brake unit③		Resistor value spec. for each AC motor drive	Total braking current [A]	Min. resistor value [Ω]	Max. total braking current [A]	Peak power [kW]	
1	0.7	0.5	—	BR080W750 x 1		80 W 750 Ω	1	190.0	4	3.0	
2	1.5	1.0	—	BR200W360 x 1		200 W 360 Ω	2.1	126.7	6	4.6	
3	2.2	1.5	—	BR300W250 x 1		300 W 250 Ω	3	108.6	7	5.3	
5	3.7	2.5	—	BR400W150 x 1		400 W 150 Ω	5.1	84.4	9	6.8	
5.5	4.0	2.7	—	BR1K0W075 x 1		1000 W 75 Ω	10.2	54.3	14	10.6	
7.5	5.5	3.7									
10	7.5	5.1	—	BR1K0W075 x 1		1000 W 75 Ω	10.2	47.5	16	12.2	
15	11	7.5	—	BR1K5W043 x 1		1500 W 43 Ω	17.6	42.2	18	13.7	
20	15	10.2	—	BR1K0W016 x 2	2 series	2000 W 32 Ω	24	26.2	29	22.0	
25	18	12.2	—	BR1K0W016 x 2	2 series	2000 W 32 Ω	24	23.0	33	25.1	
30	22	14.9	—	BR1K5W013 x 2	2 series	3000 W 26 Ω	29	23.0	33	25.1	
40	30	20.3	—	BR1K0W016 x 4	2 parallel, 2 series	4000 W 16 Ω	47.5	14.1	54	41.0	
50	37	25.1	4045 x 1	BR1K2W015 x 4	2 parallel, 2 series	4800 W 15 Ω	50	12.7	60	45.6	
60	45	30.5	4045 x 1	BR1K5W013 x 4	2 parallel, 2 series	6000 W 13 Ω	59	12.7	60	45.6	
75	55	37.2	4030 x 2	BR1K0W5P1 x 4	4 parallel	8000 W 10.2 Ω	76	9.5	80	60.8	
100	75	50.8	4045 x 2	BR1K2W015 x 4	2 parallel, 2 series	9600 W 7.5 Ω	100	6.3	120	91.2	
125	90	60.9	4045 x 2	BR1K5W013 x 4	2 parallel, 2 series	12000 W 6.5 Ω	117	6.3	120	91.2	
150	110	74.5	4110 x 1	BR1K2W015 x 10	5 parallel, 2 series	12000 W 6 Ω	126	6.0	126	95.8	
175	132	89.4	4160 x 1	BR1K5W012 x 12	6 parallel, 2 series	18000 W 4 Ω	190	4.0	190	144.4	
215	160	108.3	4160 x 1	BR1K5W012 x 12	6 parallel, 2 series	18000 W 4 Ω	190	4.0	190	144.4	
250	185	125.3	4185 x 1	BR1K5W012 x 14	7 parallel, 2 series	21000 W 3.4 Ω	225	3.4	225	172.1	
300	220	148.9	4110 x 2	BR1K2W015 x 10	5 parallel, 2 series	24000 W 3 Ω	252	3.0	252	190.5	
375	280	189.6	4160 x 2	BR1K5W012 x 12	6 parallel, 2 series	36000 W 2 Ω	380	2.0	380	288.8	
425	315	213.3	4160 x 2	BR1K5W012 x 12	6 parallel, 2 series	36000 W 2 Ω	380	2.0	380	288.8	
475	355	240.3	4185 x 2	BR1K5W012 x 14	7 parallel, 2 series	42000 W 1.7 Ω	450	1.7	450	344.2	

Tab. 7-2: Brake data for AC drive units with 460 V power supply

① Calculation for 125 % brake toque: (kw) x 125 % x0.8; where 0.8 is motor efficiency. Because there is a resistor limit of power consumption, the longest operation time for 10 % ED is 10 sec (on: 10 sec/off: 90 sec).

② Please refer to the Brake Performance Curve for "Operation Duration & ED" vs. "Braking Current".

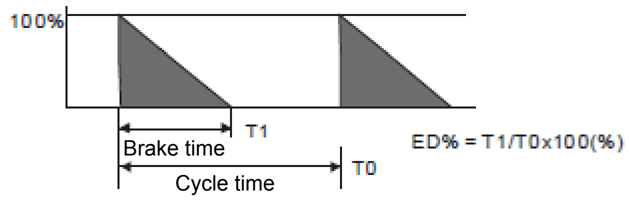
③ For heat dissipation, a resistor of 400 W or lower should be fixed to the frame and maintain the surface temperature below 50 °C; a resistor of 1000 W and above should maintain the surface temperature below 350 °C.

④ Please refer to VFDB series Braking Module Instruction for more detail on braking resistor.

NOTES

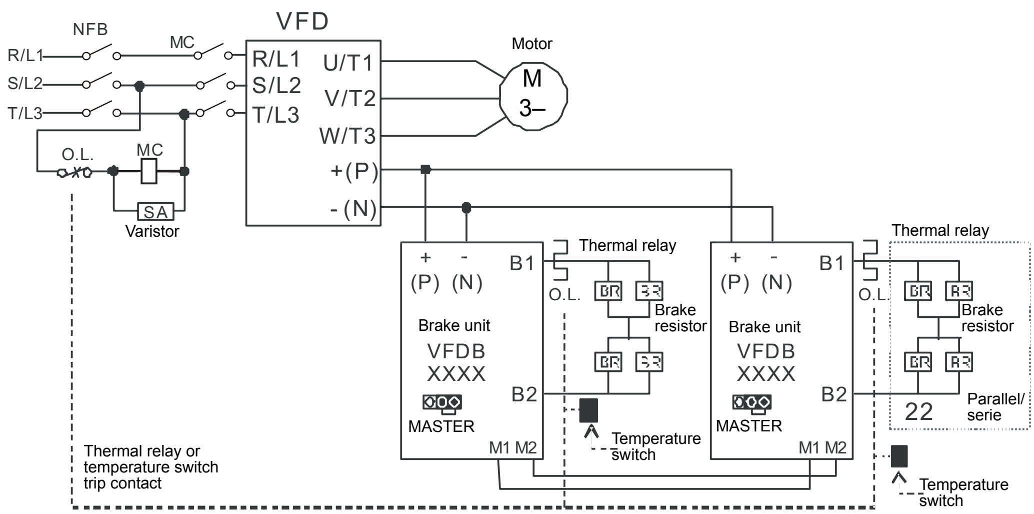
① Definition for brake usage ED %

Explanation: The definition of the brake usage ED (%) is for assurance of enough time for the brake unit and brake resistor to dissipate away heat generated by braking. When the brake resistor heats up, the resistance would increase with temperature, and brake torque would decrease accordingly. Recommended cycle time is one minute.



C2000_419

For safety concern, install an overload relay (O.L) between the brake unit and the brake resistor in conjunction with the magnetic contactor (MC) prior to the drive for abnormal protection. The purpose of installing the thermal overload relay is to protect the brake resistor from damage due to frequent brake, or due to brake unit keeping operating resulted from unusual high input voltage. Under such circumstance, just turn off the power to prevent damaging the brake resistor.



C2000_420

- When AC drive is equipped with a DC reactor, please read user manual to know the wiring method of input circuit of brake unit +(P).
- Do Not connect input circuit -(N) to the neutral point of the power system.

② If damage to the drive or other equipment is due to the fact that the brake resistors and brake modules in use are not provided by Delta, the warranty will be void.

③ Take into consideration the safety of the environment when installing the brake resistors. If the minimum resistance value is to be utilized, consult local dealers for the calculation of Watt figures.

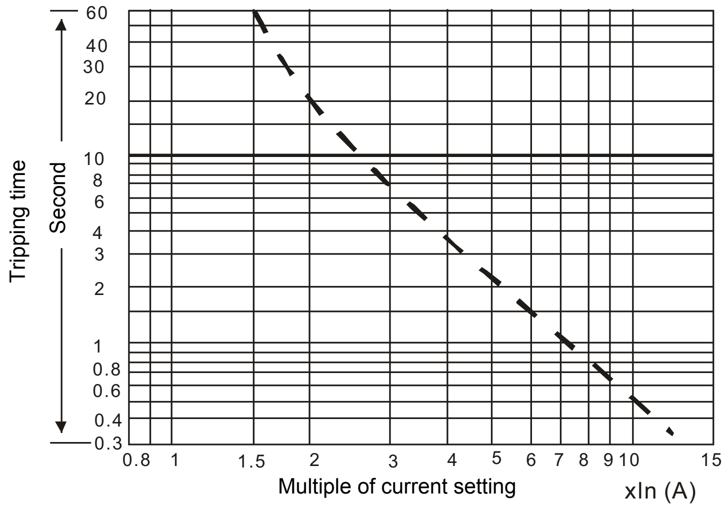
④ When using more than 2 brake units, equivalent resistor value of parallel brake unit can't be less than the value in the column "Minimum Equivalent Resistor Value for Each AC Drive" (the right-most column in the table 7-1 and table 7-2). Please read the wiring information in the user manual of brake unit thoroughly prior to operation.

NOTES

⑤ This chart is for normal usage; if the AC motor drive is applied for frequent braking, it is suggested to enlarge 2–3 times of the Watts.

⑥ Thermal relay:

Thermal relay selection is basing on its overload capability. A standard braking capacity for C2000 is 10 % ED (tripping time = 10 s). The figure below is an example of 406 V, 110 kw AC motor drive. It requires the thermal relay to take 260 % overload capacity in 10 s (host starting) and the braking current is 126 A. In this case, user should select a rated 50 A thermal relay. The property of each thermal relay may vary among different manufacturer, please carefully read specification.



C2000_421

7.2 Non-fuse circuit breaker

Comply with UL standard: Per UL 508, paragraph 45.8.4, part a.

The rated current of the breaker shall be 2–4 times of the maximum rated input current of AC motor drive.

3-phase 460 V	
Model	**Recommended non-fuse breaker [A]**
VFD007C43A/E	5
VFD015C43A/E	10
VFD022C43A/E	15
VFD040C43A/E	20
VFD037C43A/E	20
VFD055C43A/E	30
VFD075C43A/E	40
VFD110C43A/E	50
VFD150C43A/E	60
VFD185C43A/E	75
VFD220C43A/E	100
VFD300C43A/E	125
VFD370C43A/E/S/U	150
VFD450C43A/E/S/U	175
VFD550C43A/E	250
VFD750C43A/E	300
VFD900C43A/E	300
VFD1100C43A/E	400
VFD1320C43A/E	500
VFD1600C43A/E	600
VFD1850C43A/E	600
VFD2200C43A/E	800
VFD2800C43A/E	1000
VFD3150C43A/E	1200
VFD3550C43A/E	1350

3-phase 230 V	
Model	**Recommended non-fuse breaker [A]**
VFD007C23A	15
VFD015C23A	20
VFD022C23A	30
VFD037C23A	40
VFD055C23A	50
VFD075C23A	60
VFD110C23A	100
VFD150C23A	125
VFD185C23A	150
VFD220C23A	200
VFD300C23A/E	225
VFD370C23A/E	250
VFD450C23A/E	300
VFD550C23A/E	400
VFD750C23A/E	450
VFD900C23A/E	600

Tab. 7-3: Rated current for non-fuse circuit breaker

7.3 Fuse specification chart.

CAUTION:
- Use only the fuses comply with UL certificated.
- Use only the fuses comply with local regulations.

230 [V] model	Input current I [A]		Line fuse	
	Heavy duty	Normal duty	I [A]	Bussmann P/N
VFD007C23A	6.1	6.4	20	JJS-20
VFD015C23A	11	12	35	JJS-35
VFD022C23A	15	16	50	JJS-50
VFD037C23A	18.5	20	80	JJS-80
VFD055C23A	26	28	100	JJS-100
VFD075C23A	34	36	130	JJS-130
VFD110C23A	50	52	175	JJS-175
VFD150C23A	68	72	250	JJS-250
VFD185C23A	78	83	300	JJS-300
VFD220C23A	95	99	350	JJS-350
VFD300C23A/E	118	124	400	DLS-R-400
VFD370C23A/E	136	143	500	DLS-R-500
VFD450C23A/E	162	171	700	JJN-700
VFD550C23A/E	196	206	800	JJN-800
VFD750C23A/E	233	245	1000	JJN-1000
VFD900C23A/E	315	331	1000	KTU-1000

Tab. 7-4: Line fuses for s with 230 V power supply

460 [V] model	Input current I [A]		Line fuse	
	Heavy duty	Normal duty	I [A]	Bussmann P/N
VFD007C43A/E	4.1	4.3	10	JJS-10
VFD015C43A/E	5.6	5.9	15	JJS-15
VFD022C43A/E	8.3	8.7	20	JJS-20
VFD037C43A/E	13	14	30	JJS-30
VFD040C43A/E	14.5	15.5	35	JJS-35
VFD055C43A/E	16	17	45	JJS-45
VFD075C43A/E	19	20	70	JJS-70
VFD110C43A/E	25	26	90	JJS-90
VFD150C43A/E	33	35	125	JJS-125
VFD185C43A/E	38	40	125	JJS-125
VFD220C43A/E	45	47	150	JJS-150
VFD300C43A/E	60	63	200	JJS-200
VFD370C43/S/U	70	74	300	DLS-R-300
VFD450C43/S/U	96	101	350	DLS-R-350
VFD550C43A/E	108	114	400	DLS-R-400
VFD750C43A/E	149	157	600	DLS-R-600

Tab. 7-5: Line fuses for s with 460 V power supply

460 [V] model	Input current I [A]		Line fuse	
	Heavy duty	Normal duty	I [A]	Bussmann P/N
VFD900C43A/E	159	167	600	JJN-600
VFD1100C43A/E	197	207	800	JJS-800
VFD1320C43A/E	228	240	800	KTU-800
VFD1600C43A/E	285	300	800	KTU-800
VFD1850C43A/E	361	380	800	KTU-800
VFD2200C43A/E	380	400	1000	KTU-1000
VFD2800C43A/E	469	494	1200	KTU-1200
VFD3150C43A/E	527	555	1200	KTU-1200
VFD3550C43A/E	594	625	1600	KTU-1600
VFD4500C43A/E	816	866	①	①

Tab. 7-5: Line fuses for s with 460 V power supply

① Contact Delta Electronics or an authorized distributor for corresponding fuse of VFD4500C43A/E.

7.4 AC/DC reactor

When the AC motor drive is connected directly to a large-capacity power transformer (600 kVA or above) or when a phase lead capacitor is switched, excess peak currents may occur in the power input circuit due to the load changes and the converter section may be damaged. To avoid this, it is recommend to use a serial connected AC input reactor (3 %) at the AC motor drive mains input side to reduce the current and improve the input power efficiency.

7.4.1 AC input/output reactor

200 V–230 V/50–60 Hz

Type	KW	HP	Rated Amps of AC reactor [A_{rms}]	Max. continuous Amps [A_{rms}]	3 % Impedance (mH)	5 % Impedance [mH]	Built-in DC reactor	3 % Input AC reactor Delta part #
007	0.75	1	5	8.64	2.536	4.227	X	N/A
015	1.5	2	8	12.78	1.585	2.642	X	N/A
022	2.2	3	11	18	1.152	1.922	X	N/A
037	3.7	5	17	28.8	0.746	1.243	X	N/A
055	5.5	7.5	25	43.2	0.507	0.845	X	N/A
075	7.5	10	33	55.8	0.32	0.534	X	DR033AP320
110	11	15	49	84.6	0.216	0.359	X	DR049AP215
150	15	20	65	111.6	0.163	0.271	X	DR065AP162
185	18.5	25	75	127.8	0.169	0.282	X	N/A
220	22	30	90	154.8	0.141	0.235	X	N/A
300	30	40	120	205.2	0.106	0.176	O	N/A
370	37	50	146	250.2	0.087	0.145	O	N/A
450	45	60	180	307.8	0.070	0.117	O	N/A
550	55	75	215	367.2	0.059	0.098	O	N/A
750	75	100	255	435.6	0.049	0.083	O	N/A
900	90	125	346	592.2	0.037	0.061	O	N/A

Tab. 7-6: AC reactors for s with 230V power supply

380 V–460 V/50–60 Hz

Type	KW	HP	Rated Amps of AC reactor [A_{rms}]	Max. continuous Amps [A_{rms}]	3 % Impedance [mH]	5 % Impedance [mH]	Built-in DC reactor	3 % Input AC reactor Delta part #
007	0.75	1	3	5.22	8.102	13.502	X	N/A
015	1.5	2	4	6.84	6.077	10.127	X	N/A
022	2.2	3	6	10.26	4.050	6.752	X	N/A
037	3.7	5	9	14.58	2.700	4.501	X	N/A
040	4	5	10.5	17.1	2.315	3.858	X	N/A
055	5.5	7.5	12	19.8	2.025	3.375	X	N/A
075	7.5	10	18	30.6	1.174	1.957	X	DR018A0117
110	11	15	24	41.4	0.881	1.468	X	DR024AP880
150	15	20	32	54	0.66	1.101	X	DR032AP660
185	18.5	25	38	64.8	0.639	1.066	X	N/A
220	22	30	45	77.4	0.541	0.900	X	N/A
300	30	40	60	102.6	0.405	0.675	O	N/A
370	37	50	73	124.2	0.334	0.555	O	N/A
450	45	60	91	154.8	0.267	0.445	O	N/A
550	55	75	110	189	0.221	0.368	O	N/A
750	75	100	150	257.4	0.162	0.270	O	N/A
900	90	125	180	307.8	0.135	0.225	O	N/A
1100	110	150	220	376.2	0.110	0.184	O	N/A
1320	132	175	260	444.6	0.098	0.162	O	N/A
1600	160	215	310	531	0.078	0.131	O	N/A
1850	185	250	370	633.6	0.066	0.109	O	N/A
2200	220	300	460	786.6	0.054	0.090	O	N/A
2800	280	375	550	941.4	0.044	0.074	O	N/A
3150	315	420	616	1053	0.039	0.066	O	N/A
3550	355	475	683	1168.2	0.036	0.060	O	N/A
4500	450	600	866	1468.8	0.028	0.047	O	N/A

Tab. 7-7: DC reactors for s with 460 V power supply

7.4.2 DC reactor

200 V–230 V/50–60 Hz

Type	kW	HP	Rated Amps of AC reactor	Max. continuous Amps	Inductance [mH]
007	0.75	1	5	8.64	5.857
015	1.5	2	8	12.78	3.660
022	2.2	3	11	18	2.662
037	3.7	5	17	28.8	1.722
055	5.5	7.5	25	43.2	1.172
075	7.5	10	33	55.8	0.851
110	11	15	49	84.6	0.574
150	15	20	65	111.6	0.432
185	18.5	25	75	127.8	0.391
220	22	30	90	154.8	0.325

Tab. 7-8: DC reactors for s with 230 V power supply

380 V–460 V/50–60 Hz

Type	kW	HP	Rated Amps of AC reactor	Max. continuous Amps	Inductance [mH]
007	0.75	1	3	5.22	18.709
015	1.5	2	4	6.84	14.031
022	2.2	3	6	10.26	9.355
037	3.7	5	9	14.58	6.236
040	4	5	10.5	17.1	5.345
055	5.5	7.5	12	19.8	4.677
075	7.5	10	18	30.6	3.119
110	11	15	24	41.4	2.338
150	15	20	32	54	1.754
185	18.5	25	38	64.8	1.477
220	22	30	45	77.4	1.247

Tab. 7-9: DC reactors for s with 460 V power supply

7.4.3 THD

Motor drive spec.	Without built-in DC reactor			With built in DC reactor	
Reactor spec.	3 % Input AC reactor	5 % Input AC reactor	4 % DC reactor	3 % Input AC reactor	5 % Input AC reactor
5th	38.5 %	30.8 %	25.5 %	27.01 %	25.5 %
7th	15.3 %	9.4 %	18.6 %	9.54 %	8.75 %
11th	7.1 %	6.13 %	7.14 %	4.5 %	4.2 %
13th	3.75 %	3.15 %	0.48 %	0.22 %	0.17 %
THDi	43.6 %	34.33 %	38.2 %	30.5 %	28.4 %

Tab. 7-10: Harmonic distortion with different AC and DC reactors

NOTE

THDi may have some difference due to different installation conditions and environment. According to IEC 61000-3-12, DC reactor is designed with 4 % system impedance, and AC reactor is designed with 3 % system impedance.

7.5 Zero phase reactors

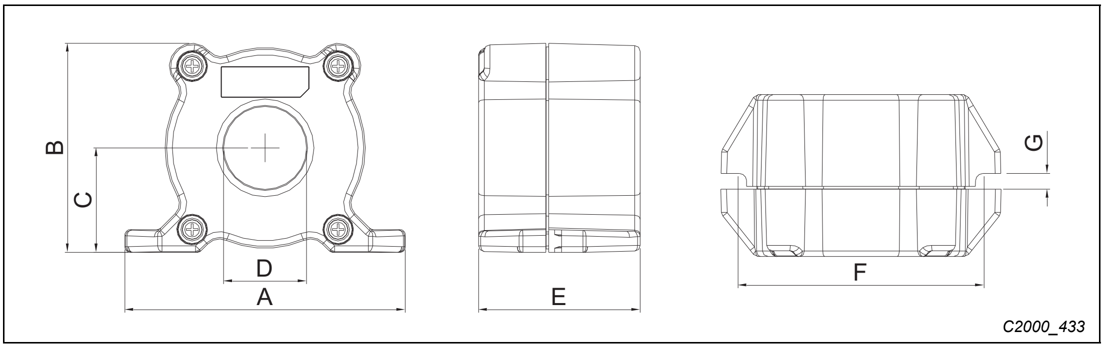


Fig. 7-1: Dimension drawing

UNIT: mm (inch)

Model	A	B	C	D	E	F	G (Ø)	Torque
RF008X00A	98 (3.858)	73 (2.874)	36.5 (1.437	29 (1.142)	56.5 (2.224)	86 (3.386)	5.5 (0.217)	< 10 kgf/cm^2
RF004X00A110	110 (4.331)	87.5 (3.445)	43.5 (1.713)	36 (1.417)	53 (2.087)	96 (3.780)	5.5 (0.217)	< 10 kgf/cm^2

Tab. 7-11: Dimensions

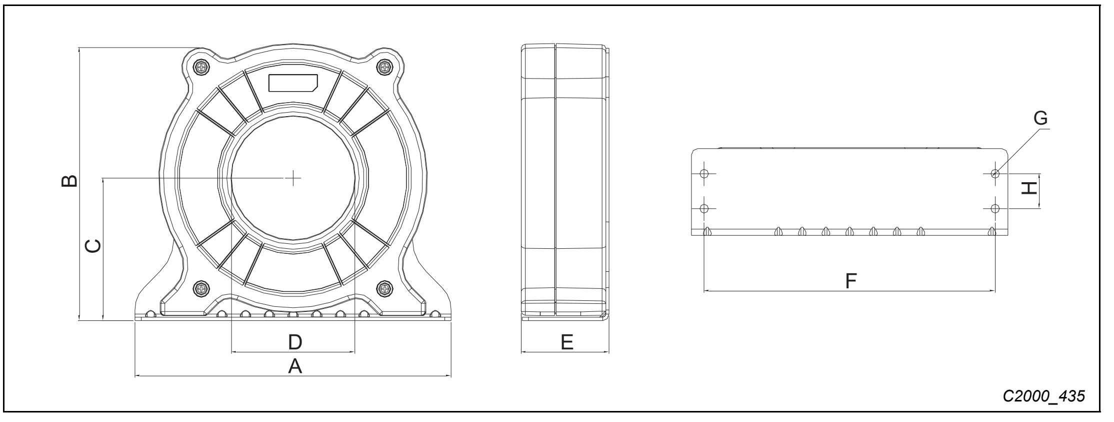


Fig. 7-2: Dimension drawing

UNIT: mm (inch)

Model	A	B	C	D	E	F	G (Ø)	H	Torque
RF002X00A	200 (7.874)	172.5 (6.791)	90 (3.543)	78 (3.071)	55.5 (2.185)	184 (7.244)	5.5 (0.217)	22 (0.866)	<45 kgf/cm^2

Tab. 7-12: Dimensions

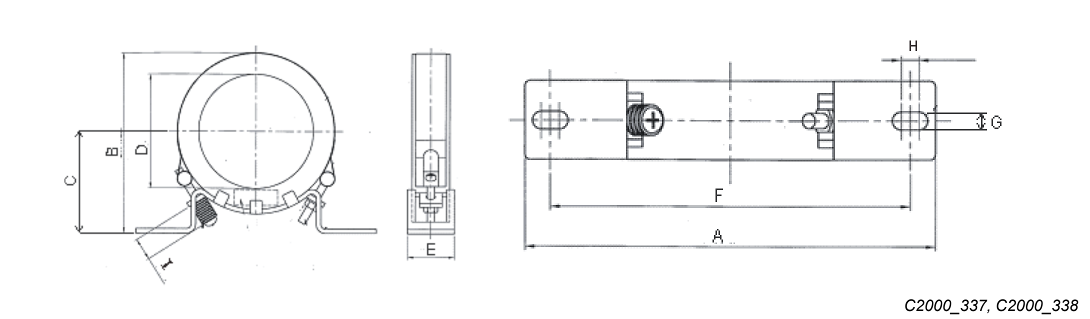


Fig. 7-3: Dimension drawing

UNIT: mm (inch)

Model	A	B	C	D	E	F	G (Ø)	H	I
RF300X00A	241 (9.488)	217 (8.543)	114 (4.488)	155 (6.102)	42 (1.654)	220 (8.661)	6.5 (0.256)	7.0 (0.276	20 (0.787)

Tab. 7-13: Dimensions

Reactor model (note)	Recommended wire size		Wiring method	Qty	Corresponding motor drives
RF008X00A	≤ 8 AWG	≤ 8.37 mm^2	Diagram A	1	VFD007C23A; VFD015C23A; VFD022C23A; VFD037C23A; VFD007C43A; VFD015C43A; VFD022C43A; VFD037C43A; VFD040C43A VFD055C43A
RF004X00A	≤ 4 AWG	≤ 21.15 mm^2	Diagram A	1	VFD055C23A; VFD075C23A; VFD110C23A; VFD110C43A; VFD150C43A; VFD075C43A; VFD110C43A; VFD150C43A
RF002X00A	≤ 2 AWG	≤ 33.62 mm^2	Diagram A	1	VFD150C23A; VFD185C23A; VFD220C23A; VFD300C23A; VFD370C23A; VFD185C43A; VFD220C43A; VFD300C43A; VFD370C43A; VFD450C43A; VFD550C43A; VFD750C43A
RF300X00A	≤ 300 MCM	≤ 152 mm^2	Diagram A	1	VFD450C23A; VFD550C23A; VFD750C23A; VFD900C23A; VFD900C43A; VFD1100C43A; VFD1320C43A; VFD1600C43A; VFD1850C43A; VFD2200C43A; VFD2800C43A; VFD3150C43A; VFD3550C43A; VFD4500C43A

Tab. 7-14: Wire gauge

NOTE 600 V insulated cable wire.

Diagram A

Please put all wires through at least one core without winding.

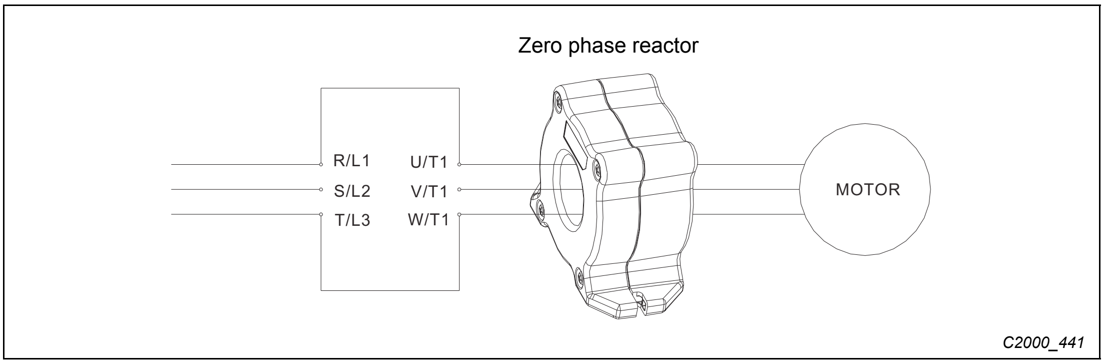


Fig. 7-4: Wiring of the zero phase reactor

NOTES

- The table 7-14 gives approximate wire size for the zero phase reactors but the selection is ultimately governed by the type and diameter of cable fitted i.e. the cable must fit through the center hole of zero phase reactors.
- Only the phase conductors should pass through, not the earth core or screen.
- When long motor output cables are used an output zero phase reactor may be required to reduce radiated emissions from the cable.

7.6 EMI filter

Model	Input current	Applicable EMI filter	Zero phase reactor	CE cable length		Radiation emission
				Default carrier frequency		Default carrier frequency
				EN61800-3 C1	EN61800-3 C2	EN61800-3 C2
VFD007C23A	6.4 A	EMF021A23A	RF008X00A	50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD015C23A	12 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD022C23A	16 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD037C23A	20 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD055C23A	28 A	EMF056A23A	RF004X00A	50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD075C23A	36 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD110C23A	52 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD150C23A	76 A	KMF3100A	RF002X00A	50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD185C23A	83 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD220C23A	99 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD300C23A	124 A	B84143D0150R127		50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD370C23A	143 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD450C23A	171 A	B84143B0250S020	RF300X00A	50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD550C23A	206 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD750C23A	245 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD900C23A	331 A	B84143B0400S020		50 m	100 m	Pass

Tab. 7-15: Assignment of EMI filters (1)

Model	Input current	Applicable EMI filter	Zero phase reactor	CE cable length		Radiation emission
				Default carrier frequency		Default carrier frequency
				EN61800-3 C1	EN61800-3 C2	EN61800-3 C2
VFD007C43A	4.3 A	EMF014A43A	RF008X00A	50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD015C43A	5.9 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD022C43A	8.7 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD037C43A	14 A	EMF018A43A		50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD040C43A	15.5 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD055C43A	17 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD075C43A	20 A	EMF039A43A	RF004X00A	50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD110C43A	26 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD150C43A	35 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD185C43A	40 A	KMF370A	RF002X00A	50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD220C43A	47 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD300C43A	63 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD370C43A	74 A	B84143D0150R127		50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD450C43A	101 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD550C43A	114 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD750C43A	157 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD900C43A	167 A	B84143D0200R127	RF300X00A	50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD1100C43A	207 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD1320C43A	240 A	MIF3400B		50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD1600C43A	300 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD1850C43A	380 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD2200C43A	400 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD2800C43A	494 A	MIF3800		50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD3150C43A	555 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD3550C43A	625 A			50 m	100 m	Pass
VFD4500C43A	866 A	B84143B1000S020		50 m	100 m	Pass

Tab. 7-15: Assignment of EMI filters (2)

EMI filter installation

All electrical equipment, including AC motor drives, will generate high-frequency/low-frequency noise and will interfere with peripheral equipment by radiation or conduction when in operation. By using an EMI filter with correct installation, much interference can be eliminated. It is recommended to use DELTA EMI filter to have the best interference elimination performance.

We assure that it can comply with following rules when AC motor drive and EMI filter are installed and wired according to user manual:

- **EN61000-6-4**
- **EN61800-3: 1996**
- **EN55011 (1991) Class A group 1 (1st environment, restricted distribution)**

General precaution

① EMI filter and AC motor drive should be installed on the same metal plate.

② Please install AC motor drive on footprint EMI filter or install EMI filter as close as possible to the AC motor drive.

③ Please wire as short as possible.

④ Metal plate should be grounded.

⑤ The cover of EMI filter and AC motor drive or grounding should be fixed on the metal plate and the contact area should be as large as possible.

Choose suitable motor cable and precautions

Improper installation and choice of motor cable will affect the performance of EMI filter. Be sure to observe the following precautions when selecting motor cable.

① Use the cable with shielding (double shielding is the best).

② The shielding on both ends of the motor cable should be grounded with the minimum length and maximum contact area.

③ Remove any paint on metal saddle for good ground contact with the plate and shielding.

Remove any paint on metal saddle for good ground contact with the plate and shielding.

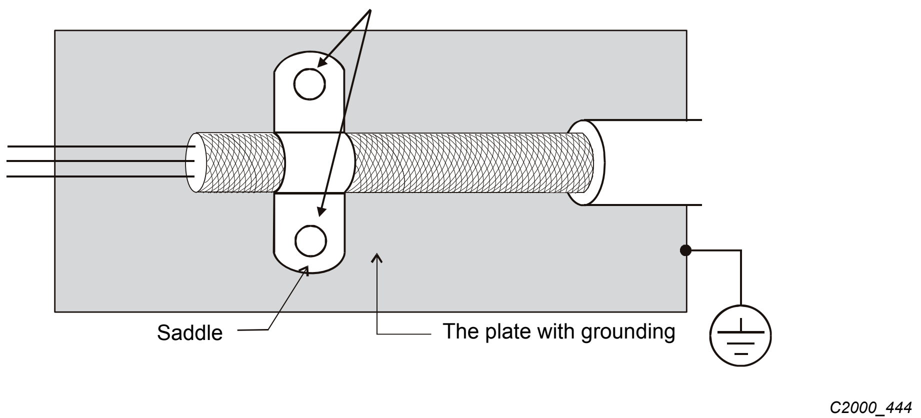


Fig. 7-5: Grounding of a shielded cable

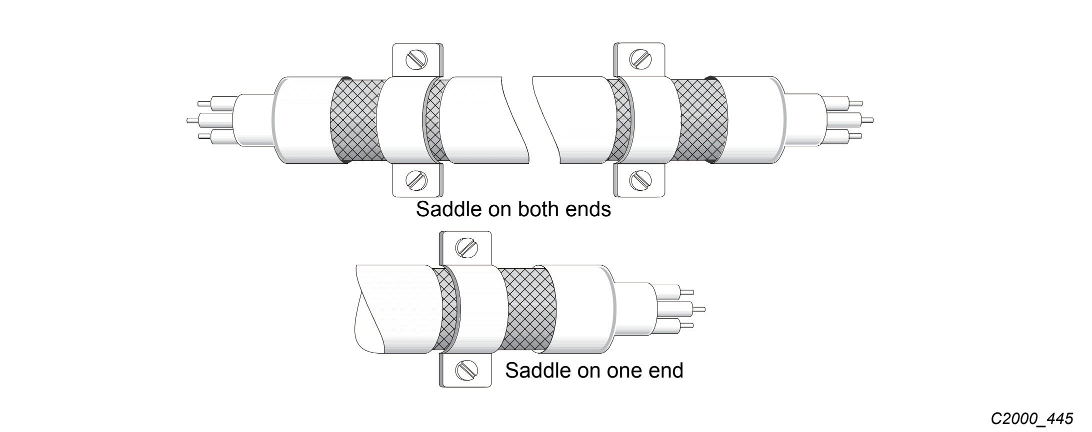


Fig. 7-6: Mounting of the saddles

The length of motor cable

When motor is driven by an AC motor drive of PWM type, the motor terminals will experience surge voltages easily due to components conversion of AC motor drive and cable capacitance. When the motor cable is very long (especially for the 460 V series), surge voltages may reduce insulation quality. To prevent this situation, please follow the rules below:

- Use a motor with enhanced insulation.
- Connect an output reactor (optional) to the output terminals of the AC motor drive.
- The length of the cable between AC motor drive and motor should be as short as possible (10–20 m or less)
- For models 5.5 kW and above:

Insulation level of motor	1000 V	1300 V	1600 V
460 V AC input voltage	20 m	100 m	400 m
230 V AC input voltage	400 m	400 m	400 m

Tab. 7-16: Length of motor cable

- For models 3.7 kW and less.

Insulation level of motor	1000 V	1300 V	1600 V
460 V AC input voltage	20 m	100 m	400 m
230 V AC input voltage	400 m	400 m	400 m

Tab. 7-17: Length of motor cable

NOTES

Never connect phase lead capacitors or surge absorbers to the output terminals of the AC motor drive:

- If the length is too long, the stray capacitance between cables will increase and may cause leakage current. It will activate the protection of over current, increase leakage current or not insure the correction of current display. The worst case is that AC motor drive may damage.
- If more than one motor is connected to the AC motor drive, the total wiring length is the sum of the wiring length from AC motor drive to each motor.
- For the 460 V series AC motor drive, when an overload relay is installed between the drive and the motor to protect motor over heating, the connecting cable must be shorter than 50 m. However, an overload relay malfunction may still occur. To prevent the malfunction, install an output reactor (optional) to the drive or lower the carrier frequency setting (Pr. 00-17).
- When a thermal O/L relay protected by motor is used between AC motor drive and motor, it may malfunction (especially for 460 V series), even if the length of motor cable is only 165 ft (50 m) or less. To prevent it, please use AC reactor and/or lower the carrier frequency (Pr. 00-17 PWM carrier frequency).

7.7 Digital keypad

7.7.1 KPC-CE01

Fig. 7-7: Functions of the keypad

A Main display
Display frequency, current voltage and error etc.

B Status indicator
F: Frequency command
H: Output frequency
U: User defined units
ERR: CAN error indicator
RUN: CAN run indicator

C Function
(Refer to the chart follows for detail description)

C2000_448

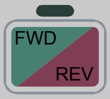
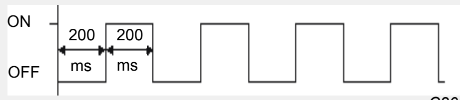
Key	Description
ESC	ESC key Press ESC key to return to the previous page. It also functions as a return to last category key in the sub-menu.
MENU	Menu key Press MENU key under any condition will return to the main MENU. Menu content: ① Parameter detail ② Copy parameter ③ Keypad locked ④ PLC function
ENTER	ENTER key Press ENTER and go to the next level. If it is the last level then press ENTER to execute the command.
HAND	HAND ON key ① HAND key will operates according to the parameter settings when the source of HAND master frequency command and the source of HAND operation command is properly set. The factory setting of the source command for frequency and operation are from the digital keypad. ② Press HAND key in stop status, the drive setting switches to the parameter setting of HAND. Press HAND key in during operation, the drive will come to stop then switches to the parameter setting of HAND. ③ When process complete: H/A LED ON.

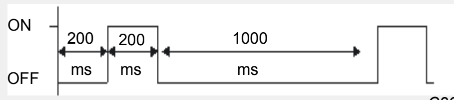
Tab. 7-18: Keys of the keypad

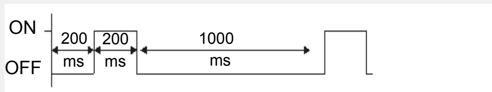
Key	Description
AUTO	Auto operation key ① AUTO function executes according to the parameter settings of the source of AUTO frequency and AUTO operation. The factory setting is the external terminal (source of operation is 4–20 mA). ② Press the ATUO key in stop status, the drivel switches to auto-setting. Press the auto key during operation status, the drivel will come to stop and switch to auto-setting. ③ When process complete: H/A LED is OFF.
FWD/REV	Operation direction key ① FWD/REV key controls the operation direction but will NOT activate the drive. FWD: forward, REV: reverse. ② The drive operates in the direction as shown by the LED light.
RUN	Start key ① This button is functional only when the keypad is the source of the command. ② This button allows the motor drive to run by following its settings. See description of LED functions for LED status. ③ Press repeatedly the "RUN" button is allow while the motor drive is stopping.
STOP	Stop key ① STOP key has the highest priority in command. ② Press STOP key, the drive will come to stop under any condition. ③ The RESET key can be used to reset the drive when faults occur. If the RESET key is not responding, check MENU ⟶ Fault Records and check the most recent fault.

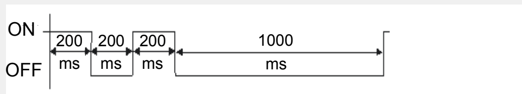
Tab. 7-18: Keys of the keypad

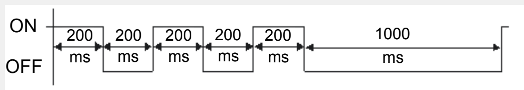
Descriptions of LED functions

<table>
<tr><th>LED</th><th>Descriptions</th></tr>
<tr><td>
</td><td>Steady ON: operation indicator of the AC motor drive, including DC brake, zero speed, standby, restart after fault and speed search.
Blinking: drive is decelerating to stop or in the status of base block.
Steady OFF: drive doesn't execute the operation command.</td></tr>
<tr><td>
</td><td>Steady ON: stop indicator of the AC motor drive.
Blinking: drive is in the standby status.
Steady OFF: drive doesn't execute "STOP" command.</td></tr>
<tr><td>
</td><td>Operation direction LED [green light = forward]; [red light = reversely]
Steady ON: the drive is running forward.
Blinking: the drive is changing direction.
Steady OFF: the drive is running reversely.</td></tr>
<tr><td>CANopen – "RUN"</td><td>RUN (green light):
<table>
<tr><th>LED status</th><th>Condition/state</th></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>CANopen at initial No LED</td></tr>
<tr><td>Blinking</td><td>CANopen at pre-operation


C2000_450_c</td></tr>
<tr><td>Single flash</td><td>CANopen at stopped


C2000_450_d</td></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>CANopen at operation status No LED</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>CANopen – "ERR"</td><td>ERR (red light):
<table>
<tr><th>LED status</th><th>Condition/state</th></tr>
<tr><td>OFF</td><td>No Error</td></tr>
<tr><td>Single flash</td><td>One message fail


C2000_450_e</td></tr>
<tr><td>Double flash</td><td>Guarding fail or heartbeat fail


C2000_450_f</td></tr>
<tr><td>Triple flash</td><td>SYNC fail


C2000_3450_g</td></tr>
<tr><td>ON</td><td>Bus off</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 7-19: LED functions

7.7.2 Dimension

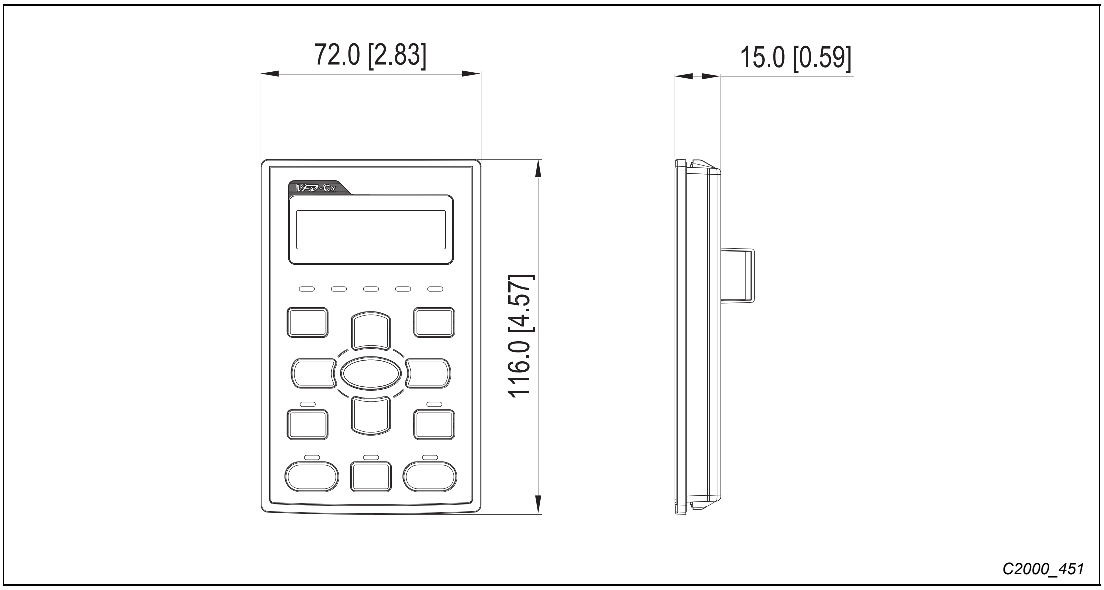


Fig. 7-8: Dimensions of the digital keypad

7.7.3 RJ45 extension lead for digital keypad

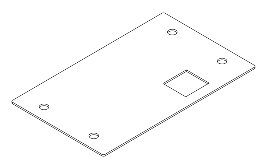
Part #	Description
CBC-K3FT	3 feet RJ45 extension lead (approximately 0.9 m)
CBC-K5FT	5 feet RJ45 extension lead (approximately 1.5 m)
CBC-K7FT	7 feet RJ45 extension lead (approximately 2.1 m)
CBC-K10FT	10 feet RJ45 extension lead (approximately 3 m)
CBC-K16FT	16 feet RJ45 extension lead (approximately 4.9 m)

Tab. 7-20: RJ45 extension leads

7.8 Panel mounting (MKC-KPPK)

For MKC-KPPK model, user can choose wall mounting or embedded mounting, protection level is IP56.

Applicable to the digital keypads (KPC-CC01 & KPC-CE01).



Screw	Torque
M12*8	340-420 kg-cm [295.1-364.6 lb-in.]

Fig. 7-9: Wall mounting

C2000_453

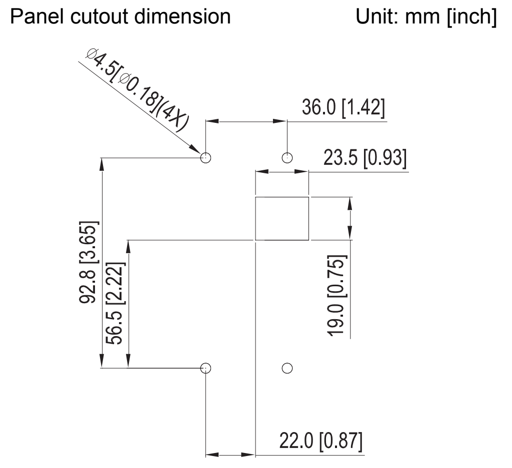


Fig. 7-10: Wall mounting

C2000_453_b

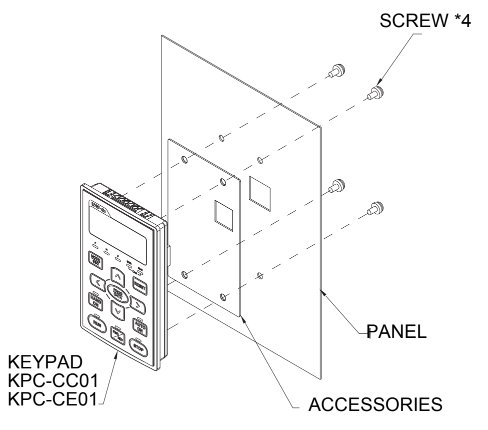
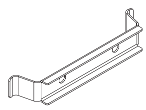


Fig. 7-11: Wall mounting

C2000_454

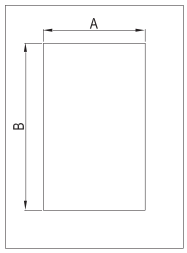


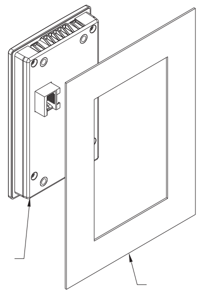
Screw	Torque
M12*8	340-420 kg-cm [295.1-364.6 lb-in.]

Fig. 7-12: Embedded mounting

C2000_453_a

Panel cutout dimension Unit: mm [inch]





Normal cutout dimension

Panel thickness	1.2 mm	1.6 mm	2.0 mm
A	66.4 [2.614]		
B	110.2 [4.339]	111.3 [4.382]	112.5 [4.429]

Deviation: ±0.15 mm /±0.0059 inch

Cutout dimension (Waterproof level: IP56)

Panel thickness	1.2 mm	1.6 mm	2.0 mm
A	66.4 [2.614]		
B	110.8 [4.362]		

Deviation: ±0.15 mm /±0.0059 inch

Fig. 7-13: Embedded mounting

C2000_453_c

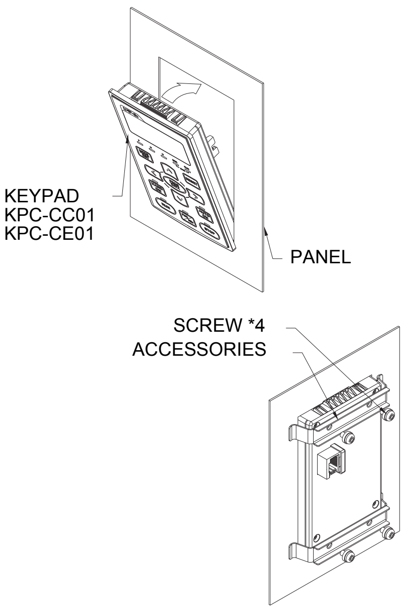


Fig. 7-14: Embedded mounting

C2000_454_a, C2000_454_b

7.9 Conduit box kit

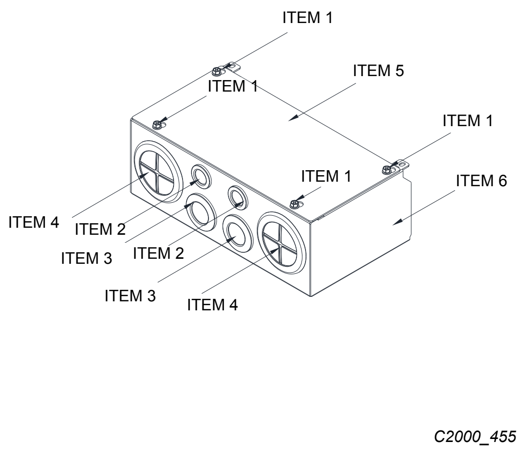
■ Appearance

Frame D0

Applicable models
VFD370C43S/43U; VFD450SC43S/43U;

Model number [MKC-D0N1CB]

ITEM	Description	Qty.
1	Screw M5*0.8*10L	4
2	Bushing rubber 28	2
3	Bushing rubber 44	2
4	Bushing rubber 73	2
5	Conduit box cover	1
6	Conduit box base	1

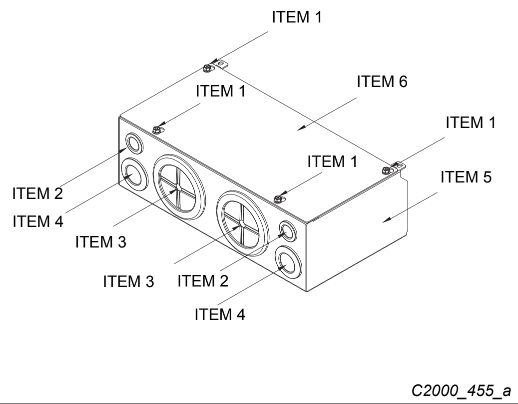


Frame D

Applicable models
VFD300C23A/23E; VFD370C23A/23E; VFD370C43A/43E; VFD450C43A/43E; VFD550C43A/43E; VFD750C43A/43E

Model number [MKC-DN1CB]

ITEM	Description	Qty.
1	Screw M5*0.8*10L	4
2	Bushing rubber 28	2
3	Bushing rubber 44	2
4	Bushing rubber 73	2
5	Conduit box cover	1
6	Conduit box base	1



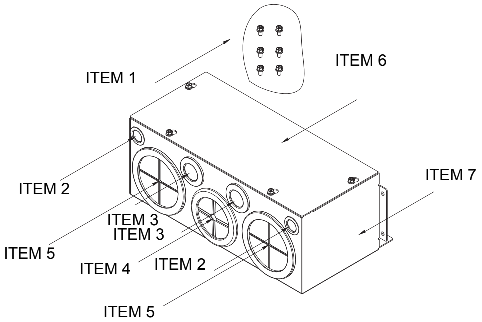
Tab. 7-21: Conduit box for frames D0 and D

Frame E

Applicable models
VFD370C43S/43U; VFD450SC43S/43U;

Model number [MKC-D0N1CB]

ITEM	Description	Qty.
1	Screw M5*0.8*10L	6
2	Bushing rubber 28	2
3	Bushing rubber 44	4
4	Bushing rubber 100	2
5	Conduit box cover	1
6	Conduit box base	1



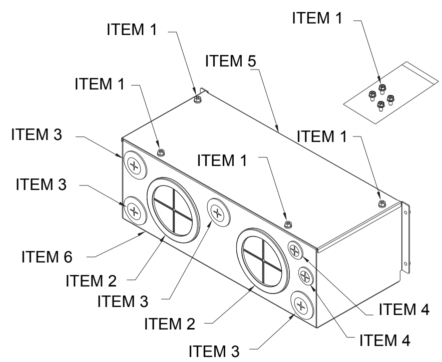
C2000_455_b

Frame F

Applicable models
VFD900C23A/23E; VFD1320C43A/43E;
VFD1600C43A/43E

Model number [MKC-FN1CB]

ITEM	Description	Qty.
1	Screw M5*0.8*10L	8
2	Bushing rubber 28	2
3	Bushing rubber 44	4
4	Bushing rubber 100	2
5	Conduit box cover	1
6	Conduit box base	1



C2000_455_c

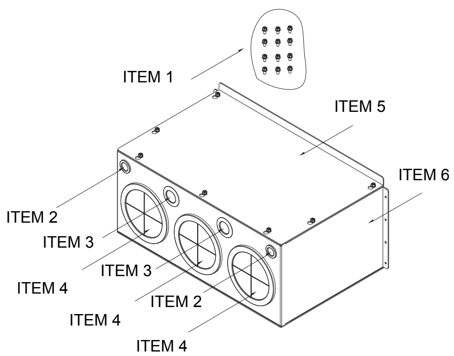
Tab. 7-22: Conduit box for frames E and F

Frame G

Applicable models
VFD1850C43A/43E; VFD2200C43A/43E

Model number [MKC-GN1CB]

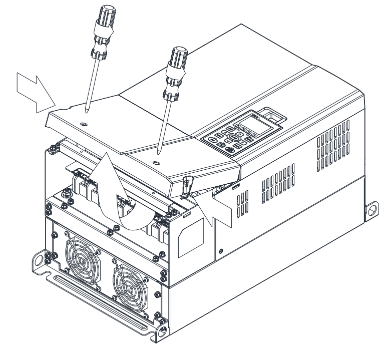
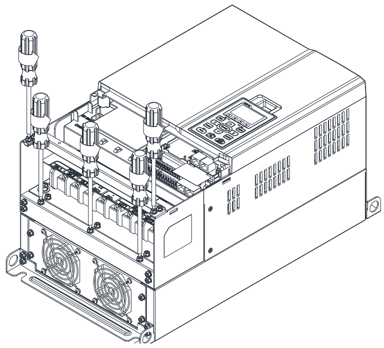
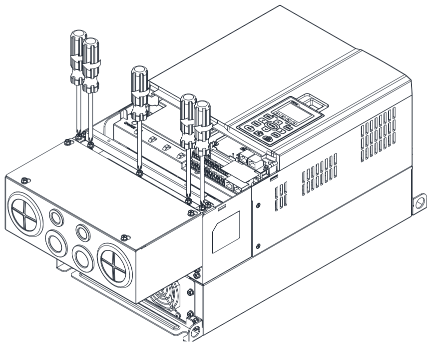
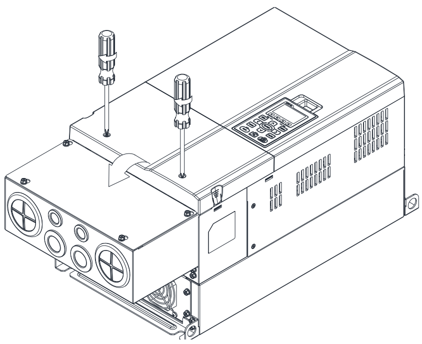
ITEM	Description	Qty.
1	Screw M5*0.8*10L	12
2	Bushing Rubber 28	2
3	Bushing Rubber 44	2
4	Bushing Rubber 130	3
5	Conduit box cover	1
6	Conduit box base	1



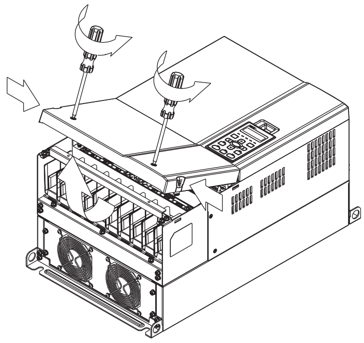
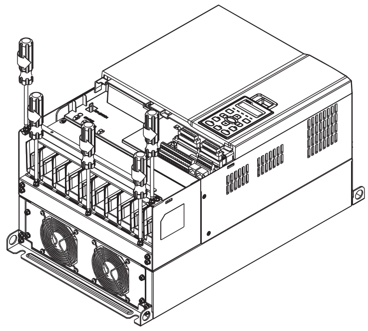
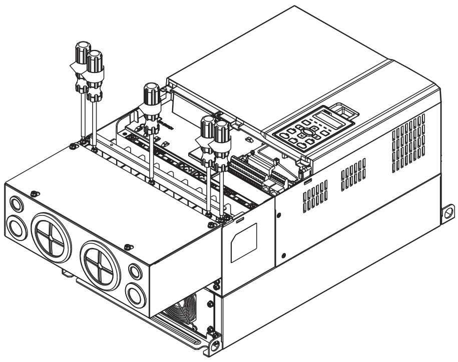
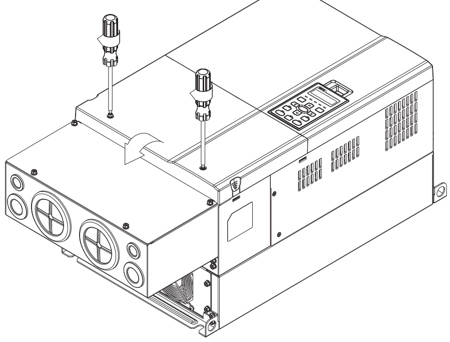
C2000_456

Tab. 7-23: Conduit box for frame G

■ Conduit box installation

Frame D0
① Loosen the cover screws and press the tabs on each side of the cover to remove the cover, as shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 lb-in)  C2000_457
② Remove the 5 screws shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)  C2000_458
③ Install the conduit box by fasten the 5 screws shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)  C2000_459
④ Fasten the 2 screws shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 lb-in)  C2000_460

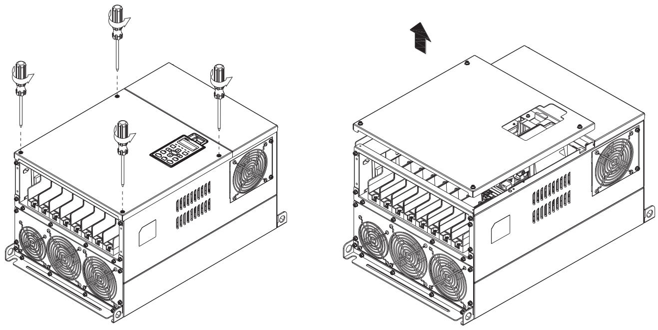
Tab. 7-24: Installation of the conduit box to frame D0

Frame D
① Loosen the cover screws and press the tabs on each side of the cover to remove the cover, as shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 lb-in)  C2000_461
② Remove the 5 screws shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)  C2000_462
③ Install the conduit box by fasten the 5 screws shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)  C2000_463
④ Fasten the 2 screws shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 lb-in)  C2000_464

Tab. 7-25: Installation of the conduit box to frame D

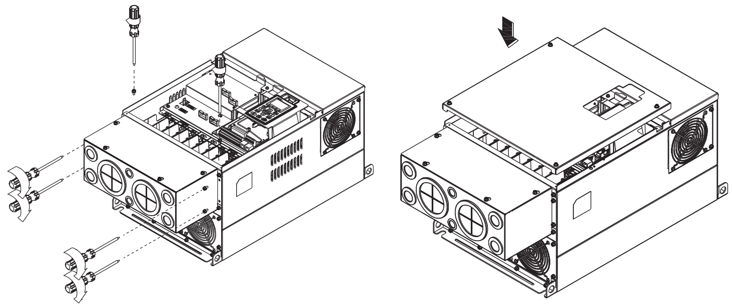
Frame E

① Loosen the 4 cover screws and lift the cover; Screw torque: 12– 15 kg-cm (10.4–13 Ib-in).



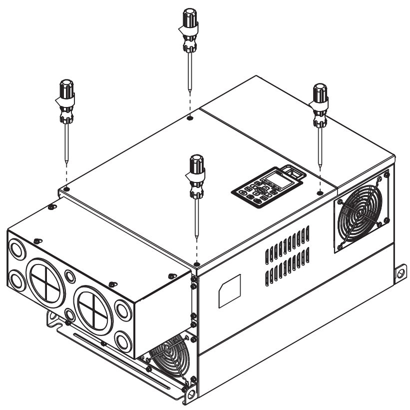
C2000_465

② Fasten the 6 screws shown in the following figure and place the cover back to the original position.
Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in).



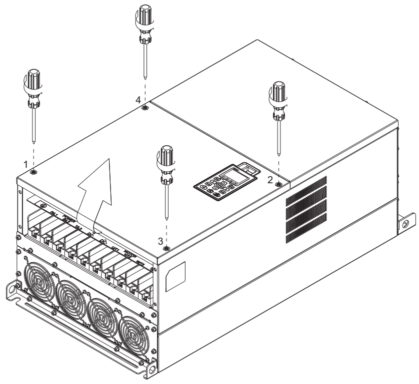
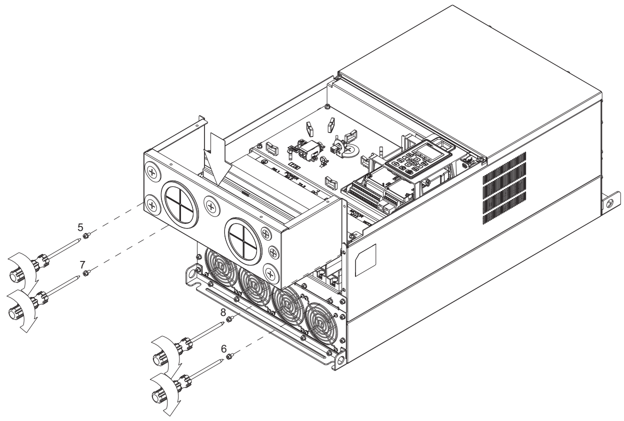
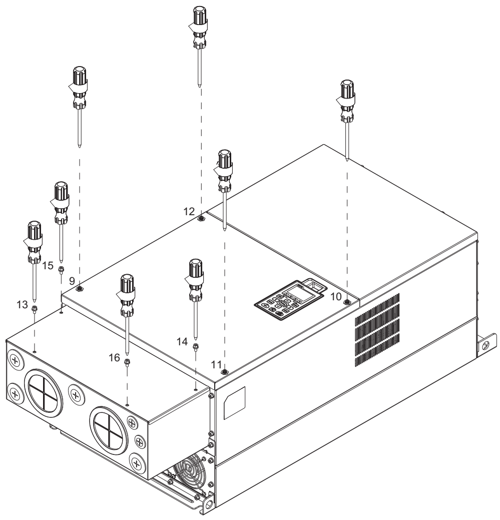
C2000_466

③ Fasten the 4 screws shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 Ib-in)



C2000_467

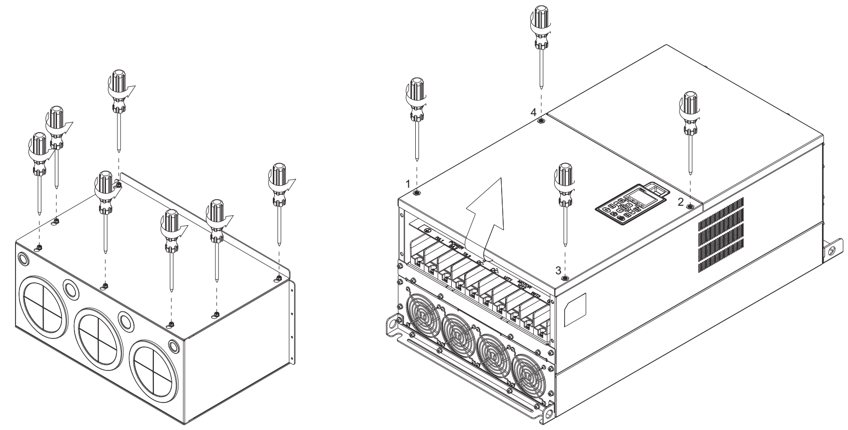
Tab. 7-26: Installation of the conduit box to frame E

Frame F
① Loosen the cover screws and press the tabs on each side of the cover to remove the cover, as shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 Ib-in).  C2000_468
② Install the conduit box by fastens the 4 screws, as shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in).  C2000_469
③ Install the conduit box by fasten all the screws shown in the following figure. Screw 9–12 torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13.6 Ib-in) Screw 13–16 torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in)  C2000_470

Tab. 7-27: Installation of the conduit box to frame F

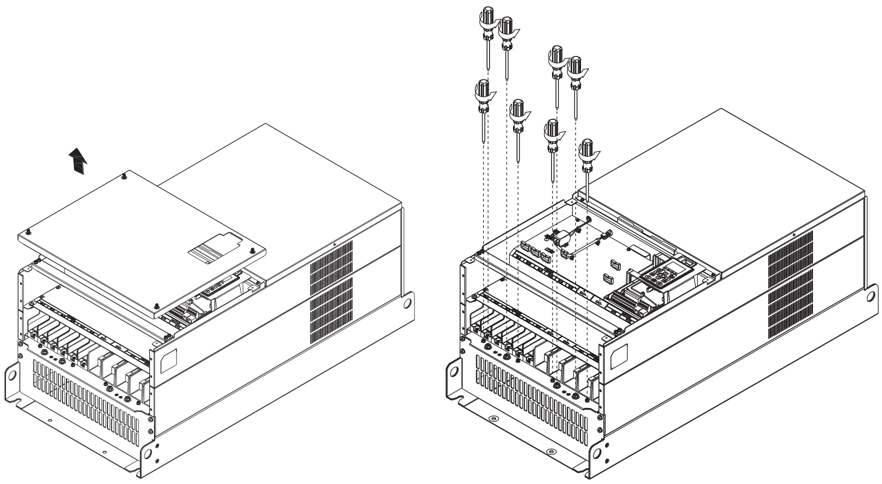
Frame G

① On the conduit box, loosen 7 of the cover screws and remove the cover [Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in)]. On the drive, loosen 4 of the cover screws and press the tabs on each side of the cover to remove the cover, as shown in the following figure. Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 Ib-in).



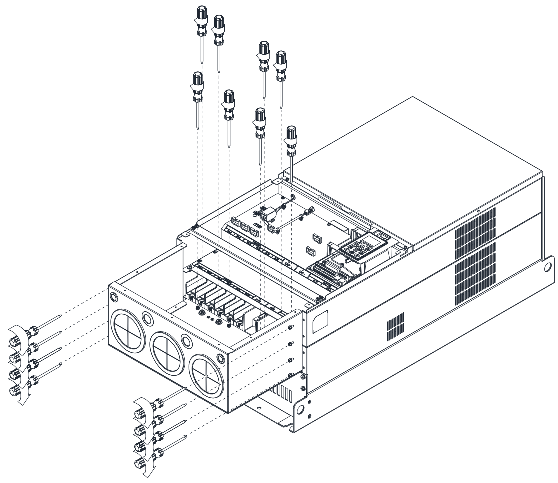
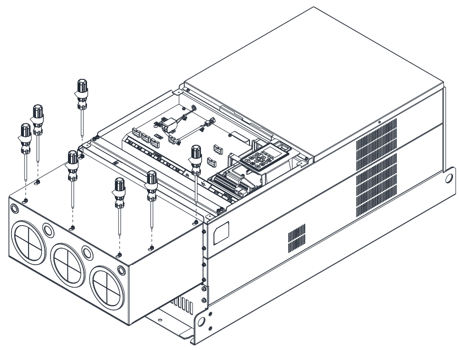
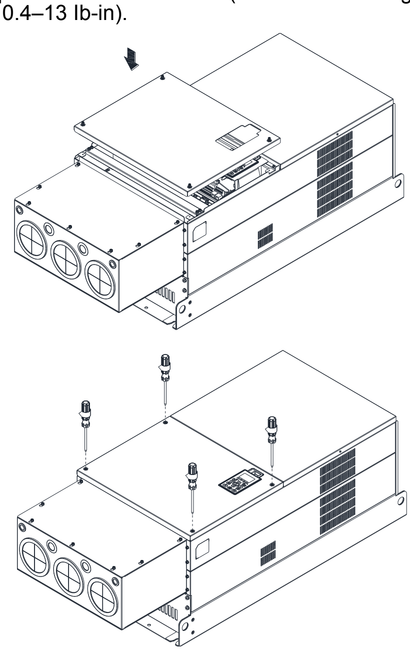
C2000_471

Remove the top cover and loosen the screws.
M5 Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in)
M8 Screw torque: 100–120 kg-cm (86.7–104.1 Ib-in)



C2000_472

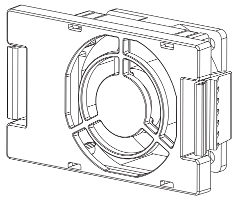
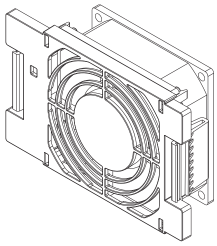
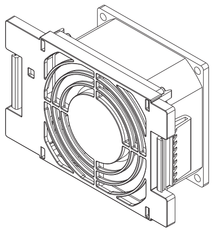
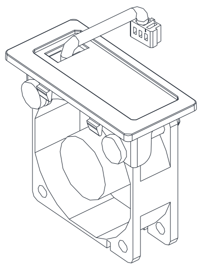
Tab. 7-28: Installation of the conduit box to frame G

Frame G
② Install the conduit box by fastening all the screws shown in the following figure. M5 Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in) M8 Screw torque: 100–120 kg-cm (86.7–104.1 Ib-in)  C2000_473
Fasten all the screws. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in).  C2000_474
Place the cover back to the top and fasten the screws (as shown in the figure). Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 Ib-in).  C2000_475

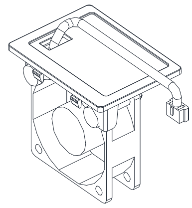
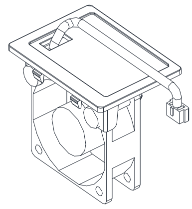
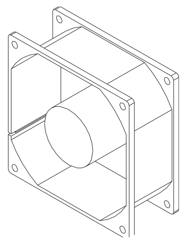
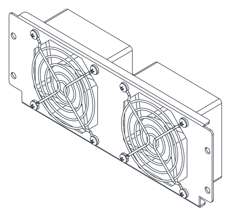
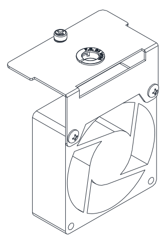
Tab. 7-29: Installation of the conduit box to frame G

7.10 Fan kit

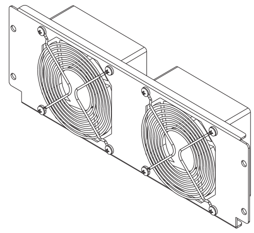
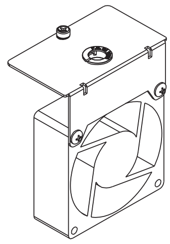
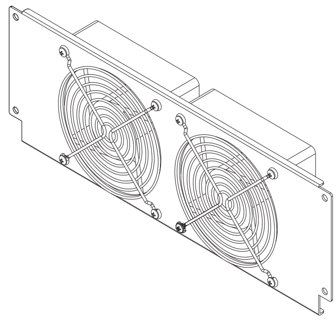
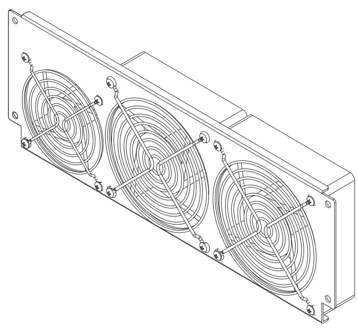
■ Frames of the fan kit

Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
A	VFD015C23A; VFD022C23A; VFD037C23A; VFD022C43A/43E; VFD037C43A/43E; VFD040C43A/43E; VFD055C43A/43E	Heat sink fan model [MKC-AFKM]  C2000_476
B	VFD055C23A; VFD075C43A/43E	Heat sink fan model [MKC-BFKM1]  C2000_477
	VFD075C23A; VFD110C23A; VFD110C43A/43E; VFD150C43A/43E	Heat sink fan model [MKC-BFKM2]  C2000_478
	VFD055C23A; VFD075C23A; VFD110C23A; VFD075C43A/43E; VFD110C43A/43E; VFD150C43A/43E	Capacitor fan model [MKC-BFKB]  C2000_479

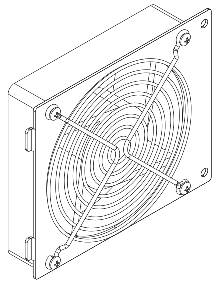
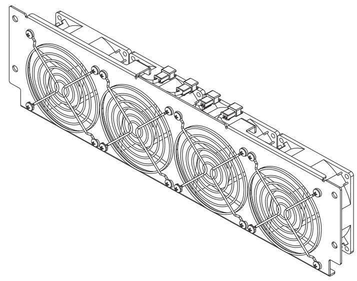
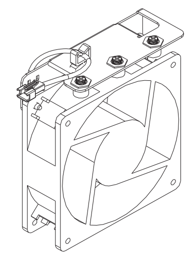
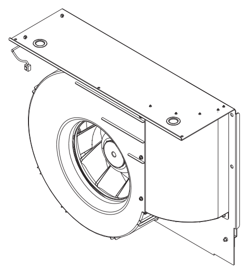
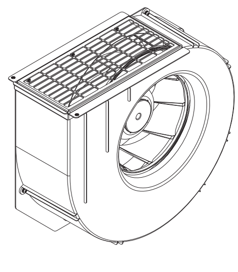
Tab. 7-30: Fan kits (1)

Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
C	VFD150C23A; VFD185C23A; VFD220C23A	Capacitor fan model [MKC-CFKB1]  C2000_480
	VFD185C43A/43E; VFD220C43A/43E; VFD300C43A/43E	Capacitor fan model [MKC-CFKB2]  C2000_481
	Following model use one set of MKC-CFKM: VFD185C43A/E; VFD220C43A/E; VFD300C43A Following model use two sets of MKC-CFKM VFD150C23A; VFD185C23A; VFD220C23A; VFD300C43E	Heat sink fan [MKC-CFKM]  C2000_482
D0	VFD370C43S/43U; VFD450C43S/43U	Heat sink fan model [MKC-D0FKM]  C2000_483
		Capacitor fan model [MKC-DFKB]  C2000_483_a

Tab. 7-30: Fan kits (2)

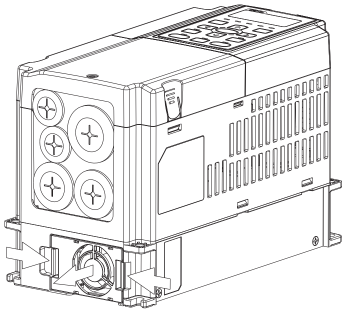
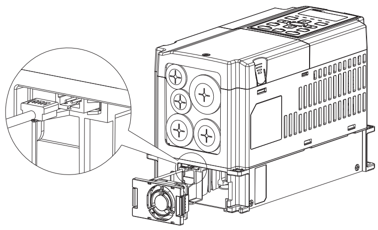
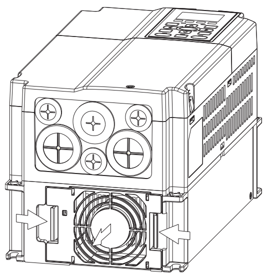
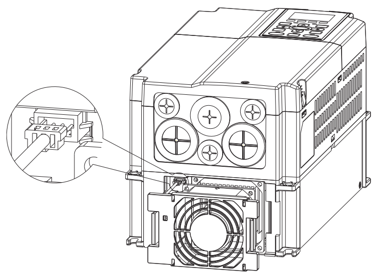
Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
D	VFD300C23A/23E; VFD370C23A/23E; VFD370C43A/43E; VFD450C43A/43E; VFD550C43A/43E; VFD750C43A/43E	Heat sink fan model [MKC-DFKM]  C2000_484
		Capacitor fan model [MKC-DFKB]  C2000_484_a
E	VFD450C23A/23E; VFD550C23A/23E	Heat sink fan model [MKC-EFKM]  C2000_485
	VFD750C23A/23E; VFD900C43A/43E; VFD1100C43A/43E	Heat sink fan model [MKC-EFKM2]  C2000_486

Tab. 7-30: Fan kits (3)

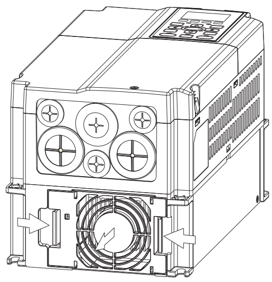
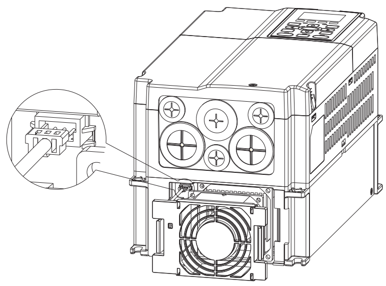
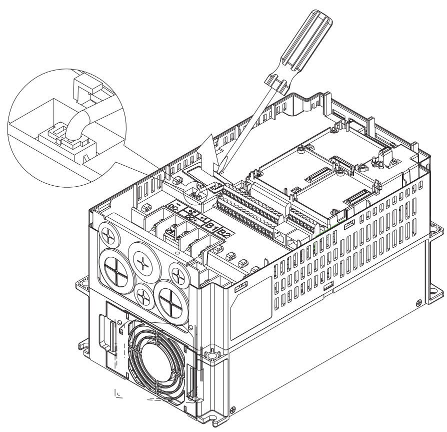
Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
E	VFD450C23A/23E; VFD550C23A/23E; VFD750C23A/23E; VFD900C43A/43E; VFD1100C43A/43E	Capacitor fan model [MKC-EFKB]  C2000_487
F	VFD900C23A/23E; VFD1320C43A/43E; VFD1600C43A/43E;	Heat sink fan model [MKC-FFKM]  C2000_488
	VFD900C23A/23E; VFD1320C43A/43E; VFD1600C43A/43E	Capacitor fan model [MKC-FFKB]  C2000_489
G	VFD1850C43A/43E; VFD2200C43A/43E	Heat sink fan model [MKC-GFKM]  C2000_490
H	VFD2800C43A/43E; VFD3150C43A/43E; VFD3550C43A/43E; VFD4500C43A/43E VFD2800C43E-1; VFD3150C43E-1; VFD3550C43E-1; VFD4500C43E-1	Heat sink fan model [MKC-HFKM]  C2000_491

Tab. 7-30: Fan kits (4)

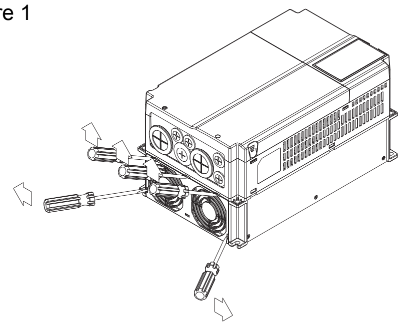
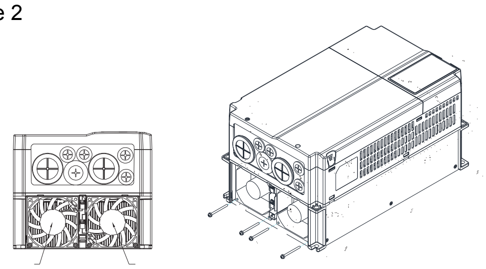
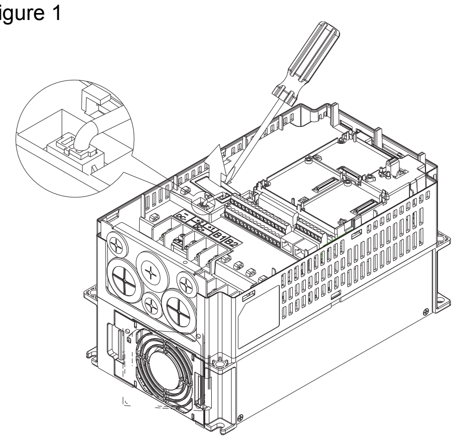
■ Fan removal

Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
A	VFD015C23A; VFD022C23A; VFD022C43A/43E; VFD037C23A; VFD037C43A/43E; VFD040C43A/43E; VFD055C43A/43E	Model [MKC-AFKM]: heat sink fan ① Refer to Figure 1, press the tabs on both side of the fan to successfully remove the fan.  C2000_492
		② Disconnect the power terminal before removing the fan. (As shown below).  C2000_492_a
B	VFD055C23A; VFD075C43A/43E; VFD075C23A	Model [MKC-BFKM1] heat sink fan ① Refer to Figure 1, press the tab on both side of the fan to successfully remove the fan.]  C2000_493
		② Disconnect the power terminal before removing the fan. (As shown below.)  C2000_493_a

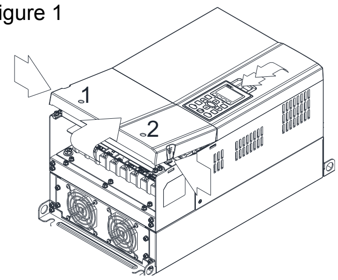
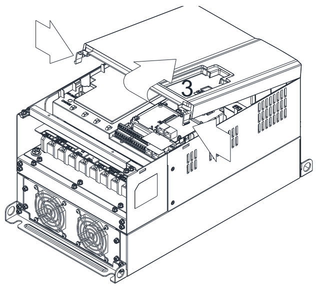
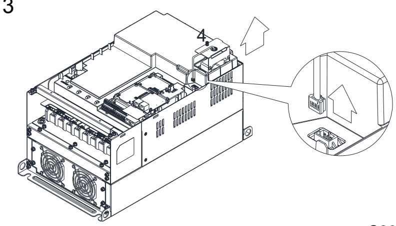
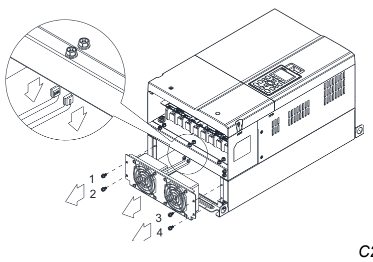
Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (1)

Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
B	VFD075C23A; VFD110C23A; VFD110C43A/43E; VFD150C43A/43E	Model [MKC-BFKM2] heat sink fan ① Refer to Figure 1, press the tab on both side of the fan to successfully remove the fan.  C2000_494
		② Disconnect the power terminal before removing the fan. (As shown below.)  C2000_494_a
	VFD055C23A; VFD075C23A; VFD075C43A/43E; VFD110C23A; VFD110C43A/43E; VFD150C43A/43E	Model [MKC-BFKB] capacitor fan Disconnect fan power and pull out the fan by using flathead screwdriver. (As shown in the larger picture)  C2000_494_b

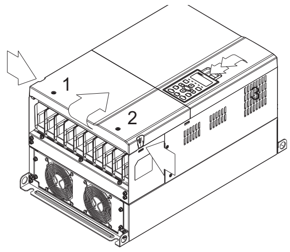
Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (2)

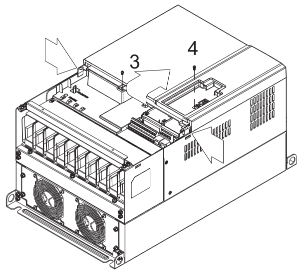
Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
C	Single fan kit applicable models (only fan kit 1 is required to be installed): VFD185C43A/E; VFD220C43A/E; VFD300C43A Duo fan kit applicable models (both fan kit 1 and 2 are required to be installed): VFD150C23A; VFD185C23A; VFD220C23A; VFD300C43E	Model [MKC-CFKM] heat sink fan ① (As shown Figure 1) Before removing the fan, remove the cover by using a slotted screwdriver. Figure 1  C2000_494_c ② (As shown in Figure 2), remove the power connector, loosen the screw and remove the fan kit. When installing the fan kit, have the label on the fan kit facing inside of the motor drive. Screw's torque force: 10–12 kgf-cm (8.7–10.4 (lb-in) Figure 2  C2000_495
	VFD150C23A; VFD185C23A; VFD220C23A	Model [MKC-CFKB1] capacitor fan
	VFD185C43A/43E; VFD220C43A/43E; VFD300C43A/43E	Model [MKC-CFKB2] capacitor fan Disconnect fan power and pull out the fan by using flathead screwdriver. (As shown in the larger picture) Figure 1  C2000_496

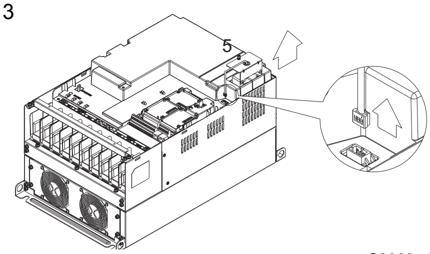
Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (3)

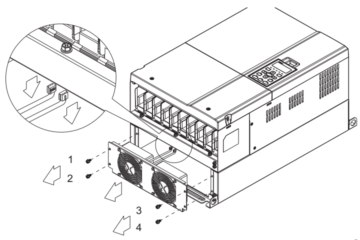
Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
D0	VFD370C43S/43U; VFD450C43S/43U	Model [MKC-DFKB] capacitor fan ① Loosen screw 1 and screw 2, press the tab on the right and left to remove the cover, follow the direction the arrows indicate. Press on top of digital keypad to properly remove it. Screw 1, 2 [Torque: 12–15 kgf-cm (8.6–10.4 lb-in)] Figure 1  C2000_497 ② (Figure 2) Loosen screw 3, press the tab on the right and the left to remove the cover. Screw 3 [Torque: 6–8 kgf-cm (5.2–6.9 lb-in)] Figure 2  C2000_497_a ③ Loosen screw 4 (figure 3) and disconnect fan power and pull out the fan. (As shown in the enlarged picture 3) Screw 4 [Torque: 10–12 kgf-cm (8.6–10.4 lb-in)] Figure 3  C2000_497_b
	VFD370C43S/43U; VFD450C43S/43U	Model [MKC-D0FKM] heat sink fan ① Loosen the screw and remove the fan kit. [Screw torque: 24–26 kgf-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)] ② (As shown Figure 1) Before removing the fan, remove the cover by using a slotted screwdriver Figure 1  C2000_498

Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (4)

<table>
<tr><th>Frame</th><th>Applicable model</th><th>Fan model</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">D</td><td rowspan="3">VFD300C23A/23E;
VFD370C23A/23E;
VFD550C43A/43E;
VFD750C43A/43E</td><td>Model [MKC-DFKB] capacitor fan
① Loosen screw 1 and screw 2, press the on the right and the left to remove the cover, follow the direction the arrows indicate. Press on top of digital keypad to properly remove it. Screw 1, 2 [Torque : 12–15 kgf-cm (10.4–13 lb-in)]
Figure 1


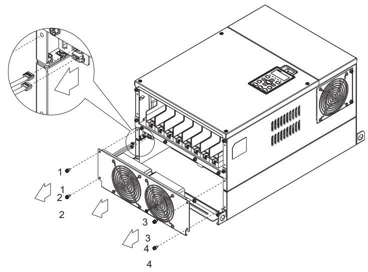
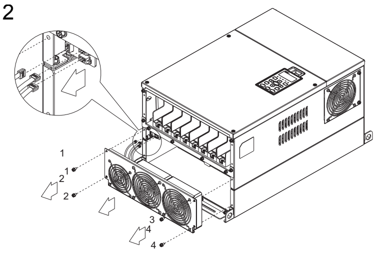
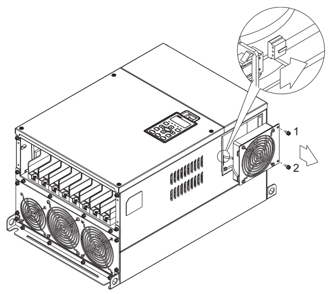
C2000_499</td></tr>
<tr><td>② (Figure 2) Loosen screw 3, press the tab on the right and the left to remove the cover.
Screw 3, 4 [Torque : 6–8 kgf-cm (5.2–6.9 lb-in)]
Figure 2


C2000_499_a</td></tr>
<tr><td>③ Loosen screw 5 (figure 3) and disconnect fan power and pull out the fan. (As shown in the enlarged picture 3)
Screw 5 [Torque : 10–12 kgf-cm (8.6–10.4 lb-in)]
Figure 3


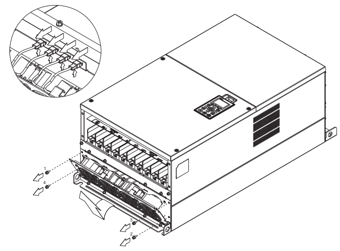
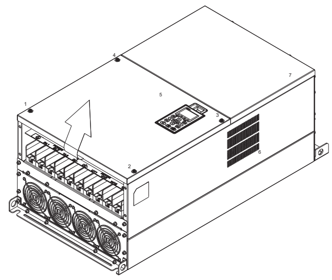
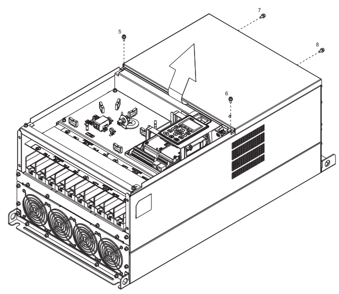
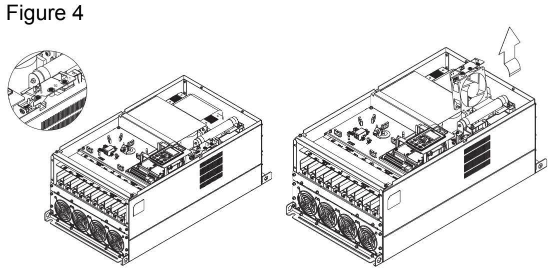
C2000_499_b</td></tr>
<tr><td>VFD300C23A/23E;
VFD370C23A/23E;
VFD370C43A/43E;
VFD450C43A/43E;
VFD550C43A/43E;
VFD750C43A/43E</td><td>Model [MKC-DFKM] heat sink fan
① Loosen the screw and remove the fan kit. [Screw torque: 24–26 kgf-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)]
② (As shown Figure 1) Before removing the fan, remove the cover by using a slotted screwdriver
Figure 1


C2000_500</td></tr>
</table>

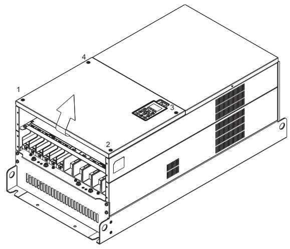
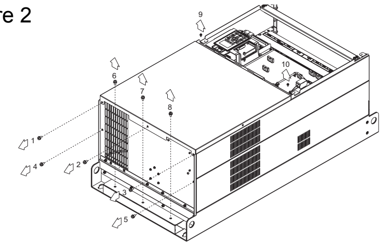
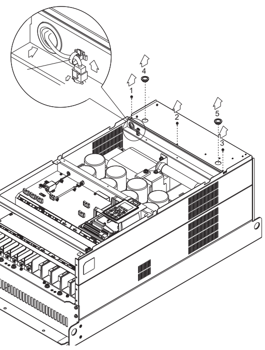
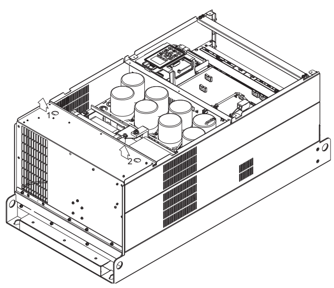
Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (5)

Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
E	VFD450C23A/23E; VFD550C23A/23E; VFD750C23A/23E; VFD900C43A/43E; VFD1100C43A/43E	Model [MKC-EFKM1] heat sink fan ① Loosen screw 1–4 (figure 1) and disconnect fan power and pull out the fan. (As shown in the enlarged picture 3) Screw1–4 [Torque : 24–26 kgf-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)] Figure 1  C2000_501
		Model [MKC-EFKM2] heat sink fan ② Loosen screw 1–4 (figure 2) and disconnect fan power and pull out the fan. (As shown in the enlarged picture 2) Screw1–4 [Torque : 24–26 kgf-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)] Figure 2  C2000_501_a
		Model [MKC-EFKB] capacitor fan ③ 1 Loosen screw 1–2 (figure 3) and disconnect fan power and pull out the fan. (As shown in the enlarged picture 3) Screw1–2 [Torque : 24–26 kgf-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in)] Figure 3  C2000_502

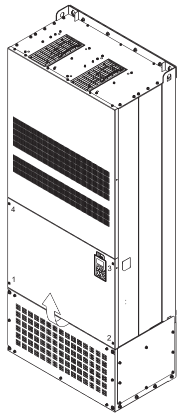
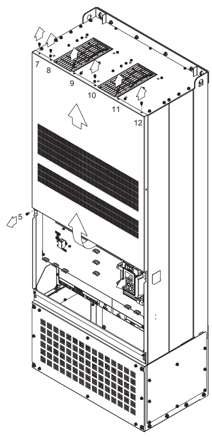
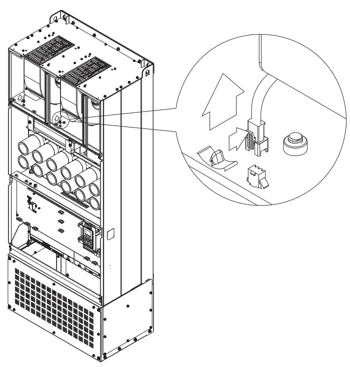
Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (6)

Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
F	VFD900C23A/23E; VFD1320C43A/43E; VFD1600C43A/43E;	Fan model [MKC-FFKM] heat sink fan Loosen the screws and plug out the power of fan before removing (figure 1). Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 Ib-in) Figure 1  C2000_503
		Fan model [MKC-FFKB] capacitor fan ① Loosen the screw (figure 1) and removes the cover. Screw torque: 14–16 kg-cm (12.2–13.9 Ib-in). Figure 2  C2000_504
		② Loosen the screw (figure 2) and removes the cover. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in). Figure 3  C2000_505
		③ Loosen the screws and remove the fan. (figure 3 and figure 4) Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in). Figure 4  C2000_506

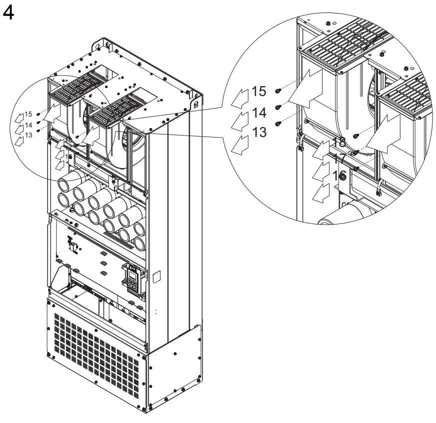
Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (7)

<table>
<tr><th>Frame</th><th>Applicable model</th><th>Fan model</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">G</td><td rowspan="4">VFD1800C43A/43E;
VFD2200C43A/43E</td><td>Fan model [MKC-GFKM] heat sink fan
① 1) Loosen the screw (figure 1) and remove the cover. Screw torque: 12–15 kg-cm (10.4–13 Ib-in).
Figure 1

C2000_507</td></tr>
<tr><td>② For 1–8 shown in the figure 2: Loosen the screws
Screw torque: 35–40 kg-cm (30.4–34.7 Ib-in)
For 9–10 shown in the figure 2: Loosen the screws and removes the cover.
Screw M4 torque: 14–16 kg-cm (12.2–13.9 Ib-in).
Figure 2

C2000_507_a</td></tr>
<tr><td>③ Loosen screw 1, 2, 3 and remove the protective ring (as shown in figure 3) Screw torque: 14–16 kg-cm (12.2–13.9 Ib-in).
Figure 3

C2000_508</td></tr>
<tr><td>④ Lift the fan by putting your finger through the protective holes, as indicates in 1 and 2 on the figure 4.
Figure 4

C2000_509</td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (8)

Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
H	VFD2800C43A/43E; VFD3150C43A/43E; VFD3550C43A/43E; VD4500C43A/43E	Fan model [MKC-HFKM] heat sink fan ① Loosen the screw and remove the top cover (figure 1) Screw torque: 14–16 kg-cm (12.2–13.9 Ib-in) Figure 1  C2000_510 ② Loosen the screw and remove the top cover (figure 2). Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in). Figure 2  C2000_511 ③ Disconnect the fan (figure 3). Figure 3  C2000_512

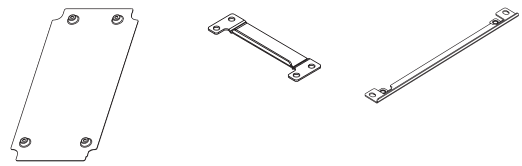
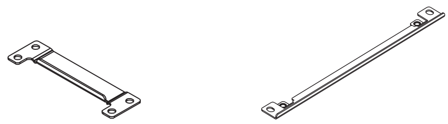
Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (9)

Frame	Applicable model	Fan model
H		④ Loosen the screw and remove the fan. Make sure fan power is properly disconnected before removal. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 lb-in). (figure 4) Figure 4  C2000_513

Tab. 7-31: Removal of fan kits (10)

7.11 Flange mounting kit

Applicable Models, Frame A–F

<table>
<tr><th>Frame</th><th>Applicable model</th><th>Mounting Kit</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">A</td><td>VFD015C23A;
VFD022C23A;
VFD022C43A/43E</td><td>[MKC-AFM1]
1x Accessories 1 2x Accessories 2 2x Accessories 3

C2000_514, C2000_515, C2000_516
<table><tr><th colspan="2">Screw</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>*4 M3*P 0.5; L = 6 mm</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>*8 M6*P 1.0; L = 16 mm</td></tr></table></td></tr>
<tr><td>VFD007C23A;
VFD007C43A/43E;
VFD015C43A/43E;
VFD037C23A;
VFD037C43A/43E;
VFD040C43A/43E;
VFD055C43A/43E</td><td>[MKC-AFM]
2x Accessory 2 2x Accessory 3

C2000_517, C2000_518
<table><tr><th colspan="2">Screw</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>*8 M6*P 1.0; L = 16 mm</td></tr></table></td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 7-32: Flange mounting kits for AC drives

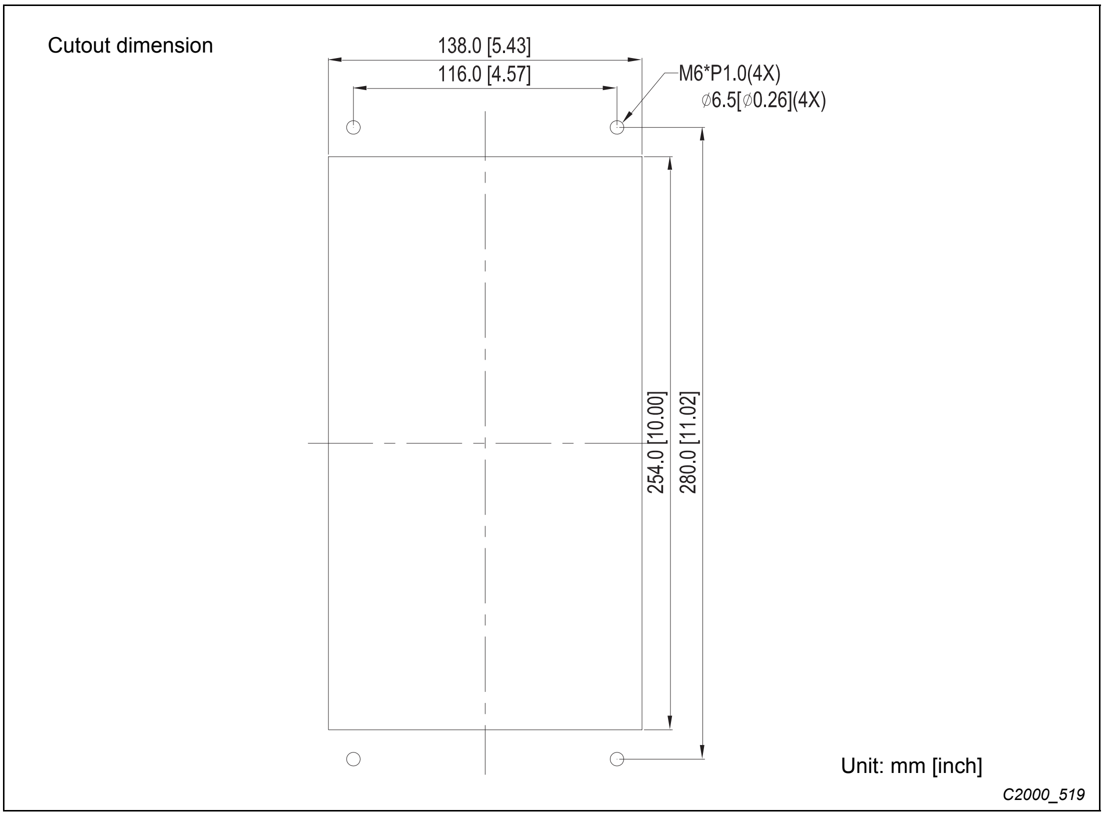
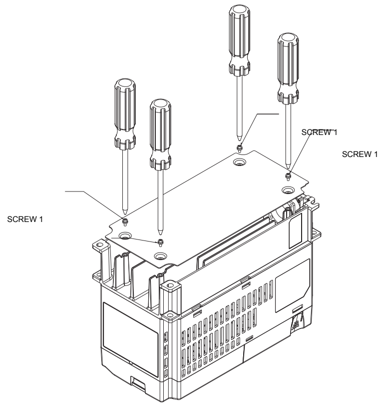
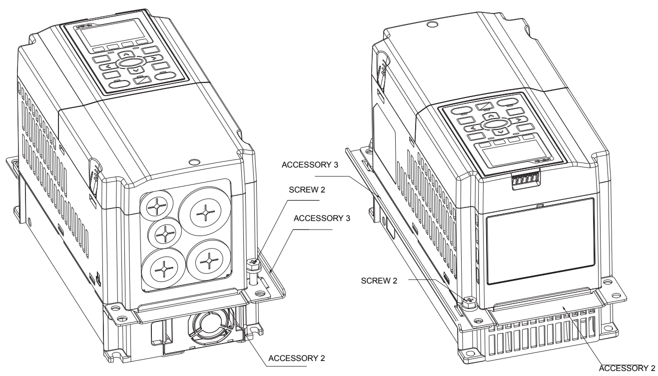
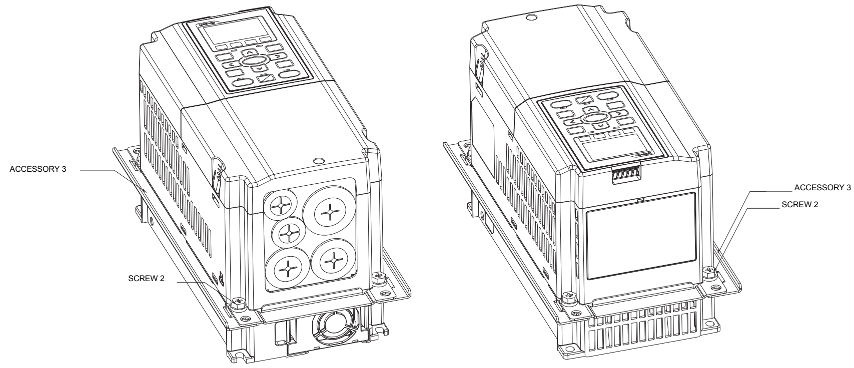
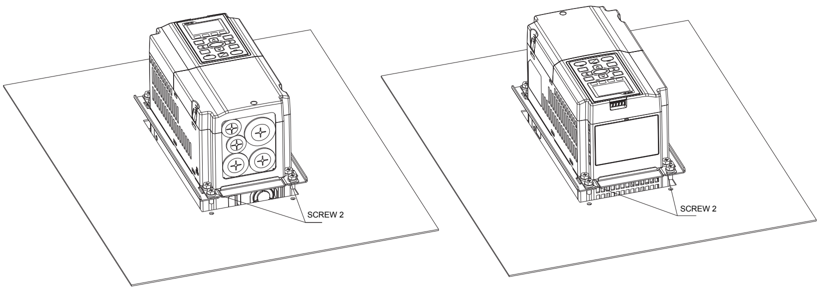


Fig. 7-15: Cutout dimension for plate installation

[MKC-AFM1] Installation

[MKC-AFM1]
① Install accessory 1 by fastening 4 of the screw 1 (M3) (figure 1). Screw torque: 6–8 kg-cm (5.21–6.94 lb-in). Figure 1  C2000_520
② Install accessory 2&3 by fastening 2 of the screw 2 (M6) (figure 2). Screw torque: 25–30 kg-cm (21.7–26 lb-in). Figure 2  C2000_521

Tab. 7-33: Mounting of accessories

[MKC-AFM1]
③ Install accessory 2&3 by fastening 2 of the screw 2 (M6) (figure 3). Screw torque: 25–30 kg-cm (21.7–26 Ib-in). Figure 3  C2000_522
④ Plate installation, place 4 of the screw 2 (M6) (figure 4) through accessory 2&3 and the plate then fasten the screws. Screw torque: 25–30 kg-cm (21.7–26 Ib-in). Figure 4  C2000_523

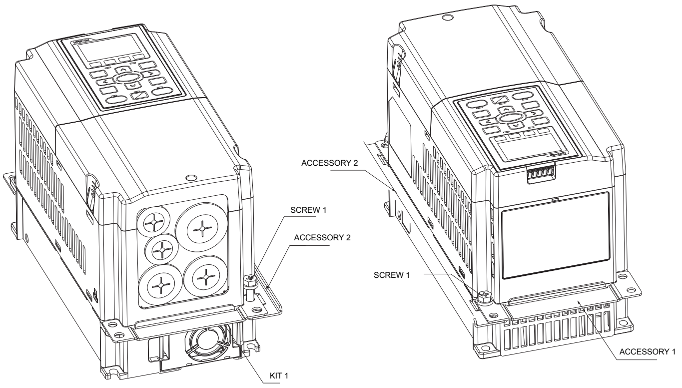
Tab. 7-34: Mounting of accessories and plate installation

[MKC-AFM] Installation

[MKC-AFM]

① Fasten screw*2 (M6) and accessory 2&3. Screw torque: 25–30 kg-cm (21.7–26 lb-in). (figure 1)

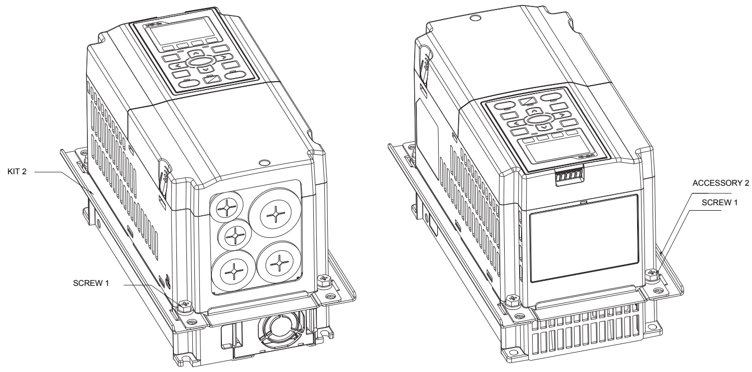
Figure 1



C2000_524

② Fasten screw*2 (M6) and accessory 2&3. Screw torque: 25–30 kg-cm (21.7–26 lb-in). (figure 2)

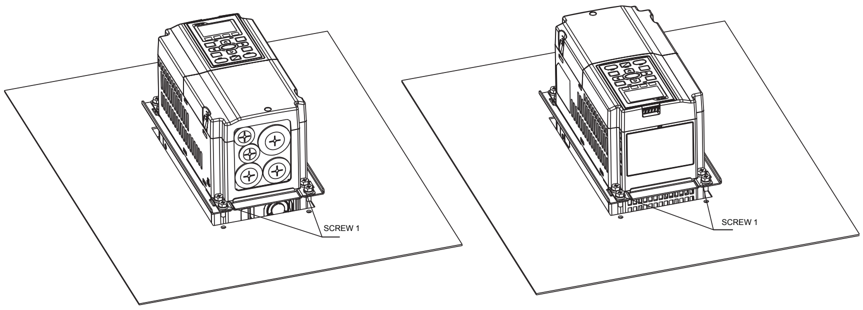
Figure 2



C2000_526

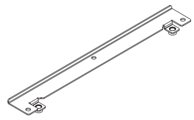
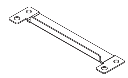
③ Plate installation, place 4 of the screw *4 (M6) through accessory 2 & 3 and the plate then fasten the screws. Screw torque: 25–30 kg-cm (21.7–26 lb-in). (figure 3)

Figure 3



C2000_527

Tab. 7-35: Mounting of accessories and plate installation

Frame	Applicable model	Mounting kit
B	VFD007C23A; VFD007C43A/43E; VFD015C43A/43E; VFD037C23A; VFD037C43A/43E; VFD040C43A/43E; VFD055C43A/43E	[MKC-BFM] Accessory 1*2  Accessory 2*2  *C2000_528, C2000_529*

Screw	
1	*4 – M8*P 1.25
2	*6 – M6*P 1.0

Tab. 7-36: Flange mounting kits for AC drive units

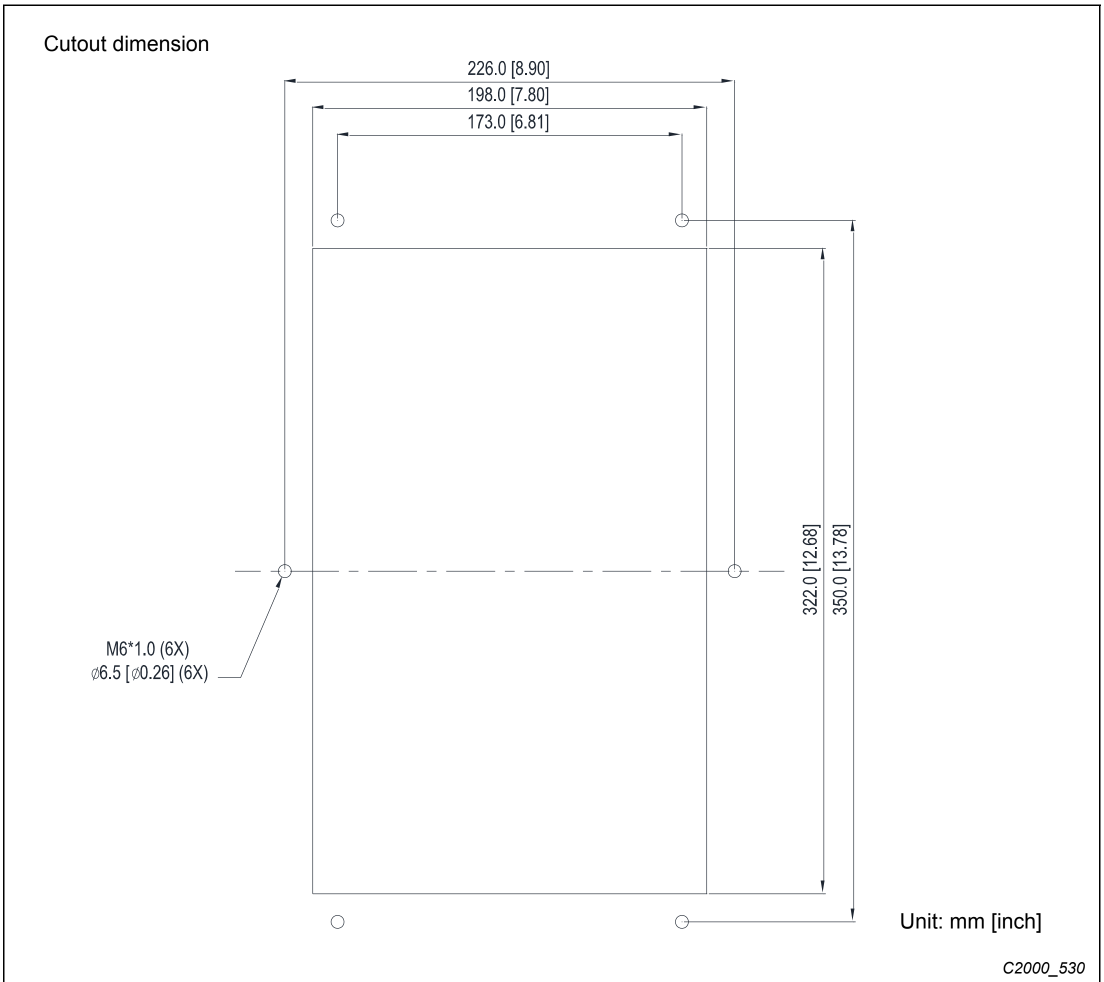
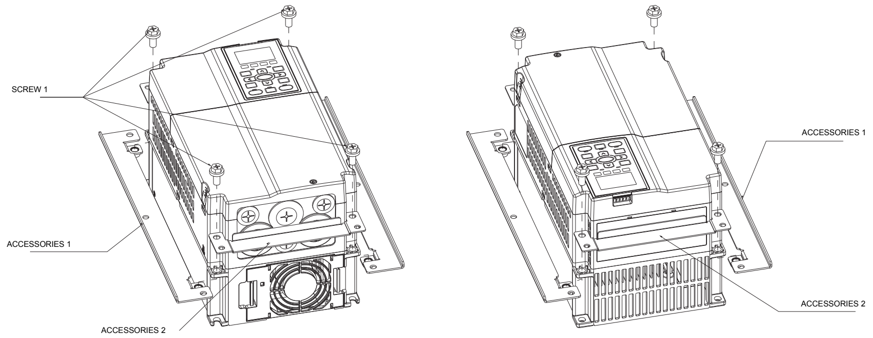
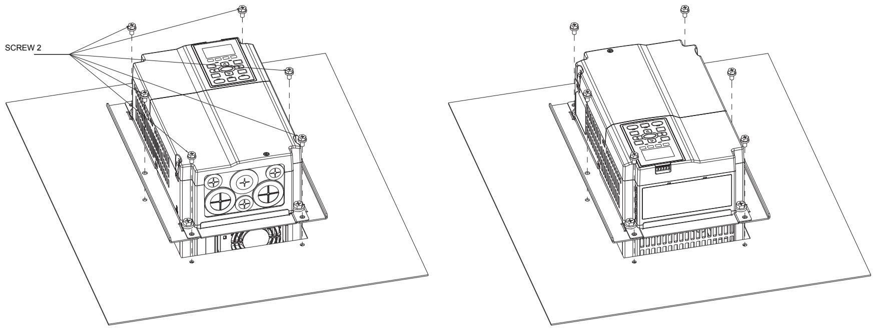
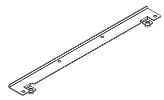
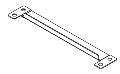


Fig. 7-16: Cutout dimension for plate installation

[MKC-BFM] Installation

[MKC-BFM]
① Install accessory 1&2 by fastening 4 of the screw 1 (M8). Screw torque: 40–45 kg-cm (34.7–39.0 Ib-in). (As shown in the following figure)  C2000_531
② Plate installation, place 6 of the screw 2 (M6) through accessory 1&2 and the plate then fasten the screws. Screw torque: 25–30 kg-cm (21.7–26 Ib-in). (As shown in the following figure)  C2000_532

Tab. 7-37: Mounting of accessories and plate installation

Frame	Applicable model	Mounting Kit
C	VFD150C23A; VFD185C23A; VFD220C23A; VFD185C43A/43E; VFD220C43A/43E; VFD300C43A/43E	[MKC-CFM] Accessory 1*2  Accessory 2*2  *C2000_533, C2000_534*

Screw	
1	*4 – M8*P 1.25
2	*8 – M6*P 1.0

Tab. 7-38: Flange mounting kits for AC drive units

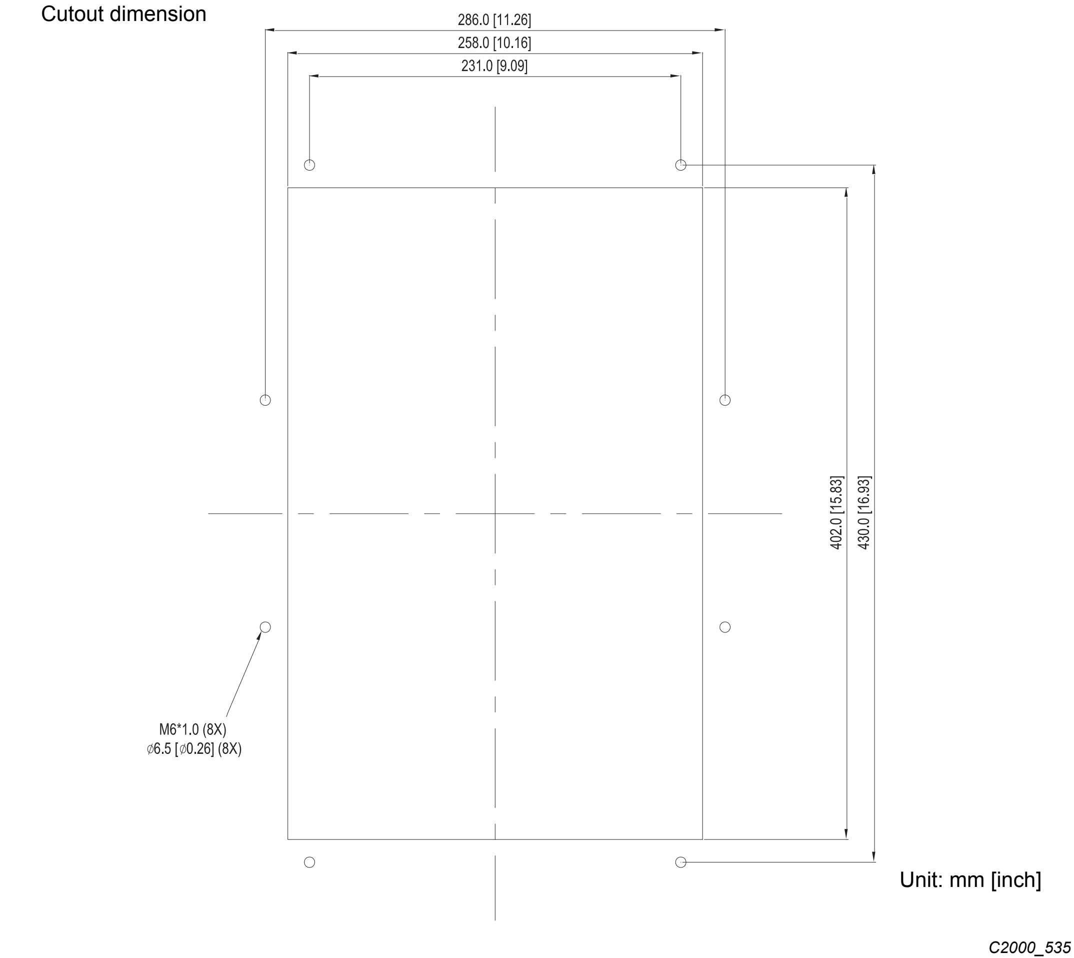
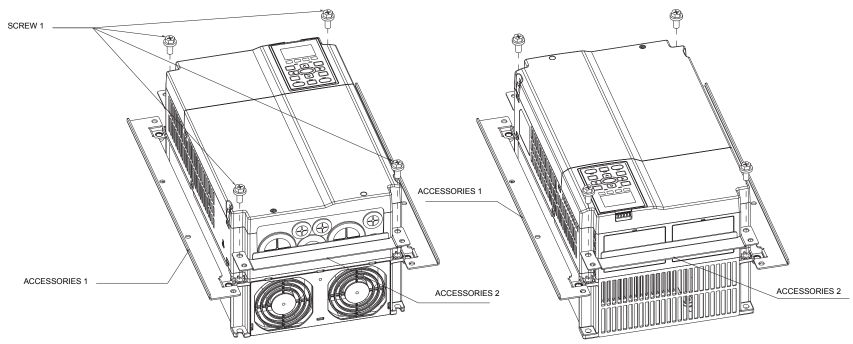
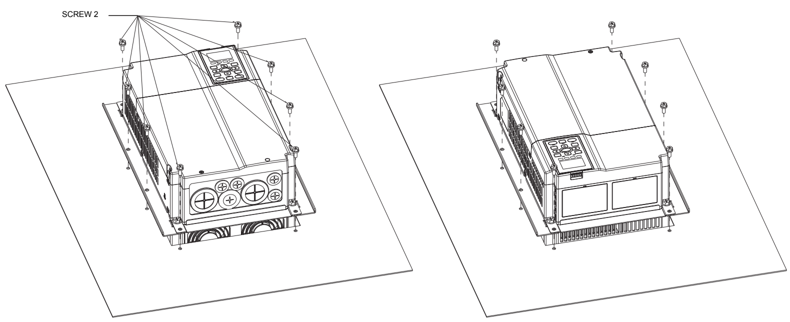
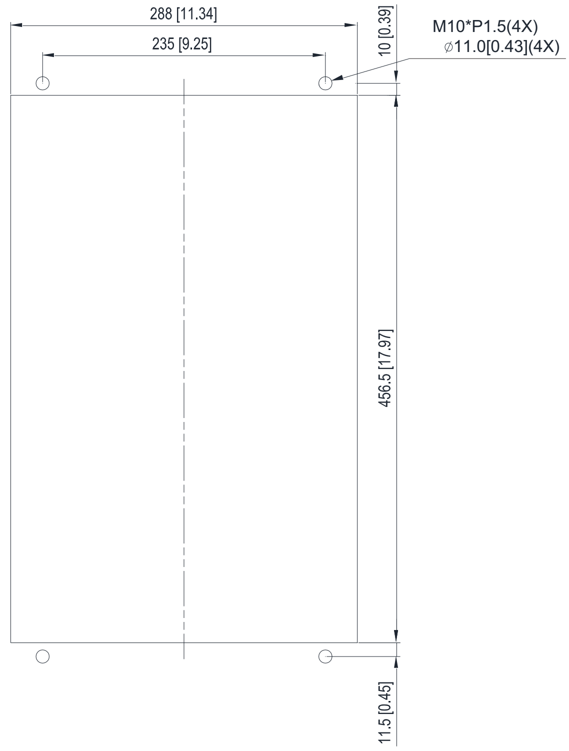
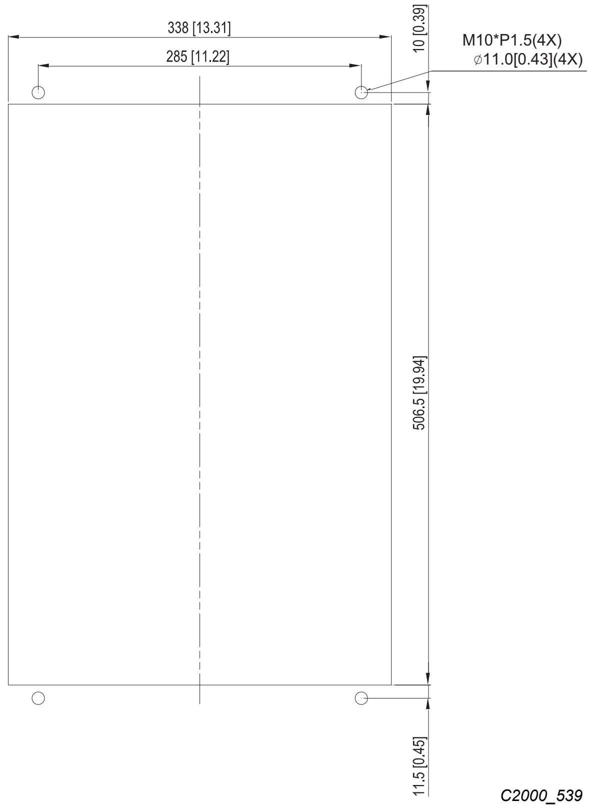


Fig. 7-17: Cutout dimension for plate installation

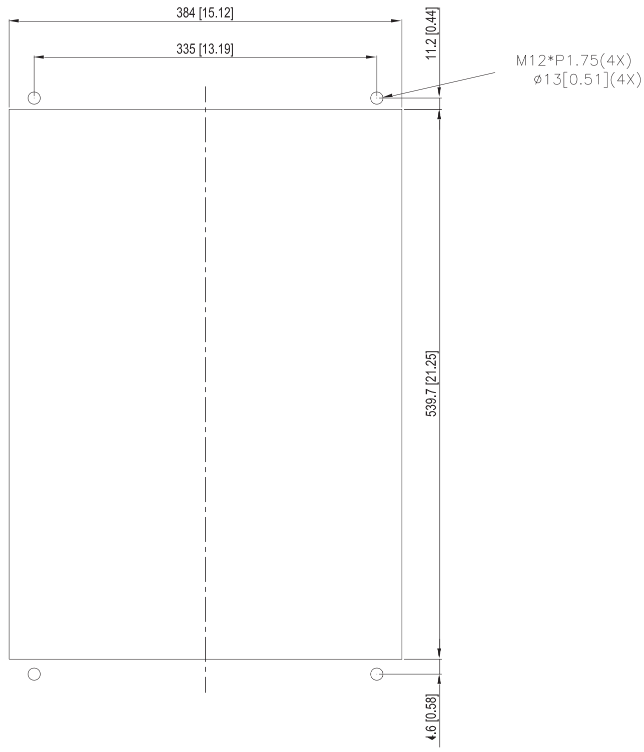
[MKC-CFM] Installation

[MKC-CFM]
① Install accessory 1&2 by fastening 4 of the screw 1 (M8). Screw torque: 50–55 kg-cm (43.4–47.7 lb-in). (As shown in the following figure)
 C2000_536
② Plate installation, place 8 of the screw 2 (M6) through Accessory 1&2 and the plate then fasten the screws. Screw torque: 25–30 kg-cm (21.7–26 lb-in). (As shown in the following figure)
 C2000_537

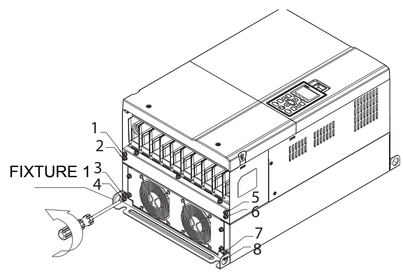
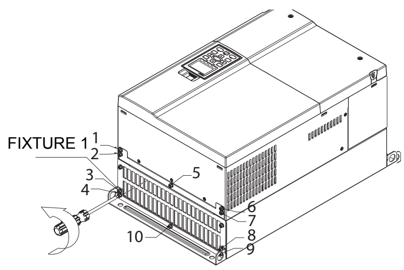
Tab. 7-39: Mounting of accessories and plate installation

Frame	Applicable model	Cut out dimension
D0	VFD370C43S/U; VFD450C43S/U	Cutout dimension Unit: mm [inch]  C2000_538
D	VFD300C23A/23E; VFD370C23A/23E; VFD550C43A/43E; VFD750C43A/43E	Cutout dimension Unit: mm [inch]  C2000_539

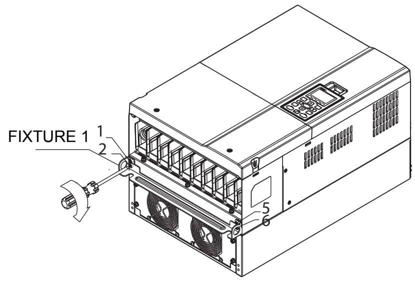
Tab. 7-40: Cutout dimension for plate installation (1)

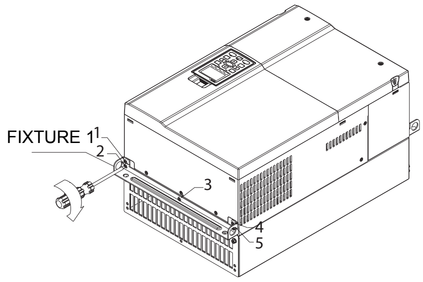
Frame	Applicable model	Cut out dimension
E	VFD450C23A/23E; VFD550C23A/23E; VFD750C23A/23E; VFD900C43A/43E; VFD1100C43A/43E;	Cutout dimension Unit: mm [inch]  C2000_540

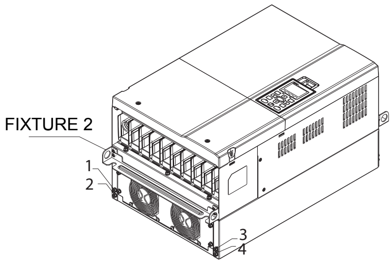
Tab. 7-40: Cutout dimension for plate installation (2)

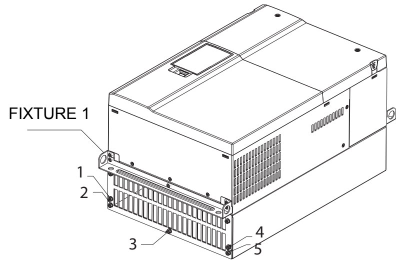
Frame D0 & D & E	
① Loosen 8 screws and remove Fixture 2 (as shown in the following figure).  C2000_541	② Loosen 10 screws and remove Fixture 1 (as shown in the following figure).  C2000_542

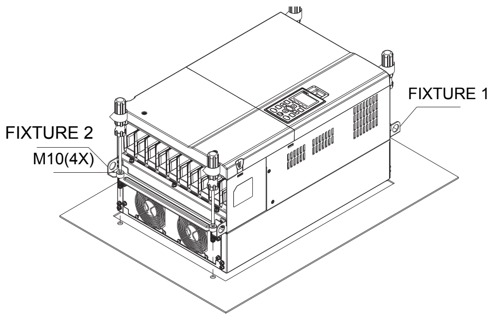
Tab. 7-41: Steps for plate installation (1)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Frame D0 & D & E</th></tr>
<tr><td>③ Fasten 4 screws (as shown in the following figure). Screw torque: 30–32 kg-cm (26.0–27.8 Ib-in).


C2000_543</td><td>④ Fasten 5 screws (as shown in the following figure). Screw torque: 30–32 kg-cm (26.0–27.8 Ib-in).


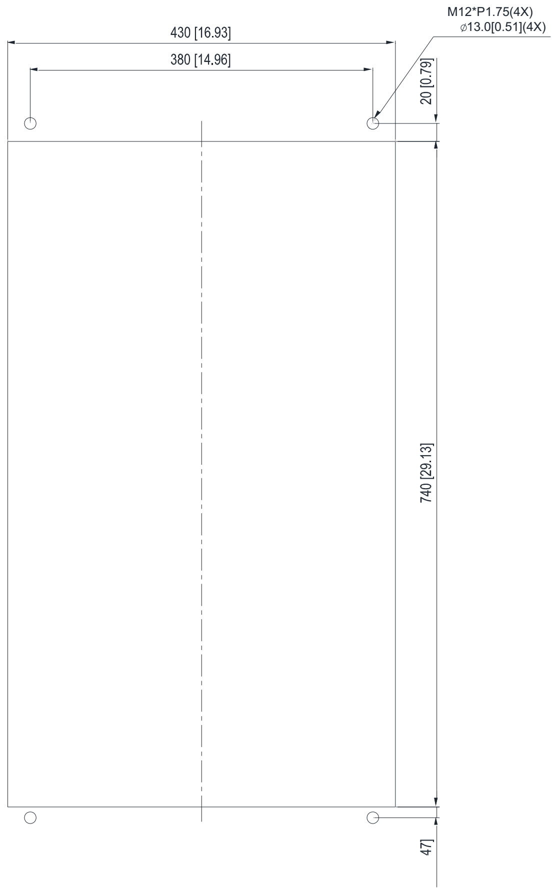
C2000_544</td></tr>
<tr><td>⑤ Fasten 4 screws (as shown in the following figure). Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in).


C2000_545</td><td>⑥ Fasten 5 screws (as shown in the following figure). Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in).


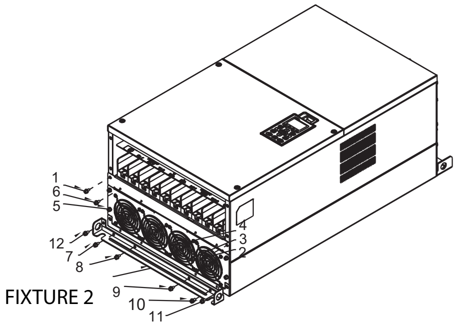
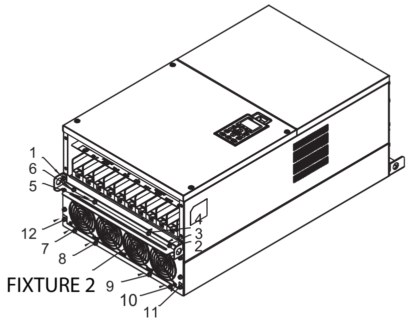
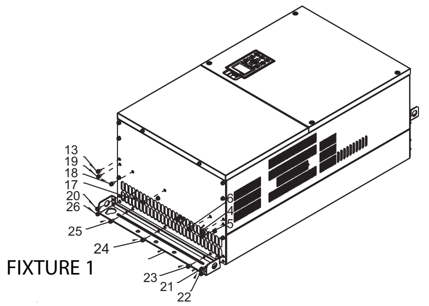
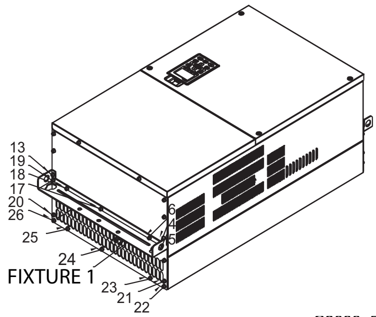
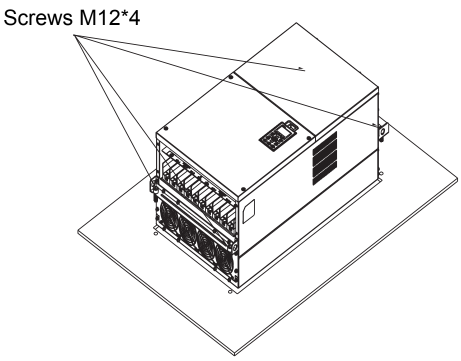
C2000_546</td></tr>
<tr><td>⑦ Place 4 screws (M10) through Fixture 1&2 and the plate then fasten the screws. (as shown in the following figure)
Frame D0/D M10*4
Screw torque: 200–240 kg-cm (173.6–208.3 Ib-in).
Frame E M12*4
Screw torque: 300–400 kg-cm (260–347 Ib-in).


C2000_547</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 7-41: Steps for plate installation (2)

Frame	Applicable model	Cut out dimension
F	VFD900C23A/23E; VFD1320C43A/43E; VFD1600C43A/43E	Cutout dimension Unit: mm [inch]  *C2000_548*

Tab. 7-42: Cut out dimension for plate installation

Frame F	
① Loosen 12 screws and remove Fixture 2.  C2000_549	② Loosen 12 screws and remove Fixture 2. Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in).  C2000_550
③ Loosen screw 13–26 and remove Fixture 1.  C2000_551	④ Install Fixture 1 by fasten screw 13–26 Screw torque: 24–26 kg-cm (20.8–22.6 Ib-in).  C2000_552
⑤ Place 4 of the M12 screws through Fixture 1&2 and plate then fasten the screws. Screw torque: 300–400 kg-cm (260–347 Ib-in).  C2000_553	

Tab. 7-43: Steps for plate installation

7.12 USB/RS485 communication interface IFD6530

	CAUTION: ■ Please thoroughly read this instruction sheet before installation and putting it into use. ■ The content of this instruction sheet and the driver file may be revised without prior notice. Please consult our distributors or download the most updated instruction/driver version at http://www.delta.com.tw/product/em/control/cm/control_cm_main.asp

7.12.1 Introduction

IFD6530 is a convenient RS485-to-USB converter, which does not require external power-supply and complex setting process. It supports baud rate from 75 to 115.2 kbps and auto switching direction of data transmission. In addition, it adopts RJ-45 in RS485 connector for users to wire conveniently. And its tiny dimension, handy use of plug-and-play and hot-swap provide more conveniences for connecting all DELTA IABU products to your PC.

Applicable models: All DELTA IABU products.

(Application & dimension)

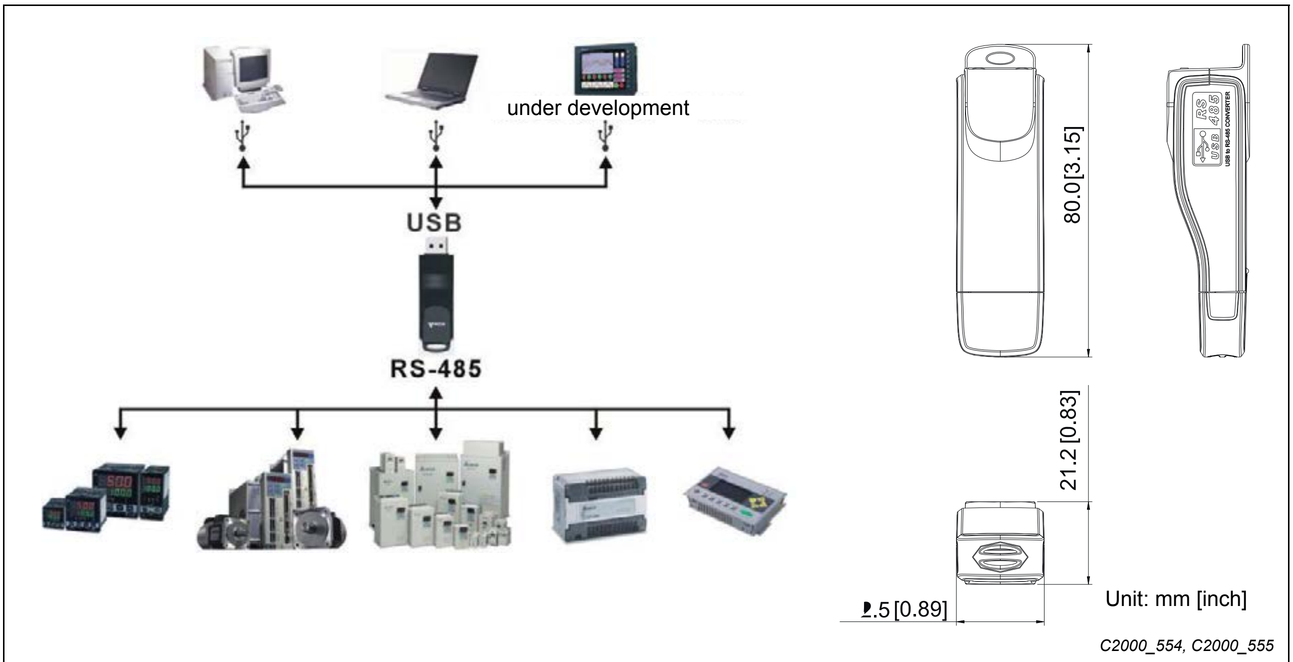


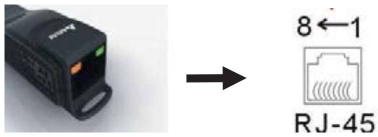
Fig. 7-18: Interface converter IFD6530

7.12.2 Specifications

Power supply	No external power is needed
Power consumption	1.5 W
Isolated voltage	2,500 V DC
Baud rate	75, 150, 300, 600, 1,200, 2,400, 4,800, 9,600, 19,200, 38, 400, 57,600, 115,200 bps
RS-485 connector	RJ-45
USB connector	A type (plug)
Compatibility	Full compliance with USB V2.0 specification
Max. cable length	RS485 Communication Port: 100 m
Support RS485 half-duplex transmission	

Tab. 7-44: Specifications of IFD6530

■ RJ-45



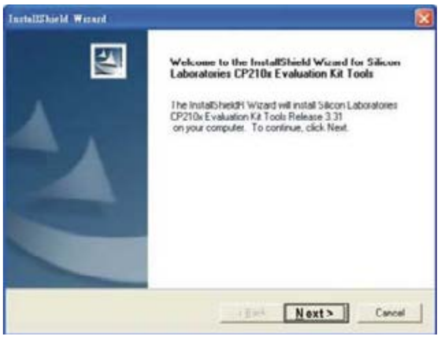
PIN	Description
1	Reserved
2	Reserved
3	GND
4	SG-
5	SG+
6	GND
7	Reserved
8	+9V

Tab. 7-45: Pinning of RJ-45 connector

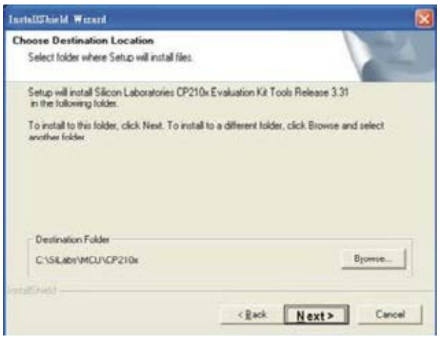
7.12.3 Preparations before driver installation

Please extract the driver file (IFD6530_Drivers.exe) by following steps. You could find driver file (IFD6530_Drivers.exe) in the CD supplied with IFD6530.

NOTE DO NOT connect IFD6530 to PC before extracting the driver file.

<table>
<tr><td>STEP 1


C2000_559</td><td>STEP 2


C2000_560</td></tr>
<tr><td>STEP 3


C2000_561</td><td>STEP 4


C2000_562</td></tr>
<tr><td>STEP 5
You should have a folder marked SiLabs under drive C. c:\ SiLabs</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 7-46: Extracting the driver file

7.12.4 Driver installation

After connecting IFD6530 to PC, please install driver by following steps.

Fig. 7-19: Driver installation for IFD6530

7.12.5 LED display

① Steady green LED ON: power is ON.

② Blinking orange LED: data is transmitting.

8 Option Cards

Please select applicable option cards for your drive or contact local distributor for suggestion. To prevent drive damage during installation, please removes the digital keypad and the cover before wiring. Refer to the following instruction.

8.1 Removal of the front cover

Frame A & B & C

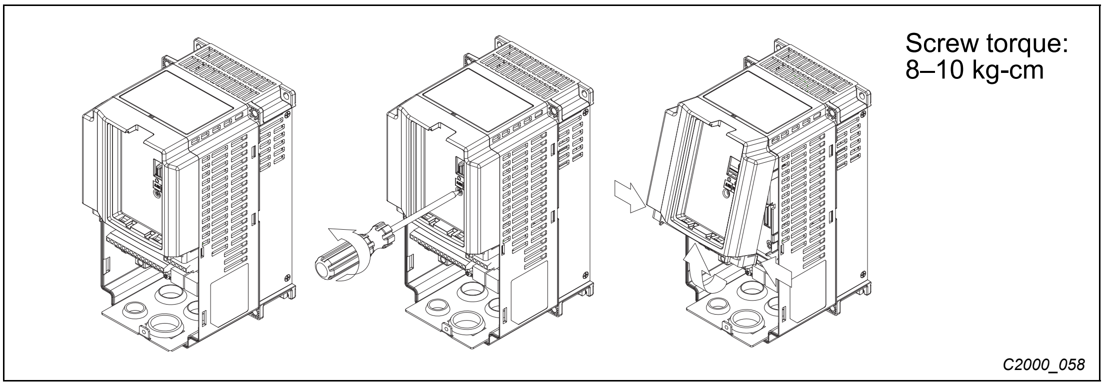


Fig. 8-1: Cover removal and screw tightening torque

Frame D0

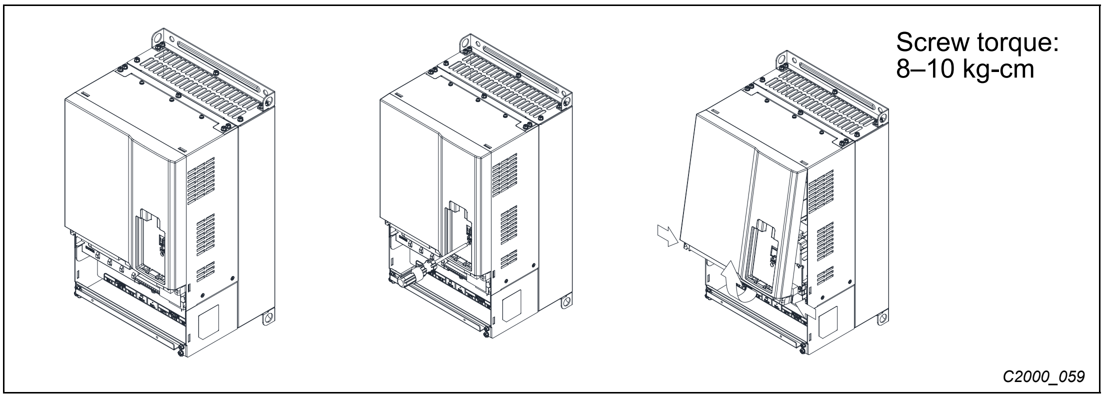


Fig. 8-2: Cover removal and screw tightening torque

Frame D

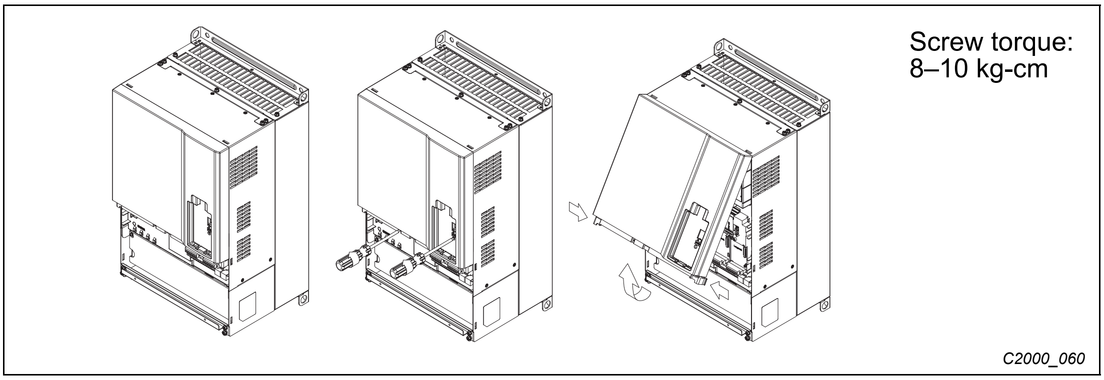


Fig. 8-3: Cover removal and screw tightening torque

Frame E

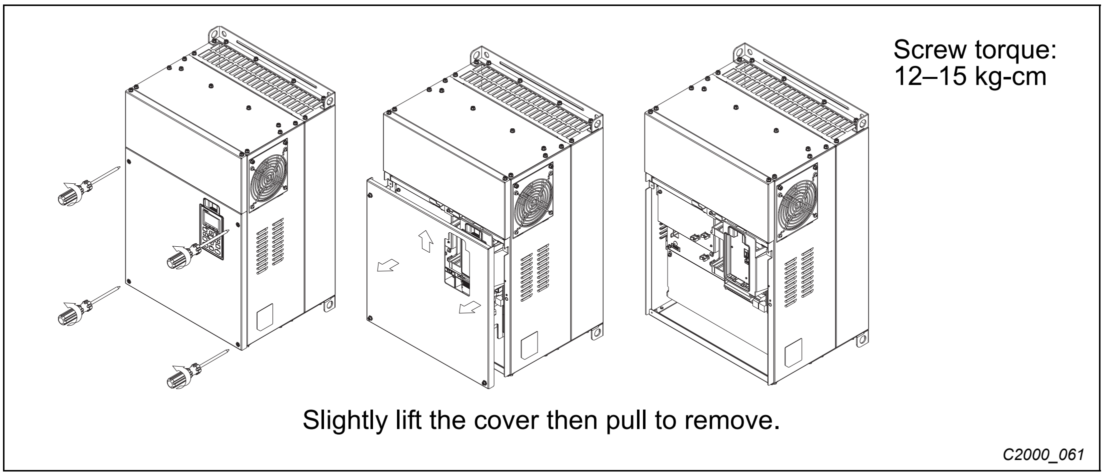


Fig. 8-4: Cover removal and screw tightening torque

Frame F

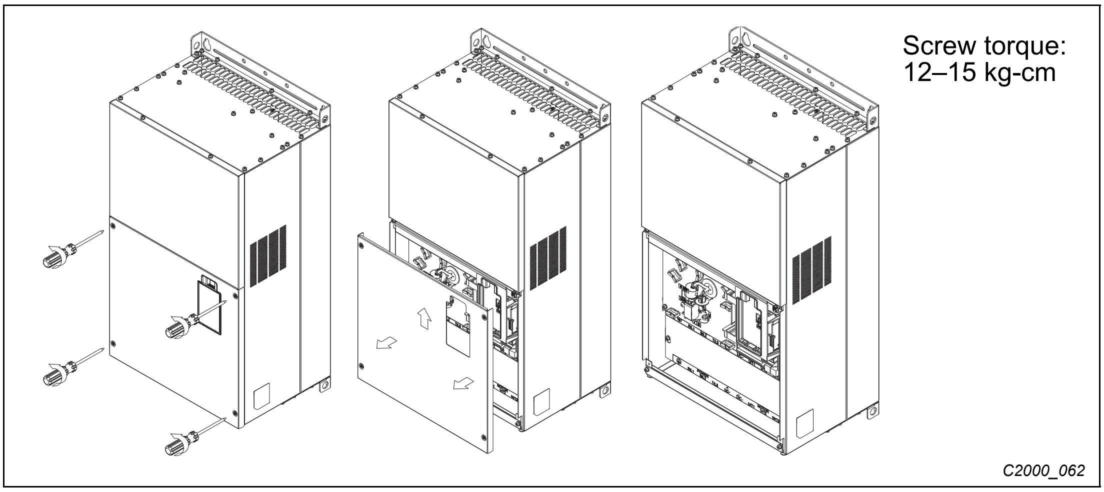


Fig. 8-5: Cover removal and screw tightening torque

Frame G

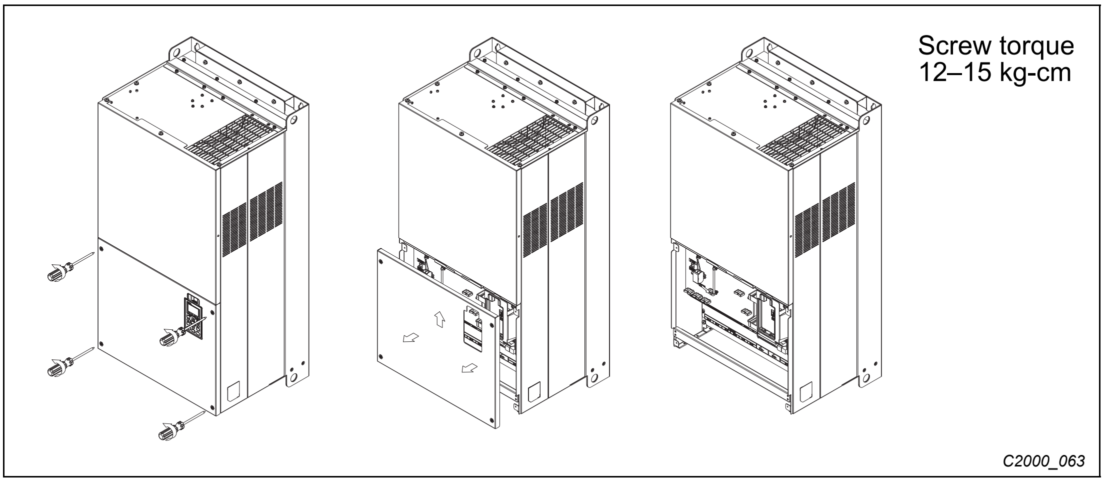


Fig. 8-6: Cover removal and screw tightening torque

Frame H

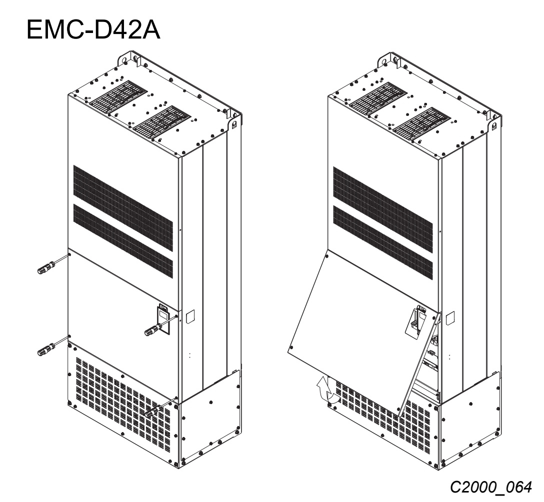
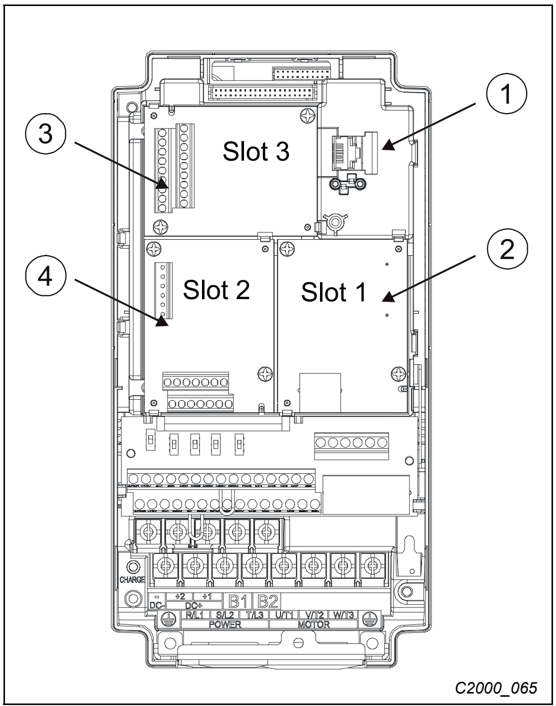


Fig. 8-7: Cover removal and screw tightening torque: 14–16 kg-cm



① RJ-45 (Socket) for digital keypad KPC-CC01; KPC-CE01
Please refer to CH10 Digital Keypad for more details on KPC-CE01.
Please refer to CH10 Digital Keypad for more details on optional accessory RJ-45 extension cable.

② Communication extension card (Slot 1)
CMC-MOD01; CMC-PD01;
CMC-DN01; CMC-EIP01;
EMC-COP01;

③ I/O & relay extension card (Slot 3)
EMC-D42A; EMC-D611A;
EMC-R6AA; EMC-BPS01;

④ PG card (Slot 2)
EMC-PG01L; EMC-PG02L;
EMC-PG01O; EMC-PG02O;
EMC-PG01U; EMC-PG02U;
EMC-PG01R;

8.2 Screw speciations for option card terminals

Option card		
EMC-D42A EMC-D611A EMC-BPS01	Wire gauge	24–12AWG (0.205–3.31mm^2)
	Torque	5 kg-cm [4.34 Ib-in]
EMC-R6AA	Wire gauge	26–16AWG (0.128–1.31mm^2)
	Torque	8 kg-cm [6.94 Ib-in]
EMC-PG01L EMC-PG01O EMC-PG01R EMC-PG01U	Wire gauge	30–16AWG (0.0509–1.31mm^2)
	Torque	2 kg-cm [1.74 Ib-in]

Tab. 8-1: Wire sizes and screw tightening torques

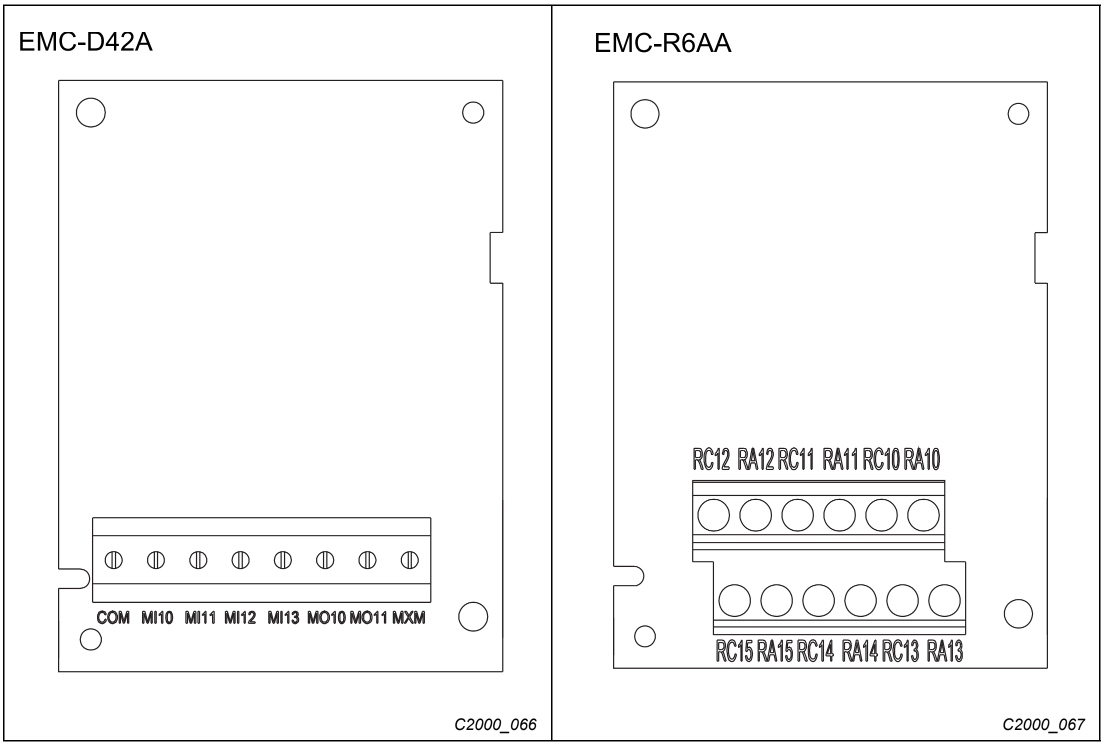


Fig. 8-8: I/O & relay extension card (Slot 3)

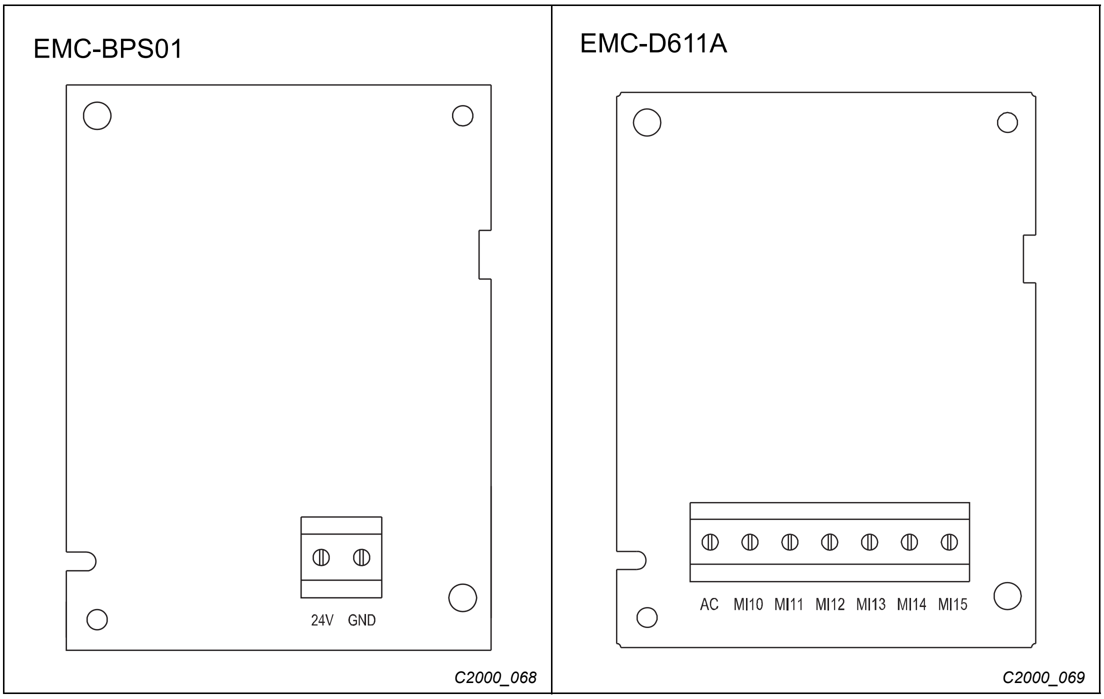


Fig. 8-9: I/O & relay extension card (Slot 3)

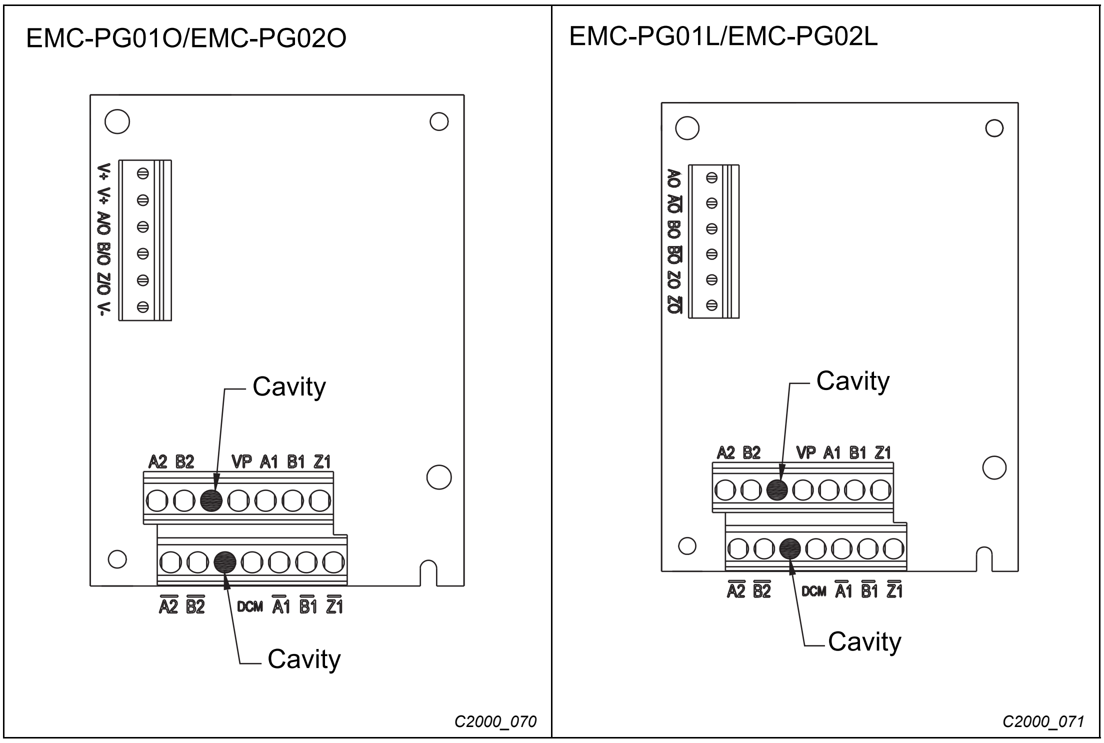


Fig. 8-10: PG card (Slot 2)

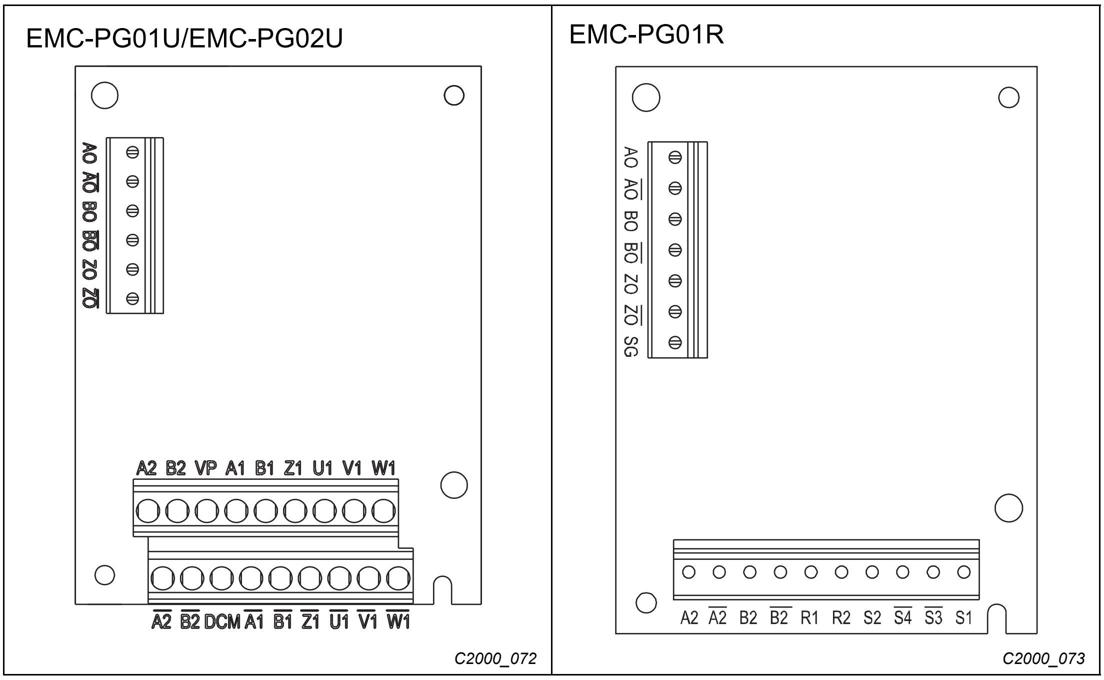


Fig. 8-11: PG card (Slot 2)

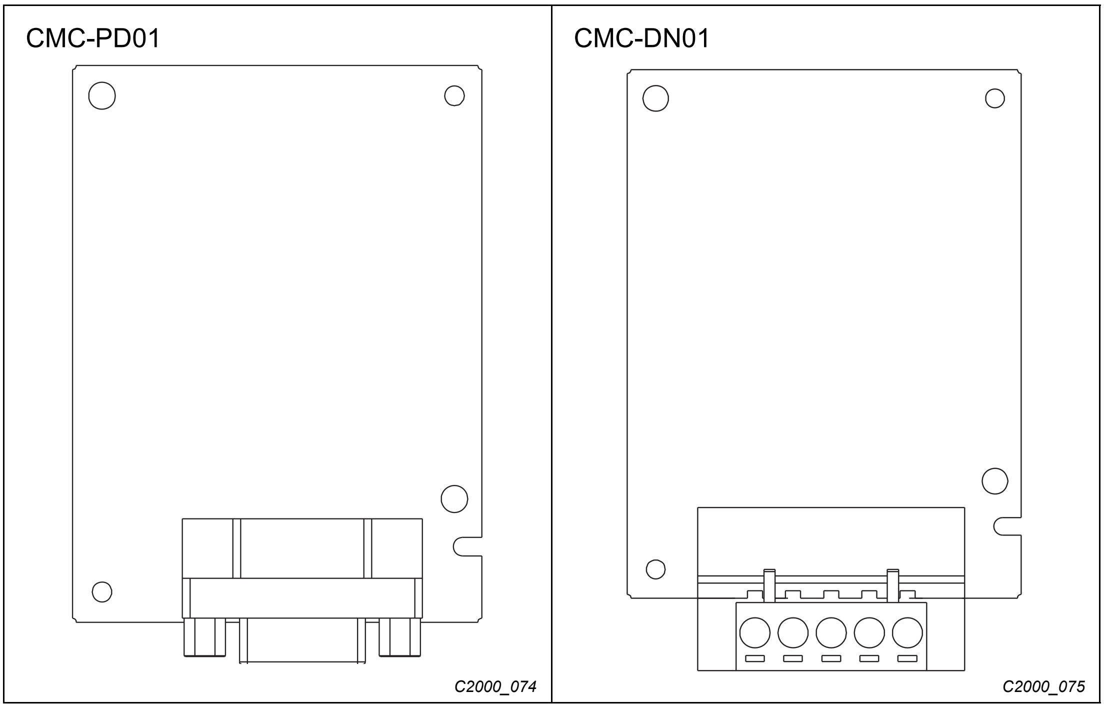


Fig. 8-12: Communication extension card (Slot 1)

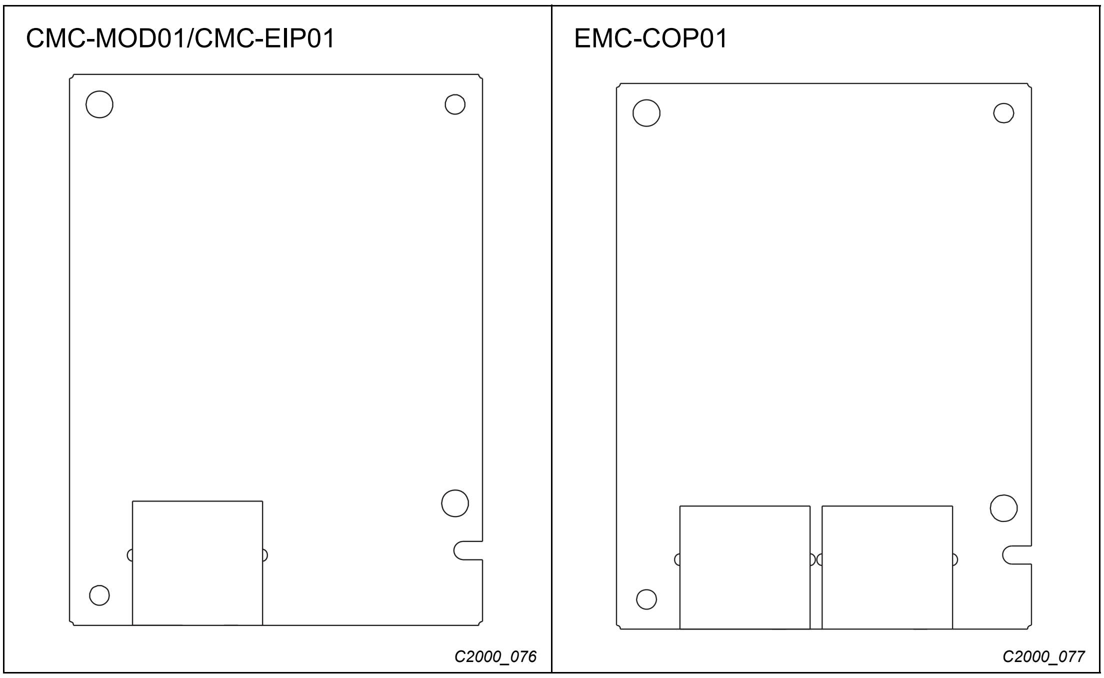


Fig. 8-13: Communication extension card (Slot 1)

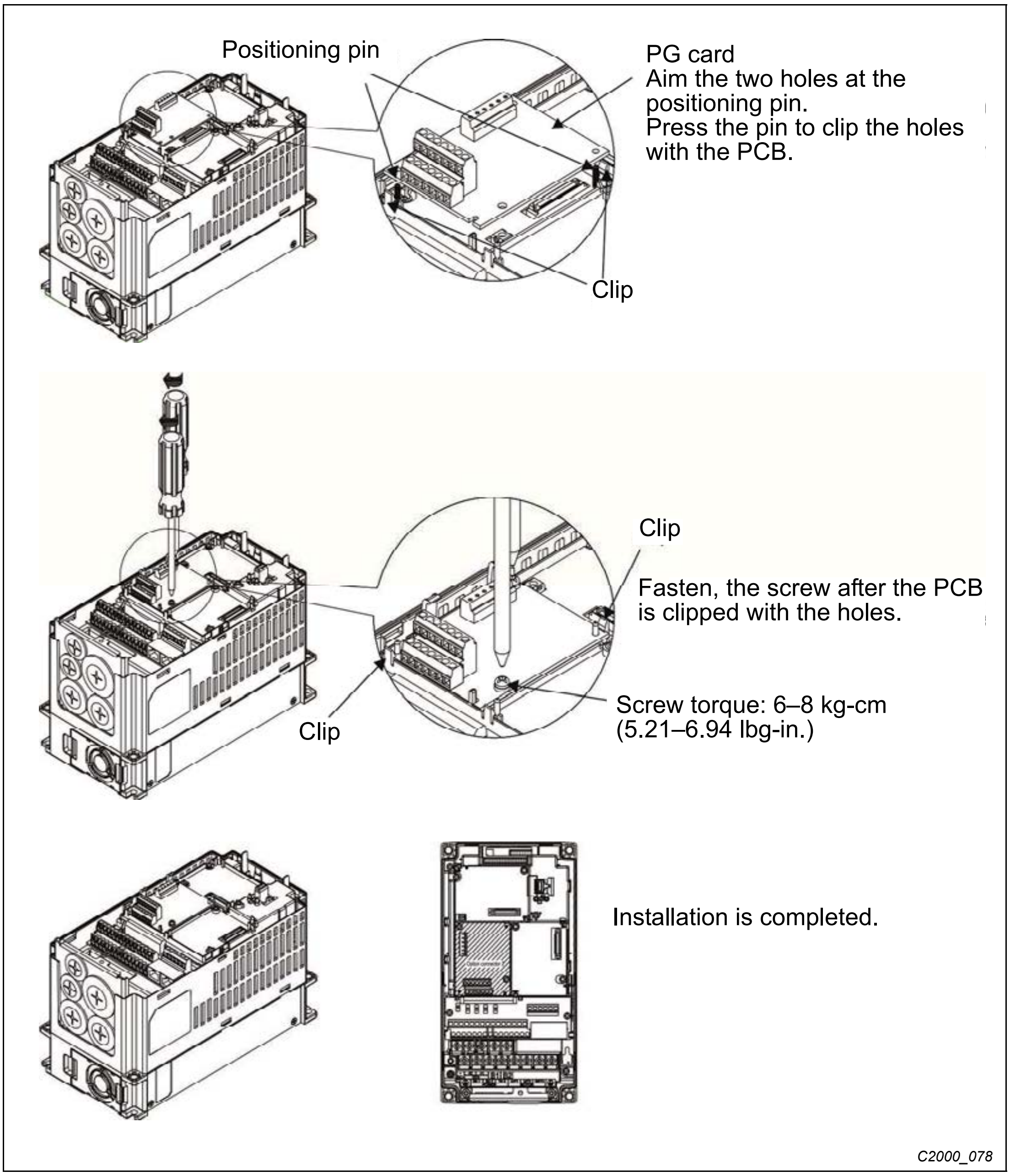


Fig. 8-14: PG card intallation

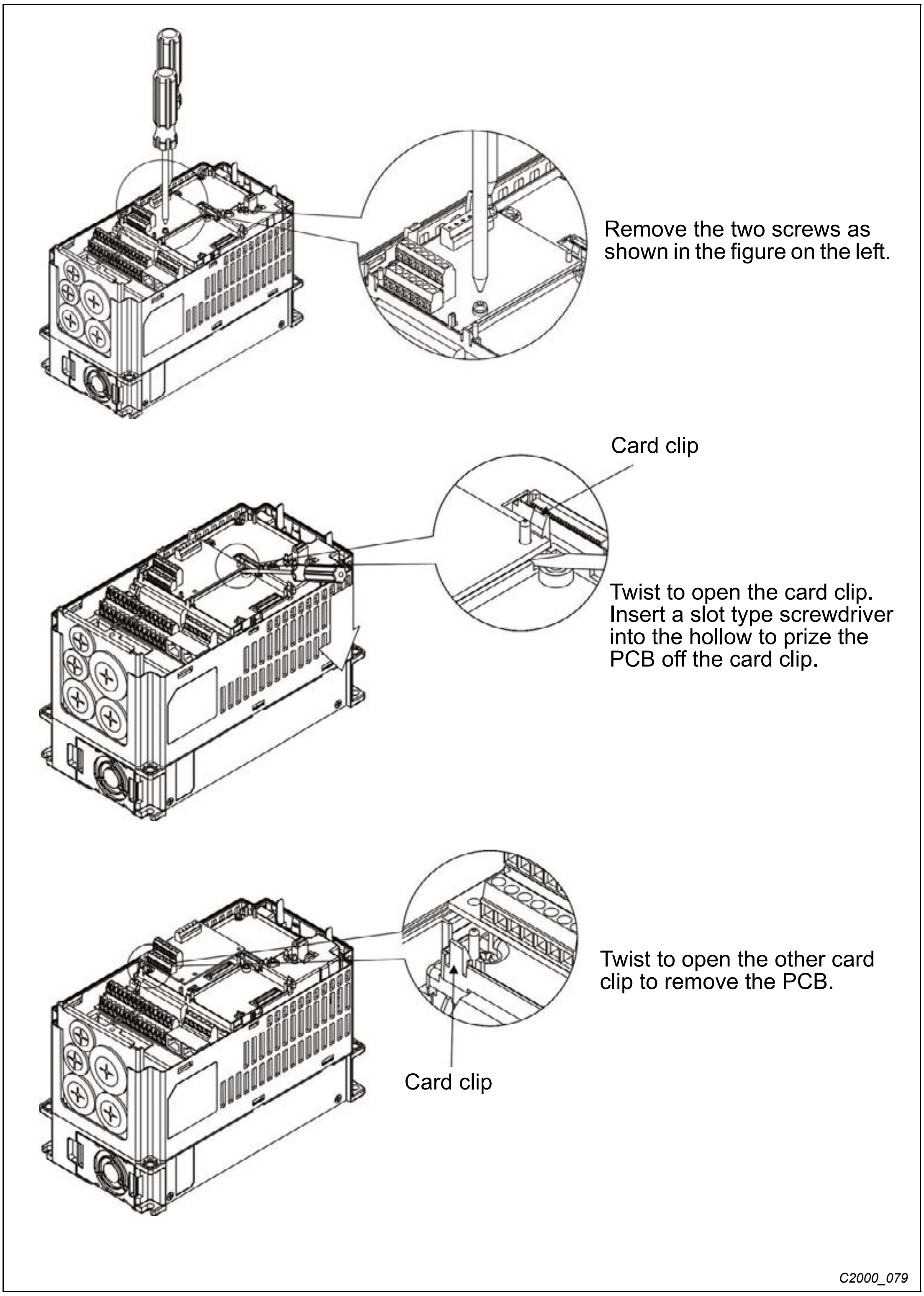
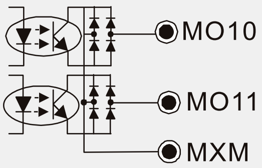


Fig. 8-15: Disconneting the extension card

8.3 EMC-D42A

Type	Terminal	Description
I/O extension card	COM	Common for multi-function input terminals Select SINK (NPN)/SOURCE (PNP) in J1 jumper/external power supply
	MI10–MI13	Refer to parameters 02.26–02.29 to program the multi-function inputs MI10–MI13. Internal power is applied from terminal E24: +24 V DC ±5 % 200 mA, 5 W External power +24 V DC: max. voltage 30 V DC, min. voltage 19 V DC, 30 W ON: the activation current is 6.5 mA OFF: leakage current tolerance is 10 μA
	MO10–MO11	Multi-function output terminals (photocoupler) The AC motor drive releases various monitor signals, such as drive in operation, frequency attained and overload indication, via transistor (open collector):  C2000_080
	MXM	Common for multi-function output terminals MO10, MO11(photocoupler) Max 48 V DC 50 mA

Tab. 8-2: Specifications of I/O extension card EMC-D42A

8.4 EMC-D611A

Type	Terminal	Description
I/O extension card	AC	AC power common for multi-function input terminal (Neutral)
	MI10–MI15	Refer to Pr. 02-26–Pr. 02-31 for multi-function input selection Input voltage: 100–130 V AC Input frequency: 47–63 Hz Input impedance: 27 Kohm Terminal response time: ON: 10 ms OFF: 20 ms

Tab. 8-3: Specifications of I/O extension card EMC-D611A

8.5 EMC-R6AA

Type	Terminal	Description
Relay extension card	R10A–R15A R10C–R15C	Refer to Pr. 02-36–Pr. 02-41 for multi-function input selection Resistive load: 5 A (N.O.) 250 V AC 5 A (N.O.) 30 V DC Inductive load (COS 0.4) 2.0 A (N.O.) 250 V AC 2.0 A (N.O.) 30 V DC It is used to output each monitor signal, such as drive is in operation, frequency attained or overload indication.

Tab. 8-4: Specifications of relay extension card EMC-R6AA

8.6 EMC-BPS01

Type	Terminal	Description
External power supply	24 V GND	Input power: 24 V ±5 % Maximum input current: 0.5 A Note: Do not connect control terminal +24V (Digital control signal common: SOURCE) directly to the EMC-BPS01input terminal 24 V. Do not connect control terminal GND directly to the EMC-BPS01 input terminal GND.

Tab. 8-5: Specifications of external power supply EMC-BPS01

NOTE Refer to I/O & relay extension card installation/disconnecting method for PG card installation/disconnecting.

8.7 EMC-PG01L/EMC-PG02L

8.7.1 Terminal description

Terminals		Description
PG1	VP	Output voltage for power: +5 V/+12 V ±5 % (use FSW3 to switch +5 V/ +12 V) Max. output current: 200 mA
	DCM	Common for power and signal
	A1, /A1, B1, /B1, Z1, /Z1	Encoder input signal (Line driver or open collector) Open collector input voltage: +5–+24 V ① It can be 1-phase or 2-phase input. EMC-PG01L: Max. input frequency: 300 kHz EMC-PG02L: Max. input frequency: 30 kHz②
PG2	A2, /A2, B2, /B2	Pulse Input signal (Line driver or open collector) Open collector input voltage: +5–+24 V ① It can be 1-phase or 2-phase input. EMC-PG01L: Max. input frequency: 300 kHz EMC-PG02L: Max. input frequency: 30 kHz②
PG OUT	AO, /AO, BO, / BO, ZO, /ZO, SG,	PG card output signals. It has division frequency function: 1–255 times Max. output voltage for Line driver: 5 V DC Max. output current: 50 mA EMC-PG01L Max. output frequency: 300 kHz EMC-PG02L Max. output frequency: 30 kHz SG is the GND of PG card. It is also the GND of position machine or PLC to make the ouput signal to be the common pivot point.

Tab. 8-6: Terminal description EMC-PG01L/EMC-PG02L

① Open collector application, input current 5–15 mA to each set then each set needs one pull-up resistor. If input voltage of open collector is 24 V, the power of encoder needs to be connected externally. Please refer diagram 2 of PG1.
5 V: Recommended pull-up resistor: above 100–220 Ω, 1/2 W
12 V: Recommended pull-up resistor: above 510 Ω–1.35 kΩ, 1/2 W
24 V: Recommended pull-up resistor, above 1.8–3.3 kΩ, 1/2 W

② If the required bandwidth is not over 30 kHz at the application, it is recommended to use EMC-PG02O/L (bandwidth 30 kHz) to avoid interference.

NOTE Set by Pr. 10-00–10-02, 10-16–10-18

PG1 card wiring diagram

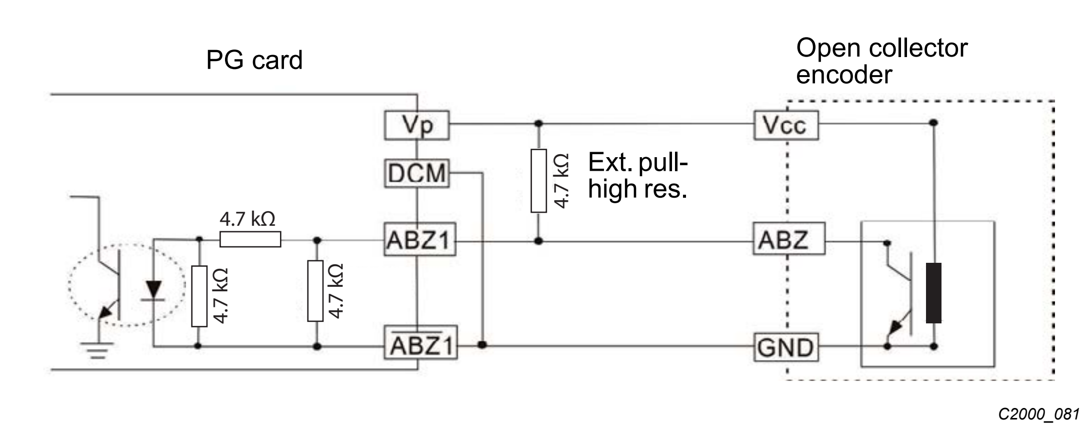


Fig. 8-16: Wiring diagram of open collector encoder

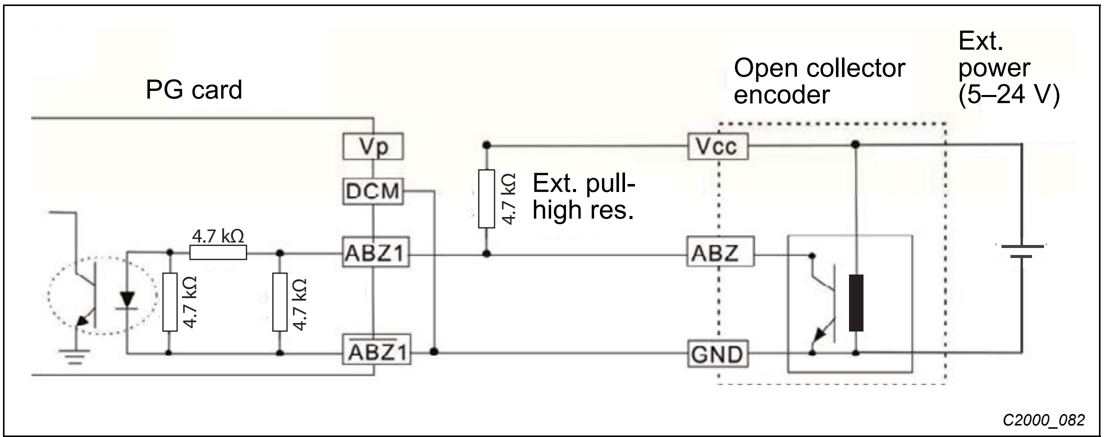


Fig. 8-17: Wiring diagram of open collector encoder with external power supply

PG2 wiring diagram

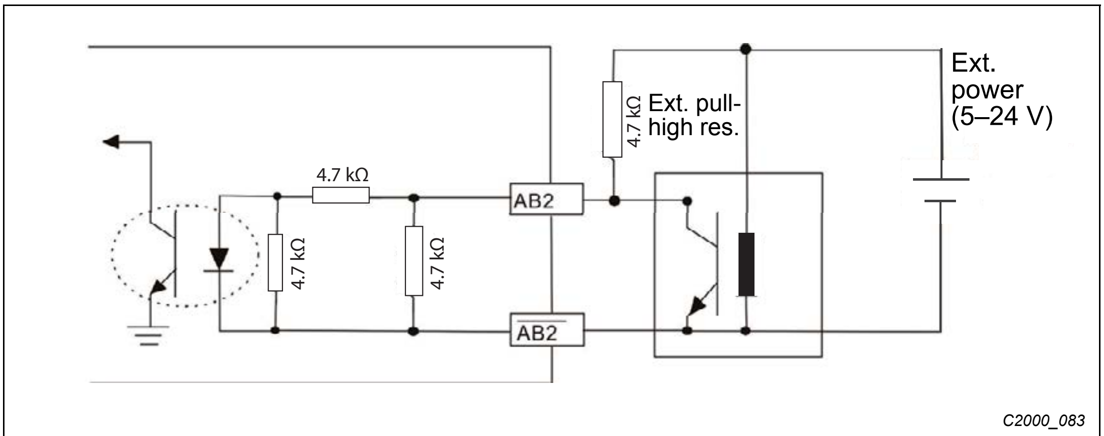


Fig. 8-18: Wiring daigram of open collector encoder

8.7.2 Wiring diagram

- Please use a shielded cable to prevent interference. Do not run control wires parallel to any high voltage AC power line (200 V and above).
- Recommended wire size 0.21 to 0.81mm^2 (AWG24 to AWG18).
- Cable length: Less than 100 m

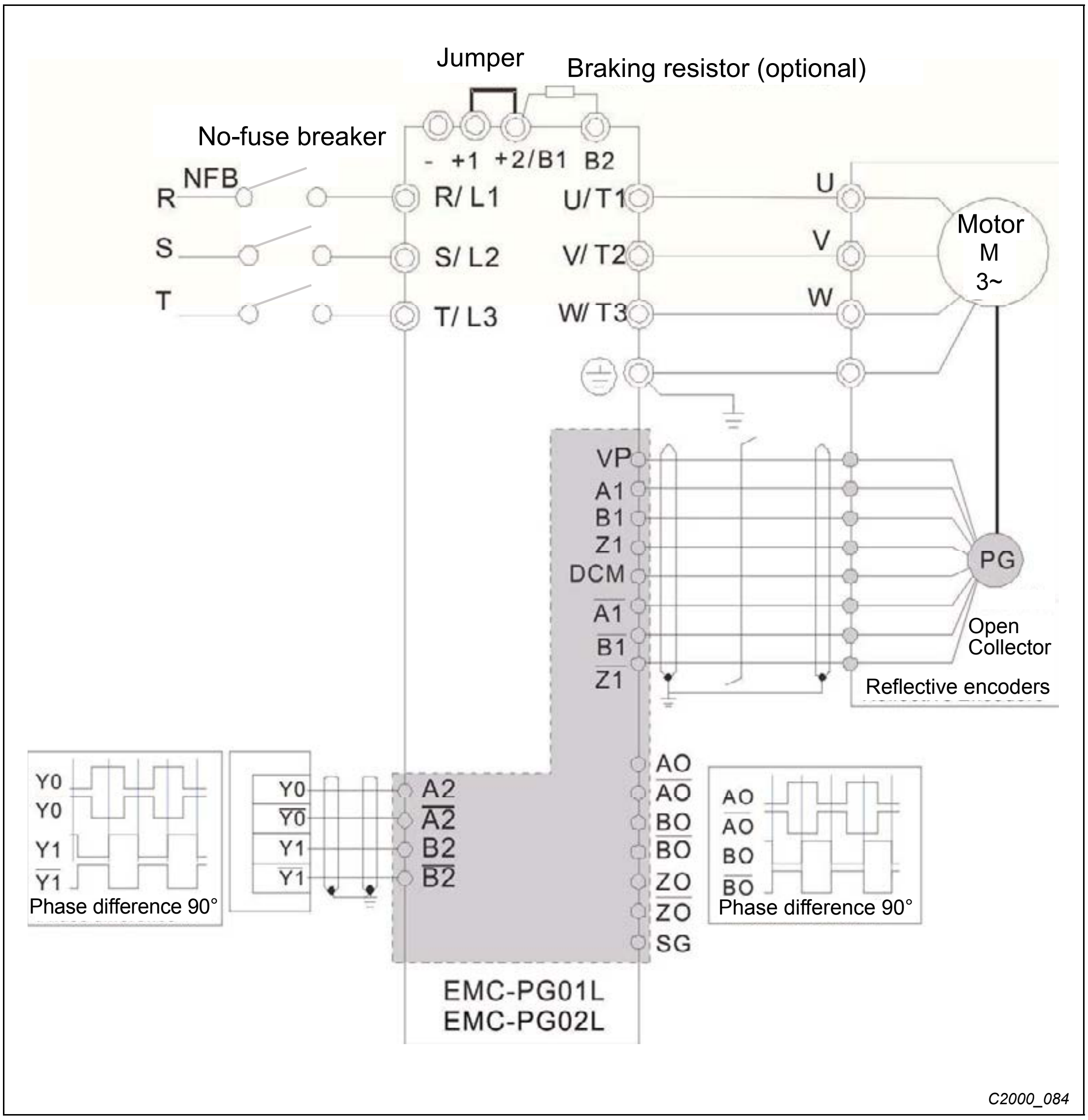


Fig.8-19: Wiring diagram of option card EMC-PG01L/EMC-PG02L

8.8 EMC-PG01O/EMC-PG02O

8.8.1 Terminal description

Terminal		Description
PG1	VP	Output voltage for power: +5 V/+12 V ±5 % (use FSW3 to switch +5 V/ +12 V) Max. output current: 200 mA
	DCM	Common for power and signal
	A1, /A1, B1, /B1, Z1, /Z1	Encoder input signal (Line driver or open collector) Open collector input voltage: +5 V–+24 V ① It can be 1-phase or 2-phase input. EMC-PG01O Max. input frequency: 300 kHz EMC-PG02O Max. input frequency: 30 kHz ②
PG2	A2, /A2, B2, /B2	Pulse input signal (Line driver or open collector) Open collector input voltage: +5–+24 V ① EMC-PG01O Max. input frequency: 300 kHz EMC-PG02O Max. input frequency: 30 kHz ②
PG OUT	V+, V+	Needs external power source for PG OUT circuit. Input voltage of power: +12 V – +24 V
	V–	Input voltage for the negative side
	A/O, B/O, Z/O	PG card output signals has division frequency function: 1–255 times. On the open collector's output signal, add a high-pull resistor on the external power V+ – V- (e.g. power of PLC) to prevent the interference of the receiving signal. Max. [Three pull-up resistor are included in the package (1.8 kΩ/1 W)] ① EMC-PG01O Max. input frequency: 300 kHz EMC-PG02O Max. input frequency: 30 kHz

Tab. 8-7: Terminal description EMC-PG01O/EMC-PG02O

① Open collector application, input current 5–15 mA to each set then each set needs one pull-up resistor. If input voltage of open collector is 24 V, the power of encoder needs to be connected externally. Please refer diagram 2 of PG1.
5 V: Recommended pull-up resistor: above 100–220 Ω, 1/2 W
12 V: Recommended pull-up resistor: above 510 Ω–1.35 kΩ, 1/2 W
24 V: Recommended pull-up resistor, above 1.8–3.3 kΩ, 1/2 W

② If the required bandwidth is not over 30 kHz at the application, it is recommended to use EMC-PG02O/L (bandwidth 30 kHz) to avoid interference.

NOTE Set by Pr. 10-00–10-02, 10-16–10-18

PG1 card wiring diagram

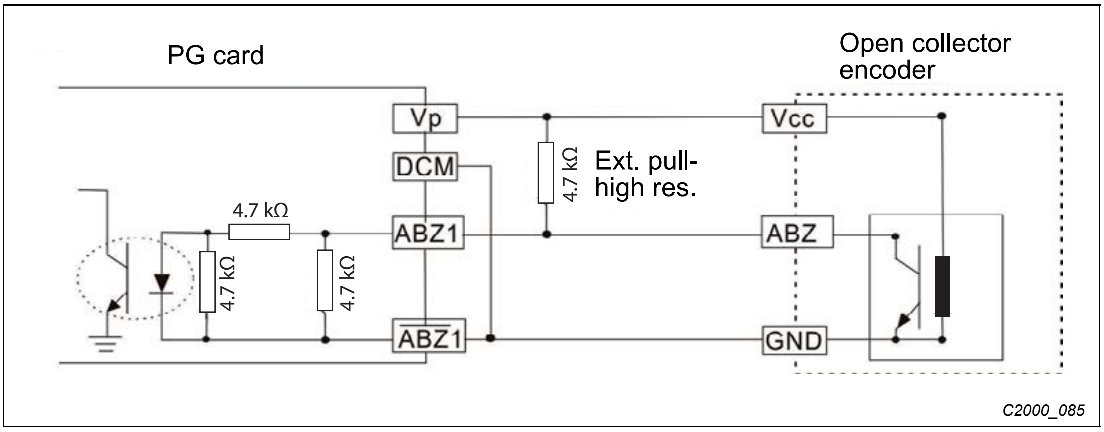


Fig. 8-20: Wiring diagram of open collector encoder

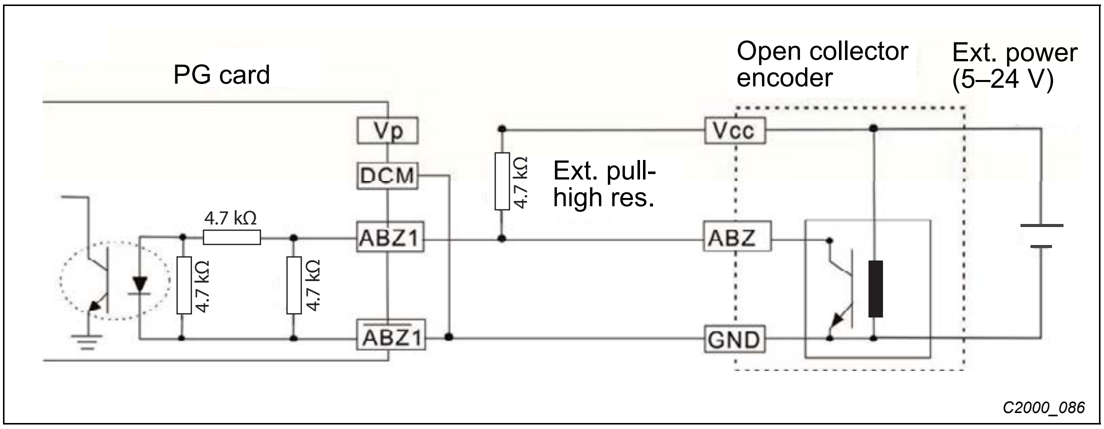


Fig. 8-21: Wiring diagram of open collector encoder with external power supply

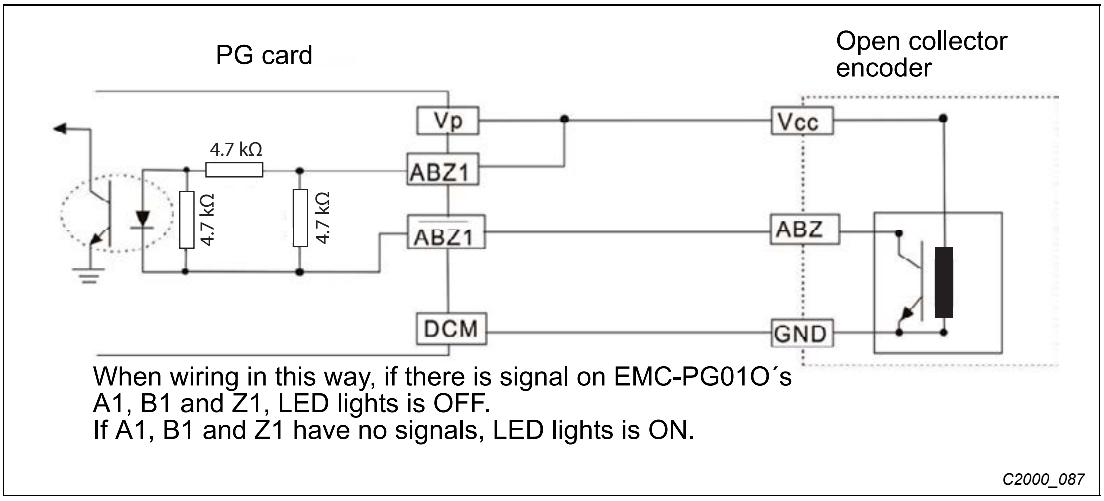


Fig. 8-22: Wiring diagram of open collector encoder

PG2 wiring diagram

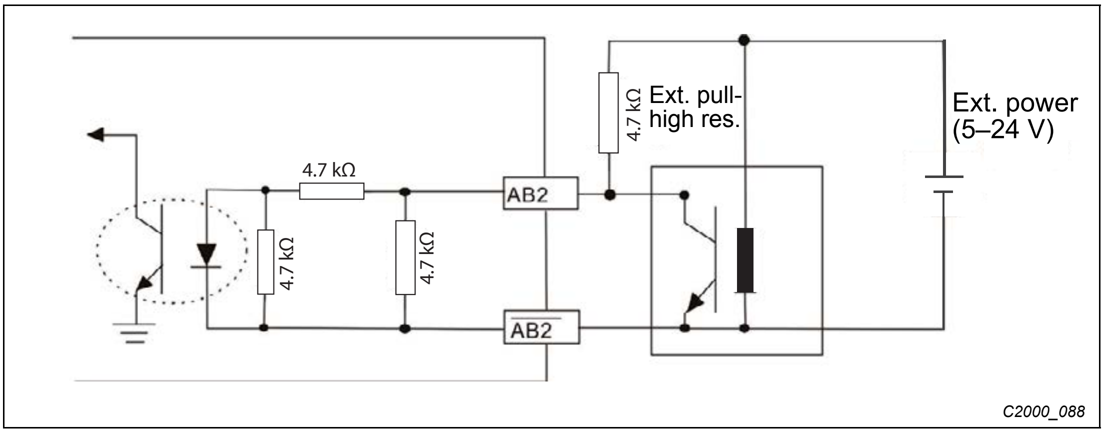


Fig. 8-23: Wiring diagram of open collector encoder with external power supply

8.8.2 Wiring diagram

- Please use a shielded cable to prevent interference. Do not run control wires parallel to any high voltage AC power line (200 V and above).
- Recommended wire size 0.21 to 0.81 mm^2 (AWG24 to AWG18).
- Cable length: Less than 30 m

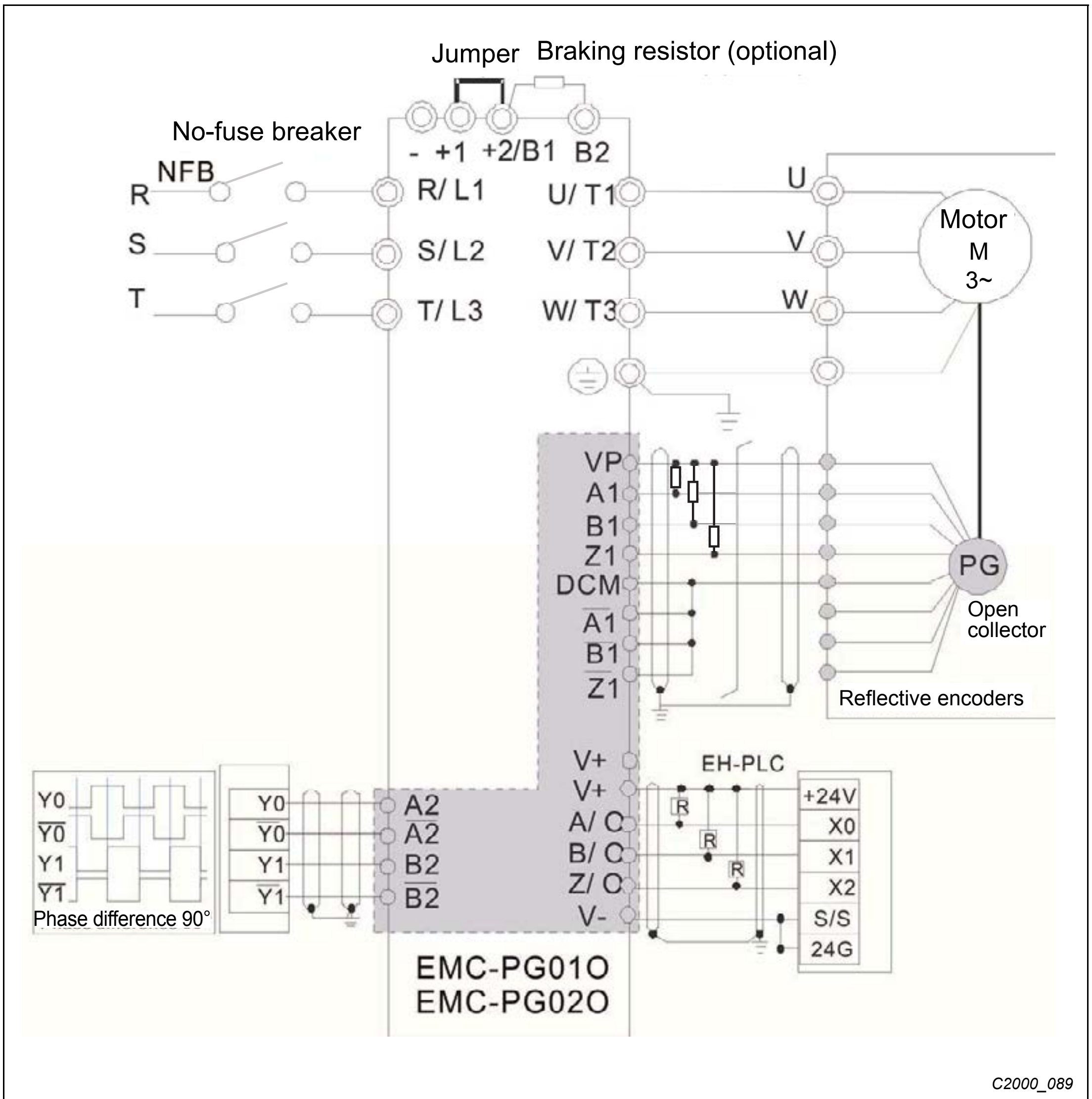


Fig. 8-24: Wiring diagram of option card EMC-PG01O/EMC-PG02O

8.9 EMC-PG01U/EMC-PG02U

8.9.1 Terminal description

Terminal		Description
PG1	VP	Output voltage for power: +5 V/+12 V ±5 % (use FSW3 to switch +5 V/ +12 V) Max. output current: 200 mA
	DCM	Common for power and signal
	A1, /A1, B1, /B1, Z1, /Z1	Encoder input signal (Line driver) It can be 1-phase or 2-phase input. Max. output frequency: 300 kP/sec
	U1, /U1, V1, /V1, W1, /W1	Encoder input signal
PG2	A2, /A2, B2, /B2	Pulse input signal (Line driver or open collector) Open collector input voltage: +5–+24 V ① It can be 1-phase or 2-phase input. Max. output frequency: 300 kP/sec.
PG OUT	AO, /AO, BO, /BO, ZO, /ZO, SG	PG Card Output signals. It has division frequency function: 1–255 times Max. output voltage for line driver: 5 V DC Max. output current: 50 mA Max. output frequency: 300 kP/sec SG is the GND of PG card. It is also the GND of position machine or PLC to make the ouput signal to be the common pivot point.

Tab. 8-8: Terminal descriptions EMC-PG01U/EMC-PG02U

① Open collector application, input current 5–15 mA to each set then each set needs one pull-up resistor.
5 V: Recommended pull-up resistor: above 100–220 Ω, 1/2 W
12 V: Recommended pull-up resistor: above 510 Ω–1.35 kΩ, 1/2 W
24 V: Recommended pull-up resistor, above 1.8—3.3 kΩ, 1/2 W

NOTE Set by Pr. 10-00–10-02, 10-16–10-18

- FSW1 **S:** Standard UVW Output Encoder; **D:** Delta Encoder
- When using the Delta Encoder, wait for at least 250 ms after powering up to receive signals from UVW. If a running command is received before UVW signals finish, a PGF5 error message will be given. So wait for 250 ms before sending a running command.
- EMC-PG02U has encoder disconnection detection function.

PG2 wiring diagram

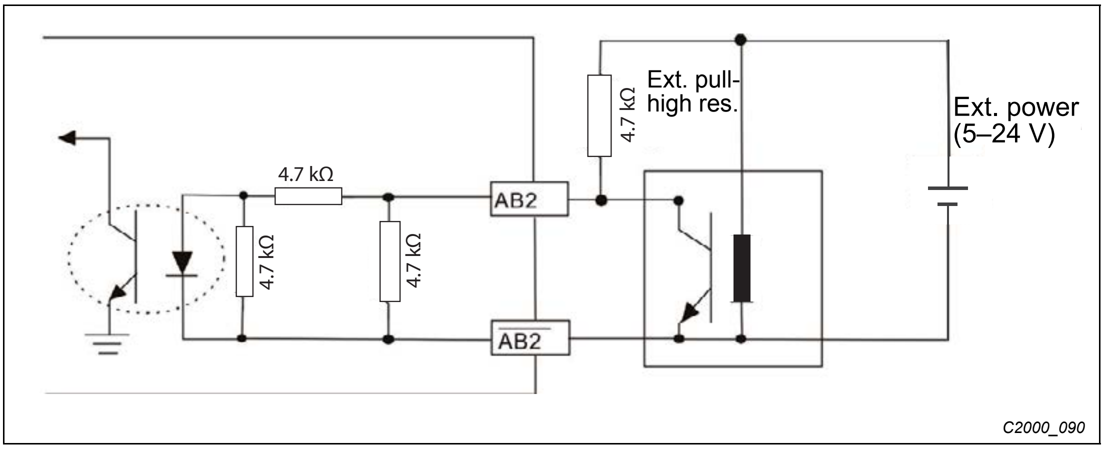


Fig.8-25: Wiring diagram of open collector encoder with external power supply

8.9.2 Wiring diagram

- Please use a shielded cable to prevent interference. Do not run control wires parallel to any high voltage AC power line (200 V and above).
- Recommended wire size 0.21 to 0.81 mm^2 (AWG24 to AWG18).
- Cable length: Less than 30 m

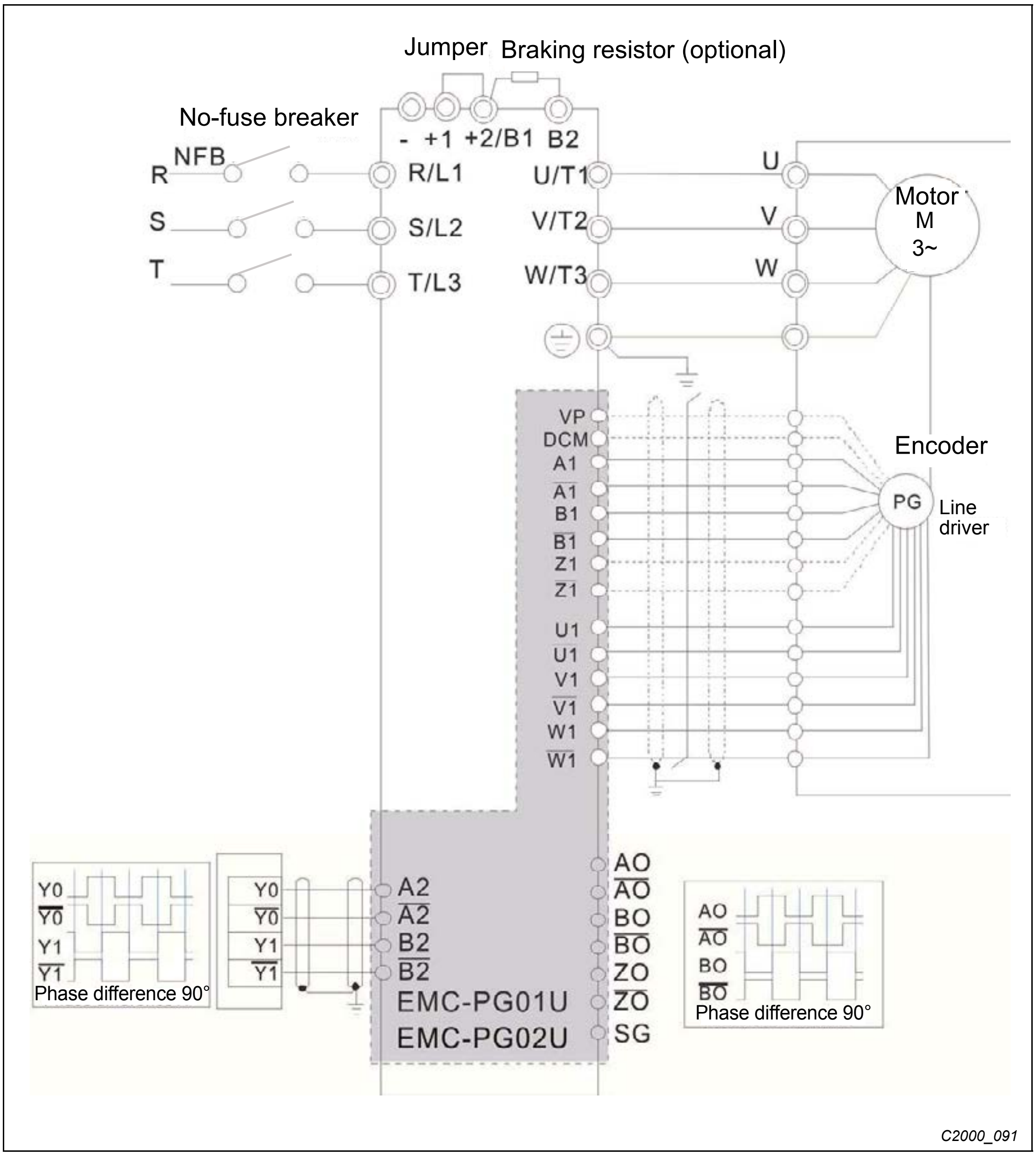


Fig.8-26: Wiring diagram of option card EMC-PG01U

8.10 EMC-PG01R

8.10.1 Terminal description

Terminal		Description
PG1	R1–R2	Resolver output power 7 Vrms, 10 kHz
	S1, / S3, S2, / S4,	Resolver input signal (S2,/S4 = Sin; S1,/S3 = Cos) 3.5 ±0.175 Vrms, 10 kHz
PG2	A2, /A2, B2, /B2	Pulse input signal (Line driver or open collector) Open collector input voltage: +5–+24 V ① It can be 1-phase or 2-phase input. Max. output frequency: 300 kP/sec.
PG OUT	AO, / AO, BO, / BO, ZO, / ZO, SG,	PG card output signals. It has division frequency function: 1–255 times Max. output voltage for line driver: 5 V DC Max. output current: 50 mA Max. output frequency: 300 kP/sec SG is the GND of PG card. It is also the GND of position machine or PLC to make the ouput signal to be the common pivot point.

Tab. 8-9: Terminal description EMC-PG01R

① Open collector application, input current 5–15 mA to each set then each set needs one pull-up resistor.
5 V: Recommended pull-up resistor: above 100–220 Ω, 1/2 W
12 V: Recommended pull-up resistor: above 510 Ω–1.35 kΩ, 1/2 W
24 V: Recommended pull-up resistor, above 1.8–3.3 kΩ, 1/2 W

NOTE Set by Pr. 10-00–10-02

PG2 wiring diagram

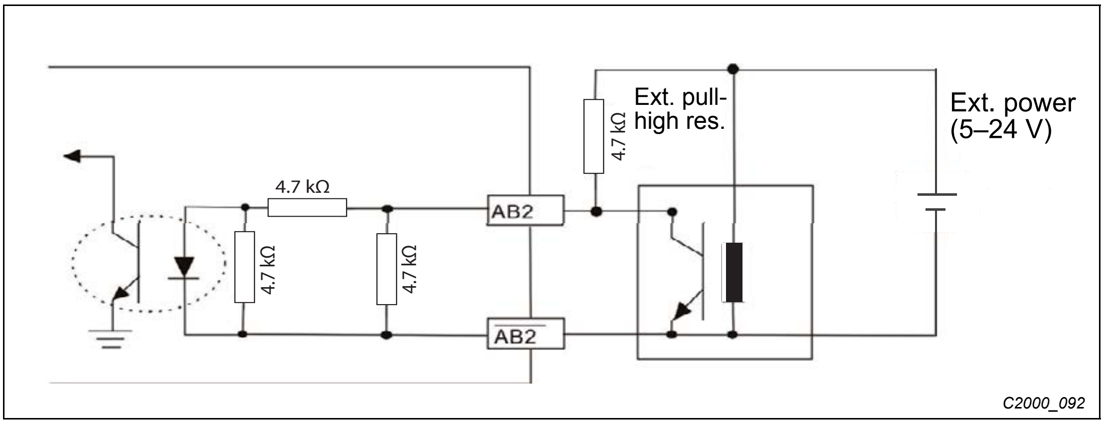


Fig.8-27: Wiring diagram of open collector encoder with external power supply

NOTES

- DOS (Degradation of Signal): If the amplitude of the sine wave input of the S1-/S3/ S2-/S4 is lower than or higher than the encoder IC's specification, a red light will be on. The possible reasons which cause this problem are the following:
  - The turns ratio of the resolver encoder is not 1: 0.5 which makes the sine wave input of the S1-/S3/S2-/S4 not equal to 3.5 ±0.175 Vrms.
  - While motor is running, motor creates common mode noise which makes accumulated voltage to be more than 3.5 ±0.175 Vrms.
- LOT (Loss of tracking): Compare the angle of S1-/S3/S2-/S4 sine wave input to the R1-R2 cosine wave. If their difference is more than 5 degree, a red light will be on. Here are the possible reasons why that happens:
  - The output frequency of the PG card is incorrect.
  - The specification of Resolver's encoder is not 10 kHz.
  - The motor creates common mode noise while it is running. That causes a big difference, while the motor is rotating, between main winding's cosine wave angle and the sine wave angle of second and third windings.

8.10.2 Wiring diagram

- Please use a shielded cable to prevent interference. Do not run control wires parallel to any high voltage AC power line (200 V and above).
- Recommended wire size 0.21 to 0.81 mm^2 (AWG24 to AWG18).
- Cable length: Less than 100 m

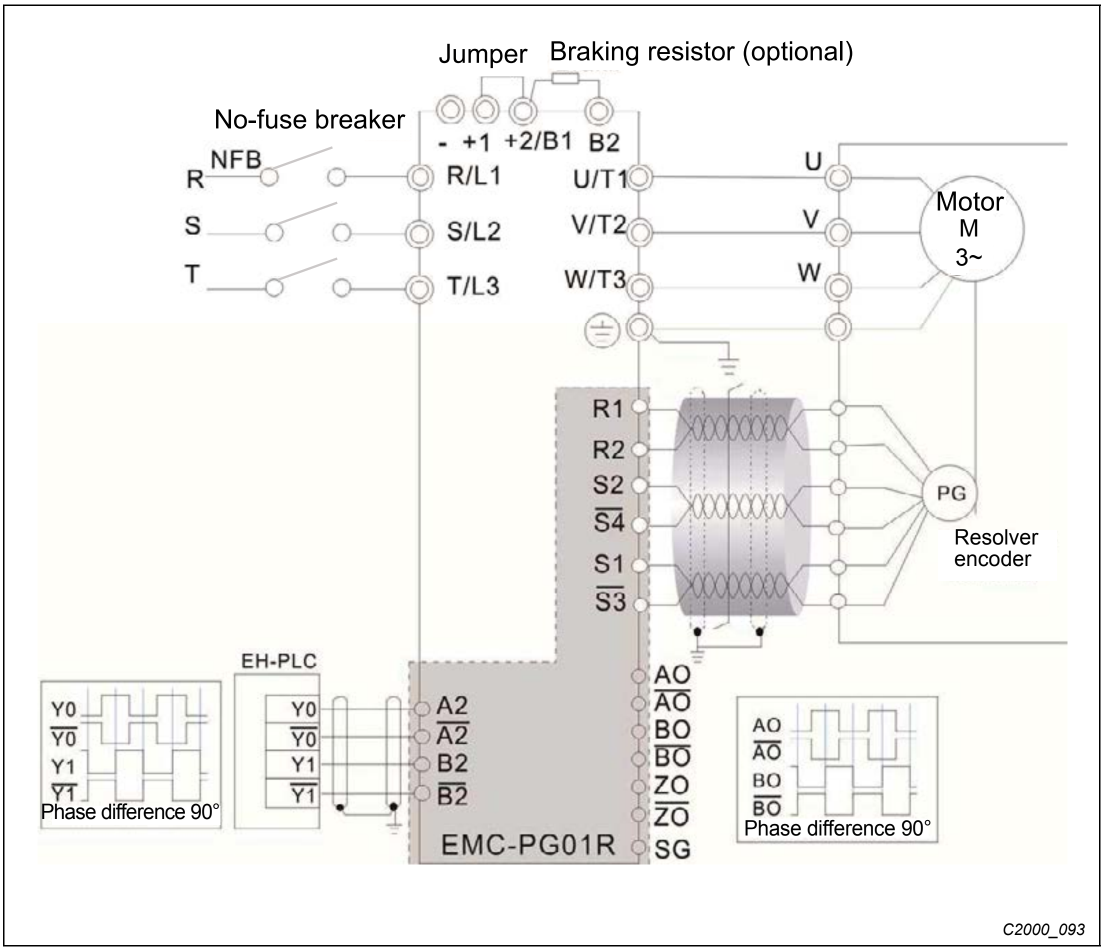


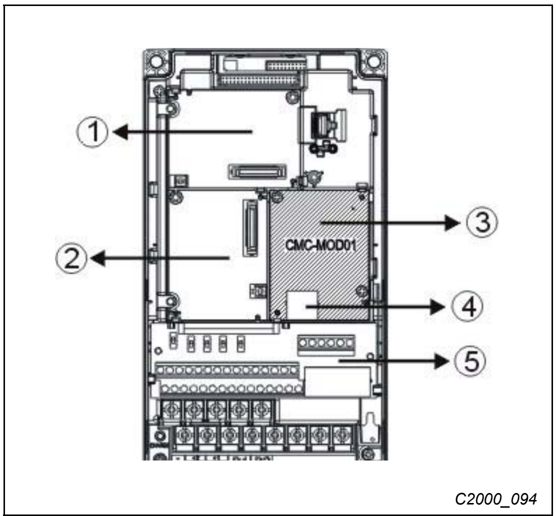
Fig. 8-28: Wiring diagram of option card EMC-PG01R

8.11 CMC-MOD01

8.11.1 Features

- Supports Modbus TCP protocol
- MDI/MDI-X auto-detect
- Baud rate: 10/100 Mbps auto-detect
- E-mail alarm
- AC motor drive keypad/Ethernet configuration
- Virtual serial port.

8.11.2 Product file



① I/O card & relay card
② PG card
③ Communication card
④ RJ-45 connection port
⑤ Removable control circuit terminal

Fig. 8-29: Plug-in locations for option cards

8.11.3 Specifications

Specifications	
Interface	RJ-45 with auto MDI/MDIX
Number of ports	1 port
Transmission method	IEEE 802.3, IEEE 802.3u
Transmission cable	Category 5e shielding 100M
Transmission speed	10/100 Mbps auto-detect
Network protocol	ICMP, IP, TCP, UDP, DHCP, HTTP, SMTP, MODBUS OVER TCP/IP, Delta configuration

Tab. 8-10: Network interface

Specifications	
Power supply voltage	5 V DC (supply by the AC motor drive)
Insulation voltage	2 kV
Power consumption	0.8 W
Weight	25 g

Tab. 8-11: Electrical specifications

Specifications	
Noise immunity	ESD (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 61000-4-2) EFT (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 61000-4-4) Surge Test (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 61000-4-5) Conducted Susceptibility Test (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 61000-4-6)
Operation/storage	Operation: -10 °C–50 °C (temperature), 90 % (humidity) Storage: -25 °C–70 °C (temperature), 95 % (humidity)
Vibration/shock immunity	International standard: IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 60068-2-6/IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 60068-2-27

Tab. 8-12: Environmental conditions

8.11.4 Install CMC-MOD01 to VFD-C2000

① Switch off the power supply of the VFD-C2000.

② Open the front cover of the VFD-C2000.

③ Place the insulation spacer into the positioning pin at Slot 1 (shown in Figure 8-30), and aim the two holes on the PCB at the positioning pin. Press the pin to clip the holes with the PCB (shown in Figure 8-31).

④ Screw up at torque 6–8 kg-cm (5.21–6.94 in-lbs) after the PCB is clipped with the holes (shown in Figure 8-32).

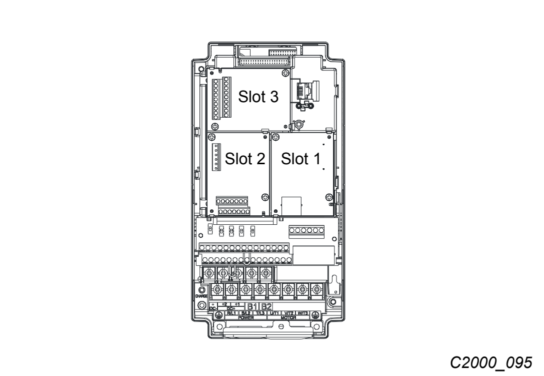


Fig. 8-30: Plug-in locations for option cards

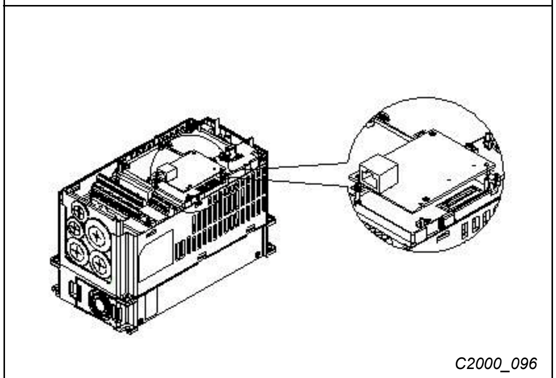


Fig. 8-31: Assembly of the card

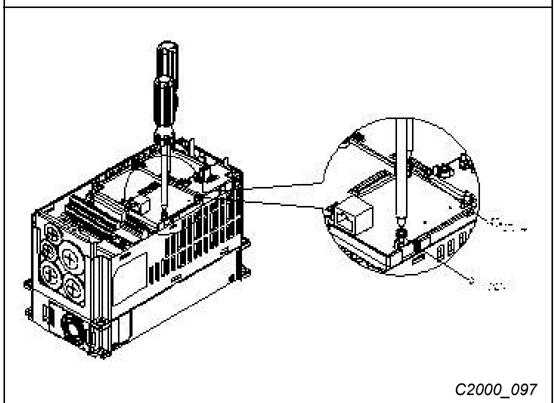


Fig. 8-32: Fasten the option card

8.11.5 Communication parameters for VFD-C2000 connected to Ethernet

When VFD-C2000 is link to Ethernet, please set up the communication parameters base on the table below. Ethernet master will be able to read/write the frequency word and control word of VFD-C2000 after communic-ation parameters setup.

Parameter	Function	Set value (Dec)	Explanation
P00-20	Source of frequency command setting	8	The frequency command is controlled by communication card.
P00-21	Source of operation command setting	5	The operation command is controlled by communication card.
P09-30	Decoding method for communication	0	Decoding method for Delta AC motor drive
P09-75	IP setting	0	Static IP (0)/Dynamic distribution IP (1)
P09-76	IP address – 1	192	IP address 192.168.1.5
P09-77	IP address – 2	168	IP address 192.168.1.5
P09-78	IP address – 3	1	IP address 192.168.1.5
P09-79	IP address – 4	5	IP address 192.168.1.5
P09-80	Netmask – 1	255	Netmask 255.255.255.0
P09-81	Netmask – 2	255	Netmask 255.255.255.0
P09-82	Netmask – 3	255	Netmask 255.255.255.0
P09-83	Netmask – 4	0	Netmask 255.255.255.0
P09-84	Default gateway – 1	192	Default gateway 192.168.1.1
P09-85	Default gateway – 2	168	Default gateway 192.168.1.1
P09-86	Default gateway – 3	1	Default gateway 192.168.1.1
P09-87	Default gateway – 4	1	Default gateway 192.168.1.1

Tab. 8-13: CMC-MOD01 communication parameters

8.11.6 Disconnecting CMC-MOD01 from VFD-C2000

① Switch off the power supply of VFD-C2000.

② Remove the two screws (shown in Figure 8-33).

③ Twist opens the card clip and inserts the slot type screwdriver to the hollow to prize the PCB off the card clip (shown in Figure 8-34).

④ Twist opens the other card clip to remove the PCB (shown in Figure 8-35).

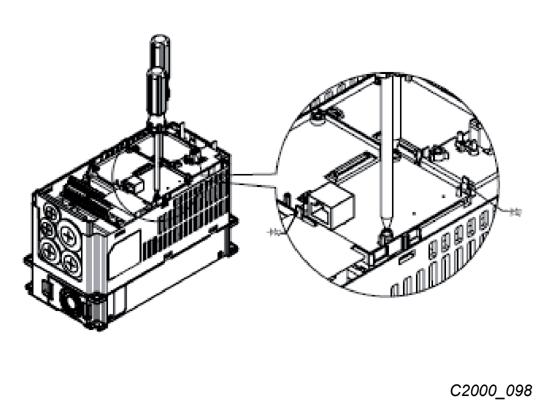


Fig. 8-33: Remove the screws of the card

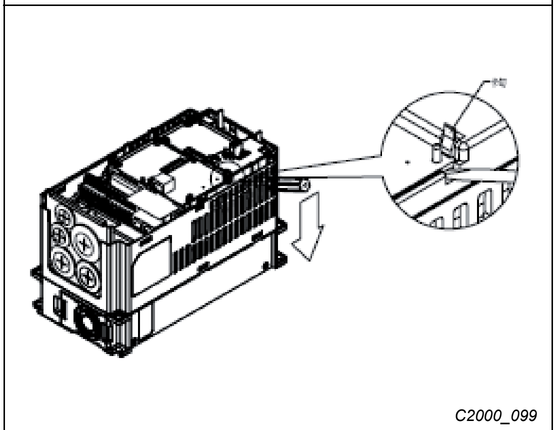


Fig. 8-34: Open the card clip

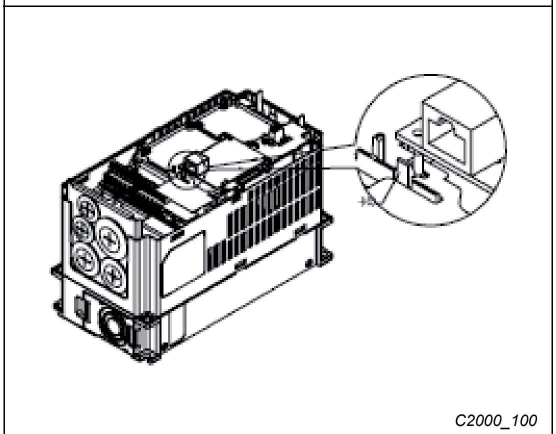


Fig. 8-35: Remove the pcb

8.11.7 Basic registers

BR#	R/W	Content	Explanation
#0	R	Model name	Set up by the system; read only. The model code of CMC-MOD01 = H'0203
#1	R	Firmware version	Displaying the current firmware version in hex, e.g. H'0100 indicates the firmware version V1.00.
#2	R	Release date of the version	Displaying the data in decimal form. 10,000 s digit and 1,000 s digit are for "month"; 100 s digit and 10 s digit are for "day". For 1 digit: 0 = morning; 1 = afternoon.
#11	R/W	Modbus timeout	Pre-defined setting: 500 (ms)
#13	R/W	Keep alive time	Pre-defined setting: 30 (s)

Tab. 8-14: Basic registers

8.11.8 LED indicator & troubleshooting

LED	Status		Indication	How to correct it?
POWER	Green	On	Power supply in normal status	—
		Off	No power supply	Check the power supply
LINK	Green	On	Network connection in normal status	—
		Flashes	Network in operation	—
		Off	Network not connected	Check if the network cable is connected

Tab. 8-15: LED indicators

Abnormality	Cause	How to correct it?
POWER LED off	AC motor drive not powered	Check if AC motor drive is powered, and if the power supply is normal.
	CMC-MOD01 not connected to AC motor drive	Make sure CMC-MOD01 is connected to AC motor drive.
LINK LED off	CMC-MOD01 not connected to network	Make sure the network cable is correctly connected to network.
	Poor contact to RJ-45 connector	Make sure RJ-45 connector is connected to Ethernet port.
No module found	CMC-MOD01 not connected to network	Make sure CMC-MOD01 is connected to network.
	PC and CMC-MOD01 in different networks and blocked by network firewall.	Search by IP or set up relevant settings by AC motor drive keypad.
Fail to open CMC-MOD01 setup page	CMC-MOD01 not connected to network	Make sure CMC-MOD01 is connected to the network.
	Incorrect communication setting in DCISoft	Make sure the communication setting in DCISoft is set to Ethernet.
	PC and CMC-MOD01 in different networks and blocked by network firewall.	Conduct the setup by AC motor drive keypad.
Able to open CMC-MOD01 setup page but fail to utilize webpage monitoring	Incorrect network setting in CMC-MOD01	Check if the network setting for CMC-MOD01 is correct. For the Intranet setting in your company, please consult your IT staff. For the Internet setting in your home, please refer to the network setting instruction provided by your ISP.
Fail to send e-mail	Incorrect network setting in CMC-MOD01	Check if the network setting for CMC-MOD01 is correct.
	Incorrect mail server setting	Please confirm the IP address for SMTP-Server.

Tab. 8-16: Troubleshooting

8.12 CMC-PD01

8.12.1 Features

- Supports PZD control data exchange.
- Supports PKW polling AC motor drive parameters.
- Supports user diagnosis function.
- Auto-detects baud rates; supports max. 12 Mbps.

8.12.2 Product profile

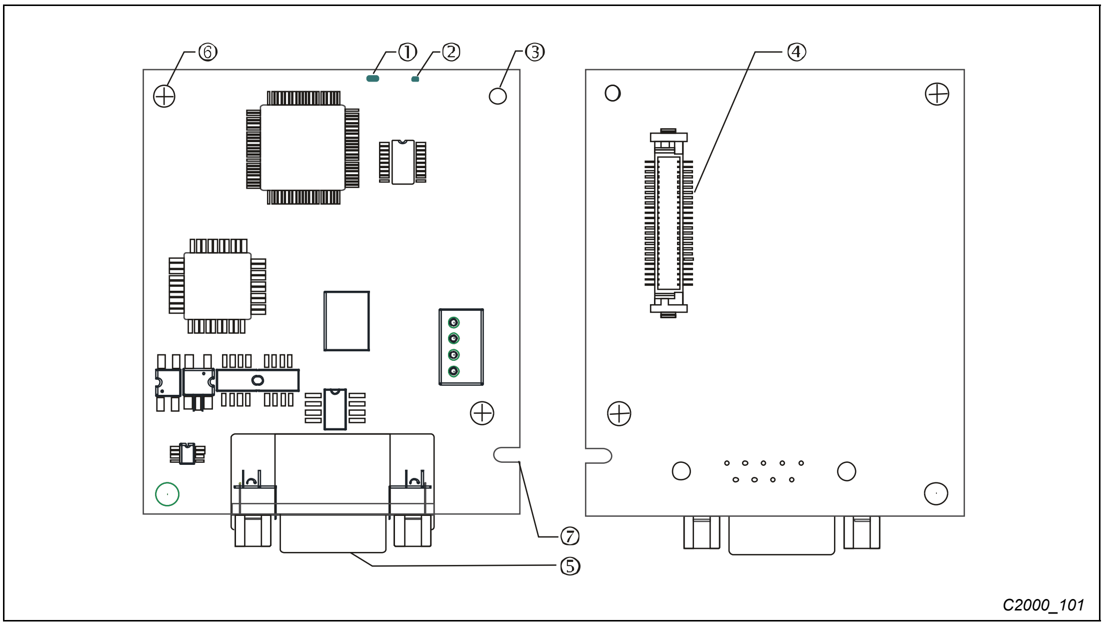


Fig. 8-36: View of the option card CMC-PD01

① NET indicator

② POWER indicator

③ Positioning hole

④ AC motor drive connection port

⑤ PROFIBUS DP connection port

⑥ Screw fixing hole

⑦ Fool-proof groove

8.12.3 Specifications

Specifications	
Interface	DB9 connector
Transmission method	High-speed RS485
Transmission cable	Shielded twisted pair cable
Electrical isolation	500 V DC

Tab. 8-17: PROFIBUS DP connector

Specifications	
Message type	Cyclic data exchange
Module name	CMC-PD01
GSD document	DELA08DB.GSD
Company ID	08DB (HEX)
Serial transmission speed supported (auto-detection)	9.6 kbps; 19.2 kbps; 93.75 kbps; 187.5 kbps; 125 kbps; 250 kbps; 500 kbps; 1.5 Mbps; 3 Mbps; 6 Mbps; 12 Mbps (bit per second)

Tab. 8-18: Communication specifications

Specifications	
Power supply voltage	5 V DC (supplied by AC motor drive)
Insulation voltage	500 V DC
Power consumption	1 W
Weight	28 g

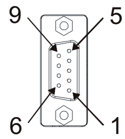
Tab. 8-19: Electrical specifications

Specifications	
Noise immunity	ESD (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 6100-4-2) EFT (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 6100-4-4) Surge Teat (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 6100-4-5) Conducted Susceptibility Test (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 6100-4-6)
Operation/storage	Operation: -10 °C–50 °C (temperature), 90 % (humidity) Storage: -25 °C–70 °C (temperature), 95 % (humidity)
Shock/vibration resistance	International standards: IEC 61131-2, IEC 68-2-6 (TEST Fc)/IEC 61131-2 & IEC 68-2-27 (TEST Ea)

Tab. 8-20: Environmental conditions

8.12.4 Installation

PIN	PIN name	Definition
1	—	Not defined
2	—	Not defined
3	Rxd/Txd-P	Sending/receiving data P (B)
4	—	Not defined
5	DGND	Data reference ground
6	VP	Power voltage – positive
7	—	Not defined
8	Rxd/Txd-N	Sending/receiving data N (A)
9	—	Not defined



C2000_102

Tab. 8-21: PROFIBUS DP connector

8.12.5 LED indicator & troubleshooting

There are 2 LED indicators on CMC-PD01. POWER LED displays the status of the working power. NET LED displays the connection status of the communication.

LED status	Indication	How to correct it?
Green light on	Power supply in normal status.	—
Off	No power	Check if the connection between CMC-PD01 and AC motor drive is normal.

Tab. 8-22: POWER LED

LED status	Indication	How to correct it?
Green light on	Normal status	—
Red light on	CMC-PD01 is not connected to PROFIBUS DP bus.	Connect CMC-PD01 to PROFIBUS DP bus.
Red light flashes	Invalid PROFIBUS communication address	Set the PROFIBUS address of CMC-PD01 between 1–125 (decimal)
Orange light flashes	CMC-PD01 fails to communication with AC motor drive.	Switch off the power and check whether CMC-PD01 is correctly and normally connected to AC motor drive.

Tab. 8-23: NET LED

8.13 CMC-DN01

8.13.1 Functions

- Based on the high-speed communication interface of Delta HSSP protocol, able to conduct immediate control to AC motor drive.
- Supports Group 2 only connection and polling I/O data exchange.
- For I/O mapping, supports max. 32 words of input and 32 words of output.
- Supports EDS file configuration in DeviceNet configuration software.
- Supports all baud rates on DeviceNet bus: 125 kbps, 250 kbps, 500 kbps and extendable serial transmission speed mode.
- Node address and serial transmission speed can be set up on AC motor drive.
- Power supplied from AC motor drive.

8.13.2 Product profile

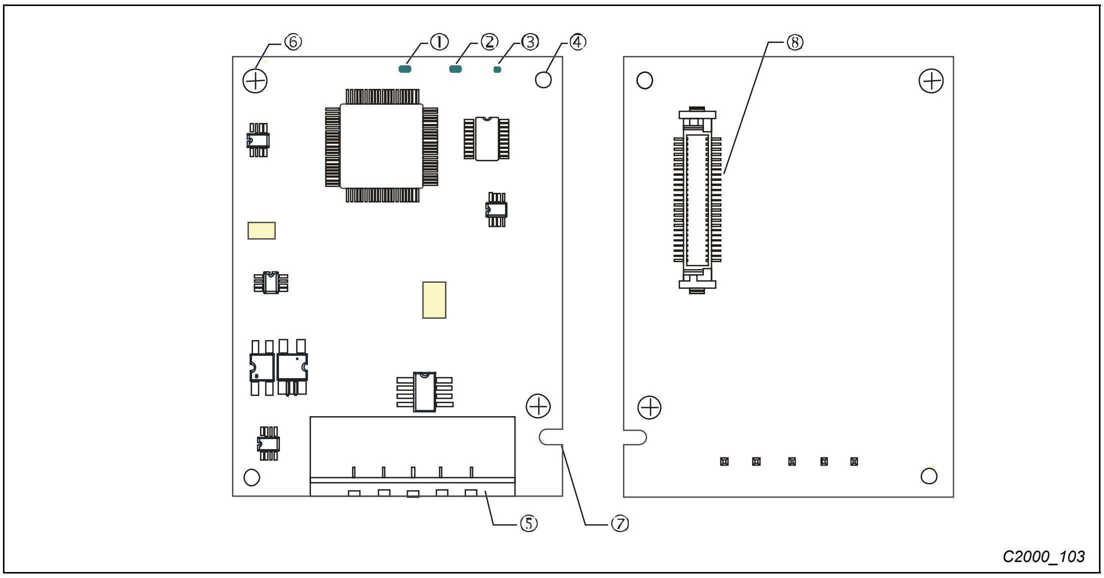


Fig. 8-37: View of the option card CMC-DN01

① NS indicator
② MS indicator
③ POWER indicator
④ Positioning hole
⑤ DeviceNet connection port
⑥ Screw fixing hole
⑦ Fool-proof groove
⑧ AC motor drive connection port

8.13.3 Specifications

Specifications	
Interface	5-PIN open removable connector. Of 5.08 mm PIN interval
Transmission	CAN
Transmission cable	Shielded twisted pair cable (with 2 power cables)
Transmission speed	125 kbps, 250 kbps, 500 kbps and extendable serial transmission speed mode
Network protocol	DeviceNet protocol

Tab. 8-24: DeviceNet connector

Specifications	
Interface	50 PIN communication terminal
Transmission method	SPI communication
Terminal function	Communicating with AC motor drive Transmitting power supply from AC motor drive
Communication protocol	Delta HSSP protocol

Tab. 8-25: AC motor drive connection port

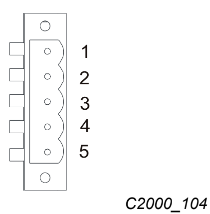
Specifications	
Power supply voltage	5 V DC (supplied by AC motor drive)
Insulation voltage	500 V DC
Communication wire power consumption	0.85 W
Power consumption	1 W
Weight	23 g

Tab. 8-26: Electrical specifications

Specifications	
Noise immunity	ESD (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 6100-4-2) EFT (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 6100-4-4) Surge Teat (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 6100-4-5) Conducted Susceptibility Test (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 6100-4-6)
Operation/storage	Operation: -10 °C–50 °C (temperature), 90 % (humidity) Storage: -25 °C–70 °C (temperature), 95 % (humidity)
Shock/vibration resistance	International standards: IEC 61131-2, IEC 68-2-6 (TEST Fc)/IEC 61131-2 & IEC 68-2-27 (TEST Ea)

Tab. 8-27: Environmental conditions

PIN	Signal	Color	Definition
1	V+	Red	DC 24 V
2	H	White	Signal+
3	S	—	Earth
4	L	Blue	Signal–
5	V-	Black	0 V



Tab. 8-28: DeviceNet connector

8.13.4 LED indicator & troubleshooting

There are 3 LED indicators on CMC-DN01. POWER LED displays the status of power supply. MS LED and NS LED are dual-color LED, displaying the connection status of the communication and error messages.

LED status	Indication	How to correct it?
Off	Power supply in abnormal status	Check the power supply of CMC-DN01.
Lights up green	Power supply in normal status	—

Tab. 8-29: POWER LED status

LED status	Indication	How to correct it?
Off	No power supply or CMC-DN01 has not completed MAC ID test yet.	① Check the power of CMC-DN01 and see if the connection is normal. ② Make sure at least one or more nodes are on the bus. ③ Check if the serial transmission speed of CMC-DN01 is the same as that of other nodes.
Green light flashes	CMC-DN01 is on-line but has not established connection to the master.	① Configure CMC-DN01 to the scan list of the master. ② Re-download the configured data to the master.
Green light on	CMC-DN01 is on-line and is normally connected to the master	—
Red light flashes	CMC-DN01 is on-line, but I/O connection is timed-out.	① Check if the network connection is normal. ② Check if the master operates normally.
Red light on	① The communication is down. ② MAC ID test failure. ③ No network power supply. ④ CMC-DN01 is off-line.	① Make sure all the MAC IDs on the network are not repeated. ② Check if the network installation is normal. ③ Check if the baud rate of CMC-DN01 is consistent with that of other nodes. ④ Check if the node address of CMC-DN01 is illegal. ⑤ Check if the network power supply is normal.

Tab. 8-30: NS LED status

LED status	Indication	How to correct it?
Off	No power supply or being off-line	Check the power supply of CMC-DN01 and see of the connection is normal.
Green light flashes	Waiting for I/O data	Switch the master PLC to RUN status
Green light on	I/O data are normal	—
Red light flashes	Mapping error	① Reconfigure CMC-DN01 ② Re-power AC motor drive
Red light on	Hardware error	① See the error code displayed on AC motor drive. ② Send back to the factory for repair if necessary.
Orange light flashes	CMC-DN01 is establishing connection with AC motor drive.	If the flashing lasts for a long time, check if CMC-DN01 and AC motor drive are correctly installed and normally connected to each other.

Tab. 8-31: MS LED status

8.14 CMC-EIP01

8.14.1 Features

- Supports Modbus TCP and Ethernet/IP protocol
- MDI/MDI-X auto-detect
- Baud rate: 10/100 Mbps auto-detect
- AC motor drive keypad/Ethernet configuration
- Virtual serial port

8.14.2 Product profile

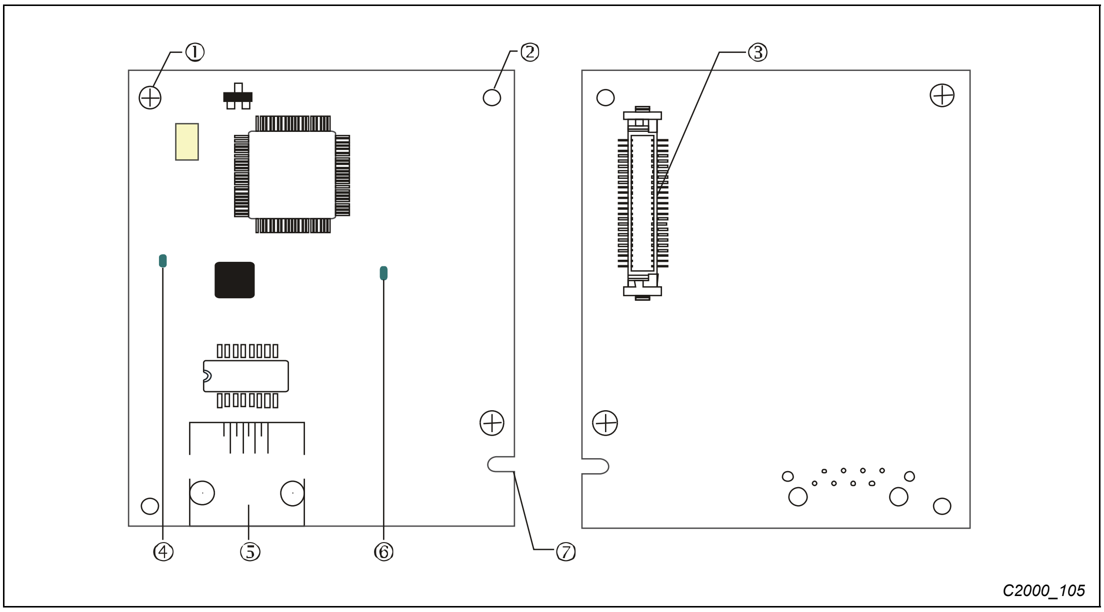


Fig. 8-38: View of the option card CMC-EIP01

① Screw fixing hole

② Positioning hole

③ AC motor drive connection port

④ LINK indicator

⑤ RJ-45 connection port

⑥ POWER indicator

⑦ Fool-proof groove

8.14.3 Specifications

Specifications	
Interface	RJ-45 with Auto MDI/MDIX
Number of ports	1 Port
Transmission method	IEEE 802.3, IEEE 802.3u
Transmission cable	Category 5e shielding 100M
Transmission speed	10/100 Mbps Auto-Detect
Network protocol	ICMP, IP, TCP, UDP, DHCP, HTTP, SMTP, MODBUS OVER TCP/IP, EtherNet/IP, Delta Configuration

Tab. 8-32: Network interface

Specifications	
Weight	25 g
Insulation voltage	500 V DC
Power consumption	0.8 W
Power supply voltage	5 V DC

Tab. 8-33: Electrical specifications

Specifications	
Noise immunity	ESD (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 61000-4-2) EFT (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 61000-4-4) Surge Test (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 61000-4-5) Conducted Susceptibility Test (IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 61000-4-6)
Operation/storage	Operation: -10 °C–50 °C (temperature), 90 % (humidity) Storage: -25 °C–70 °C (temperature), 95 % (humidity)
Vibration/shock immunity	International standard: IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 60068-2-6/IEC 61800-5-1, IEC 60068-2-27

Tab. 8-34: Environmental conditions

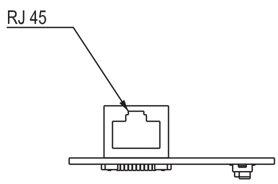
8.14.4 Installation

Connecting CMC-EIP01 to Network:

① Turn off the power of AC motor drive.

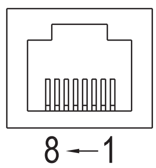
② Open the cover of AC motor drive.

③ Connect CAT-5e network cable to RJ-45 port on CMC-EIP01 (See Figure right).



C2000_106

PIN	Signal	Definition
1	Tx+	Positive pole for data transmission
2	Tx-	Negative pole for data transmission
3	Rx+	Positive pole for data receiving
4	—	N/C
5	—	N/C
6	Rx-	Negative pole for data receiving
7	—	N/C
8	—	N/C



C2000_107

Tab. 8-35: RJ-45 PIN definition

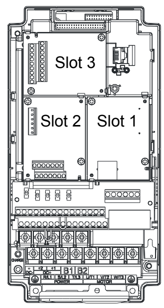
8.14.5 Connecting CMC-EIP01 to VFD-C2000

① Switch off the power of AC motor drive.

② Open the front cover of AC motor drive.

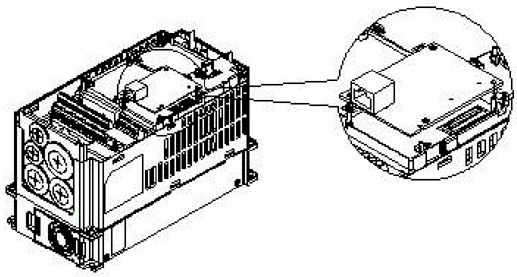
③ Place the insulation spacer into the positioning pin at Slot 1 (shown in Figure 8-39), and aim the two holes on the PCB at the positioning pin. Press the pin to clip the holes with the PCB (see Figure 8-40).

④ Screw up at torque 6–8 kg-cm (5.21–6.94 in-lbs) after the PCB is clipped with the holes (see Figure 8-41).



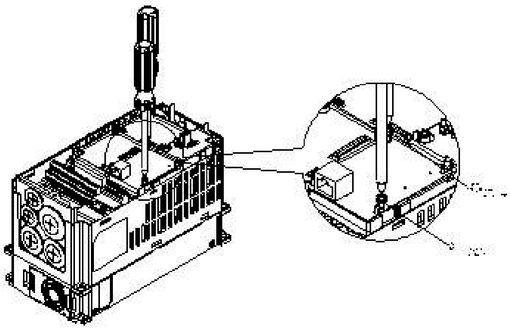
C2000_108

Fig. 8-39: Plug-in locations for option cards



C2000_109

Fig. 8-40: Assembly of the card



C2000_110

Fig. 8-41: Fasten the option card

8.14.6 Communication parameters for VFD-C2000 connected to Ethernet

When VFD-C2000 is connected to Ethernet network, please set up the communication parameters for it according to the table below. The Ethernet master is only able to read/write the frequency word and control word of VFD-C2000 after the communication parameters are set.

Parameter (Dec)	Function	Set value (Dec)	Explanation
P00-20	Source of frequency command setting	8	The frequency command is controlled by communication card.
P00-21	Source of operation command setting	5	The operation command is controlled by communication card.
P09-30	Decoding method for communication	0	The decoding method for Delta AC motor drive
P09-75	IP setting	0	Static IP(0)/Dynamic distribution IP(1)
P09-76	IP address – 1	192	IP address 192.168.1.5
P09-77	IP address – 2	168	IP address 192.168.1.5
P09-78	IP address – 3	1	IP address 192.168.1.5
P09-79	IP address – 4	5	IP address 192.168.1.5
P09-80	Netmask – 1	255	Netmask 255.255.255.0
P09-81	Netmask – 2	255	Netmask 255.255.255.0
P09-82	Netmask – 3	255	Netmask 255.255.255.0
P09-83	Netmask – 4	0	Netmask 255.255.255.0
P09-84	Default gateway – 1	192	Default gateway 192.168.1.1
P09-85	Default gateway – 2	168	Default gateway 192.168.1.1
P09-86	Default gateway – 3	1	Default gateway 192.168.1.1
P09-87	Default gateway – 4	1	Default gateway 192.168.1.1

Tab. 8-36: CMC-EIP01 communication parameters

8.14.7 Disconnecting CMC-EIP01 from VFD-C2000

① Switch off the power supply of VFD-C2000.

② Remove the two screws (see Figure 8-42).

③ Twist opens the card clip and inserts the slot type screwdriver to the hollow to prize the PCB off the card clip (see Figure 8-43).

④ Twist opens the other card clip to remove the PCB (see Figure 8-44).

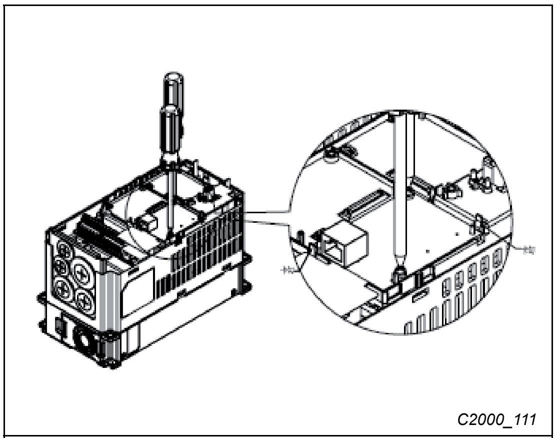


Fig. 8-42: Remove the screw of the card

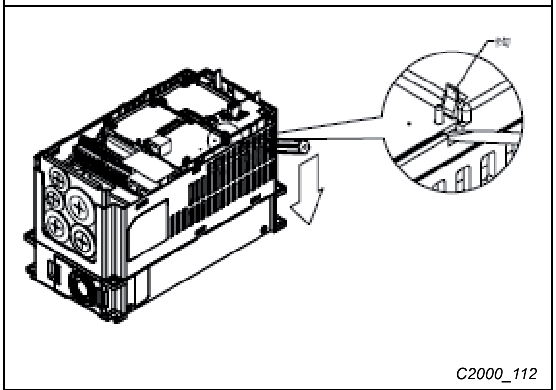


Fig. 8-43: Remove the screw of the card

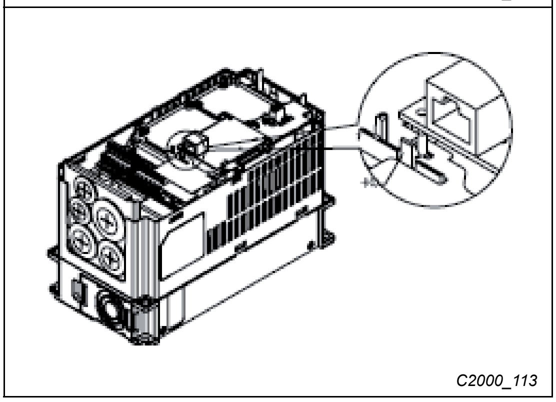


Fig. 8-44: Remove the screw of the card

8.14.8 LED indicator & troubleshooting

There are 2 LED indicators on CMC-EIP01. The POWER LED displays the status of power supply, and the LINK LED displays the connection status of the communication.

LED	Status		Indication	How to correct it?
POWER	Green	On	Power supply in normal status	—
		Off	No power supply	Check the power supply.
LINK	Green	On	Network connection in normal status	—
		Flashes	Network in operation	—
		Off	Network not connected	Check if the network cable is connected.

Tab. 8-37: LED indicators

Abnormality	Cause	How to correct it?
POWER LED off	AC motor drive not powered	Check if AC motor drive is powered, and if the power supply is normal.
	CMC-EIP01 not connected to AC motor drive	Make sure CMC-EIP01 is connected to AC motor drive.
LINK LED off	CMC-EIP01 not connected to network	Make sure the network cable is correctly connected to network.
	Poor contact to RJ-45 connector	Make sure RJ-45 connector is connected to Ethernet port.
No communication card found	CMC-EIP01 not connected to network	Make sure CMC-EIP01 is connected to network.
	PC and CMC-EIP01 in different networks and blocked by network firewall.	Search by IP or set up relevant settings by AC motor drive keypad.
Fail to open CMC-EIP01 setup page	CMC-EIP01 not connected to network	Make sure CMC-EIP01 is connected to the network.
	Incorrect communication setting in DCISoft	Make sure the communication setting in DCISoft is set to Ethernet.
	PC and CMC-EIP01 in different networks and blocked by network firewall.	Conduct the setup by AC motor drive keypad.
Able to open CMC-EIP01 setup page but fail to utilize webpage monitoring	Incorrect network setting in CMC-EIP01	Check if the network setting for CMC-EIP01 is correct. For the Intranet setting in your company, please consult your IT staff. For the Internet setting in your home, please refer to the network setting instruction provided by your ISP.
Fail to send e-mail	Incorrect network setting in CMC-EIP01	Check if the network setting for CMC-EIP01 is correct.
	Incorrect mail server setting	Please confirm the IP address for SMTP-Server.

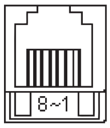
Tab. 8-38: Troubleshooting

8.15 EMC-COP01

Built-in EMC-COP01 card are available for the VFDXXXC23E/VFDXXXC43E series.

8.15.1 RJ-45 pin definition

Pin	Pin name	Definition
1	CAN_H	CAN_H bus line (dominant high)
2	CAN_L	CAN_L bus line (dominant low)
3	CAN_GND	Ground/0V/V-
7	CAN_GND	Ground/0V/V-



Tab. 8-39: Pin definition

8.15.2 Specifications

Specifications	
Interface	RJ-45
Number of ports	1 Port
Transmission method	CAN
Transmission cable	CAN standard cable
Transmission speed	1 Mbps, 500 kbps, 250 kbps, 125 kbps, 100 kbps, 50 kbps
Communication protocol	CANopen

Tab. 8-40: Specifications

8.15.3 CANopen communication cable

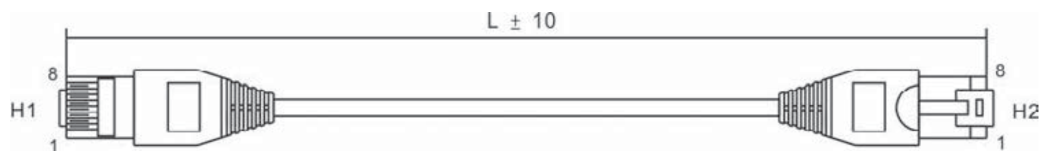


Fig.8-45: Model TAP-CB03, TAP-CB04

Type	Part No.	L	
		mm	inch
1	TAP-CB03	500 ±10	19 ±0.4
2	TAP-CB04	1000 ±10	39 ±0.4

Tab. 8-41: Cable types

8.15.4 CANopen dimensions

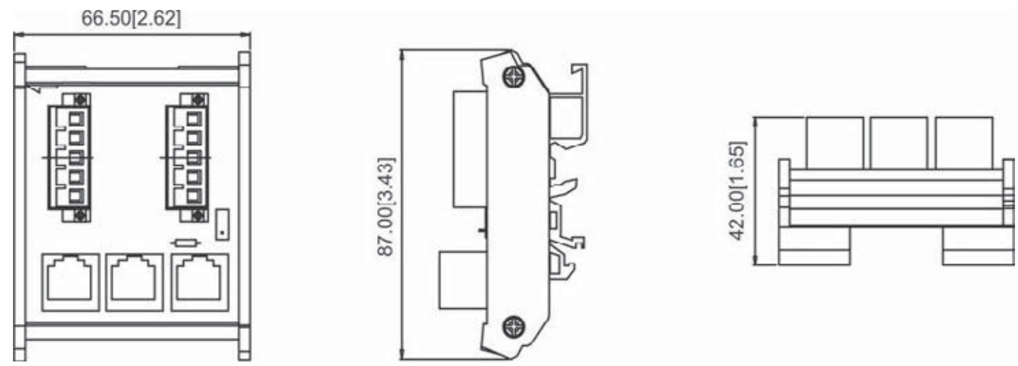


Fig.8-46: Model TAP-CN03

NOTE

For more information on CANopen, please refer to Chapter 15 "CANopen Overview" or the CANopen user´s manual which can also be downloaded on Delta website: http://www.delta.com.tw/industrialautomation/.

9 Specifications

9.1 230 V series

Frame size			A				B			C		
Model VFD-_ _ _C_ _			007	015	022	037	055	075	110	150	185	220
Applicable motor output (kW)			0.4	0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	5.5	7.5	11	15	18.5
Applicable motor output (HP)			0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	5.5	7.5	11	15	18.5	22
Output rating	Heavy duty	Rated output capacity (kVA)	1.9	2.8	4.0	6.4	9.6	12	19	25	28	34
		Rated output current (A)	4.8	7.1	10	16	24	31	47	62	71	86
		Carrier frequency (kHz)	2–6 kHz									
	Normal duty	Rate output capacity (kVA)	2.0	3.2	4.4	6.8	10	13	20	26	30	36
		Rated output current (A)	5	8	11	17	25	33	49	65	75	90
		Carrier frequency (kHz)	2–15 kHz							2–10 kHz		
Input rating	Input current (A) heavy duty		6.1	11	15	18.5	26	34	50	68	78	95
	Input current (A) normal duty		6.4	12	16	20	28	36	52	72	83	99
	Rated voltage/frequency		3-phase AC 200 V–240 V (–15%–10%), 50/60 Hz									
	Operating voltage range		170–265 V AC									
	Frequency tolerance		47–63 Hz									
AC drive weight			2.6 ±0.3 kg		5.4 ±1 kg					9.8 ±1.5 kg		
Cooling method			Natural cooling		Fan cooling							
Braking chopper			Built-in									
DC reactor			Optional									
EMC filter			Optional									
EMC-COP01			VFDXXC23A: Optional, VFDXXXC23E: Built-in									

Tab. 9-1: Specifications for appliance class 230 V (frame size A to C)

Frame size			D		E			F
Model VFD-_ _ _C_ _			300	370	450	550	750	900
Applicable motor output (kW)			22	30	37	45	55	75
Applicable motor output (HP)			30	37	45	55	75	90
Output Rating	Heavy duty	Rated output capacity (kVA)	45	55	68	81	96	131
		Rated output current (A)	114	139	171	204	242	329
		Carrier frequency (kHz)	2–6 kHz					
	Normal duty	Rate output capacity (kVA)	48	58	72	86	102	138
		Rated output current (A)	120	146	180	215	255	346
		Carrier frequency (kHz)	2–10 kHz		2–9 kHz			

Tab. 9-2: Specifications for appliance class 230 V (frame size D to F) (1)

Frame size		D		E			F
Input rating	Input current (A) heavy duty	118	136	162	196	233	315
	Input current (A) normal duty	124	143	171	206	245	331
	Rated voltage/frequency	3-phase AC 200 V–240 V (–15 %–+10 %), 50/60 Hz					
	Operating voltage range	170–265 V AC					
	Frequency tolerance	47–63 Hz					
AC drive weight		38.5 ±1.5 kg		64.8 ±1.5 kg			86.5 ±1.5 kg
Cooling method		Fan cooling					
Braking chopper		Optional					
DC reactor		Built-in					
EMI filter		Optional					
EMC-COP01		VFDXXC23A: Optional, VFDXXXC23E: Built-in					

Tab. 9-2: Specifications for appliance class 230 V (frame size D to F) (2)

9.2 460 V series

Frame size			A						B			C			D0	
Model VFD-_ _ _ C_ _			007	015	022	037	040	055	075	110	150	185	220	300	370	450
Applicable motor output (kW)			0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	4.0	5.5	7.5	11	15	18.5	22	30	37	45
Applicable motor output (HP)			1	2	3	5	5	7.5	10	15	20	25	30	40	50	60
Output rating	Heavy duty	Rated output capacity (kVA)	2.3	3.0	4.5	6.5	7.6	9.6	14	18	24	29	34	45	55	69
		Rated output current (A)	2.9	3.8	5.7	8.1	9.5	11	17	23	30	36	43	57	69	86
		Carrier frequency (kHz)	2–6 kHz (2 kHz)													
	Normal duty	Rate output capacity (kVA)	2.4	3.2	4.8	7.2	8.4	10	14	19	25	30	36	48	58	73
		Rated output current (A)	3.0	4.0	6.0	9.0	10.5	12	18	24	32	38	45	60	73	91
		Carrier frequency (kHz)	2–15 kHz (8 kHz)									2–10 kHz (6 kHz)				
Input rating		Input current (A) heavy duty	4.1	5.6	8.3	13	14.5	16	19	25	33	38	45	60	70	96
		Input current (A) normal duty	4.3	5.9	8.7	14	15.5	17	20	26	35	40	47	63	74	101
		Rated voltage/ frequency	3-phase AC 380 V–480 V (–15 %–10 %), 50/60 Hz													
		Operating voltage range	323–528 V AC													
		Frequency tolerance	47–63 Hz													
AC drive weight			2.6 ±0.3 kg						5.4 ±1 kg			9.8 ±1.5 kg			27 ±1 kg	
Cooling method			Natural cooling		Fan cooling											
Braking chopper			Frame A to C (built-in); Frame D and above (optional)													
DC reactor			Frame A to C (optional); Frame D and above (built-in)													
EMI filter			VFDXXXC43A Frame A to C: No EMI filter; VFDXXXC43E: Built-in EMI filter VFDXXXC43A/43E Frame D and above: EMI filter is optional													
EMC-COP01			VFDXXC43A (optional); VFDXXXC43E (built-in)													

Tab. 9-3: Specifications for appliance class 460 V (frame size A to D0)

Frame size			D		E		F			G		H		
Model VFD-_ _ _ C_ _			550	750	900	1100	1320	1600	1850	2200	2800	3150	3550	4500
Applicable motor output (kW)			55	75	90	110	132	160	185	220	280	315	355	450
Applicable motor output (HP)			75	100	125	150	175	215	250	300	375	420	475	600
Output rating	Heavy duty	Rated output capacity (kVA)	84	114	136	167	197	235	280	348	417	466	517	677
		Rated output current (A)	105	143	171	209	247	295	352	437	523	585	649	816
		Carrier frequency (kHz)	2–6 kHz (2 kHz)											
	Normal duty	Rate output capacity (kVA)	88	120	143	175	207	247	295	367	438	491	544	720
		Rated output current (A)	110	150	180	220	260	310	370	460	550	616	683	866
		Carrier frequency (kHz)	2–10 kHz (6 kHz)							2–9 kHz (4 kHz)				

Tab. 9-4: Specifications for appliance class 460 V (frame size D to H) (1)

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Frame size</th><th colspan="2">D</th><th colspan="2">E</th><th colspan="3">F</th><th colspan="2">G</th><th colspan="3">H</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Input rating</td><td>Input current (A)
heavy dduty</td><td>108</td><td>149</td><td>159</td><td>197</td><td>228</td><td>285</td><td>361</td><td>380</td><td>469</td><td>527</td><td>594</td><td>816</td></tr>
<tr><td>Input current (A)
normal duty</td><td>114</td><td>157</td><td>167</td><td>207</td><td>240</td><td>300</td><td>380</td><td>400</td><td>494</td><td>555</td><td>625</td><td>866</td></tr>
<tr><td>Rated voltage/frequency</td><td colspan="12">3-phase AC 380 V–480 V (–15 % +10 %), 50/60 Hz</td></tr>
<tr><td>Operating voltage range</td><td colspan="12">323–528 V AC</td></tr>
<tr><td>Frequency tolerance</td><td colspan="12">47–63 Hz</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">AC drive weight</td><td colspan="2">38.5 ±1.5 kg</td><td colspan="2">64.8 ±1.5 kg</td><td colspan="3">86.5 ±1.5 kg</td><td colspan="2">134 ±4 kg</td><td colspan="3">228 kg</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Cooling method</td><td colspan="12">Fan cooling</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Braking chopper</td><td colspan="12">Optional</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">DC reactor</td><td colspan="12">Built-in</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">EMI Filter</td><td colspan="12">VFDXXXC43E: Built-in EMI filter,
VFDXXXC43A/43E Frame D and above: EMI filter is optional</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">EMC-COP01</td><td colspan="12">VFDXXC43A (optional); VFDXXXC43E (built-in)</td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 9-4: Specifications for appliance class 460 V (frame size D to H) (2)

NOTES

- The value of the carrier frequency is a factory setting. To increase the carrier frequency, the current needs to be decreased. See derating curve diagram of Pr. 06-55 for more information.
- When the control mode is FOC sensorless, TQC + PG, TQC sensorless, PM + PG and PM sensorless, the current needs to be decreased. For more information see Pr. 06-55.
- When a load is a shock or impact load, use a higher level model.
- For FRAME A, B and C, Model VFDXXXC43A the enclosure type is IP20/NEMA1/UL TYPE1.
- For FRAME D and above, if the last character of the model is A then the enclosure type is IP20 but the wiring terminal is IP00; if the last character of the model is E, the enclosure type is IP20/NEMA1/UL TYPE1.

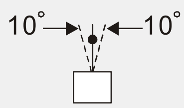
9.3 General specifications

Control characteristics	Control method	1: V/F, 2: SVC, 3: VF + PG, 4: FOC + PG, 5: TQC + PG
	Starting torque	Reach up to 150 % or above at 0.5 Hz; Under FOC+PG mode, starting torque can reach 150 % at 0 Hz.
	V/F curve	4 point adjustable V/F curve and square curve
	Speed response ability	5 Hz (vector control can reach up to 40 Hz)
	Torque limit	Max. 200 % torque current
	Torque accuracy	±5 %
	Max. output frequency	Normal duty: 0.01–600.00 Hz; heavy duty: 0.00–300.00 Hz
	Frequency output accuracy	Digital command: ±0.01 %, –10 °C–+40 °C, Analog command: ±0.1 %, 25 ±10 °C
	Output frequency resolution	Digital command: 0.01 Hz; Analog command: 0.03 x max. output frequency/60 Hz (±11 bit)
	Overload tolerance	Normal duty: rated output current is 120 % for 60 seconds; Heavy duty: rated output current is 150 % for 60 seconds
	Frequency setting signal	+10 V—10, 0–+10 V, 4–20 mA, 0–20 mA, pulse input
	Accel./decel. time	0.00–600.00/0.0–6000.0 seconds
	Main control function	Torque control, droop control, speed/torque control switching, feed forward control, zero-servo control, momentary power loss ride thru, speed search, over-torque detection, torque limit, 17-step speed (max), accel/decel time switch, S-curve accel/decel, 3-wire sequence, auto-tuning (rotational, stationary), dwell, cooling fan on/off switch, slip compensation, torque compensation, JOG frequency, frequency upper/lower limit settings, DC injection braking at start/stop, high slip braking, PID control (with sleep function), energy saving control, MODBUS communication (RS485 RJ45, max. 115.2 kbps), fault restart, parameter copy
	Fan control	Frame A, B is on/off control Frame C and above is PWM control
Protection characteristics	Motor protection	Electronic thermal relay protection
	Over-current protection	Over-current protection for 220 % rated current Current clamp: Normal duty: 170–175 % Heavy duty: 180–185 %
	Over-voltage protection	230: drive will stop when DC-BUS voltage exceeds 410 V 460: drive will stop when DC-BUS voltage exceeds 820 V
	Over-temperature protection	Built-in temperature sensor
	Stall prevention	Stall prevention during acceleration, deceleration and running independently
	Restart after instantaneous power failure	Parameter setting up to 20 seconds
	Grounding leakage current protection	Leakage current is higher than 50 % of rated current of the AC motor drive
Certifications		CE, UL, GB/T12668-2, GOST-R (certification in progress)

Tab. 9-5: General specifications of C2000 series frequency inverters

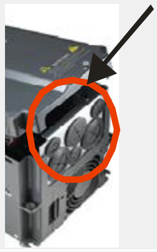
9.4 Environment for operation, storage and transportation

DO NOT expose the in the bad environment, such as dust, direct sunlight, corrosive/inflammable gasses, humidity, liquid and vibration environment. The salt in the air must be less than 0.01 mg/cm^2 every year.

Environ-ment	Installation location	IEC 60364-1/IEC 60664-1 pollution degree 2, indoor use only	
	Surrounding temperature	Storage	–25 °C–+70 °C
		Transportation	–25 °C–+70 °C
		Non-condensation, non-frozen	
	Rated humidity	Operation	Max. 95 %
		Storage/ Transportation	Max. 95 %
		No condense water	
	Air pressure	Operation/Storage	86 to 106 kPa
		Transportation	70 to 106 kPa
	Pollution Level	IEC 721-3-3	
		Operation	Class 3C2; Class 3S2
		Storage	Class 2C2; Class 2S2
		Transportation	Class 1C2; Class 1S2
		No concentrate	
	Altitude	Operation	If is installed at altitude 0–1000 m, follow normal operation restriction. If it is install at altitude 1000–2000 m, decrease 2 % of rated current or lower 0.5 °C of temperature for every 100 m increase in altitude. Maximum altitude for Corner Grounded is 2000 m.
Package drop	Storage	ISTA procedure 1A (according to weight) IEC 60068-2-31	
	Transportation		
Vibration	1.0 mm, peak to peak value range from 2 Hz to 13.2 Hz; 0.7 G–1.0 G range from 13.2 Hz to 55 Hz; 1.0G range from 55 Hz to 512 Hz. Comply with IEC 60068-2-6		
Impact	IEC/EN 60068-2-27		
Operation position	Max. allowed offset angle ±10 ° (under normal installation position)		

Tab. 9-6: Ambient conditions

9.5 Specification for operation temperature and protection level

Model	Frame	Top cover	Conduit box	Protection level	Operation temperature
VFDxxxCxxA	Frame A–C 230 V: 0.75–22 kW 460 V: 0.75–30 kW	Top cover removed	Standard conduit plate	IP20/UL open type	–10–50 °C
		Standard with top cover		IP20/UL Type1/NEMA1	–10–40 °C
	Frame D–H 230 V: > 22 kW 460 V: > 30 kW	N/A	No conduit box	IP00/IP20/UL open type: Only the circled area is IP00, other are IP20. 	–10—50 °C
VFDxxxCxxE	Frame A–C 460 V: 0.75–30 kW	Top cover removed	Standard conduit plate	IP20/UL open type	–10–50 °C
		Standard with top cover		IP20/UL type1/NEMA1	–10–40 °C
	Frame D–H 230 V: > 22 kW 460 V: > 30 kW	N/A	Standard conduit box	IP20/UL type1/NEMA1	–10–40 °C

Tab. 9-7: Protection class and operation conditions

9.6 Derating of ambient temperature and altitude

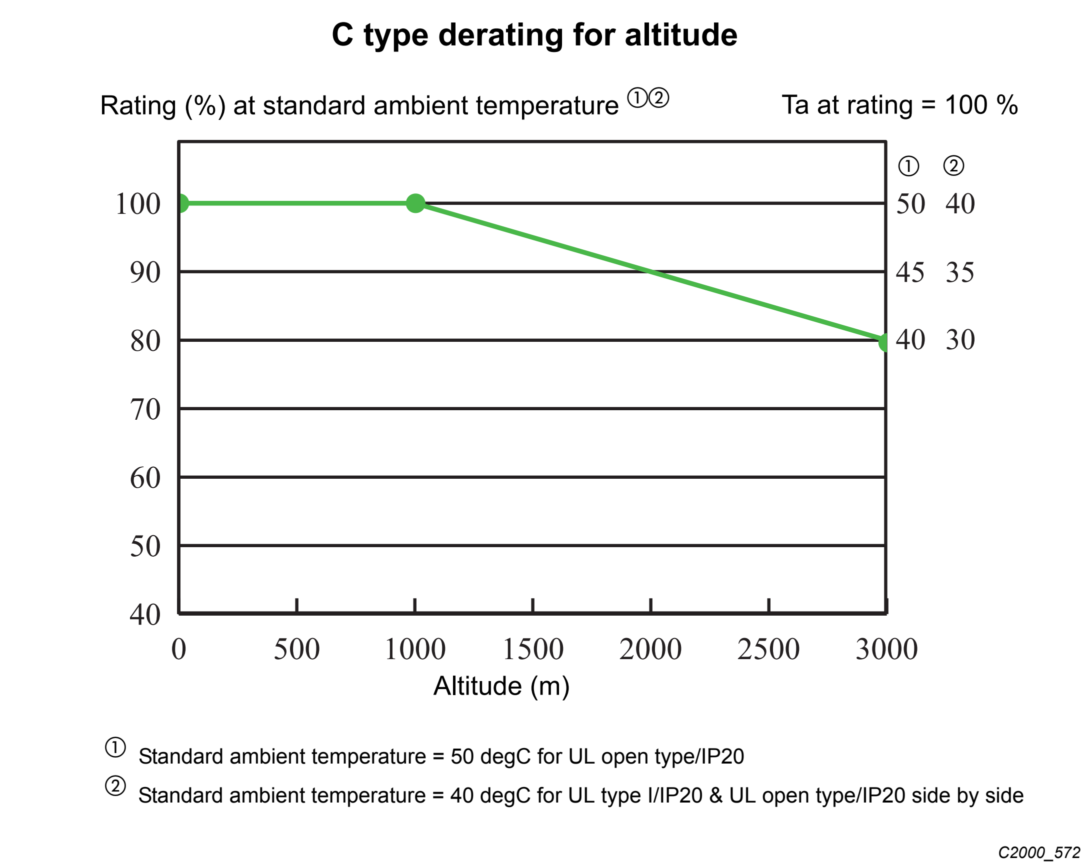


Fig. 9-1: When the altitude is higher than 100 m, the ambient temperature must be reduced.

Protection level	Operating environment
UL type I/IP20	When the is operating at the rated current and the ambient temperature has to be between 10 °C–+40 °C. When the temperature is over 40 °C, for every increase by 1 °C, decrease 2 % of the rated current. The maximum allowable temperature is 60 °C.
UL open type/IP20	When the is operating at the rated current and the ambient temperature has to be between –10 °C–+50 °C. When the temperature is over 50 °C, for every increase by 1 °C, decrease 2 % of the rated current. The maximum allowable temperature is 60 °C.
High altitude	If is installed at altitude 0–1000 m, follow normal operation restriction. If it is install at altitude 1000–2000 m, decrease 2 % of rated current or lower 0.5 °C of temperature for every 100 m increase in altitude. Maximum altitude for Corner Grounded is 2000 m. Contact Delta for more information, if you need to use this motor drive at an altitude of 2000 m or higher.

Tab. 9-8: Operating conditions

10 Digital Keypad

10.1 Descriptions of digital keypad

KPC-CC01

C2000_573

KPC-CE01 (Option)

C2000_574

Installation method

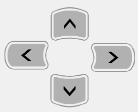
① Embedded type and can be put flat on the surface of the control box. The front cover is water proof.

② Buy a MKC-KPPK model to do wall mounting or embedded mounting. Its protection level is IP66.

③ The maximum RJ45 extension lead is 5 m (16ft)

④ This keypad can only be used on Delta's motor drive C2000, CH2000 and CP2000.

Fig. 10-1: Communication interface RJ-45 (socket), RS485 interface

Key	Description
RUN	Start operation key – It is only valid when the source of operation command is from the keypad. – It can operate the by the function setting and the RUN LED will be ON. – It can be pressed again and again at stop process. – When enabling "HAND" mode, it is only valid when the source of operation command is from the keypad.
STOP RESET	Stop command key – This key has the highest processing priority in any situation. – When it receives STOP command, no matter the is in operation or stop status, the needs to execute "STOP" command. – The RESET key can be used to reset the drive after the fault occurs. For those faults that can't be reset by the RESET key, see the fault records after pressing MENU key for details.
FWD REV	Operation direction key – This key is only control the operation direction NOT for activate the drive. – FWD: forward, REV: reverse. – Refer to the LED descriptions for more details.
ENTER	ENTER key – Press ENTER and go to the next level. If it is the last level then press ENTER to execute the command.
ESC	ESC key – ESC key function is to leave current menu and return to the last menu. It is also functioned as a return key in the sub-menu.
MENU	Press menu to return to main menu. Menu content: KPC-CE01 does not support function 5–13. 1. Parameter setup 8. Display setup 2. Copy parameter 9. Time setup 3. Keypad locked 10. Language setup 4. PLC function 11. Startup menu 5. Copy PLC 12. Main page 6. Fault record 13. PC Link 7. Quick start
	Direction: Left/Right/Up/Down – In the numeric value setting mode, it is used to move the cursor and change the numeric value. – In the menu/text selection mode, it is used for item selection.
F1 F2 F3 F4	Function key – The functions keys have factory settings and can be defined by users. The factory settings of F1 and F4 work with the function list below. For example, F1 is JOG function, F4 is a speed setting key for adding/deleting user defined parameters. – Other functions must be defined by TPEditor first. TPEditor software V1.30.6 is available for download at: http://www.delta.com.tw/ch/product/em/download/download_-main.asp?act=3&pid=1&cid=1&tpid=3 – Installation Instruction for TPEditor is on page 10-15 of this chapter.
HAND	HAND key – This key is executed by the parameter settings of the source of Hand frequency and hand operation. The factory settings of both source of Hand frequency and hand operation are the digital keypad. – Press HAND key at stop status, the setting will switch to hand frequency source and hand operation source. Press HAND key at operation status, it stops the first (display AHSP warning), and switch to hand frequency source and hand operation source. – Successful mode switching for KPC-CE01, "H/A" LED will be on; for KPC-CC01, it will display HAND mode/ AUTO mode on the screen.

Tab. 10-1: Descriptions of keypad functions

Key	Description
AUTO	– This key is executed by the parameter settings of the source of AUTO frequency and AUTO operation. The factory setting is the external terminal (source of operation is 4-20 mA). – Press Auto key at stop status, the setting will switch to hand frequency source and hand operation source. Press Auto key at operation status, it stops the first (display AHSP warning), and switch to auto frequency source and auto operation source. – Successful mode switching for KPC-CE01, "H/A" LED will be off; for KPC-CC01, it will display HAND mode/ AUTO mode on the screen.

Tab. 10-1: Descriptions of keypad functions

LED	Description
RUN	Steady ON: operation indicator of the , including DC brake, zero speed, standby, restart after fault and speed search. Blinking: drive is decelerating to stop or in the status of base block. Steady OFF: drive doesn't execute the operation command
STOP/RESET	Steady ON: stop indicator of the . Blinking: drive is in the standby status. Steady OFF: drive doesn't execute "STOP" command.
FWD/REV	Operation Direction LED – Green light is on, the drive is running forward. – Red light is on, the drive is running backward. – Twinkling light: the drive is changing direction.
HAND	(Only KPC-CE01 support this function) Setting can be done during operation. HAND LED: When HAND LED is on (HAND mode); when HAND LED is off (AUTO mode).
AUTO	(Only KPC-CE01 Support this function) Setting can be done during operation. AUTO LED: when AUTO LED is on (AUTO mode); when AUTO LED is off (HAND mode).

Tab. 10-2: Descriptions of LED functions

LED	LED status	Condition/state
CANopen – "RUN"	OFF	CANopen at initial
	Blinking	CANopen at pre-operation (refer to following figure ❶)
	Single flash	CANopen at stopped (refer to following figure ❷)
	ON	CANopen at operation status

Tab. 10-3: State of the CANopen® RUN LED

LED	LED status	Condition/state
CANopen – "ERR"	OFF	No error
	Single flash	One message fail (refer to following figure ❷)
	Double flash	Guarding fail or heartbeat fail (refer to following figure ❸)
	Triple flash	SYNC fail (refer to following figure ❹
	ON	Bus off

Tab. 10-4: State of the CANopen® ERR LED

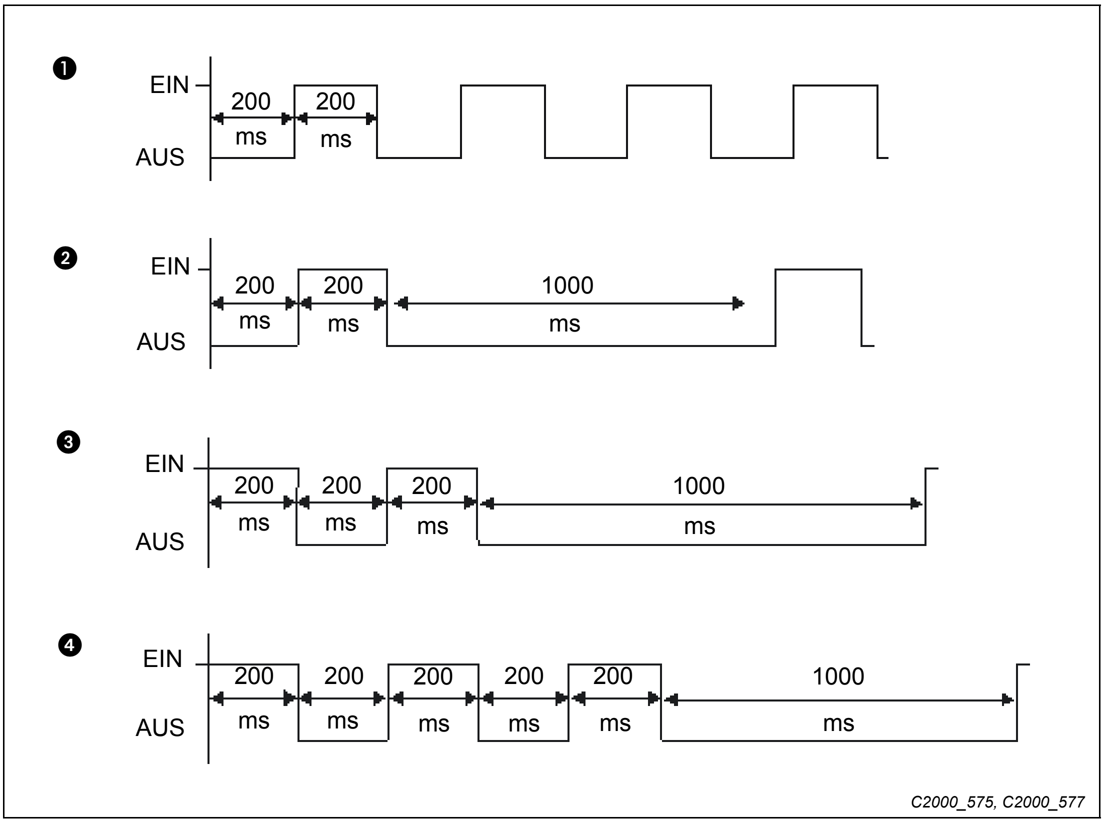


Fig. 10-2: Flashing of the CAN RUN und CAN ERR LED

10.2 Function of digital keypad KPC-CC01

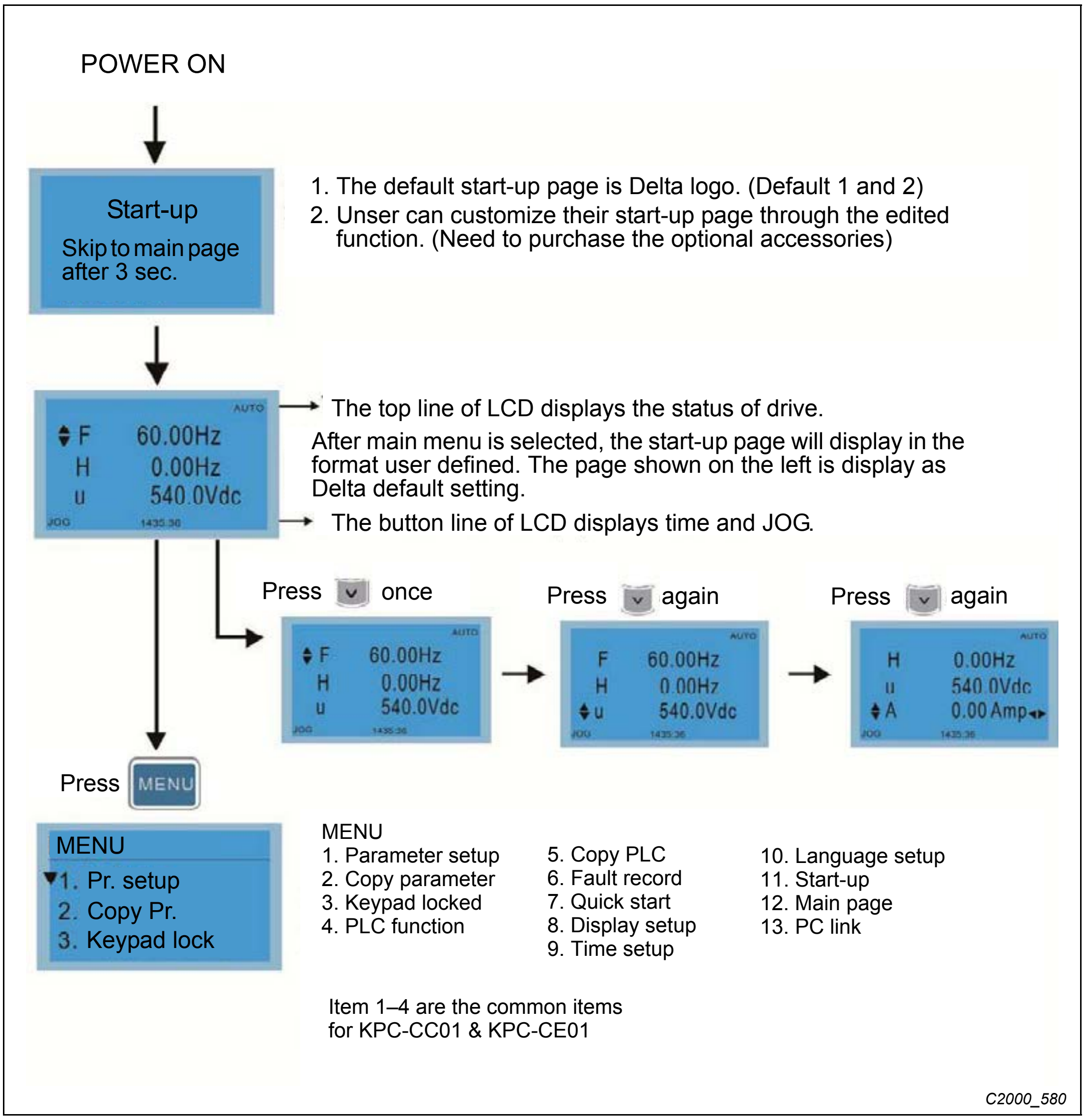


Fig. 10-3: Start screen and main menu selection

NOTES

- Startup page can only display pictures, no flash.
- When power ON, it will display startup page then the main page. The main page displays Delta's default setting F/H/A/U, the display order can be set by Pr. 00-03 (Startup display). When the selected item is U page, use left key and right key to switch between the items, the display order of U page is set by Pr. 00-04 (User display).

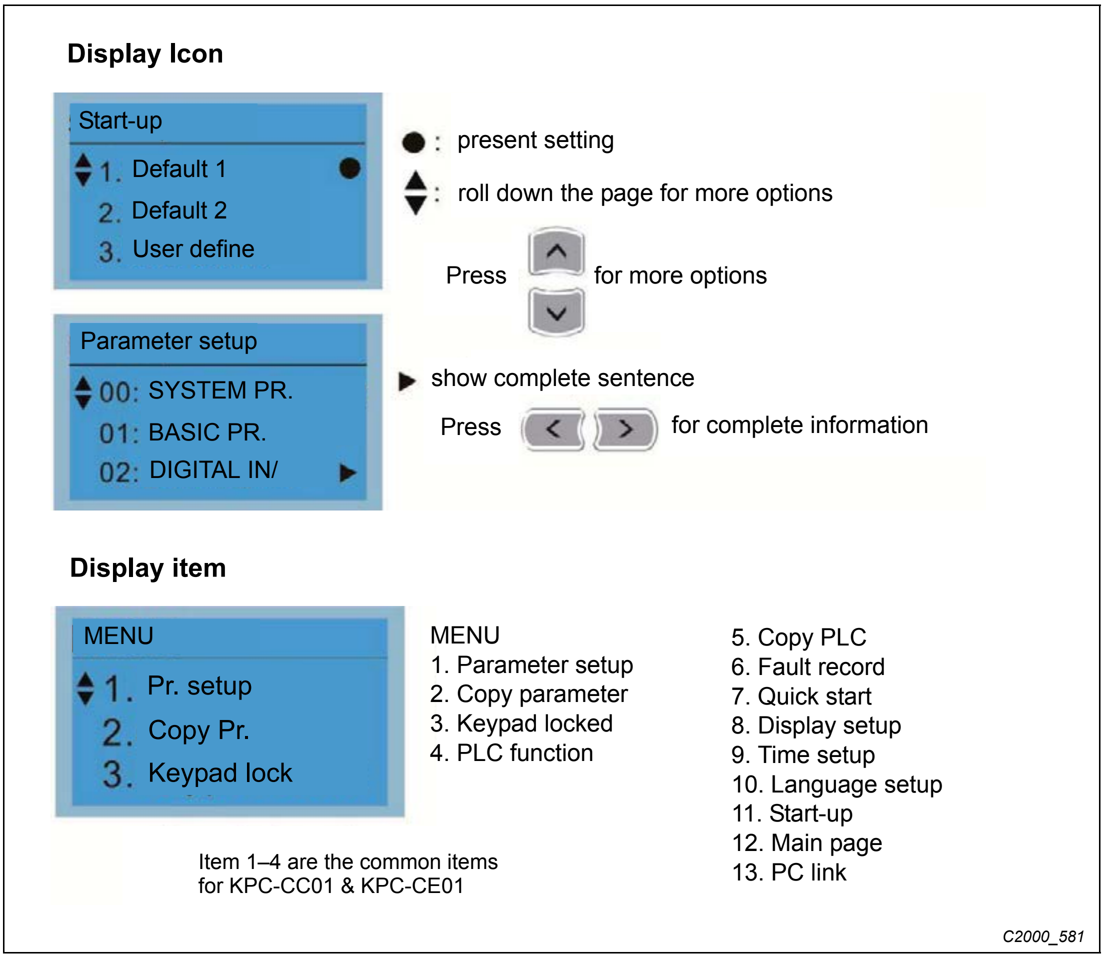


Fig. 10-4: Display symbols and main menu points

1. Parameter setup

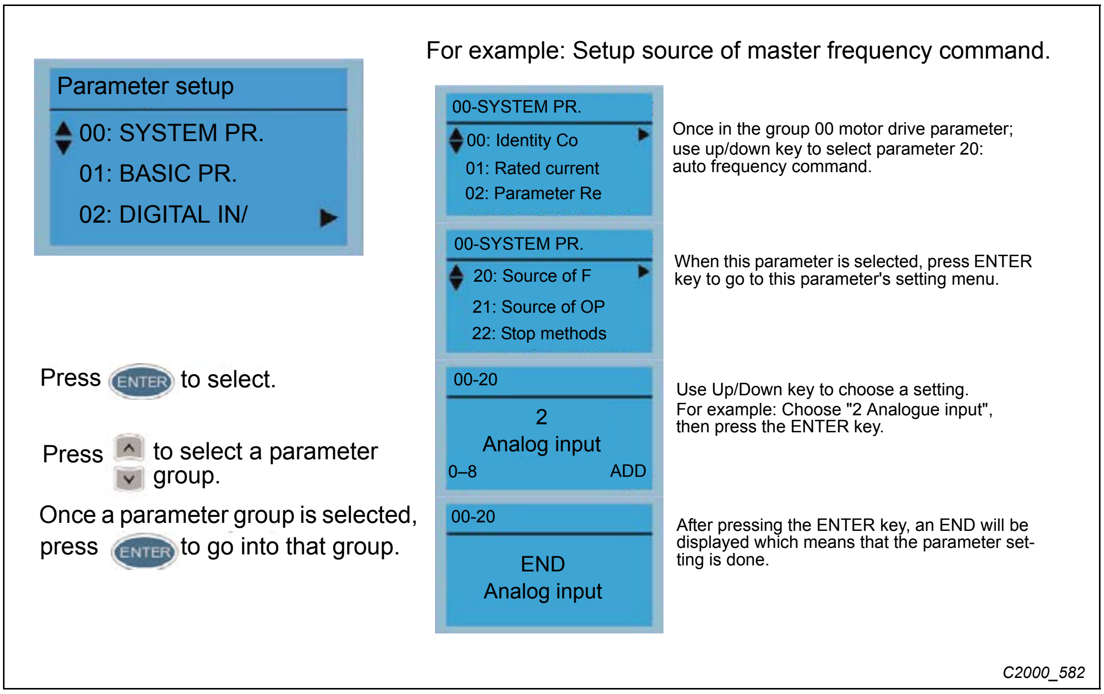


Fig. 10-5: Parameter setup

2. Parameter copy

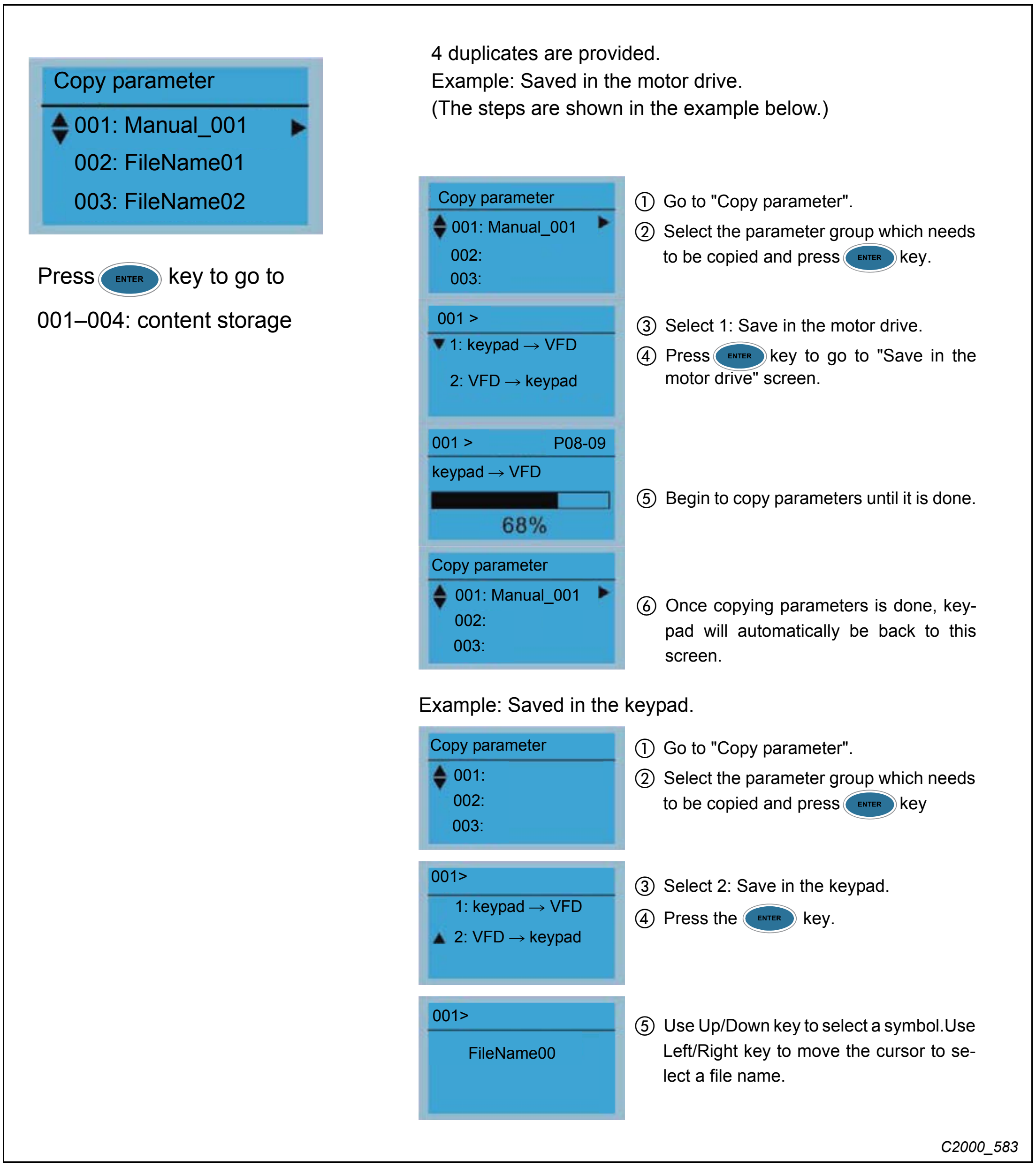
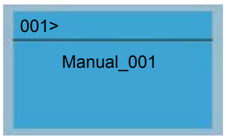
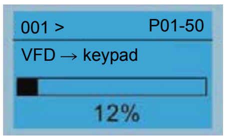


Fig. 10-6: Copy parameter

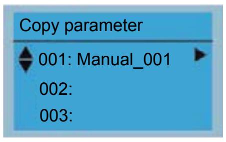
! ” # $ % & ’ ( ) * + , − . / 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 : ; < =
> ? @ A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
[\ ] ^ _ ‘ a b c d f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x
y z { | } ~



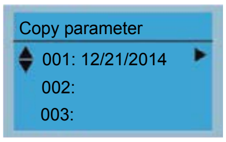
⑥ Once the file name is confirmed, press ENTER key.



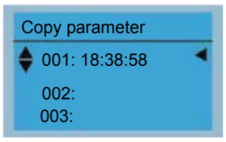
⑦ To begin copying parameters until it is done.



⑧ When copying parameters is completed, keypad will automatically be back to this screen.



⑨ Press right key to see the date of copying parameters.

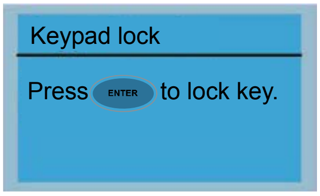


⑩ Press right key to see the time of copying parameters.

C2000_584

Fig. 10-7: Copy parameter

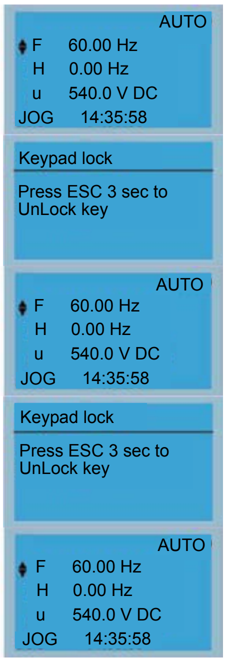
3. Keypad lock



Press ENTER to lock.

Keypad locked

This function is used to lock the keypad. The main page would not display "keypad locked" when the keypad is locked, however it will display the message"please press ESC and then ENTER to unlock the keypad" when any key is pressed.



① When the keypad is locked, the main screen doesn't display any status to show that.

② Press any key on the keypad; a screen as shown in image on the left will be displayed.

③ If ESC key is not pressed, the keypad will automatically be back to this screen.

④ The keypad is still locked at this moment. By pressing any key, a screen as shown in the image on the left will still be displayed.

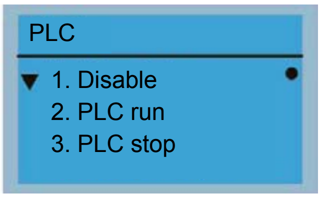
⑤ Press ESC for 3 seconds to unlock the keypad and the keypad will be back to this screen. Then each key on the keypad is functional.

Turn off the power and turn on the power again will not lock keypad.

C2000_585

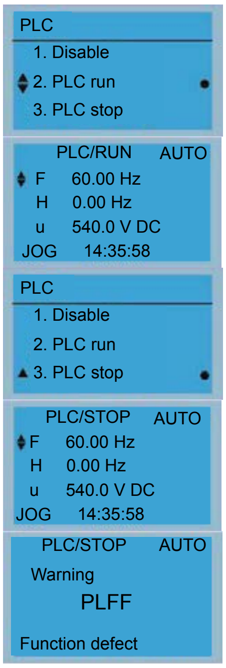
Fig. 10-8: Keypad locked

4. PLC Function



Press Up/Down key to select a PLC's function. Then press ENTER.

When activate and stop PLC function, the PLC status will be displayed main page of Delta default setting.



① Option 2: Enable PLC function

② Factory setting on the main screen displays PLC/RUN status bar.

③ Option 3: Disable PLC function

④ Factory setting on the main screen displays PLC/STOP status bar

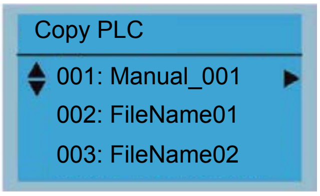
⑤ If the PLC program is not available in the control board, PLFF warning will be displayed when choosing option 2 or 3. In this case, select option 1: No function to clear PLFF warning.

The PLC function of KPC-CE01 can only display:
1. PLC0
2. PLC1
3: PLC2

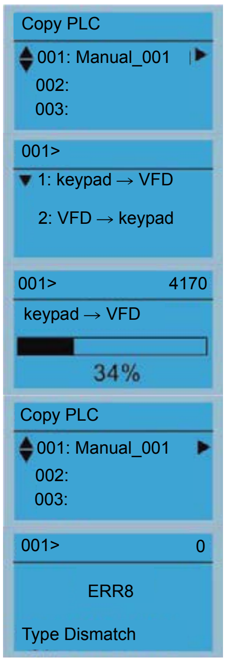
C2000_586

Fig. 10-9: PLC function

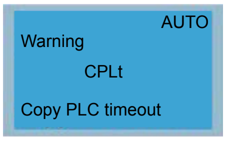
5. Copy PLC



4 duplicates are provided.
The steps are shown in the example below.
Example: Saved in the motor drive.

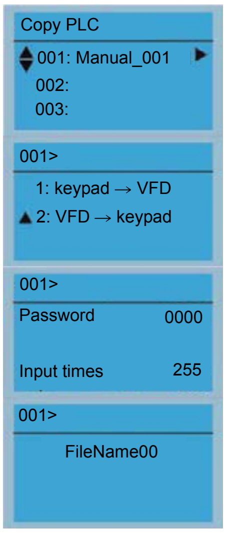


① Go to Copy PLC.
② Select a parameter group to copy then press ENTER.
③ Select 1: Save in the motor drive.
④ Press ENTER key to go to "Save in the motor drive" screen.
⑤ Begin to copy PLC until it is done.
⑥ Once copying PLC is done, keypad will automatically be back to this screen.
⑦ If "Option 1: Save in the motor drive" is selected, verify if the PLC program is built-in to KPC-CC01 keypad. If PLC program is not available in the keypad while "Option 1: Save in the motor drive" is selected, an "ERR8 Warning: Type not matching" will be display on the screen.



⑧ Unplug and plug back the keypad while copying the PLC program will have a CPLt warning.

Example: Saved in the keypad.



① Go to Copy PLC.
② Select the parameter group which needs to be copied and press ENTER key.
③ Press ENTER key to go to "Save in the motor drive" screen.
④ If WPLSoft editor is installed and password is set, enter the password to save the file onto digital display.
⑤ Use Up/Down key to select a symbol. Use Left/ Right key to move the cursor to select a file name.

C2000_587

Fig. 10-10: Copy PLC

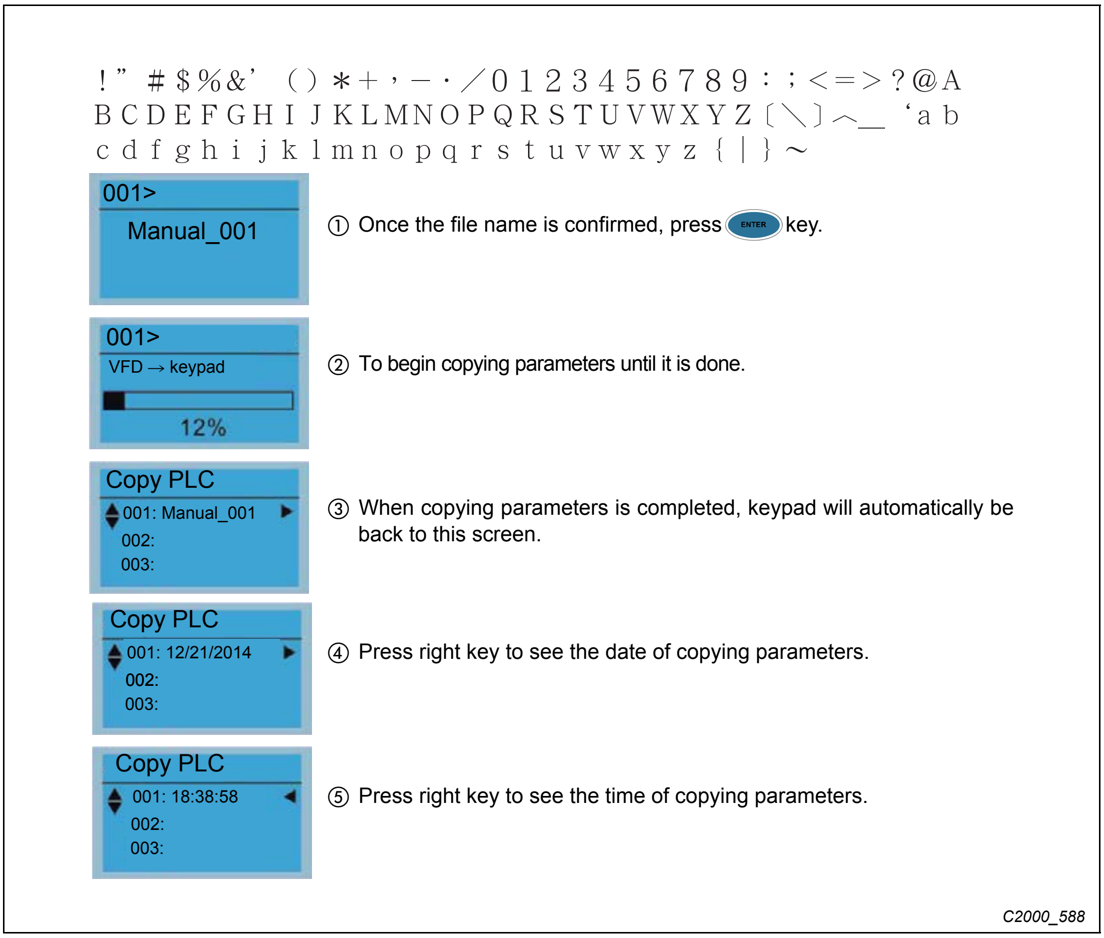
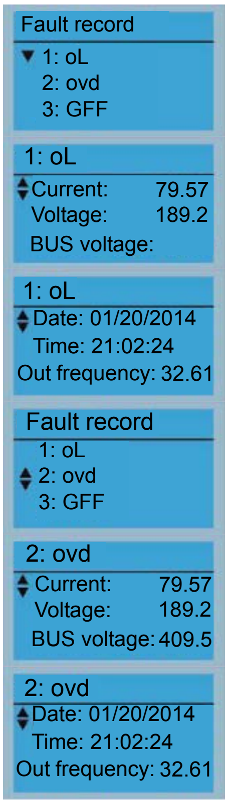


Fig. 10-11: Copy PLC

6: Fault Record

Press ENTER to select.
KPC-CE01 does not support this function.

Able to store 6 error code (Keypad V1.02 and previous versions)
Able to store 20 error code (Keypad V1.0e3 and previous version)
The most recent error record is shown as the first record. Select an error record to see its detail such as date, time, frequency, current, voltage, DCBUs voltage).



① Press Up/Down key to select an error record. After selecting an error code, press ENTER to see that error record's detail.

② Press Up/Down key to see an error record's detail such as date, time, frequency, current, voltage, DCBus voltage.

③ Press Up/Down key to select an error record. After selecting an error code, press ENTER to see that error record's detail.

④ Press Up/Down key to see an error record's detail such as date, time, frequency, current, voltage, DCBus voltage.

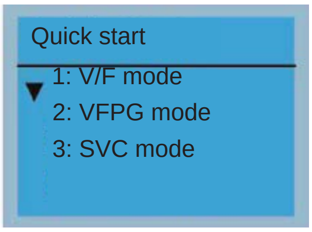
C2000_589

Fig. 10-12: Fault record

NOTE

Fault actions of are record and save to KPC-CC01. When KPC-CC01 is removed and apply to another, the previous fault records will not be deleted. The new fault records of the present will accumulate to KPC-CC01.

7. Quick Start

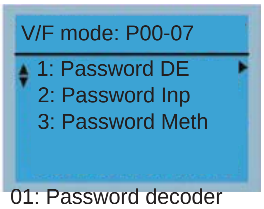


Press ENTER to select.

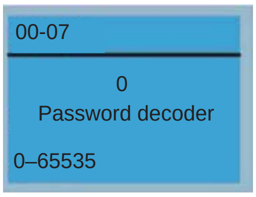
Quick start:
1. V/F mode
2. VFPG mode
3. SVC mode
4. FOCPG mode
5. TQCPG mode
6. My mode

Description

1. VF mode

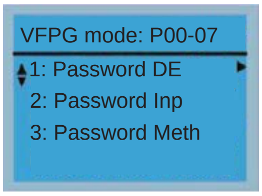


01: Password decoder

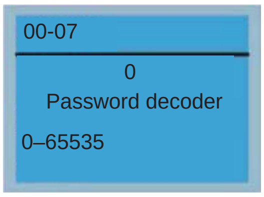


Items:
① Parameter protection password input (P00-07)
② Parameter protection password setting (P00-08)
③ Control mode (P00-10)
④ Control of speed mode (P00-11)
⑤ Load selection (P00-16)
⑥ Source of the master frequency command (AUTO) (P00-20)
⑦ Source of the operation command (AUTO) (P00-21)
⑧ Stop method (P00-22)
⑨ Digital keypad STOP function (P00-32)
⑩ Max. operation frequency (P01-00)
⑪ Base frequency of motor 1 (P01-01)
⑫ Max. output voltage setting of motor 1 (P01-02)
⑬ Min. output frequency of motor 1 (P01-07)
⑭ Min. output voltage of motor 1 (P01-08)
⑮ Output frequency upper limit (P01-10)
⑯ Output frequency lower limit (P01-11)
⑰ Accel. time 1 (P01-12)
⑱ Decel time 1 (P01-13)
⑲ Over-voltage stall prevention (P06-01)
⑳ Software brake level (P07-00)
㉑ Filter time of torque command (P07-24)
㉒ Filter time of slip compensation (P07-25)
㉓ Slip compensation gain (P07-27)

2: VFPG mode



01: Password decoder

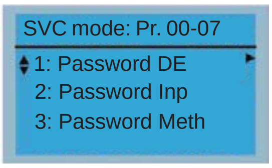


Items:
① Parameter protection password input (P00-07)
② Parameter protection password setting (P00-08)
③ Control mode (P00-10)
④ Control of speed mode (P00-11)
⑤ Load selection (P00-16)
⑥ Source of the master frequency command (AUTO) (P00-20)
⑦ Source of the operation command (AUTO) (P00-21)
⑧ Stop method (P00-22)
⑨ Digital keypad STOP function (P00-32)
⑩ Max. operation frequency (P01-00)
⑪ Base frequency of motor 1 (P01-01)
⑫ Max. output voltage setting of motor 1 (P01-02)
⑬ Min. output frequency of motor 1 (P01-07)
⑭ Min. output voltage of motor 1 (P01-08)
⑮ Output frequency upper limit (P01-10)
⑯ Output frequency lower limit (P01-11)
⑰ Accel. time 1 (P01-12)
⑱ Decel time 1 (P01-13)
⑲ Over-voltage stall prevention (P06-01)
⑳ Software brake level (P07-00)
㉑ Filter time of torque command (P07-24)
㉒ Filter time of slip compensation (P07-25)
㉓ Slip compensation gain (P07-27)
㉔ Encoder type selection (P10-00)
㉕ Encoder pulse (P10-01)
㉖ Encoder input type setting (P10-02)
㉗ ASR control (P) 1 (P11-06)
㉘ ASR control (I) 1 (P11-07)
㉙ ASR control (P) 2 (P11-08)
㉚ ASR control (I) 2 (P11-09)
㉛ P Gain of zero speed (P11-10)
㉜ I Gain of zero speed (P11-11)

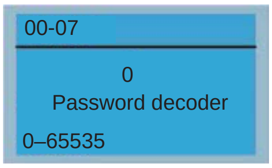
C2000_590

Fig. 10-13: Quick start (1)

SVC mode



01: Password decoder

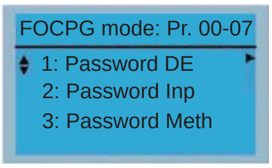


Items:
① Parameter protection password input (P00-07)
② Parameter protection password setting (P00-08)
③ Control mode (P00-10)
④ Control of speed mode (P00-11)
⑤ Load selection (P00-16)
⑥ Carrier frequency (P00-17)
⑦ Source of the master frequency command (AUTO) (P00-20)
⑧ Source of the operation command (AUTO) (P00-21)
⑨ Stop method (P00-22)
⑩ Digital keypad STOP function (P00-32)
⑪ Max. operation frequency (P01-00)
⑫ Base frequency of motor 1 (P01-01)
⑬ Max. output voltage setting of motor 1 (P01-02)
⑭ Min. output frequency of motor 1 (P01-07)
⑮ Min. output voltage of motor 1 (P01-08)
⑯ Output frequency upper limit (P01-10)
⑰ Output frequency lower limit (P01-11)
⑱ Accel. time 1 (P01-12)
⑲ Decel. time 1 (P01-13)
⑳ Full-load current of induction motor 1 (P05-01)
㉑ Rated power of induction motor 1 (P05-02)
㉒ Rated speed of induction motor 1 (P05-03)
㉓ Pole number of induction motor 1 (P05-04)
㉔ No-load current of Induction motor 1 (P05-05)
㉕ Over-voltage stall prevention (P06-01)
㉖ Over-current stall prevention during acceleration (P06-03)
㉗ Derating protection (P06-55)
㉘ Software brake level (P07-00)
㉙ Emergency stop (EF) & force to stop selection (P07-20)
㉚ Filter time of torque command (P07-24)
㉛ Filter time of slip compensation (P07-25)
㉜ Slip compensation gain (P07-27)

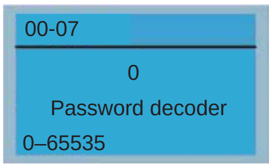
C2000_591

Fig. 10-14: Quick start (2)

FOCPG mode



01: Password decoder

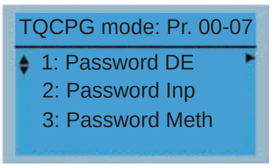


Items:
① Parameter protection password input (P00-07)
② Parameter protection password setting (P00-08)
③ Control mode (P00-10)
④ Control of speed mode (P00-11)
⑤ Source of the master frequency command (AUTO) (P00-20)
⑥ Source of the operation command (AUTO) (P00-21)
⑦ Stop method (P00-22)
⑧ Max. operation frequency (P01-00)
⑨ Base frequency of motor 1 (P01-01)
⑩ Max. output voltage setting of motor 1 (P01-02)
⑪ Output frequency upper limit (P01-10)
⑫ Output frequency lower limit (P01-11)
⑬ Accel. time 1 (P01-12)
⑭ Decel time 1 (P01-13)
⑮ Full-load current of induction motor 1 (P05-01)
⑯ Rated power of induction motor 1 (P05-02)
⑰ Rated speed of induction motor 1 (P05-03)
⑱ Pole number of induction motor 1 (P05-04)
⑲ No-load current of Induction motor 1 (P05-05)
⑳ Over-voltage stall prevention (P06-01)
㉑ Over-current stall prevention during acceleration (P06-03)
㉒ Derating protection (P06-55)
㉓ Software brake level (P07-00)
㉔ Emergency stop (EF) & force to stop selection (P07-20)
㉕ Encoder type selection (P10-00)
㉖ Encoder pulse (P10-01)
㉗ Encoder input type setting (P10-02)
㉘ System control (P11-00)
㉙ Per unit of system inertia (P11-01)
㉚ ASR1 low-speed bandwidth (P11-03)
㉛ ASR2 high-speed bandwidth (P11-04)
㉜ Zero-speed bandwidth (P11-05)

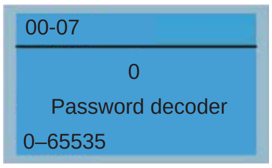
C2000_592

Fig. 10-15: Quick start (3)

TQCPG mode



01: Password decoder



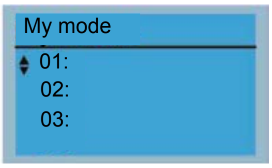
Items:

① Password input (decode) (P00-07)
② Password setting (P00-08)
③ Control mode (P00-10)
④ Control of speed mode (P00-11)
⑤ Source of the master frequency command (P00-20)
⑥ Source of the operation command (P00-21)
⑦ Max. operation frequency (P01-00)
⑧ Base frequency of motor 1 (P01-01)
⑨ Max. output voltage setting of motor 1 (P01-02)
⑩ Full-load current of induction motor 1 (P05-01)
⑪ Rated power of induction motor 1 (P05-02)
⑫ Rated speed of induction motor 1 (P05-03)
⑬ Pole number of induction motor 1 (P05-04)
⑭ No-load current of induction motor 1 (P05-05)
⑮ Over-voltage stall prevention (P06-01)
⑯ Software brake level (P07-00)
⑰ Encoder type selection (P10-00)
⑱ Encoder pulse (P10-01)
⑲ Encoder input type setting (P10-02)
⑳ System control (P11-00)
㉑ Per unit of system inertia (P11-01)
㉒ ASR1 low-speed bandwidth (P11-03)
㉓ ASR2 high-speed bandwidth (P11-04)
㉔ Zero-speed bandwidth (P11-05)
㉕ Max. torque command (P11-27)
㉖ Source of torque offset (P11-28)
㉗ Torque offset setting (P11-29)
㉘ Source of torque command (P11-33)
㉙ Torque command (P11-34)
㉚ Speed limit selection (P11-36)
㉛ Forward speed limit (torque mode) (P11-37)
㉜ Reverse speed limit (torque mode) (P11-38)

C2000_593

Fig. 10-16: Quick start (4)

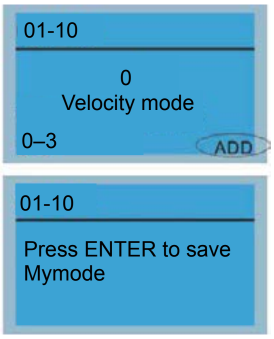
My mode



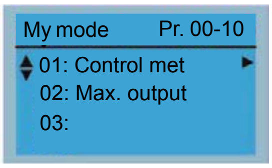
Items:
It can save 01–32 sets of parameters (Pr).

Setup process

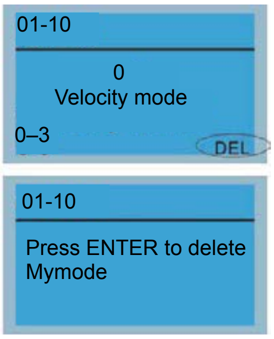
Click F4 in parameter setting page, the parameter will save to My mode. To delete or correct the parameter, enter this parameter and click the "DEL" on the bottom right corner.



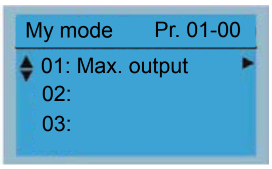
① Go to parameter setup function.
Press ENTER to go to the parameter which you need to use. There is an ADD on the bottom right-hand corner of the screen. Press F4 on the key pad to add this parameter to My mode.



② The parameter (Pr) will be displayed in My mode if it is properly saved.
To correct or to delete this Pr. clicks DEL.



③ To delete a parameter, go to My mode and select a parameter which you need to delete. Press ENTER to enter the parameter setting screen. There is a DEL on the bottom left-hand corner of the screen. Press F4 on the keypad to delete this parameter from My mode.

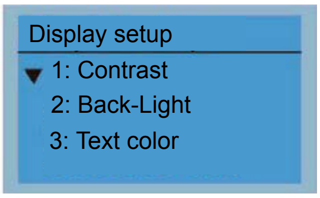


④ After pressing ENTER to delete <01 Control Mode>, the <02 Maximum Operating Frequency> will automatically replace <01 Control Mode>.

C2000_594

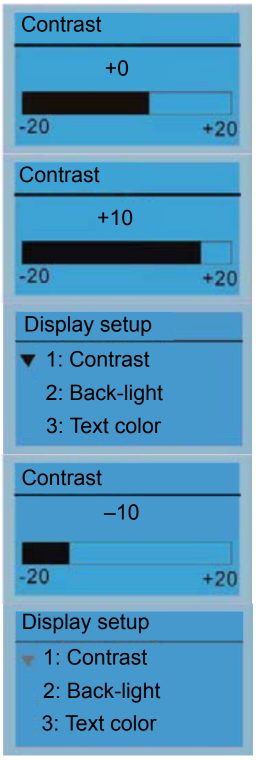
Fig. 10-17: Quick start (5)

8. Display Setup



Press ENTER to setting menu.

1. Contrast



① Use Up/Down key to adjust the setting value.

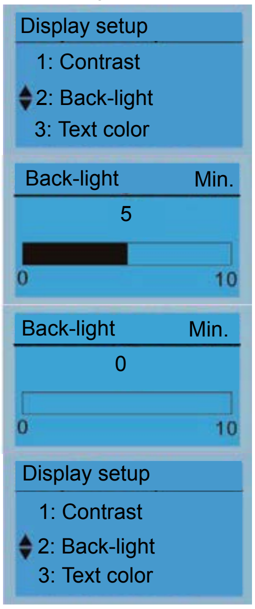
② After selecting a setting value, press ENTER to see screen's display after contrast is adjusted to be +10.

③ The screen is displayed with the new set contrast. When not satisfied, press press ENTER again to change contrast.

④ Use Up/Down key to adjust the setting value.

⑤ After selecting a setting value, press ENTER to see screen's display result after contrast is adjusted to be -10.

2. Back-light



① Press ENTER to go to Back Light Time Setting screen.

② Use Up/Down key to adjust the setting value.

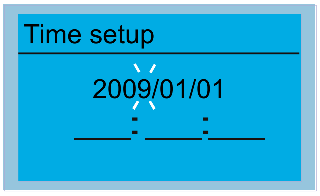
③ When the setting value is 0 Min, the back light will be steady on.

④ When the setting value is 10 Min, the backlight will be off in 10 minutes.

C2000_595

Fig. 10-18: Display setup

9. Time setting



Use left/right key to select year, month, day, hour, minute or second to set up.

① Use Up/Down key to set up year.

② Use Up/Down key to set up month.

③ Use Up/Down key to set up day.

④ Use Up/Down key to set up hour.

⑤ Use Up/Down key to set up minute.

⑥ Use Up/Down key to set up second.

⑦ After setting up, press ENTER to confirm the setup.

When the digital keypad is removed, the time setting will be in standby status for 7 days. After this period, the time needs to be reset.

C2000_596

Fig. 10-19: Time setting

10. Language setup

Use Up/Down key to select language, than press ENTER .

Language setting option is displayed in the language of the user's choice.

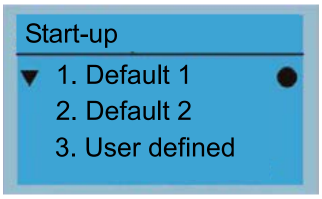
Language setting options:

1. English
2. 繁體中文
3. 简体中文
4. Turkce
5.
6. Espanol
7. Portugues

C2000_597

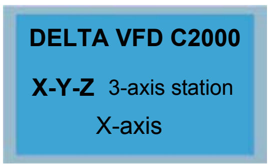
Fig. 10-20: Language setup

11. Start-up



① Default 1 DELTA LOGO

② Default 2 DELTA Text



③ User Defined: optional accessory is required (TPEditor & USB/RS485 Communication Interface-IFD6530)
Install an editing accessory would allow users to design their own start-up page.If editor accessory is not installed, "user defined" option will dispay a blank page.

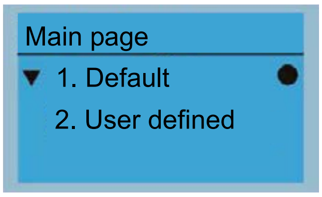
USB/RS-485 Communication Interface-IFD6530
Please refer to Chapter 07 Optional Accessories for more detail.

TPEditor
Go to Delta's website to download TPEditor V1.30.6 or later versions.
http://www.delta.com.tw/ch/product/em/download/download_main.asp?act=3&pid=1&cid=1&tpid=3

C2000_598

Fig. 10-21: Startup-up

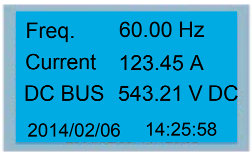
12. Main page

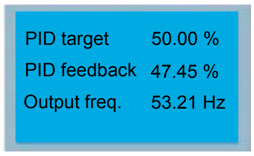


Default picture and editable picture are available upon selection.
Press ENTER to select.

① Default page
F 600.00 Hz >>> H >>> A >>> U
(circulate)

② User Defined: optional accessory is require (TPEditor & USB/RS-485 Communication Interface-IFD6530)
Install an editing accessory would allow users to design their own main page.If editor accessory is not installed, "user defined" option will dispay a blank page.





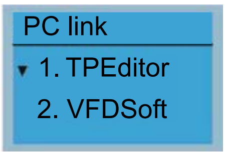
USB/RS-485 Communication Interface-IFD6530
Please refer to Chapter 07 Optional Acessories for more detail.

TPEditor
Go to Delta's website to download TPEditor V1.30.6 or later versions.
http://www.delta.com.tw/ch/product/em/download/download_main.asp?act=3&pid=1&cid=1&tpid=3

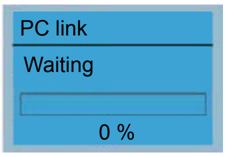
C2000_599

Fig. 10-22: Main page

13. PC Link

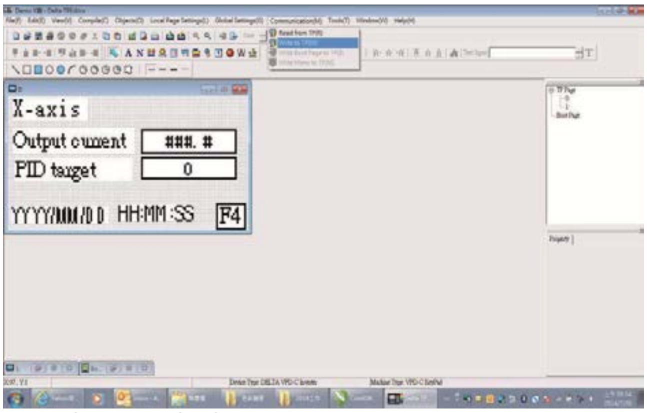


1. TPEditor: This function allows users to connect the keypad to a computer then to download and edit user defined pages.

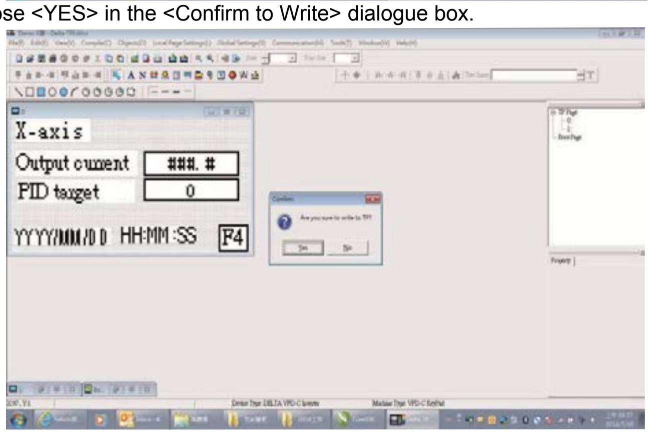


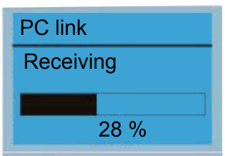
① Click ENTER to go to <Waiting to connect to PC>.

② In TPEditor, choose <Communication>, then choose "Write to HMI"

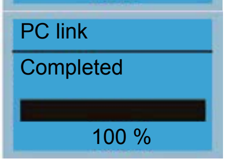


③ Choose <YES> in the <Confirm to Write> dialogue box.





④ Start downloading pages to edit KPC-CC01.

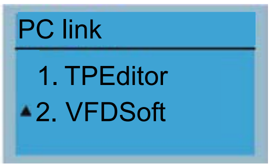


⑤ Download completed.

C2000_600

Fig. 10-23: PC link

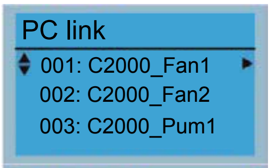
2. VFDSoft: this function allows user to link to the VFDSoft Operating software then to upload data



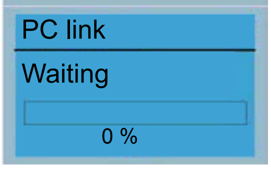
Copy parameter 1–4 in KPC-CC01

① Connect KPC-CCO1 to a computer

② Start downloading pages to edit to KPC-CC01.

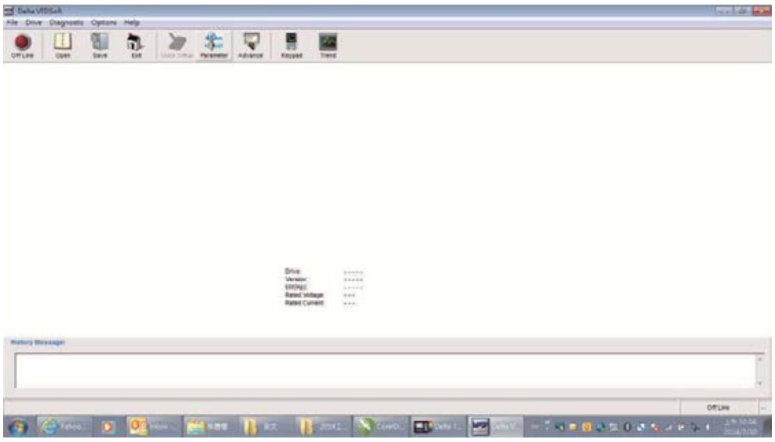


③ Use Up/Down key to select a parameter group to upload to VFDSoft. Press ENTER .

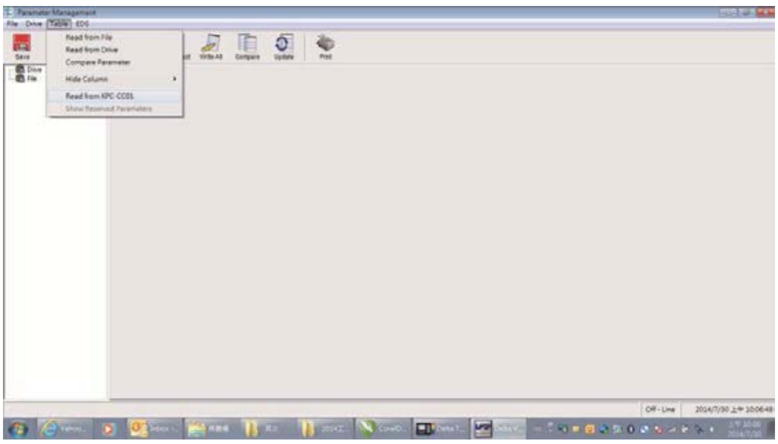


④ Waiting to connect to PC

⑤ Open VFDSoft, choose <Parameter Manager function>



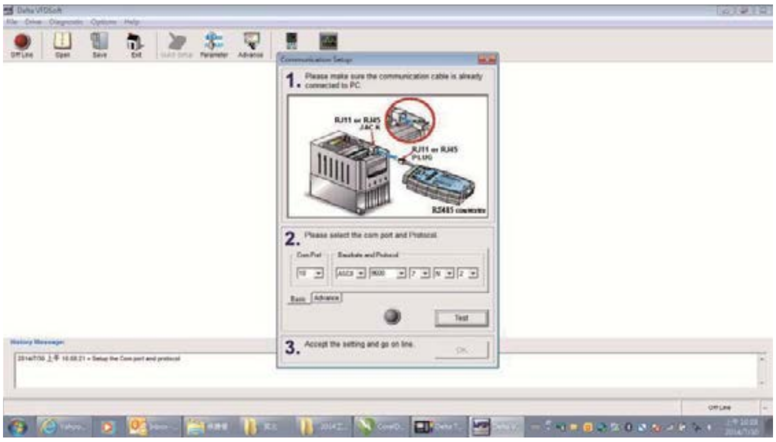
⑥ In Parameter Manager, choose <Load parameter table from KPC-CC01>

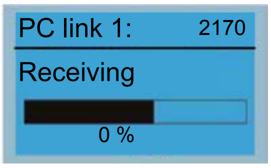


C2000_601

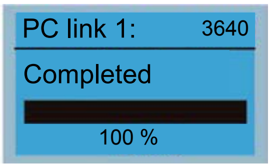
Fig. 10-24: PC link (1)

⑦ Choose the right communication port and click OK.





⑧ Start to upload parameters to VFDSoft.



⑨ Uploading parameter is completed.

C2000_602

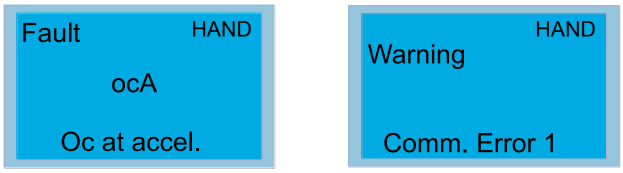
Fig. 10-24: PC link (2)

Before using the user defined starting screen and user defined main screen, the starting screen setup and the main screen setup have to be preset as user defined.

If the user defined page are not downloaded to KPC-CC01, the starting screen and the main screen will be blank.

Other display

When fault occur, the menu will display:



① Press ENTER and start RESET. If still no response, please contact local distributor or return to the factory. To view the fault DC BUS voltage, output current and output voltage, press "MENU" → "Fault Record".

② Press ENTER again, if the screen returns to main page, the fault is clear.

③ When fault or warning message appears, backlight LED will blinks until the fault or the warning is cleared.

C2000_603

Please refer to paragraph 10.4 for a description of the fault and warning messages.

Optional accessory

Part No.	Description
CBC-K3FT	RJ45 extension lead, 3 feet (approximately 0.9 m)
CBC-K5FT	RJ45 extension lead, 5 feet (approximately 1.5 m)
CBC-K7FT	RJ45 extension lead, 7 feet (approximately 2.1 m)
CBC-K10FT	RJ45 extension lead, 10 feet (approximately 3 m)
CBC-K16FT	RJ45 extension lead, 16 feet (approximately 4.9 m)

Tab. 10-5: RJ45 extension lead for digital keypad

NOTE

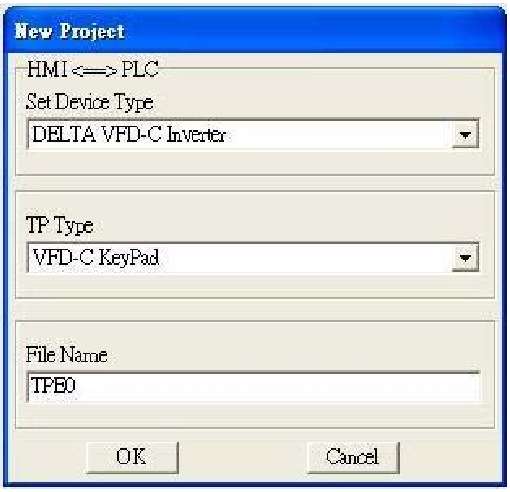
When you need to buy communication cables, buy non-shielded, 24 AWG, 4 twisted pair, 100 ohms communication cables.

10.3 TPEditor installation instruction

TPEditor can edit up to 256 HMI (Human-Machine Interface) pages with a total storage capacity of 256kb. Each page can edit 50 normal objects and 10 communication objects.

10.3.1 TPEditor: setup & basic functions

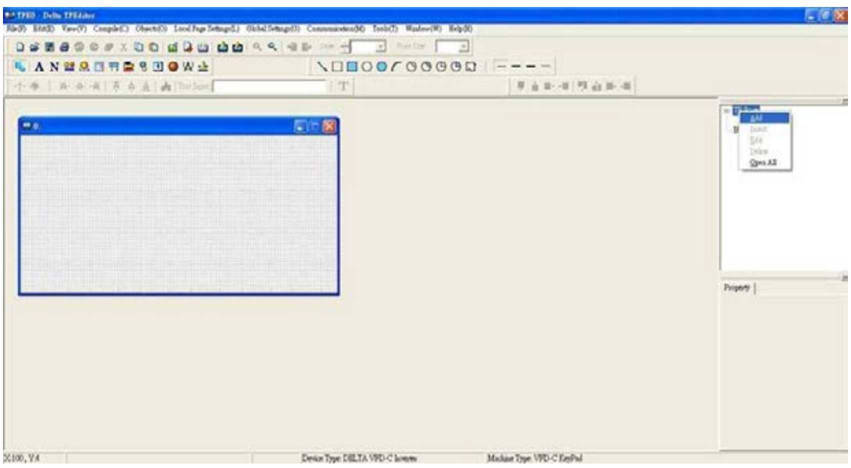
① Run TPEditor version 1.30



C2000_614

② Go to File(F) → Click on New. The Window below will pop up. At the device type, click on the drop down menu and choose DELTA VFD-C Inverter. At the TP type, click on the drop down menu and choose VFD-C KeyPad. As for File Name, enter TPE0. Now click on OK.

③ You are now at the designing page. Go to Edit (E) → Click on Add a New Page (A) or go to the TP page on the upper right side, right click once on TP page and choose Add to increase one more page for editing. The curent firmware of Keypad is version 1.00 and can support up to 4 pages.

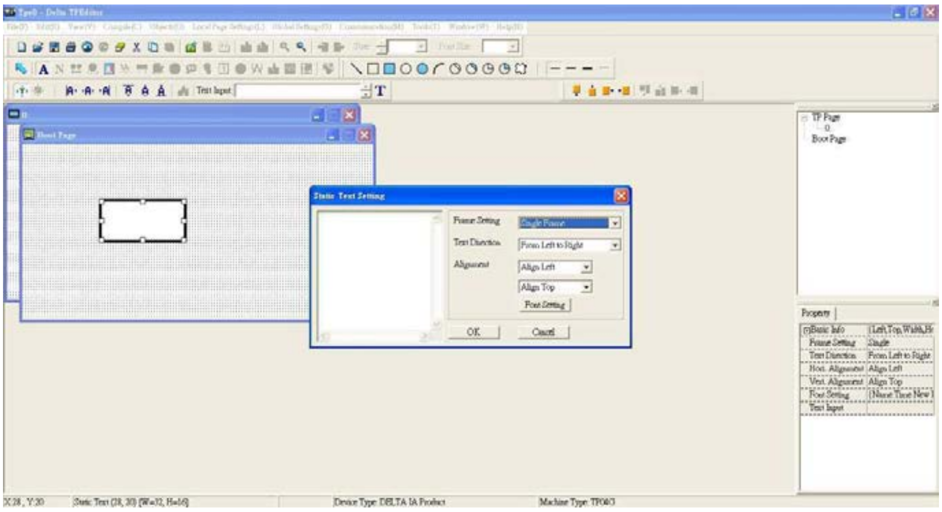


C2000_615

10.3.2 Edit startup page

① Edit startup page **A** .

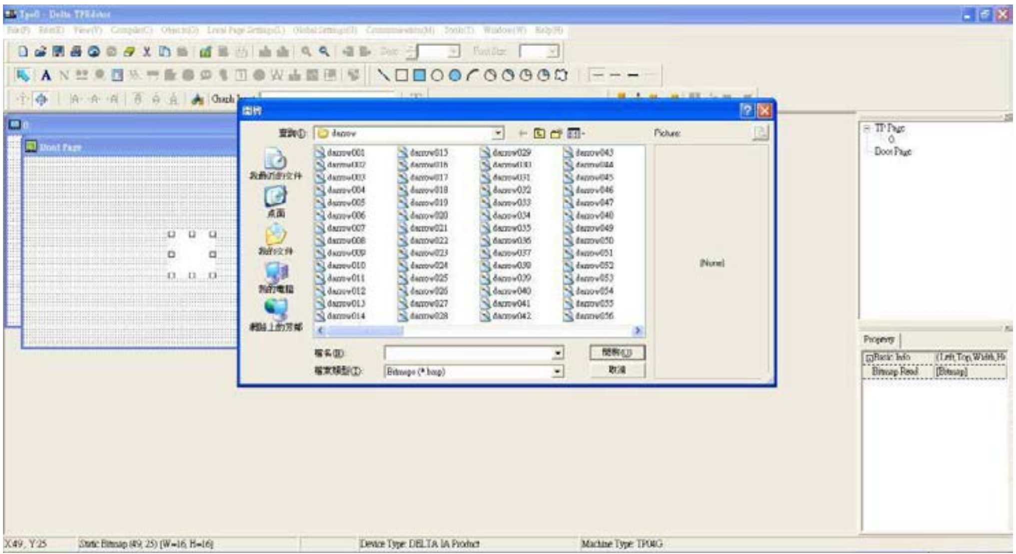
① Static Text **A** . Open a blank page, click once on this button **A** , and then double click on that blank page. The following windows will pop up.



C2000_616

② Static Bitmap

Open a blank page, then click once on this button and then double click on that blank page. The following window will pop up. Now choose a image that you need and click open, then that image will appear in the Static Bitmap window



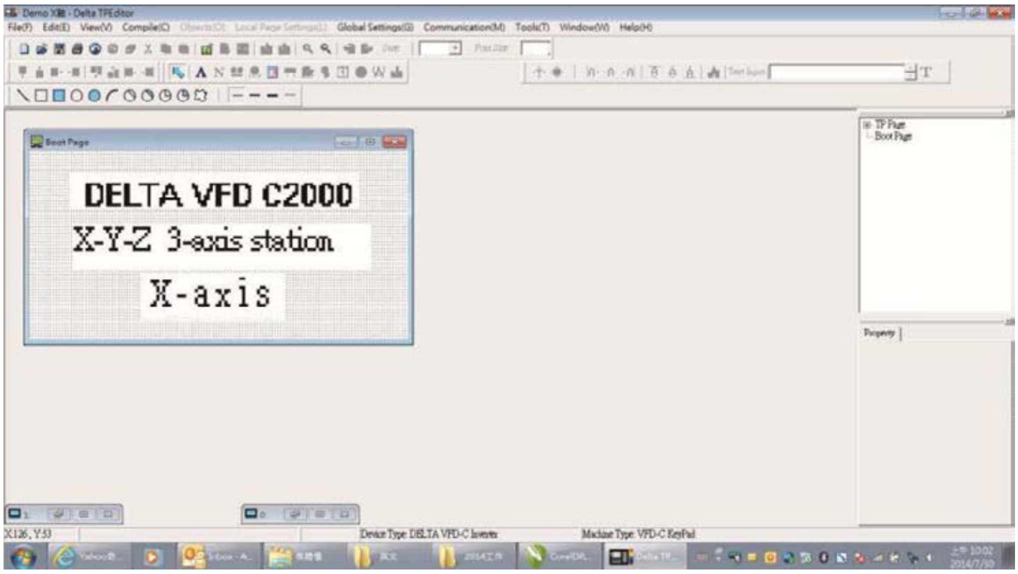
C2000_617

NOTE

Please note that Static Bitmap setting support only images in BMP format.

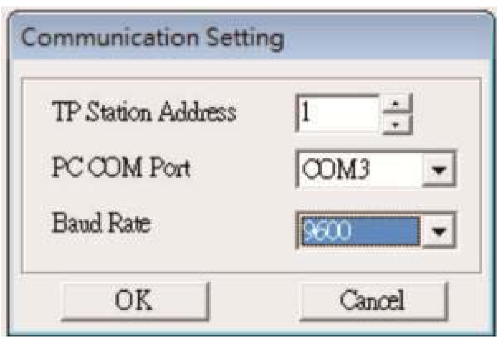
③ Geometric Bitmap 
As shown in the picture on the left side, there are 11 kinds of geometric bitmap to choose. Open a new blank page then click once on a geometric bitmap icon that you need. Then drag that icon and enlarge it to the size that you need on that blank page.

④ Finish editing the keypad starting screen and select ***Communication>Input User Defined Keypad Starting Screen***.



C2000_619

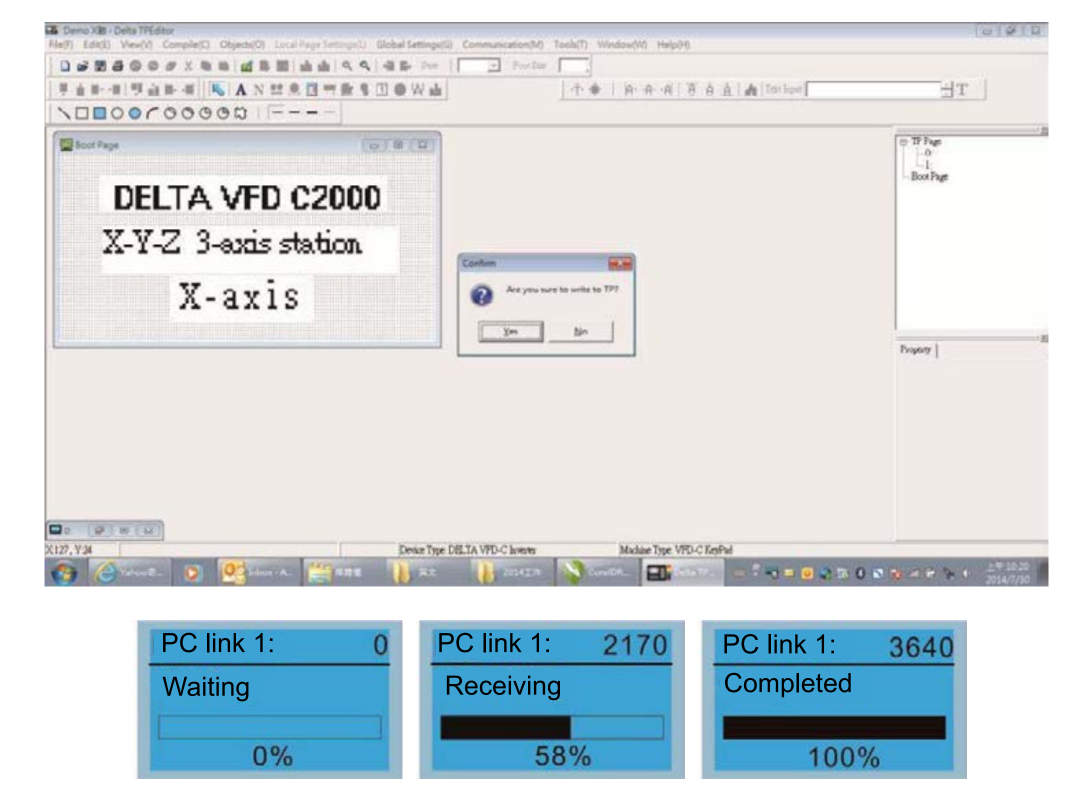
⑤ Downloading setting
Go to ***Tool > Communication***. Set up communication port and speed of IFD6530.



C2000_620

⑥ Only three speed selections are available: 9600 bps, 19200 bps and 38400 bps.

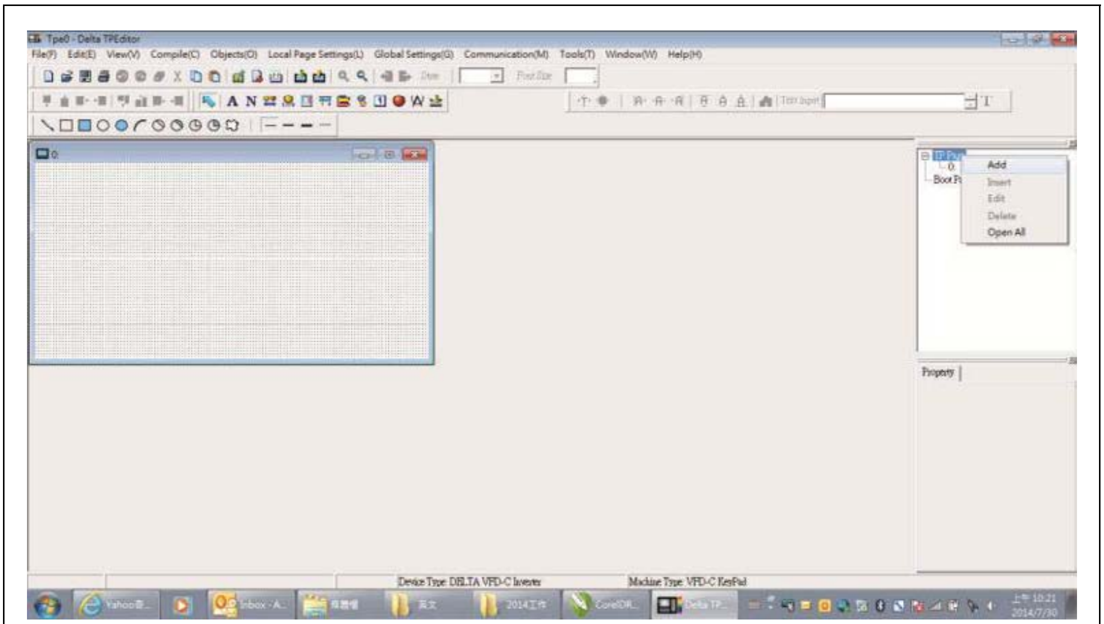
⑦ When a dialogue box displayed on the screen asking to confirm writing or not, press buttons on the keypad to go to MENU, select PC LINK and then press ENTER and wait for few seconds. Then select ***YES*** on the screen to start downloading.



C2000_621, C2000_622

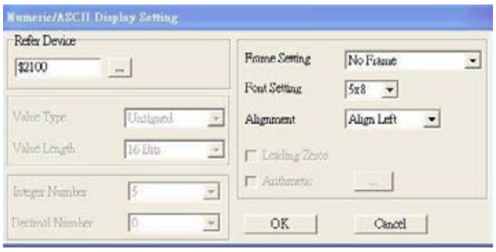
10.3.3 Edit main page & example of download

① Go to editing page, select ***Edit>Add*** one page or press the button ADD on the right hand side of the HMI page to increase number of pages to edit. This keypad currently support up to 256 pages.



C2000_623

② On the bottom right-hand corner of the HMI, click on a page number to edit or go to ***VIEW >HMI*** page to start editing main page. As shown in the image, the following objects are available. From left to right: Static Text, ASCII Display, Static Bitmap, Scale, Bar Graph, Button, Clock Display, Multi-state bit map, Units, Numeric Input and 11 geometric bitmaps and lines of different width. The application of Static Text, Static Bitmap, and geometric bitmap is the same as the editing startup page.

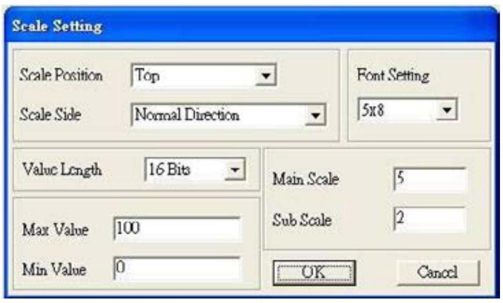


C2000_625

③ Numeric/ASCII display: To add a Numeric/ASCII Display object to a screen, double click on the object to set up Related Devices, Frame Setting, Fonts and Alignment.

C2000_626

Related Device: Choose the VFD Communication Port that you need, if you want to read output frequency (H), set the VFD Communication Port to $2202. For other values, please refer to ACMD ModBus Comm Address List.



C2000_627

④ Scale Setting
On the Tool Bar, click on this for Scale Setting. You can also edit Scale Setting in the Property Window on the right hand side of your computer screen.

– Scale Position: Click on the drop down list to choose which position that you need to place a scale.

– Scale Side: Click on the drop down list to choose if you want to number your scale from smaller number to bigger number or from big to small. Click OK to accept this setting or click Cancel to abort.

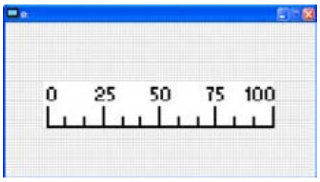
– Font Setting: Click on the drop down list to choose the Font setting that you need then click OK to accept the setting or click Cancel to abort.

– Value Length: Click on the drop down to choose 16 bits or 32 bits. Then click OK to accept the setting or click Cancel to abort.

– Main Scale & Sub Scale: In order to divide the whole scale into equal parts, key in the numbers of your choices for main scale and sub scale.

– Maximum value & Minimum Value are the numbers on the two ends of a scale. They can be negative numbers. But the values allowed to be input are limited by the length of value. For example, when the length of value is set to **be hexadecimal**, the maximum and the minimum value cannot be input as -4000.

– Follow the Scale setting mentioned above; you will have a scale as shown below.



⑤ Bar graph setting

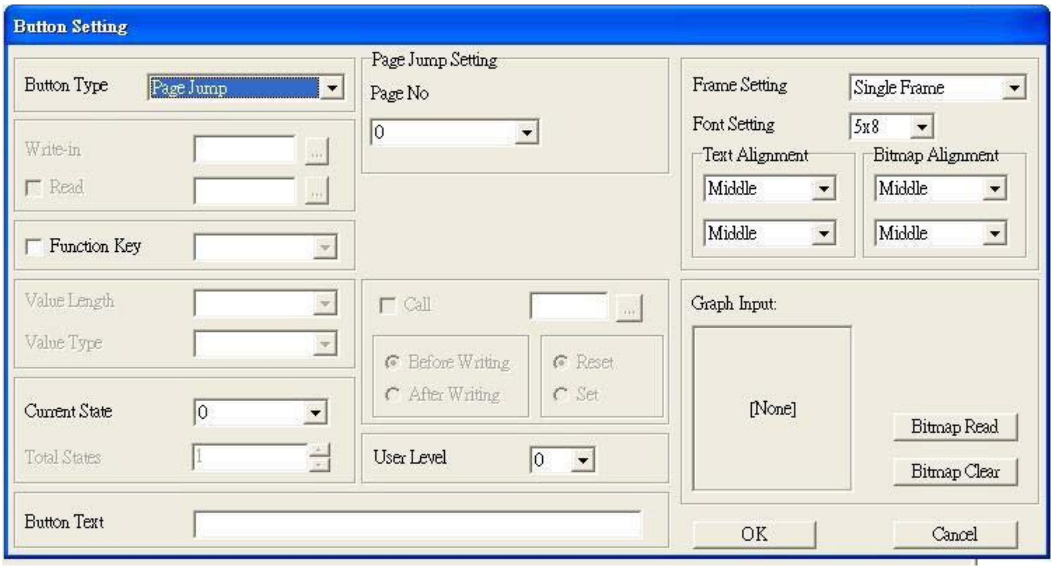
C2000_629

– Related Device: Choose the VFD Communication Port that you need.

– Direction Setting: Click on the drop down menu to choose one of the following directions: From Bottom to Top, From Top to Bottom, From Left to Right or From Right to Left.

– Maximum Value & Minimum Value: They define the range covered by the maximum value and minimum value. If a value is smaller than or equal to the minimum value, then the bar graph will be blank. If a value is bigger or equal to the maximum value, then the bar graph will be full. If a value is between minimum and maximum value, then the bar graph will be filled proportionally.

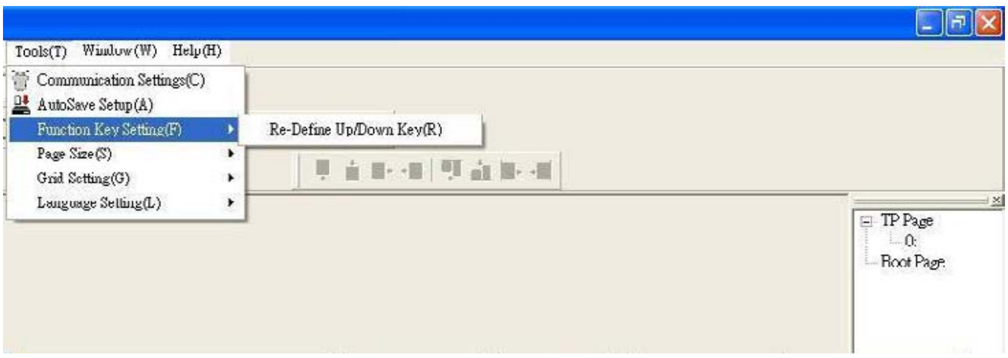
⑥ Button : Currently this function only allows the Keypad to switch pages and to set constants, other functions are not yet available. Text input function and Image inserted functions are not yet supported.
Double click on to open set up window.



C2000_630

– <Button Type> allows users set up buttons' functions. <Page Jump> and <Constant Setting> are the only two currently supported functions.

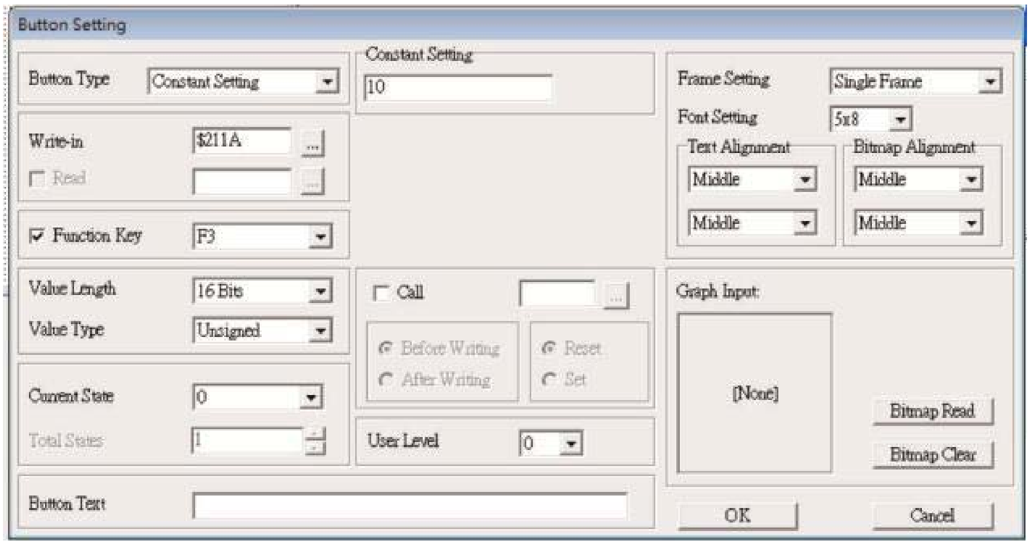
- [Page Jump] function setting
  - Page Jump setting: After you choose the Page Jump function in the drop down list, you will see this Page Jump Setting Menu.
  - Function Key> allows you to assign functions to the following keys on the KPC-CC01 keypad: F1, F2, F3, F4, Up, Down, Left and Right. Please note that the Up and Down keys are locked by TPEditor. These two keys cannot be programmed. If you want to program Up and Down keys, go to Tool → Function Key Settings (F) → ***Re-Define Up/Down Key(R)***.



C2000_631

  - Button Text
    This function allows user to name buttons. For example, key in <Next Page> in the empty space, a button will have the wording <Next Page> displayed on it.

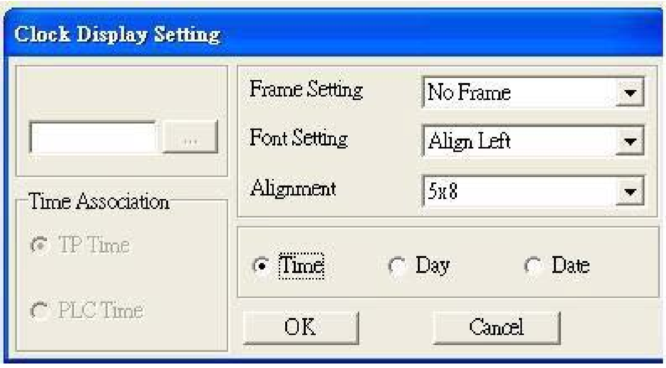
- Constant setting] function
  This function is to set up the memory address' value of the VFD or PLC. When pressing the <function button> set up in before, a value will be written to the memory address of the <Constant Setting>. This function can be used as initializing a variable.



C2000_632

⑦ Clock Display Setting 

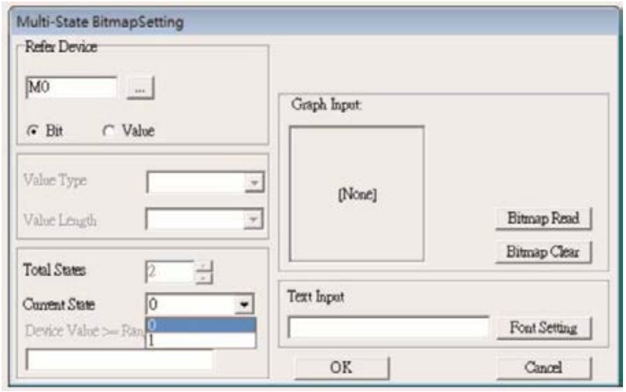
The setup window of the Clock Display is shown as the image below. Time, Day or Date can be displayed on the keypad. You can also adjust Frame Setting, Font Setting and Alignment. To adjust time, go to #9 on the Keypad's menu.



C2000_633

⑧ Multi-state bitmap

The setup window of the multi-state is shown as the image below. This object reads the bit's property value of the PLC. It defines what image or wording is when this bit is 0 or when this bit is 1. Set the initial status to be 0 or 1 to define the displayed image or wording.



C2000_634

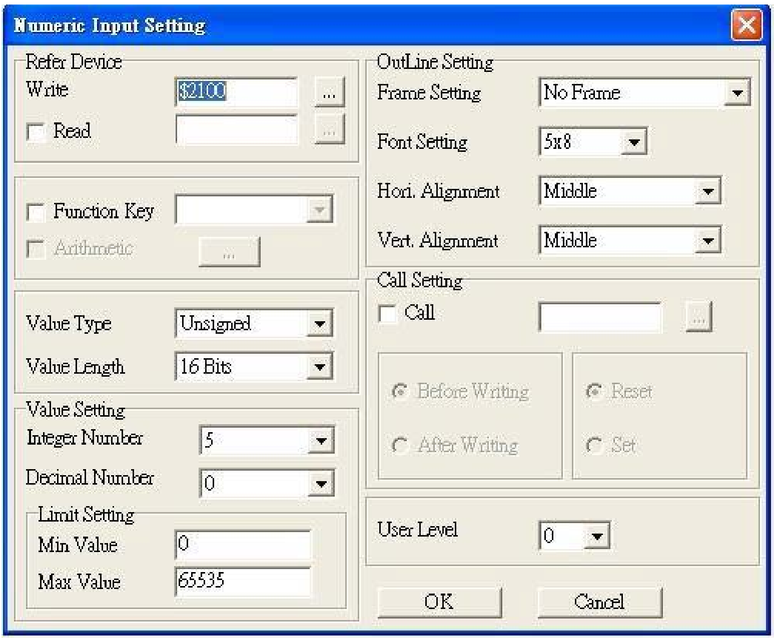
C2000_635

⑨ Unit Measurement

Click once on this Button: Open a new file and double click on that window, you will see the dialog shown on the left.

Choose from the drop down list the Metrology and the Unity Name that you need. As for Metrology, you have the following choices Length, Square Measure, Volume/ Solid Measure, Weight, Speed, Time and Temperature. The unit name changes automatically when you change metrology type.

⑩ Numeric input setting 
This menu allows you to provide parameters or communication ports and to input numbers. Click once on this button . Open a new file and double click on that window, you will see the following:



C2000_636

– Related Device: There are two blank spaces to fill in, one is <Write> and another one is <Read>. Input the numbers that you want to display and the corresponding numbers of a parameter and that of a communication port. For example, input 012C to Read and Write Parameter Pr. 01-44.

– OutLine Setting: The Frame setting, Font setting, Vertical Alignment and Horizontal Alignment are the same as mentioned before. Click on the drop down menu and choose the setting that you need.

– Function key: The setting here allows you to program keys on the keypad. Press the key on the menu then the corresponding key on the keypad will start to blink, then press Enter to confirm the setting.

– Value Type & Value Length: These two factors influence the range of the Minimum and Maximum Value of the Limit Setting. Please note that the corresponding supporting values for C2000 have to be 16 bits. The 32 bits values are not supported.

– Value Setting: This part is set automatically by the keypad itself.

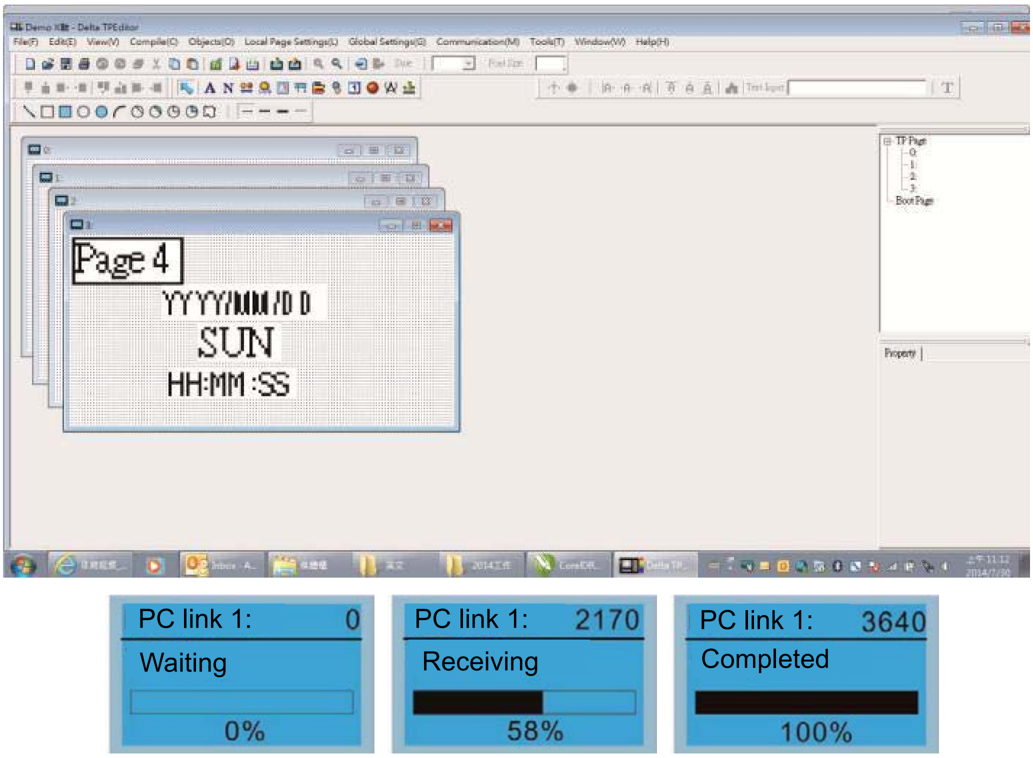
– Limit Setting: Input the range the security setting here.

– For example, if you set Function Key as F1, Minimum Value as 0 and Maximum Value ias 4, then press F1 on Keypad Then you can press Up and Down key on the keypad to increase or decrease the value. Press Enter Key on the keypad to confirm your setting. You can also go to parameter table 01-44 to verify if your input correctly the value.

Download TP Page

Press Up or Down key on the keypad until you reach #13 PC Link.

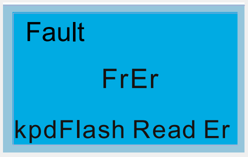
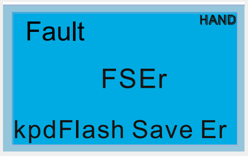
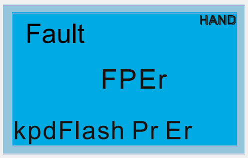
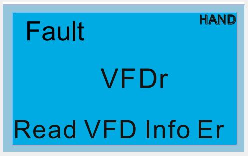
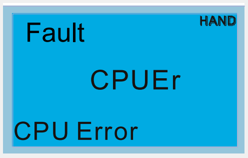
Then press ENTER on the keypad and you will see the word "Waiting" on keypad's screen. Now choose a page that you have created then go to Communication (M) → Write to TP(W) to start downloading the page to the keypad. When you see the word Completed on the keypad's screen, that means the download is done. Then you can press ESC on the keypad to go back to the menu of the keypad.



C2000_637, C2000_638

10.4 Digital keypad KPC-CC01 fault codes and descriptions

Following fault codes and description are for digital keypad KPC-CC01 with version V1.01 and version higher.

LCM display *	Description	Corrective actions
	Keypad flash memory read error	An error has occurred on keypad's flash memory. ① Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. ② Verify what kind of error has occurred on keypad's flash memory. ③ Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your authorized local dealer.
	Keypad flash memory save error	An error has occurred on keypad's flash memory. ① Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. ② Verify what kind of error has occurred on keypad's flash memory. ③ Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your authorized local dealer.
	Keypad flash memory parameter error	Errors occurred on parameters of factory setting. It might be caused by firmware update. ① Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. ② Verify if there's any problem on Flash IC. ③ Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
	Keypad flash memory when read AC drive data error	Keypad can't read any data sent from VFD. ① Verify if the keypad is properly connect to the motor drive by a communication cable such as RJ-45. ② Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. ③ Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
	CPU Error	A Serious error has occurred on keypad's CPU. ① Verify if there's any problems on CPU clock? ② Verify if there's any problem on Flash IC? ③ Verify if there's any problem on RTC IC? ④ Verify if the communication quality of the RS485 is good? ⑤ Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.

Tab. 10-6: Fault code

* The content in this chapter only applies on V1.01 and above of KPC-CC01 keypad.

LCM display *	Description	Corrective actions
Warning HAND CE01 Comm Command Er	Modbus function code error	Motor drive doesn't accept the communication command sent from keypad. ① Verify if the keypad is properly connected to the motor drive on the communication contact by a communication cable such as RJ-45. ② Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
Warning HAND CE02 Comm Address Er	Modbus data address error	Motor drive doesn't accept keypad's communication address. ① Verify if the keypad is properly connected to the motor drive on the communication contact by a communication cable such as RJ-45. ② Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
Warning HAND CE03 Comm Data Error	Modbus data value error	Motor drive doesn't accept the communication data sent from keypad. ① Verify if the keypad is properly connected to the motor drive on the communication contact by a communication cable such as RJ-45. ② Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
Warning HAND CE04 Comm Slave Error	Modbus slave drive error	Motor drive cannot process the communication command sent from keypad. ① Verify if the keypad is properly connected to the motor drive on the communication contact by a communication cable such as RJ-45. ② Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. ③ Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
Warning HAND CE10 KpdComm Time Out	Modbus transmission time-Out	Motor drive doesn't respond to the communication command sent from keypad. ① Verify if the keypad is properly connected to the motor drive on the communication contact by a communication cable such as RJ-45. ② Press RESET on the keypad to clear errors. ③ Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
Warning HAND TPNO TP No Object	Object not supported by TP Editor	Keypad's TP Editor uses unsupported object. ① Verify how the TP editor should use that object. Delete unsupported object and unsupported setting. ② Reedit the TP editor and then download it. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.

Tab. 10-7: Warning code

* The content in this chapter only applies on V1.01 and above of KPC-CC01 keypad.

LCM display *	Description	Corrective actions
HAND File 1 Err 1 Read Only	Parameter and file are read only	The property of the parameter/file is read-only and cannot be written to. ① Verify the specification on the user manual. If the solution above doesn't work, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err Write Fail	Fail to write parameter and file	An error occurred while write to a parameter/file. ① Verify if there's any problem on the Flash IC. ② Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above work, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err VFD Running	AC drive is in operating status	A setting cannot be made while motor drive is in operation. ① Verify if the drive is not in operation. If the solution above doesn't work, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err Pr Lock	AC drive parameter is locked	A setting cannot be made because a parameter is locked. ① Verify if the parameter is locked or not. If it is locked, unlock it and try to set up the parameter again. If the solution above doesn't work, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err Pr Changing	AC drive parameter changing	A setting cannot be made because a parameter is being modified. ① Verify if the parameter is being modified. If it is not being modified, try to set up that parameter again. If the solution above doesn't work, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err Fault Code	Fault code	A setting cannot be made because an error has occurred on the motor drive. ① Verify if there's any error occurred on the motor dive. If there isn't any error, try to make the setting again. If the solution above doesn't work, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err Warning Code	Warning code	A setting cannot be made because of a warning message given to the motor drive. ① Verify if there's any warning message given to the motor drive. If the solution above doesn't work, contact your local authorized dealer.

Tab. 10-8: File copy setting fault description (1)

LCM display *	Description	Corrective actions
HAND File 1 Err Type Dismatch	File type dismatch	Data need to be copied are not same type, so the setting cannot be made. ① Verify if the products' serial numbers need to be copied fall in the category. If they are in the same category, try to make the setting again. If the solution above doesn't work, contact your authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err Password Lock	File is locked with password	A setting cannot be made, because some data are locked. ① Verify if the data are unlocked or able to be unlocked. If the data are unlocked, try to make the setting again. ② Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err 10 Password Fail	Incorrect password	A setting cannot be made because the password is incorrect. ① Verify if the password is correct. If the password is correct, try to make the setting again. ② Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err Version Fail	File version dismatch	A setting cannot be made, because the version of the data is incorrect. ① Verify if the version of the data matches the motor drive. If it matches, try to make the setting again. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err VFD Time Out	AC drive copy function time-out	A setting cannot be made, because data copying time-out expired. ① Redo data copying. ② Verify if copying data is authorized. If it is authorized, try again to copy data. ③ Shut down the system, wait for ten minutes, and then power on again the system. If none of the solution above works, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err Keypad Issue	Other keypad error	This setting cannot be made, due to other keypad issues. (Reserved functions) If such error occurred, contact your local authorized dealer.
HAND File 1 Err VFD Issue	Other AC drive error	This setting cannot be made, due to other motor drive issues. (Reserved functions). If such error occurred, conatct your local authorized dealer.

Tab. 10-8: File copy setting fault description (2)

* The content in this chapter only applies on V1.01 and above of KPC-CC01 keypad.

11 Summary of Parameter Settings

This chapter provides summary of parameter settings for user to gather the parameter setting ranges, factory settings and set parameters. The parameters can be set, changed and reset by the digital keypad.

NOTE

This parameters marked with ≁ can be set during operation.
For more detail on parameters, please refer to Ch.12 Description of Parameter Settings.

11.1 Drive parameters

NOTE

IM: Induction Motor; PM: Permanent Magnet Motor

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
00-00	Identity Code of the	4: 230 V, 1 HP 5: 460 V, 1 HP 6: 230 V, 2 HP 7: 460 V, 2 HP 8: 230 V, 3 HP 9: 460 V, 3 HP 10: 230 V, 5 HP 11: 460 V, 5 HP 12: 230 V, 7.5 HP 13: 460 V, 7.5 HP 14: 230 V, 10 HP 15: 460 V, 10 HP 16: 230 V, 15 HP 17: 460 V, 15 HP 18: 230 V, 20 HP 19: 460 V, 20 HP 20: 230 V, 25 HP 21: 460 V, 25 HP 22: 230 V, 30 HP 23: 460 V, 30 HP 24: 230 V, 40 HP 25: 460 V, 40 HP 26: 230 V, 50 HP 27: 460 V, 50 HP 28: 230 V, 60 HP 29: 460 V, 60 HP 30: 230 V, 75 HP 31: 460 V, 75 HP 32: 230 V, 100 HP 33: 460 V, 100 HP 34: 230 V, 125 HP 35: 460 V, 125 HP 37: 460 V, 150 HP 39: 460 V, 175 HP 41: 460 V, 215 HP 43: 460V, 250 HP 45: 460 V, 300 HP 47: 460 V, 375 HP 49: 460 V, 425 HP 51: 460 V, 475 HP 55: 460 V, 600 HP 93: 460 V, 5 HP (4 kW)	Read only
00-01	Display Rated Current	Display by models	Read only

Tab. 11-1: Drive Parameters (1)

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
	00-02	Parameter Reset	0: No function 1: Read only 5: Reset KWH display to 0 6: Reset PLC (including CANopen® Master Index) 7: Reset CANopen® Index (Slave) 8: No function 9: All parameters are reset to factory settings (base frequency is 50 Hz) 10: All parameters are reset to factory settings (base frequency is 60 Hz	0
🗲	00-03	Start-up Display Selection	0: F (frequency command) 1: H (output frequency) 2: U (multi-function display, see Pr.00-04) 3: A (output current)	0
🗲	00-04	Content of Multi-function Display	0: Display output current (A) (Unit: Amps) 1: Display counter value (c) (Unit: CNT) 2: Display actual output frequency (H.) (Unit: Hz) 3: Display DC-BUS voltage (v) (Unit: Vdc) 4: Display output voltage (E) (Unit: Vac) 5: Display output power angle (n) (Unit: deg) 6: Display output power in kW (P) (Unit: kW) 7: Display actual motor speed rpm (r) (Unit: rpm) 8: Display estimate output torque % (t) (Unit: %) 9: Display PG feedback (G) (refer to Pr.10-00,10-01) (Unit: PLS) 10: Display PID feedback (b) (Unit: %) 11: Display AVI in % (1.) (Unit: %) 12: Display ACI in % (2.) (Unit: %) 13: Display AUI in % (3.) (Unit: %) 14: Display the temperature of IGBT in °C (i.) (Unit: °C) 15: Display the temperature of capacitance in °C (c.) (Unit: °C) 16: The status of digital input (ON/OFF) (i) 17: The status of digital output (ON/OFF) (o) 18: Multi-step speed (S) 19: The corresponding CPU pin status of digital input (d) 20: The corresponding CPU pin status of digital output (0.) 21: Actual motor position (PG1 of PG card) (P.) 22: Pulse input frequency (PG2 of PG card) (S.) 23: Pulse input position (PG2 of PG card) (q.) 24: Position command tracing error (E.) 25: Overload count (0.00–100.00 %) (o.) (Unit: %) 26: Ground Fault GFF(G.) (Unit: %) 27: DC Bus voltage ripple (Unit: Vdc) (r.) 28: Display PLC data D1043 (C) 29: Display PM motor pole section (EMC-PG01U application) (4.) 30: Display output of user defined (U) 31: Display Pr.00-05 user Gain(K) 32: Number of actual motor revolution during operation (PG card plug in and Z phase signal input) (Z.) 33: Motor actual position during operation (when PG card is connected)(q) 34: Operation speed of fan (F.) (Unit: %) 35: Control Mode display: 0= Speed control mode (SPD), 1= torque control mode (TQR) (t.) 36: Present operating carrier frequency of drive (Hz) (J.) 37: Reserved 38: Display drive status (6.) 39: Display estimated output torque, positive and negative, using Nt-m as unit (t = 00: positive torque; –00: negative torque (C.) 40: Torque Command (L) (Unit: %) 41: KWH display (J) (Unit: kWH) 42: PID Reference (h.) (Unit: %) 43: PID offset (o.) (Unit: %) 44: PID Output Fcmd (Hz) (b.) (Unit: Hz) 45: Hardware ID	3
🗲	00-05	Coefficient Gain in Actual Output Frequency	0–160.00	1.00

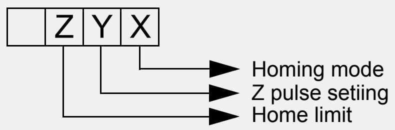
Tab. 11-1: Drive Parameters (2)

<table>
<tr><th>Pr.</th><th>Explanation</th><th colspan="3">Settings</th><th>Factory Setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>00-06</td><td>Software Version</td><td colspan="3">Read only</td><td>#.#</td></tr>
<tr><td>00-07</td><td>Parameter Protection Password Input</td><td colspan="3">0–65535
0–3: the times of password attempts</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>00-08</td><td>Parameter Protection Password Setting</td><td colspan="3">0 – 65535
0: No password protection/password is entered correctly (Pr00-07)
1: Parameter is locked</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>00-09</td><td>Reserved</td><td colspan="3"></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>00-10</td><td>Control Mode</td><td colspan="3">0: Speed mode
1: Point-to-Point position control
2: Torque mode
3: Home mode</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>00-11</td><td>Control of Speed Mode</td><td colspan="3">0: VF (IM V/f control)
1: VFPG (IM V/f control+ Encoder)
2: SVC(IM Sensorless vector control)
3: FOCPG (IM FOC vector control+ Encoder)
4: FOCPG (PM FOC vector control + Encoder)
5: FOC Sensorless (IM field oriented sensorless vector control)
6: PM Sensorless (PM field oriented sensorless vector control)
7: IPM Sensorless (IPM field oriented sensorless vector control)</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>00-12</td><td>Point-to-Point Position mode</td><td colspan="3">0: Relative position
1: Absolute position</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>00-13</td><td>Torque Mode Control</td><td colspan="3">0: TQCPG (IM Torque control + Encoder)
1: TQCPG (PM Torque control + Encoder)
2: TQC Sensorless (IM Sensorless torque control)</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>00-14</td><td>Reserved</td><td colspan="3"></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>00-15</td><td>Reserved</td><td colspan="3"></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>00-16</td><td>Load Selection</td><td colspan="3">0: Normal load
1: Heavy load</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="10">00-17</td><td rowspan="10">Carrier Frequency</td><td colspan="3">Normal load</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>230 V</td><td>460 V</td><td>Carrier Frequency</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1-15 HP</td><td>1-20 HP</td><td>2–15 KHz</td><td>8</td></tr>
<tr><td>20-50 HP</td><td>25-75 HP</td><td>2–10 KHz</td><td>6</td></tr>
<tr><td>60-125 HP</td><td>100-600 HP</td><td>2–9 KHz</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Heavy load</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>230 V</td><td>460 V</td><td>Carrier Frequency</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1-15 HP</td><td>1-20 HP</td><td>2–15 KHz</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>20-50 HP</td><td>25-75 HP</td><td>2–10 KHz</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>60-125 HP</td><td>100-600 HP</td><td>2–9 KHz</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>00-18</td><td>Reserved</td><td colspan="3"></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>00-19</td><td>PLC Command Mask</td><td colspan="3">Bit 0: Control command by PLC force control
Bit 1: Frequency command by PLC force control
Bit 2: Position command by PLC force control
Bit 3: Torque command by PLC force control</td><td>Read only</td></tr>
<tr><td>00-20</td><td>Source of Master Frequency Command (AUTO)</td><td colspan="3">0: Digital keypad
1: RS485 serial communication
2: External analog input (Pr.03-00)
3: External UP/DOWN terminal
4: Pulse input without direction command (Pr.10-16 without direction)
5: Pulse input with direction command (Pr.10-16)
6: CANopen® communication card
7: Reserved
8: Communication card (no CANopen® card)</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 11-1: Drive Parameters (3)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
00-21	Source of the Operation Command (AUTO)	0: Digital keypad 1: External terminals. Keypad STOP disabled. 2: RS-485 serial communication. Keypad STOP disabled. 3: CANopen® communication card 4: Reserved 5: Communication card (no CANopen® card)	0
00-22	Stop Method	0: Ramp to stop 1: Coast to stop	0
00-23	Control of Motor Direction	0: Enable forward/reverse 1: Reverse disable 2: Forward disable	0
00-24	Memory of Frequency Command	Read only	Read only
00-25	User Defined Characteristics	Bit 0–3: user defined decimal place 0000b: no decimal place 0001b: one decimal place 0010b: two decimal place 0011b: three decimal place Bit 4–15: user define on unit 000xh: Hz 001xh: rpm 002xh: % 003xh: kg 004xh: m/s 005xh: kW 006xh: HP 007xh: ppm 008xh: 1/m 009xh: kg/s 00Axh: kg/m 00Bxh: kg/h 00Cxh: lb/s 00Dxh: lb/m 00Exh: lb/h 00Fxh: ft/s 010xh: ft/m 011xh: m 012xh: ft 013xh: degC 014xh: degF 015xh: mbar 016xh: bar 017xh: Pa 018xh: kPa 019xh: mWG 01Axh: inWG 01Bxh: ftWG 01Cxh: psi 01Dxh: atm 01Exh: L/s 01Fxh: L/m 020xh: L/h 021xh: m3/s 022xh: m3/h 023xh: GPM 024xh: CFM Xxxxh: Hz	0
00-26	Max. User Defined Value	0: Disable 0–65535 (when Pr.00-25 set to no decimal place) 0.0–6553.5 (when Pr.00-25 set to 1 decimal place) 0.0–655.35 (when Pr.00-25 set to 2 decimal place) 0.0–65.535 (when Pr.00-25 set to 3 decimal place)	0
00-27	User Defined Value	Read only	Read only
00-28	Reserved		

Tab. 11-1: Drive Parameters (4)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
00-29	LOCAL/REMOTE Selection	0: Standard HOA function 1: Switching Local/Remote, the drive stops 2: Switching Local/Remote, the drive runs as the REMOTE setting for frequency and operation status 3: Switching Local/Remote, the drive runs as the LOCAL setting for frequency and operation status 4: Switching Local/Remote, the drive runs as LOCAL setting when switch to Local and runs as REMOTE setting when switch to Remote for frequency and operation status.	0
00-30	Source of the Master Frequency Command (HAND)	0: Digital keypad 1: RS485 serial communication 2: External analog input (Pr.03-00) 3: External UP/DOWN terminal 4: Pulse input without direction command (Pr.10-16 without direction) 5: Pulse input with direction command (Pr.10-16) 6: CANopen® communication card 7: Reserved 8: Communication card (no CANopen® card)	0
00-31	Source of the Operation Command (HAND)	0: Digital keypad 1: External terminals. Keypad STOP disabled. 2: RS485 serial communication. Keypad STOP disabled. 3: CANopen® communication card 4: Reserved 5: Communication card (not include CANopen® card)	0
00-32	Digital Keypad STOP Function	0: STOP key disable 1: STOP key enable	0
00-33 – 00-39	Reserved		
00-40	Homing mode	 Note: Forward run = clockwise (CW) Reverse run = counterclockwise (CCW) X: 0: Forward run to home. Set PL forward limit as check point. 1: Reverse run (CCW) to home. Set NL reverse limit (CCWL) as check point. 2: Forward run to home. Set ORG: OFF→ON as check point. 3: Reverse to home. Set ORG: OFF→ON as check point. 4: Forward run and search for Z-pulse as check point. 5: Forward run and search for Z-pulse as check point. 6: Forward run to home. Set ORG: ON→OFF as check point. 7: Reverse run to home. Set ORG: ON→OFF as check point. 8: Define current position as home. Y: Set X to 0, 1, 2, 3, 6, 7 first. 0: reverse run to Z pulse 1: continue forward run to Z pulse 2: Ignore Z pulse Z: When home limit is reached, set X to 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 first. 0: display the error 1: reverse the direction	0000
00-41	Homing by frequency 1	0.00–600.00 Hz	8.00

Tab. 11-1: Drive Parameters (5)

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
✎	00-42	Homing by frequency 2	0.00–600.00 Hz	2.00
	00-43 – 00-47	Reserved		
✎	00-48	Display Filter Time (Current)	0.001–65.535 sec	0.100
✎	00-49	Display Filter Time (Keypad)	0.001–65.535 sec	0.100
	00-50	Software Version (date)	Read only	#####
	00-51 – 00-61	Reserved		

Tab. 11-1: Drive Parameters (6)

11.2 Basic parameters

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
01-00	Max. Operation Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	60.00/ 50.00
01-01	Output Frequency of Motor 1	0.00–600.00 Hz	60.00/ 50.00
01-02	Output Voltage of Motor 1	230 V: 0.0–255.0 V 460 V: 0.0–510.0 V	200.0 400.0
01-03	Mid-point Frequency 1 of Motor 1	0.00–600.00 Hz Motor drive with 250 HP and above: 1.50	3.00
01-04	Mid-point Voltage 1 of Motor 1	230 V: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V: 0.0–480.0 V Motor drive with 250 HP and above: 10.0	11.0 22.0
01-05	Mid-point Frequency 2 of Motor 1	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.50
01-06	Mid-point Voltage 2 of Motor 1	230 V: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V: 0.0–480.0 V Frequency inverters with 185 kW or more: 2.0	2.0 4.0
01-07	Min. Output Frequency of Motor 1	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
01-08	Min. Output Voltage of Motor 1	230 V: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V: 0.0–480.0 V	0.0 0.0
01-09	Start-Up Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.50
01-10	Output Frequency Upper Limit	0.00–600.00 Hz	600.00
01-11	Output Frequency Lower Limit	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
01-12	Accel. Time 1	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-13	Decel Time 1	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-14	Accel Time 2	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-15	Decel Time 2	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-16	Accel Time 3	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-17	Decel Time 3	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-18	Accel Time 4	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-19	Decel Time 4	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-20	JOG Acceleration Time	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-21	JOG Deceleration Time	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.00–6000.0 second AC drive with power greater than 30 HP: 60.00/60.0	10.00 10.0
01-22	JOG Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	6.00
01-23	1st/4th Accel/decel Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00

Tab. 11-2: Basic Parameters (1)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
01-24	S-curve Acceleration Begin Time 1	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–25.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.0–250.0 second	0.20 0.2
01-25	S-curve Acceleration Arrival Time 2	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–25.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.0–250.0 second	0.20 0.2
01-26	S-curve Deceleration Begin Time 1	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–25.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.0–250.0 second	0.20 0.2
01-27	S-curve Deceleration Arrival Time 2	Pr.01-45=0: 0.00–25.00 second Pr.01-45=1: 0.0–250.0 second	0.20 0.2
01-28	Skip Frequency 1 (upper limit)	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
01-29	Skip Frequency 1 (lower limit)	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
01-30	Skip Frequency 2 (upper limit)	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
01-31	Skip Frequency 2 (lower limit)	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
01-32	Skip Frequency 3 (upper limit)	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
01-33	Skip Frequency 3 (lower limit)	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
01-34	Zero-speed Mode	0: Output waiting 1: Zero-speed operation 2: Fmin (Refer to Pr.01-07, 01-41)	0
01-35	Output Frequency of Motor 2	0.00–600.00 Hz	60.00/ 50.00
01-36	Output Voltage of Motor 2	230 V: 0.0–255.0 V 460 V: 0.0–510.0 V	200.0 400.0
01-37	Mid-point Frequency 1 of Motor 2	0.00–600.00 Hz Frequency inverters with 185 kW or more: 1,50	3.00
01-38	Mid-point Voltage 1 of Motor 2	230 V: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V: 0.0–480.0 V Frequency inverters with 185 kW or more: 10,0	11.0 22.0
01-39	Mid-point Frequency 2 of Motor 2	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.50
01-40	Mid-point Voltage 2 of Motor 2	230 V: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V: 0.0–480.0 V Frequency inverters with 185 kW or more: 2,0	2.0 4.0
01-41	Min. Output Frequency of Motor 2	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
01-42	Min. Output Voltage of Motor 2	230 V: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V: 0.0–480.0 V	0.0 0.0
01-43	V/f Curve Selection	0: V/f curve determined by Pr. 01-00–01-08 1: Curve to the power of 1.5 2: Curve to the power of 2	0
01-44	Optimal Acceleration/ Deceleration Setting	0: Linear accel./decel. 1: Auto accel.; linear decel. 2: Linear accel.; auto decel. 3: Auto accel./decel. 4: Linear, stall prevention by auto accel./decel. (limit by Pr. 01-12–01-21)	0
01-45	Time Unit for Accel./ Decel. and S Curve	0: Unit: 0.01 sec 1: Unit: 0.1 sec	0
01-46	CANopen Quick Stop Time	Pr. 01-45=0: 0.00–600.00 sec Pr. 01-45=1: 0.0–6000.0 sec	1.00

Tab. 11-2: Basic Parameters (2)

11.3 Digital input/output parameters

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
02-00	2-wire/3-wire Operation Control	0: 2-wire mode 1, power on for operation control 1: 2-wire mode 2, power on for operation control 2: 3-wire, power on for operation control	0
02-01	Multi-function Input Command 1 (MI1)	0: No function	1
02-02	Multi-function Input Command 2 (MI2)	1: Multi-step speed command 1/multi-step position command 1	2
02-03	Multi-function Input Command 3 (MI3)	2: Multi-step speed command 2/multi-step position command 2	3
02-04	Multi-function Input Command 4 (MI4)	3: Multi-step speed command 3/multi-step position command 3	4
02-05	Multi-function Input Command 5 (MI5)	4: Multi-step speed command 4/multi-step position command 4	0
02-06	Multi-function Input Command 6 (MI6)	5: Reset	0
02-07	Multi-function Input Command 7 (MI7)	6: JOG command (By KPC-CC01 or external control)	0
02-08	Multi-function Input Command 8 (MI8)	7: Acceleration/deceleration speed inhibit	0
02-26	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI10)	8: The 1^{st}, 2^{nd} acceleration/deceleration time selection	0
02-27	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI11)	9: The 3^{rd}, 4^{th} acceleration/deceleration time selection	0
02-28	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI12)	10: EF Input (Pr.07-20)	0
02-29	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI13)	11: B.B input from external (Base Block)	0
02-30	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI14)	12: Output stop	0

Tab. 11-3: Digital Input/Output Parameters (1)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
02-31	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI15)	13: Cancel the setting of optimal accel. /decel. time 14: Switch between motor 1 and motor 2 15: Operation speed command from AVI 16: Operation speed command from ACI 17: Operation speed command from AUI 18: Emergency stop (Pr.07-20) 19: Digital up command 20: Digital down command 21: PID function disabled 22: Clear counter 23: Input the counter value (MI6) 24: FWD JOG command 25: REV JOG command 26: TQC/FOCmodel selection 27: ASR1/ASR2 selection 28: Emergency stop (EF1) 29: Signal confirmation for Y-connection 30: Signal confirmation for Δ-connection 31: High torque bias (Pr.11-30) 32: Middle torque bias (Pr.11-31) 33: Low torque bias (Pr.11-32) 34: Switch between multi-step position and multi-speed control 35: Enable single point position control 36: Enable multi-step position learning function (valid at stop) 37: Full position control pulse command input enable 38: Disable EEPROM write function 39: Torque command direction 40: Force coast to stop 41: HAND switch 42: AUTO switch 43: Enable resolution selection (Pr.02-48) 44: Reversed direction homing 45: Forward direction homing 46: Homing (ORG) 47: Homing function enable 48: Mechanical gear ratio switch 49: Drive enable 50: Master dEb action input 51: Selection for PLC mode bit0 52: Selection for PLC mode bit1 53: Trigger CANopen quick stop 54: Reserved 55: Brake release 56: Local/Remote Selection 57–70: Reserved	0

Tab. 11-3: Digital Input/Output Parameters (2)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
02-09	UP/DOWN key mode	0: up/down by the accel./decel. time 1: up/down constant speed (Pr. 02-10)	0
02-10	Constant speed. The Accel /Decel. Speed of the UP/DOWN Key	0.01–1.00 Hz/ms	0.01
02-11	Digital Input Response Time	0.000–30.000 second	0.005
02-12	Digital Input Mode Selection	0000h–FFFFh (0: N.O.; 1: N.C.)	0000
02-13	Multi-function Output 1 RY1	0: No function	11
02-14	Multi-function Output 2 RY2	1: Operation Indication	1
02-16	Multi-function Output 3 (MO1)	2: Operation speed attained	0
02-17	Multi-function Output 4 (MO2)	3: Desired frequency attained 1 (Pr. 02-22)	0
02-36	Output terminal of the I/O extension card (MO10)	4: Desired frequency attained 2 (Pr. 02-24)	0
02-37	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO11)	5: Zero speed (Frequency command)	0
02-38	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO12)	6: Zero speed, include STOP (Frequency command)	0
02-39	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO13)	7: Over torque 1(Pr. 06-06–06-08)	0
02-40	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO14)	8: Over torque 2(Pr. 06-09–06-11)	0
02-41	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO15)	9: Drive is ready	0
02-42	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO16)	10: Low voltage warning (LV) (Pr. 06-00)	0
02-43	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO17)	11: Malfunction indication	0
02-44	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO18)	12: Mechanical brake release(Pr. 02-32)	0
02-45	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO19)	13: Overheat warning (Pr. 06-15)	0

Tab. 11-3: Digital Input/Output Parameters (3)

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
⚡	02-46	Output Terminal of I/O Extension Card (MO20)	14: Software brake signal indication (Pr.07-00) 15: PID feedback error (Pr. 08-13, Pr. 08-14) 16: Slip error (oSL) 17: Terminal count value attained, does not return to 18: Preliminary count value attained, returns to 0 19: Base Block 20: Warning output 21: Over voltage warning 22: Over-current stall prevention warning 23: Over-voltage stall prevention warning 24: Operation mode indication 25: Forward command 26: Reverse command 27: Output when current >= Pr. 02-33 28: Output when current < Pr. 02-33 29: Output when frequency >= Pr. 02-34 30: Output when frequency < Pr. 02-34 31: Y-connection for the motor coil 32: Δ-connection for the motor coil 33: Zero speed (actual output frequency) 34: Zero speed include stop (actual output frequency) 35: Error output selection 1 (Pr. 06-23) 36: Error output selection 2 (Pr. 06-24) 37: Error output selection 3 (Pr. 06-25) 38: Error output selection 4 (Pr. 06-26) 39: Position attained (Pr.10-19) 40: Speed attained (including Stop) 41: Multi-position attained 42: Crane function 43: Actual motor speed slower than Pr.02-47 44: Low current output (use with Pr.06-71–06-73) 45: UVW Output Electromagnetic valve Switch 46: Master dEb warning output 47: Closed brake output 48: Reserved 49: Homing action complete 50: Output for CANopen® control 51: Output for RS485 communication 52: Output for communication board 53–64: Reserved 65: Output for both Can & 485 control 66: SO logic A 67: Analog input level reached 68: SO logic B	0

Tab. 11-3: Digital Input/Output Parameters (4)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
02-18	Multi-function output direction	0000h–FFFFh (0: N.O.; 1: N.C.)	0000
02-19	Terminal counting value attained (returns to 0)	0–65500	0
02-20	Preliminary counting value attained (not return to 0)	0–65500	0
02-21	Digital Output Gain (DFM)	1–166	1
02-22	Desired Frequency Attained 1	0.00–600.00 Hz	60.00/ 50.00
02-23	The Width of the Desired Frequency Attained 1	0.00–600.00 Hz	2.00
02-24	Desired Frequency Attained 2	0.00–600.00 Hz	60.00/ 50.00
02-25	The Width of the Desired Frequency Attained 2	0.00–600.00 Hz	2.00
02-32	Brake Delay Time	0.000–65.000 sec.	0.000
02-33	Output Current Level Setting for Multi-function External Terminals	0–100 %	0
02-34	Output frequency setting for multi-function output terminal	0.00–600.00 Hz (Motor speed when using PG Card)	0.00
02-35	External Operation Control Selection after Reset and Activate	0: Disable 1: Drive runs if run command exists after reset	0
02-47	Zero-speed Level of Motor	0–65535 rpm	0
02-48	Max. Frequency of Resolution Switch	0.01–600.00 Hz	60.00
02-49	Switch the delay time of Max. output frequency	0.000–65.000 sec.	0.000
02-50	Status of Multi-function Input Terminal	Monitor the status of multi-function input terminals	Read only
02-51	Status of Multi-function Output Terminal	Monitor the status of multi-function output terminals	Read only
02-52	Display External Output terminal occupied by PLC	Monitor the status of PLC input terminals	Read only
02-53	Display Analog Input Terminal occupied by PLC	Monitor the status of PLC output terminals	Read only
02-54	Display the Frequency Command Executed by External Terminal	Read only	Read only
02-55	Reserved		
02-56	Time for test signal "brake released"		
02-57	Multi-function output terminal: Function 42: Brake Current Checking Point	0–150 %	0
02-58	Multi-function output terminal: Function 42: Brake Frequency Checking Point	0.00–655.35 Hz	0.00
02-59 – 02-69	Reserved		

Tab. 11-3: Digital Input/Output Parameters (5)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
02-70	IO card types	0 : NO IO card 1 : EMC-BPS01 2 : NO IO card 3 : NO IO card 4 : EMC-D611A 5 : EMC-D42A 6 : EMC-R6AA 7 : NO IO card	Read only

Tab. 11-3: Digital Input/Output Parameters (6)

11.4 Analog input/output parameters

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
03-00	Analog Input Selection (AVI)	0: No function	1
03-01	Analog Input Selection (ACI)	1: Frequency command (speed limit under torque control mode)	0
03-02	Analog Input Selection (AUI)	2: Torque command (torque limit under speed mode) 3: Torque offset command 4: PID target value 5: PID feedback signal 6: PTC thermistor input value 7: Positive torque limit 8: Negative torque limit 9: Regenerative torque limit 10: Positive/negative torque limit 11: PT100 thermistor input value 12: Reserved 13: PID Offset (%) (h.) 14–20: Reserved	0
03-03	Analog Input Bias (AVI)	-100.0–100.0 %	0
03-04	Analog Input Bias (ACI)	-100.0–100.0 %	0
03-05	Analog Positive Voltage Input Bias (AUI)	-100.0–100.0 %	0
03-06	Reserved		
03-07	Positive/negative Bias Mode (AVI)	0: No bias 1: Lower than or equal to bias 2: Greater than or equal to bias 3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center 4: Serve bias as the center	0
03-08	Positive/negative Bias Mode (ACI)		
03-09	Positive/negative Bias Mode (AUI)		
03-10	Analog Frequency Command for Reverse Run	0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal. 1: Negative frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external terminal control.	0
03-11	Analog Input Gain (AVI)	-500.0–500.0 %	100.0
03-12	Analog Input Gain (ACI)	-500.0–500.0 %	100.0
03-13	Analog Positive Input Gain (AUI)	-500.0–500.0 %	100.0
03-14	Analog Negative Input Gain (AUI)	-500.0–500.0 %	100.0
03-15	Analog Input Filter Time (AVI)	0.00–20.00 sec.	0.01
03-16	Analog Input Filter Time (ACI)	0.00–20.00 sec.	0.01
03-17	Analog Input Filter Time (AUI)	0.00–20.00 sec.	0.01
03-18	Addition Function of the Analog Input	0: Disable (AVI, ACI, AUI) 1: Enable	0
03-19	ACI Signal Loss	0: Disable 1: Continue operation at the last frequency 2: Decelerate to 0 Hz 3: Stop immediately and display ACE	0
03-20	Multi-function Output 1 (AFM1)	0: Output frequency (Hz)	0

Tab. 11-4: Analog Input/Output Parameters (1)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
03-23	Multi-function Output 2 (AFM2)	1: Frequency command (Hz) 2: Motor speed (Hz) 3: Output current (rms) 4: Output voltage 5: DC Bus voltage 6: Power factor 7: Power 8: Output torque 9: AVI 10: ACI 11: AUI 12: Iq current 13: Iq feedback value 14: Id current 15: Id feedback value 16: Vq-axis voltage 17: Vd-axis voltage 18: Torque command 19: PG2 frequency command 20: CANopen® analog output 21: RS485 analog output 22: Communication card analog output 23: Constant voltage/current output 24: Reserved 25: CAN & 485 output	0
03-21	Gain of Analog Output 1 (AFM1)	0–500.0 %	100.0
03-22	Analog Output 1 when in REV Direction (AFM1)	0: Absolute output voltage 1: Reverse output 0 V; Positive output 0-10 V 2: Reverse output 5-0 V; Positive output 5-10 V	0
03-24	Gain of Analog Output 2 (AFM2)	0–500.0 %	100.0
03-25	Analog Output 2 when in REV Direction (AFM2)	0: Absolute output voltage 1: Output 0 V in REV direction; output 0-10 V in FWD direction 2: Output 5-0 V in REV direction; output 5-10 V in FWD direction	0
03-26	Reserved		
03-27	AFM2 Output Bias	-100.00–100.00 %	0.00
03-28	AVI Selection	0: 0-10 V 1: 0-20 mA 2: 4-20 mA	0
03-29	ACI Selection	0: 4-20 mA 1: 0-10 V 2: 0-20 mA	0
03-30	Status of PLC Output Terminal	Monitor the status of PLC output terminals	Read only
03-31	AFM2 0-20 mA Output Selection	0: 0-20 mA Output 1: 4-20 mA Output	0

Tab. 11-4: Analog Input/Output Parameters (2)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
03-32	AFM1 DC output setting level	0.00–100.00 %	0.00
03-33	AFM2 DC Output Setting Level	0.00–100.00 %	0.00
03-34	Reserved		
03-35	AFM1 filter output time	0.00 – 20.00 Seconds	0.01
03-36	AFM2 filter output time	0.00 – 20.00 Seconds	0.01
03-37 – 03-43	Reserve		
03-44	MO by source of AI level	0: AVI 1: ACI 2: AUI	0
03-45	AI upper level	-100–100.00 %	50%
03-46	AI lower level	-100–100.00 %	10%
03-47 – 03-49	Reserve		
03-50	Analog Input Curve Selection	0: Regular Curve 1: 3 point curve of AVI 2: 3 point curve of ACI 3: 3 point curve of AVI & ACI 4: 3 point curve of AUI 5: 3 point curve of AVI & AUI 6: 3 point curve of ACI & AUI 7: 3 point curve of AVI & ACI & AUI	0
03-51	AVI Low Point	Pr.03-28=0, 0.00–10.00 V Pr.03-28≠0, 0.00–20.00 mA	0.00
03-52	AVI Proportional Low Point	0.00–100.00%	0.00
03-53	AVI Mid Point	Pr.03-28=0, 0.00–10.00 V Pr.03-28≠0, 0.00–20.00 mA	5.00
03-54	AVI Proportional Mid Point	0.00–100.00 %	50.00
03-55	AVI High Point	Pr.03-28=0, 0.00–10.00 V Pr.03-28≠0, 0.00–20.00 mA	10.00
03-56	AVI Proportional High Point	0.00–100.00%	100.00
03-57	ACI Low Point	Pr.03-29=1, 0.00–10.00 V Pr.03-29≠1, 0.00–20.00 mA	4.00
03-58	ACI Proportional Low Point	0.00–100.00 %	0.00
03-59	ACI Mid Point	Pr.03-29=1, 0.00–10.00 V Pr.03-29≠1, 0.00–20.00 mA	12.00
03-60	ACI Proportional Mid Point	0.00–100.00 %	50.00
03-61	ACI High Point	Pr.03-29=1, 0.00–10.00 V Pr.03-29≠1, 0.00–20.00 mA	20.00
03-62	ACI Proportional High Point	0.00–100.00 %	100.00
03-63	Positive AUI Voltage Low Point	0.00–10.00 V	0.00
03-64	Positive AUI Voltage Proportional Low Point	-100.00–100.00 %	0.00
03-65	Positive AUI Voltage Mid Point	0.00–10.00 V	5.00
03-66	Positive AUI Voltage Proportional Mid Point	-100.00–100.00 %	50.00
03-67	Positive AUI Voltage High Point	0.00–10.00 V	10.00

Tab. 11-4: Analog Input/Output Parameters (3)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
03-68	Positive AUI Voltage Proportional High Point	-100.00–100.00 %	100.00
03-69	Negative AUI Voltage Low Point	0.00–10.00 V	0.00
03-70	Negative AUI Voltage Proportional Low Point	-100.00–100.00 %	0.00
03-71	Negative AUI Voltage Mid Point	0.00-10.00 V	-5.00
03-72	Negative AUI Voltage Proportional Mid Point	-100.00–100.00 %	-50.00
03-73	Negative AUI Voltage High Point	0.00-10.00 V	-10.00
03-74	Negative AUI Voltage Proportional High Point	-100.00–100.00 %	-100.00

Tab. 11-4: Analog Input/Output Parameters (4)

11.5 Multi-step speed parameters

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
04-00	1st Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-01	2nd Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-02	3rd Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-03	4th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-04	5th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-05	6th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-06	7th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-07	8th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-08	9th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-09	10th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-10	11th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-11	12th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-12	13th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-13	14th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-14	15th Step Speed Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0
04-15	Position command 1 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-16	Position command 1 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-17	Position command 2 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-18	Position command 2 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-19	Position command 3 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-20	Position command 3 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-21	Position command 4 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-22	Position command 4 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-23	Position command 5 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-24	Position command 5 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-25	Position command 6 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-26	Position command 6 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-27	Position command 7 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-28	Position command 7 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-29	Position command 8 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-30	Position command 8 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-31	Position command 9 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-32	Position command 9 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-33	Position command 10 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-34	Position command 10 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-35	Position command 11 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-36	Position command 11 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-37	Position command 12 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-38	Position command 12 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-39	Position command 13 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-40	Position command 13 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-41	Position command 14 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-42	Position command 14 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0

Tab. 11-5: Multi-step Speed Parameters (1)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
04-43	Position command 15 (rotation)	-30000–30000	0
04-44	Position command 15 (pulse)	-32767–32767	0
04-45 – 04-49	Reserve		
04-50	PLC buffer 0	0–65535	0
04-51	PLC buffer 1	0–65535	0
04-52	PLC buffer 2	0–65535	0
04-53	PLC buffer 3	0–65535	0
04-54	PLC buffer 4	0–65535	0
04-55	PLC buffer 5	0–65535	0
04-56	PLC buffer 6	0–65535	0
04-57	PLC buffer 7	0–65535	0
04-58	PLC buffer 8	0–65535	0
04-59	PLC buffer 9	0–65535	0
04-60	PLC buffer 10	0–65535	0
04-61	PLC buffer 11	0–65535	0
04-62	PLC buffer 12	0–65535	0
04-63	PLC buffer 13	0–65535	0
04-64	PLC buffer 14	0–65535	0
04-65	PLC buffer 15	0–65535	0
04-66	PLC buffer 16	0–65535	0
04-67	PLC buffer 17	0–65535	0
04-68	PLC buffer 18	0–65535	0
04-69	PLC buffer 19	0–65535	0

Tab. 11-5: Multi-step Speed Parameters (2)

11.6 Motor parameters

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
05-00	Motor Auto Tuning	0: No function 1: Rolling test for induction motor(IM) (Rs, Rr, Lm, Lx, no-load current) 2: Static test for induction motor(IM) 3: No function 4: Dynamic test for PM motor magnetic pole 5: Dynamic test for PM(SPM) motor 6: Rolling test for IM motor flux curve 12: FOC Sensorless inertia estimation 13: Stacic test for PM(IPM) motor	0
05-01	Full-load Current of Induction Motor 1(A)	10–120 % of drive's rated current	#.##
05-02	Rated Power of Induction Motor 1(kW)	0–655.35 kW	#.##
05-03	Rated Speed of Induction Motor 1 (rpm)	0–65535 1710 (60 Hz 4poles); 1410 (50 Hz 4 poles)	1710
05-04	Pole Number of Induction Motor 1	2–20	4
05-05	No-load Current of Induction Motor 1 (A)	0– Pr.05-01 factory setting	#.##
05-06	Stator Resistance (Rs) of Induction Motor 1	0–65.535 Ω	#.###
05-07	Rotor Resistance (Rr) of Induction Motor 1	0–65.535 Ω	#.###
05-08	Magnetizing Inductance (Lm) of Induction Motor 1	0–6553.5 mH	#.#
05-09	Stator Inductance (Lx) of Induction Motor 1	0–6553.5 mH	#.#
05-10 – 05-12	Reserved		
05-13	Full-load Current of Induction Motor 2 (A)	10–120 %	#.##
05-14	Rated Power of Induction Motor 2 (kW)	0–655.35 kW	#.##
05-15	Rated Speed of Induction Motor 2 (rpm)	0–65535 1710 (60 Hz 4 poles); 1410 (50 Hz 4 poles)	1710
05-16	Pole Number of Induction Motor 2	2–20	4
05-17	No-load Current of Induction Motor 2 (A)	0– Pr.05-01 factory setting	#.##
05-18	Stator Resistance (Rs) of Induction Motor 2	0–65.535 Ω	#.###
05-19	Rotor Resistance (Rr) of Induction Motor 2	0–65.535 Ω	#.###
05-20	Magnetizing Inductance (Lm) of Induction Motor 2	0–6553.5 mH	#.#
05-21	Stator Inductance (Lx) of Induction Motor 2	0–6553.5 mH	#.#
05-22	Induction Motor 1/ 2 Selection	1: motor 1 2: motor 2	1
05-23	Frequency for Y-connection/Δ-connection Switch of Induction Motor	0.00–600.00 Hz	60.00
05-24	Y-connection/Δ-connection Switch of Induction Motor	0: Disable 1: Enable	0
05-25	Delay Time for Y-connection/Δ-connection Switch of Induction Motor	0.000–60.000 sec.	0.200
05-26	Accumulative Watt-second of Motor in Low Word (W-sec)	Read only	#.#
05-27	Accumulative Watt-second of Motor in High Word (W-sec)	Read only	#.#

Tab. 11-6: Motor Parameters (1)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
05-28	Accumulative Watt-hour of Motor (W-Hour)	Read only	#.#
05-29	Accumulative Watt-hour of Motor in Low Word (KW-Hour)	Read only	#.#
05-30	Accumulative Watt-hour of Motor in High Word (KW-Hour)	Read only	#.#
05-31	Accumulative Motor Operation Time (Min)	00–1439	0
05-32	Accumulative Motor Operation Time (day)	00–65535	0
05-33	Induction Motor and Permanent Magnet Motor Selection	0: Induction Motor 1: SPM Permanent Magnet Motor 2: IPM Permanent Magnet Motor	0
05-34	Full-load current of Permanent Magnet Motor	0.00–655.35 Amps	0.00
05-35	Rated Power of Permanent Magnet Motor	0.00–655.35 kW	0.00
05-36	Rated speed of Permanent Magnet Motor	0–65535 rpm	2000
05-37	Pole number of Permanent Magnet Motor	0–65535	10
05-38	Inertia of Permanent Magnet Motor	0.0–6553.5 kg.cm^2	0.0
05-39	Stator Resistance of PM Motor	0.000–65.535 Ω	0.000
05-40	Permanent Magnet Motor Ld	0.00–655.35 mH	0.000
05-41	Permanent Magnet Motor Lq	0.00–655.35 mH	0.000
05-42	PG Offset angle of PM Motor	0.0–360.0°	0.0
05-43	Ke parameter of PM Motor	0–65535 (Unit: V/1000 rpm)	0

Tab. 11-6: Motor Parameters (2)

11.7 Protection parameters

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
✓	06-00	Low Voltage Level	230 V: Frame A to D: 150.0–220.0 VDC Frame E and frames above E: 190.0–220.0 V DC 460 V: Frame A to D: 300.0–440.0 Vdc Frame E and frames above E: 380.0–440.0 V DC	180.0 200.0 360.0 400.0
✓	06-01	Over-voltage Stall Prevention	0: Disabled 230 V: 0.0–450.0 Vdc 460 V: 0.0–900.0 Vdc	380.0 760.0
✓	06-02	Selection for Over-voltage Stall Prevention	0: Traditional over-voltage stall prevention 1: Smart over-voltage prevention	0
✓	06-03	Over-current Stall Prevention during Acceleration	Normal Load: 0–160 % (100 %: drive’s rated current) Heavy Load: 0–180 % (100 %: drive’s rated current)	120 150
✓	06-04	Over-current Stall Prevention during Operation	Normal Load: 0–160 % (100 %: drive’s rated current) Heavy Load: 0–180 % (100 %: drive’s rated current)	120 150
✓	06-05	Accel./Decel. Time Selection of Stall Prevention at Constant Speed	0: by current accel/decel time 1: by the 1st accel/decel time 2: by the 2nd accel/decel time 3: by the 3rd accel/decel time 4: by the 4th accel/decel time 5: by auto accel/decel	0
✓	06-06	Over-torque Detection Selection (OT1)	0: No function 1: Continue operation after Over-torque detection during constant speed operation 2: Stop after Over-torque detection during constant speed operation 3: Continue operation after Over-torque detection during RUN 4: Stop after Over-torque detection during RUN	0
✓	06-07	Over-torque Detection Level (OT1)	10–250 % (100 %: drive’s rated current)	120
✓	06-08	Over-torque Detection Time (OT1)	0.0–60.0 sec.	0.1
✓	06-09	Over-torque Detection Selection (OT2)	0: No function 1: Continue operation after Over-torque detection during constant speed operation 2: Stop after Over-torque detection during constant speed operation 3: Continue operation after Over-torque detection during RUN 4: Stop after Over-torque detection during RUN	0
✓	06-10	Over-torque Detection Level (OT2)	10–250 % (100 %: drive’s rated current)	120
✓	06-11	Over-torque Detection Time (OT2)	0.0–60.0 sec.	0.1
✓	06-12	Current Limit	0–250 % (100 %: drive’s rated current)	170
✓	06-13	Electronic Thermal Relay Selection (Motor 1)	0: Special motor (with external forced cooling) 1: Self-cooled motor (so motor with fan on the shaft) 2: Disable	2
✓	06-14	Electronic Thermal Characteristic for Motor 1	30.0–600.0 sec.	60.0
✓	06-15	Heat Sink Over-heat (OH) Warning	0.0–110.0 °C	105.0
✓	06-16	Stall Prevention Limit Level	0–100 % (Pr.06-03, Pr.06-04)	50
	06-17	Present Fault Record	0: No fault record	0
	06-18	Second Most Recent Fault Record	1: Over-current during acceleration (ocA)	0
	06-19	Third Most Recent Fault Record	2: Over-current during deceleration (ocd)	0

Tab. 11-7: Protection Parameters (1)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
06-20	Fourth Most Recent Fault Record	3: Over-current during constant speed (ocn)	0
06-21	Fifth Most Recent Fault Record	4: Ground fault (GFF)	0
06-22	Sixth Most Recent Fault Record	5: IGBT short-circuit (occ) 6: Over-current at stop (ocS) 7: Over-voltage during acceleration (ovA) 8: Over-voltage during deceleration (ovd) 9: Over-voltage during constant speed (ovn) 10: Over-voltage at stop (ovS) 11: Low-voltage during acceleration (LvA) 12: Low-voltage during deceleration (Lvd) 13: Low-voltage during constant speed (Lvn) 14: Stop mid-low voltage (LvS) 15: Phase loss protection (OrP) 16: IGBT over-heat (oH1) 17: Capacitance over-heat (oH2) 18: tH1o (TH1 open: IGBT over-heat protection 19: tH2o (TH2 open: capacitance over-heat 20: Reserved 21: Drive over-load (oL) 22: Electronics thermal relay 1 (EoL1) 23: Electronics thermal relay 2 (EoL2) 24: Motor overheat (oH3) (PTC) 25: Reserved 26: Over-torque 1 (ot1) 27: Over-torque 2 (ot2) 28: Low current (uC) 29: Home limit error (LMIT) 30: Memory write-in error (cF1) 31: Memory read-out error (cF2) 32: Reserved 33: U-phase current detection error (cd1) 34: V-phase current detection error (cd2) 35: W-phase current detection error (cd3) 36: Clamp current detection error (Hd0) 37: Over-current detection error (Hd1) 38: Over-voltage detection error (Hd2) 39: Ground current detection error (Hd3) 40: Auto tuning error (AUE) 41: PID feedback loss (AFE) 42: PG feedback error (PGF1) 43: PG feedback loss (PGF2) 44: PG feedback stall (PGF3) 45: PG slip error (PGF4) 46: PG ref loss (PGr1) 47: PG ref loss (PGr2) 48: Analog current input loss (ACE) 49: External fault input (EF) 50: Emergency stop (EF1)	0

Tab. 11-7: Protection Parameters (2)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
06-22	Sixth Most Recent Fault Record	51: External Base Block (bb) 52: Password error (PcodE) 53: Reserved 54: Communication error (CE1) 55: Communication error (CE2) 56: Communication error (CE3) 57: Communication error (CE4) 58: Communication Time-out (CE10) 59: PU Time-out (CP10) 60: Brake transistor error (bF) 61: Y-connection/?-connection switch error (ydc) 62: Decel. Energy Backup Error (dEb) 63: Slip error (oSL) 64: Electromagnet switch error (ryF) 65: PG Card Error (PGF5) 66-67: Reserved 68: Sensorless estimated speed have wrong 69: Sensorless estimated speed is over speed 70: Sensorless estimated speed deviated 71: Reserved 72: STO Loss 1 73: External safety gate S1 74–75: Reserved 76: STO 77: STO Loss 2 78: STO Loss 3 79: U phase over current (Uocc) 80: V phase over current (Vocc) 81: W phase over current (Wocc) 82: U phase output phase loss (OPHL) 83: V phase output phase loss (OPHL) 84: W phase output phase loss (OPHL) 85: PG-02U ABZ hardware disconnection 86: PG-02U UVW hardware disconnection 87–88: Reserved 89: Initial rotor position detection error 90: Inner PLC function is forced to stop 91–100: Reserved 101: CANopen® software disconnect1 (CGdE) 102: CANopen® software disconnect2 (CHbE) 103: CANopen® synchronous error (CSYE) 104: CANopen® hardware disconnect (CbFE) 105: CANopen® index setting error (CIdE) 106: CANopen® slave station number setting 107: CANopen memory failure® 108–110: Reserved 111: Internal communication overtime error(Inr- 112: PM sensorless shaft Lock error 113: Software OC	0

Tab. 11-7: Protection Parameters (3)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
06-23	Fault Output Option 1	0–65535 (refer to bit table for fault code)	0
06-24	Fault Output Option 2	0–65535 (refer to bit table for fault code)	0
06-25	Fault Output Option 3	0–65535 (refer to bit table for fault code)	0
06-26	Fault Output Option 4	0–65535 (refer to bit table for fault code)	0
06-27	Electronic Thermal Relay Selection 2 (Motor 2)	0: Special motor (with external forced cooling) 1: Self-cooled motor (so motor with fan on the shaft) 2: Disable	2
06-28	Electronic Thermal Characteristic for Motor 2	30.0–600.0 sec	60.0
06-29	PTC Detection Selection	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: No warning	0
06-30	PTC Level	0.0–100.0 %	50.0
06-31	Frequency Command for Malfunction	0.00–655.35 Hz	Read only
06-32	Output Frequency at Malfunction	0.00–655.35 Hz	Read only
06-33	Output Voltage at Malfunction	0.0–6553.5 V	Read only
06-34	DC Voltage at Malfunction	0.0–6553.5 V	Read only
06-35	Output Current at Malfunction	0.00–655.35 Amp	Read only
06-36	IGBT Temperature at Malfunction	-3276.7–3276.7 °C	Read only
06-37	Capacitance Temperature at Malfunction	-3276.7–3276.7 °C	Read only
06-38	Motor Speed in rpm at Malfunction	-3276.7–3276.7 rpm	Read only
06-39	Torque Command at Malfunction	-3276.7–3276.7	Read only
06-40	Status of Multi-function Input Terminal at Malfunction	0000h–FFFFh	Read only
06-41	Status of Multi-function Output Terminal at Malfunction	0000h–FFFFh	Read only
06-42	Drive Status at Malfunction	0000h–FFFFh	Read only
06-43	Reserved		
06-44	STO Latch Selection	0 : STO Latch 1 : STO No Latch	0
06-45	Treatment to Output Phase Loss Detection (OPHL)	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: No warning	3
06-46	Capture time at loss of output phase	0.000–65.535 sec	0.500
06-47	Current detection level of output phase loss	0.00–655.35 %	1.00
06-48	DC Brake Time of Output Phase Loss	0.000–65.535 sec	0.000
06-49	Reserved		
06-50	Time for Input Phase Loss Detection	0.00–600.00 sec	0.20
06-51	Reserved		
06-52	Ripple of Input Phase Loss	230 V Series: 0.0–160.0 Vdc 460 V Series: 0.0–320.0 Vdc	30.0 / 60.0
06-53	Treatment for the detected Input Phase Loss (OrP)	0: warn and ramp to stop 1: warn and coast to stop	0
06-54	Reserved		

Tab. 11-7: Protection Parameters (4)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
06-55	Derating Protection	0: constant rated current and limit carrier wave by load current and temperature 1: constant carrier frequency and limit load current by setting carrier wave 2: constant rated current(same as setting 0), but close current limit	0
06-56	PT100 Detected Level 1	0.000–10.000 V	5.000
06-57	PT100 Detected Level 2	0.000–10.000 V	7.000
06-58	PT100 Level 1 Frequency Protect	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
06-59	PT100 activation level delay time	0–6000 sec	60
06-60	Software Detection GFF Current Level	0.0–6553.5 %	60.0
06-61	Software Detection GFF Filter Time	0.00–655.35 sec	0.10
06-62	Reserved		
06-63	Fault Record 1 (Day)	0–65535 days	Read only
06-64	Fault Record 1 (Min)	0–1439 min	Read only
06-65	Fault Record 2 (Day)	0–65535 days	Read only
06-66	Fault Record 2 (Min)	0–1439 min	Read only
06-67	Fault Record 3 (Day)	0–65535 days	Read only
06-68	Fault Record 3 (Min)	0–1439 min	Read only
06-69	Fault Record 4 (Day)	0–65535 days	Read only
06-70	Fault Record 4 (Min)	0–1439 min	Read only
06-71	Low Current Setting Level	0.0 – 6553.5 %	0.0
06-72	Low Current Detection Time	0.00 – 655.35 sec	0.00
06-73	Treatment for low current	0 : No function 1 : Warn and coast to stop 2 : Warn and ramp to stop by 2nd deceleration time 3 : Warn and operation continue	0

Tab. 11-7: Protection Parameters (5)

11.8 Special parameters

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
07-00	Software Brake Level	230 V: 350.0–450.0 Vdc 460 V: 700.0–900.0 Vdc	380.0 760.0
07-01	DC Brake Current Level	0–100 %	0
07-02	DC Brake Time at RUN	0.0–60.0 sec.	0.0
07-03	DC Brake Time at Stop	0.0–60.0 sec.	0.0
07-04	DC Brake frequency at Stop	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
07-05	Voltage Incrasing Gain	1–200 %	100
07-06	Restart after Momentary Power Loss	0: Stop operation 1: Speed search for last frequency command 2: Speed search for minimum output frequency	0
07-07	Maximum Power Loss Duration	0.0–20.0 sec.	2.0
07-08	Base Block Time	0.1–5.0 sec.	0.5
07-09	Current Limit for Speed Search	20–200 %	100
07-10	Treatment to Restart After Fault	0: Stop operation 1: Speed search starts with current speed 2: Speed search starts with minimum output frequency	0
07-11	Number of Times of Auto Restart After Fault	0–10	0
07-12	Speed Search during Start-up	0: Disable 1: Speed search for maximum output frequency 2: Speed search for start-up motor frequency 3: Speed search for minimum output frequency	0
07-13	Decel. Time to Momentary Power Loss	0: Disable 1–6: Auto decel. time	0
07-14	DEB Return Time	0.0–25.0 sec	0.0
07-15	Dwell Time at Accel.	0.00–600.00 sec	0.00
07-16	Dwell Frequency at Accel.	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
07-17	Dwell Time at Decel.	0.00–600.00 sec	0.00
07-18	Dwell Frequency at Decel.	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
07-19	Fan Cooling Control	0: Fan always ON 1: 1 minute after the stops, fan will be OFF 2: When the runs, the fan is ON. When the stops, the fan is OFF 3: Fan turns ON when preliminary IGBT temperature (around 60°C) is attained. 4: Fan always OFF	0
07-20	Emergency Stop (EF) & Force to Stop Selection	0: Coast stop 1: By deceleration Time 1 2: By deceleration Time 2 3: By deceleration Time 3 4: By deceleration Time 4 5: System Deceleration 6: Automatic Deceleration	0
07-21	Auto Energy-saving Operation	0: Disable 1: Enable	0
07-22	Energy-saving Gain	10–1000 %	100
07-23	Auto Voltage Regulation (AVR) Function	0: Enable AVR 1: Disable AVR 2: Disable AVR during deceleration	0
07-24	Filter Time of Torque Compensation (V/F and SVC control mode)	0.001–10.000 sec	0.020

Tab. 11-8: Special Parameters (1)

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
⌿	07-25	Filter Time of Slip Compensation (V/F and SVC control mode)	0.001–10.000 sec	0.100
⌿	07-26	Torque Compensation Gain (V/F and SVC control mode)	0–10 (Default: 1 in SVC mode)	0
⌿	07-27	Slip Compensation Gain (V/F and SVC control mode)	0.00–10.00	0.00
⌿	07-28	Reserved		
⌿	07-29	Slip Deviation Level	0.0–100.0 %	0
⌿	07-30	Detection Time of Slip Deviation	0.0–10.0 sec	1.0
⌿	07-31	Over Slip Treatment	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: No warning	0
⌿	07-32	Motor Hunting Gain	0–10000	1000
⌿	07-33	Autorestart internal of Fault	0.0–6000.0 sec	60.0

Tab. 11-8: Special Parameters (2)

11.9 High-function PID parameters

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
⚡	08-00	Input Terminal for PID Feedback	0: No function 1: Negative PID feedback: on analogue input acc. To setting 5 of Pr. 03-00 to Pr.03-02. 2: Negative PID feedback from PG card (Pr.10-02, skip direction) 3: Negative PID feedback from PG card (Pr.10-02) 4: Positive PID feedback from external terminal AVI (Pr.03-00) 5: Positive PID feedback from PG card (Pr.10-02, skip direction) 6: Positive PID feedback from PG card (Pr.10-02) 7: Negative PID feeback from communication protocol 8: Positive PID feedback from communication protocol	0
⚡	08-01	Proportional Gain (P)	0.0–500.0 ~~%~~	1.0
⚡	08-02	Integral Time (I)	0.00–100.00 sec	1.00
⚡	08-03	Derivative Control (D)	0.00–1.00 sec	0.00
⚡	08-04	Upper Limit of Integral Control	0.0–100.0 %	100.0
⚡	08-05	PID Output Frequency Limit	0.0–110.0 %	100.0
⚡	08-06	PID feedback value by communication protocol	-200.00–200.00 %	0.00
⚡	08-07	PID Delay Time	0.0–35.0 sec	0.0
⚡	08-08	Feedback Signal Detection Time	0.0–3600.0 sec	0.0
⚡	08-09	Feedback Signal Fault Treatment	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: Warn and operate at last frequency	0
⚡	08-10	Sleep Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
⚡	08-11	Wake-up Frequency	0.00–600.00 Hz	0.00
⚡	08-12	Sleep Time	0.0–6000.0 sec	0.0
⚡	08-13	PID Deviation Level	1.0–50.0 %	10.0
⚡	08-14	PID Deviation Time	0.1–300.0 sec	5.0
⚡	08-15	Filter Time for PID Feedback	0.1–300.0 sec	5.0
⚡	08-16	PID Compensation Selection	0: Parameter setting 1: The PID interference value will be adjusted via the analog input.	0
⚡	08-17	PID Compensation	-100.0–+100.0 %	0
	08-18	Setting of Sleep Mode Function	0: Follow PID output command 1: Follow PID feedback signal	0
⚡	08-19	Wakeup Integral Limit	0.0–200.0 %	50.0
	08-20	PID Mode Selection	0: Serial connection 1: Parallel connection	0
	08-21	Enable PID to Change Operation Direction	0: Operation direction can be changed 1: Operation direction can not be changed	0
⚡	08-22	Wakeup Delay Time	0.00–600.00 Seconds	0.00
⚡	08-23	PID Control Flag	Bit 0 = 1, PID reverse running must follow the setting of Pr. 00-23. Bit 0 = 0, PID reverse running follow PID's calculated value.	0

Tab. 11-9: High-function PID Parameters

11.10 Communication parameters

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
↯	09-00	COM1 Communication Address	1–254	1
↯	09-01	COM1 Transmission Speed	4.8–115.2 Kbps	9.6
↯	09-02	COM1 Transmission Fault Treatment	0: Warn and continue operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: No warning and continue operation	3
↯	09-03	COM1 Time-out Detection	0.0–100.0 sec.	0.0
↯	09-04	COM1 Communication Protocol	1: 7N2 (ASCII) 2: 7E1 (ASCII) 3: 7O1 (ASCII) 4: 7E2 (ASCII) 5: 7O2 (ASCII) 6: 8N1 (ASCII) 7: 8N2 (ASCII) 8: 8E1 (ASCII) 9: 8O1 (ASCII) 10: 8E2 (ASCII) 11: 8O2 (ASCII) 12: 8N1 (RTU) 13: 8N2 (RTU) 14: 8E1 (RTU) 15: 8O1 (RTU) 16: 8E2 (RTU) 17: 8O2 (RTU)	1
	09-05 – 09-08	Reserved		
↯	09-09	Response Delay Time	0.0–200.0 ms	2.0
	09-10	Main Frequency of the Communication	0.00–600.00 Hz	60.00
↯	09-11	Block Transfer 1	0–65535	0
↯	09-12	Block Transfer 2	0–65535	0
↯	09-13	Block Transfer 3	0–65535	0
↯	09-14	Block Transfer 4	0–65535	0
↯	09-15	Block Transfer 5	0–65535	0
↯	09-16	Block Transfer 6	0–65535	0
↯	09-17	Block Transfer 7	0–65535	0
↯	09-18	Block Transfer 8	0–65535	0
↯	09-19	Block Transfer 9	0–65535	0
↯	09-20	Block Transfer 10	0–65535	0
↯	09-21	Block Transfer 11	0–65535	0
↯	09-22	Block Transfer 12	0–65535	0
↯	09-23	Block Transfer 13	0–65535	0
↯	09-24	Block Transfer 14	0–65535	0
↯	09-25	Block Transfer 15	0–65535	0
↯	09-26	Block Transfer 16	0–65535	0
	09-27 – 09-29	Reserved		
	09-30	Communication Decoding Method	0: Decoding Method 1 1: Decoding Method 2	1

Tab. 11-10: Communication Parameters (1)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
09-31	Internal Communication Protocol	0: Modbus 485 -1: Internal Communication Slave 1 -2: Internal Communication Slave 2 -3: Internal Communication Slave 3 -4: Internal Communication Slave 4 -5: Internal Communication Slave 5 -6: Internal Communication Slave 6 -7: Internal Communication Slave 7 -8: Internal Communication Slave 8 -9: Reserved -10: Internal Communication Master -11: Reserve -12: Internal PLC Control	0
09-32	Reserved		
09-33	PLC command force to 0	0–65535	0
09-34	Reserved		
09-35	PLC Address	1–254	2
09-36	CANopen® Slave Address	0: Disable 1–127	0
09-37	CANopen® Speed	0: 1 M 1: 500 k 2: 250 k 3: 125 k 4: 100k (Delta only) 5: 50 k	0
09-38	CANopen® Frequency Gain	1.00–2.00	1.00
09-39	CANopen® Warning Record	bit 0: CANopen Guarding Time out bit 1: CANopen Heartbeat Time out bit 2: CANopen SYNC Time out bit 3: CANopen SDO Time out bit 4: CANopen SDO buffer overflow bit 5: Can Bus Off bit 6: Error protocol of CANopen bit 8: The setting values of CANopen indexs are fail bit 9: The setting value of CANopen address is fail bit10: The checksum value of CANopen indexs is fail	0
09-40	CANopen® Decoding Method	0: Delta defined decoding method 1: CANopen DS402 Standard	1
09-41	CANopen® Communication Status	0: Node Reset State 1: Com Reset State 2: Boot up State 3: Pre Operation State 4: Operation State 5: Stop State	Read Only
09-42	CANopen® Control Status	0: Not ready for use state 1: Inhibit start state 2: Ready to switch on state 3: Switched on state 4: Enable operation state 7: Quick Stop Active state 13: Err Reaction Activation state 14: Error state	Read Only
09-43	Reset CANopen® Index	bit0: reset address 20XX to 0. bit1: reset address 264X to 0 bit2: reset address 26AX to 0 bit3: reset address 60XX to 0	65535
09-44	Reserved		
09-45	CANopen® Master Function	0: Disable 1: Enable	0

Tab. 11-10: Communication Parameters (2)

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
09-46	CANopen® Master Address	1–127	100
09-47 – 09-59	Reserved		
09-60	Identifications for Communication Card	0: No communication card 1: DeviceNet Slave 2: Profibus-DP Slave 3: CANopen® Slave/Master 4: Modbus-TCP Slave 5: Ethernet/IP Slave 6–8: Reserved	##
09-61	Firmware Version of Communication Card	Read only	##
09-62	Product Code	Read only	##
09-63	Error Code	Read only	##
09-64 – 09-69	Reserved		
09-70	Address of Communication Card	DeviceNet: 0-63 Profibus-DP: 1-125	1
09-71	Setting of DeviceNet Speed	Standard DeviceNet: 0: 125 Kbps 1: 250 Kbps 2: 500 Kbps Non standard DeviceNet: (Delta Only) 0: 10 Kbps 1: 20 Kbps 2: 50 Kbps 3: 100 Kbps 4: 125 Kbps 5: 250 Kbps 6: 500 Kbps 7: 800 Kbps 8: 1 Mbps	2
09-72	Other Setting of DeviceNet Speed	0: Disable In this mode, baud rate can only be 0,1,2,3 in standard DeviceNet speed 1: Enable In this mode, the baud rate of DeviceNet can be same as CANopen® (0-8).	0
09-73	Reserved		
09-74	Reserved		
09-75	IP Configuration of the Communication Card	0: Static IP 1: Dynamic IP (DHCP)	0
09-76	IP Address 1 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
09-77	IP Address 2 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
09-78	IP Address 3 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
09-79	IP Address 4 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
09-80	Address Mask 1 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
09-81	Address Mask 2 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
09-82	Address Mask 3 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
09-83	Address Mask 4 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
09-84	Getway Address 1 of the Communication Card	0–255	0

Tab. 11-10: Communication Parameters (3)

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
〃	09-85	Getway Address 2 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
〃	09-86	Getway Address 3 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
〃	09-87	Getway Address 4 of the Communication Card	0–255	0
〃	09-88	Password for Communication Card (Low word)	0–255	0
〃	09-89	Password for Communication Card (High word)	0–255	0
〃	09-90	Reset Communication Card	0: No function 1: Reset, return to factory setting	0
〃	09-91	Additional Setting for Communication Card	Bit 0: Enable IP filter Bit 1: Enable to write internet parameters (1bit). This bit will change to disable when it finishes saving the internet parameter updates. Bit 2: Enable login password (1bit). When enter login password, this bit will be enabled. After updating the parameters of communication card, this bit will change to disable.	0
	09-92	Status of Communication Card	Bit 0: password enable When the communication card is set with password, this bit is enabled. When the password is clear, this bit is disabled.	0

Tab. 11-10: Communication Parameters (4)

11.11 Speed feedback control parameters

NOTE IM: Induction Motor; PM: Permanent Magnet Motor

Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
10-00	Encoder Type Selection	0: Disable 1: ABZ 2: ABZ (Delta Encoder for Delta servo motor) 3: Resolver 4: ABZ/UVW 5: MI8 single phase pulse input	0
10-01	Encoder Pulse	1–20000	600
10-02	Encoder Input Type Setting	0: Disable 1: Phase A leads in a forward run command and phase B leads in a reverse run command 2: Phase B leads in a forward run command and phase A leads in a reverse run command 3: Phase A is a pulse input and phase B is a direction input. (low input=reverse direction, high input=forward direction) 4: Phase A is a pulse input and phase B is a direction input. (low input=forward direction, high input=reverse direction) 5: Single-phase input	0
10-03	Output Setting for Frequency Division (denominator)	1–255	1
10-04	Electrical Gear at Load Side A1	1–65535	100
10-05	Electrical Gear at Motor Side B1	1–65535	100
10-06	Electrical Gear at Load Side A2	1–65535	100
10-07	Electrical Gear at Motor Side B2	1–65535	100
10-08	Treatment for Encoder/Speed Observer Feedback Fault	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop	2
10-09	Detection Time of Encoder/Speed Observer Feedback Fault	0.0–10.0 sec 0: No function	1.0
10-10	Encoder/Speed Observer Stall Level	0–120 % 0: No function	115
10-11	Detection Time of Encoder/Speed Observer Stall	0.0 – 2.0 sec	0.1
10-12	Treatment for Encoder/Speed Observer Stall	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop	2
10-13	Encoder/Speed Observer Slip Range	0–50 % (0: disable)	50
10-14	Detection Time of Encoder/Speed Observer Slip	0.0–10.0 sec	0.5
10-15	Treatment for Encoder/Speed Observer Stall and Slip Error	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop	2

Tab. 11-11: Speed Feedback Control Parameters (1)

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
↯	10-16	Pulse Input Type Setting	0: Disable 1: Phase A leads in a forward run command and phase B leads in a reverse run command 2: Phase B leads in a forward run command and phase A leads in a reverse run command 3: Phase A is a pulse input and phase B is a direction input. (L=reverse direction, H=forward direction). 4: Phase A is a pulse input and phase B is a direction input. (L=forward direction, H=reverse direction).	0
↯	10-17	Electrical Gear A	1–65535	100
↯	10-18	Electrical Gear B	1–65535	100
↯	10-19	Positioning for Encoder Position	0–65535 pulse	0
↯	10-20	Range for Encoder Position Attained	0–65535 pulse	10
↯	10-21	Filter Time (PG2)	0–65.535 sec	0.100
	10-22	Speed Mode (PG2)	0: Electronic Frequency 1: Mechanical Frequency (base on pole pair)	0
	10-23	Reserved		
↯	10-24	FOC&TQC Function Control	0–65535	0
↯	10-25	FOC Bandwidth of Speed Observer	1.0–100.0 Hz	40.0
↯	10-26	FOC Minimum Stator Frequency	0.0–10.0 % fN	2.0
↯	10-27	FOC Low-pass Filter Time Constant	1–1000 ms	50
↯	10-28	FOC Excitation Current Rise Time	33–100 % Tr	100
↯	10-29	Top Limit of Frequency Deviation	0.00–100.00 Hz	20.00
	10-30	Resolver Pole Pair	1–50	1
↯	10-31	I/F Mode, current command	0–150 % Irated (Rated current % of motor)	40
↯	10-32	PM Sensorless Obeserver Bandwith for High Speed Zone	0.00–600.00 Hz	5.00
	10-33	Reserved		
↯	10-34	PM Sensorless Observer Low-pass Filter Gain	0.00–655.35 Hz	1.00
↯	10-35	AMR (Kp)	0.00–3.00	2.00
↯	10-36	AMR (Ki)	0.00–3.00	0.20
↯	10-37	PM Sensorless Control Word	0000–FFFFh	0000
	10-38	Reserved		
↯	10-39	Frequency when switch from I/F Mode to PM sensorless mode.	0.00–600.00 Hz	20.00
↯	10-40	Frequency when switch from PM sensorless observer mode to V/F mode.	0.00–600.00 Hz	20.00
↯	10-41	I/F mode, low pass-filter time	0.0–6.0 sec	0.2
↯	10-42	Initial Angle Detection Time	0–50 ms	5
	10-43	PG card version	0–655.35	Read only
	10-44 – 10-48	Reserved		
	10-49	Zero voltage time while start up	00.000–60.000 sec	00.000
	10-50	Reverse angle limit (Electrical angle)	0.00–30.00 degree	10.00
	10-51	Injection Frequency	0–2000 Hz	500
	10-52	Injection Magnitude	0.0–200.0 V	15/30

Tab. 11-11: Speed Feedback Control Parameters (2)

11.12 Advanced parameters

NOTE IM: Induction Motor; PM: Permanent Magnet Motor

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
	11-00	System Control	bit 0: Auto tuning for ASR and APR bit 1: Inertia estimate (only for FOCPG mode) bit 2: Zero servo bit 3: Dead Time compensation closed Bit 7: Selection to save or not save the frequency Bit 8: Maximum speed of point to point position control	0
	11-01	Per Unit of System Inertia	1–65535 (256=1PU)	400
✎	11-02	ASR1/ASR2 Switch Frequency	5.00–600.00 Hz	7.00
✎	11-03	ASR1 Low-speed Bandwidth	1–40 Hz (IM)/1–100 Hz (PM)	10
✎	11-04	ASR2 High-speed Bandwidth	1–40 Hz (IM)/1–100 Hz (PM)	10
✎	11-05	Zero-speed Bandwidth	1–40 Hz (IM)/1–100 Hz (PM)	10
✎	11-06	ASR Control (P) 1	0–40 Hz (IM)/1–100 Hz (PM)	10
✎	11-07	ASR Control (I) 1	0.000–10.000 sec	0.100
✎	11-08	ASR Control (P) 2	0–40 Hz (IM)/0–100 Hz (PM)	10
✎	11-09	ASR Control (I) 2	0.000–10.000 sec	0.100
✎	11-10	P Gain of Zero Speed	0–40 Hz (IM)/0–100 Hz (PM)	10
✎	11-11	I Gain of Zero Speed	0.000–10.000 sec	0.100
✎	11-12	Gain for ASR Speed Feed Forward	0–150 %	0
✎	11-13	PDFF Gain	0–200 %	30
✎	11-14	Low-pass Filter Time of ASR Output	0.000–0.350 sec	0.008
✎	11-15	Notch Filter Depth	0–20 db	0
✎	11-16	Notch Filter Frequency	0.00–200.00 Hz	0.0
✎	11-17	Forward Motor Torque Limit	0–500 %	500
✎	11-18	Forward Regenerative Torque Limit	0–500 %	500
✎	11-19	Reverse Motor Torque Limit	0–500 %	500
✎	11-20	Reverse Regenerative Torque Limit	0–500 %	500
✎	11-21	Gain Value of Flux Weakening Curve for Motor 1	0–200 %	90
✎	11-22	Gain Value of Flux Weakening Curve for Motor 2	0–200 %	90
✎	11-23	Speed Response of Flux Weakening Area	0–150 %	65
✎	11-24	APR Gain	0.00–40.00 Hz (IM)/0–100.00 Hz (PM)	10.00
✎	11-25	Gain Value of APR Feed Forward	0–100	30
✎	11-26	APR Curve Time	0.00–655.35 sec	3.00
✎	11-27	Max. Torque Command	0–500 %	100
✎	11-28	Source of Torque Offset	0: No function 1: Analog signal input (Pr.03-00–03-02) 2: Pr.11-29 3: Control by external terminal (Pr.11-30–11-32)	0
✎	11-29	Torque Offset Setting	-100–100 %	0.0

Tab. 11-12: Advanced Parameters (1)

	Pr.	Explanation	Settings	Factory Setting
✔	11-30	High Torque Offset	-100–100 %	30.0
✔	11-31	Middle Torque Offset	-100–100 %	20.0
✔	11-32	Low Torque Offset	-100–100 %	10.0
✔	11-33	Source of Torque Command	0: Digital keypad 1: RS-485 communication (Pr.11-34) 2: Analog input (Pr.03-00) 3: CANopen® 4: Reserved 5: Communication extension card	0
✔	11-34	Torque Command	-100.0–+100.0 % (Pr.11-27*11-34)	0
✔	11-35	Filter Time of Torque Command	0.000–1.000 sec	0.000
	11-36	Speed Limit Selection	0: Set by Pr.11-37 (Forward speed limit) and Pr.11-38 (Reverse speed limit) 1: Set by Pr.11-37,11-38 and Pr.00-20 (Source of Master Frequency Command) 2: Set by Pr.00-20 (Source of Master Frequency Command).	0
✔	11-37	Forward Speed Limit (torque mode)	0–120 %	10
✔	11-38	Reverse Speed Limit (torque mode)	0–120 %	10
	11-39	Zero Torque Command Mode	0: Torque mode 1: Speed mode	0
✔	11-40	Command Source of Point-to-Point Position Control	0: External terminal 1: Reserved 2: RS485 3: CAN 4: PLC 5: Communication card	0
	11-41	Reserved		
✔	11-42	System Control Flags	0000–FFFFh	0000
✔	11-43	Max. Frequency of Point- to-Point Position Control	0.00–600.00 Hz	10.00
✔	11-44	Accel. Time of Point-to Point Position Control	0.00–655.35 sec	1.00
✔	11-45	Decel. Time of Point-to Point Position Control	0.00–655.35 sec	3.00

Tab. 11-12: Advanced Parameters (2)

12 Description of Parameter Settings

12.1 Drive parameters

NOTE ✓ This parameter can be set during operation.

00-00 Identity code of the AC motor drive

Factory setting: #.#

Settings	Read only

00-01 Display AC motor drive rated current

Factory setting: #.#

Settings	Read only

- Pr. 00-00 displays the identity code of the AC motor drive. Using the following table to check if Pr. 00-01 setting is the rated current of the AC motor drive. Pr. 00-01 corresponds to the identity code Pr. 00-00.
- The factory setting is the rated current for normal duty. Please set Pr. 00-16 to 1 to display the rated current for the heavy duty.

230 V series										
Frame	A				B			C		
kW	0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	5.5	7.5	11	15	18.5	22
HP	1.0	2.0	3.0	5.0	7.5	10	15	20	25	30
Pr. 00-00	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22
Rated current for heavy duty (A)	4.8	7.1	10	16	24	31	47	62	71	86
Rated current for normal duty (A)	5	8	11	17	25	33	49	65	75	90

Frame	D			E		F
kW	30	37	45	50	75	90
HP	40	50	60	75	100	125
Pr. 00-00	24	26	28	30	32	34
Rated current for heavy duty (A)	114	139	171	204	242	329
Rated current for normal duty (A)	120	146	180	215	255	346

Tab. 12-1: Rated current of the frequency inverters (200 V series)

460 V series												
Frame	A						B			C		
kW	0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	4.0	5.5	7. 5	11	15	18.5	22	30
HP	1	2	3	5	5	7.5	10	15	20	25	30	40
Pr. 00-00	5	7	9	11	93	13	15	17	19	21	23	25
Rated current for heavy duty (A)	2.9	3.8	5.7	8.1	9.5	11	17	23	30	36	43	57
Rated current for normal duty (A)	3.0	4.0	6.0	9.0	10.5	12	18	24	32	38	45	60

Frame	D0		D		E		F		G		H		
kW	37	45	55	75	90	110	132	160	185	220	280	315	355
HP	50	60	75	100	125	150	175	215	250	300	375	425	475
Pr. 00-00	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47	49	51
Rated current for heavy duty (A)	69	86	105	143	171	209	247	295	352	437	523	585	649
Rated current for normal duty (A)	73	91	110	150	180	220	260	310	370	460	550	616	683

Tab. 12-2:Rated current of the frequency inverters (400 V series)

00-02 Parameter reset

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: No Function
	1: Write protection for parameters
	5: Reset KWH display to 0
	6: Reset PLC (including CANopen master Index)
	7: Reset CANopen Index (Slave)
	8: Reserve
	9: All parameters are reset to factory settings (base frequency is 50 Hz)
	10: All parameters are reset to factory settings (base frequency is 60 Hz)

- When it is set to 1, all parameters are read only except Pr. 00-02–00-08 and it can be used with password setting for password protection. It needs to set Pr. 00-02 to 0 before changing other parameter settings.
- When it is set to 9 or 10: all parameters are reset to factory settings. If password is set in Pr. 00-08, input the password set in Pr. 00-07 to reset to factory settings.
- When it is set to 5, KWH display value can be reset to 0 even when the drive is operating. Pr. 05-26, 05-27, 05-28, 05-29, 05-30 reset to 0.
- When it is set to 6: clear internal PLC program (includes the related settings of PLC internal CANopen master)
- When it is set to 7: reset the related settings of CANopen slave.
- When it is set to 6, 7, 9, 10, please re-power the motor drive after setting.

00-03 ⌿ Start-up display selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Display the frequency command (F)
	1: Display the actual output frequency (H)
	2: Display user define (U)
	3: Output current (A)

- This parameter determines the start-up display page after power is applied to the drive. User defined choice display according to the setting in Pr. 00-04.

00-04 ⌿ Content of multi-function display

Factory setting: 3

Settings	0: Display output current (A) (Unit: Amps)
	1: Display counter value (c) (Unit: CNT)
	2: Display actual output frequency (H.) (Unit: Hz)
	3: Display DC-BUS voltage (v) (Unit: Vdc)
	4: Display output voltage (E) (Unit: Vac)
	5: Display output power angle (n) (Unit: deg)
	6: Display output power in kW (P) (Unit: Kw)
	7: Display actual motor speed rpm (r = 00: positive speed; -00 negative speed) (Unit: rpm)
	8: Display estimate output torque % (t = 00: positive torque; -00 negative torque) (t) ⑤(Unit: %)
	9: Display PG feedback (G) (refer to Note 1) (Unit: PLS)
	10: Display PID feedback (b) (Unit: %)
	11: Display AVI in % (1.), 0–10 V/4-20 mA/0-20 mA corresponds to 0–100 % (Refer to Note 2) (Unit: %)
	12: Display ACI in % (2.), 4–20 mA/0–10 V/0-20 mA corresponds to 0–100 % (Refer to Note 2) (Unit: %)
	13: Display AUI in % (3.), -10 V–10 V corresponds to -100–100 % (Refer to Note 2) (Unit: %)
	14: Display the temperature of IGBT (i.) (Unit: °C)
	15: Display the temperature of capacitance (c.) (Unit: °C)
	16: The status of digital input (ON/OFF) refer to Pr. 02-12 (i) (Refer to Note 3)
	17: Display digital output status ON/OFF (Pr. 02-18) (o) (refer to Note 4)
	18: Display the multi-step speed that is executing (S)
	19: The corresponding CPU pin status of digital input (d) (refer to Note 3)
	20: The corresponding CPU pin status of digital output (0.) (refer to Note 4)
	21: Actual motor position (PG1 of PG card). When the motor direction changes or the drive stops, the counter will start from 0 (display value restarts counting from 0) (Max. 65535) (P.)
	22: Pulse input frequency (PG2 of PG card) (S.)
	23: Pulse input position (PG2 of PG card) (max. 65535) (q.)
	24: Position command tracing error (E.)
	25: Overload counting (0.00–100.00 %) (o.) (Refer to Note 6) (Unit: %)
	26: GFF Ground Fault (G.) (Unit: %)
	27: DC Bus voltage ripple (r.) (Unit: %)
	28: Display PLC register D1043 data (C) display in hexadecimal
	29: Display PM motor pole section (EMC-PG01U application) (4.)

30: Display output of user defined (U)
31: H page x 00-05 Display user Gain(K)
32: Number of actual motor revolution during operation (PG card plug in and Z phase signal input) (Z.)
33: Motor actual position during operation (when PG card is connected) (q)
34: Operation speed of fan (F.) (Unit: %)
35: Control Mode display: 0= Speed control mode (SPD), 1= torque control mode (TQR) (t.)
36: Present operating carrier frequency of drive (Hz) (J.)
37: Reserved
38: Display drive status (6.) (Refer to Note 7)
39: Display of estimated output torque, positive and negative (t = 00: positive torque; -00 negative torque) (C.) (unit: Nm)
40: Torque command (L.) (Unit: %)
41: KWH display (J) (Unit: KWH)
42: PID reference (h.) (Unit: %)
43: PID offset (o.) (Unit: %)
44: PID output frequency (b.) (Unit: Hz)
45: Hardware ID

■ This parameter determines the start-up display page after power is applied to the drive. User defined choice display according to the setting in Pr. 00-04.

① When Pr. 10-01 is set to 1000 and Pr. 10-02 is set to 1/2, the display range for PG feedback will be from 0 to 4000. When Pr. 10-01 is set to 1000 and Pr. 10-02 is set to 3/4/5, the display range for PG feedback will be from 0 to 1000. Home position: If it has Z phase, Z phase will be regarded as home position. Otherwise, home position will be the encoder start up position.

② It can display negative values when setting analog input bias (Pr. 03-03–03-10).
Example: assume that AVI input voltage is 0V, Pr. 03-03 is 10.0 % and Pr. 03-07 is 4 (Serve bias as the center).

③ Example: If REV, MI1 and MI6 are ON, the following table shows the status of the terminals.
0: OFF, 1: ON

Terminal	MI15	MI14	MI13	MI12	MI11	MI10	MI8	MI7	MI6	MI5	MI4	MI3	MI2	MI1	REV	FWD
Status	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0

MI10–MI15 are the terminals for extension cards (Pr. 02-26–02-31).
If REV, MI1 and MI6 are ON, the value is 0000 0000 1000 0110 in binary and 0086h in HEX. When Pr. 00-04 is set to "16" or "19", it will display "0086h" with LED U is ON on the keypad KPC-CE01. The setting 16 is the status of digital input by Pr. 02-12 setting and the setting 19 is the corresponding CPU pin status of digital input, the FWD/REV action and the three-wire MI are not controlled by Pr. 02-12. User can set to 16 to monitor digital input status and then set to 19 to check if the wire is normal.

④ Assume that RY1: Pr. 02-13 is set to 9 (Drive ready). After applying the power to the , if there is no other abnormal status, the contact will be ON. The display status will be shown as follows.
N.O. switch status:

Terminal	Reserved			Reserved			Reserved					MO2	MO1	Re-served	RY2	RY1
Status	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Assume that RY1: Pr. 02-13 is set to 9 (Drive ready). After applying the power to the AC motor drive, if there is no other abnormal status, the contact will be ON. The display status will be shown as follows.
N.O. switch statusAt the meanwhile, if Pr. 00-04 is set to 17 or 20, it will display in hexadecimal “0001h” with LED U is ON on the keypad. The setting 17 is the status of digital output by Pr. 02-18 setting and the setting 20 is the corresponding CPU pin status of digital output. User can set 17 to monitor the digital output status and then set to 20 to check if the wire is normal.

⑤ Setting 8: 100 % means the motor rated torque. Motor rated torque = (motor rated power x60/2π)/motor rated speed

⑥ If Pr. 00-04 = 25, when display value reaches 100.00 %, the drive will show “oL” as an overload warning.

⑦ If Pr. 00-04 = 38,
Bit 0: The drive is running forward.
Bit 1: The drive is running backward.
Bit 2: The drive is ready.
Bit 3: Errors occurred on the drive.
Bit 4: The drive is running.
Bit 5: Warnings on the drive.

00-05 ⌿ Coefficient gain in actual output frequency

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–160.00

■ This parameter is to set coefficient gain in actual output frequency. Set Pr. 00-04= 31 to display the calculation result on the screen (calculation = output frequency * Pr. 00-05).

00-06 Software version

Factory setting: #.#

Settings	Read only

00-07 ⌿ Parameter protection password Input

Factory setting: 0

Settings	1–9998, 10000–65535
Display	0–3 (the times of password attempts)

■ This parameter allows user to enter their password (which is set in Pr. 00-08) to unlock the parameter protection and to make changes to the parameter.

■ Pr. 00-07 and Pr. 00-08 are used to prevent the personal mis-operation.

■ When the user have forgotten the password, clear the setting by input 9999 and press ENTER key, then input 9999 again and press Enter within 10 seconds. After decoding, all the settings will return to factory setting.

00-08 Parameter protection password setting

Factory setting: 0

Settings	1–9998, 10000–65535
	0: No password protection/password is entered correctly (Pr. 00-07)
	1: Password has been set

- To set a password to protect your parameter settings. In the first time, password can be set directly. After setting, the value of 00-08 will become 1, which means password protection is activated. When the password is set, if any parameter setting needs to be changed, be sure to enter correct password in 00-07, and then the password will be inactivated temporarily with 00-08 changing to 0. At this time, parameters setting can be changed. After setting, re-power the motor drive, and password will be activated again.
- To cancel the password protection, after entering correct password in 00-07, 00-08 also needs to be set as 0 again to inactive password protection permanently. If not, password protection will be active after motor drive re-power.
- The keypad copy function will work normally only when the password protection is inactivated temporarily or permanently, and password set in 00-08 will not be copied to keypad. So when copying parameters from keypad to motor drive, the password need to be set manually again in the motor drive to active password protection.

Password Decode Flow Chart

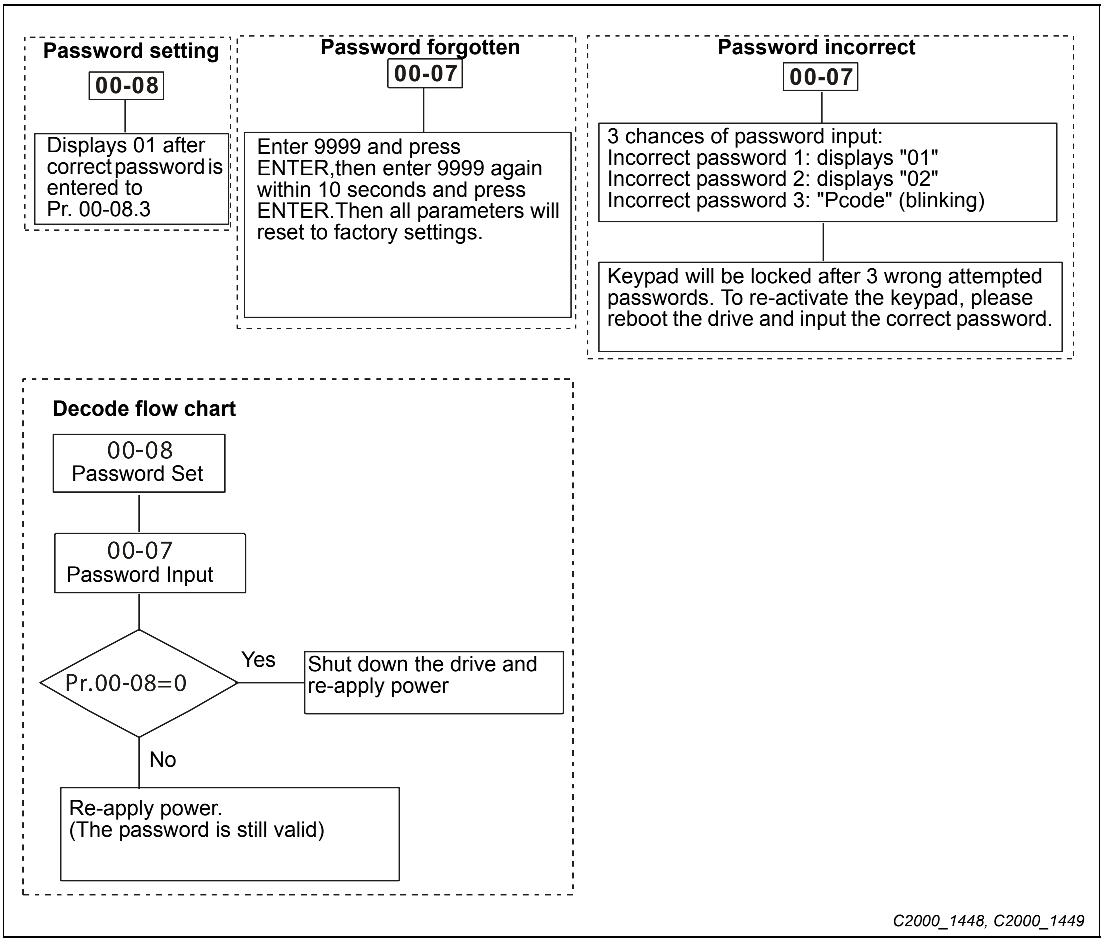


Fig. 12-1: Password decode flow chart

00-09 Reserved

00-10 ⌿ Control mode

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Speed mode
	1: Point-to-point position control
	2: Torque mode
	3: Home mode

- This parameter determines the control mode of C2000 series AC motor drive.

00-11 Control of Speed Mode

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: VF (IM V/f control)
	1: VFPG (IM V/f control+ encoder)
	2: SVC (IM sensorless vector control)
	3: FOCPG (IM FOC vector control+ encoder)
	4: FOCPG (PM FOC vector control + encoder)
	5: FOC Sensorless (IM field oriented sensorless vector control)
	6: PM Sensorless (PM field oriented sensorless vector control)
	7: IPM Sensorless (Interior PM field oriented sensorless vector control)

- This parameter determines the control method of the AC motor drive:
- 0: (IM V/f control): user can design proportion of V/f as required and can control multiple motors simultaneously.
- 1: (IM V/f control + encoder): user can use optional PG card with encoder for the closed-loop speed control.
- 2: (IM Sensorless vector control): get the optimal control by the auto-tuning of motor parameters.
- 3: (IM FOC vector control+ encoder): besides torque increases, the speed control will be more accurate (1:1000).
- 4: (PM FOC vector control + encoder): besides torque increases, the speed control will be more accurate (1:1000).
- 5: FOC Sensorless: IM field oriented sensorless vector control
- 6: PM Sensorless (PM field oriented sensorless vector control)
- 7: IPM Sensorless (Interior PM field oriented sensorless vector control)

■ When 00-10 = 0, and set Pr. 00-11 to 0, the V/F control diagram is shown as follows:

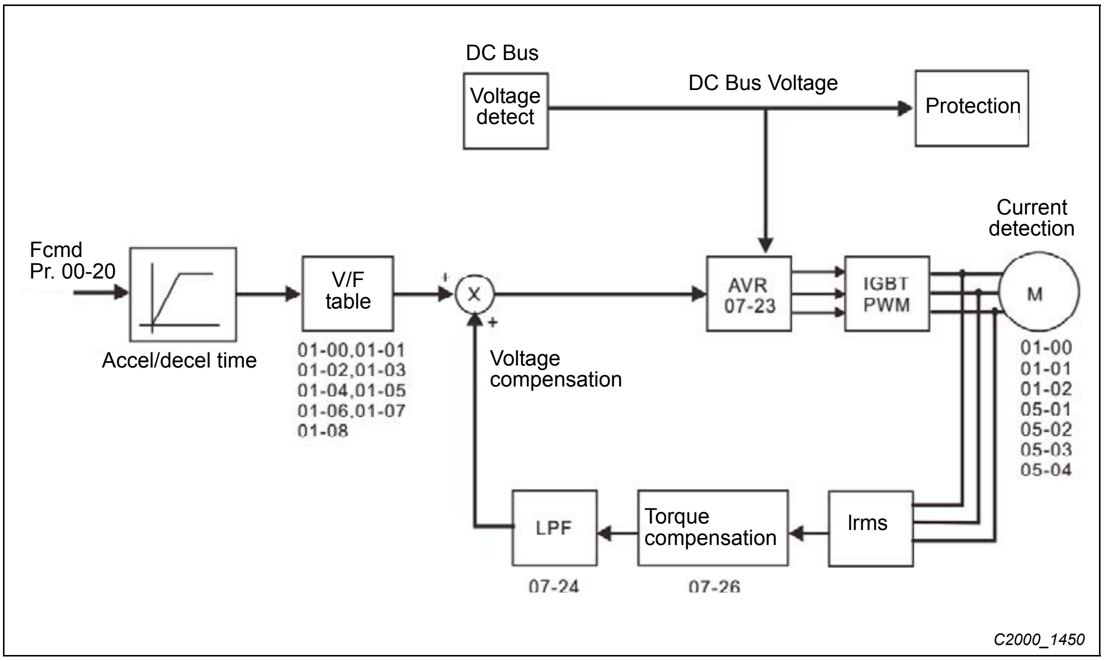


Fig. 12-2: V/F control diagramm

■ When 00-10 = 0, and set Pr. 00-11 to 1, the V/F control + encoder diagram is shown as follows:

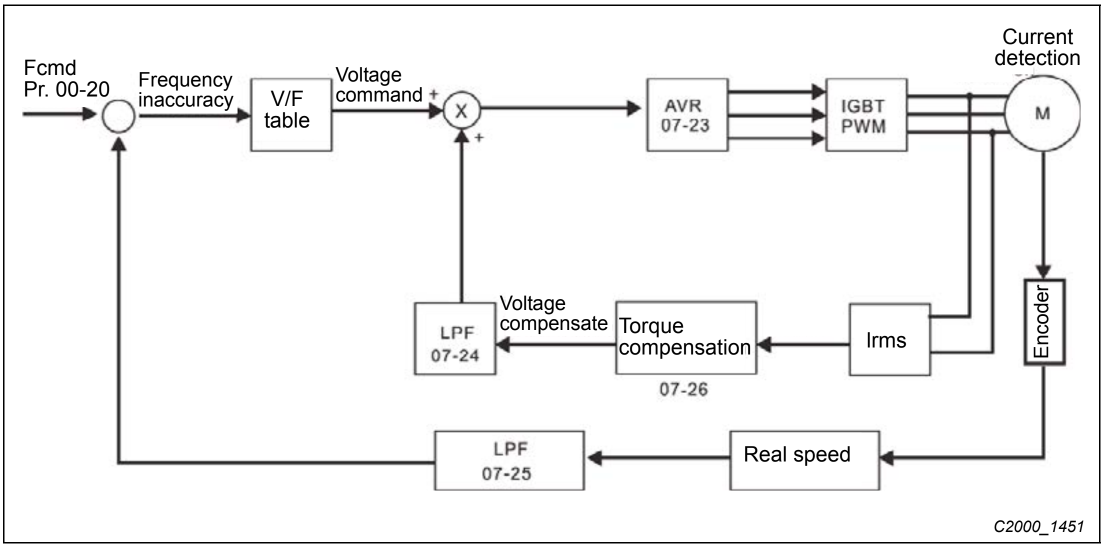


Fig. 12-3: V/F control and encoder diagram

■ When 00-10 = 0, and set Pr. 00-11 to 2, the sensorless vector control diagram is shown as follows:

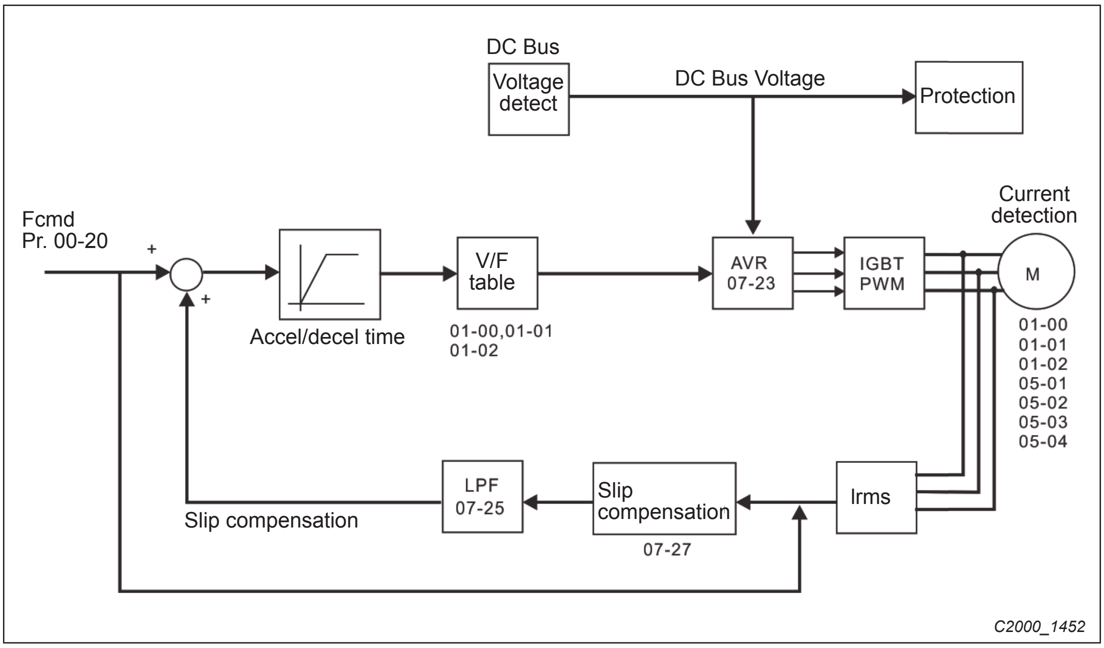


Fig. 12-4: Sensorless vector control diagramm

■ When 00-10 = 0, and set Pr. 00-11 to 3, the IM FOCPG control diagram is shown as follows:

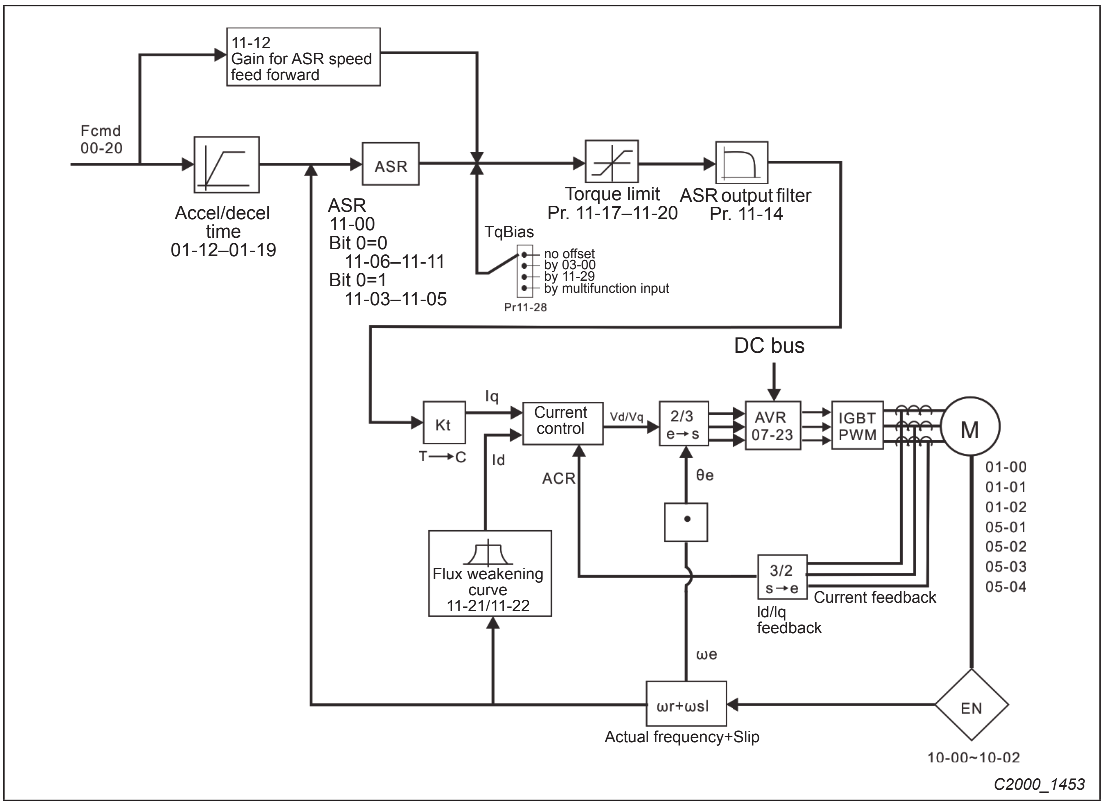


Fig. 12-5: IM FOCPG control diagram

■ When 00-10 = 0, and set Pr. 00-11 to 4, the PM FOCPG control diagram is shown as follows:

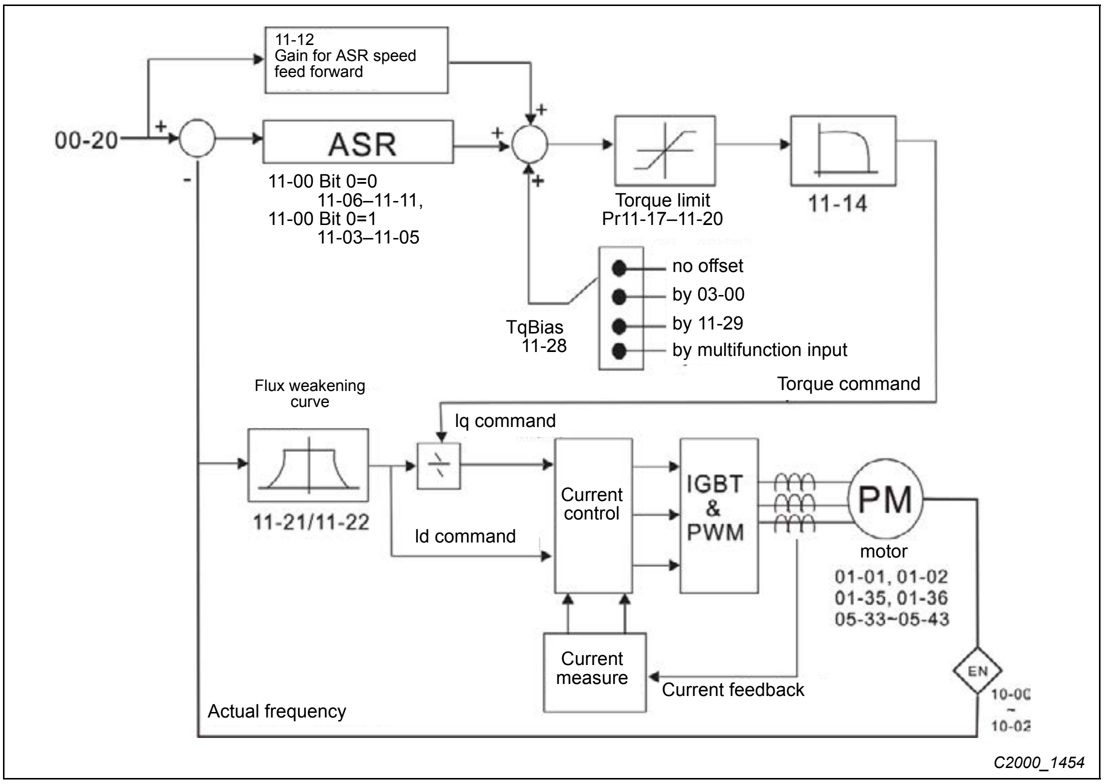


Fig. 12-6: PM FOCPG control diagram

■ When 00-10 = 0, and set Pr. 00-11 to 5, FOC sensorless (IM) control diagram is shown as follows:

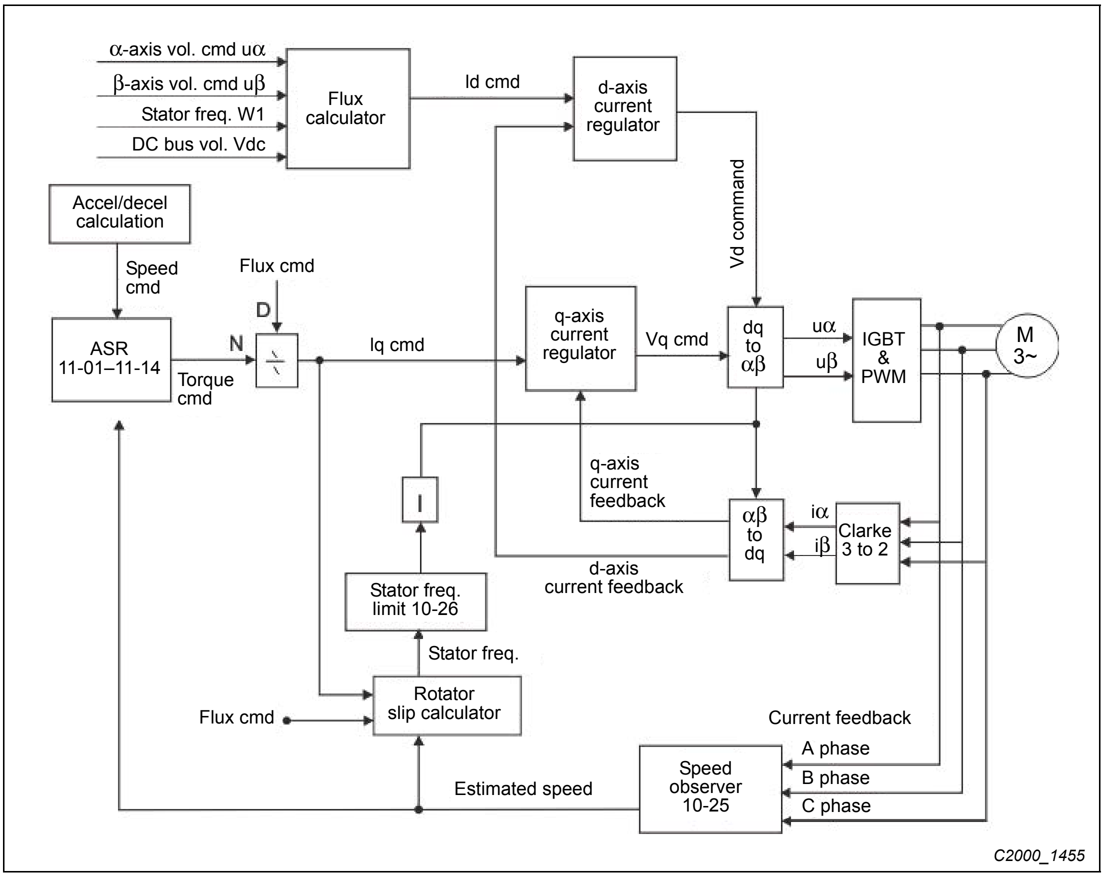


Fig. 12-7:FOC sensorless (IM) control diagram.

■ When 00-10 = 0, and set Pr. 00-11 to 6, PM FOC sensorless control diagram is shown as follows:

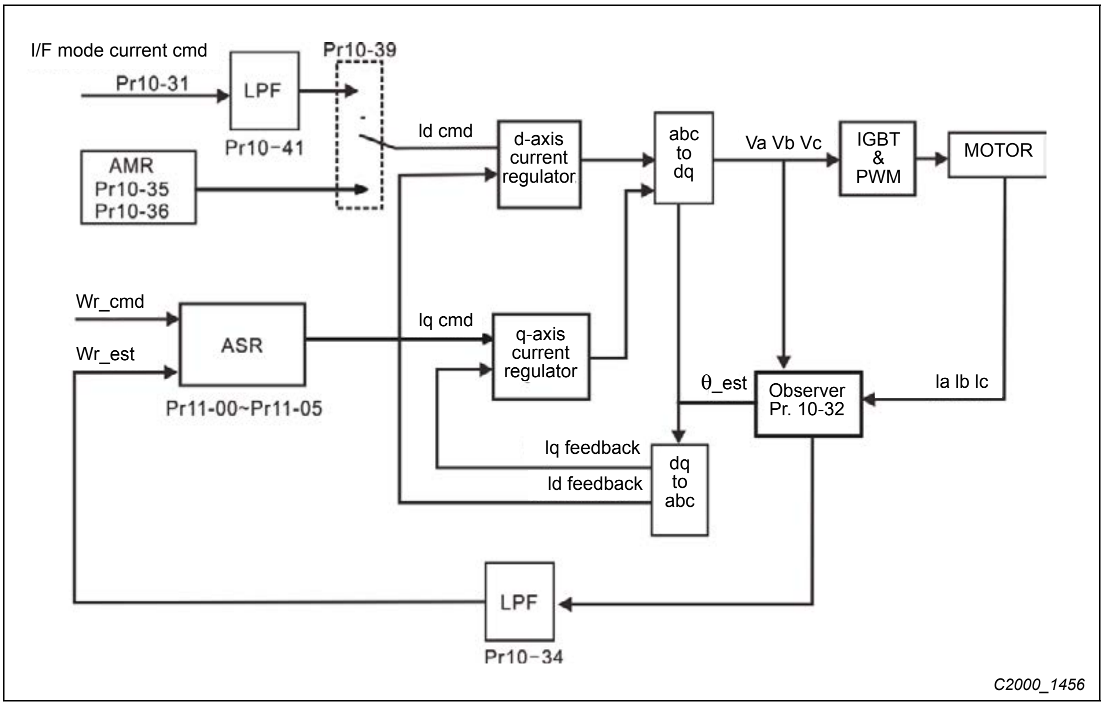


Fig. 12-8: PM FOC sensorless control diagram

■ When 00-10 = 0, and set Pr. 00-11 to 7, IPM FOC sensorless control diagram is shown as follows:

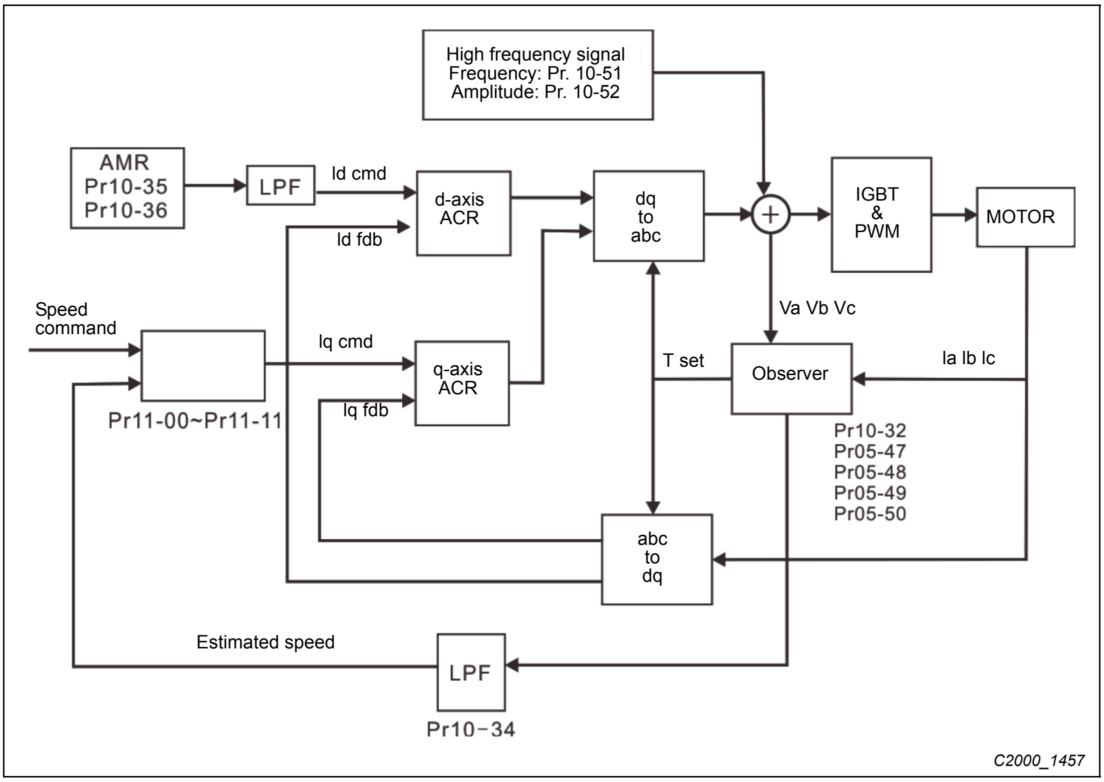


Fig. 12-9: IPM FOC sensorless control diagram

00-12 Point to point position control

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Incremental Type
	1: Absolute Type

■ Pr. 00-12 = 0 is incremental type P2P; Pr. 00-12 = 1 is absolute type P2P

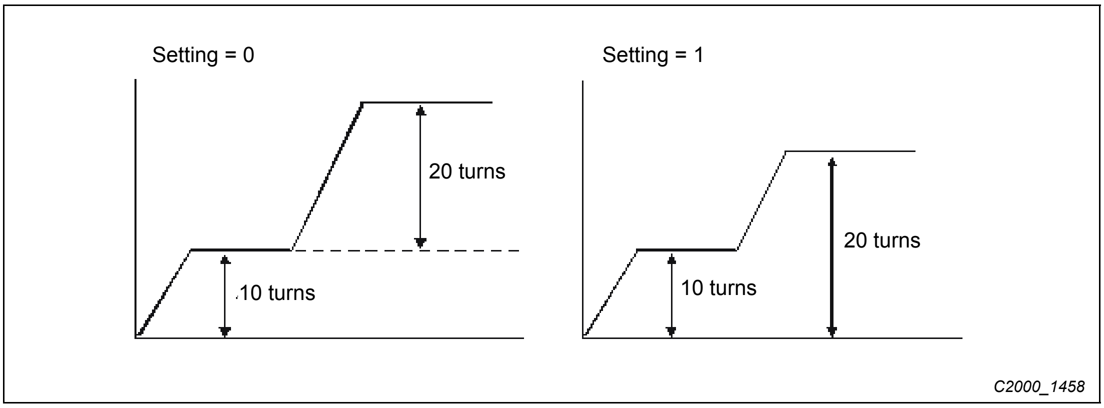


Fig. 12-10: Incremental and absolute type point to point control

00-13	Control of torque mode

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: TQCPG (IM Torque control + encoder)
	1: TQCPG (PM Torque control + encoder)
	2: TQC Sensorless (IM sensorless torque control)

■ TQCPG (Pr. 00-13=0) control diagram is shown in the following:

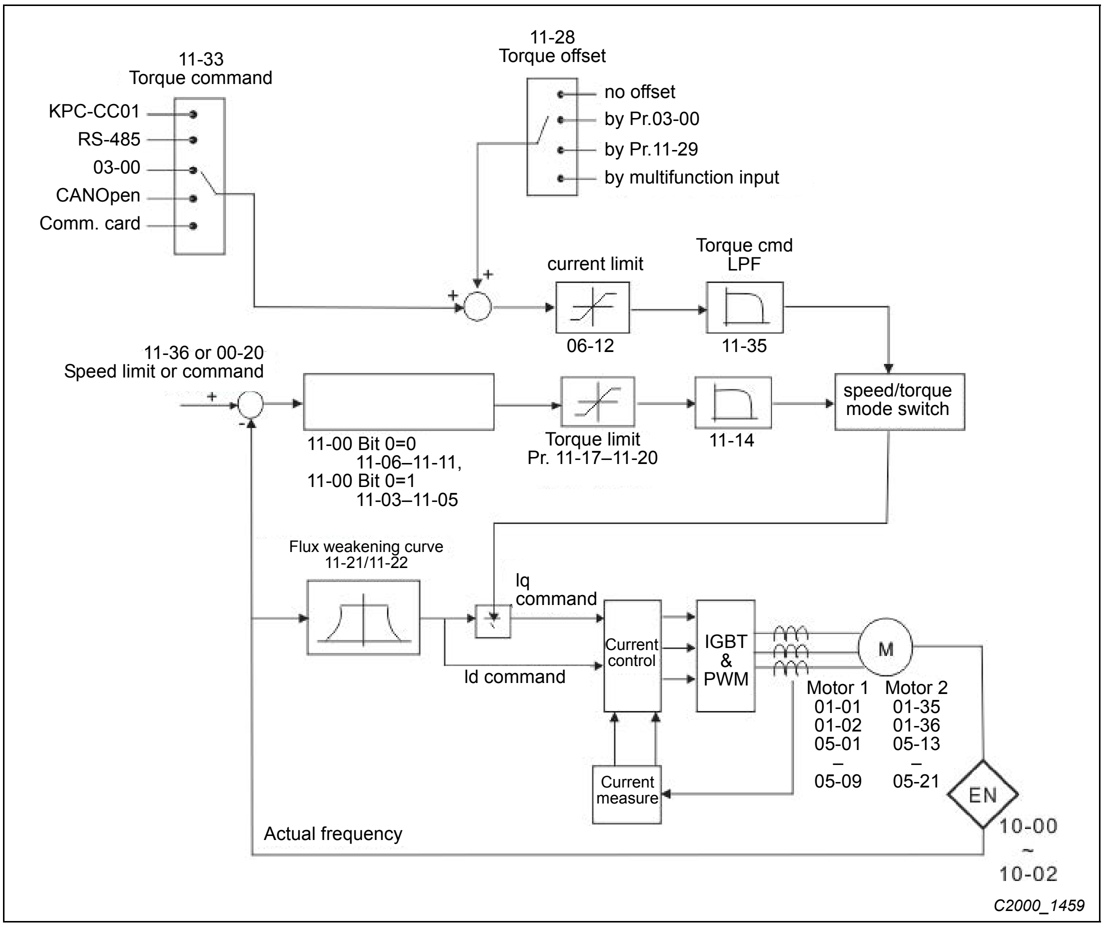


Fig. 12-11: TQCPG control diagram

■ TQC Sensorless (Pr. 00-13 = 2) control diagram is shown in the following:

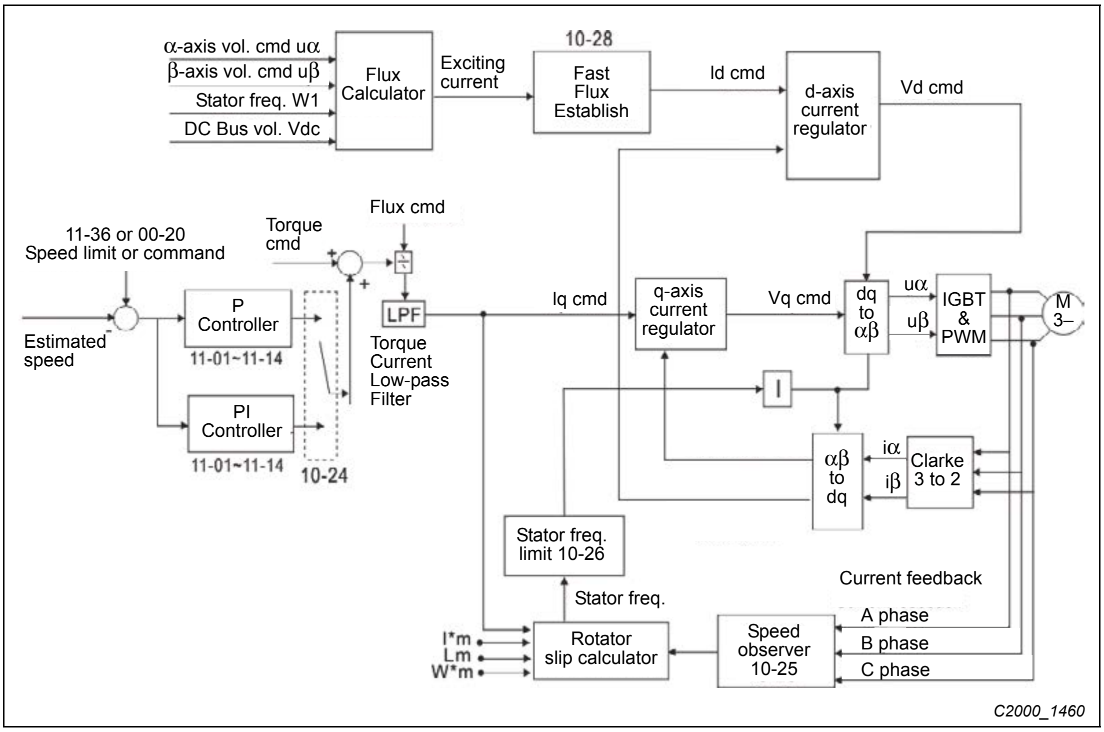


Fig. 12-12:TQC Sensorless control diagram

00-14	Reserved

00-15	Reserved

00-16	Load selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Normal load
	1: Heavy load

- ■ Normal duty: over load ability is 160 % rated output current in 3 second. Please refer to Pr. 00-17 for the setting of carrier. Refer to chapter 9 (specifications) or Pr. 00-01 for the rated current.
- ■ Heavy duty: over load ability is 180 % rated output current in 3 second. Please refer to Pr. 00-17 for the setting of carrier wave. Refer to chapter 9 (specifications) or Pr. 00-01 for the rated current.
- ■ Pr. 00-01 changes as the setting of Pr. 00-16 changes. The default setting and maximum setting range of Pr. 06-03, 06-04 will change as the setting of Pr. 00-16 changes.
- ■ In Normal Duty, the default setting of 06-03, 06-04 is 120 %, maximum setting range is 160 %. When DC voltage is higher than 700 V DC (460 V series) or 350 V (230 V series), then the maximum setting range will be 145 %
- ■ In Heavy Duty, the default setting of 06-03, 06-04 is 150 %, maximum setting range is 180 %. When DC voltage is higher than 700 V DC (460 V series) or 350 V (230 V series), then the maximum setting range will be 165 %

00-17 Carrier frequency

Factory setting: Table below

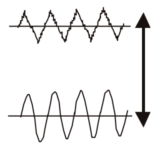
Settings	2–15 kHz

■ This parameter determinates the PWM carrier frequency of the AC motor drive.

230 V series			
Models	**0.75-11 kW**	**15-37 kW**	**45-90 kW**
Setting range	02–15 kHz	02–10 kHz	02–09 kHz
Normal duty factory setting	8 kHz	6 kHz	4 kHz
Heavy duty factory setting	2 kHz		

460 V series			
Models	**0.75-15 kW**	**18.5-55 kW**	**75-450 kW**
Setting range	02–15 kHz	02–10 kHz	02–09 kHz
Normal duty factory setting	8 kHz	6 kHz	4 kHz
Heavy duty factory setting	2 kHz		

Tab. 12-3:Adjustment of the PWM carrier frequency

Carrier frequency	Acoutic noise	Electromagnetic noise or leakage current	Heat dissipation	Current wave
1 kHz	Significant	Minimal	Minimal	
8 kHz				
15 kHz	Minimal	Significant	Significant	

Tab. 12-4: Impact of the PWM carrier frequency

■ From the table, we see that the PWM carrier frequency has a significant influence on the electromagnetic noise, AC motor drive heat dissipation, and motor acoustic noise. Therefore, if the surrounding noise is greater than the motor noise, lower the carrier frequency is good to reduce the temperature rise. Although it is quiet operation in the higher carrier frequency, the entire wiring and interference resistance should be considerate.

■ When the carrier frequency is higher than the factory setting, it needs to protect by decreasing the carrier frequency. See Pr. 06-55 for the related setting and details.

00-18 Reserved

00-19 PLC command mask

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	Bit 0: Control command by PLC force control
	Bit 1: Frequency command by PLC force control
	Bit 2: Position command by PLC force control
	Bit 3: Torque command by PLC force control

- This parameter determines if frequency command or control command is occupied by PLC

00-20 Source of the master frequency command (AUTO)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Digital keypad
	1: RS-485 serial communication
	2: External analog input (Pr. 03-00)
	3: External UP/DOWN terminal
	4: Pulse input without direction command (Pr. 10-16 without direction)
	5: Pulse input with direction command (Pr.10-16)
	6: CANopen communication card
	7: Reserved
	8: Communication card (no CANopen card)

- It is used to set the source of the master frequency in AUTO mode.
- Pr. 00-20 and 00-21 are for the settings of frequency source and operation source in AUTO mode. Pr. 00-30 and 00-31 are for the settings of frequency source and operation source in HAND mode. The AUTO/HAND mode can be switched by the keypad KPC-CC01 or multi-function input terminal (MI).
- The factory setting of frequency source or operation source is for AUTO mode. It will return to AUTO mode whenever power on again after power off. If there is multi-function input terminal used to switch AUTO/HAND mode. The highest priority is the multi-function input terminal. When the external terminal is OFF, the drive won't receive any operation signal and can't execute JOG.

00-21 Source of the operation command (AUTO)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Digital keypad
	1: External terminals. Keypad STOP disabled.
	2: RS-485 serial communication. Keypad STOP disabled.
	3: CANopen card
	4: Reserved
	5: Communication card (not includes CANopen card)

- It is used to set the source of the operation frequency in AUTO mode.
- When the operation command is controlled by the keypad KPC-CC01, keys RUN, STOP and JOG (F1) are valid.

00-22 ⁄ Stop method

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Ramp to stop
	1: Coast to stop

■ The parameter determines how the motor is stopped when the AC motor drive receives a valid stop command.

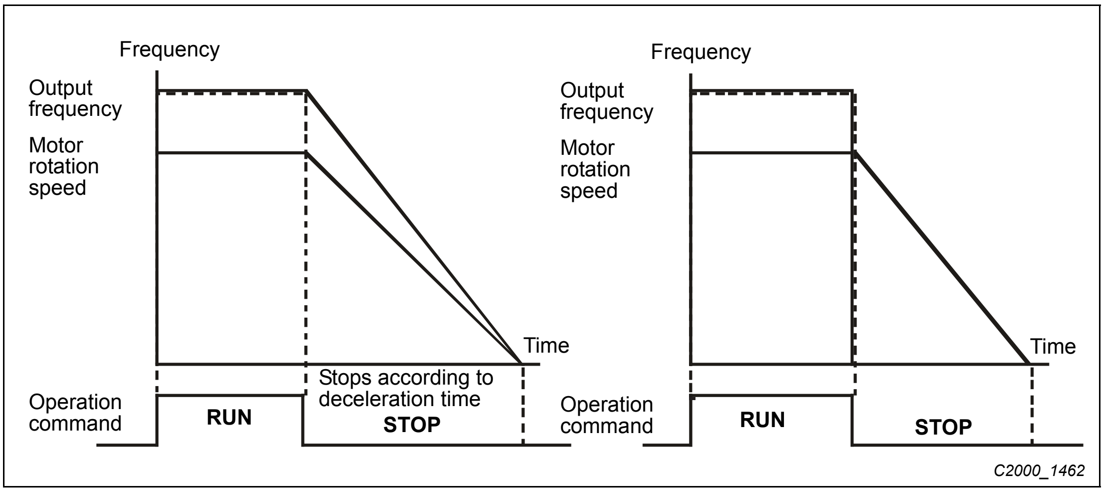


Fig. 12-13: Stopping and coasting

■ **Ramp to stop:** the AC motor drive decelerates from the setting of deceleration time to 0 or minimum output frequency (Pr. 01-07) and then stop.

■ **Coast to stop:** the AC motor drive stops the output instantly upon a STOP command and the motor free runs until it comes to a complete standstill.
(1) It is recommended to use "ramp to stop" for safety of personnel or to prevent material from being wasted in applications where the motor has to stop after the drive is stopped. The deceleration time has to be set accordingly.
(2) If the motor free running is allowed or the load inertia is large, it is recommended to select "coast to stop". For example, blowers, punching machines and pumps.

00-23 ⁄ Control of motor direction

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Enable forward/reverse
	1: Disable reverse
	2: Disable forward

■ This parameter enables the AC motor drive to run in the forward/reverse direction. It may be used to prevent a motor from running in a direction that would consequently injure the user or damage the equipment.

00-24 Memory of frequency command

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	Read only

- If keypad is the source of frequency command, when Lv or fault occurs the present frequency command will be saved in this parameter.

00-25 ⌁ User defined characteristics

Factory setting: 0

Settings	Bit 0–3: user defined decimal place
	0000b: no decimal place
	0001b: one decimal place
	0010b: two decimal place
	0011b: three decimal place
	Bit 4–15: user defined unit
	000xh: Hz
	001xh: rpm
	002xh: %
	003xh: kg
	004xh: m/s
	005xh: kW
	006xh: HP
	007xh: ppm
	008xh: 1/m
	009xh: kg/s
	00Axh: kg/m
	00Bxh: kg/h
	00Cxh: lb/s
	00Dxh: lb/m
	00Exh: lb/h
	00Fxh: ft/s
	010xh: ft/m
	011xh: m
	012xh: ft
	013xh: degC
	014xh: degF
	015xh: mbar
	016xh: bar
	017xh: Pa
	018xh: kPa
	019xh: mWG
	01Axh: inWG
	01Bxh: ftWG
	01Cxh: psi
	01Dxh: atm
	01Exh: L/s
	01Fxh: L/m
	020xh: L/h

	021xh: m3/s
	022xh: m3/h
	023xh: GPM
	024xh: CFM
	xxxxh: Hz

- Bit 0–3: Control F page, unit of user defined value (Pr. 00-04 = d10, PID feedback) and the decimal point of Pr. 00-26 which supports up to 3 decimal points.
- Bit 4–15: Control F page, unit of user defined value (Pr. 00-04 = d10, PID feedback) and the display units of Pr. 00-26.

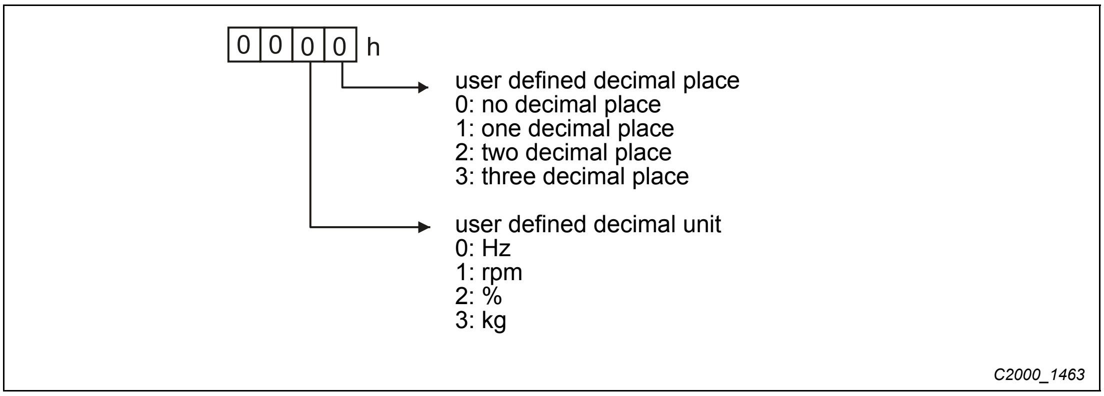


Fig. 12-14: Bits of Pr. 00-25

00-26 Max. user defined value

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable
	0–65535 (when Pr. 00-25 set to no decimal place)
	0.0–6553.5 (when Pr. 00-25 set to 1 decimal place)
	0.0–655.35 (when Pr. 00-25 set to 2 decimal place)
	0.0–65.535 (when Pr. 00-25 set to 3 decimal place)

- When Pr. 00-26 is NOT set to 0. The user defined value is enabled. The value of this parameter should correspond to the frequency setting at Pr. 01-00.
  Example:
  When the frequency at Pr. 01-00=60.00Hz, the max. user defined value at Pr. 00-26 is 100.0 %. That also means Pr. 00-25 is set at 0021h to select % as the unit.

NOTE The drive will display as Pr. 00-25 setting when Pr. 00-25 is properly set and Pr. 00-26 is not 0.

00-27 User defined value

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	Read only

- Pr. 00-27 will show user defined value when Pr. 00-26 is not set to 0.
- User defined function is valid when:
  1. Pr. 00-20 is set to digital keypad control
  2. RS-285 communication input control.
  3. PID function enable

00-28 Reserved

00-29 LOCAL/REMOTE selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Standard HOA function
	1: Switching Local/Remote, the drive stops
	2: Switching Local/Remote, the drive runs as the REMOTE setting for frequency and operation status
	3: Switching Local/Remote, the drive runs as the LOCAL setting for frequency and operation status
	4: Switching Local/Remote, the drive runs as LOCAL setting when switch to Local and runs as REMOTE setting when switch to Remote for frequency and operation status.

- The factory setting of Pr. 00-29 is 0 (standard Hand-Off-Auto function). The AUTO frequency and source of operation can be set by Pr. 00-20 and Pr. 00-21, and the HAND frequency and source of operation can be set by Pr. 00-30 and Pr. 00-31. AUTO/HAND mode can be selected or switched by using digital keypad (KPC-CC01) or setting multi-function input terminal MI = 41, 42.
- When external terminal MI is set to 41 and 42 (AUTO/HAND mode), the settings Pr. 00-29 = 1,2,3,4 will be disabled. The external terminal has the highest priority among all command, Pr. 00-29 will always function as Pr. 00-29 = 0, standard HOA mode.
- When Pr. 00-29 is not set to 0, Local/Remote function is enabled, the top right corner of digital keypad (KPC-CC01) will display "LOC" or "REM" (the display is available when KPC-CC01 is installed with firmware version higher than version 1.021). The LOCAL frequency and source of operation can be set by Pr. 00-20 and Pr. 00-21, and the REMOTE frequency and source of operation can be set by Pr. 00-30 and Pr. 00-31. Local/Remote function can be selected or switched by using digital keypad (KPC-CC01) or setting external terminal MI = 56. The AUTO key of the digital keypad now controls for the REMOTE function and HAND key now controls for the LOCAL function.
- When MI is set to 56 for LOC/REM selection, if Pr. 00-29 is set to 0, then the external terminal is disabled.
- When MI is set to 56 for LOC/REM selection, if Pr. 00-29 is not set to 0, the external terminal has the highest priority of command and the ATUO/HAND keys will be disabled.

00-30 Source of the master frequency command (HAND)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Digital keypad
	1: RS-485 serial communication
	2: External analog input (Pr. 03-00)
	3: External UP/DOWN terminal
	4: Pulse input without direction command (Pr. 10-16 without direction)
	5: Pulse input with direction command (Pr. 10-16)
	6: CANopen communication card
	7: Reserved
	8: Communication card (no CANopen card)

- It is used to set the source of the master frequency in HAND mode.

00-31 Source of the operation command (HAND)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Digital keypad
	1: External terminals. Keypad STOP disabled.
	2: RS-485 serial communication. Keypad STOP disabled.
	3: CANopen communication card
	4: Reserved
	5: Communication card (not include CANopen card

- It is used to set the source of the operation frequency in HAND mode.
- Pr. 00-20 and 00-21 are for the settings of frequency source and operation source in AUTO mode. Pr. 00-30 and 00-31 are for the settings of frequency source and operation source in HAND mode. The AUTO/HAND mode can be switched by the keypad KPC-CC01 or multi-function input terminal (MI).
- The factory setting of frequency source or operation source is for AUTO mode. It will return to AUTO mode whenever power on again after power off. If there is multi-function input terminal used to switch AUTO/HAND mode. The highest priority is the multi-function input terminal. When the external terminal is OFF, the drive won't receive any operation signal and can't execute JOG.

00-32 ⌿ Digital Keypad STOP Function

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: STOP key disable
	1: STOP key enable

- This parameter works when the source of operation command is not digital keypad (Pr. 00-21 $\neq$ 0). When Pr. 00-21 = 0, the stop key will not follow the setting of this parameter.

00-33 – 00-39 Reserved

00-40 Homing mode

Factory setting: 0000h

Settings

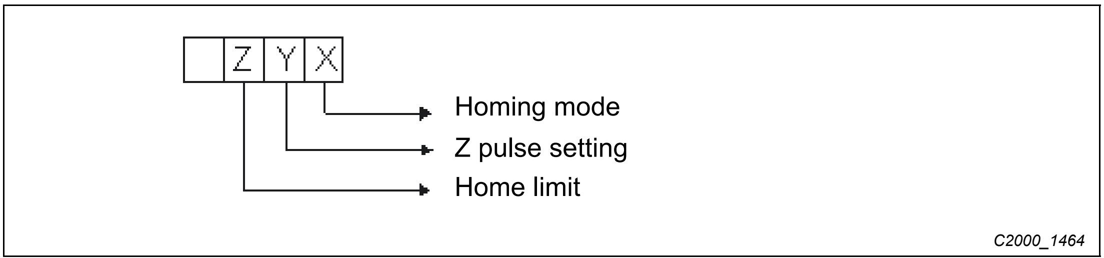
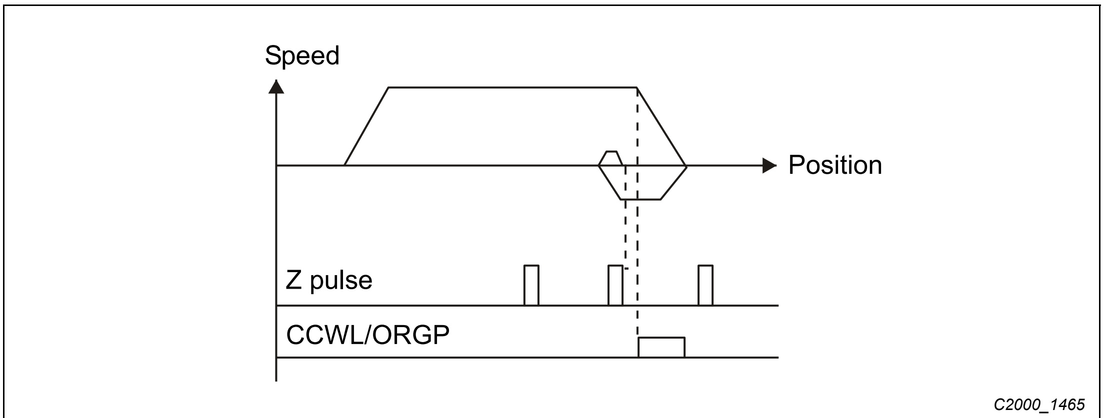


Fig. 12-15: Adjustment of homing

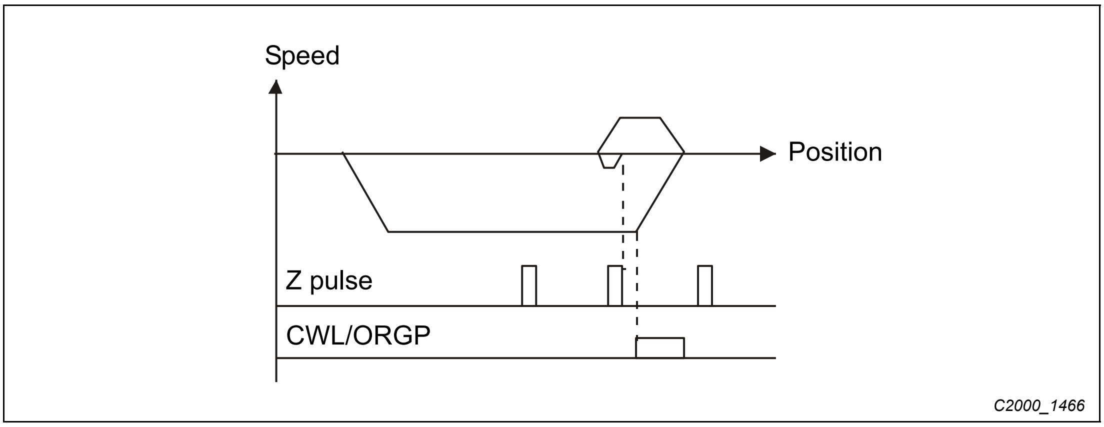
X	0: Forward run to home. Set PL forward limit as check point.
	1: Reverse run (CCW) to home. Set NL reverse limit (CCWL) as check point.
	2: Forward run to home. Set ORG: OFF→ ON as check point.
	3: Reverse to home. Set ORG: OFF→ ON as check point.
	4: Forward run and search for Z-pulse as check point.
	5: Forward run and search for Z-pulse as check point.
	6: Forward run to home. Set ORG: ON → OFF as check point.
	7: Reverse run to home. Set ORG: ON → OFF as check point.
	8: Define current position as home.
Y	Set X to 0, 1, 2, 3, 6, 7
	0: reverse run to Z pulse
	1: continue forward run to Z pulse
	2: Ignore Z pulse
Z	When home limit is reached, set X to 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 first.
	0: display error
	1: reverse the direction

■ Homing action is control by Pr. 00-40, 00-41, 00-42 and 02-01–02-08.

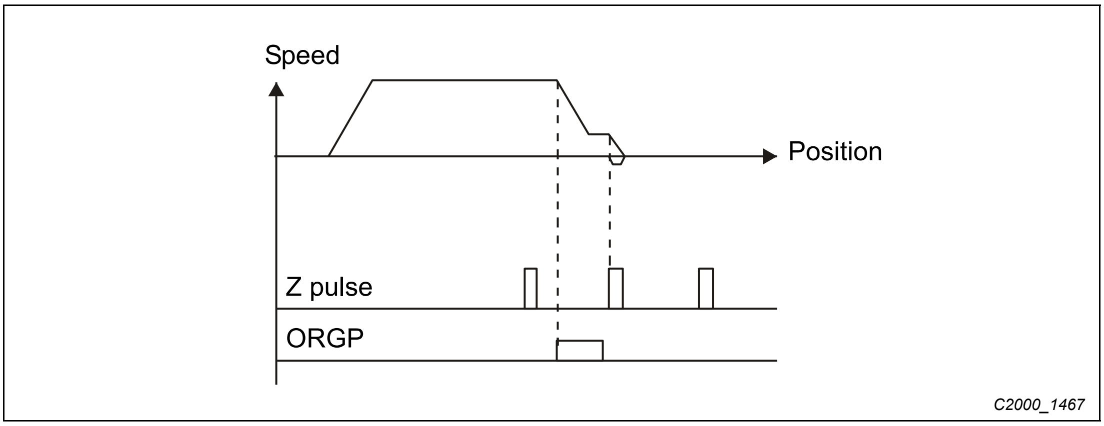
1. When Y = 0, X = 0 or Y = 0, X = 2



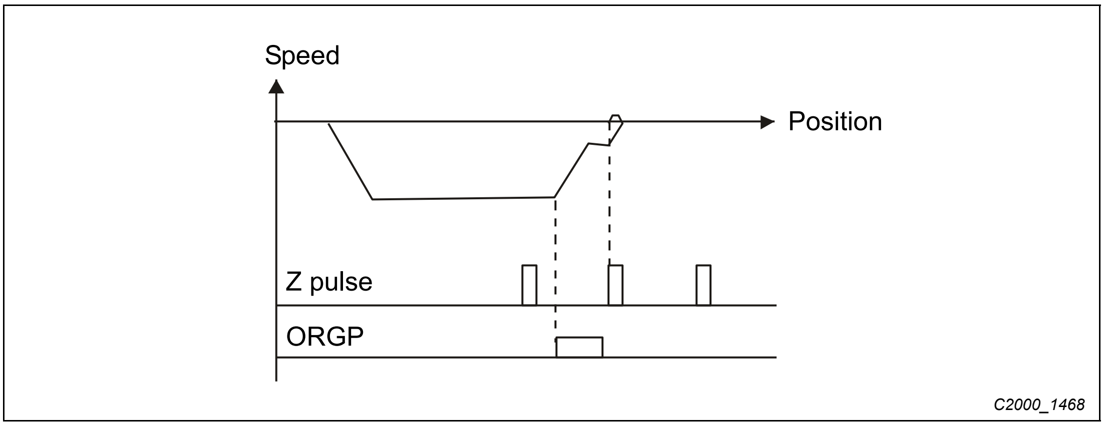
2. When Y = 0, X = 1 or Y = 0, X = 3



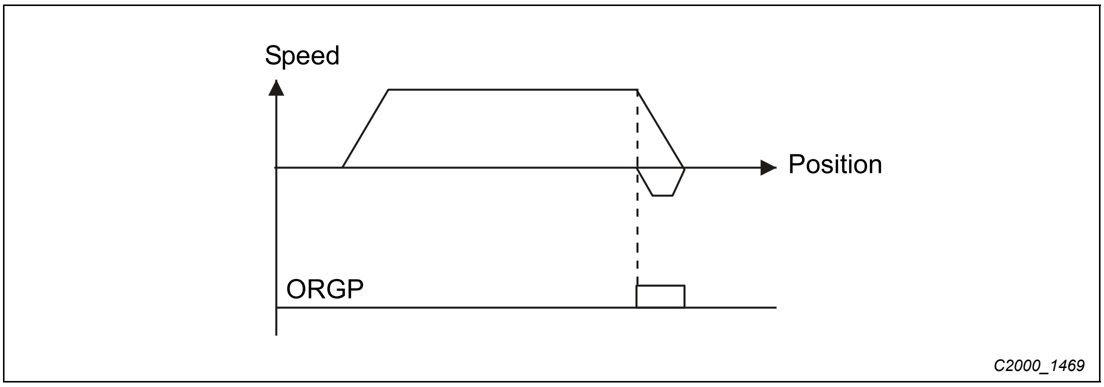
3. When Y = 1, X = 2



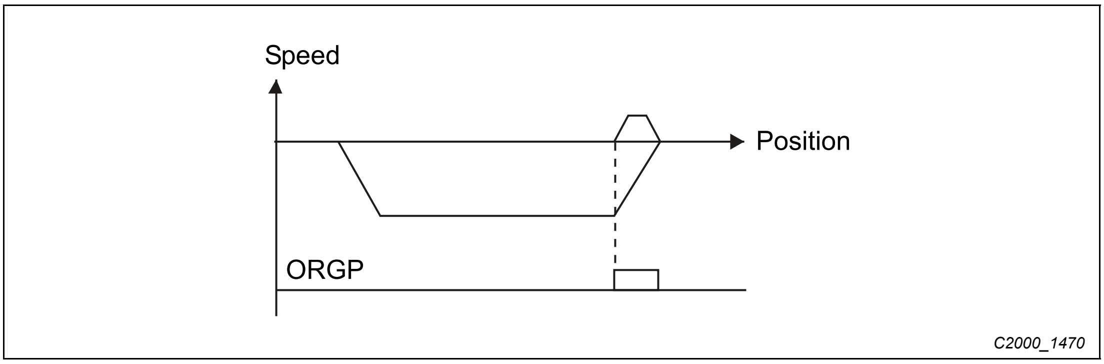
4. When Y = 1, X = 3



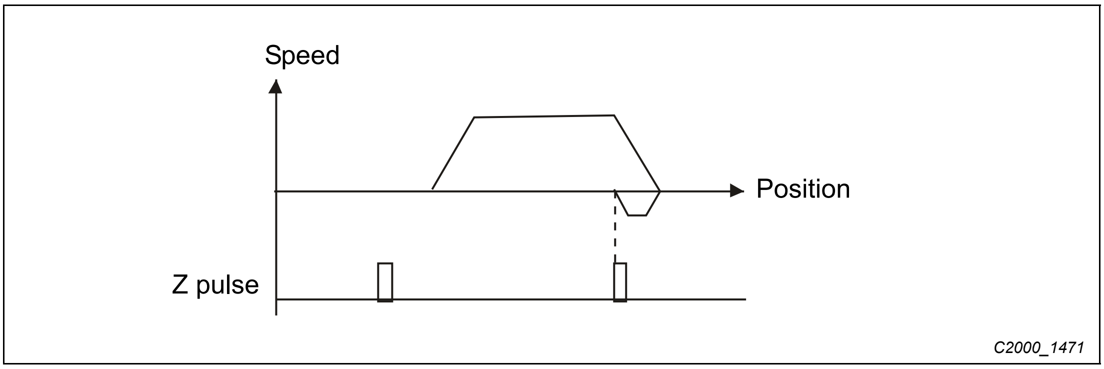
5. When Y = 2, X = 2



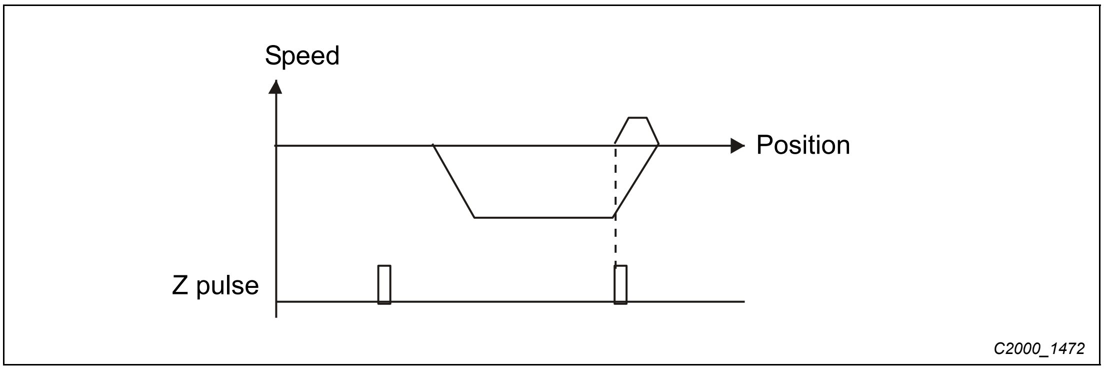
6. When Y = 2, X = 3



7. When Y = 2, X = 4



8. When Y = 2, X = 5



00-41 ⌿ Homing by frequency 1

Factory setting: 8.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

00-42 ⌿ Homing by frequency 2

Factory setting: 2.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- Control by Multi-function Input Terminal Pr. 02-01–02-08 (44–47).
  44: Reverse direction homing
  45: Forward direction homing
  46: Homing (ORG)
  47: Homing function enabled
- If the drive is not control by CAN or PLC, set Pr. 00-10 =1 (Control mode = P2P position control) and set external output terminal to 47 (homing function enable) for homing.
- When Pr. 00-10 is set to 3, after homing is complete, user must set control mode setting Pr. 00-10 to 1 in order to perform P2P position control.

00-43 – 00-47 Reserved

00-48 ⌿ Display filter time (Current)

Factory setting: 0.100

Settings	0.001–65.535 sec

- Set this parameter to minimize the current fluctuation displayed by digital keypad.

00-49 ⌿ Display filter time (Keypad)

Factory setting: 0.100

Settings	0.001–65.535 sec

- Set this parameter to minimize the display value fluctuation displayed by digital keypad.

00-50 Software version (date)

Factory setting: ####

Settings	Read only

- This parameter displays the drive's software version by date.

00-51 – 00-61 Reserved

12.2 Group 1: Basic parameters

NOTE This parameters marked with ⁄⁄ can be set during operation.

01-00 Maximum Output Frequency

Factory setting: 60.00/ 50.00

Settings	00.00–600.00 Hz

- This parameter determines the AC motor drive's Maximum Output Frequency. All the AC motor drive frequency command sources (analog inputs 0 to +10 V, 4 to 20 mA, 0 to 20 mA and ±10 V) are scaled to correspond to the output frequency range.

01-01 Output Frequency of Motor 1 (base frequency and motor rated frequency)

01-35 Output Frequency of Motor 2 (base frequency and motor rated frequency)

Factory setting: 60.00/ 50.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- This value should be set according to the rated frequency of the motor as indicated on the motor nameplate. If the motor is 60 Hz, the setting should be 60 Hz. If the motor is 50 Hz, it should be set to 50 Hz.

01-02 Output Voltage of Motor 1 (base frequency and motor rated frequency)

01-36 Output Voltage of Motor 2 (base frequency and motor rated frequency)

Factory setting: 200.0/ 400.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–255.0 V 460 V series: 0.0–510.0 V

- This value should be set according to the rated voltage of the motor as indicated on the motor nameplate. If the motor is 220 V, the setting should be 220.0. If the motor is 200 V, it should be set to 200.0.
- There are many motor types in the market and the power system for each country is also difference. The economic and convenience method to solve this problem is to install the AC motor drive. There is no problem to use with the different voltage and frequency and also can amplify the original characteristic and life of the motor.

01-03 Mid-point Frequency 1 of Motor 1

Factory setting: 3.00
Motor drive with 250HP and above: 1.50

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

01-04	✎ Mid-point Voltage 1 of Motor 1

Factory setting: 11.0/22.0
Motor drive with 250HP and above: 10.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V series: 0.0–480.0 V

01-37	Mid-point Frequency 1 of Motor 2

Factory setting: 3.00
Motor drive with 250HP and above: 1.50

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

01-38	✎ Mid-point Voltage 1 of Motor 2

Factory setting: 11.0/22.0
Motor drive with 250HP and above: 10.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V series: 0.0–480.0 V

01-05	Mid-point Frequency 2 of Motor 1

Factory setting: 0.50

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

01-06	✎ Mid-point Voltage 2 of Motor 1

Factory setting: 2.0/4.0
Motor drive with 250HP and above: 2.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V series: 0.0–480.0 V

01-39	Mid-point Frequency 2 of Motor 2

Factory setting: 0.50

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

01-40 ✓ Mid-point Voltage 2 of Motor 2

Factory setting: 2.0/4.0
Motor drive with 250HP and above: 2.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V series: 0.0–480.0 V

01-07 Min. Output Frequency of Motor 1

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

01-08 ✓ Min. Output Voltage of Motor 1

Factory setting: 0.0/0.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V series: 0.0–480.0 V

01-41 Min. Output Frequency of Motor 2

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

01-42 ✓ Min. Output Voltage of Motor 2

Factory setting: 0.0/0.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–240.0 V 460 V series: 0.0–480.0 V

- V/f curve setting is usually set by the motor's allowable loading characteristics. Pay special attention to the motor's heat dissipation, dynamic balance, and bearing lubricity, if the loading characteristics exceed the loading limit of the motor.
- There is no limit for the voltage setting, but a high voltage at low frequency may cause motor damage, overheat, and stall prevention or over-current protection. Therefore, please use the low voltage at the low frequency to prevent motor damage.
- Pr. 01-35 to Pr. 01-42 is the V/f curve for the motor 2. When multi-function input terminals Pr. 02-01–02-08 and Pr. 02-26–Pr. 02-31 are set to 14 and enabled, the AC motor drive will act as the 2nd V/f curve.
- The V/f curve for the motor 1 is shown as follows. The V/f curve for the motor 2 can be deduced from it.

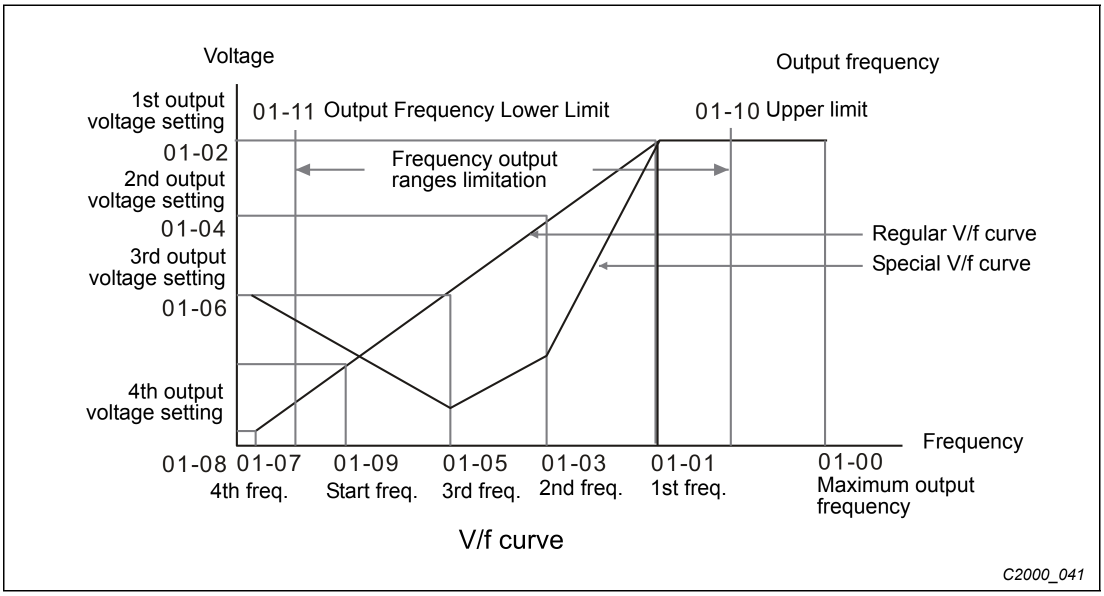
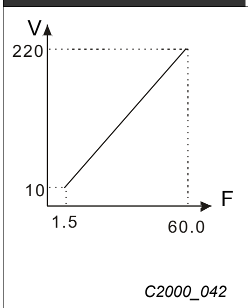
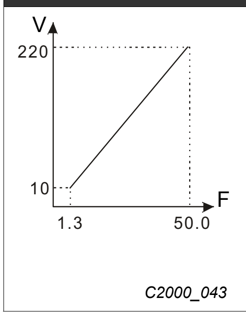


Fig. 12-16:Voltage/frequency ratio

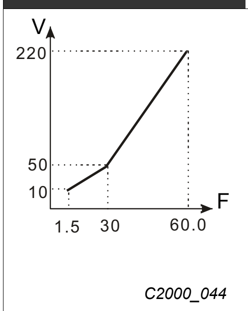
Common settings of V/f curve

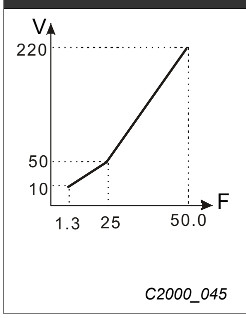
General purpose

Motor spec. 60 Hz	Pr.	Setting
	01-00	60.0
	01-01	60.0
	01-02	220.0
	01-03 01-05	1.50
	01-04 01-06	10.0
	01-07	1.50
	01-08	10.0

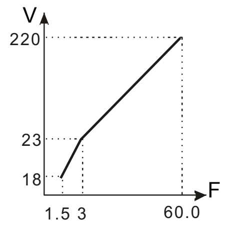
Motor spec. 50 Hz	Pr.	Setting
	01-00	50.0
	01-01	50.0
	01-02	220.0
	01-03 01-05	1.30
	01-04 01-06	10.0
	01-07	1.30
	01-08	10.0

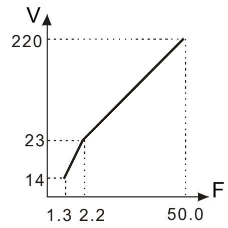
Fan and hydraulic machinery

Motor spec. 60 Hz	Pr.	Setting
	01-00	60.0
	01-01	60.0
	01-02	220.0
	01-03 01-05	30.0
	01-04 01-06	50.0
	01-07	1.50
	01-08	10.0

Motor spec. 50 Hz	Pr.	Setting
	01-00	50.0
	01-01	50.0
	01-02	220.0
	01-03 01-05	25.0
	01-04 01-06	50.0
	01-07	1.30
	01-08	10.0

High starting torque

Motor spec. 60 Hz	Pr.	Setting
	01.00	60.0
	01.01	60.0
	01.02	220.0
	01.03 01.05	3.00
	01.04 01.06	23.0
	01.07	1.50
C2000_046	01.08	18.0

Motor spec. 50 Hz	Pr.	Setting
	01.00	50.0
	01.01	50.0
	01.02	220.0
	01.03 01.05	2.20
	01.04 01.06	23.0
	01.07	1.30
C2000_047	01.08	14.0

01-09 Start-Up Frequency

Factory setting: 0.50

Settings	0.0–600.00 Hz

- When start frequency is higher than the min. output frequency, drives' output will be from start frequency to the setting frequency. Please refer to the following diagram for details.
- Fcmd = frequency command,
  Fstart = start frequency (Pr. 01-09),
  fstart = actual start frequency of drive,
  Fmin = 4th output frequency setting (Pr. 01-07/Pr. 01-41),
  Flow = output frequency lower limit (Pr. 01-11)
- Fcmd>Fmin and Fcmd<Fstart:
  If Flow<Fcmd, drive will run with Fcmd directly.
  If Flow>=Fcmd, drive will run with Fcmd firstly, then, accelerate to Flow according to acceleration time.
- The drive's output will stop immediately when output frequency has reach to Fmin during deceleration.

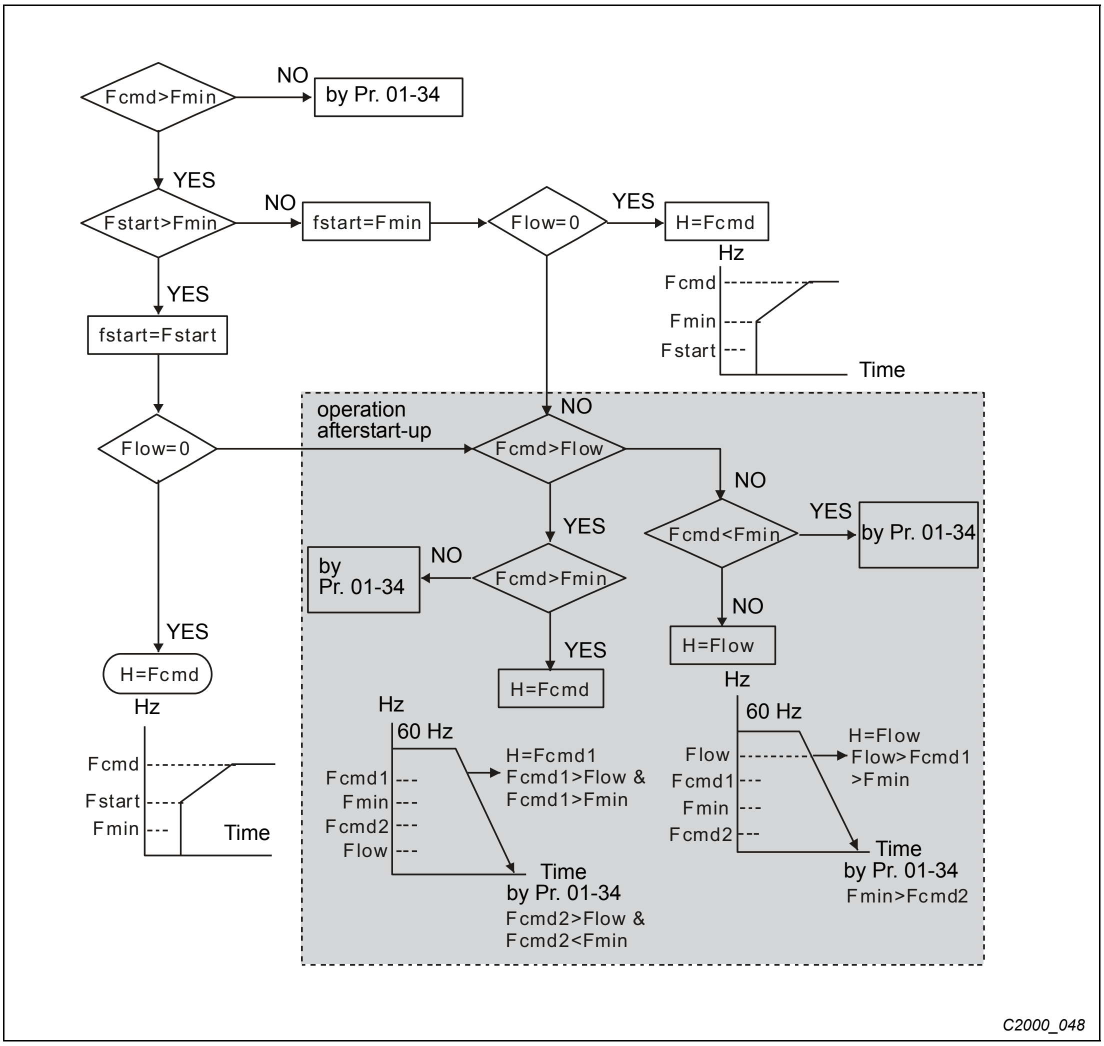


Fig. 12-17: Start-up frequency flowchart

01-10 ⌿ Output Frequency Upper Limit

Factory setting: 600.00

Settings	0.0–600.00 Hz

01-11 ⌿ Output Frequency Lower Limit

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.0–600.00 Hz

- The upper/lower output frequency setting is used to limit the actual output frequency. If the frequency setting is higher than the upper limit (01-10), it will run with the upper limit frequency. If output frequency lower than output frequency lower limit (01-11) and frequency setting is higher than min. frequency (01-07), it will run with lower limit frequency. The upper limit frequency should be set to be higher than the lower limit frequency. Pr. 01-10 setting must be ≥ Pr. 01-11 setting.

- Upper output frequency will limit the max. Output frequency of drive. If frequency setting is higher than Pr. 01-10, the output frequency will be limited by Pr. 01-10 setting.
- When the drive starts the function of slip compensation (Pr. 07-27) or PID feedback control, drive output frequency may exceed frequency command but still be limited by this setting.
- Related parameters: Pr. 01-00 Max. Operation Frequency and Pr. 01-11 Output Frequency Lower Limit

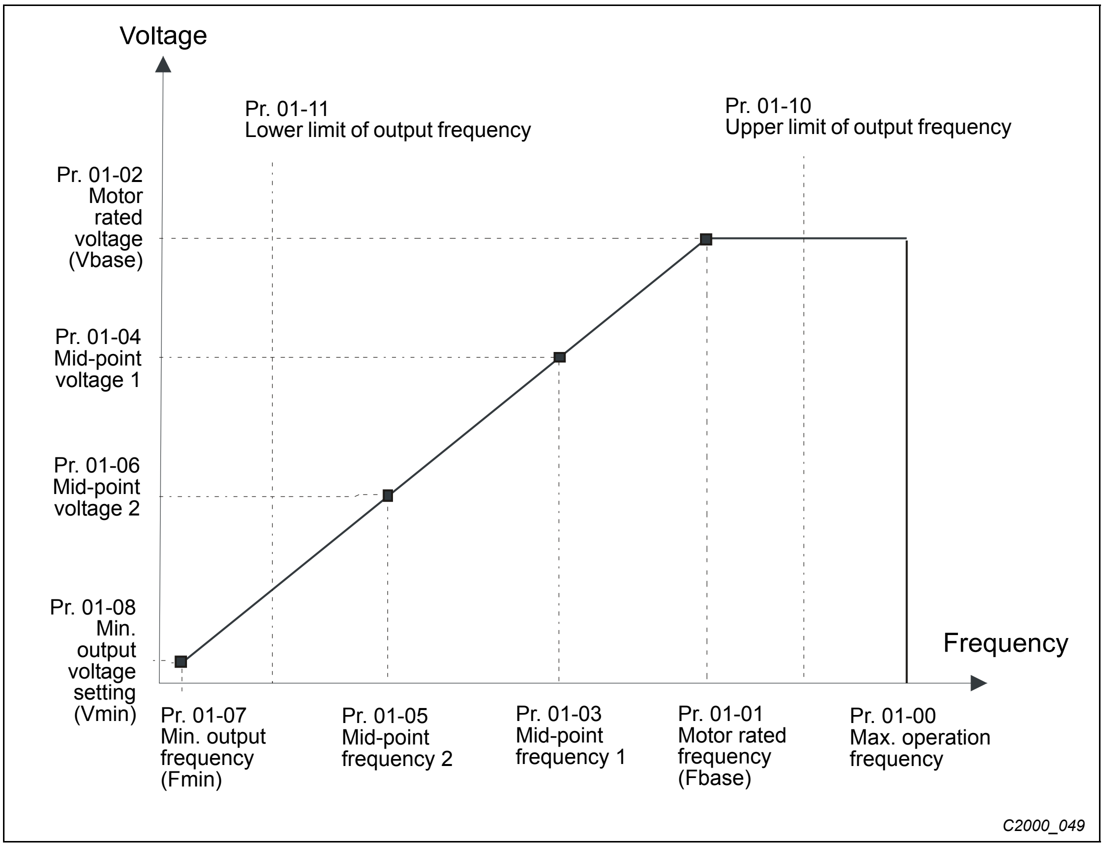


Fig. 12-18:Limit value ratio for output frequency

- Lower output frequency will limit the min. output frequency of drive. When drive frequency command or feedback control frequency is lower than this setting, drive output frequency will limit by the lower limit of frequency.
- When the drive starts, it will operate from min. output frequency (Pr. 01-07) and accelerate to the setting frequency. It won't limit by lower output frequency setting.
- The setting of output frequency upper/lower limit is used to prevent personal misoperation, overheat due to too low operation frequency or damage due to too high speed.
- If the output frequency upper limit setting is 50 Hz and frequency setting is 60 Hz, max. output frequency will be 50 Hz.
- If the output frequency lower limit setting is 10 Hz and min. operation frequency setting (Pr. 01-07) is 1.5 Hz, it will operate by 10 Hz when the frequency command is greater than Pr. 01-07 and less than 10 Hz. If the frequency command is less than Pr. 01-07, the drive will be in ready status and no output.
- If the frequency output upper limit is 60 Hz and frequency setting is also 60 Hz, only frequency command will be limit in 60 Hz. Actual frequency output may exceed 60 Hz after slip compensation.

01-12	✓ Acceleration Time 1
01-13	✓ Deceleration Time 1
01-14	✓ Acceleration Time 2
01-15	✓ Deceleration Time 2
01-16	✓ Acceleration Time 3
01-17	✓ Deceleration Time 3
01-18	✓ Acceleration Time 4
01-19	✓ Deceleration Time 4
01-20	✓ JOG Acceleration Time
01-21	✓ JOG Deceleration Time

Factory setting: 10.00/10.0
Factory setting for AC drive
with power greater than
30HP: 60.00/60.0

Settings	Pr. 01-45 = 0: 0.00–600.00 seconds Pr. 01-45 = 1: 0.00–6000.00 seconds

- The Acceleration Time is used to determine the time required for the AC motor drive to ramp from 0 Hz to Maximum Output Frequency (Pr. 01-00).
- The Deceleration Time is used to determine the time require for the AC motor drive to decelerate from the Maximum Output Frequency (Pr. 01-00) down to 0 Hz.
- The Acceleration/Deceleration Time is invalid when using Pr. 01-44 Optimal Acceleration/ Deceleration Setting.
- The Acceleration/Deceleration Time 1, 2, 3, 4 are selected according to the Multi-function Input Terminals settings. The factory settings are Accel./Decel. time 1.
- When enabling torque limits and stalls prevention function, actual accel./decel. time will be longer than the above action time.
- Please note that it may trigger the protection function (Pr. 06-03 Over-current Stall Prevention during Acceleration or Pr. 06-01 Over-voltage Stall Prevention) when the setting of accel./decel. time is too short.
- Please note that it may cause motor damage or drive protection enabled due to over current during acceleration when the setting of acceleration time is too short.
- Please note that it may cause motor damage or drive protection enabled due to over current during deceleration or over-voltage when the setting of deceleration time is too short.
- It can use suitable brake resistor (see Chapter 06 Accessories) to decelerate in a short time and prevent over-voltage.
- When enabling Pr. 01-24–Pr. 01-27, the actual accel./decel. time will be longer than the setting.

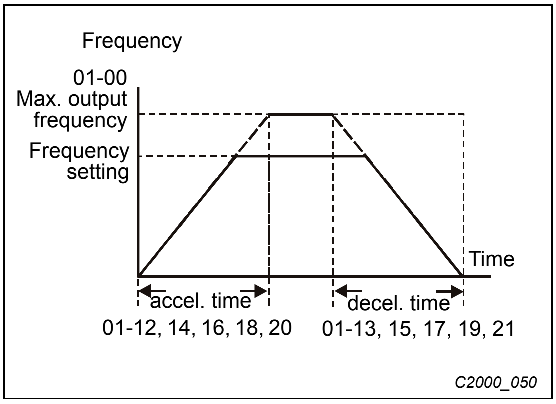


Fig. 12-19: Acceleration/deceleration time

01-22 ⌿ JOG Frequency

Factory setting: 6.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- Both external terminal JOG and key "F1" on the keypad KPC-CC01 can be used. When the jog command is ON, the AC motor drive will accelerate from 0 Hz to jog frequency (Pr. 01-22). When the jog command is OFF, the AC motor drive will decelerate from Jog Frequency to zero. The Jog Accel./Decel. time (Pr. 01-20, Pr. 01-21) is the time that accelerates from 0.0 Hz to Pr. 01-22 JOG Frequency.
- The JOG command can't be executed when the AC motor drive is running. In the same way, when the JOG command is executing, other operation commands are invalid except forward/ reverse commands and STOP key on the digital keypad.
- It does not support JOG function in the optional keypad KPC-CE01.

01-23 ⌿ 1st/4th Acceleration/Deceleration Frequency

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- The transition from acceleration/deceleration time 1 to acceleration/deceleration time 4, may also be enabled by the external terminals. The external terminal has priority over Pr. 01-23.
- When using this function, please set S-curve acceleration time as 0 if 4th acceleration time is set too short.

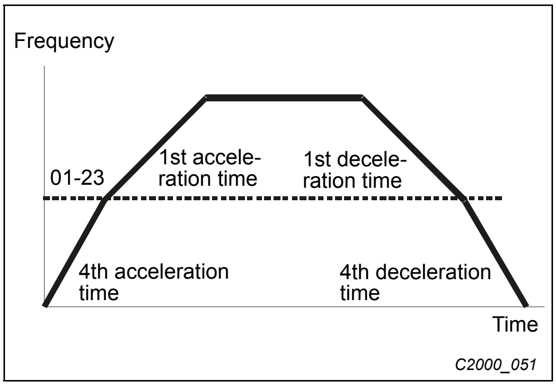


Fig. 12-20: 1st/4th acceleration/deceleration frequency switching

01-24	⌿ S-curve Acceleration Begin Time 1
01-25	⌿ S-curve Acceleration Arrival Time 2
01-26	⌿ S-curve Deceleration Begin Time 1
01-27	⌿ S-curve Deceleration Arrival Time 2

Factory setting: 0.20/0.2

Settings	Pr. 01-45 = 0: 0.00–25.00 seconds Pr. 01-45 = 1: 0.00–250.0 seconds

- It is used to give the smoothest transition between speed changes. The accel./decel. curve can adjust the S-curve of the accel./decel. When it is enabled, the drive will have different accel./decel. curve by the accel./decel. time.
- The S-curve function is disabled when accel./decel. time is set to 0.
- When Pr. 01-12, 01-14, 01-16, 01-18 ≥ Pr. 01-24 and Pr. 01-25,
  The Actual Accel. Time = Pr. 01-12, 01-14, 01-16, 01-18 + (Pr. 01-24 + Pr. 01-25)/2
- When Pr. 01-13, 01-15, 01-17, 01-19 ≥ Pr. 01-26 and Pr. 01-27,
  The Actual Decel. Time = Pr. 01-13, 01-15, 01-17, 01-19 + (Pr. 01-26 + Pr. 01-27)/2

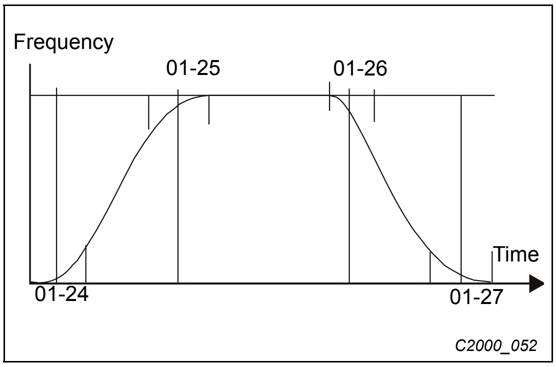


Fig. 12-21: S-curve deceleration

01-28	Skip Frequency 1 (upper limit)
01-29	Skip Frequency 1 (lower limit)
01-30	Skip Frequency 2 (upper limit)
01-31	Skip Frequency 2 (lower limit)
01-32	Skip Frequency 3 (upper limit)
01-33	Skip Frequency 3 (lower limit)

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- These parameters are used to set the skip frequency of the AC drive. But the frequency output is continuous. There is no limit for the setting of these six parameters and can be used as required.
- The skip frequencies are useful when a motor has vibration at a specific frequency bandwidth. By skipping this frequency, the vibration will be avoided. It offers 3 zones for use.
- These parameters are used to set the skip frequency of the AC drive. But the frequency output is continuous. The limit of these six parameters is 01-28 ≥ 01-29 ≥ 01-30 ≥ 01-31 ≥ 01-32 ≥ 01-33. This function will be invalid when setting to 0.0.
- The setting of frequency command (F) can be set within the range of skip frequencies. In this moment, the output frequency (H) will be limited by these settings.
- When accelerating/decelerating, the output frequency will still pass the range of skip frequencies.

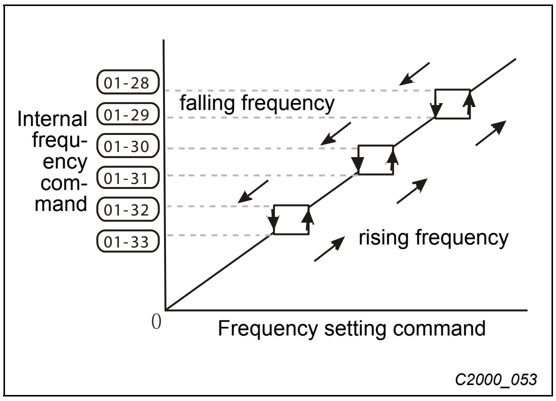


Fig. 12-22: Skip frequency adjustment

01-34 Zero-speed Mode

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Output waiting 1: Zero-speed operation 2: Fmin (Refer to Pr. 01-07, 01-41)

- When the frequency is less than Fmin (Pr. 01-07 or Pr. 01-41), it will operate by this parameter.
- When it is set to 0, the AC motor drive will be in waiting mode without voltage output from terminals U/V/W.
- When setting 1, it will execute DC brake by Vmin (Pr. 01-08 and Pr. 01-42) in V/f, FOC Sensorless, and SVC modes. It executes zero-speed operation in VFPG and FOCPG mode.
- When it is set to 2, the AC motor drive will run by Fmin (Pr. 01-07, Pr. 01-41) and Vmin (Pr. 01-08, Pr. 01-42) in V/F, VFPG, SVC, FOC Sensorless and FOCPG modes.
- In V/F, VFPG, SVC and FOC Sensorless modes

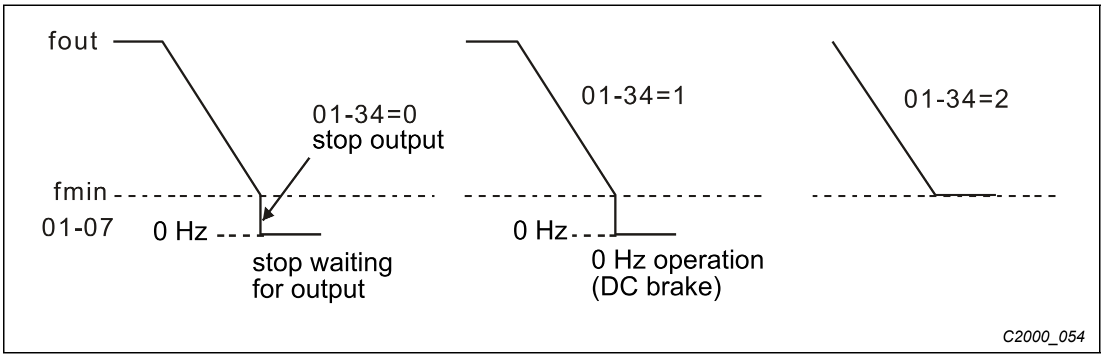


Fig. 12-23:Zero-speed process

- In FOCPG mode, when Pr. 01-34 is set to 2, it will act according Pr. 01-34 setting.

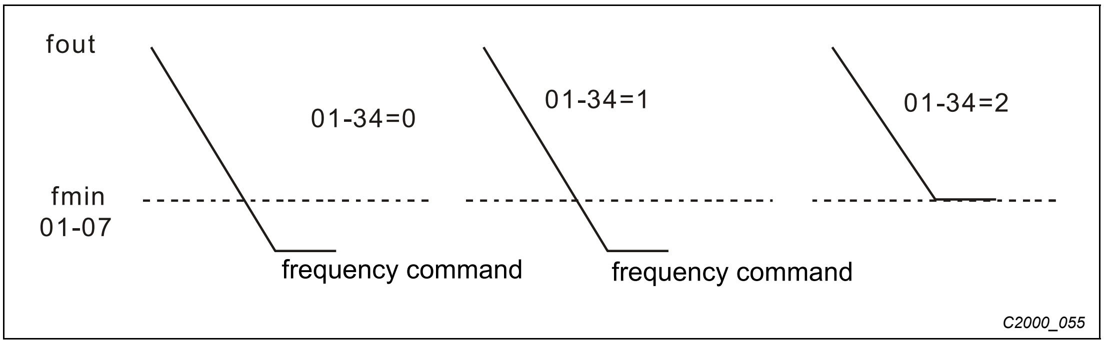


Fig. 12-24: Regelung der Stillstandsdrehzahl im FOCPG-Betrieb

01-43 V/f Curve Selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: V/f curve determined by group 01 1: 1.5 power curve 2: Square curve

- When setting to 0, refer to Pr. 01-01–01-08 for motor 1 V/f curve. For motor 2, please refer to Pr. 01-35–01-42.
- When setting to 1 or 2, 2nd and 3rd voltage frequency setting are invalid.
- If motor load is variable torque load (torque is in direct proportion to speed, such as the load of fan or pump), it can decrease input voltage to reduce flux loss and iron loss of the motor at low speed with low load torque to raise the entire efficiency.
- When setting higher power V/f curve, it is lower torque at low frequency and is not suitable for rapid acceleration/deceleration. It is recommended Not to use this parameter for the rapid acceleration/deceleration.

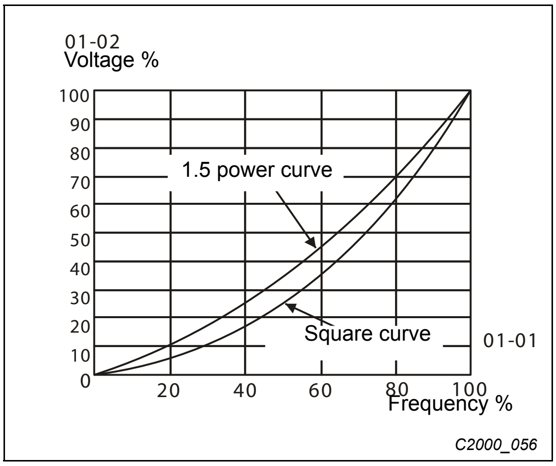


Fig. 12-25: V/f curve progression

01-44 ⌿ Optimal Acceleration/Deceleration Setting

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Linear accel./decel. 1: Auto accel., linear decel. 2: Linear accel., auto decel. 3: Auto accel./decel. (auto calculate the accel./decel. time by actual load) 4: Stall prevention by auto accel./decel. (limited by 01-12 to 01-21)

■ Setting 0 Linear accel./decel.: it will accelerate/decelerate according to the setting of Pr. 01-12–01-19.

■ Setting "1" automatic accelleration, linear decelleration: it can reduce the mechanical vibration and prevent the complicated auto-tuning processes. It won't stall during acceleration and no need to use brake resistor. In addition, it can improve the operation efficiency and save energy.

■ Setting 3 Auto accel./decel. (auto calculate the accel./decel. time by actual load): it can auto detect the load torque and accelerate from the fastest acceleration time and smoothest start current to the setting frequency. In the deceleration, it can auto detect the load re-generation and stop the motor smoothly with the fastest decel. time.

■ Setting 4: Stall prevention by auto accel./decel. (limited by 01-12 to 01-21): if the acceleration/deceleration is in the reasonable range, it will accelerate/decelerate by Pr. 01-12–01-19. If the accel./decel. time is too short, the actual accel./decel. time is greater than the setting of accel./decel. time.

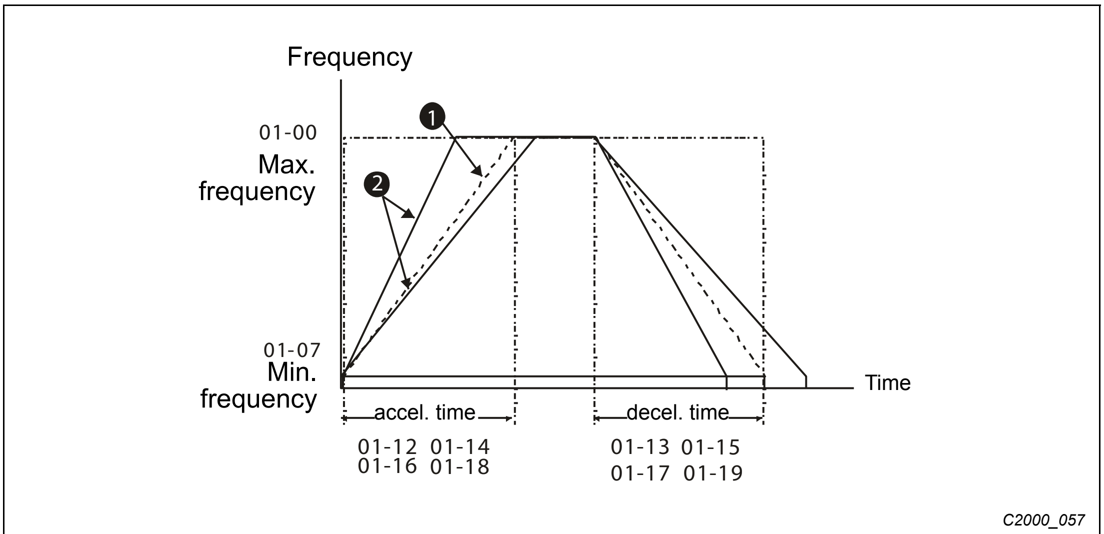


Fig. 12-26: Acceleration/deceleration time

❶ When Pr. 01-44 is set to 0.

❷ When Pr. 01-44 is set to 3.

01-45 Time Unit for Acceleration/Deceleration and S Curve

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Unit 0.01 sec 1: Unit 0.1 sec

01-46 ✓ Time for CANopen Quick Stop

Factory setting: 1.00

Settings	Pr. 01-45 = 0: 0.00–600.00 sec Pr. 01-45 = 1: 0.0–6000.0 sec

- It is used to set the time that decelerates from the max. operation frequency (Pr. 01-00) to 0.00 Hz in CANopen control.

12.3 Digital input/output parameter

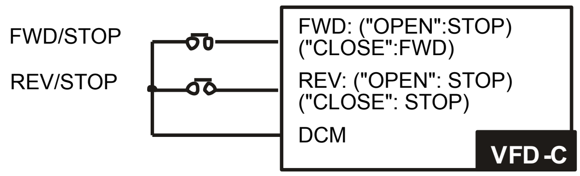
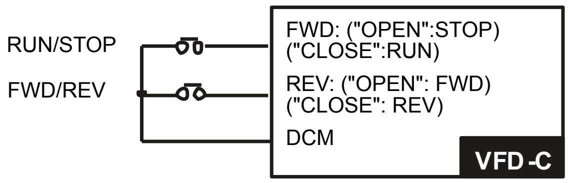
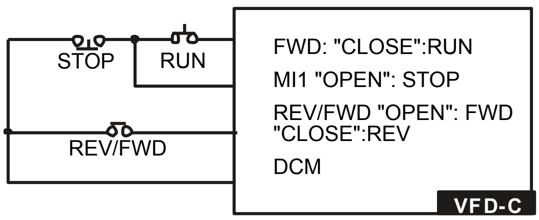
NOTE ⌿ This parameter can be set during operation.

02-00	2-wire/3-wire operation control

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: 2 wire mode 1
	1: 2 wire mode 2
	2: 3 wire mode

It is used to set the operation control method:

Pr. 02-00	Control circuits of the external terminal
0 2-wire mode 1 FWD/STOP REV/STOP	 C2000_667
1 2-wire mode 2 RUN/STOP REV/FWD	 C2000_668
2 3-wire operation control	 C2000_669

Tab. 12-5: Operation via 2- and 3-wire control line

02-01	Multi-function Input command 1 (MI1) (MI1 = STOP command when in 3-wire operation control)

Factory setting: 1

02-02	Multi-function input command 2 (MI2)

Factory setting: 2

02-03	Multi-function input command 2 (MI3)

Factory setting: 3

02-04	Multi-function input command 2 (MI4)

Factory setting: 4

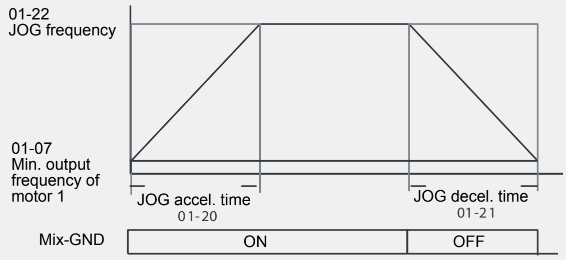
02-05	Multi-function input command 5 (MI5)
02-06	Multi-function input command 6 (MI6)
02-07	Multi-function input command 7 (MI7)
02-08	Multi-function input command 8 (MI8)
02-26	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI10)
02-27	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI11)
02-28	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI12)
02-29	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI13)
02-30	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI14)
02-31	Input terminal of I/O extension card (MI15)

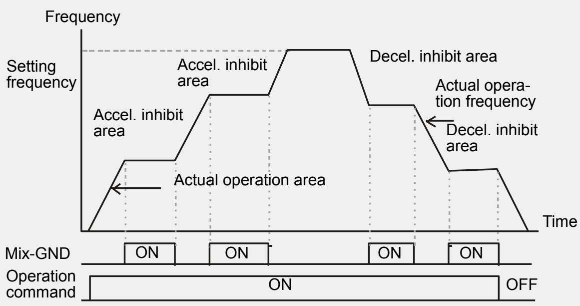
Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: No function
	1: Multi-step speed command 1/multi-step position command 1
	2: Multi-step speed command 2/multi-step position command 2
	3: Multi-step speed command 3/multi-step position command 3
	4: Multi-step speed command 4/multi-step position command 4
	5: Reset
	6: JOG command (By KPC-CC01 or external control)
	7: Acceleration/deceleration speed not allow
	8: The 1st, 2nd acceleration/deceleration time selection
	9: The 3rd, 4th acceleration/deceleration time selection
	10: EF Input (Pr. 07-20)
	11: B.B input from external (Base Block)
	12: Output stop
	13: Cancel the setting of the optimal Acceleration/deceleration time
	14: Switch between motor 1 and motor 2
	15: Operation speed command from AVI
	16: Operation speed command from ACI
	17: Operation speed command from AUI
	18: Emergency stop (Pr. 07-20)
	19: Digital up command
	20: Digital down command

	21: PID function disabled
	22: Clear counter
	23: Input the counter value (MI6)
	24: FWD JOG command
	25: REVJOG command
	26: FOCG/TQC model selection
	27: ASR1/ASR2 selection
	28: Emergency stop (EF1)
	29: Signal confirmation for Y-connection
	30: Signal confirmation for ∆-connection
	31: High torque bias (Pr. 11-30)
	32: Middle torque bias (Pr. 11-31)
	33: Low torque bias (Pr. 11-32)
	34: Switch between multi-step position and multi-speed control
	35: Enable position control
	36: Enable multi-step position learning function (valid at stop)
	37: Enable pulse position input command
	38: Disable write EEPROM function
	39: Torque command direction
	40: Force coast to stop
	41: HAND switch
	42: AUTO switch
	43: Enable resolution selection (Pr. 02-48)
	44: Reverse direction homing
	45: Forward direction homing
	46: Homing ORG
	47: Homing function enable
	48: Mechanical gear ratio switch
	49: Drive enable
	50: Master dEb action input
	51: Selection for PLC mode bit 0
	52: Selection for PLC mode bit 1
	53: Trigger CANopen quick stop
	54: Reserved
	55: Brake release checking signal
	56: Local/remote selection
	57–70: Reserve

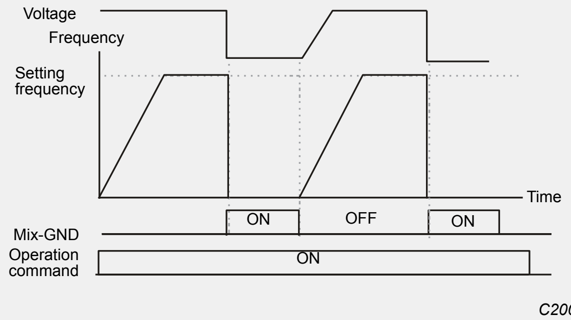
- This parameter selects the functions for each multi-function terminal.
- The terminals of Pr. 02-26–Pr. 02-29 are virtual and set as MI10–MI13 when using with optional card EMC-D42A. Pr. 02-30–02-31 are virtual terminals.
- When being used as a virtual terminal, it needs to change the status (0/1: ON/OFF) of bit 8-15 of Pr. 02-12 by digital keypad KPC-CC01 or communication.
- If Pr. 02-00 is set to 3-wire operation control. Terminal MI1 is for STOP contact. Therefore, MI1 is not allowed for any other operation.
- Summary of function settings (Take the normally open contact for example, ON: contact is closed, OFF: contact is open)

<table>
<tr><th>Settings</th><th>Functions</th><th>Descriptions</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>No function</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Multi-step speed command 1/multi-step position command 1</td><td rowspan="4">15 step speeds could be conducted through the digital status of the 4 terminals, and 16 in total if the master speed is included. (Refer to parameter set 4)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Multi-step speed command 2/ multi-step position command 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Multi-step speed command 3/ multi-step position command 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Multi-step speed command 4/ multi-step position command 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>Reset</td><td>After the error of the drive is eliminated, use this terminal to reset the drive.</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>JOG command</td><td>This function is valid when the source of operation command is external terminals.
Before executing this function, it needs to wait for the drive stop completely. During running, it can change the operation direction and STOP key on the keypad is valid. Once the external terminal receives OFF command, the motor will stop by the JOG deceleration time. Refer to Pr. 01-20–01-22 for details.


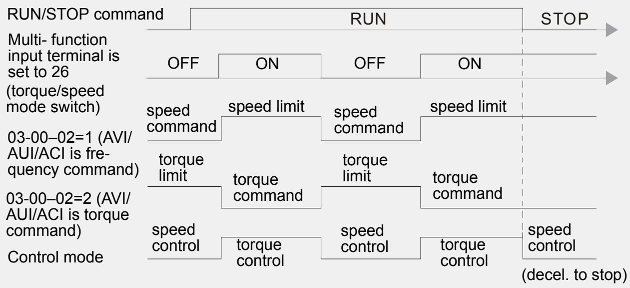
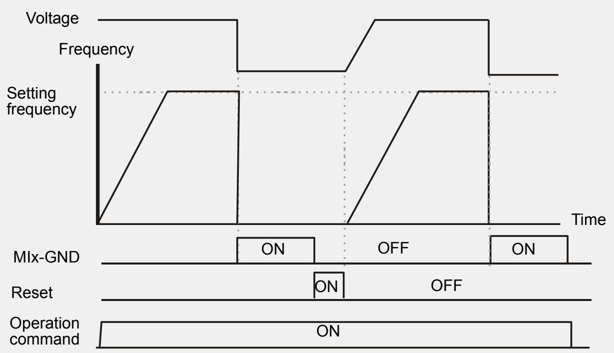
C2000_684</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>Acceleration/deceleration speed inhibit</td><td>When this function is enabled, acceleration and deceleration is stopped. After this function is disabled, the starts to accel./decel. from the inhibit point.


C2000_685</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>The 1st, 2nd acceleration or deceleration time selection</td><td rowspan="2">The acceleration/deceleration time of the drive could be selected from this function or the digital status of the terminals; there are 4 acceleration/deceleration speeds in total for selection.</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>The 3rd, 4th acceleration or deceleration time selection</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>EF Input
(EF: External fault)</td><td>For external fault input. Motor drive will decelerate by Pr. 07-20 setting, keypad will show EF. (It will have fault record when external fault occurs). Until the causes of fault are eliminated, the drive can keep running after resetting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>External B.B. input
(Base block)</td><td>When the contact of this function is ON, output of the drive will be cut off immediately, and the motor will be free run and keypad will display B.B. signal. Refer to Pr. 07-08 for details.</td></tr>
</table>

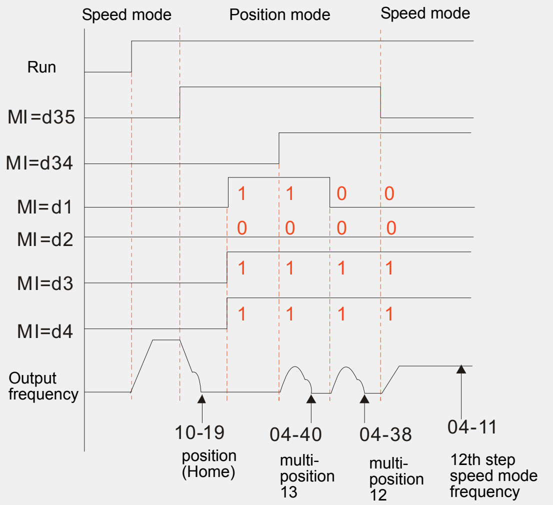
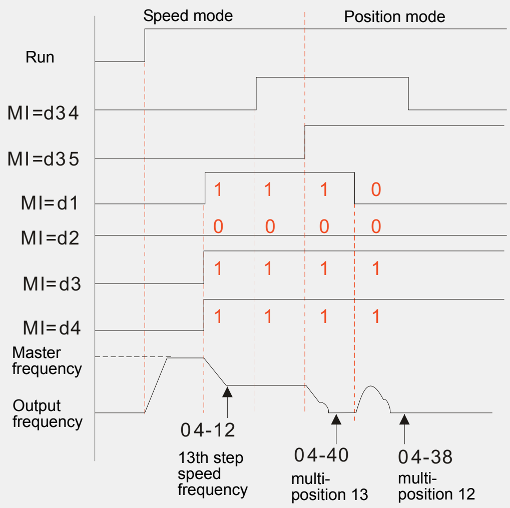
Tab. 12-6: Functions of the programmable inputs (1)

Settings	Functions	Descriptions
12	Output stop (Output pause)	If the contact of this function is ON, output of the drive will be cut off immediately, and the motor will then be free run. And once it is turned to OFF, the drive will accelerate to the setting frequency. 
13	Cancel the setting of the optimal accel./decel. time	Before using this function, Pr. 01-44 should be set to 01/02/03/04 first. When this function is enabled, OFF is for auto mode and ON is for linear accel./decel.
14	Switch between drive settings 1 and 2	When the contact of this function is ON: use motor 2 parameters. OFF: use motor 1 parameters.
15	Operation speed command form AVI	When the contact of this function is ON, the source of the frequency will force to be AVI. (If the operation speed commands are set to AVI, ACI and AUI at the same time. The priority is AVI > ACI > AUI)
16	Operation speed command form ACI	When the contact of this function is ON, the source of the frequency will force to be ACI. (If the operation speed commands are set to AVI, ACI and AUI at the same time. The priority is AVI > ACI > AUI)
17	Operation speed command form AUI	When the contact of this function is ON, the source of the frequency will force to be AUI. (If the operation speed commands are set to AVI, ACI and AUI at the same time. The priority is AVI > ACI > AUI)
18	Emergency stop (07-20)	When the contact of this function is ON, the drive will ramp to stop by Pr. 07-20 setting.
19	Digital Up command	When the contact of this function is ON, the frequency will be increased and decreased. If this function is constantly ON, the frequency will be increased/decreased by Pr. 02-09/Pr. 02-10. The frequency command returns to zero when the drive stops and the display frequency is 0.00 Hz. Select Pr. 11-00, Bit 7=1, frequency is not saved.
20	Digital down command	
21	PID function disabled	When the contact of this function is ON, the PID function is disabled.
22	Clear counter	When the contact of this function is ON, it will clear current counter value and display “0”. Only when this function is disabled, it will keep counting upward.
23	Input the counter value (multi-function input command 6)	The counter value will increase 1 once the contact of this function is ON. It needs to be used with Pr. 02-19.
24	FWD JOG command	This function is valid when the source of operation command is external terminals. When the contact of this function is ON, the drive will execute forward Jog command. When execute JOG command under torque mode, the drive will automatically switch to speed mode; after JOG command is done, the drive will return to torque mode.
25	REV JOG command	This function is valid when the source of operation command is external terminals. When the contact of this function is ON the drive will execute reverse Jog command. When execute JOG command under torque mode, the drive will automatically switch to speed mode; after JOG command is done, the drive will return to torque mode.

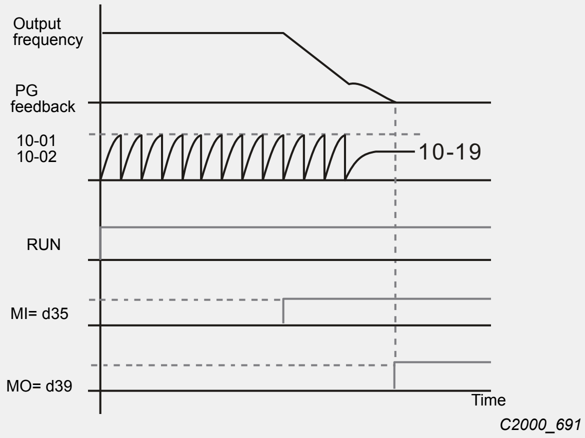
Tab. 12-6: Functions of the programmable inputs (2)

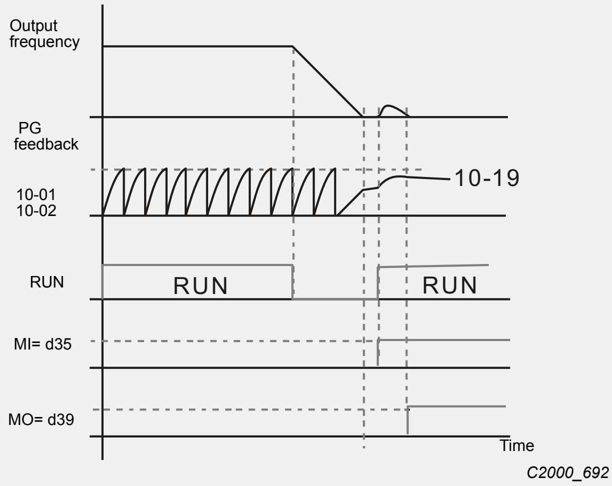
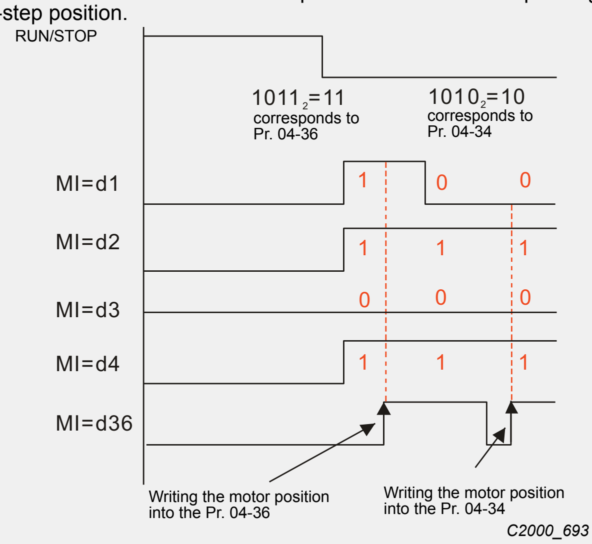
Settings	Functions	Descriptions
26	FOCPG/TQCPG mode selection	When the contact of this function is ON: TQCPG mode. When the contact of this function is OFF: FOCPG mode.  Switch timing for torque/speed control (00-10=0/4, multi-function input terminal is set to 26) *C2000_687*
27	ASR1/ASR2 selection	When the contact of this function is ON: speed will be adjusted by ASR 2 setting. OFF: speed will be adjusted by ASR 1 setting. Refer to Pr.11-02 for details.
28	Emergency stop (EF1)	When the contact is ON, the drive will execute emergency stop and display EF1 on the keypad. The motor won't run and be in the free run until the fault is cleared after pressing RESET" (EF: External fault)  *C2000_688*
29	Signal confirmation for Y-connection	When is the contact of this function is ON, the drive will operate by 1st V/f.
30	Signal confirmation for Δ-connection	When the contact of this function is ON, the drive will operate by 2nd V/f.
31	High torque bias	Refer to Pr. 11-30–11-32 for details.
32	Middle torque bias	
33	Low torque bias	

Tab. 12-6: Functions of the programmable inputs (3)

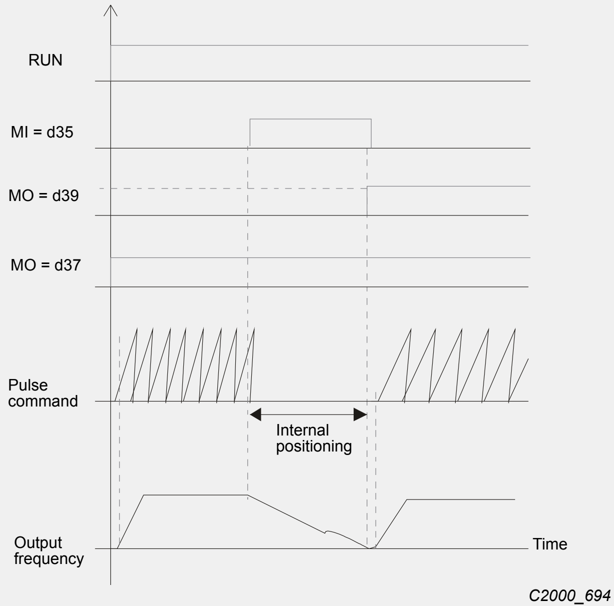
Settings	Functions	Descriptions
34	Switch between multi-step position and multi-speed control	When the contact of this function is ON, the corresponding 15-step speed for the multi-function inputs 1-4 will be 15 positions. (Refer to Pr. 04-16 to Pr. 04-44)  C2000_689  C2000_690

Tab. 12-6: Functions of the programmable inputs (4)

<table>
<tr><th>Settings</th><th>Functions</th><th>Descriptions</th></tr>
<tr><td>35</td><td>Enable single-point position control</td><td>When the contact of this function is ON, the will execute internal single-point position control according to the setting in Pr. 10-19. This function is valid in FOCPG mode only.



</td></tr>
<tr><td>36</td><td>Enable multi-step position learning function (valid at stop)</td><td>When the contact of this function is ON/OFF, the drive will base the multi-function inputs 1-4 ON/OFF status to find the corresponding multi-step positions and write current motor position into such corresponding multi-step position.

</td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 12-6: Functions of the programmable inputs (5)

Settings	Functions	Descriptions
37	Full position control pulse command input enable	When Pr. 00-20 is set to 4 or 5 and the contact of this function is ON, the input pulse of PG card is position command. When using this function, it is recommended to set Pr. 11-25 to 0. Example: please refer to the following diagram when using this faction with MI = d35 return to home position,. 
38	Disable EEPROM write function (Parameters written disable)	When the contact of this function is ON, write to EEPROM is disabled. (Changed parameters will not be saved after power off)
39	Torque command direction	For torque control (Pr. 00-10=2), when torque command is AVI or ACI, the contact of this function is ON and it is negative torque.
40	Force coast to stop	When the contact of this function is ON during the operation, the drive will free run to stop.
41	HAND switch	① When MI is switched to off status, it executes a STOP command. , If MI is switched to off during operation, the drive will also stop. ② Using keypad KPC-CC01 to switch between HAND/AUTO, the drive will stop first then switch to the HAND or AUTO status. ③ On the digital keypad KPC-CC01, it will display current drive status (HAND/OFF/AUTO).
42	AUTO switch	

	Bit 1	Bit 0
OFF	0	0
AUTO	0	1
HAND	1	0
OFF	1	1

Settings	Functions	Descriptions
43	Enable resolution selection	Refer to Pr. 02-48 for details.
44	Reverse direction NLhoming	Signal input for reverse direction limit switch. When this terminal of this function is ON, the drive will react to the setting in Pr. 00-40, 00-41, 00-42 accordingly to execute homing in a reverse direction (counter clock-wise). Note: NL means input terminal detection is negative-edge triggered or be regarded as NO (Normal Open)
45	Forward direction PL homing	Signal input for forward direction limit switch. When this terminal of this function is ON, the drive will react to the setting in Pr. 00-40, 00-41, 00-42 accordingly to execute homing in a forward direction (clockwise). Note: PL means input terminal detection is postive-edge triggered or be regarded as NC(Normal Close)
46	Homing ORG	ORG point input. When this terminal of this function is ON, the drive will refer to the setting in Pr. 00-40, 00-41, 00-42 accordingly to execute homing.

Tab. 12-6: Functions of the programmable inputs (6)

<table>
<tr><th>Settings</th><th>Functions</th><th>Descriptions</th></tr>
<tr><td>47</td><td>Homing function enable</td><td>Pr. 00-10 = 3 (homing mode), if the external terminal MIx=47 is OFF, the drive will ignore the home command and execute Point to Point position control.</td></tr>
<tr><td>48</td><td>Mechanical gear ratio switch</td><td>When this contact is ON, the mechanical gear ratio switch will be the second group A2/B2 (refer to 10-04, 10-05 to 10-06, 10-07).</td></tr>
<tr><td>49</td><td>Drive enable</td><td>When drive = enable, RUN command is valid.
When drive = disable, RUN command is invalid.
When drive is in operation, motor coast to stop.
This function will interact with MO=51</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>Master dEb action input</td><td>Input the message setting in this parameter when dEb occurs to Master. This will ensure dEb also occurs to Slave, then Master and Slave will stop simultaneously.</td></tr>
<tr><td>51</td><td>Selection for PLC mode bit 0</td><td rowspan="2"><table><tr><th>PLC status</th><th>Bit 1</th><th>Bit 0</th></tr><tr><td>Disable PLC function (PLC 0)</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>Trigger PLC to operation (PLC 1)</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>Trigger PLC to stop (PLC 2)</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>No function</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr></table></td></tr>
<tr><td>52</td><td>Selection for PLC mode bit1</td></tr>
<tr><td>53</td><td>Enable CANopen quick stop</td><td>When this function is enabled under CANopen control, it will change to quick stop. Refer to Chapter 15 for more details.</td></tr>
<tr><td>54</td><td>Reserved</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>55</td><td>Brake release checking signal</td><td>This parameter needs to be used with Pr. 02-56. The main purpose is to make sure if mechanical brake works or not after triggering brake release command.
If the action is right, mechanical brake will give signal to MI terminal. Please check time sequence chart for reference.</td></tr>
<tr><td>56</td><td>LOCAL/REMOTE selection</td><td>Use Pr. 00-29 to select for LOCAL/REMOTE mode (refer to Pr. 00-29).
When Pr. 00-29 is not set to 0 on the digital keypad KPC-CC01 it will display LOC/REM status. (It will display on the KPC-CC01 if the firmware version is above version 1.021).<table><tr><th></th><th>Bit 0</th></tr><tr><td>REM</td><td>0</td></tr><tr><td>LOC</td><td>1</td></tr></table></td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 12-6: Functions of the programmable inputs (7)

02-09 ⌿ UP/DOWN key mode

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Up/down by the accel/decel time 1: Up/down constant speed (Pr. 02-10)

02-10 ⌿ Constant speed. the accel./decel. speed of the UP/DOWN key

Factory setting: 0.01

Settings	0.01–1.00 Hz/ms

- These settings are used when multi-function input terminals are set to 19/20. Refer to Pr. 02-09 and 02-10 for the frequency up/down command.
- Pr. 02-09 set to 0: it will increase/decrease frequency command (F) by the external terminal UP/DOWN key as shown in the following diagram. In this mode, it also can be controlled by UP/DOWN key on the digital keypad.

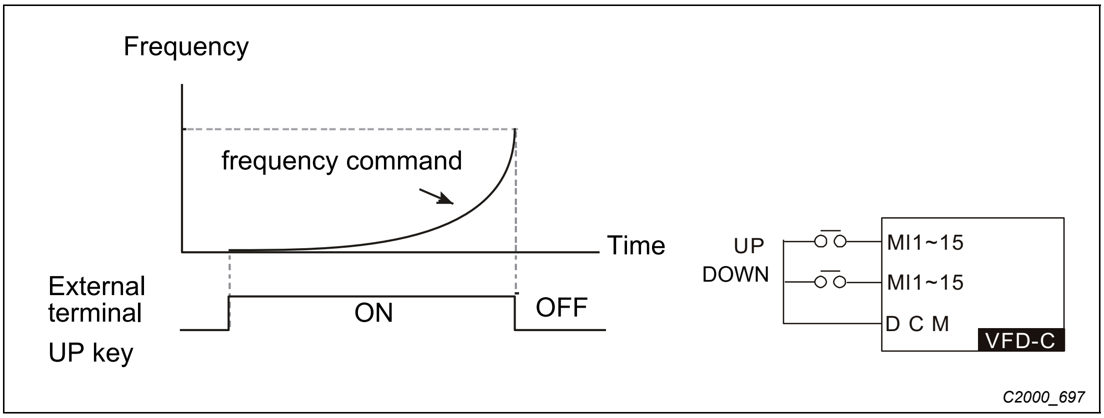


Fig. 12-27: Frequency set value at Pr. 02-09 = 0

■ Pr. 02-09 set to 1: it will increase/decrease frequency command (F) by the setting of acceleration/deceleration (Pr. 01-12–01-19) and only be valid during operation.

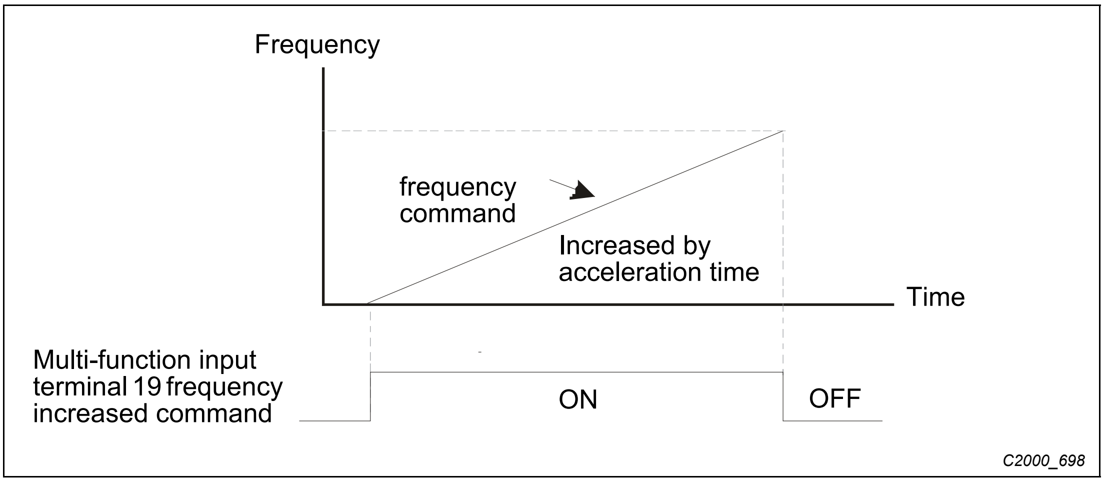


Fig. 12-28: Frequency set value at Pr. 02-09 = 1

02-11 ✗ Digital input response time

Factory setting: 0.005

Settings	0.000–30.000 sec.

- This parameter is used to set the response time of digital input terminals FWD, REV and MI1–MI8.
- It is used for digital input terminal signal delay and confirmation. The delay time is confirmation time to prevent some uncertain interference that would cause error in the input of the digital terminals. Under this condition, confirmation for this parameter would improve effectively, but the response time will be somewhat delayed.
- When using MI8 as encoder pulse feedback input, this parameter will not be referred.

02-12 ✗ Digital input operation setting

Factory setting: 0000

Settings	0000 h–FFFF h (0: N.O ; 1: N.C)

- The setting of this parameter is in hexadecimal.
- This parameter is to set the status of multi-function input signal (0: Normal Open; 1: Normal Close) and it is not affected by the SINK/SOURCE status.
- Bit0 is for FWD terminal, bit1 is for REV terminal and Bit2 to Bit15 is for MI1 to MI14.
- User can change terminal status by communicating.
  For example, MI1 is set to 1 (multi-step speed command 1), MI2 is set to 2 (multi-step speed command 2). Then the forward + 2nd step speed command= 1001 (binary) = 9 (Decimal). Pr.02-12= 9 needs to be set by communication to run forward with 2nd step speed. No need to wire any multi-function terminal.

Bit15	Bit14	Bit13	Bit12	Bit11	Bit10	Bit9	Bit8	Bit7	Bit6	Bit5	Bit4	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0
MI14	MI13	MI12	MI11	MI10	MI9	MI8	MI7	MI6	MI5	MI4	MI3	MI2	MI1		

C2000_701

- Through the Pr. 11-42, Bit 1, it could make setting of FWD/REV terminals whether are controlled by Pr. 02-12, Bit 0 & 1.

02-13 ✗ Multi-function Output 1 (Relay1)

Factory setting: 11

02-14 ✗ Multi-function Output 2 (Relay2)

Factory setting: 1

02-16 ✗ Multi-function Output 3 (MO1)

02-17 ✗ Multi-function Output 4 (MO2)

02-36 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO10) or (RA10)

02-37 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO11) or (RA11)

02-38 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO12) or (RA12)

02-39 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO13) or (RA13)

02-40 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO14) or (RA14)

02-41 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO15) or (RA15)

02-42 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO16)

02-43 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO17)

02-44 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO18)

02-45 ✗ Output terminal of I/O extension card (MO19)

02-46 ✗ Output terminal of the I/O extension card (MO20)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: No function
	1: Operation Indication
	2: Operation speed attained
	3: Desired frequency attained 1 (Pr. 02-22)
	4: Desired frequency attained 2 (Pr. 02-24)
	5: Zero speed (Frequency command)
	6: Zero speed, include STOP (Frequency command)
	7: Over torque 1 (Pr. 06-06–06-08)
	8: Over torque 2 (Pr. 06-09–06-11)
	9: Drive is ready
	10: Low voltage warning (LV) (Pr. 06-00)
	11: Malfunction indication
	12: Mechanical brake release (Pr. 02-32)
	13: Overheat warning (Pr. 06-15)
	14: Software brake signal indication (Pr. 07-00)
	15: PID feedback error

16: Slip error (oSL)

17: Terminal count value attained
(Pr. 02-20; not return to 0)

18: Preliminary count value attained
(Pr. 02-19; returns to 0)

19: Base Block

20: Warning output

21: Over voltage warning

22: Over-current stall prevention warning

23: Over-voltage stall prevention warning

24: Operation mode indication

25: Forward command

26: Reverse command

27: Output when current >= Pr. 02-33 (>= 02-33)

28: Output when current <= Pr. 02-33 (<= 02-33)

29: Output when frequency >= Pr. 02-34 (>= 02-34)

30: Output when frequency <= Pr. 02-34 (<= 02-34)

31: Y-connection for the motor coil

32: Δ-connection for the motor coil

33: Zero speed (actual output frequency)

34: Zero speed include stop
(actual output frequency)

35: Error output selection 1 (Pr. 06-23)

36: Error output selection 2 (Pr. 06-24)

37: Error output selection 3 (Pr. 06-25)

38: Error output selection 4 (Pr. 06-26)

39: Position attained (Pr. 10-19)

40: Speed attained (including Stop)

41: Multi-position attained

42: Crane function

43: Actual motor speed slower than Pr. 02-47

44: Low current output (Pr. 06-71 to Pr. 06-73)

45: UVW Output Electromagnetic
valve On/Off Switch

46: Master dEb action output

47: Closed brake output

48: Reserved

49: Homing action complete

50: Output for CANopen control

51: Output for RS485 communication

52: Output for communication board

53–64: Reserved

65: Output for CANopen and RS485

66: SO contact A (N.O.)

67: Analog input signal level achieved

68: SO contact B (N.C.)

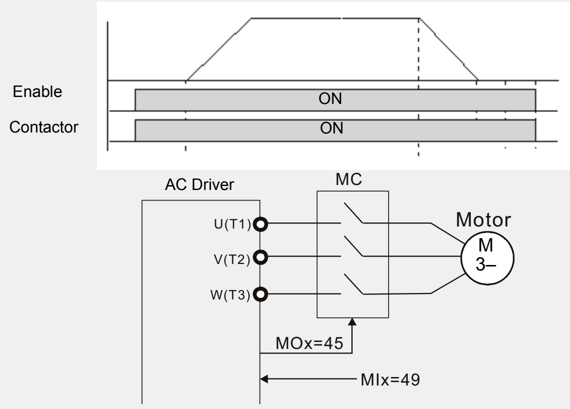
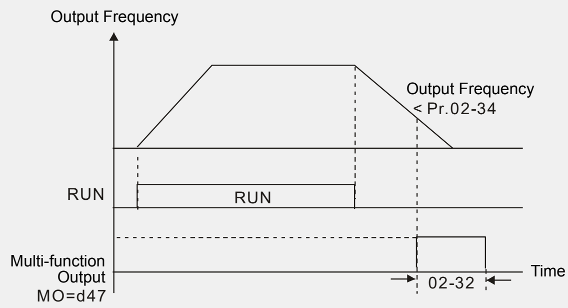
- This parameter is used for setting the function of multi-function terminals.
- Pr. 02-36–Pr. 02-41 requires additional extension cards to display the parameters, the choices of optional cards are EMC-D42A and EMC-R6AA.
- The optional card EMC-D42A provides 2 output terminals and can be used with Pr. 02-36–02-37.
- The optional card EMC-R6AA provides 6 output terminals and can be used with Pr. 02-36–02-41.
- Summary of function settings (Take the normally open contact for example, ON: contact is closed, OFF: contact is open)

Settings	Functions	Descriptions
0	No Function	
1	Operation Indication	Active when the drive is not at STOP.
2	Master Frequency Attained	Active when the reaches the output frequency setting.
3	Desired Frequency Attained 1 (Pr.02-22)	Active when the desired frequency (Pr.02-22) is attained.
4	Desired Frequency Attained 2 (Pr.02-24)	Active when the desired frequency (Pr.02-24) is attained.
5	Zero Speed (frequency command)	Active when frequency command = 0. (the drive should be at RUN mode)
6	Zero Speed with Stop (frequency command)	Active when frequency command = 0 or stop.
7	Over Torque 1	Active when detecting over-torque. Refer to Pr. 06-07 (over-torque detection level-OT1) and Pr. 06-08 (over-torque detection time-OT1). Refer to Pr. 06-06–06-08.
8	Over Torque 2	Active when detecting over-torque. Refer to Pr.06-10 (over-torque detection level-OT2) and Pr. 06-11 (over-torque detection time-OT2). Refer to Pr. 06-09–06-11.
9	Drive Ready	Active when the drive is ON and no abnormality detected.
10	Low voltage warn (Lv)	Active when the DC Bus voltage is too low. (refer to Pr.06-00 low voltage level)
11	Malfunction Indication	Active when fault occurs (except Lv stop).
12	Mechanical Brake Release (Pr.02-32)	When drive runs after Pr. 02-32, it will be ON. This function should be used with DC brake and it is recommended to use contact “b” (N.C).
13	Overheat	Active when IGBT or heat sink overheats to prevent OH turn off the drive. (refer to Pr. 06-15)
14	Software Brake Signal Indication	Active when the soft brake function is ON. (refer to Pr.07-00)
15	PID Feedback Error	Active when the feedback signal is abnormal.
16	Slip Error (oSL)	Active when the slip error is detected.
17	Counting value achieved (Pr. 02-20; no reset to 0)	Active when the counter reaches Terminal Counter Value (Pr.02-19). This contact won’t active when Pr.02-20 > Pr.02-19.
18	Preliminary Counter Value Attained (Pr.02-19; returns to 0)	Active when the counter reaches Preliminary Counter Value (Pr.02-19).
19	External Base Block input (B.B.)	Active when the output of the is shut off during base block.
20	Warning Output	Active when the warning is detected.
21	Over-voltage Warning	Active when the over-voltage is detected.
22	Over-current Stall Prevention Warning	Active when the over-current stall prevention is detected.
23	Over-voltage Stall prevention Warning	Active when the over-current stall prevention is detected.
24	Operation Mode Indication	Active when the operation command is controlled by external terminal. (Pr.00-21≠0)
25	Forward Command	Active when the operation direction is forward.
26	Forward Command	Active when the operation direction is reverse.
27	Output when Current >= Pr.02-33	Active when current is >= Pr. 02-33.
28	Output when Current < Pr.02-33	Active when current is < Pr.02-33
29	Output when frequency >= Pr.02-34	Active when frequency is >= Pr.02-34.
30	Output when Frequency < Pr.02-34	Active when frequency is <Pr.02-34
31	Star connection for the motor winding	Active when PR.05-24=1, when frequency output is lower than Pr.05-23 minus 2Hz, continues longer than 05-25.

Tab. 12-7: Functions of the programmable outputs (1)

<table>
<tr><th>Settings</th><th>Functions</th><th>Descriptions</th></tr>
<tr><td>32</td><td>Δ-connection for the Motor Coil</td><td>Active when PR.05-24=1, when frequency output is higher than Pr.05-23 plus 2Hz, continues longer than 05-25.</td></tr>
<tr><td>33</td><td>Zero Speed (actual output frequency)</td><td>Active when the actual output frequency is 0. (the drive should be at RUN mode)</td></tr>
<tr><td>34</td><td>Zero Speed with Stop (actual output frequency)</td><td>Active when the actual output frequency is 0 or Stop.</td></tr>
<tr><td>35</td><td>Error Output Selection 1 (Pr.06-23)</td><td>Active when Pr.06-23 is ON.</td></tr>
<tr><td>36</td><td>Error Output Selection 2 (Pr.06-24)</td><td>Active when Pr.06-24 is ON.</td></tr>
<tr><td>37</td><td>Error Output Selection 3 (Pr.06-25)</td><td>Active when Pr.06-25 is ON.</td></tr>
<tr><td>38</td><td>Error Output Selection 4 (Pr.06-26)</td><td>Active when Pr.06-26 is ON.</td></tr>
<tr><td>39</td><td>Position Attained (Pr.10-19)</td><td>Active when the PG position control point reaches Pr.10-19.</td></tr>
<tr><td>40</td><td>Speed Attained (including zero speed)</td><td>Active when the output frequency reaches frequency setting or stop.</td></tr>
<tr><td>41</td><td>Multi-position Attained</td><td>User can set any three multi-function input terminals to 41. The current position action status of these three terminals will be outputted. Example: if setting Pr.02-36–02-38 to 41 and only the multi-position of the second point has been done. Therefore, current status is RA (ON), RA (OFF) and MO1 (OFF). In this way, their status is 010. Bit0 is RA and so on.
<table>
<tr><th></th><th>MO2 Pr.02-17=41</th><th>MO1 Pr.02-16=41</th><th>RY2 Pr.02-14=41</th><th>RY1 Pr.02-13=41</th></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-16</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-18</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-20</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-22</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-24</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-26</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-28</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-30</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-32</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-32</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-36</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-38</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-40</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-42</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pr.04-44</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>42</td><td>Crane Function</td><td>This function should be used with Pr.02-32, Pr.02-33, Pr.02-34, Pr.02-57 and Pr.02-58.
Active when setting Pr.07-16=Pr.02-34 and Fcmd > Pr.02-34 and output current > Pr.02-33 and Time > Pr.02-32.
The example of the crane application is in the following for your reference.</td></tr>
<tr><td>43</td><td>Motor Zero-speed Output (Pr.02-47)</td><td>Active when motor actual speed is less than Pr.02-47.</td></tr>
<tr><td>44</td><td>Low Current Output</td><td>This function needs to be used with Pr.06-71 – Pr.06-73</td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 12-7: Functions of the programmable outputs (2)

Settings	Functions	Descriptions
45	UVW Phase Magnet Contractor ON/ OFF Switch	Set MI=49 (drive enable) and MO=45 (electromagnetic contractor ON/OFF switch), then the magnetic contactor will follow the drive status to be ON or OFF.  C2000_717
46	Master dEb signal output	When dEb arises at Master, MO will send a dEb signal to Slave. Then Slave will follow Master's command and decelerate to stop simultaneously.
47	Brake Release at Stop	When drive stops, the corresponding multi-function terminal will be ON if the frequency is less than Pr.02-34. After it is ON, it will be OFF when brake delay time exceeds Pr.02-32.  C2000_718
48	Reserved	
49	Homing Action Complete	Output when homing action complete.

Tab. 12-7: Functions of the programmable outputs (3)

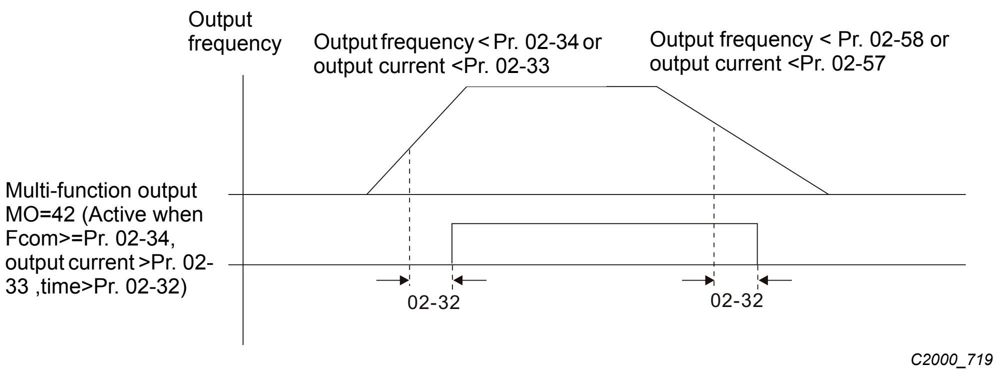
<table>
<tr><th>Settings</th><th>Functions</th><th>Descriptions</th></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>Output for CANopen control</td><td>Control multi-function output terminals through CANopen.
If to control RY2, then the Pr02-14 = 50.
The mapping table of the CANopen DO is below:
<table>
<tr><th>Physical terminal</th><th>Setting of related parame-ters</th><th>Attribute</th><th>Corresponding Index</th></tr>
<tr><td>RY1</td><td>P2-13 = 50</td><td>RW</td><td>The bit 0 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>RY2</td><td>P2-14 = 50</td><td>RW</td><td>The bit 1 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO1</td><td>P2-16 = 50</td><td>RW</td><td>The bit 2 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO2</td><td>P2-17 = 50</td><td>RW</td><td>The bit 3 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO10</td><td rowspan="2">P2-36 = 50</td><td rowspan="2">RW</td><td>The bit 4 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>RY10</td><td>The bit 5 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO11</td><td rowspan="2">P2-37 = 50</td><td rowspan="2">RW</td><td>The bit 6 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>RY11</td><td>The bit 7 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>RY12</td><td>P2-38 = 50</td><td>RW</td><td>The bit 8 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>RY13</td><td>P2-39 = 50</td><td>RW</td><td>The bit 9 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>RY14</td><td>P2-40 = 50</td><td>RW</td><td>The bit 10 at 2026-41</td></tr>
<tr><td>RY15</td><td>P2-41 = 50</td><td>RW</td><td>The bit 0 at 2026-41</td></tr>
</table>
Refer to Chapter 15-3-5 for more information.</td></tr>
<tr><td>51</td><td>Output for RS485 communication</td><td>For RS485 output.</td></tr>
<tr><td>52</td><td>Output for communication card</td><td>For communication output of communication cards (CMC-MOD01, CMC-EIP01, CMC-PN01 and CMC-DN01)
<table>
<tr><th>Physical terminal</th><th>Setting of related pa-rameters</th><th>Attribute</th><th>Corresponding address</th></tr>
<tr><td>RY1</td><td>P2-13 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 0 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>RY2</td><td>P2-14 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 1 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>P2-15 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 2 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO1</td><td>P2-16 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 3 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO2</td><td>P2-17 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 4 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO3</td><td>P2-18 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 5 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO4</td><td>P2-19 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 6 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO5</td><td>P2-20 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 7 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO6</td><td>P2-21 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 8 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO7</td><td>P2-22 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 9 of 2640</td></tr>
<tr><td>MO8</td><td>P2-23 = 51</td><td>RW</td><td>The Bit 10 of 2640</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>53–64</td><td>Reserved</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 12-7: Functions of the programmable outputs (4)

<table>
<tr><th>Settings</th><th>Functions</th><th>Descriptions</th></tr>
<tr><td>65</td><td>Output for CANopen and RS485</td><td>To be control output of CANopen & RS485.</td></tr>
<tr><td>66</td><td rowspan="2">SO contact A (N.O.)
SO contact B (N.C.)</td><td rowspan="2">
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Status of drive</th><th colspan="2">Status of safety output</th></tr>
<tr><th>N.O. (MO=66)</th><th>N.C. (MO=68)</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal</td><td>Broken circuit (Open)</td><td>Short circuit (Close)</td></tr>
<tr><td>STO</td><td>Short circuit (Close)</td><td>Broken circuit (Open)</td></tr>
<tr><td>STL1–STL3</td><td>Short circuit (Close)</td><td>Broken circuit (Open)</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>68</td></tr>
<tr><td>67</td><td>Analog input signal level achieved</td><td>Multi-function output terminals operate when analog input signal level is between high level and low level.
03-44: Select the analog signal channel, AVI, ACI, and AUI which is going to be compared.
03-45: The high level of analog input, factory setting is 50 %.
03-46: The low level of analog input, factory setting is 10 %.
If analog input > 03-45, then multi-function output terminal operates.
If analog input < 03-46, then multi-function output terminal stops outputting.</td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 12-7: Functions of the programmable outputs (5)

EXAMPLE Crane application



It is recommended to be used with Dwell function as shown in the following:

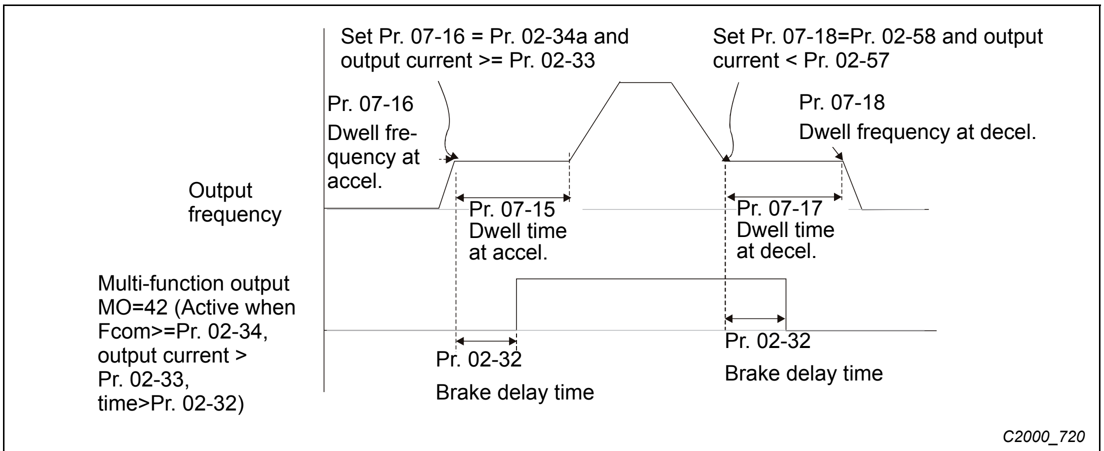


Fig. 12-29: Crane application with the use of the dwell time

02-18 ⌿ Multi-function output setting

Factory setting: 0000

Settings	0000 h–FFFF h (0: N.O.; 1: N.C.)

- The setting of this parameter is in hexadecimal.
- The setting of this parameter is in hexadecimal.
  multi-function output acts in the opposite way.
  Example:
  If Pr. 02-13 = 1 and Pr. 02-18 = 0, Relay 1 is ON when the drive runs and is open when the drive is stopped.
  If Pr. 02-13 = 1 and Pr. 02-18 = 1, Relay 1 is open when the drive runs and is closed when the drive is stopped.
- Bit setting

bit15	bit14	bit13	bit12	bit11	bit10	bit9	bit8	bit7	bit6	bit5	bit4	bit3	bit2	bit1	bit0
MO20	MO19	MO18	MO17	MO16	MO15	MO14	MO13	MO12	MO11	MO10	MO2	MO1	Reserved	RY2	RY1

02-19 ⌿ Terminal counting value attained (return to 0)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535

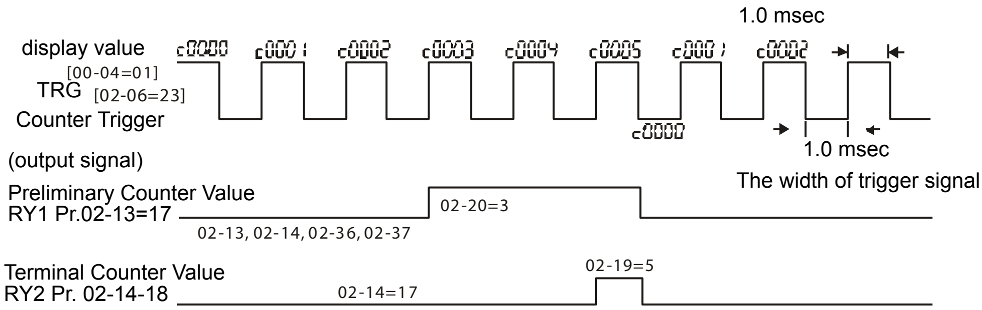
- The counter trigger can be set by the multi-function terminal MI6 (set Pr. 02-06 to 23). Upon completion of counting, the specified multi-function output terminal will be activated (Pr. 02-13–02-14, Pr. 02-36, 02-37 is set to 18). Pr. 02-19 can’t be set to 0.
- When the display shows c5555, the drive has counted 5,555 times. If display shows c5555•, it means that real counter value is between 55,550 to 55,559.

02-20 〆 Preliminary counting value attained (not return to 0)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535

■ When the counter value counts from 1 and reaches this value, the corresponding multi-function output terminal will be activated, provided one of Pr. 02-13, 02-14, 02-36, 02-37 set to 17 (Preliminary Count Value Setting). This parameter can be used for the end of the counting to make the drive runs from the low speed to sto



02-21 〆 Digital output gain（DFM）

Factory setting: 1

Settings	1–166

■ It is used to set the signal for the digital output terminals (DFM-DCM) and digital frequency output (pulse X work period = 50 %). Output pulse per second = output frequency X Pr. 02-21.

02-22 〆 Desired frequency attained 1

Factory setting: 60.00/50.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

02-23 〆 The width of the desired frequency attained 1

Factory setting: 2.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

02-24 〆 Desired frequency attained 2

Factory setting: 60.00/50.00

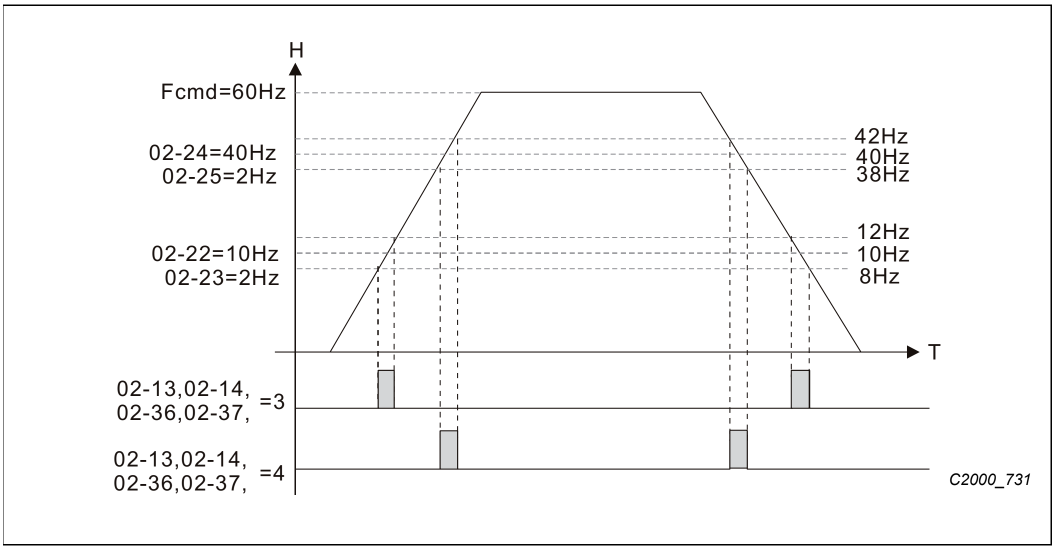
Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

02-25 ✓ The width of the desired frequency attained 2

Factory setting: 2.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

■ Once output frequency reaches desired frequency and the corresponding multi-function output terminal is set to 3 or 4 (Pr. 02-13, 02-14, 02-36, and 02-37), this multi-function output terminal will be ON.

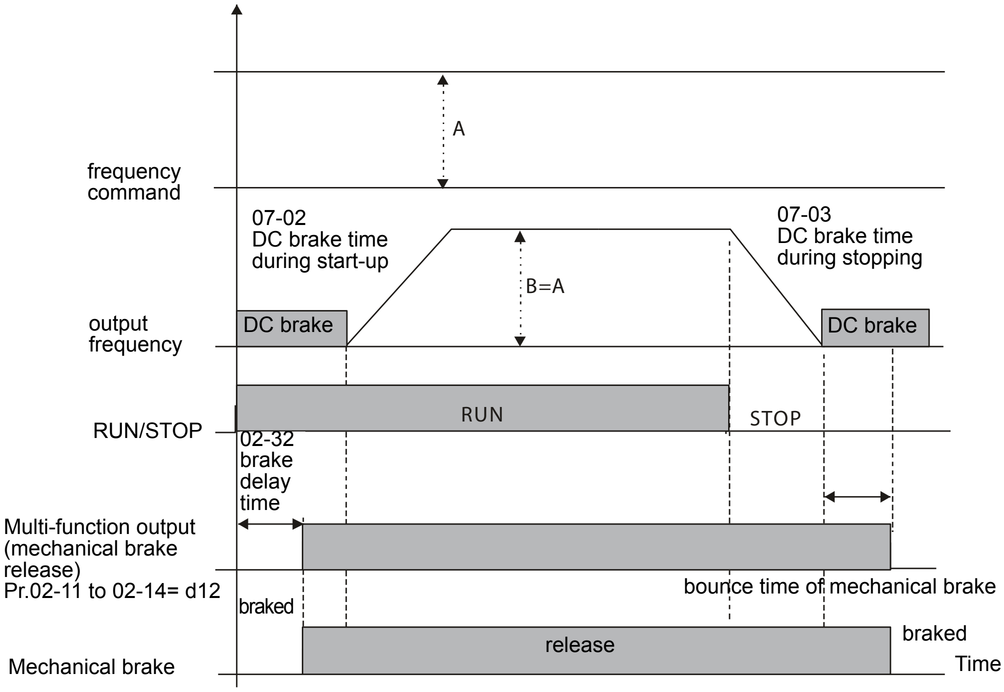


02-32 ✗ Brake delay time

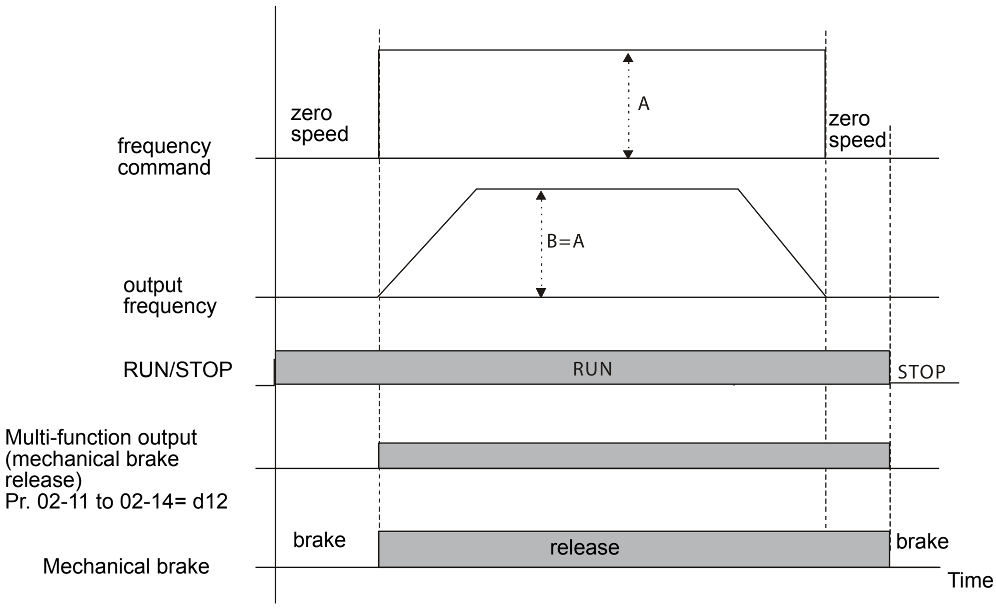
Factory setting: 0.000

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- When the runs after Pr. 02-32 delay time, the corresponding multi-function output terminal (12: mechanical brake release) will be ON. It has to use this function with DC brake



- If this parameter is used without DC brake, it will be invalid. Refer to the following operation timing.



02-33 ⚡ Output current level setting for multi-function output terminals

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–100 %

- When output current is higher or equal to Pr. 02-33, it will activate multi-function output terminal (Pr. 02-13, 02-14, 02-16 and 02-17 is set to 27).
- When output current is lower or equal to Pr. 02-33, it will activate multi-function output terminal (Pr. 02-13, 02-14, 02-16 and 02-17 is set to 28).

02-34 ⚡ Output boundary for multi-function output terminals

Factory setting: 3.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- When output frequency is higher or equal to Pr. 02-34, it will activate the multi-function terminal (Pr. 02-13, 02-14, 02-16, 02-17 is set to 29).
- When output frequency is lower or equal to Pr. 02-34, it will activate the multi-function terminal (Pr. 02-13, 02-14, 02-16, 02-17 is set to 30).

02-35 ⚡ External operation control selection after reset and activate

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable
	1: Drive runs if the run command still exists after reset or re-boots.

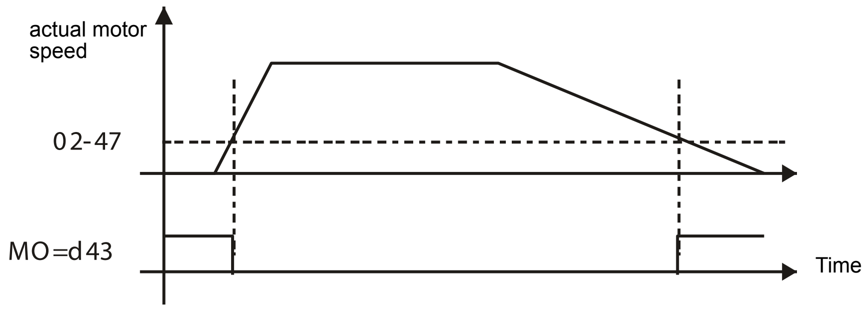
- Setting 1:
  Status 1: After the drive is powered on and the external terminal for RUN keeps ON, the drive will run.
  Status 2: After clearing fault once a fault is detected and the external terminal for RUN keeps ON, the drive can run after pressing RESET key.

02-47 ⚡ Zero-speed level of motor

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535 rpm

- This parameter should be used with the multi-function output terminals (set to 43). It needs to be used with PG cared and motor with encoder feedback.
- This parameter is used to set the level of motor zero-speed. When the actual speed is lower than this setting, the corresponding multi-function output terminal 43 will be ON as shown as follows.



02-48 Max. frequency of resolution switch

Factory setting: 60.00

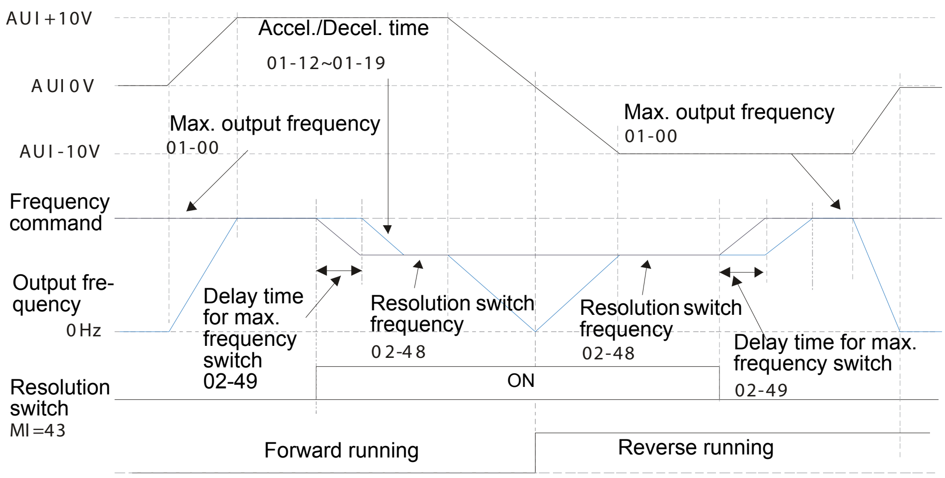
Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

02-49 Switch the delay time of max. output frequency

Factory setting: 0.000

Settings	0.000–65.000 sec.

- It is used to improve the unstable speed or unstable position due to the insufficient of analog resolution. It needs to be used with external terminal (set to 43). After setting this parameter, it needs to adjust the analog output resolution of controller simultaneously by this setting



02-50 ⌿ Display the status of multi-function input terminal

Factory setting: Read only

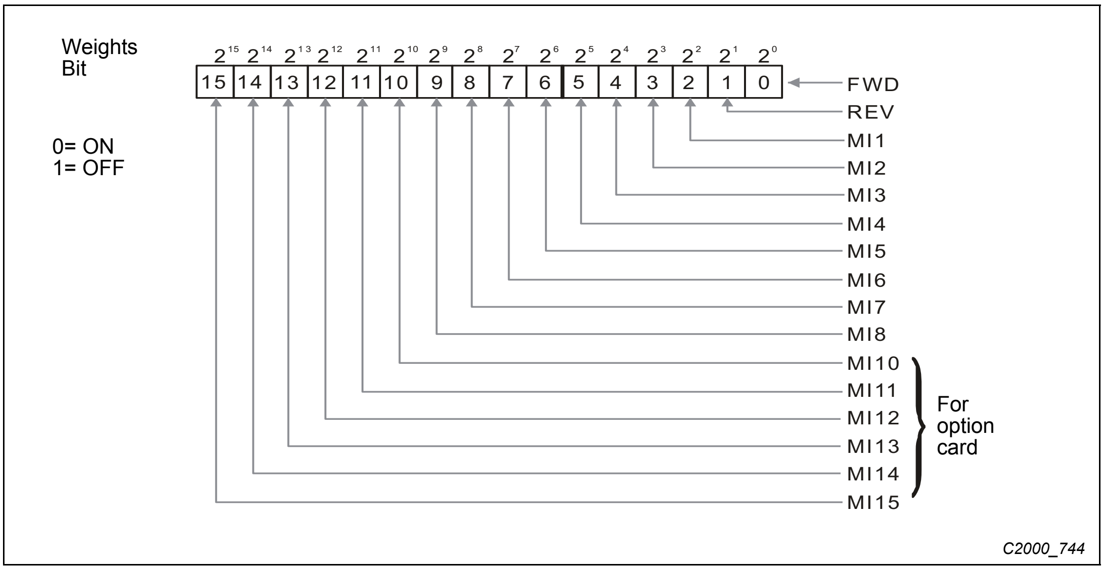
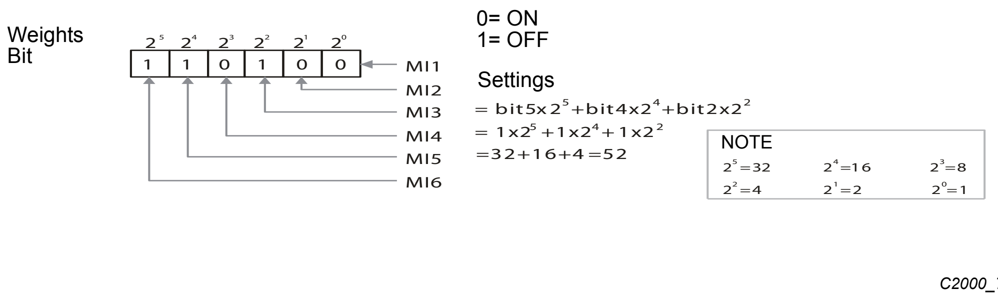


Fig. 12-30: Bit assignment of the programmable inputs

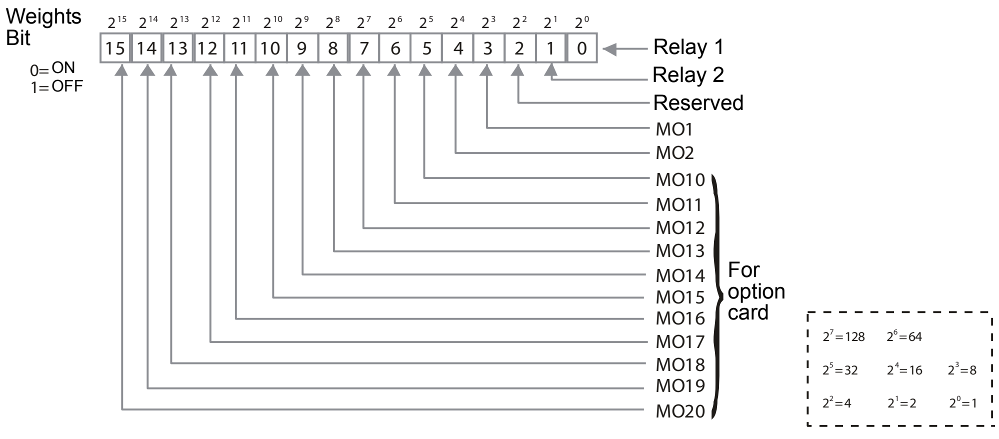
EXAMPLE If Pr. 02-50 displays 0034 h (Hex), i.e. the value is 52, and 110100 (binary). It means MI1, MI3 and MI4 are active.



02-51	✎ Status of multi-function output terminal

Factory setting: Read only

EXAMPLE If Pr. 02-51 displays 000Bh (Hex), i.e. the value is 11, and 1011 (binary). It means RY1, RY2 and MO1 are ON.

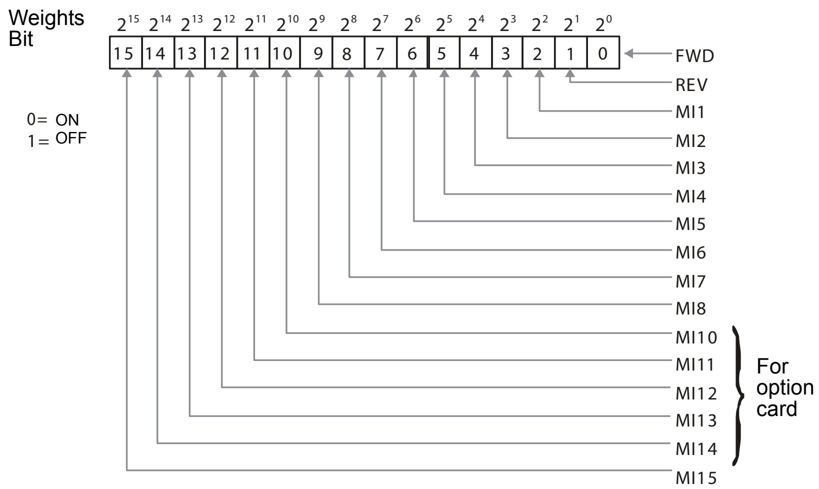


C2000_747

02-52	✎ Display external output terminal occupied by PLC

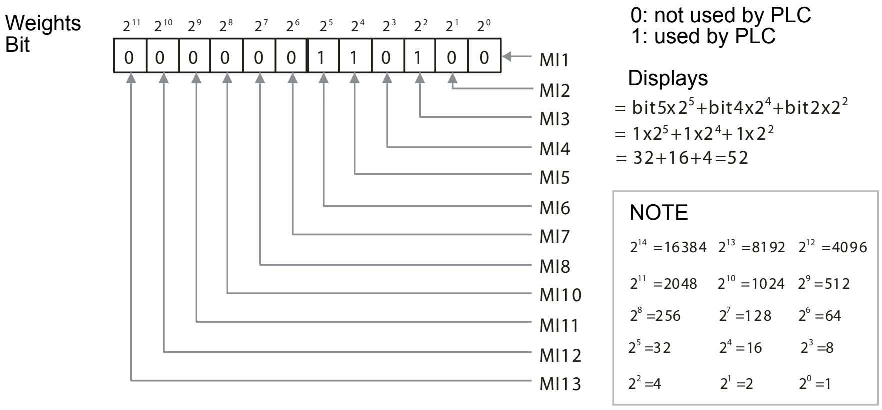
Factory setting: Read only

■ Pr. 02-52 shows the external multi-function input terminal that used by PLC



C2000_749

EXAMPLE When Pr. 02-52 displays 0034 h (hex) and switching to 110100 (binary), it means MI1, MI3 and MI4 are used by PLC.

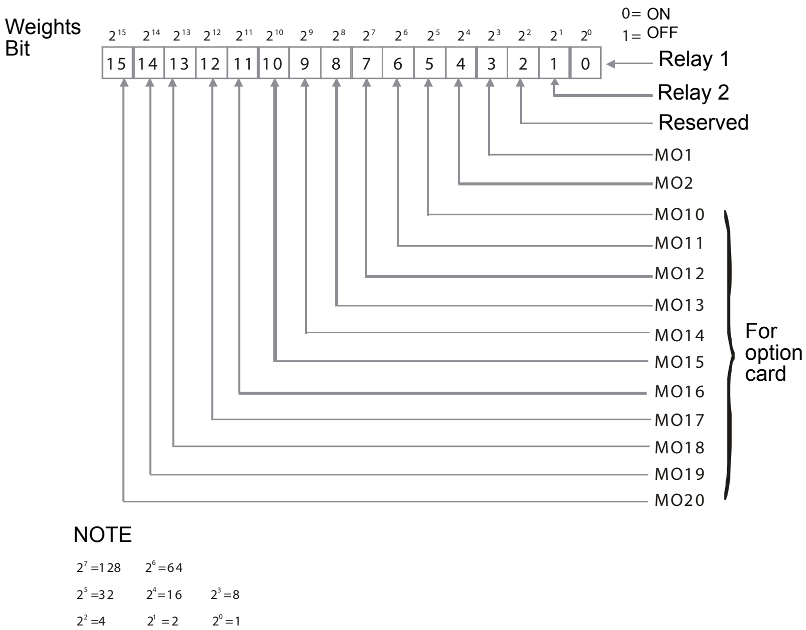


C2000_750

02-53 ⌿ Display multi-function output terminal occupied by PLC

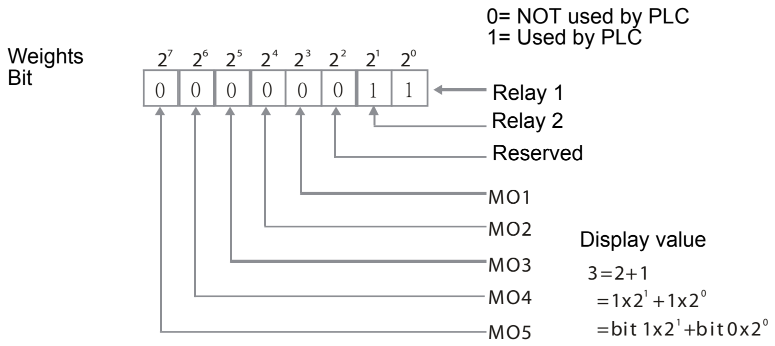
Factory setting: Read only

■ Pr. 02-53 shows the external multi-function output terminal that used by PLC



C2000_752

EXAMPLE If the value of Pr. 02-53 displays 0003 h (Hex), it means RY1and RY2 are used by PLC.



C2000_753

02-54 Display the frequency command executed by external terminal

Factory setting: Read only

■ When the source of frequency command comes from the external terminal, if Lv or Fault occurs at this time, the frequency command of the external terminal will be saved in this parameter.

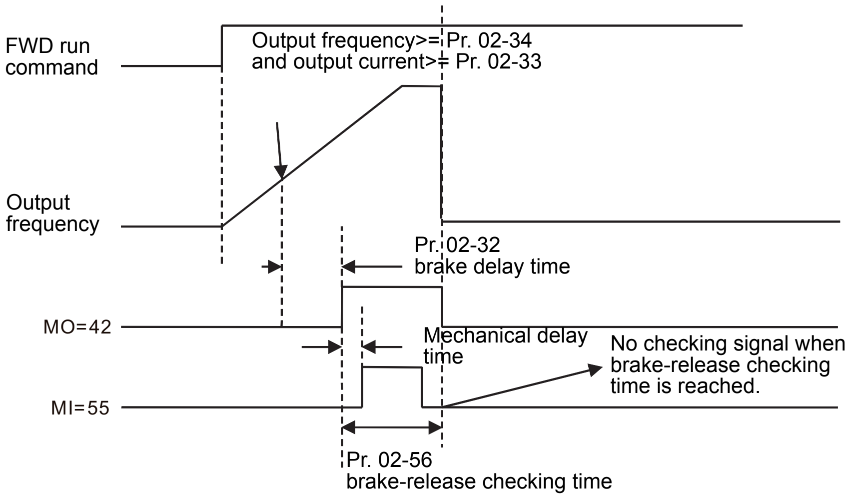
02-55 Reserved

02-56 Release brake check

Factory setting: 0.000

Settings	0.000–65.000 sec.

■ The parameter needs to be used with MI=55. This is to be set for the time difference of mechanical brake delay time and actual brake operation.



C2000_757

02-57 ✗ Multi-function output terminal: Function 42: brake current checking point

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–150 %

02-58 ✗ Multi-function output terminal: Function 42: brake frequency checking point

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 Hz

- Pr. 02-32, Pr. 02-33, Pr. 02-34, Pr. 02-57 and Pr. 02-58 can be applied on setting up cranes. (Choose crane action #42 to set up multi-function output Pr. 02-13, Pr. 02-14, Pr. 02-16, and Pr. 02-17).
- When output current of a drive is higher than the setting of Pr. 02-33 Pivot Point of the Current (>=02-33) and when output frequency is higher than the setting of Pr. 02-34 Pivot Point of the Frequency (>= 02-34), choose #42 to set up Multi-function output Pr. 02-13, Pr. 02-14, Pr. 02-16 and Pr. 002-17 after the delay time set at Pr. 02-32.
- When the Pivot Point of the Current 's setting 02-57≠0 and when the output current of the drive is lower than the setting of Pr. 02-57 (<02-57), or when the output frequency is lower than the setting of Pr. 02-58 (<02-58), the disable the setting #42 of the multi-function output Pr. 02-13, Pr. 02-14, Pr. 02-16, Pr. 02-17.
- When Pr. 02-57 = 0, the output current is lower than setting of Pr. 02-33 Pivot Point of the current (<02-33) or when output frequency is lower than the setting of Pr. 02-58(<02-58), disable the setting of #42 of the multi-function output Pr. 02-13, Pr. 02-14, Pr. 02-16, Pr. 02-17.

02-70 ✗ IO card type

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0: No IO card
	1: EMC-BPS01 card
	2: No IO card
	3: No IO card
	4: EMC-D611A card
	5: EMC-D42A card
	6: EMC-R6AA card
	7: No IO card

12.4 Analog input/output parameter

NOTE ⚡ This parameter can be set during operation.

03-00 ⚡ Analog input selection (AVI)

Factory setting: 1

03-01 ⚡ Analog input selection (ACI)

Factory setting: 0

03-02 ⚡ Analog input selection (AUI)

Factory setting: 0

Settings
0: No function
1: Frequency command (speed limit under torque control mode)
2: Torque command (torque limit under speed mode)
3: Torque offset command
4: PID target value
5: PID feedback signal
6: PTC thermistor input value
7: Positive torque limit
8: Negative torque limit
9: Regenerative torque limit
10: Positive/negative torque limit
11: PT100 thermistor input value
12: Reserved
13: PID compensation value
14–20: Reserved

- When use analog input as PID reference value, Pr. 00-20 must set 2 (analog input).
  Setting method 1: Pr. 03-00–03-02 set 1 as PID reference input
  Setting method 2: Pr. 03-00–03-02 set 4 as PID reference input
  If the setting value 1 and set value 4 existed at the same time, AVI input has highest priority to become PID reference input.
- When use analog input as PID compensation value, Pr. 08-16 must set 1 (Source of PID compensation is analog input). The compensation value can be observed via Pr. 08-17.
- When it is frequency command or TQC speed limit, the corresponding value for 0–±10 V/ 4–20 mA is 0 – max. output frequency (Pr. 01-00)
- When it is torque command or torque limit, the corresponding value for 0–±10 V/4–20 mA is 0 - max. output torque (Pr. 11-27).
- When it is torque compensation, the corresponding value for 0–±10 V/4–20 mA is 0 – rated torque.

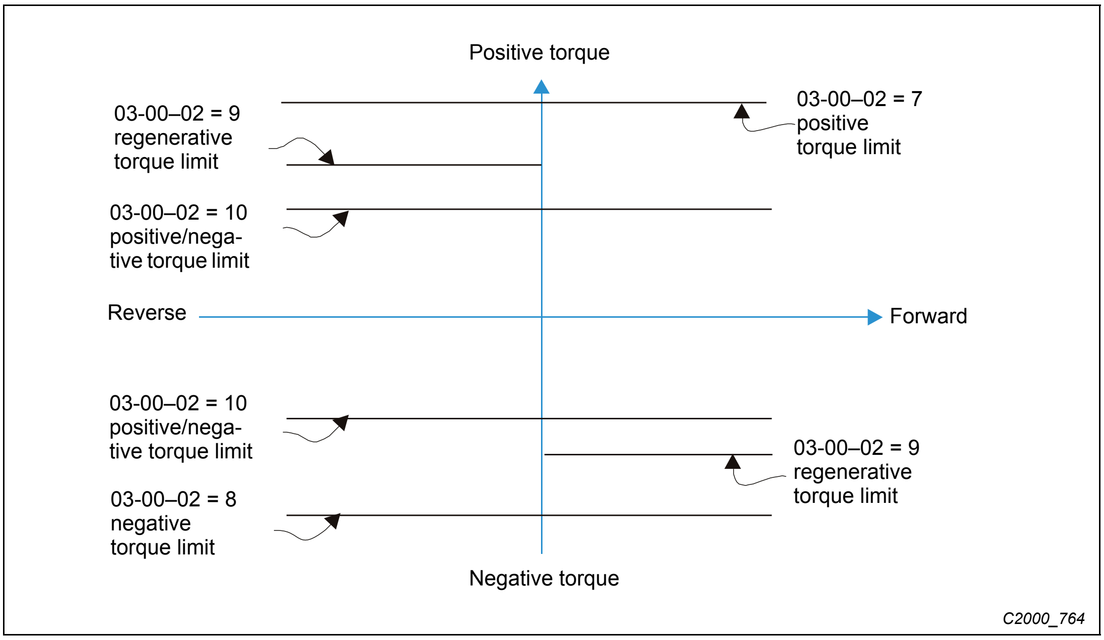


Fig. 12-31: Torque limits

- When Pr. 03-00–Pr. 03-02 have the same setting, then the AVI will be the prioritized selection.

03-03 Analog input bias (AVI)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	–100.0–100.0 %

- It is used to set the corresponding AVI voltage of the external analog input 0.

03-04 Analog input bias (ACI)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	–100.0–100.0 %

- It is used to set the corresponding ACI voltage of the external analog input 0.

03-05 Analog voltage input bias (AUI)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	–100.0–100.0 %

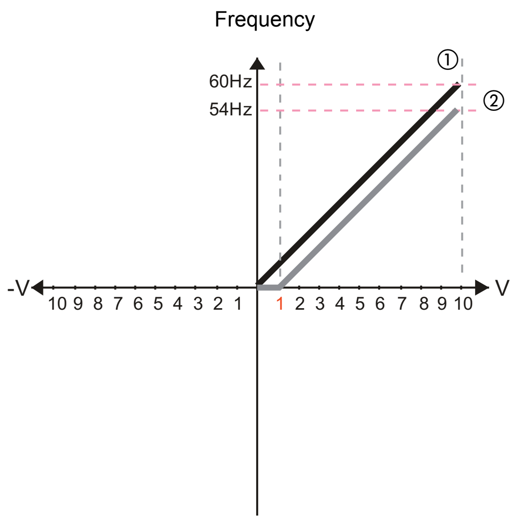
- It is used to set the corresponding AUI voltage of the external analog input 0.
- The relation between external input voltage/current and setting frequency: 0–10 V (4–20 mA) corresponds to 0–Pr. 01-00 (max. operation frequency).

03-06	✗ Reserved
03-07	✗ Positive/negative bias mode (AVI)
03-08	✗ Positive/negative bias mode (ACI)
03-09	✗ Positive/negative bias mode (AUI)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Zero bias 1: Lower than or equal to bias 2: Greater than or equal toe bias 3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center. 4: Serve bias as the center.

■ In a noisy environment, it is advantageous to use negative bias to provide a noise margin. It is recommended NOT to use less than 1 V to set the operation frequency.

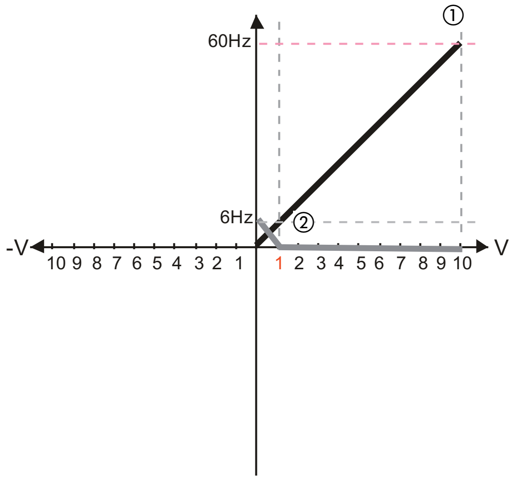


Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_772

① Black line: curve with no bias

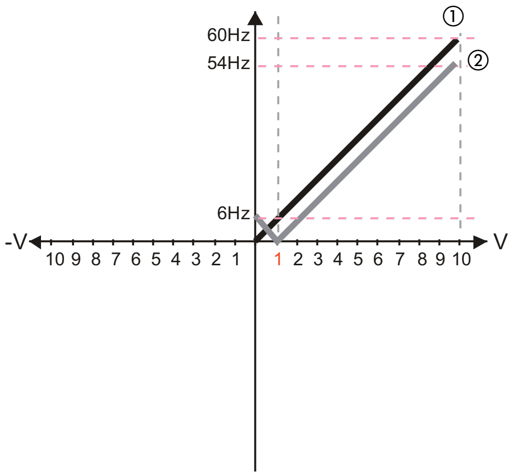
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_773

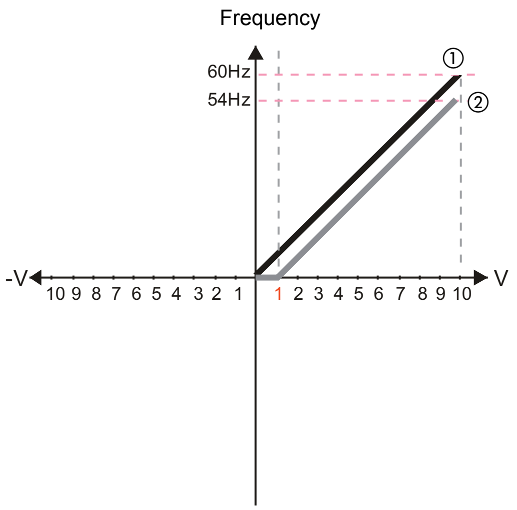
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_774

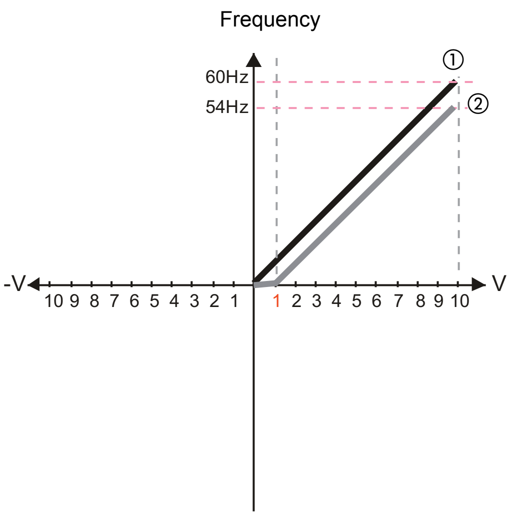
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_775

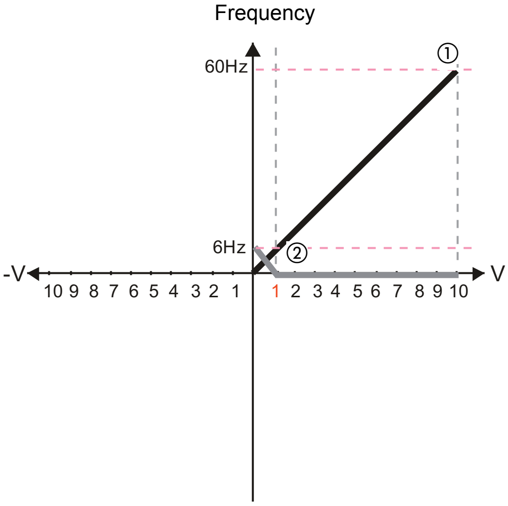
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_776

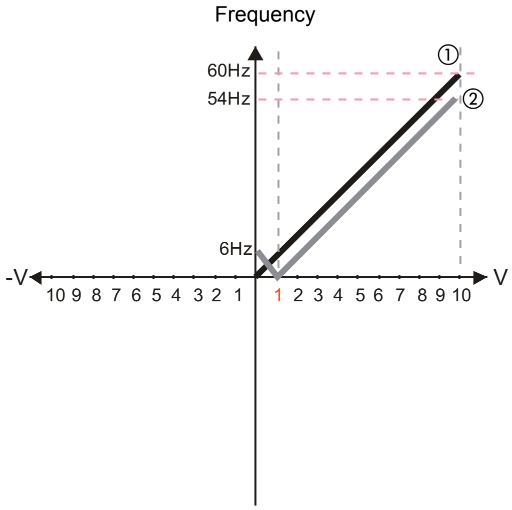
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_777

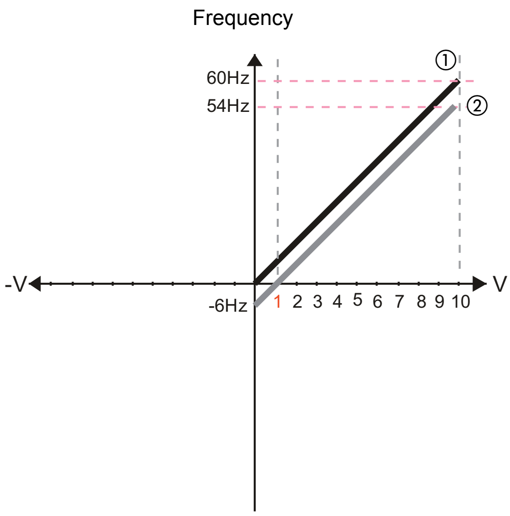
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_778

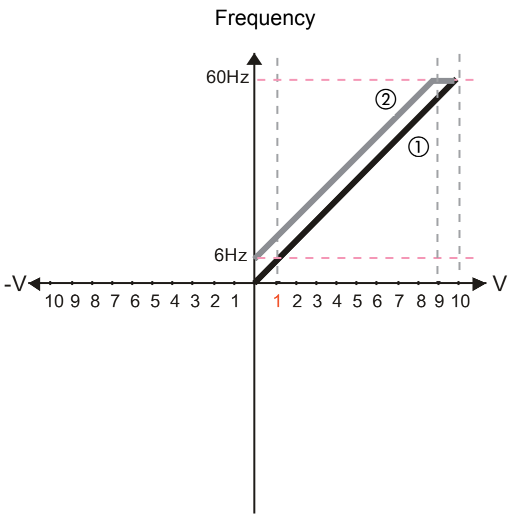
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_779

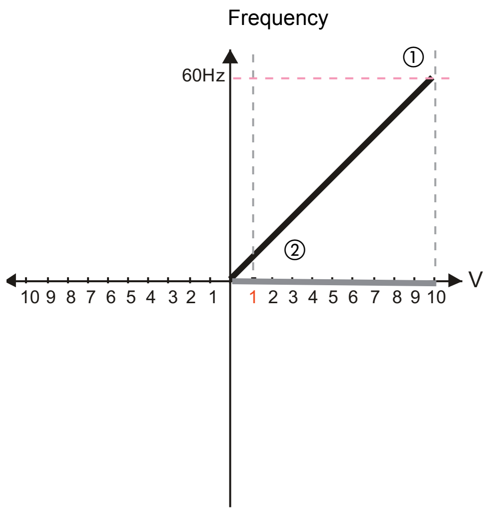
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_780

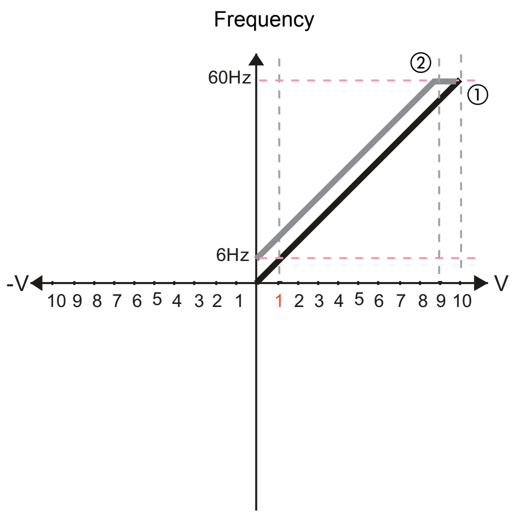
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_781

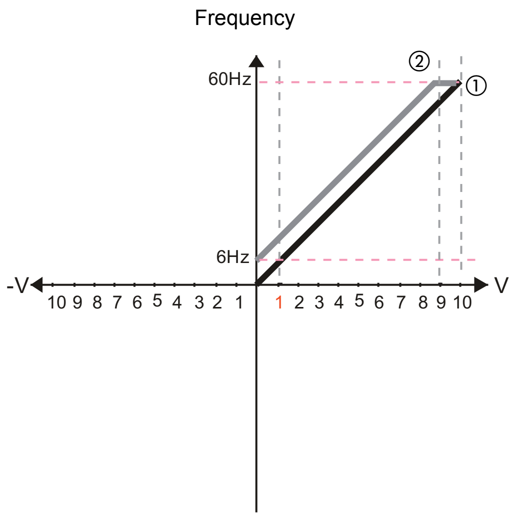
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_783

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias

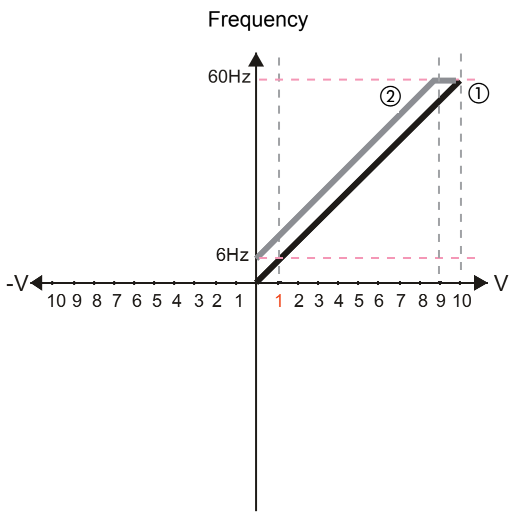


Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_784

① Black line: curve with no bias

② Gray line: curve with bias

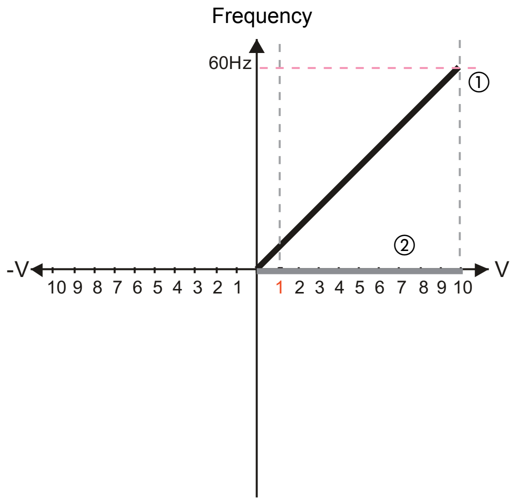


Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_785

① Black line: curve with no bias

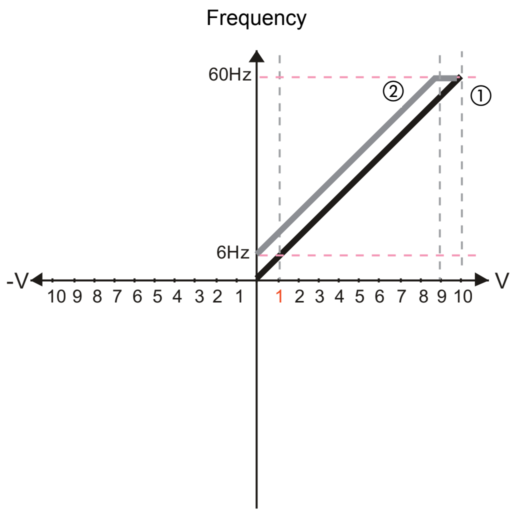
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_786

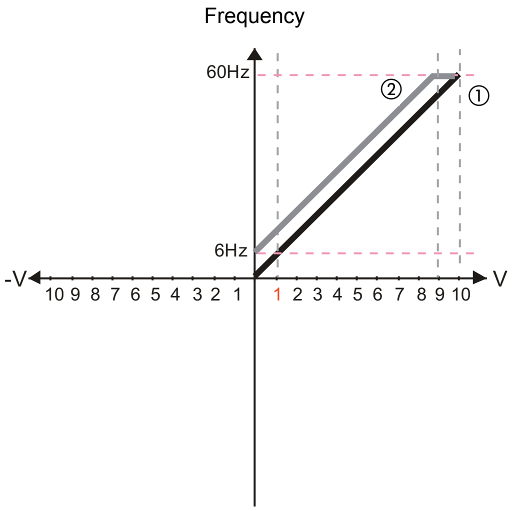
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_787

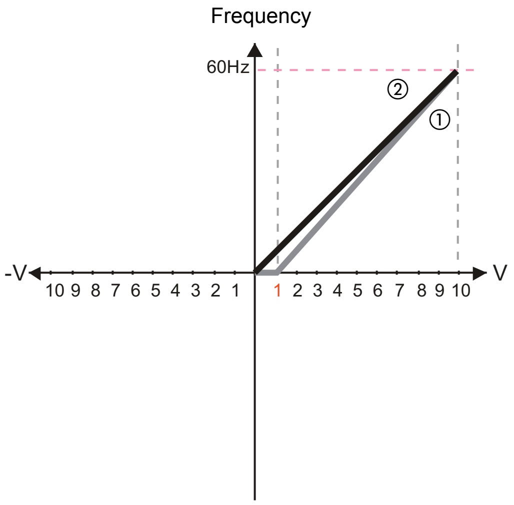
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %

C2000_787

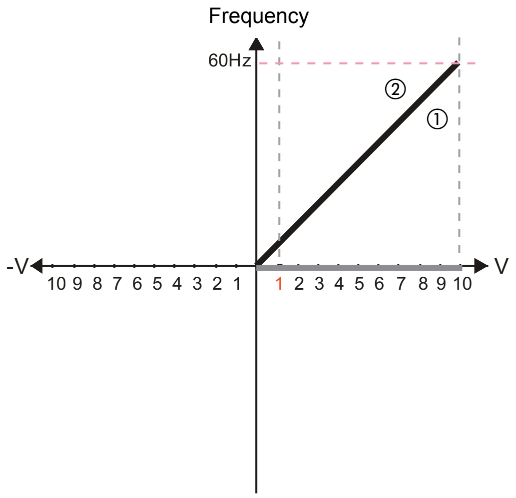
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = -10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 111.1 %
10/9 =111.1 %

C2000_788

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %

Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)

0: No bias

1: Lower than or equal to bias

2: Greater than or equal to bias

3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center

4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)

0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.

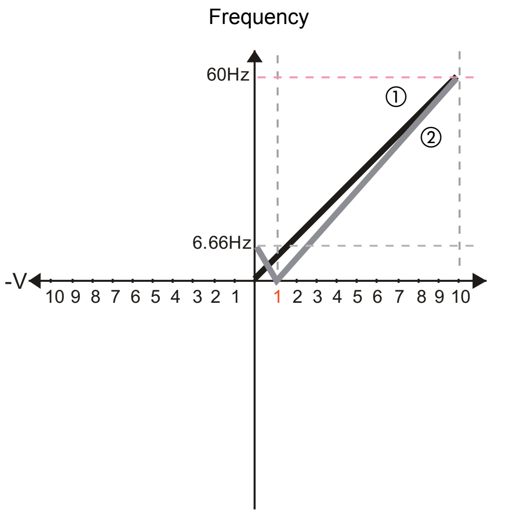
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 111.1 %
10/9 =111.1 %

C2000_789

① Black line: curve with no bias

② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %

Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)

0: No bias

1: Lower than or equal to bias

2: Greater than or equal to bias

3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center

4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)

0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.

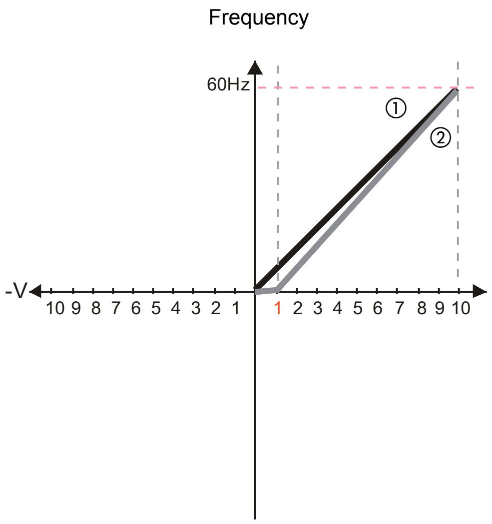
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 111.1 %
10/9 =111.1 %

C2000_790

① Black line: curve with no bias

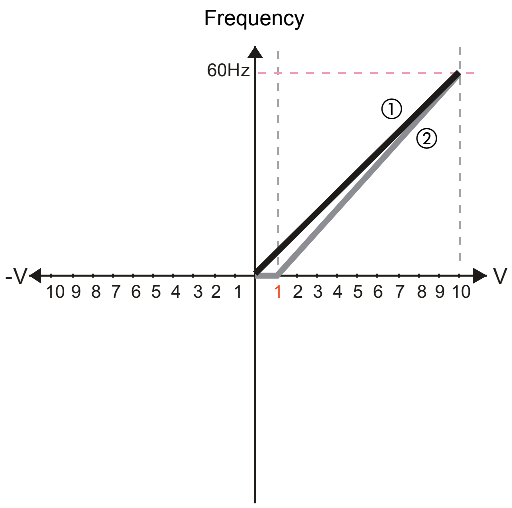
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 111.1 %
10/9 =111.1 %

C2000_791

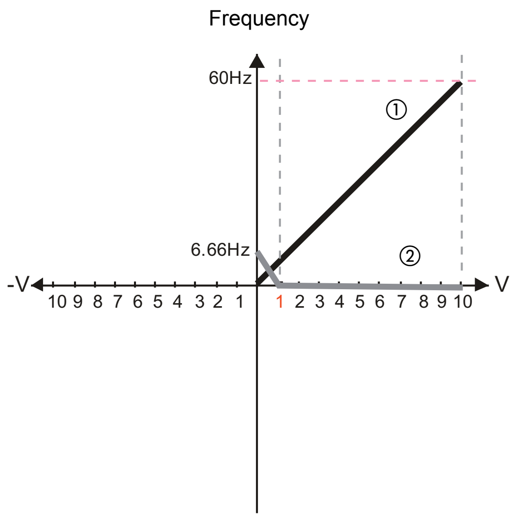
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 111.1 %
10/9 =111.1 %

C2000_792

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %

Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)

0: No bias

1: Lower than or equal to bias

2: Greater than or equal to bias

3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center

4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)

0: Negative frequency is not valid.
Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.

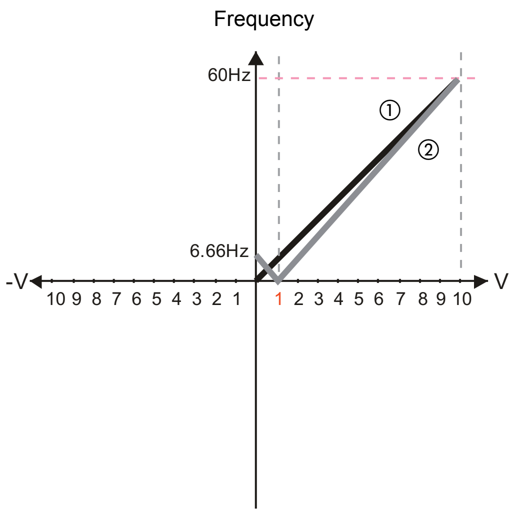
1: Neagtive frequency is valid.
Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction – can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 111.1 %
10/9 =111.1 %

C2000_793

① Black line: curve with no bias

② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %

Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)

0: No bias

1: Lower than or equal to bias

2: Greater than or equal to bias

3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center

4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)

0: Negative frequency is not valid.
Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.

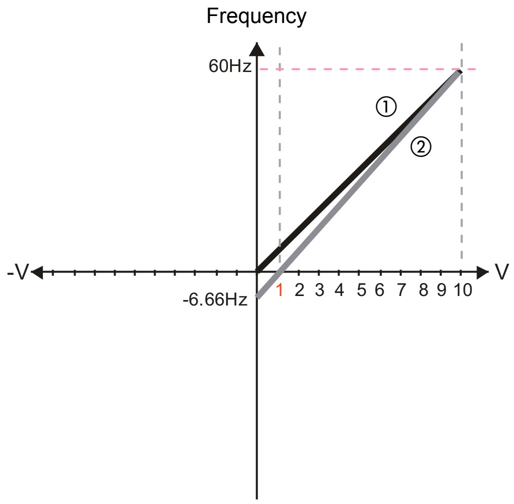
1: Neagtive frequency is valid.
Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 111.1 %
10/9 =111.1 %

C2000_794

① Black line: curve with no bias

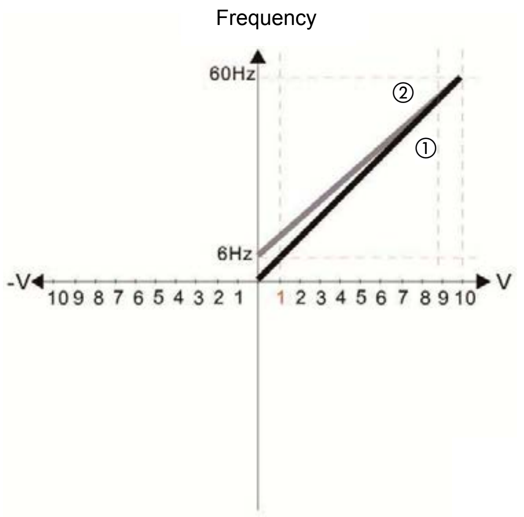
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-03 = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-11 analog input gain (AVI) = 100 %
10/9 =111.1 %

C2000_795

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Calculate the bias:

$$\frac{60\text{-}6\ \text{Hz}}{10\ \text{V}} = \frac{6\text{-}0\ \text{Hz}}{(0\text{-}XV)} \qquad XV = \frac{100}{-9} = -1.11\ \text{V}$$

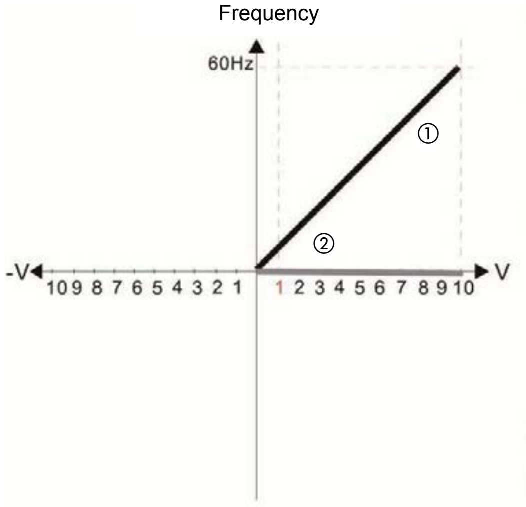
$$03\text{-}03 = \frac{-1.11}{10} \times 100\ \% = -11.1\ \%$$

Calculate the gain:

$$03\text{-}11 = \frac{10\ \text{V}}{11.1\ \text{V}} \times 100\ \% = 90.0\ \%$$

C2000_796

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10
(Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Calculate the bias:

$$\frac{60\text{-}6\text{ Hz}}{10\text{ V}} = \frac{6\text{-}0\text{ Hz}}{(0\text{-}XV)} \qquad XV = \frac{100}{-9} = -1.11\text{ V}$$

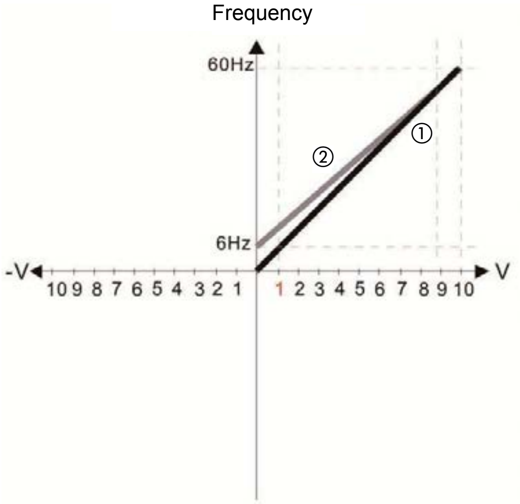
$$03\text{-}03 = \frac{-1.11}{10} \times 100\ \% = -11.1\ \%$$

Calculate the gain:

$$03\text{-}11 = \frac{10\text{ V}}{11.1\text{ V}} \times 100\ \% = 90.0\ \%$$

C2000_797

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Calculate the bias:

$$\frac{60\text{-}6\text{ Hz}}{10\text{ V}} = \frac{6\text{-}0\text{ Hz}}{(0\text{-XV})} \qquad XV = \frac{100}{-9} = -1.11\text{ V}$$

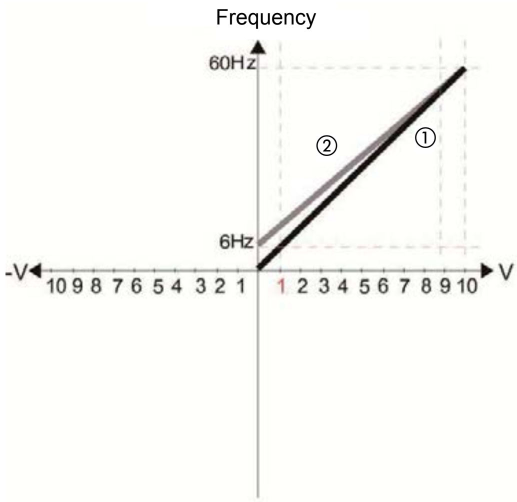
$$03\text{-}03 = \frac{-1.11}{10} \times 100\,\% = -11.1\,\%$$

Calculate the gain:

$$03\text{-}11 = \frac{10\text{ V}}{11.1\text{ V}} \times 100\,\% = 90.0\,\%$$

C2000_798

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse rur is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forwarc run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Calculate the bias:

$$\frac{60\text{-}6\text{ Hz}}{10\text{ V}} = \frac{6\text{-}0\text{ Hz}}{(0\text{-XV})} \qquad XV = \frac{100}{-9} = -1.11\text{ V}$$

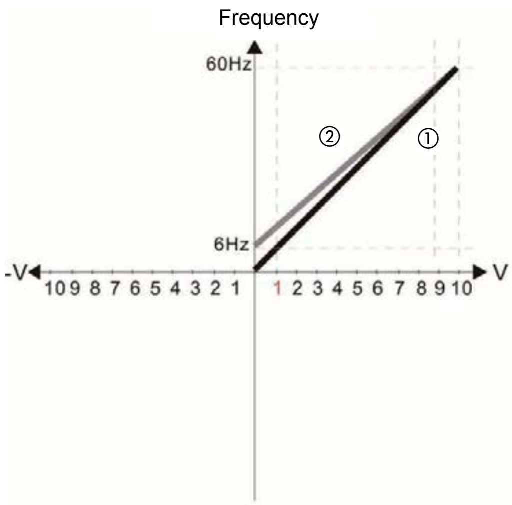
$$03\text{-}03 = \frac{-1.11}{10} \times 100\ \% = -11.1\ \%$$

Calculate the gain:

$$03\text{-}11 = \frac{10\text{ V}}{11.1\text{ V}} \times 100\ \% = 90.0\ \%$$

C2000_799

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forwarc run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Calculate the bias:

$$\frac{60\text{-}6\text{ Hz}}{10\text{ V}} = \frac{6\text{-}0\text{ Hz}}{(0\text{-XV})} \qquad XV = \frac{100}{-9} = -1.11\text{ V}$$

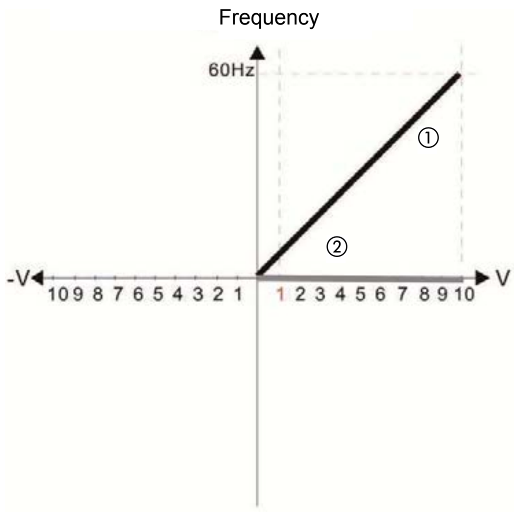
$$03\text{-}03 = \frac{-1.11}{10} \times 100\ \% = -11.1\ \%$$

Calculate the gain:

$$03\text{-}11 = \frac{10\text{ V}}{11.1\text{ V}} \times 100\ \% = 90.0\ \%$$

C2000_800

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse rur is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forwarc run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Calculate the bias:

$$\frac{60\text{-}6\ \text{Hz}}{10\ \text{V}} = \frac{6\text{-}0\ \text{Hz}}{(0\text{-XV})} \qquad XV = \frac{100}{-9} = -1.11\ \text{V}$$

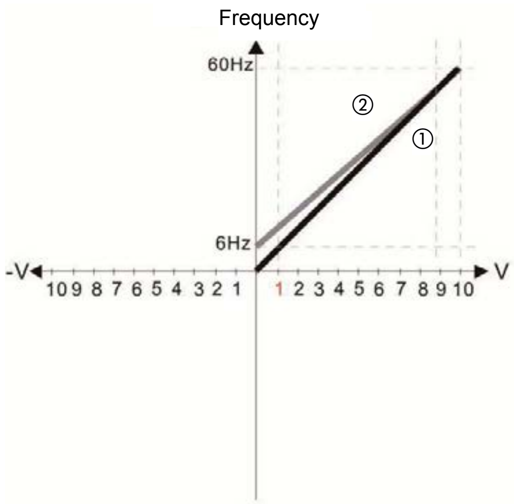
$$03\text{-}03 = \frac{-1.11}{10} \times 100\ \% = -11.1\ \%$$

Calculate the gain:

$$03\text{-}11 = \frac{10\ \text{V}}{11.1\ \text{V}} \times 100\ \% = 90.0\ \%$$

C2000_801

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse rur is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forwarc run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Calculate the bias:

$$\frac{60\text{-}6\ \text{Hz}}{10\ \text{V}} = \frac{6\text{-}0\ \text{Hz}}{(0\text{-XV})} \qquad XV = \frac{100}{-9} = -1.11\ \text{V}$$

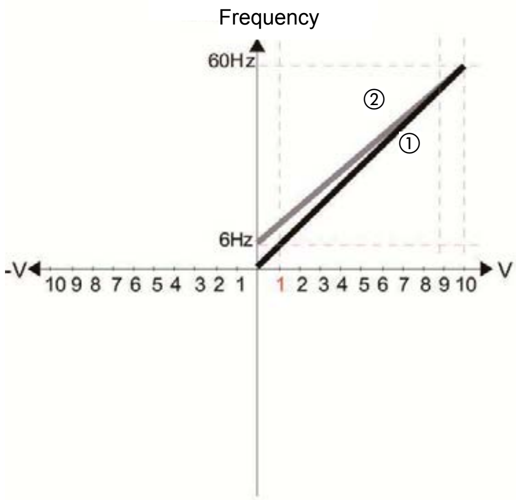
$$03\text{-}03 = \frac{-1.11}{10} \times 100\ \% = -11.1\ \%$$

Calculate the gain:

$$03\text{-}11 = \frac{10\ \text{V}}{11.1\ \text{V}} \times 100\ \% = 90.0\ \%$$

C2000_802

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Calculate the bias:

$$\frac{60\text{-}6\ \text{Hz}}{10\ \text{V}} = \frac{6\text{-}0\ \text{Hz}}{(0\text{-}XV)} \qquad XV = \frac{100}{-9} = -1.11\ \text{V}$$

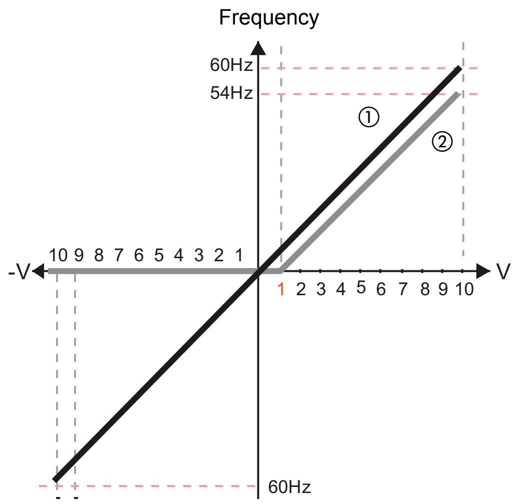
$$03\text{-}03 = \frac{-1.11}{10} \times 100\ \% = -11.1\ \%$$

Calculate the gain:

$$03\text{-}11 = \frac{10\ \text{V}}{11.1\ \text{V}} \times 100\ \% = 90.0\ \%$$

C2000_803

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



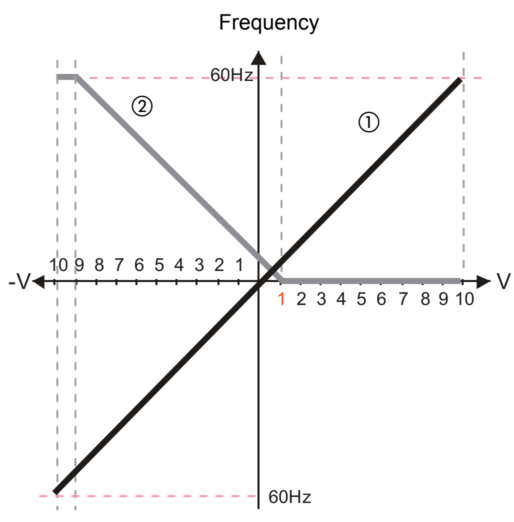
Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-13 Analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %
Pr. 03-14 Analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_804

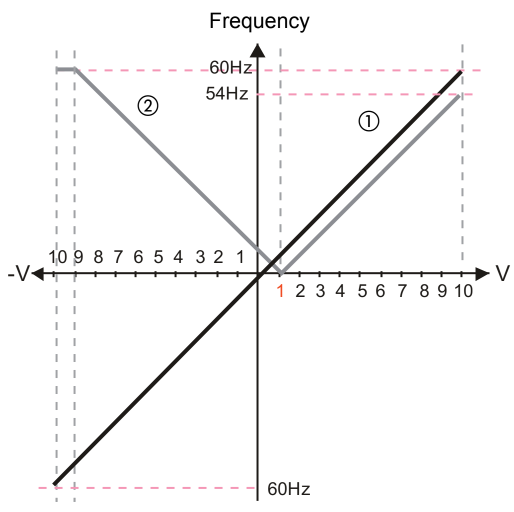
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-13 Analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %
Pr. 03-14 Analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_805

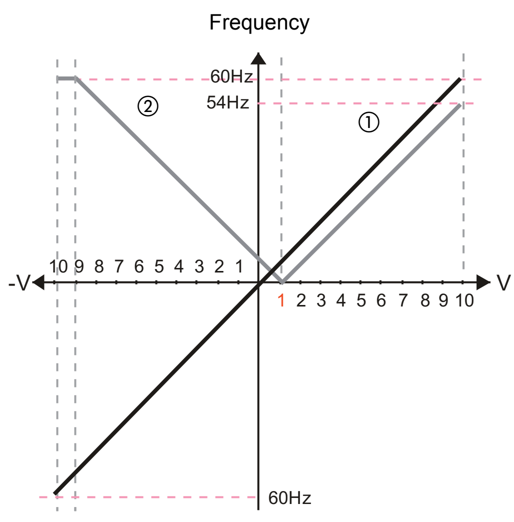
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-13 Analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %
Pr. 03-14 Analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_806

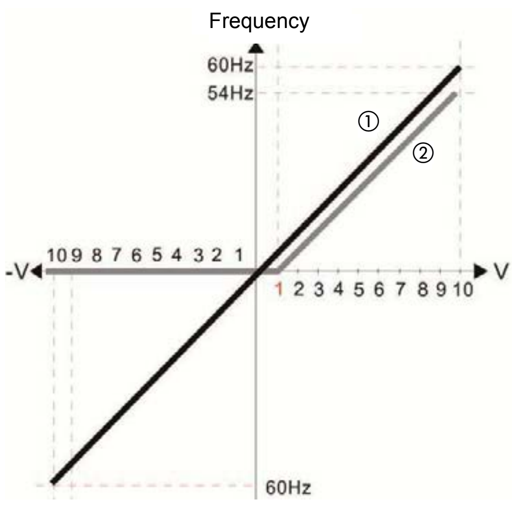
① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.
Pr. 03-13 Analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %
Pr. 03-14 Analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_807

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias

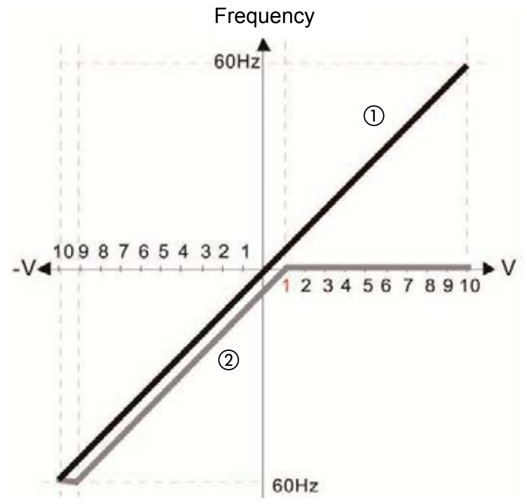


Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-13 Analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %
Pr. 03-14 Analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_808

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias

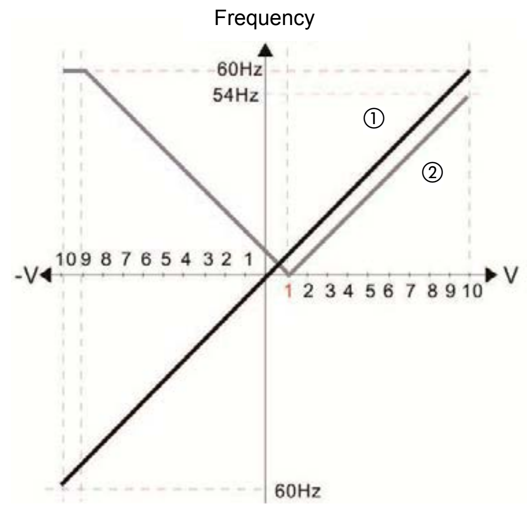


Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-13 Analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %
Pr. 03-14 Analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_809

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias

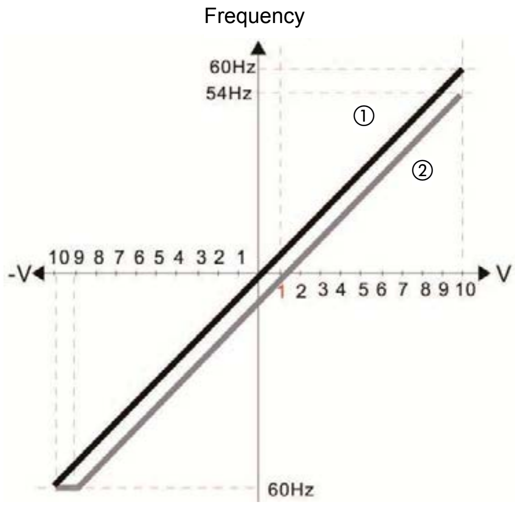


Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-13 Analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %
Pr. 03-14 Analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_810

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)

Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %

Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)

0: No bias

1: Lower than or equal to bias

2: Greater than or equal to bias

3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center

4: Serve bias as the center

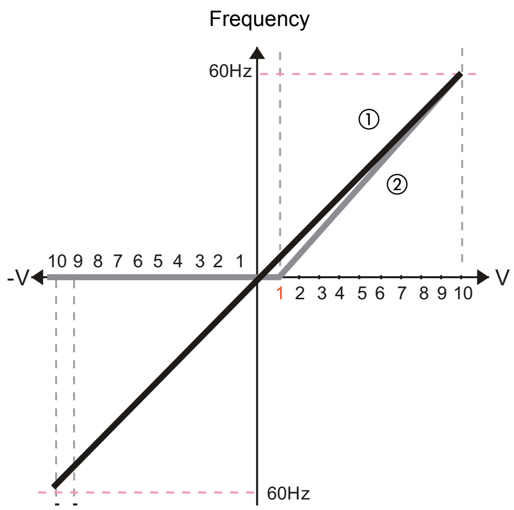
Pr. 03-13 Analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %

Pr. 03-14 Analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_811

① Black line: curve with no bias

② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)

Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %

Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)

0: No bias

1: Lower than or equal to bias

2: Greater than or equal to bias

3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center

4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)

0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.

1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-13 analog positive input gain (AUI) = 111.1 %

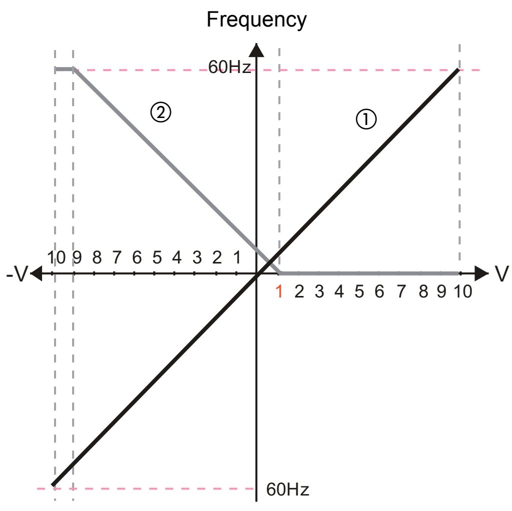
(10/9) *100 % = 111.1 %

Pr. 03-14 analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_812

① Black line: curve with no bias

② Gray line: curve with bias

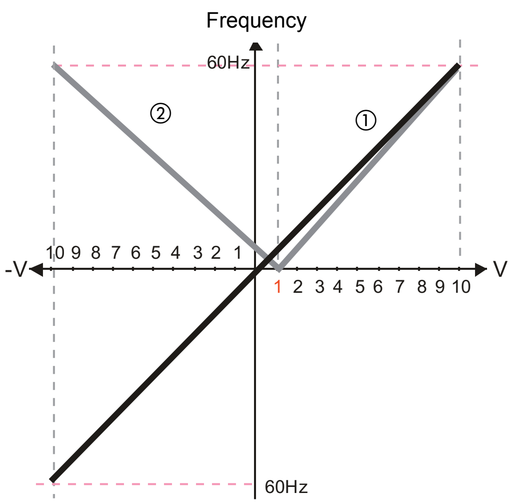


Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-13 analog positive input gain (AUI) = 111.1 %
(10/9) *100 % = 111.1 %
Pr. 03-14 analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_813

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias

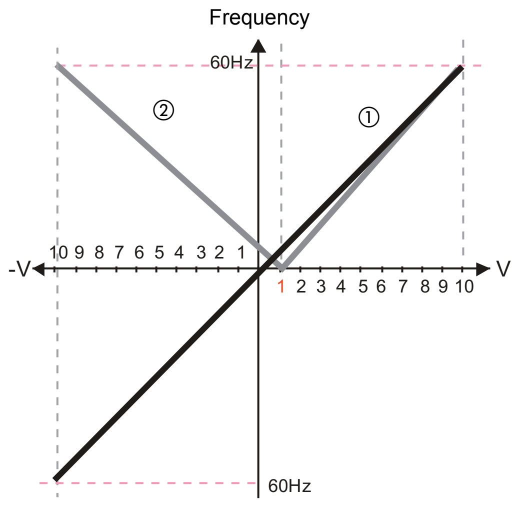


Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-13 analog positive input gain (AUI) = 111.1 %
(10/9) *100 % = 111.1 %
Pr. 03-14 analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_814

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias

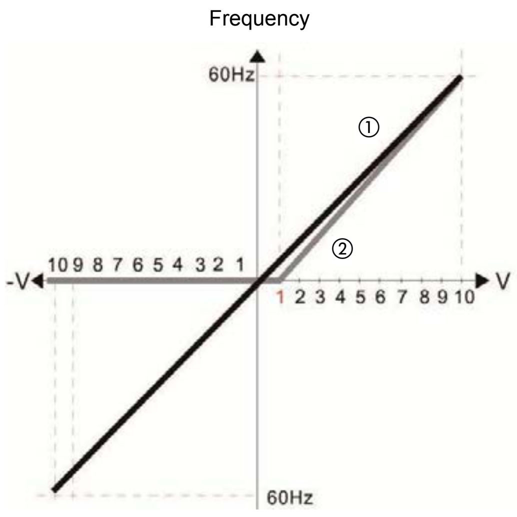


Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center
Pr. 03-10 (Analog frequency command for reverse run)
0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
1: Neagtive frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Direction can not be switched by digital keypad or external teriminal control.

Pr. 03-13 analog positive input gain (AUI) = 111.1 %
(10/9) *100 % = 111.1 %
Pr. 03-14 analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_815

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias

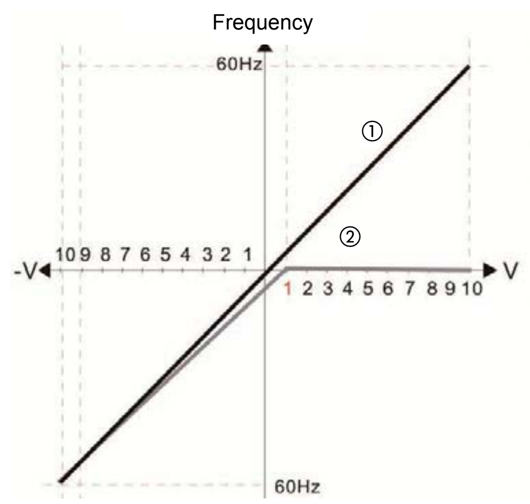


Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-13 analog positive input gain (AUI) = 111.1 %
(10/9) *100 % = 111.1 %
Pr. 03-14 analog negative input gain (AUI) = 100 %

C2000_816

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)

Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %

Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)

0: No bias

1: Lower than or equal to bias

2: Greater than or equal to bias

3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center

4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-13 analog positive input gain (AUI) = 100 %

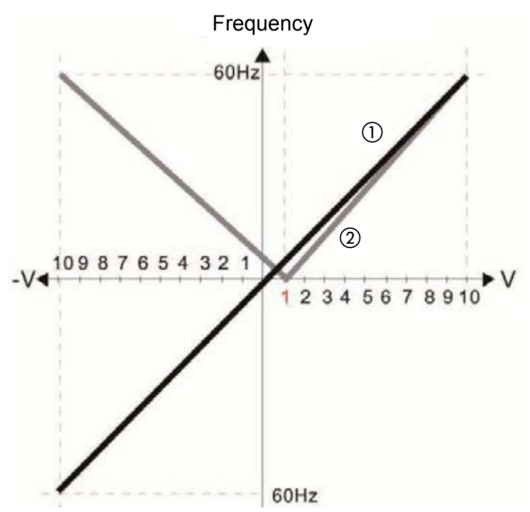
Pr. 03-14 analog negative input gain (AUI) = 90.9 %

(10/11) *100 % = 90.9 %

C2000_817

① Black line: curve with no bias

② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)

Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %

Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)

0: No bias

1: Lower than or equal to bias

2: Greater than or equal to bias

3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center

4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-13 analog positive input gain (AUI) = 111.1 %

(10/9) *100 % = 111.1 %

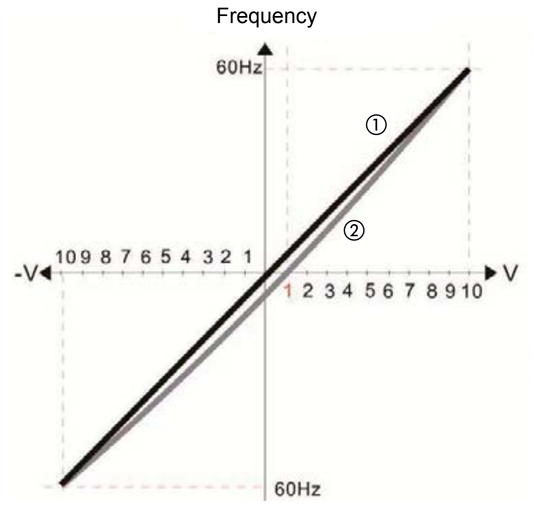
Pr. 03-14 analog negative input gain (AUI) = 90.9 %

(10/11) *100 % = 90.9 %

C2000_818

① Black line: curve with no bias

② Gray line: curve with bias



Pr. 00-21 = 0
(Digital keypad control and d run in FWD direction)
Pr. 03-05 Analog positive voltage input bias (AUI) = 10 %
Pr. 03-07–03-09 (Positive/negative bias mode)
0: No bias
1: Lower than or equal to bias
2: Greater than or equal to bias
3: The absolute value of the bias voltage while serving as the center
4: Serve bias as the center

Pr. 03-13 analog positive input gain (AUI) = 111.1 %
(10/9) *100 % = 111.1 %
Pr. 03-14 analog negative input gain (AUI) = 90.9 %
(10/11) *100 % = 90.9 %

C2000_819

① Black line: curve with no bias
② Gray line: curve with bias

03-10 Analog frequency command for reverse run

Factory setting: 0

Settings
- 0: Negative frequency is not valid. Forward and reverse run is controlled by digital keypad or external terminal.
- 1: Negative frequency is valid. Positive frequency = forward run; negative frequency = reverse run. Run direction can not be switched by digital keypad or the external terminal control.

- Parameter 03-10 is used to enable reverse run command when a negative frequency (negative bias and gain) is input to AVI or ACI analog signal input (except AUI).
- Condition for negative frequency (reverse)
  - Pr. 03-10 = 1
  - Bias mode = serve bias as center
  - Corresponded analog input gain < 0 (negative), make input frequency be negative.
- In using addition function of analog input (Pr. 03-18 = 1), when analog signal is negative after adding, this parameter can be set for allowing reverse or not. The result after adding will be restricted by "Condition for negative frequency (reverse)".

03-11 ✓ Analog input gain (AVI)

03-12 ✓ Analog input gain (ACI)

03-13 ✓ Analog positive input gain (AUI)

03-14 ✓ Analog negative input gain (AUI)

Factory setting: 100.0

Settings	–500.0–500.0 %

- Parameters 03-03 to 03-14 are used when the source of frequency command is the analog voltage/current signal.

03-15 ✓ Analog input filter time (AVI)

03-16 ✓ Analog input filter time (ACI)

03-17 ✓ Analog input filter time (AUI)

Factory setting: 0.01

Settings	0.00–20.00 sec

- These input delays can be used to filter noisy analog signal.
- When the setting of the time constant is too large, the control will be stable but the control response will be slow. When the setting of time constant is too small, the control response will be faster but the control may be unstable. To find the optimal setting, please adjust the setting according to the control stable or response status.

03-18 ✓ Addition function of the analog input

Factory setting: 0

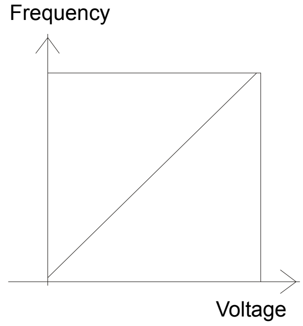
Settings	0: Disable (AVI, ACI, AUI) 1: Enable

- When Pr. 03-18 is set to 1:
  EX1: Pr. 03-00 = Pr. 03-01 = 1 Frequency command = AVI+ACI

  EX2: Pr. 03-00 = Pr. 03-01 = Pr. 03-02 = 1 Frequency command = AVI+ACI+AVI2

  EX3: Pr. 03-00 = Pr. 03-02 = 1 Frequency command = AVI+AVI2

  EX4: Pr. 03-01 = Pr. 03-02 = 1 Frequency command = ACI+AVI2
- When Pr. 03-18 is set to 0 and the analog input setting is the same, the priority for AVI, ACI and AUI are AVI>ACI>AUI.



$$\text{F command} = [(\text{ay} + \text{bias}) * \text{gain}] * \frac{\text{F max (01-00)}}{\text{10 V or 16 mA or 20 mA}}$$

F command: the corresponding frequency for 10 V or 20 mA:

ay: 0–10 V, 4–20 mA, 0–20 mA
bias: Pr. 03-03, Pr. 03-04, Pr. 03-05
gain: Pr. 03-11, Pr. 03-12, Pr. 03-13, Pr. 03-14

C2000_829

Fig. 12-32: Frequency-voltage characteristics

03-19 ⌿ Treatment to 4–20 mA analog input signal loss

Factory setting: 0

Settings
0: Disable
1: Continue operation at the last frequency
2: Decelerate to stop
3: Stop immediately and display ACE

- This parameter determines the behavior when 4–20 mA signal is loss, when AVIc (Pr. 03-28 = 2) or ACIc (03-29 = 0).
- When Pr. 03-28 is not set to 2, it means the voltage input to AVI terminal is 0–10 V or 0-20 mA. At this moment, Pr. 03-19 will be invalid.
- When Pr. 03-29 is set to 1, it means the voltage input to ACI terminal is for 0–10 V. At this moment, Pr. 03-19 will be invalid.
- When setting is 1 or 2, it will display warning code "AnL" on the keypad. It will be blinking until the loss of the ACI signal is recovered.
- When the motor drive stops, the condition of warning does not exist, then the warning will disappear.

03-20 ⌿ Multi-function output 1 (AFM1)

Factory setting: 0

03-23 ⌿ Multi-function output 2 (AFM2)

Factory setting: 0

Settings 0–23

Settings	Functions	Descriptions
0	Output frequency (Hz)	Max. frequency Pr. 01-00 is regarded as 100 %.
1	Frequency command (Hz)	Max. frequency Pr. 01-00 is regarded as 100 %.
2	Motor speed (Hz)	600 Hz is regarded as 100 %
3	Output current (rms)	(2.5 X rated current) is regarded as 100 %
4	Output voltage	(2 X rated voltage) is regarded as 100 %
5	DC Bus voltage	450 V (900 V) = 100 %
6	Power factor	–1.000–1.000 = 100 %
7	Power	Rated power is regarded as 100 %
8	Output torque	Full-load torque is regarded as 100 %
9	AVI	0–10 V=0–100 %
10	ACI	0–20 mA=0–100 %
11	AUI	–10–10 V=0–100 %
12	q-axis current (Iq)	(2.5 X rated current) is regarded as 100 %
13	q-axis feedback value (Iq)	(2.5 X rated current) is regarded as 100 %
14	d-axis current (Id)	(2.5 X rated current) is regarded as 100 %
15	d-axis feedback value (Id)	(2.5 X rated current) is regarded as 100 %
16	q-axis voltage (Vq)	250 V (500 V) = 100 %
17	d-axis voltage(Vd)	250 V (500 V) = 100 %
18	Torque command	Rated torque is regarded as 100 %
19	PG2 frequency command	Max. frequency Pr. 01-00 is regarded as 100 %.
20	Output for CANopen control	For CANopen analog output
21	RS485 analog output	For communication output (CMC-MOD01, CMC-EIP01, CMC-PN01, CMC-DN01)
22	Analog output for communication card	For communication output (CMC-MOD01, CMC-EIP01, CMC-PN01, CMC-DN01)
23	Constant voltage/ current output	Pr. 03-32 and Pr. 03-33 controls voltage/current output level 0–100 % of Pr. 03-32 corresponds to 0–10 V of AFM1.
24	Reserve	
25	CAN & 485 output	

Tab. 12-8: Function chart

03-21 ⌿ Gain of analog output 1 (AFM1)

Factory setting: 100.0

03-24 ⌿ Gain of analog output 2 (AFM2)

Factory setting: 100.0

Settings	0–500.0 %

- It is used to adjust the analog voltage level (Pr. 03-20) that terminal AFM outputs.
- This parameter is set the corresponding voltage of the analog output 0.

03-22	Analog output 1 when in REV direction (AFM1)

Factory setting: 0

03-25	Analog output 2 when in REV direction (AFM2)

Factory setting: 0

Settings
0: Absolute value in REV direction
1: Output 0 V in REV direction; output 0–10 V in FWD direction
2: Output 5-0 V in REV direction; output 5–10 V in FWD direction

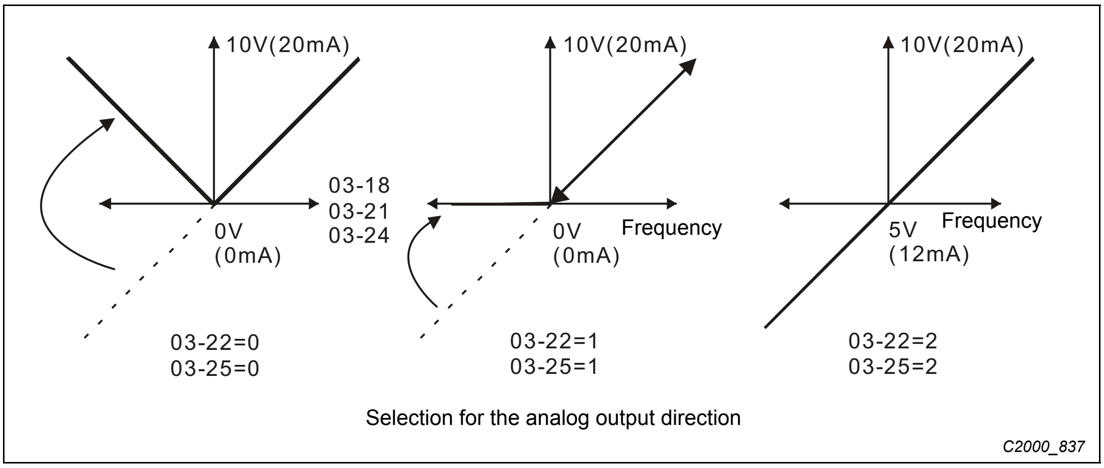


Fig. 12-33: Selection of the revolution direction for the analog inputs

03-26	Reserve

03-27	AFM2 Output Bias

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings –100.00–100.00 %

EXAMPLES

① AFM2 0–10 V is set output frequency, the output equation is

$$10\text{ V} \times \frac{\text{Output frequency}}{\text{01-00}} \times 03-24 + 10\text{ V} \times 03-27$$

② AFM2 0–20 mA is set output frequency, the output equation is

$$20\text{ mA} \times \frac{\text{Output frequency}}{\text{01-00}} \times 03-24 + 20\text{ mA} \times 03-27$$

③ AFM2 4–20 mA is set output frequency, the output equation is

$$4\text{ mA} + 16\text{ mA} \times \frac{\text{Output frequency}}{\text{01-00}} \times 03-24 + 16\text{ mA} \times 03-27$$

- This parameter can set the corresponded voltage of 0 for analog output.

03-28 ⚡ AVI selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: 0-10 V 1: 0-20 mA 2: 4-20 mA

03-29 ⚡ ACI selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: 4-20 mA 1: 0-10 V 2: 0-20 mA

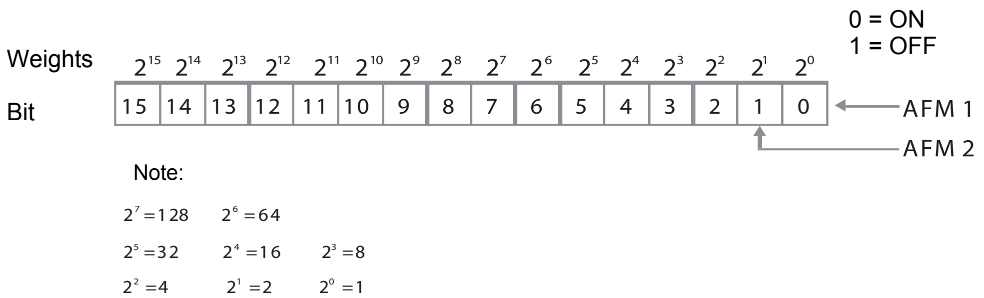
- When changing the input mode, please check if the switch of external terminal (SW3, SW4) corresponds to the setting of Pr. 03-28–03-29.

03-30 Status of PLC output terminal

Factory setting: ##

Settings	0–65535 Monitor the status of PLC analog output terminals

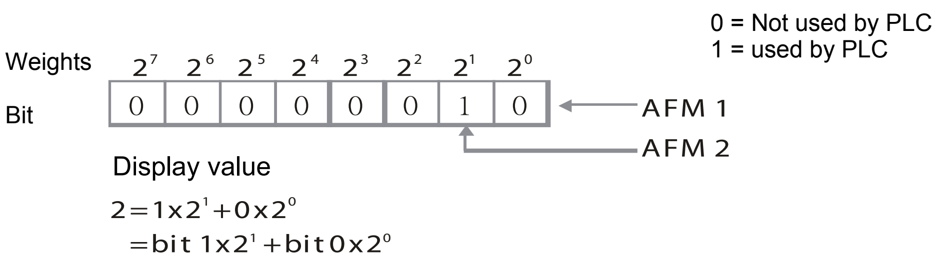
- Pr. 03-30 shows the external multi-function output terminal that used by PLC



C2000_843

EXAMPLE

If the value of Pr. 03-30 displays 0002h (Hex), it means AFM2 are used by PLC.



C2000_844

03-31 ⌿ AFM2 0–20 mA output selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: 0–20 mA output 1: 4–20 mA output

03-32 ⌿ AFM1 DC output setting level

03-33 ⌿ AFM2 DC output setting level

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–100.00 %

03-34 Reserve

03-35 ⌿ AFM1 filter output time

03-36 ⌿ AFM2 filter output time

Factory setting: 0.01

Settings	0.00–20.00 seconds

03-37 – 03-43 Reserve

03-44 ⌿ MO by AI levele

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: AVI 1: ACI 2: AUI

03-45 ⌿ AI upper level

Factory setting: 50 %

Settings	–100 %–100 %

03-46 ⌿ AI lower level

Factory setting: 50 %

Settings	–100 %–100 %

- This function requires working with Multi-function Output item "67" Analog signal level achieved. The MO active when AI input level is higher than Pr. 03-45 AI Upper level. The MO shutoffs when the AI input is lower that Pr. 03-46 AI Lower level.
- AI Upper level must be higher than AI Lower level.

03-47 – 03-49	Reserve

03-50 ⌁ Analog input curve selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: regular curve 1: 3 point curve of AVI 2: 3 point curve of ACI 3: 3 point curve of AVI & ACI 4: 3 point curve of AUI 5: 3 point curve of AVI & AUI 6: 3 point curve of ACI & AUI 7: 3 point curve of AVI & ACI & AUI

03-51 ⌁ AVI low point

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	03-28 = 0, 0.00–10.00 V 03-28 ≠ 0, 0.00–20.00 mA

03-52 ⌁ AVI proportional low point

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–100.00 %

03-53 ⌁ AVI mid point

Factory setting: 5.00

Settings	03-28 = 0, 0.00–10.00 V 03-28 ≠ 0, 0.00–20.00 mA

03-54 ⌁ AVI proportional mid point

Factory setting: 50.00

Settings	0.00–100.00 %

03-55 ⌁ AVI high point

Factory setting:10.00

Settings	03-28 = 0, 0.00–10.00 V 03-28 ≠ 0, 0.00–20.00 mA

03-56 ⌁ AVI proportional high point

Factory setting: 100.00

Settings	0.00–100.00 %

- When Pr. 03-28 = 0, AVI setting is 0–10 V and the unit is in voltage (V).
- When Pr. 03-28 ≠ 0, AVI setting is 0–20 mA or 4–20 mA and the unit is in current (mA).
- When setting analog input AVI to frequency command, it 100 % corresponds to Fmax (Pr. 01-00 Max. operation frequency).
- The 3 parameters (Pr. 03-51, Pr. 03-53 and Pr. 03-53) must meet the following argument: Pr. 03-51 < Pr. 03-53 < P03-55. The 3 proportional points (Pr. 03-52, Pr. 03-54 and Pr. 03-56) doesn't have any limit. Between two points is a linear calculation. The ACI and AUI are same as AVI.
- The output % will become 0% when the AVI input value is lower than low point setting.
  For example: Pr. 03-51 = 1V; Pr. 03-52 = 10 %. The output will become 0 % when AVI input is lower than 1 V. If the AVI input is swing between 1 V and 1.1 V, drive's output frequency will beats between 0 % and 10 %

03-57 ⌿ ACI low point

Factory setting: 4.00

Settings	Pr. 03-29 = 1, 0.00–10.00 V Pr. 03-29 ≠ 1, 0.00–20.00 mA

03-58 ⌿ ACI proportional low point

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–100.00 %

03-59 ⌿ ACI mid point

Factory setting: 12.00

Settings	Pr. 03-29 = 1, 0.00–10.00 V Pr. 03-29 ≠ 1, 0.00–20.00 mA

03-60 ⌿ ACI proportional mid point

Factory setting: 50.00

Settings	0.00–100.00 %

03-61 ⌿ ACI high point

Factory setting: 20.00

Settings	Pr. 03-29 = 1, 0.00–10.00 V Pr. 03-29 ≠ 1, 0.00–20.00 mA

03-62 ⌿ ACI proportional high point

Factory setting: 100.00

Settings	0.00–100.00 %

- When Pr. 03-29 = 1, ACI setting is 0–10 V and the unit is in voltage (V).
- When Pr. 03-29 ≠ 1, ACI setting is 0–20 mA or 4–20 mA and the unit is in current (mA).
- When setting analog input ACI to frequency command, it 100 % corresponds to Fmax
- The 3 parameters (Pr. 03-57, Pr. 03-59 and Pr. 03-61) must meet the following argument: Pr. 03-57 < Pr. 03-59 < Pr. 03-61. The 3 proportional points (Pr. 03-58, Pr. 03-60 and Pr. 03-62) doesn't have any limit. Between two points is a linear calculation.(Pr. 01-00 Max. operation frequency).
- The output % will become 0% when the ACI input value is lower than low point setting. For example: Pr. 03-57 = 2 mA; Pr. 03-58 = 10 %. The output will become 0 % when AVI input is lower than 2 mA. If the ACI input is swing between 2 mA and 2.1 mA, drive's output frequency will beats between 0 % and 10 %.

03-63 ✐ Positive AUI voltage low point

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–10.00 V

03-64 ✐ Positive AUI voltage proportional low point

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	–100.00 %–100.00 %

03-65 ✐ Positive AUI voltage mid point

Factory setting: 5.00

Settings	0.00–10.00 V

03-66 ✐ Positive AUI voltage proportional mid point

Factory setting: 50.00

Settings	–100.00 %–100.00 %

03-67 ✐ Positive AUI voltage high point

Factory setting: 10.00

Settings	0.00–10.00 V

03-68 ✐ Positive AUI voltage proportional high point

Factory setting: 100.00

Settings	–100.00 %–100.00 %

- When setting positive voltage AUI to frequency command, it 100 % corresponds to Fmax (Pr. 01-00 Max. operation frequency) and the motor runs in forward direction.
- Three of the positive voltage AUI points can be set according to user's demand on voltage and proportion, there is no setting limit for AUI points.

03-69 ✗ Negative AUI voltage low point

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–10.00 V

03-70 ✗ Negative AUI voltage proportional low point

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	–100.00 %–100.00 %

03-71 ✗ Negative AUI voltage mid point

Factory setting: -5.00

Settings	0.00–10.00 V

03-72 ✗ Negative AUI voltage proportional mid point

Factory setting: -50.00

Settings	–100.00 %–100.00 %

03-73 ✗ Negative AUI voltage high point

Factory setting: -10.00

Settings	0.00–10.00 V

03-74 ✗ Negative AUI voltage proportional high point

Factory setting: -100.00

Settings	–100.00 %–100.00 %

- When setting negative voltage AUI to frequency command, it 100 % corresponds to Fmax (Pr. 01-00 Max. operation frequency) and the motor runs in reverse direction.
- Three of the negative voltage AUI points can be set according to user's demand on voltage and proportion, there is no setting limit for AUI points.
- The 3 parameters (Pr. 03-69, Pr. 03-71 and Pr. 03-73) must meet the following argument: Pr. 03-69 < Pr. 03-71 < Pr. 03-73. The 3 proportional points (Pr. 03-70, Pr. 03-72 and Pr. 03-74) doesn't have any limit. Between two points is a linear calculation.
- The output % will become 0% when the negative AUI input value is lower than low point setting. For example: Pr. 03-63 = –1 V; Pr. 03-64 = 10 %. The output will become 0 % when AUI input is bigger than –1V. If the AUI input is swing between –1 V and –1.1 V, drive's output frequency will beats between 0 % and 10 %.

12.5 Multi-step speed parameters

NOTE ⌿ This parameter can be set during operation.

04-00	⌿ 1st step speed frequency
04-01	⌿ 2nd step speed frequency
04-02	⌿ 3rd step speed frequency
04-03	⌿ 4th step speed frequency
04-04	⌿ 5th step speed frequency
04-05	⌿ 6th step speed frequency
04-06	⌿ 7th step speed frequency
04-07	⌿ 8th step speed frequency
04-08	⌿ 9th step speed frequency
04-09	⌿ 10th step speed frequency
04-10	⌿ 11th step speed frequency
04-11	⌿ 12th step speed frequency
04-12	⌿ 13th step speed frequency
04-13	⌿ 14th step speed frequency
04-14	⌿ 15th step speed frequency

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- The Multi-function Input Terminals (refer to setting 1–4 of Pr.02-01–02-08 and 02-26–02-31) are used to select one of the Multi-step speeds(max. 15 speeds). The speeds (frequencies) are determined by Pr. 04-00 to 04-14 as shown in the following
- The run/stop command can be controlled by the external terminal/digital keypad/communication via Pr. 00-21.
- Each one of multi-step speeds can be set within 0.00–600.00Hz during operation.
- Explanation for the timing diagram for multi-step speeds and external terminals.
  The Related parameter settings are:
  - Pr. 04-00–04-14: setting multi-step speeds (to set the frequency of each step speed)
  - Pr. 02-01–02-08, 02-26–02-31: setting multi-function input terminals
  (multi-step speed 1–4)
- Related parameters: 01-22 JOG Frequency, 02-01 Multi-function Input Command 1 (MI1), 02-02 Multi-function Input Command 2 (MI2), 02-03 Multi-function Input Command 3 (MI3), 02-04 Multi-function Input Command 4 (MI4).

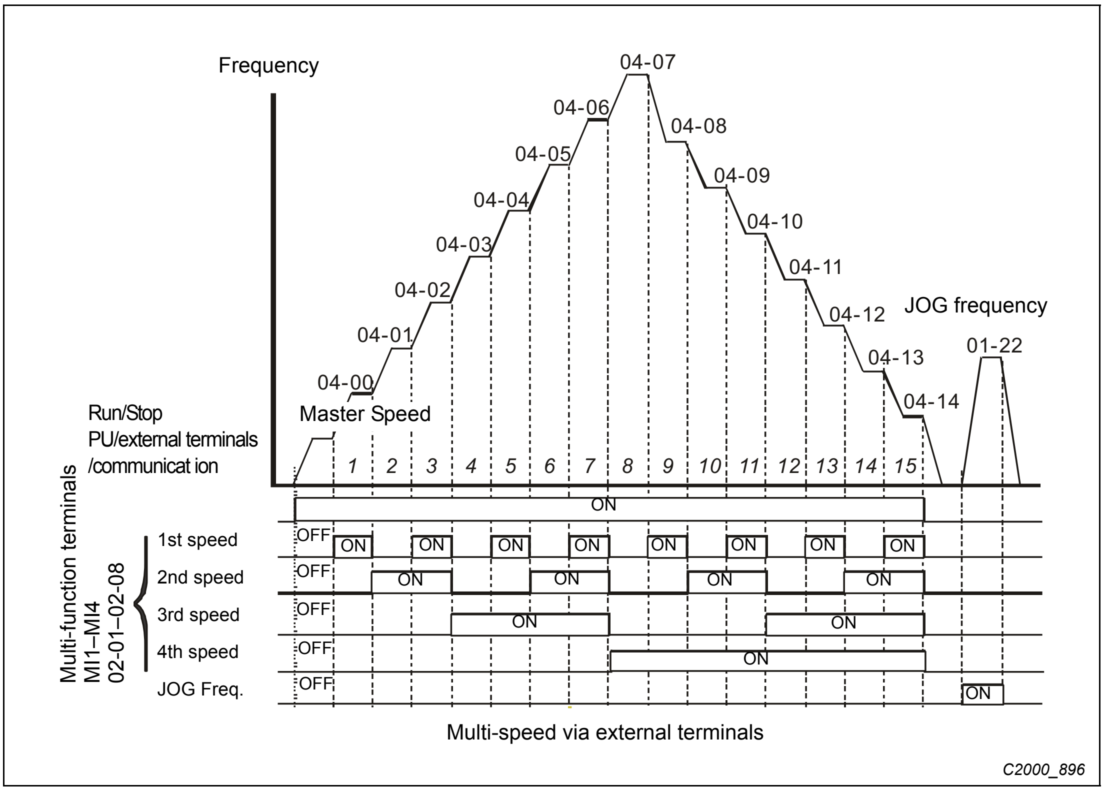


Fig. 12-34: Speed selection via external terminals

04-16	〃 Position command 1 (pulse)
04-18	〃 Position command 2 (pulse)
04-20	〃 Position command 3 (pulse)
04-22	〃 Position command 4 (pulse)
04-24	〃 Position command 5 (pulse)
04-26	〃 Position command 6 (pulse)
04-28	〃 Position command 7 (pulse)
04-30	〃 Position command 8 (pulse)
04-32	〃 Position command 9 (pulse)
04-34	〃 Position command 10 (pulse)
04-36	〃 Position command 11 (pulse)
04-38	〃 Position command 12 (pulse)
04-40	〃 Position command 13 (pulse)
04-42	〃 Position command 14 (pulse)
04-44	〃 Position command 15 (pulse)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	–32767–32767

■ Please refer to Pr. 02-01–02-08 (Multi-function Input Command) for description on setting 34 (Switch between multi-step position and multi-speed control) and setting 36 (Enable multi-step position learning function).

Multi-step position corresponding	MI4	MI3	MI2	MI1	Multi-step speed corresponding
10-19	0	0	0	0	Positioning for encoder position
04-16 Position command 1 (pulse)	0	0	0	1	04-00 1st step speed frequency
04-18 Position command 2 (pulse)	0	0	1	0	04-01 2nd step speed frequency
04-20 Position command 3 (pulse)	0	0	1	1	04-02 3rd step speed frequency
04-22 Position command 4 (pulse)	0	1	0	0	04-03 4th step speed frequency
04-24 Position command 5 (pulse)	0	1	0	1	04-04 5th step speed frequency
04-26 Position command 6 (pulse)	0	1	1	0	04-05 6th step speed frequency
04-28 Position command 7 (pulse)	0	1	1	1	04-06 7th step speed frequency
04-30 Position command 8 (pulse)	1	0	0	0	04-07 8th step speed frequency
04-32 Position command 9 (pulse)	1	0	0	1	04-08 9th step speed frequency
04-34 Position command 10 (pulse)	1	0	1	0	04-09 10th step speed frequency
04-36 Position command 11 (pulse)	1	0	1	1	04-10 11th step speed frequency
04-38 Position command 12 (pulse)	1	1	0	0	04-11 12th step speed frequency
04-40 Position command 13 (pulse)	1	1	0	1	04-12 13th step speed frequency
04-42 Position command 14 (pulse)	1	1	1	0	04-13 14th step speed frequency
04-44 Position command 15 (pulse)	1	1	1	1	04-14 15th step speed frequency

Tab. 12-9: Multi-step position in dependence of the terminals

04-15	Position command 1 (rotation)
04-17	Position command 2 (rotation)
04-19	Position command 3 (rotation)
04-21	Position command 4 (rotation)
04-23	Position command 5 (rotation)
04-25	Position command 6 (rotation)
04-27	Position command 7 (rotation)
04-29	Position command 8 (rotation)
04-31	Position command 9 (rotation)
04-33	Position command 10 (rotation)
04-35	Position command 11 (rotation)
04-37	Position command 12 (rotation)
04-39	Position command 13 (rotation)
04-41	Position command 14 (rotation)
04-43	Position command 15 (rotation)

- Setzen Sie Pr. 02-01 = 1, Pr. 02-02 = 2, Pr. 02-03 = 3, Pr. 02-04 = 4, um die Zielposition durch Schalten der externen Klemmen anzufahren und wählen Sie die Punkt-zu-Punkt-Positionierung mit Drehzahlvorsteinstellung. Einstellung: Zielposition = 04-15 x (10-01 x 4) + 04-16.

Multi-step speed status	Target position of P2P			Maximum speed of P2P	
0000	0			11-00 bit 8 = 0	11-00 bit 8 = 1
0001	Position 1	04-15	04-16	11-43	04-00
0010	Position 2	04-17	04-18		04-01
0011	Position 3	04-19	04-20		04-02
0100	Position 4	04-21	04-22		04-03
0101	Position 5	04-23	04-24		04-04
0110	Position 6	04-25	04-26		04-05
0111	Position 7	04-27	04-28		04-06
1000	Position 8	04-29	04-30	11-43	04-07
1001	Position 9	04-31	04-32		04-08
1010	Position 10	04-33	04-34		04-09
1011	Position 11	04-35	04-36		04-10
1100	Position 12	04-37	04-38		04-11
1101	Position 13	04-39	04-40		04-12
1110	Position 14	04-41	04-42		04-13
1111	Position 15	04-43	04-44		04-14

Tab. 12-10: Terminals for point-to-point positioning

04-50	⌿ PLC Buffer 0	**04-60**	⌿ PLC Buffer 10
04-51	⌿ PLC Buffer 1	**04-61**	⌿ PLC Buffer 11
04-52	⌿ PLC Buffer 2	**04-62**	⌿ PLC Buffer 12
04-53	⌿ PLC Buffer 3	**04-63**	⌿ PLC Buffer 13
04-54	⌿ PLC Buffer 4	**04-64**	⌿ PLC Buffer 14
04-55	⌿ PLC Buffer 5	**04-65**	⌿ PLC Buffer 15
04-56	⌿ PLC Buffer 6	**04-66**	⌿ PLC Buffer 16
04-57	⌿ PLC Buffer 7	**04-67**	⌿ PLC Buffer 17
04-58	⌿ PLC Buffer 8	**04-68**	⌿ PLC Buffer 18
04-59	⌿ PLC Buffer 9	**04-69**	⌿ PLC Buffer 19

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535

- The Pr. 04-50–Pr. 04-69 can be combined with PLC or HMI programming for variety application.

12.6 Motor parameters

NOTE ✓ This parameter can be set during operation.

05-00 ✓ Motor auto tuning

Factory setting: 0

Settings
0: No function
1: Rolling test for induction motor (IM) (Rs, Rr, Lm, Lx, no-load current) [motor running]
2: Static test for induction motor [motor not running]
3: No function
4: Dynamic test for PM motor magnetic pole [motor running]
5: Dynamic test for PM (SPM) motor [motor running]
6: Rolling test for IM motor flux curve [motor running]
12: FOC Sensorless inertia estimation [motor running]
13: Static test for PM (IPM) motor

Induction motor

- This parameter can conduct motor parameters auto test. When setting as 1, motor will roll for more than one round; setting as 4, 5, 6, and 12, motor will roll less than one round.
- Press (Run) to begin auto tuning when the setting is done. The measured value will be written into motor 1 (Pr. 05-05 –05-09, Rs, Rr, Lm, Lx, no-load current) and motor 2 (Pr. 05-17 to Pr. 05-21) automatically.

To begin AUTO-Tuning in rolling test:

① Make sure that all the parameters are set to factory settings (Pr. 00-02 = 9 or 10) and the motor wiring is correct.

② Make sure the motor has no-load before executing auto-tuning and the shaft is not connected to any belt or gear motor. It is recommended to set to 2 if the motor can't separate from the load.

③ Please set motor related parameters according to motor nameplate.

	Motor 1 parameter	Motor 2 parameter
Motor rated frequency	01-01	01-35
Motor rated voltage	01-02	01-36
Motor full-load current	05-01	05-13
Motor rated power	05-02	05-14
Motor rated speed	05-03	05-15
Motor pole numbers	05-04	05-16

④ Set Pr. 05-00 = 1 and press (Run), the drive will begin auto-tuning. Please be aware of the motor that it starts spinning as (Run) is pressed.

⑤ When auto-tuning is completed, please check if the measured values are written into motor 1 (Pr. 05-05–05-09) and motor 2 (Pr. 05-17–05-21) automatically.
Mechanical equivalent circuit.

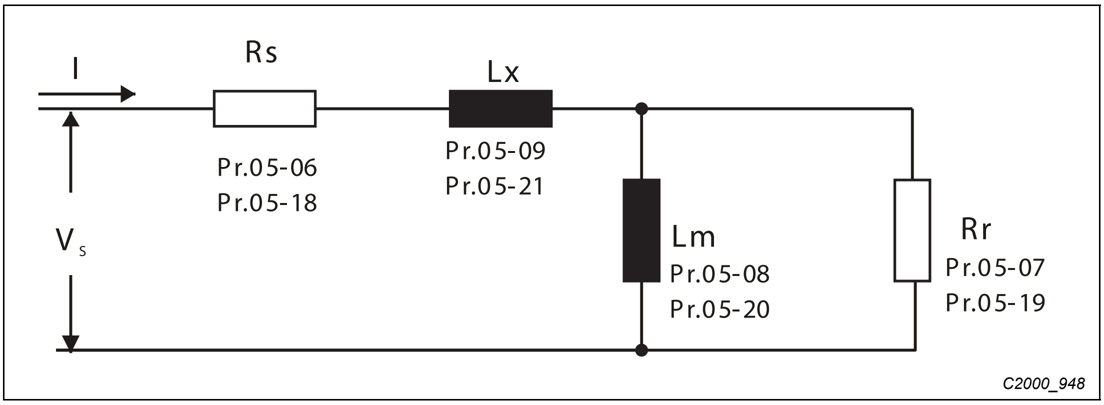


Fig. 12-35: Motor replacement circuit diagram

NOTE

If Pr. 05-00 is set to 2 (static test), user needs to input the no-load current value of motor into Pr. 05-05 for motor 1/Pr. 05-17 for motor 2.

Set Pr. 05-00 = 6 to begin rolling test for IM motor flux curve. This function is available when the drive is in FOC/TQC Sensorless control. User may begin auto-tuning after setting up the motor information.

① Set up Pr. 01-01, 01-02, 05-01–05-04 according to the motor nameplate information?

② Set Pr. 05-00 = 6 and press (Run), make sure no loading is applied to the motor before setting Pr. 05-00 to 6 and before performing auto-tuning.

When Pr. 05-00 = 12, the drive begins FOC Sensorless inertia estimation for IM motor. This function is available when the drive is in FOC/TQC Sensorless control. User may begin auto-tuning after setting up the motor information.

NOTE

Make sure the motor parameters (no-load current, Rs, Rr, Lm and Lx) of the drive are set before performing Pr. 05-00 = 12 (auto-tuningfor FOC Sensorless interia estimation for IM motor).

① Set Pr. 00-10 = 2 (torque mode)

② Set Pr. 00-13 = 2 (TQCPG, Open-loop torque mode)

③ Set Pr. 05-00 = 12 and press?Run?to begin FOC Sensorless inertia measure

④ When the process of inertia estimation is completed, check Pr. 11-01 (unit: PU Q8) and see if the measured value is acceptable.

Set up sensorless FOC mode:

① Set Pr. 00-10 = 0 (speed mode)

② Set Pr. 00-11 = 5 (FOC sensorless mode)

③ Set bit 0 of Pr. 11-00 to 1 (use ASR gain function to automatically adjust the ASR bandwidth in Pr. 11-03, 11-04, 11-05)

NOTES

- In torque/vector control mode, it is not recommended to have motors run in parallel.
- It is not recommended to use torque/vector control mode if motor rated power exceeds the rated power of the AC motor drive.
- When auto-tuning 2 motors, it needs to set multi-function input terminals (setting 14) or change Pr. 05-22 for motor 1/motor 2 selection.
- The no-load current is usually 20–50 % X rated current.
- The rated speed can not be greater than or equal to 120f /p (f = rated frequency Pr. 01-01/ 01-35; P: number of motor poles Pr. 05-04/05-16).

Permanent magnet motor (PM)

Set Pr. 05-00 = 5 or 13 and press (Run) to begin auto tuning for PM motor. The measured values will be written into Pr. 05-39 (Rs), Pr. 05-40 & 41 (Ld & Lq) and Pr. 05-43 (PM motor's Ke parameter).

To begin AUTO-tuning for PM motor in rolling test:

① Make sure all the parameters are reset to factory setting and the motor wiring installation is correct.

② For PM motor, set Pr. 05-33 = 1 for SPM or Pr. 05-33 = 2 for IPM and complete the following settings according to your motor specifications, Pr. 05-34 rated current, Pr. 05-35 rated power, Pr. 05-36 rated speed and Pr. 05-37 pole number. The acceleration time and deceleration time should be set according to your motor capacity.

③ Set Pr. 05-00 to 5 and press (Run) to begin auto tuning for PM motor. Please be aware of the motor that it starts spinning as (Run) is pressed.

④ When auto-tuning is completed, please check if the measured values are written into Pr. 05-39–05-41 and Pr. 05-43 automatically.

Set Pr. 05-00 = 4 and press (Run) to begin auto-tuning for PM motor PG offset angle. The measured value will be written into Pr. 05-42 automatically.

NOTES

- When execute auto-tuning for PM motor PG origin, please make sure the encoder setting are correct (Pr. 10-00, 10-01, 10-02), otherwise the PG origin measure error and motor stall may occur.
- If PM motor runs in an opposite direction of the drive's command, switch any two of the UVW cable and re-connect, then execute PG origin search again. It is crucial to execute auto-tuning after the switch otherwise PG origin measure error and motor stall may occur.

Auto-tuning process for measuring PG offset angle of PM motor:

① Set Pr. 05-00 = 5 and press RUN, or manually input the values into Pr. 01-01, 05-34–541 and Pr. 05-43.

② It is strongly suggested to remove the motor and unload before beings auto-tuning.

③ Set Pr. 05-00 = 4 and press (Run) to begin auto-tuning. Please be aware of the motor that it starts spinning as (Run) is pressed.

④ When auto-tuning is completed, please check if the PG offset angle is written into Pr. 05-42 automatically.

NOTE

When auto-tuning for PM motor is completed and the control mode setting is done, it is recommend to turn the drive's power off and restart again to ensure the drive operates according to the motor parameter settings.

05-01 Full-load current of induction motor 1 (A)

Unit: Amper
Factory setting: #.##

Settings	10 to 120 % of drive's rated current

- This value should be set according to the rated current of the motor as indicated on the motor nameplate. The factory setting is 90 % X rated current.

EXAMPLE The rated current for 7.5 HP (5.5 kW) is 25 and factory setting is 22.5 A. The range for setting will be 2,5–30 A. (25*10 % = 2,5 A and 25*120 % = 30 A)

05-02 ⌿ Rated power of induction motor 1 (kW)

Factory setting: #.##

Settings	0–655.35 kW

- It is used to set rated power of the motor 1. The factory setting is the power of the drive.

05-03 ⌿ Rated speed of induction motor 1 (rpm)

Factory setting:
1710 (60Hz 4 poles)
1410 (50Hz 4 poles)

Settings	0–65535

- It is used to set the rated speed of the motor according to the motor nameplate.
- Before set up Pr. 05-04, this parameter must be set.

05-04 Pole number of induction motor 1

Factory setting: 4

Settings	2–20

- It is used to set the number of motor poles (must be an even number).
- Set up Pr. 05-04 after setting up Pr. 01-01 and Pr. 05-03 to make sure motor operate normally.
- For example: the Pr. 05-04 factory setting range is "2–4". If use a 6 poles motor, to set up Pr. 01-01 and Pr. 05-03 according the motor nameplate, then the Pr. 05-04 setting range will become 2–6 automatically.

05-05 PNo-load current of induction motor 1 (A)

Unit: Amper
Factory setting: #.##

Settings	0 to the factory setting in Pr. 05-01

- The factory setting is 40 % motor rated current.
- For model with 110 kW and above, default setting is 20 % motor rated current.

05-06 Stator resistance (Rs) of induction motor 1

05-07 Rotor resistance (Rr) of induction motor 1

Factory setting: #.##

Settings	0–65.535 Ω

05-08	Magnetizing inductance (Lm) of induction motor 1

05-09	Stator inductance (Lx) of induction motor 1

Factory setting: #.#

Settings	0–6553.5 mH

05-10–05-12	Reserved

05-13	Full-load current of induction motor 2 (A)

Unit: Amper
Factory setting: #.##

Settings	10–120 %

- Set the current with regard to the rated current indicated on the nameplate of the motor. The factory setting is 90 % X rated current.

EXAMPLE The rated current for 7.5 HP (5.5 kW) is 25 A and factory setting is 22.5 A. The range for setting will be 2.5–30 A. (25*10%=2.5A and 25*120 % = 30 A)

05-14	Rated power ofinduction motor 2 (kW)

Factory setting: #.##

Settings	0–655.35 kW

- It is used to set rated power of the motor 2. The factory setting is the power of the drive.

05-15	Rated speed ofinduction motor 2 (rpm)

Factory setting: 1710

Settings	0–65535

- It is used to set the rated speed of the motor according to the motor nameplate.

05-16	Rated speed ofinduction motor 2 (rpm)

Factory setting: 4

Settings	2–20

- It is used to set the number of motor poles (must be an even number).
- Set up Pr. 05-04 after setting up Pr. 01-35 and Pr. 05-05 to make sure motor operate normally.

05-17 No-load current of induction motor 2 (A)

Unit: Amper
Factory setting: #.##

Settings	0 to the factory setting in Pr. 05-13

- The factory setting is 40 % motor rated current.
- For model with 110 kW and above, default setting is 20 % motor rated current.

05-18 Stator resistance (Rs) of induction motor 2

05-19 Rotor resistance (Rr) of induction motor 2

Factory setting: #.###

Settings	0–65.535 Ω

05-20 Magnetizing inductance (Lm) of induction motor 2

05-21 Stator inductance (Lx) of induction motor 2

Factory setting: #.#

Settings	0–6553.5 mH

05-22 Induction motor 1/ 2 selection

Factory setting: 1

Settings	1: Motor 1 2: Motor 2

- It is used to set the motor that driven by the AC motor drive.

05-23 Frequency for Y-connection/△-connection switch of induction motor

Factory setting: 60.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

05-24 Y-connection/△-connection switch of induction motor IM

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable 1: Enable

05-25 Delay time for Y-connection/△-connection switch of induction motor

Factory setting: 0.200

Settings	0.000–60.000 sec

- Pr. 05-23 and Pr. 05-25 are applied in the wide range motors and the motor coil will execute the switch of Y-connection/△-connection as required. (The wide range motors has relation with the motor design. In general, it has higher torque at low speed and Y-connection and it has higher speed at high speed and connection.
- Pr. 05-24 is used to enable/disable Y-connection/△-connection switch.
- When Pr. 05-24 is set to 1, the drive will select by Pr. 05-23 setting and current motor frequency to switch motor to Y-connection or △-connection. At the same time, it will also affect motor parameters.
- Pr. 05-25 is used to set the switch delay time of Y-connection/△-connection.
- When output frequency reaches Y-connection/△-connection switch frequency, drive will delay by Pr. 05-25 before multi-function output terminals are active

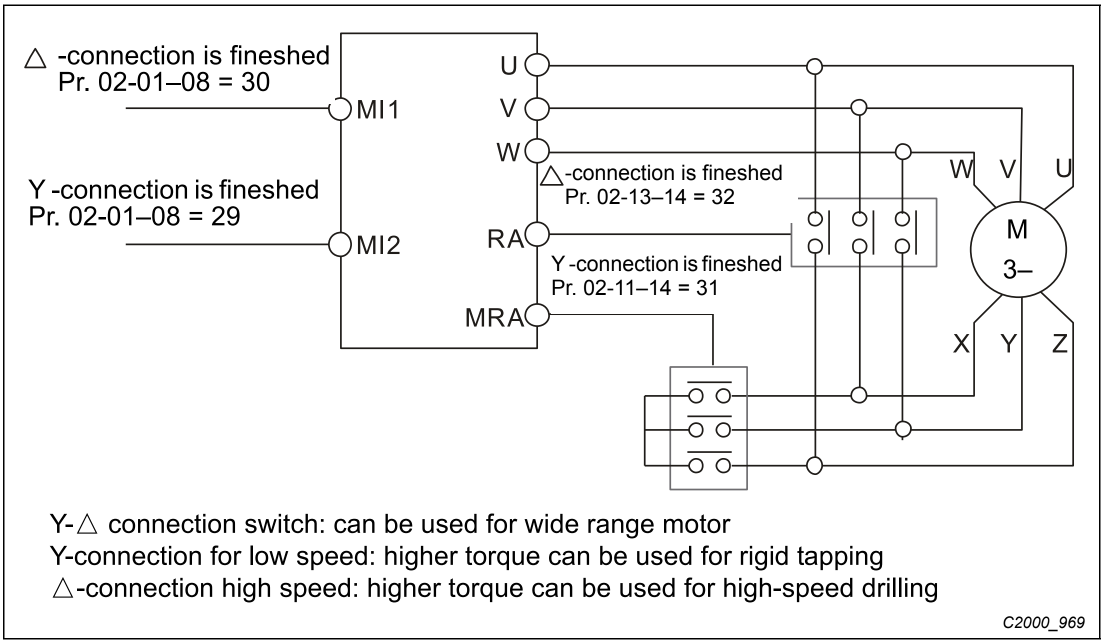


Fig. 12-36: Wiring for star/delta connection

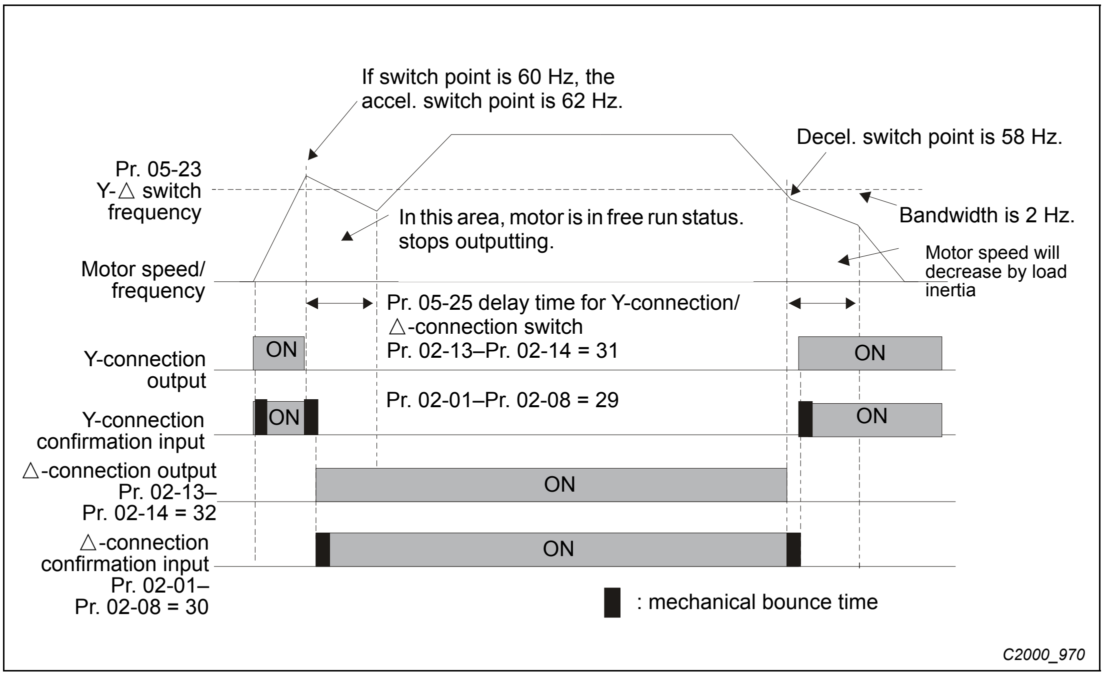


Fig. 12-37: Output signals at star/delta connection

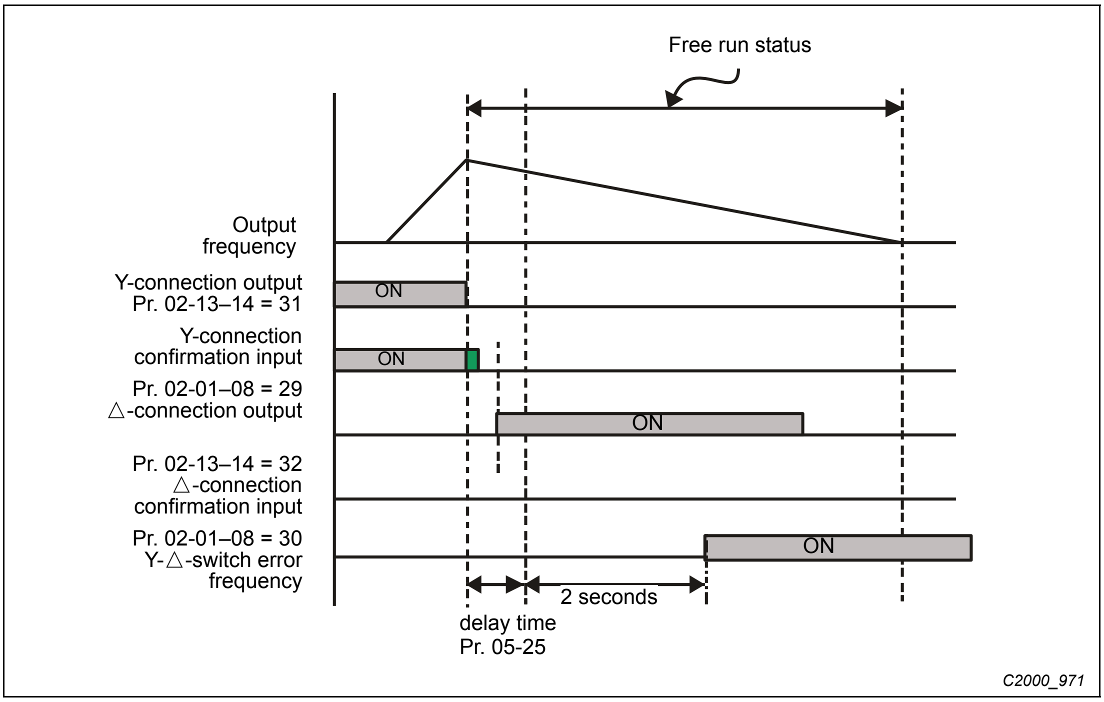


Fig. 12-38: Error at missing confirmation signal

05-26	Accumulative watt per second of motor in low word (W-sec)

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	Read only

05-27	Accumulative watt per second of motor in high word (W-sec)

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	Read only

05-28	Accumulative watt-hour of motor (W-Hour)

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	Read only

05-29	Accumulative watt-hour of motor in low word (KW-Hour)

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	Read only

05-30	Accumulative watt-hour of motor in high word (KW-Hour)

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	Read only

- Pr. 05-26–05-29 records the amount of power consumed by motors. The accumulation begins when the drive is activated and record is saved when the drive stops or turns OFF. The amount of consumed watts will continue to accumulate when the drive activate again. To clear the accumulation, set Pr. 00-02 to 5 then the accumulation record will return to 0.

05-31	Accumulative motor operation time (Min)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	00–1439

05-32	Accumulative motor operation time (day)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	00–65535

- Pr. 05-31 and Pr. 05-32 are used to record the motor operation time. To clear the operation time, set Pr. 05-31 and Pr. 05-32 to 00. Operation time shorter than 60 seconds will not be recorded.

05-33	Induction motor (IM) and permanent magnet motor selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Induction Motor 1: Permanent Magnet Motor (SPM) 2: Permanent Magnet Motor (IPM)

05-34	Full-load current of permanent magnet motor

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 Amps

05-35	Rated power of permanent magnet motor

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 kW

- Set motor rated power in accord to motor nameplate. Default setting is motor drive rated power.

05-36	Rated power of permanent magnet motor

Factory setting: 2000

Settings	0–65535 rpm

05-37	Pole number of permanent magnet motor

Factory setting: 10

Settings	0–65535

05-38 Inertia of permanent magnet motor

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.0–6553.5 kg.cm^2 (0.0001 kg.m^2)

■ Default value will follow the chart.

Rated power (kW)	0.4	0.75	1.5	2.2	3.7	5.5	7.5	9.3
Rotor inertia (kg.cm^2)	1.2	3.0	6.6	15.8	25.7	49.6	82.0	121.6

Rated power (kW)	11	14.1	18.2	27	33	40	46	54
Rotor inertia (kg.cm^2)	177.0	211.0	265.0	308.0	527.0	866.0	1082.0	1267.6

Rated power (kW)	Above 54
Rotor inertia (kg.cm^2)	1515.0

05-39 Stator resistance of PM motor

Factory setting: 0.000

Settings	0.000–65.535 Ω

05-40 Permanent magnet motor Ld

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 mH

05-41 Permanent magnet motor Lq

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 mH

05-42	PG offset angle of PM motor

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0.0–360.0°

- When Pr. 05-00 is set to 4, the drive will detect offset angle and write into Pr. 05-42.

05-43	Ke parameter of PM motor

Unit: V/1000 rpm
Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535

12.7 Protection parameters

NOTE ⌿ This parameter can be set during operation.

06-00 ⌿ Low voltage level

		Factory setting:
Settings	230 V Series:	
	Frame A –D (including D0): 150.0–220.0 V DC	180.0
	Frame E and above: 190.0–220.0 V	200.0
	Frame A–D (including D0): 460 V Series: 300.0–440.0 V	360.0
	Frame E and above: 380.0– 440.0 V	400.0

- This parameter is used to set the Low Voltage level. When the DC BUS voltage is lower than Pr. 06-00, drive will stop output and free to stop.
- If the drive is triggered LV fault during the operation, drive will stop output and free to stop. There are three LV faults, LvA (LV during acceleration), LvD (LV during deceleration), and LvN (LV in constant speed) which will be triggered in different stage of drive operation. These faults need to be reset manually to restart the drive, while setting restart after momentary power off function (Pr. 07-06, Pr. 07-07), the drive will restart automatically.
- If LV is triggered when the drive is in stop status, the fault is named LvS (LV during stop), which will not be recorded, and the drive will restart automatically when input voltage is 30 V DC (230 V series) or 60 V DC (460 V series) higher than LV level.

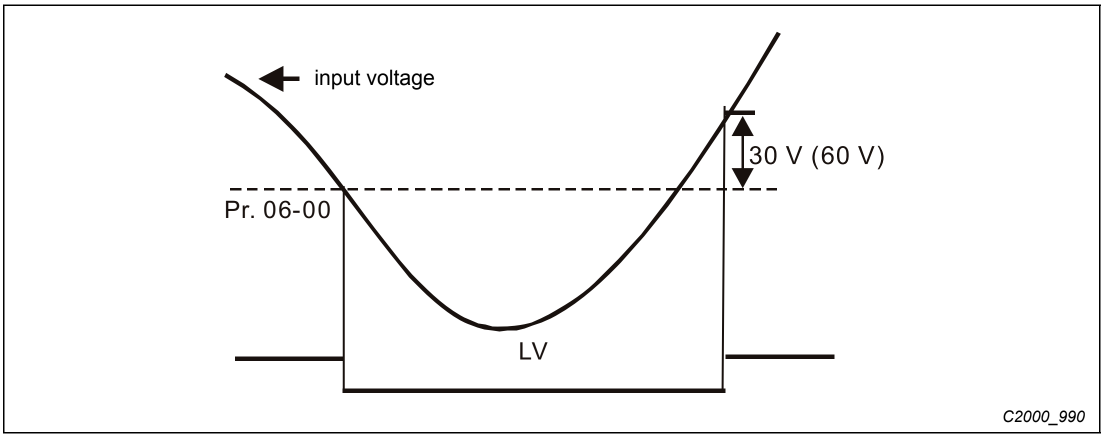


Fig. 12-39: Trigger threshold for low voltage

06-01 ⌿ Over-voltage stall prevention

Factory setting: 380.0/760.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–450.0 V
	460 V series:0.0–900.0 V
	0: Disabled

- When Pr. 06-01 is set to 0.0, the over-voltage stall prevention function is disabled. When braking units or resistors are connected to the drive, this setting is suggested.
- When the setting is not 0.0, the over-voltage stall prevention is activated. This setting should refer to power supply system and loading. If the setting is too low, then over-voltage stall prevention will be easily activate, which may increase deceleration time.
- Related parameters: Pr. 01-13, Pr. 01-15, Pr. 01-17, Pr. 01-19 Decel. Time 1–4, Pr. 02-13–Pr. 02-14 Multiple-function output (Relay 1 and 2), Pr. 02-16–Pr. 02-17 Multiple-function output (MO1,2), and Pr. 06-02 selection for over-voltage stall prevention.

06-02 Selection for over-voltage stall prevention

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Traditional over-voltage stall prevention
	1: Smart over-voltage prevention

- This function is used for the occasion that the load inertia is unsure. When it stops in the normal load, the over-voltage won't occur during deceleration and fulfill the setting of deceleration time. Sometimes, it may not stop due to over-voltage during decelerating to stop when increasing the load regenerative inertia. At this moment, the AC drive will auto add the deceleration time until drive stop.
- Pr. 06-02 is set to 0: During deceleration, the DC bus voltage may exceed its maximum allowable value due to motor regeneration in some situation, such as loading inertia is too high or decel. Time is set too short. When traditional over-voltage stall prevention is enabled, the drive will not decelerate further and keep the output frequency constant until the voltage drops below the setting value again.
- When Pr. 06-02 is set to 1, the drive will maintain DC bus voltage when decelerating and prevent OV.

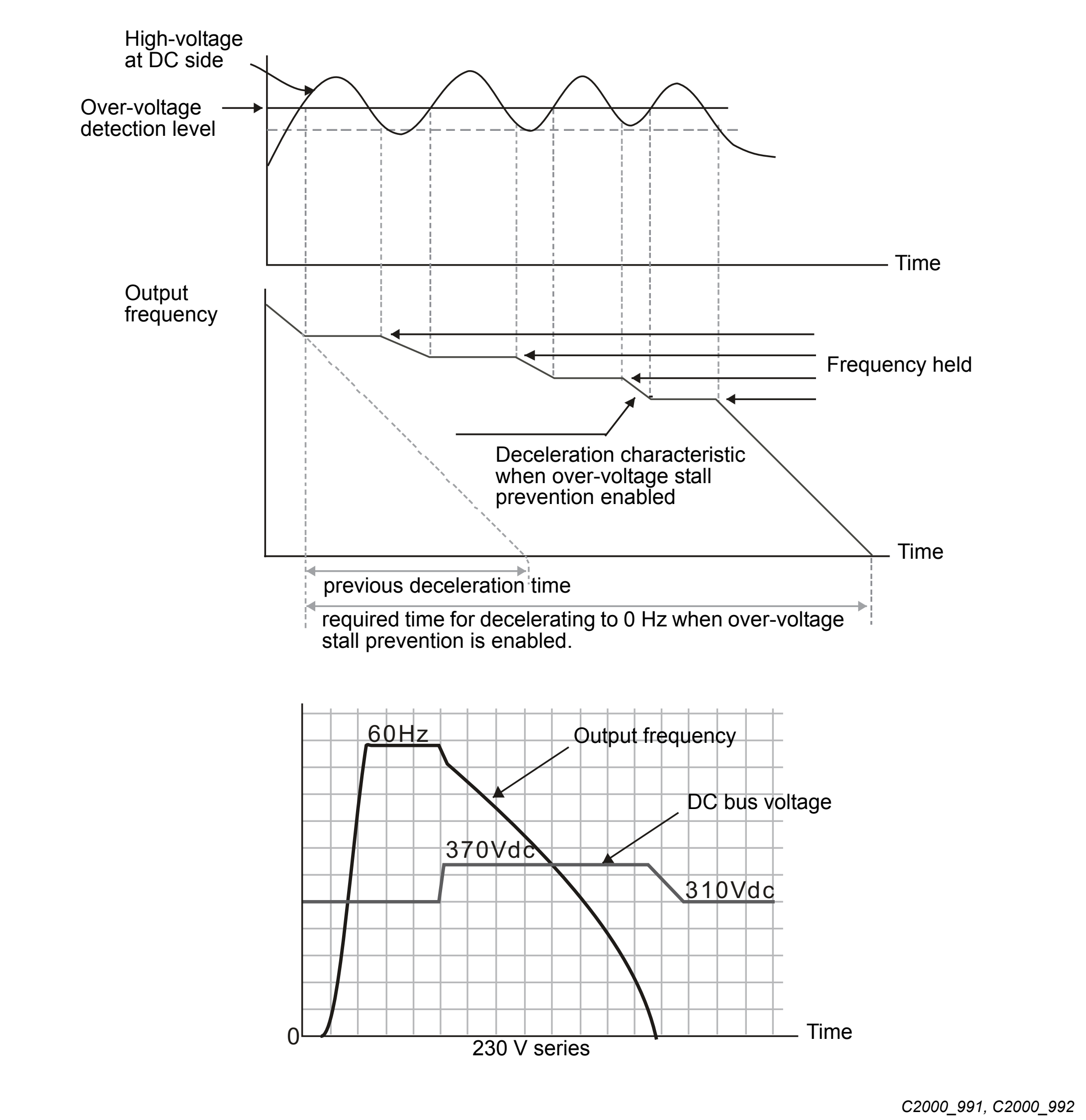


Fig. 12-40: Stall prevention at over-voltage

- When the over-voltage stall prevention is enabled, drive deceleration time will be larger than the setting.
- When there is any problem as using deceleration time, refer to the following items to solve it.
  1. Add the suitable deceleration time.
  2. Add brake resistor (refer to Chapter 7-1 for details) to dissipate the electrical energy that regenerated from the motor as heat type.
- Related parameters: Pr. 01-13, Pr. 01-15, Pr. 01-17, Pr. 01-19 Decel. Time 1–4, Pr. 02-13–Pr. 02-14 Multiple-function output (Relay 1 and 2), Pr. 02-16–Pr. 02-17 Multiple-function output (MO1,2), and Pr. 06-01 over-voltage stall prevention.

06-03	⌁ Over-current stall prevention during acceleration

		Factory setting:
Settings	Normal duty: 0–160 % (100 %: drive's rated current)	120
	Heavy duty: 0–180 % (100 %: drive's rated current)	150

- This parameter only works in VF, VFPG, and SVC control mode.
- If the motor load is too large or drive acceleration time is too short, the AC drive output current may increase abruptly during acceleration and it may cause motor damage or trigger protection functions (OL or OC). This parameter is used to prevent this situation.
- During acceleration, the AC drive output current may increase abruptly and exceed the value specified by Pr. 06-03 due to rapid acceleration or excessive load on the motor. When this function is enabled, the AC drive will stop accelerating and keep the output frequency constant until the current drops below the maximum value.
- When the over-current stall prevention is enabled, drive acceleration time will be larger than the setting.
- When the over-current stall prevention occurs due to too small motor capacity or in the factory setting, please decrease Pr. 06-03 setting.
- When there is any problem by using acceleration time, refer to the following items to solve it.
- Related parameters: Pr. 01-12, 01-14, 01-16, 01-18 (settings of accel. time 1–4), Pr. 01-44
  1. dd the suitable acceleration time.
  2. Setting Pr. 01-44 optimal acceleration/deceleration setting to 1, 3 or 4 (auto accel.)
- Optimal acceleration/deceleration setting, Pr. 02-13–02-14 (Multi-function output 1 RY1, RY2), Pr. 02-16–02-17 multi-function output (MO1, 2)

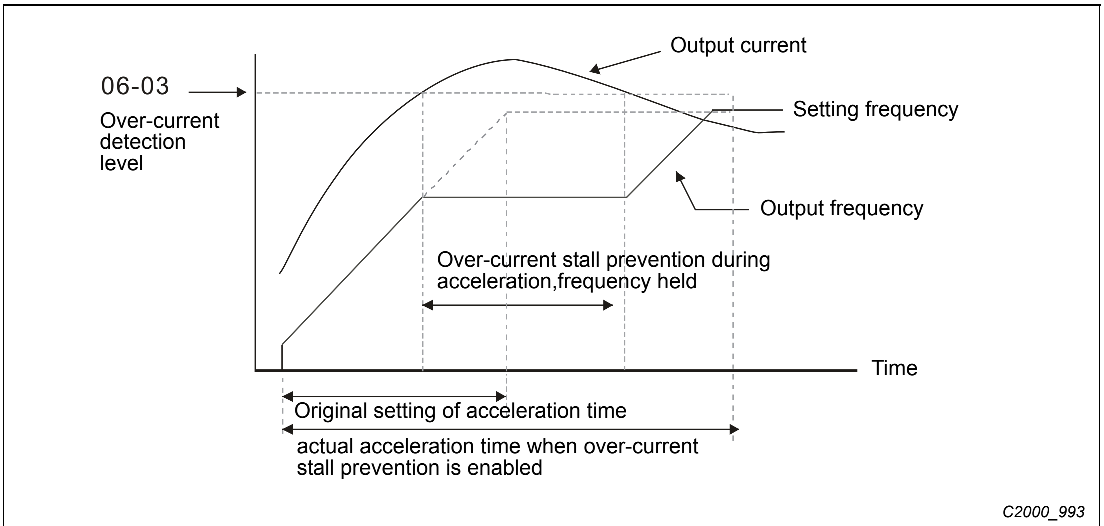


Fig. 12-41: Stall prevention at over-current during acceleration

06-04 ⌁ Over-current stall prevention during operation

		Factory setting:
Settings	Normal duty: 0–160 % (100 %: drive's rated current)	120
	Heavy duty: 0–180 % (100 %: drive's rated current)	150

- This parameter only works in VF, VFPG, and SVC control mode.
- It is a protection for drive to auto decrease output frequency when the motor is over-load abruptly during motor constant operation.
- If the output current exceeds the setting specified in Pr. 06-04 when the drive is operating, the drive will decrease its output frequency (according to Pr. 06-05) to prevent the motor stall. If the output current is lower than the setting specified in Pr. 06-04, the drive will accelerate (according to Pr. 06-05) again to catch up with the set frequency command value.

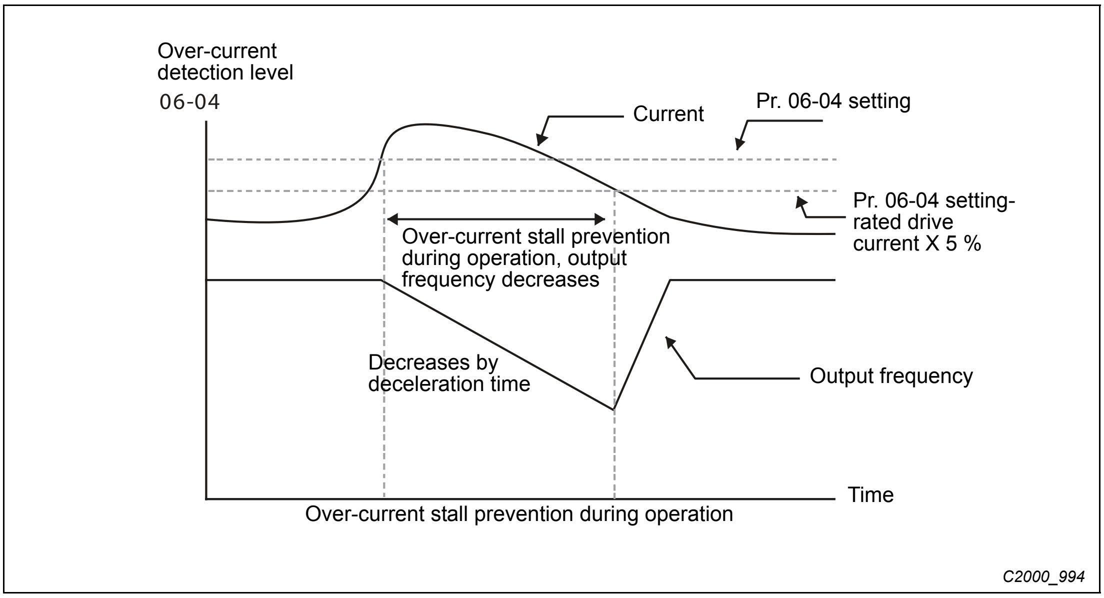


Fig. 12-42: Stall prevention at over-current during constant speed

06-05 ⌁ Accel./decel. time selection of stall prevention at constant speed

		Factory setting: 0
Settings	0: by current accel/decel time	
	1: by the 1st accel/decel time	
	2: by the 2nd accel/decel time	
	3: by the 3rd accel/decel time	
	4: by the 4th accel/decel time	
	5: by auto accel/decel	

- It is used to set the accel./decel. time selection when stall prevention occurs at constant speed.

06-06 ✐ Over-torque detection selection (OT1)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: No function
	1: Continue operation after over-torque detection during constant speed operation
	2: Stop after over-torque detection during constant speed operation
	3: Continue operation after over-torque detection during RUN
	4: Stop after over-torque detection during RUN

06-09 ✐ Over-torque detection selection (OT2)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: No function
	1: Continue operation after over-torque detection during constant speed operation
	2: Stop after over-torque detection during constant speed operation
	3: Continue operation after over-torque detection during RUN
	4: Stop after over-torque detection during RUN

- When Pr. 06-06 and Pr. 06-09 are set to 1 or 3, it will display a warning message and won't have an abnormal record.
- When Pr. 06-06 and Pr. 06-09 are set to 2 or 4, it will display a warning message and will have an abnormal record.

06-07 ✐ Over-torque detection level (OT1)

Factory setting: 120

Settings	10 to 250 % (100 %: drive's rated current)

06-08 ✐ Over-torque detection level (OT1)

Factory setting: 0.1

Settings	0.0–60.0 sec

06-10 ✐ Over-torque detection level (OT2)

Factory setting: 120

Settings	10 to 250 % (100 %: drive's rated current)

06-11	⌿ Over-torque detection time (OT2)

Factory setting: 0.1

Settings	0.0–60.0 sec

- When the output current exceeds the over-torque detection level (Pr. 06-07 or Pr. 06-10) and also exceeds Pr. 06-08 or Pr. 06-11, the over torque detection will follow the setting of Pr. 06-06 and Pr. 06-09.
- When Pr. 06-06 or Pr. 06-09 is set to 1 or 3, the motor drive will have the ot1/ot2 warning after over torque detection, while the motor drive will keep running. The warning will be off only until the output current is smaller than the 5 % of the over-torque detection level (Pr. 06-07 and Pr. 06-10).

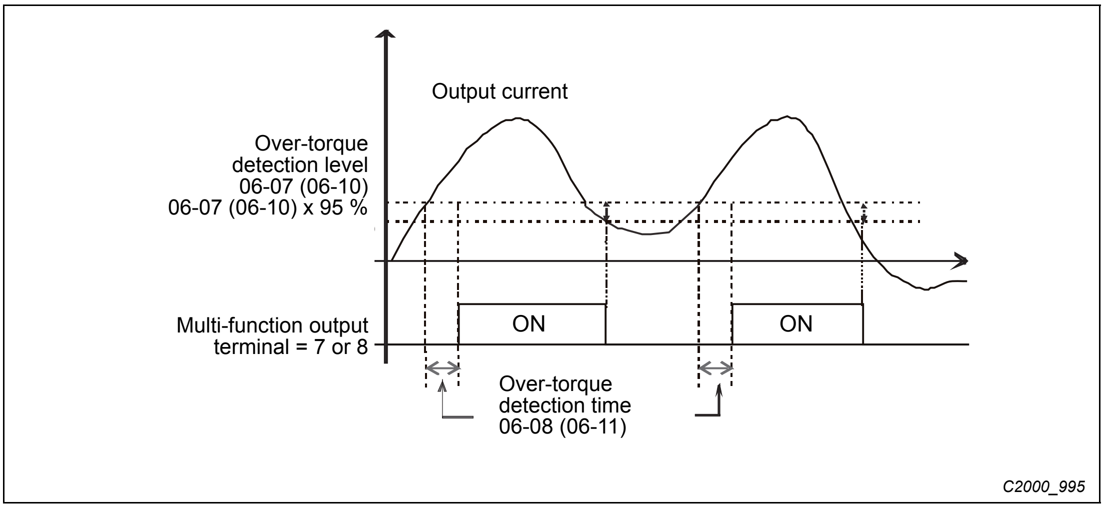


Fig. 12-43: Continuous operation at over-torque

- When Pr. 06-06 or Pr. 06-09 is set to 2 or 4, the motor drive will have the ot1/ot2 fault after torque detection. Then the motor drive stop running until it is manually reset.

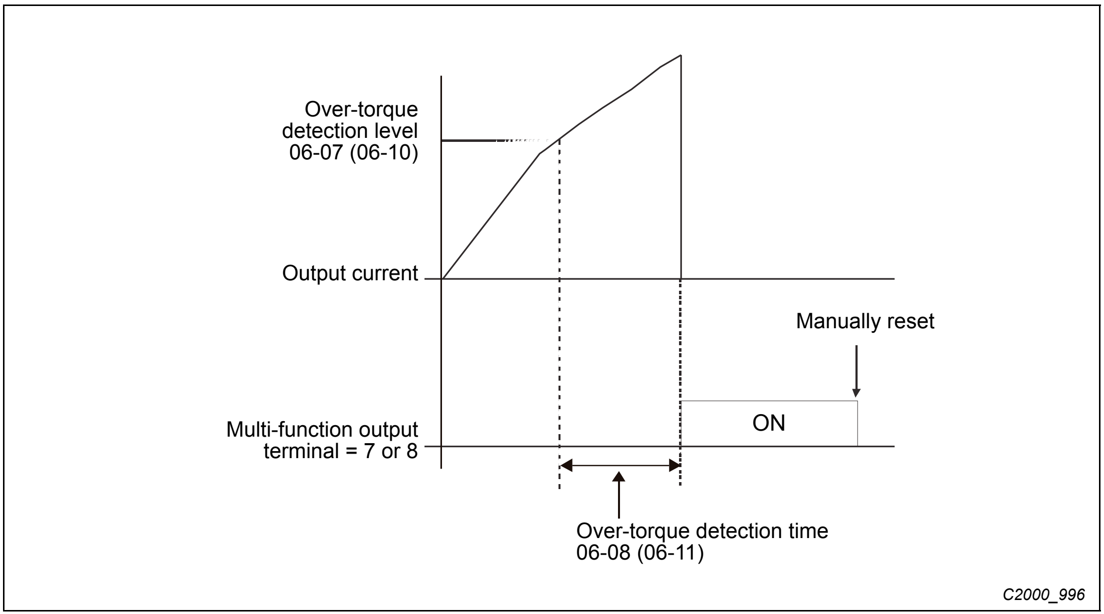


Fig. 12-44: Operation stop at over-torque

06-12 ⌁ Current limit

Factory setting: 170

Settings	0–250 % (100 %: drive's rated current)

- Pr. 06-12 sets the maximum output current of the drive. Pr. 06-12 and Pr. 11-17–Pr. 11-20 are used to set the drive's output current limit. When the drive is in VF, SVC or VFPG control mode, output frequency will decreases as the output current reaches current limit. It acts as current stall prevention.

06-13 ⌁ Electronic thermal relay selection (Motor 1)

06-27 ⌁ Electronic thermal relay selection (Motor 2)

Factory setting: 2

Settings	0: Special motor (with external forced cooling)
	1: Self-cooled motor (so motor with fan on the shaft)
	2: Disable

- It is used to prevent self-cooled motor overheats under low speed. User can use electronic thermal relay to limit driver's output power.
- Setting as 0 is suitable for special motor (motor fan using independent power supply). For this kind of motor, the cooling capacity is not related to motor speed obviously. So the action of electronic thermal relay will remain stable in low speed, which can ensure the motor's load capability in low speed.
- Setting as 1 is suitable for standard motor (motor fan is fixed on the rotor shaft). For this kind of motor, the cooling capacity is low in low speed, and the action of electronic thermal relay will reduce the action time, which ensure the life of motor.
- When the power ON/OFF is often switched, even setting as 0 or 1 can bot protect the motor well. It is because when the power is switched off, the electronic thermal relay protection will be reset. If there are several motors connected to one motor drive, please install electronic thermal relay in each motor respectively.

06-14 ⌁ Electronic thermal characteristic for motor 1

06-28 ⌁ Electronic thermal characteristic for motor 2

Factory setting: 60.0

Settings	30.0–600.0 sec

- The parameter is set by the 150 % of motor rated current and the setting of Pr. 06-14 and Pr. 06-28 to prevent the motor damaged from overheating. When it reaches the setting, it will display "EoL1/EoL2" and the motor will be in free running.
- This parameter is to set the action time of electronic thermal relay. It works based on the I2t characteristic curve of electronic thermal relay, output frequency and current of motor drive, and operation time to prevent motor from over-heat.

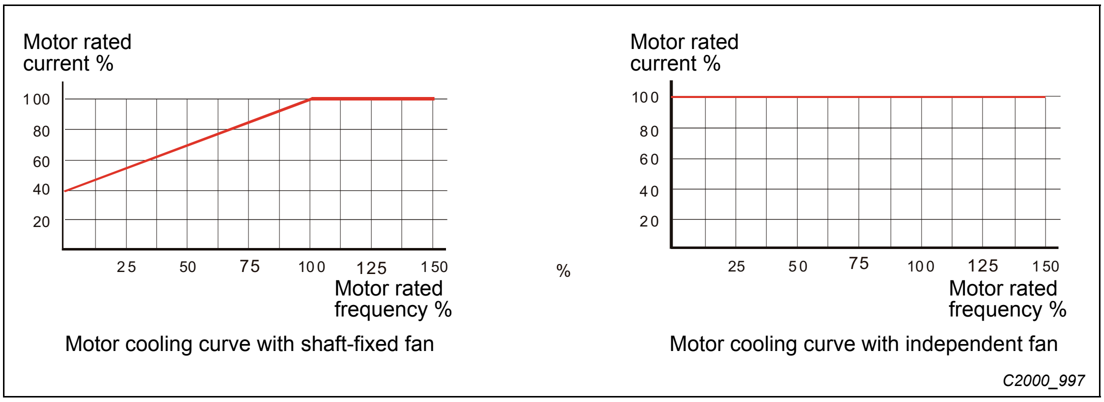


Fig. 12-45: Cooling characteristics of different motors

- The action of electronic thermal relay depends on the setting of Pr. 06-13/Pr. 06-27.
  1. 06-13 or 06-27 is set 0 (using special motor):
     When output current of motor drive is higher than 150 % of motor current (refer to motor cooling curve with independent fan), motor drive will start to count the time. When the accumulated time exceeds Pr. 06-14 or 06-28, electronic thermal relay will act.
  2. 06-13 or 06-27 is set 0 (using standard motor):
     When output current of motor drive is higher than 150 % of motor current (refer to motor cooling curve with shaft-fixed fan), motor drive will start to count the time. When the accumulated time exceeds Pr. 06-14 or 06-28, electronic thermal relay will act.
     The real electronic thermal relay action time will adjust with drive output current (shown as motor loading rate). When the current is high, the action time is short; when the current is high, the action time is short. Please refer to following chart:

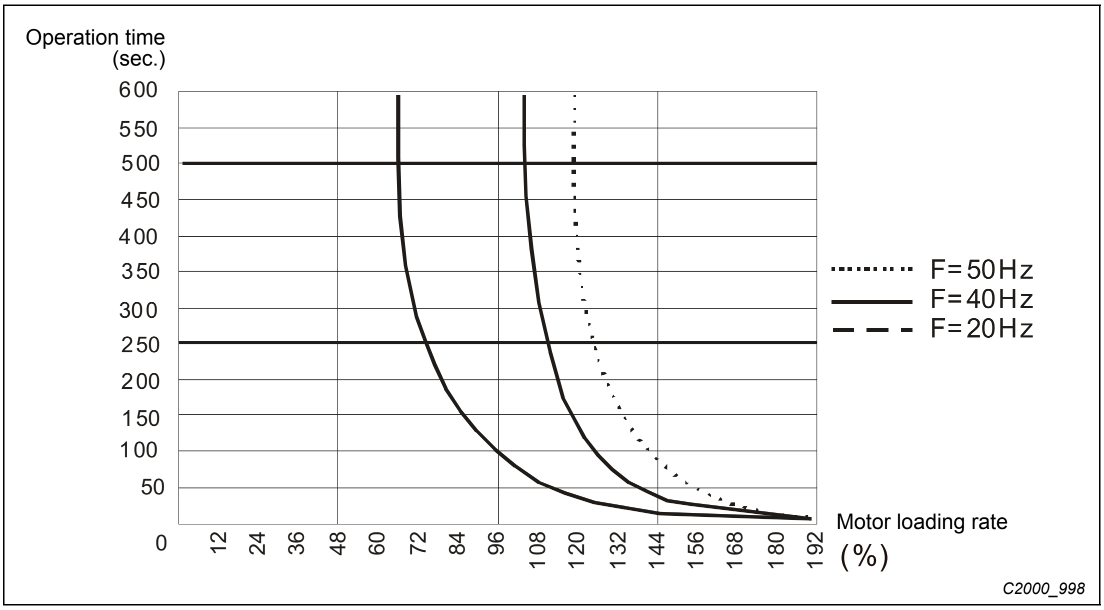


Fig. 12-46: Motor protection characteristics

06-15 ✓ Heat sink over-heat (OH) warning

Factory setting: 105.0

Settings	0.0–110.0 °C

- When using heavy duty or advanced control mode, the OH wrning will be disabled if Pr. 06-15 remains as default. When the temperature reaches 105 °C, motor drive will stop with IGBT over-heat fault.
- When using normal duty or general control mode, the OH warning will be disabled if Pr. 06-15 is set to 110 °C. When the temperature reaches 110 °C, motor drive will stop with IGBT over-heat fault.

06-16 ✓ Stall prevention limit level (Flux weakening area current stall prevention level)

Factory setting: 50

Settings	0–100 % (Refer to Pr. 06-03, Pr. 06-04)

- When operation frequency is larger than Pr. 01-01; e.g. Pr. 06-03 = 150 %, Pr. 06-04 = 100 % and Pr. 06-16 = 80 %:
  Calculate the stall prevention level during acceleration:
  Pr. 06-03 x Pr. 06-16 = 150 x 80 % = 120 %.
  Calculate the stall prevention level at constant speed:
  Pr. 06-04 x Pr. 06-16 = 100 x 80 % = 80 %.

06-17 Present fault record

06-18 Second most recent fault record

06-19 Third most recent fault record

06-20 Fourth most recent fault record

06-21 Fifth most recent fault record

06-22	Sixth most recent fault record

Settings	0: No fault record
	1: Over-current during acceleration (ocA)
	2: Over-current during deceleration (ocd)
	3: Over-current during constant speed (ocn)
	4: Ground fault (GFF)
	5: IGBT short-circuit (occ)
	6: Over-current at stop (ocS)
	7: Over-voltage during acceleration (ovA)
	8: Over-voltage during deceleration (ovd)
	9: Over-voltage during constant speed (ovn)
	10: Over-voltage at stop (ovS)
	11: Low-voltage during acceleration (LvA)
	12: Low-voltage during deceleration (Lvd)
	13: Low-voltage during constant speed (Lvn)
	14: Stop mid-low voltage (LvS)
	15: Phase loss protection (OrP)
	16: IGBT over-heat (oH1)
	17: Capacitance over-heat (oH2) (for 30 kW above)
	18: tH1o (TH1 open: IGBT over-heat protection error)
	19: tH2o (TH2 open: capacitance over-heat protection error)
	20: Reserved
	21: Drive over-load (oL)
	22: Electronics thermal relay 1 (EoL1)
	23: Electronics thermal relay 2 (EoL2)
	24: Motor PTC overheat (oH3) (PTC)
	25: Reserved
	26: Over-torque 1 (ot1)
	27: Over-torque 2 (ot2)
	28: Low current (uC)
	29: Home limit error (LMIT)
	30: Memory write-in error (cF1)
	31: Memory read-out error (cF2)
	32: Reserved
	33: U-phase current detection error (cd1)
	34: V-phase current detection error (cd2)
	35: W-phase current detection error (cd3)
	36: Clamp current detection error (Hd0)
	37: Over-current detection error (Hd1)
	38: Over-voltage detection error (Hd2)
	39: occ IGBT short circuit detection error (Hd3)
	40: Auto tuning error (AUE)
	41: PID feedback loss (AFE)
	42: PG feedback error (PGF1)
	43: PG feedback loss (PGF2)
	44: PG feedback stall (PGF3)
	45: PG slip error (PGF4)
	46: PG ref loss (PGr1)
	47: PG ref loss (PGr2)

48: Analog current input loss (ACE)
49: External fault input (EF)
50: Emergency stop (EF1)
51: External Base Block (bb)
52: Password error (PcodE)
53: Reserved
54: Communication error (CE1)
55: Communication error (CE2)
56: Communication error (CE3)
57: Communication error (CE4)
58: Communication Time-out (CE10)
59: PU Time-out (CP10)
60: Brake transistor error (bF)
61: Y-connection/Δ-connection switch error (ydc)
62: Decel. Energy Backup Error (dEb)
63: Slip error (oSL)
64: Electromagnet switch error (ryF)
65: PG Card Error (PGF5)
66–67: Reserved
68: Sensorless estimated speed have wrong direction
69: Sensorless estimated speed is over speed
70: Sensorless estimated speed deviated
71: Reserved
72: STO Loss 1
73: External safety gate S1
74–75: Reserved
76: STO
77: STO Loss 2
78: STO Loss 3
79: Uocc U phase over current (Detection begins as RUN is pressed, software protection)
80: Vocc V phase over current (Detection begins as RUN is pressed, software protection)
81: Wocc W phase over current (Detection begins as RUN is pressed, software protection)
82: OPHL U phase output phase loss
83: OPHL Vphase output phase loss
84: OPHL Wphase output phase loss
85: PG-02U ABZ hardware disconnection
86: PG-02U UVW hardware disconnection
87–88: Reserved
89: Initial rotor position detection error
90: Inner PLC function is forced to stop
91–100: Reserved
101: CGdE CANopen software disconnect1
102: CHbE CANopen software disconnect2
103: CSYE CANopen synchronous error
104: CbFE CANopen hardware disconnect
105: CIdE CANopen index setting error
106: CAdE CANopen slave station number setting error

	107: CFrE CANopen index setting exceed limit
	108–110: Reserved
	111: InrCOM Internal communication overtime error
	112: PM sensorless shaft Lock error
	113: Software OC

- When the fault occurs and force stopping, it will record in this parameter.
- At stop with low voltage Lv (LvS warn, no record). During operation with mid-low voltage Lv (LvA, Lvd, Lvn error, will record).
- Setting 62: when dEb function is enabled, the drive will execute dEb and record to the Pr. 06-17 to Pr. 06-22 simultaneously.

06-23 ⌿ Fault output option 1

06-24 ⌿ Fault output option 2

06-25 ⌿ Fault output option 3

06-26 ⌿ Fault output option 4

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0 to 65535 sec (refer to bit table for fault code)

- These parameters can be used with multi-function output (set to 35-38) for the specific requirement. When the fault occurs, the corresponding terminals will be activated (It needs to convert binary value to decimal value to fill in Pr. 06-23 to Pr. 06-26).

Fault Code	Bit0	Bit1	Bit2	Bit3	Bit4	Bit5	Bit6
	current	volt.	OL	SYS	FBK	EXI	CE
0: No fault							
1: Over-current during acceleration (ocA)	●						
2: Over-current during deceleration (ocd)	●						
3: Over-current during constant speed (ocn)	●						
4: Ground fault (GFF)	●						
5: IGBT short-circuit (occ)	●						
6: Over-current at stop (ocS)	●						
7: Over-voltage during acceleration (ovA)		●					
8: Over-voltage during deceleration (ovd)		●					
9: Over-voltage during constant speed (ovn)		●					
10: Over-voltage at stop (ovS)		●					
11: Low-voltage during acceleration (LvA)		●					
12: Low-voltage during deceleration (Lvd)		●					
13: Low-voltage during constant speed (Lvn)		●					

Tab. 12-11: Bit table for fault codes (1)

Fault Code	Bit0	Bit1	Bit2	Bit3	Bit4	Bit5	Bit6
	cur-rent	volt.	OL	SYS	FBK	EXI	CE
14: Stop mid-low voltage (LvS)		●					
15: Phase loss protection (OrP)		●					
16: IGBT over-heat (oH1)			●				
17: Capacitance over-heat (oH2)			●				
18: tH1o (TH1 open)			●				
19: tH2o (TH2 open)			●				
20: Reserved							
21: Drive over-load (oL)			●				
22: Electronics thermal relay 1 (EoL1)			●				
23: Electronics thermal relay 2 (EoL2)			●				
24: Motor PTC overheat (oH3) (PTC)			●				
25: Reserved							
26: Over-torque 1 (ot1)			●				
27: Over-torque 2 (ot2)			●				
28: Low current (uC)	●						
29: Home limit error (LMIT)						●	
30: Memory write-in error (cF1)				●			
31: Memory read-out error (cF2)				●			
32: Reserved							
33: U-phase current detection error (cd1)				●			
34: V-phase current detection error (cd2)				●			
35: W-phase current detection error (cd3)				●			
36: Clamp current detection error (Hd0)				●			
37: Over-current detection error (Hd1)				●			
38: Over-voltage detection error (Hd2)				●			
39: occ IGBT short circuit detection error (Hd3)				●			
40: Auto tuning error (AUE)				●			
41: PID feedback loss (AFE)					●		
42: PG feedback error (PGF1)					●		
43: PG feedback loss (PGF2)					●		
44: PG feedback stall (PGF3)					●		
45: PG slip error (PGF4)					●		
46: PG ref loss (PGr1)					●		
47: PG ref loss (PGr2)					●		
48: Analog current input loss (ACE)					●		
49: External fault input (EF)						●	
50: Emergency stop (EF1)						●	
51: External base block (bb)						●	
52: Password error (PcodE)				●			
53: Reserved							
54: Communication error (CE1)							●
55: Communication error (CE2)							●
56: Communication error (CE3)							●
57: Communication error (CE4)							●
58: Communication time-out (CE10)							●
59: PU Time-out (CP10)							●

Tab. 12-11: Bit table for fault codes (2)

Fault Code	Bit0	Bit1	Bit2	Bit3	Bit4	Bit5	Bit6
	current	volt.	OL	SYS	FBK	EXI	CE
60: Brake transistor error (bF)						●	
61: Y-connection/Δ-connection switch error (ydc)						●	
62: Decel. energy backup error (dEb)		●					
63: Slip error (oSL)						●	
64: Electromagnet switch error (ryF)						●	
65: PG Card Error (PGF5)						●	
66–67: Reserved							
68: Sensorless estimated speed have wrong direction							
69: Sensorless estimated speed is over speed							
70: Sensorless estimated speed deviated							
71: Reserved							
72: STO Loss 1				●			
73: External safety gate S1				●			
74–75: Reserved							
76: STO				●			
77: STO Loss 2				●			
78: STO Loss 3				●			
79: U phase over current (Uocc)	●						
80: V phase over current (Vocc)	●						
81: W phase over current (Wocc)	●						
82: OPHL U phase output phase loss	●						
83: OPHL Vphase output phase loss	●						
84: OPHL Wphase output phase loss	●						
85: PG-02U ABZ hardware disconnection					●		
86: PG-02U UVW hardware disconnection					●		
87–88: Reserved							
89: Initial rotor position detection error							
90: Inner PLC function is forced to stop							
91–100: Reserved							
101: CGdE CANopen software disconnect 1							●
102: CHbE CANopen software disconnect 2							●
103: CSYE CANopen synchronous error							●
104: CbFE CANopen hardware disconnect							●
105: CIdE CANopen index setting error							●
106: CAdE CANopen slave station number setting error							●
107: CFrE CANopen index setting exceed limit							●
108–110: Reserved							
111: InrCOM Internal communication overtime error							●
112: PM sensorless shaft lock error							
113: Software OC							

Tab. 12-11: Bit table for fault codes (3)

06-29 ✓ PTC (Positive temperature coefficient) detection selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Warn and keep operating
	1: Warn and ramp to stop
	2: Warn and coast to stop
	3: No warning

- Pr. 06-29 setting defines how the will drive operate after PTC detection.

06-30 ✓ PTC level

Factory setting: 50.0

Settings	0.0–100.0 %

- It needs to set AVI/ACI/AUI analog input function Pr. 03-00–03-02 to 6 (P.T.C. thermistor input value).
- It is used to set the PTC level, and the corresponding value for 100 % is max. analog input value.

06-31 Frequency command for malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0.00–655.35 Hz

- When malfunction occurs, use can check the frequency command. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-32 Output frequency at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0.00–655.35 Hz

- When malfunction occurs, use can check the current frequency command. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-33	Output voltage at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0.0–6553.5 V

- When malfunction occurs, user can check current output voltage. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-34	DC voltage at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0.0–6553.5 V

- When malfunction occurs, user can check the current DC voltage. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-35	Output current at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0.00–655.35 Amp

- When malfunction occurs, user can check the current output current. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-36	IGBT temperature at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	-3276,7–3276,7 °C

- When malfunction occurs, user can check the current output current. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-37 Capacitance temperature at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	-3276.7–3276.7 °C

- When malfunction occurs, user can check the current capacitance temperature. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-38 Motor speed in rpm at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	-3276.7–3276.7 rpm

- When malfunction occurs, user can check the current motor speed in rpm. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-39 Torque command at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	-3276.7–3276.7

- When malfunction occurs, user can check the current torque command. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-40 Status of multi-function input terminal at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0000h–FFFFh

06-41 Status of multi-function output terminal at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0000h–FFFFh

- When malfunction occurs, user can check the status of multi-function input/output terminals. If it happens again, it will overwrite the previous record.

06-42 Drive status at malfunction

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0000h–FFFFh

- When malfunction occurs, please check the drive status (communication address 2119H). If malfunction happens again, the previous record will be overwritten by this parameter.

06-43 Reserved

06-44 ✗ STO alarm latch

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: STO alarm Latch
	1: STO alarm no Latch

- Pr. 06-44 = 0 STO Alarm Latch: after the reason of STO Alarm is cleared, a Reset command is need to clear STO Alarm.
- Pr. 06-44 = 1 STO Alarm no Latch: after the reason of STO Alarm is cleared, the STO Alarm will be cleared automatically.
- All of STL1–STL3 error are "Alarm latch" mode (in STL1–STL3 mode, the Pr. 06-44 function is no effective).

06-45 ⌿ Treatment to output phase loss (OPHL)

Factory setting: 3

Settings	0: Warn and keep operating
	1: Warn and ramp to stop
	2: Warn and coast to stop
	3: No warning

- The OPHL protect will be active when the setting is not 3.

06-46 ⌿ Waiting time of output phase loss

Factory setting: 0.500

Settings	0.000–65.535 sec

06-47 ⌿ Current detection level of output phase loss

Factory setting: 1.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 %

06-48 ⌿ Output phase loss detection function executing time before run

Factory setting: 0.000

Settings	0.000–65.535 sec

- When Pr. 06-48 is 0, OPHL detection function will be disabled
- Status 1: Motor drive is in operation
  Any phase is less than Pr. 06-47 setting level, and exceeds Pr. 06-46 setting time, motor drive will perform Pr. 06-45 setting.

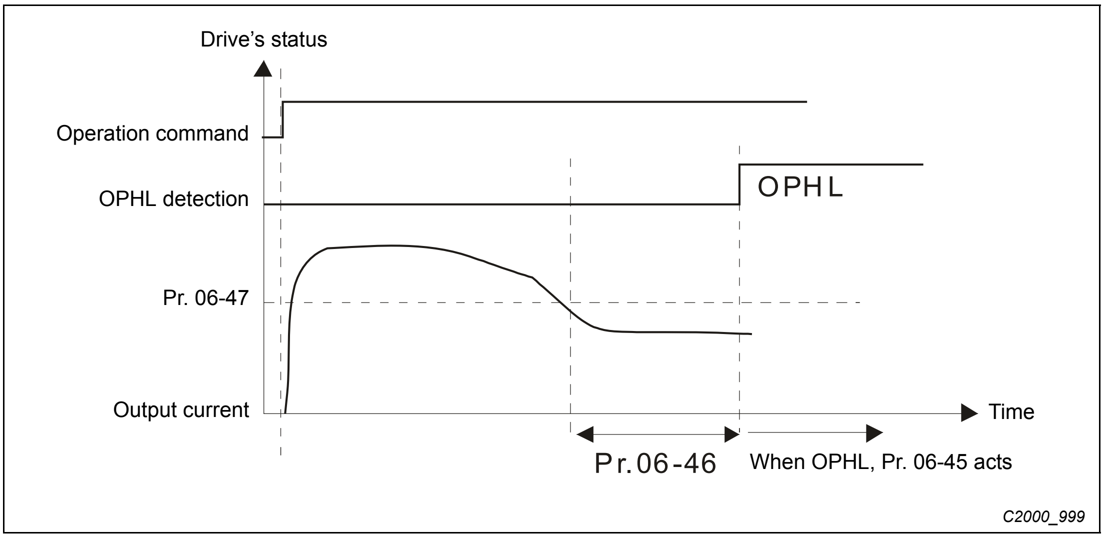


Fig. 12-47: Output phase loss (OPHL) during frequency inverter operation

- Status 2: Motor drive is in stop; Pr. 06-48 = 0; Pr. 07-02 ≠ 0
  After motor drive starts, DC brake will be applied in accord to Pr. 07-01 and Pr. 07-02. During this period, OPHL detection will not be conducted. After DC brake, motor drive starts to run, and conducts the OPHL protection as mentioned in status 1.

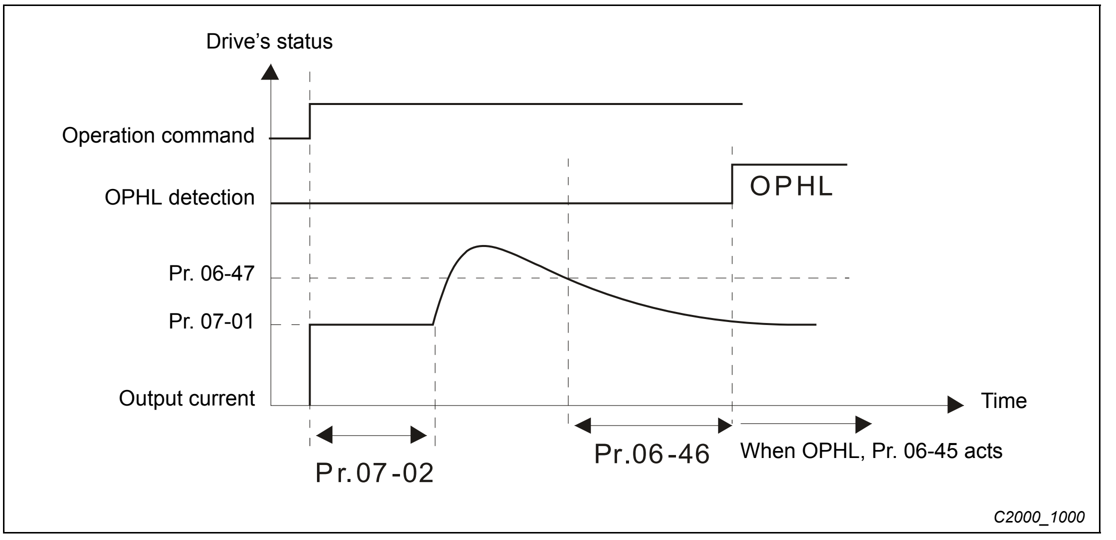


Fig. 12-48: Output phase loss (OPHL) during frequency inverter stop

- Status 3: Motor drive is in stop; Pr. 06-48 ≠ 0; Pr. 07-02 ≠ 0
  When motor drive starts, it will perform Pr. 06-48 and then Pr. 07-02 (DC brake). DC brake current level in this status includes two parts, one is 20 times of Pr. 06-47 setting value in Pr. 06-48 setting time, and Pr. 07-02 setting value in Pr. 07-01 setting time. Total DC brake time is T = Pr. 06-48 + Pr. 07-02.
  In this period, if OPHL happens, motor drive starts to count until Pr. 06-48/2, motor drive will perform Pr. 06-45 setting.

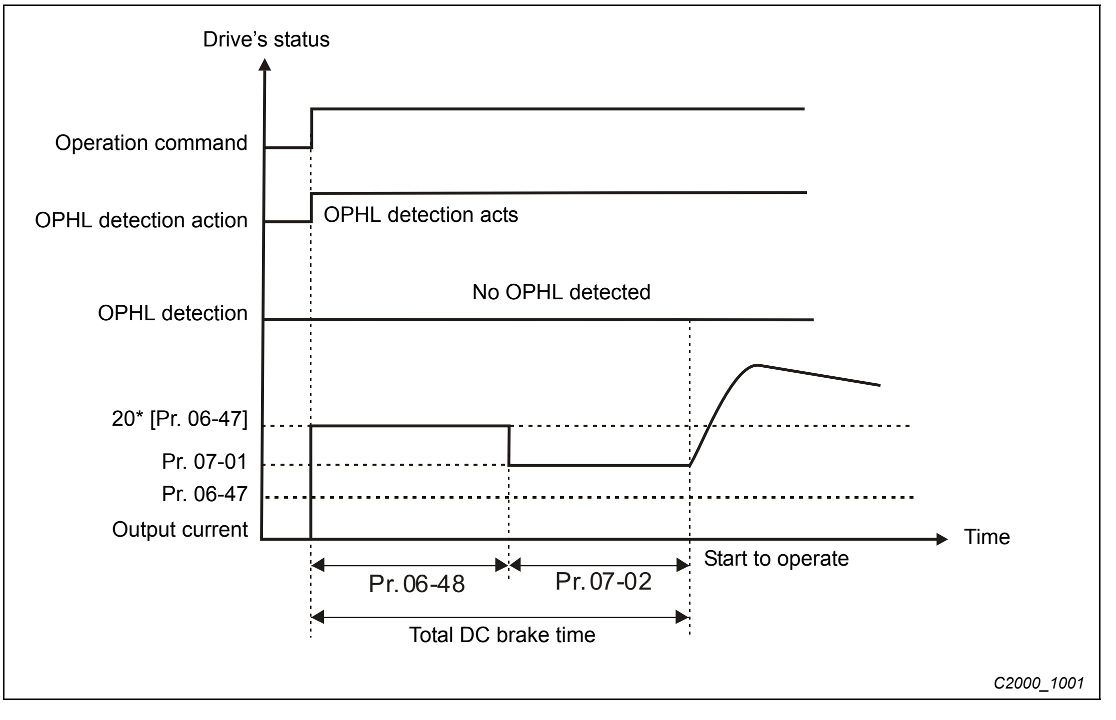


Fig. 12-49: Status 3-1: Pr. 06-48 ≠ 0, Pr. 07-02 ≠ 0 (No OPHL detected before operation)

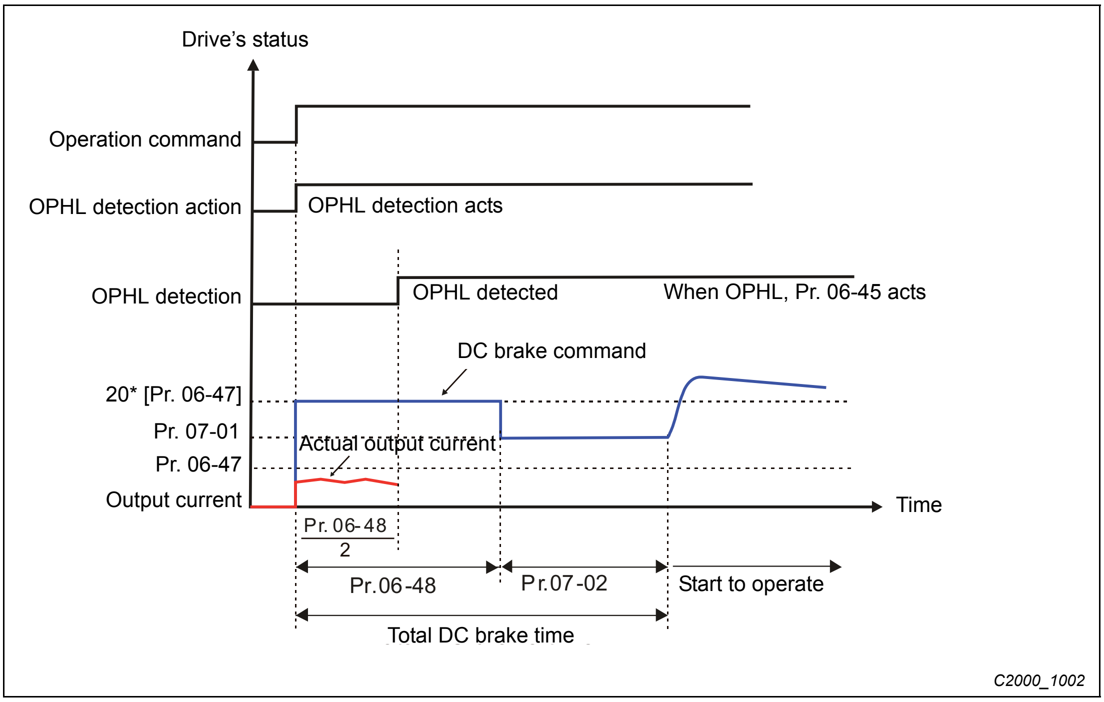


Fig. 12-50: Status 3-2: Pr. 06-48 ≠ 0, Pr. 07-02 ≠ 0 (OPHL detected before operation)

- Status 4: Motor drive is in stop; Pr. 06-48≠0; Pr. 07-02=0
  When motor drive starts, it will perform Pr. 06-48 as DC brake. The DC brake current level is 20 times of Pr. 06-47 setting value. In this period, if OPHL happens, motor drive starts to count until Pr. 06-48/2, motor drive will perform Pr. 06-45 setting.

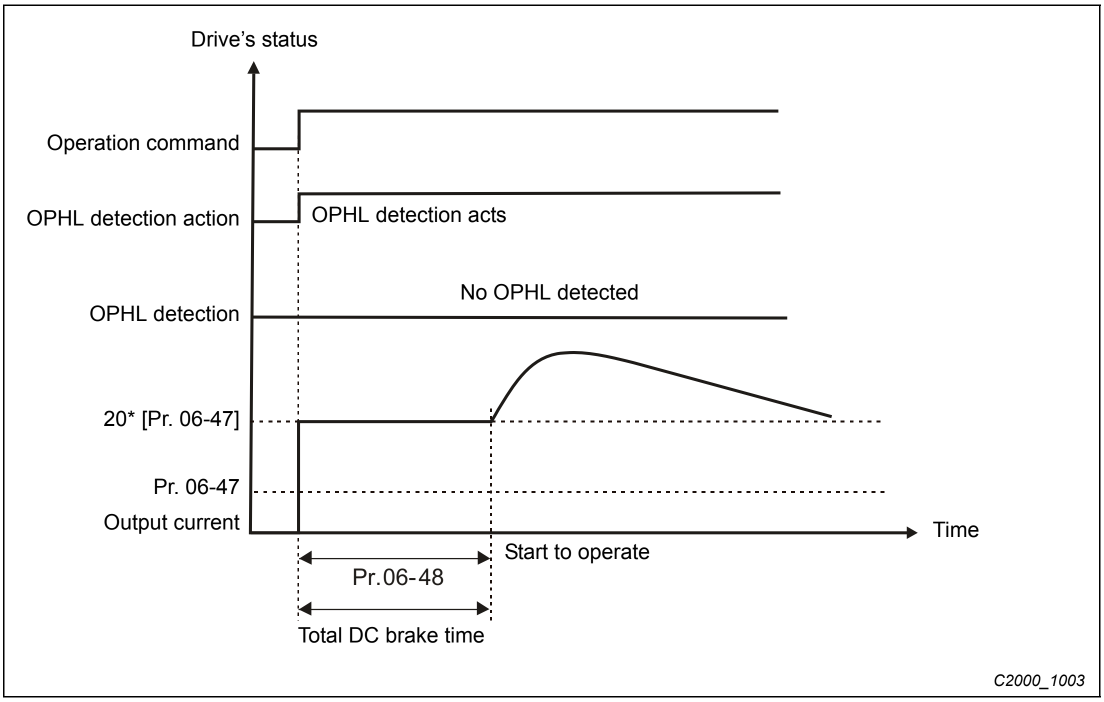


Fig. 12-51: Status 4-1: Pr. 06-48 ≠ 0, Pr. 07-02 = 0 (No OPHL detected before operation)

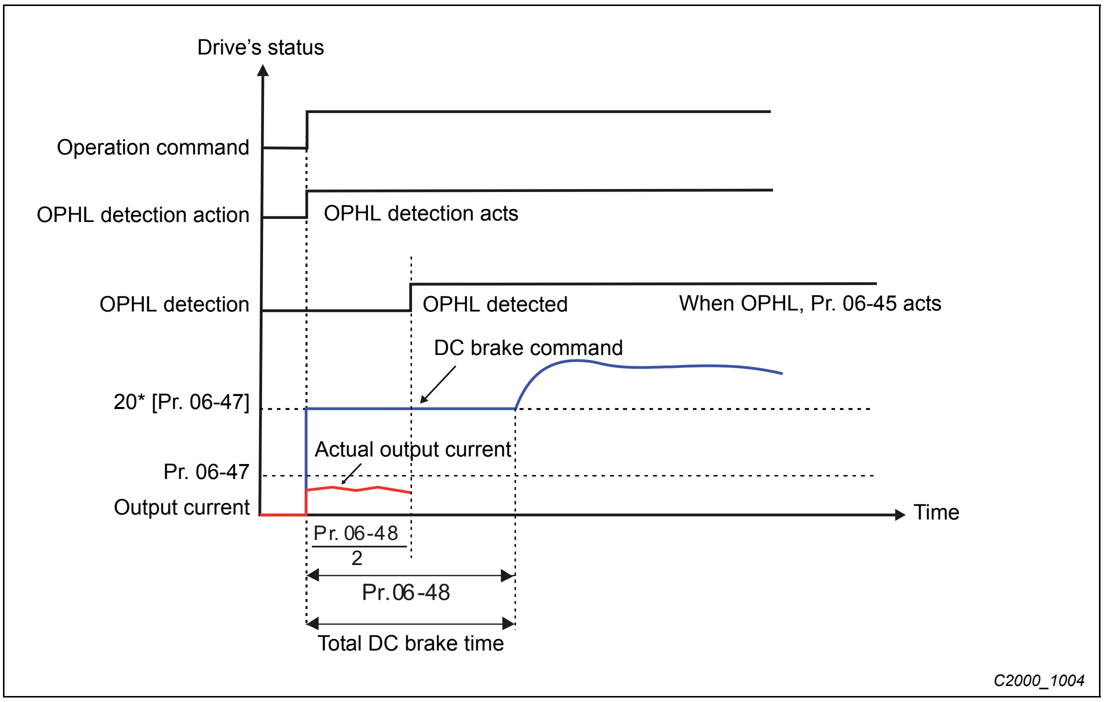


Fig. 12-52: Status 4-2: Pr. 06-48 ≠ 0, Pr. 07-02 = 0 (OPHL detected before operation)

06-49 Reserved

06-50 ✓ Time for Input phase loss detection

Factory setting: 0.20

Settings	0.00–600.00 sec

06-51 Reserved

06-52 ✓ Ripple of input phase loss

Factory setting: 30.0/60.0

Settings	230 V series: 0.0–160.0 V DC
	460 V series: 0.0–320.0 V DC

- When the DC BUS ripple is higher than Pr. 06-52, and continue Pr. 06-50 plus 30 seconds, drive will trip up OrP and act depending on the setting of Pr. 06-53 to stop.
- In the time period Pr. 06-50 plus 30 seconds, if the DC BUS ripple is lower than Pr. 06-52, the Orp protection counter will be restart.

06-53 ⚡ Treatment for the detected Input phase loss (OrP)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: warn, ramp to stop
	1: warn, coast to stop

- Over ripple protection
- When the DC BUS ripple is bigger than protection level, drive will trip up OrP and depending on how the parameter 06-53 is set to stop.

06-54 Reserved

06-55 Derating protection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: constant rated current and limit carrier wave by load current and temperature
	1: constant carrier frequency and limit load current by setting carrier wave
	2: constant rated current(same as setting 0), but close current limit

- Setting 0:
  When the rated current is constant, carrier frequency (Fc) outputted by PWM will auto decrease according to surrounding temperature, overload output current and time. If overload situation is not frequent and only cares the carrier frequency operated with the rated current for a long time and carrier wave changes during short overload, it is recommended to set to 0.
  Refer to the following diagram for the level of carrier frequency. Take VFD007C43A in normal duty as example, surrounding temperature 50 °C with independent installation and UL open-type. When the carrier frequency is set to 15 kHz, it corresponds to 72 % rated output current. When it outputs higher than the value, it will auto decrease the carrier frequency. If the output is 83 % rated current and the carrier frequency will decrease to 12 kHz. In addition, it will also decrease the carrier frequency when overload. When the carrier frequency is 15 kHz and the current is 120 % *72 % = 86 % for a minute, the carrier frequency will decrease to the factory setting.
- Setting 1:
  It is used for the fixed carrier frequency and prevents the carrier wave changes and motor noise caused by the surrounding temperature and frequent overload.
  Refer to the following for the derating level of rated current. Take VFD007C43A in normal duty as example, when the carrier frequency keeps in 15 kHz and the rated current is decreased to 72 %, it will have OL protection when the current is 120 % *72 % = 86 % for a minute. Therefore, it needs to operate by the curve to keep the carrier frequency.

- Setting 2:
  It sets the protection method and action to 0 and disables the current limit for the Ratio*160 % of output current in the normal duty and Ratio*180 % of output current in the heavy duty. The advantage is that it can provide higher output current when the setting is higher than the factory setting of carrier frequency. The disadvantage is that it decreases carrier wave easily when overload.
- It should be used with Pr. 00-16 and Pr. 00-17 for setting.
- Ambient temperature will also affect the derating, please refer to ambient temperature derating curve.

General control derating curve (Pr. 00-10 = 1 and Pr. 0011 = 0–3)

In normal duty mode (Pr. 00-16 = 0)

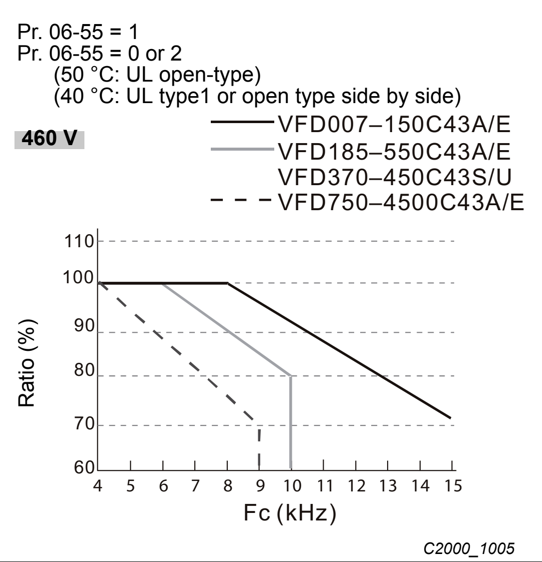


Fig. 12-53: Normal duty for 460 V devices

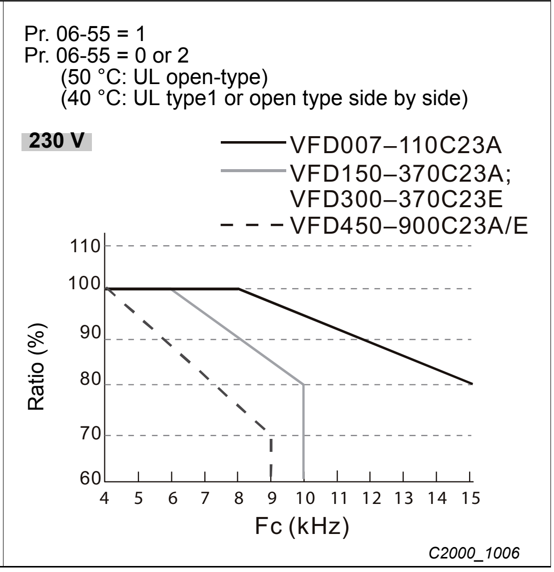


Fig. 12-54: Normal duty for 230 V devices

In heavy duty mode (Pr. 00-16 = 1)

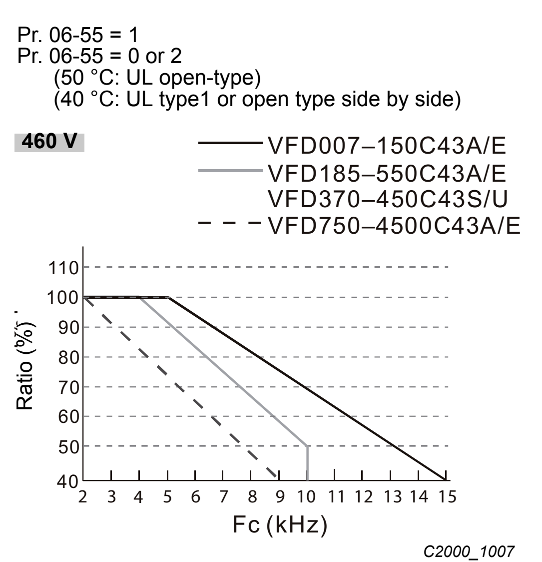


Fig. 12-55: Heavy duty for 460 V devices

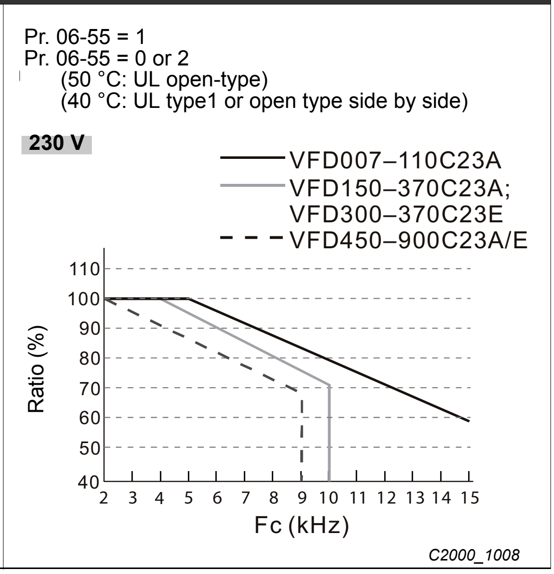


Fig. 12-56: Heavy duty for 230 V devices

Ambient temperature derating curve for general control model

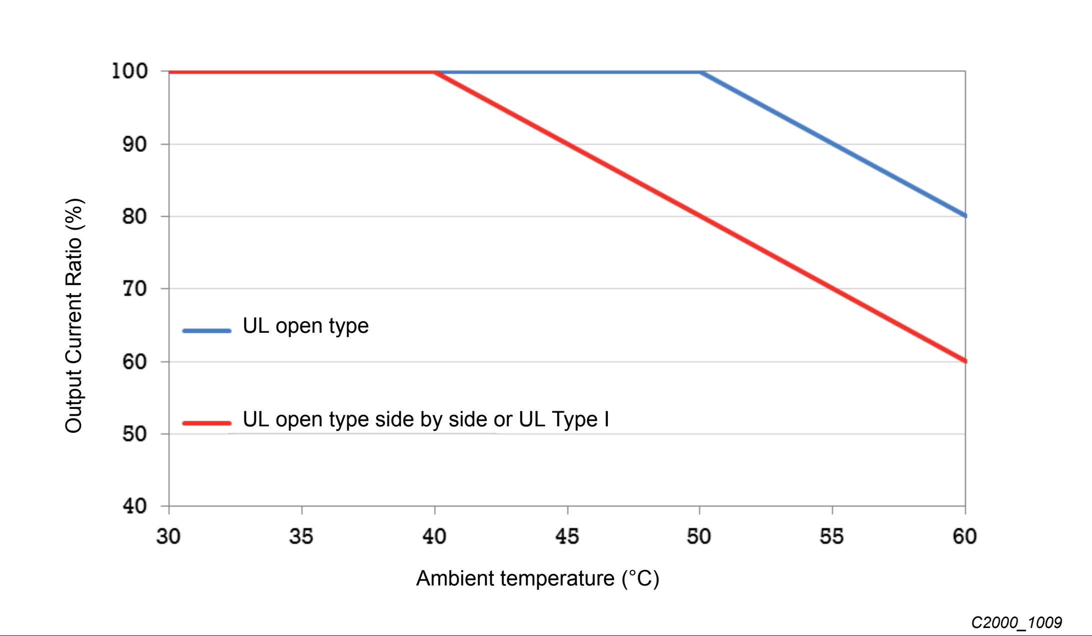


Fig. 12-57: Derating for high ambient temperature

Advanced control derating curve (Pr. 00-10 = 1, and Pr. 00-11 = 4–7; or Pr. 00-10 = 3, and Pr. 00-13 = 1–3) in normal duty mode (Pr. 00-16 = 0)

(50C: UL open-type, frame A–B)
(40C: UL type 1 or open type side by side, frame A–B)
(40C: UL open-type, UL type 1 or open type side by side, frame C–H)

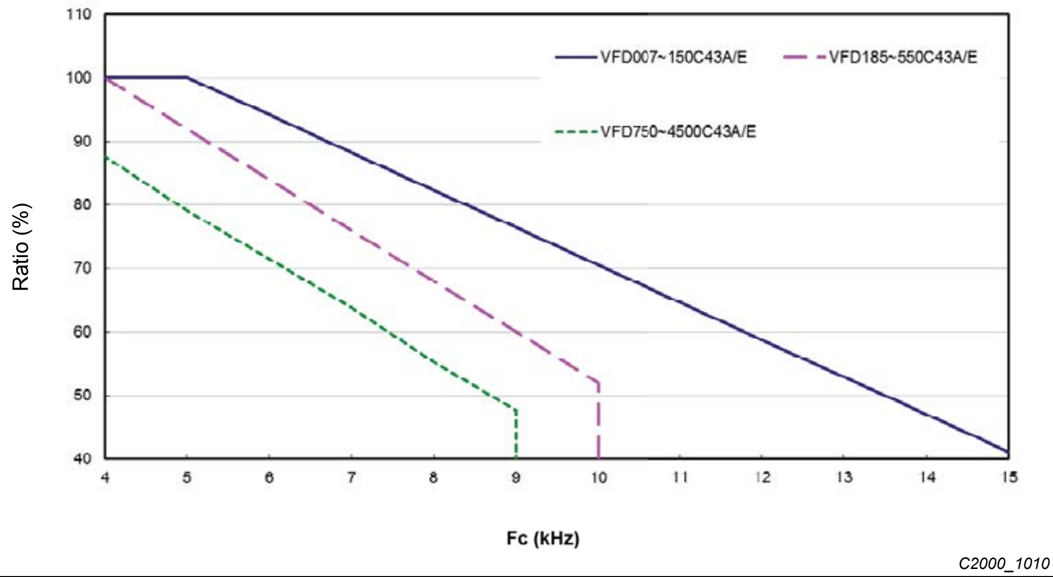


Fig. 12-58: Derating cureve for sensorless control (460 V, ND)

(50C: UL open-type, frame A–B)
(40C: UL type 1 or open type side by side, frame A–B)
(40C: UL open-type, UL type 1 or open type side by side, frame C–H)

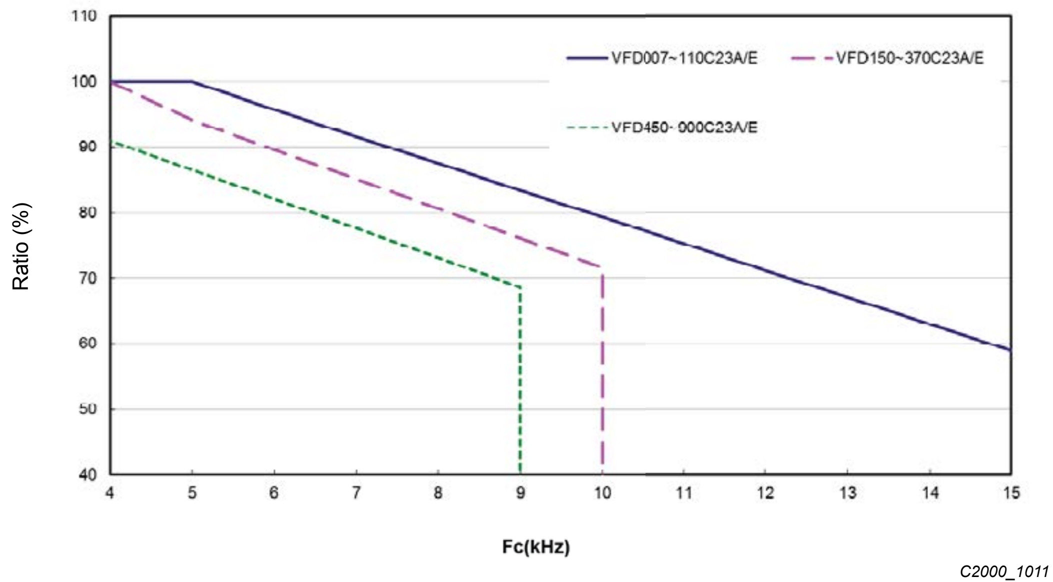


Fig. 12-59: Derating cureve for sensorless control (230 V, ND)

In heavy duty mode (Pr. 00-16 = 1)

(50C: UL open-type, frame A–B)
(40C: UL type 1 or open type side by side, frame A–B)
(40C: UL open-type, UL type 1 or open type side by side, frame C–H)

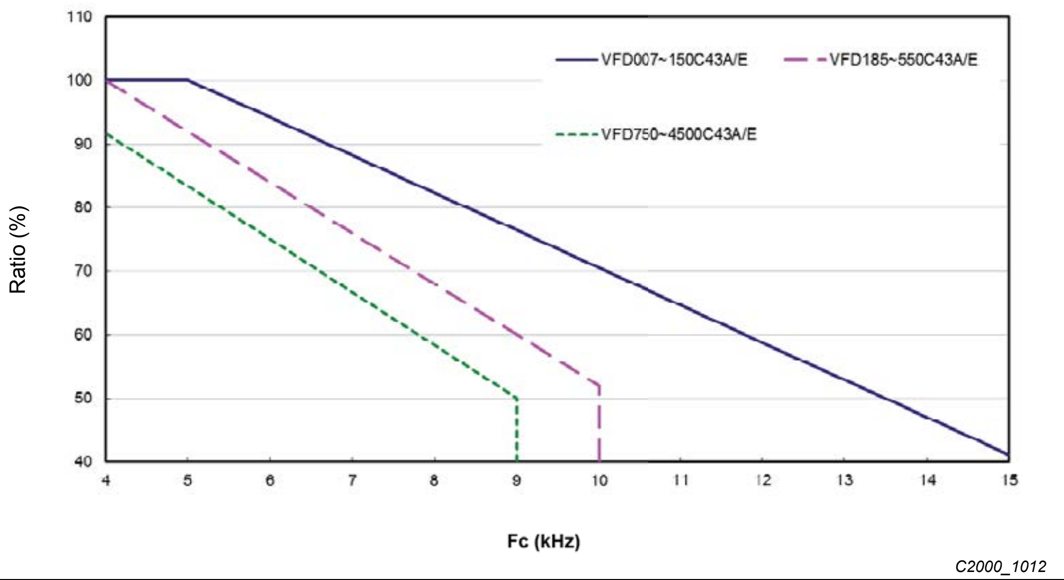


Fig. 12-60: Derating curve for sensorless control (460 V, HD)

(50C: UL open-type, frame A–B)
(40C: UL type 1 or open type side by side, frame A–B)
(40C: UL open-type, UL type 1 or open type side by side, frame C–H)

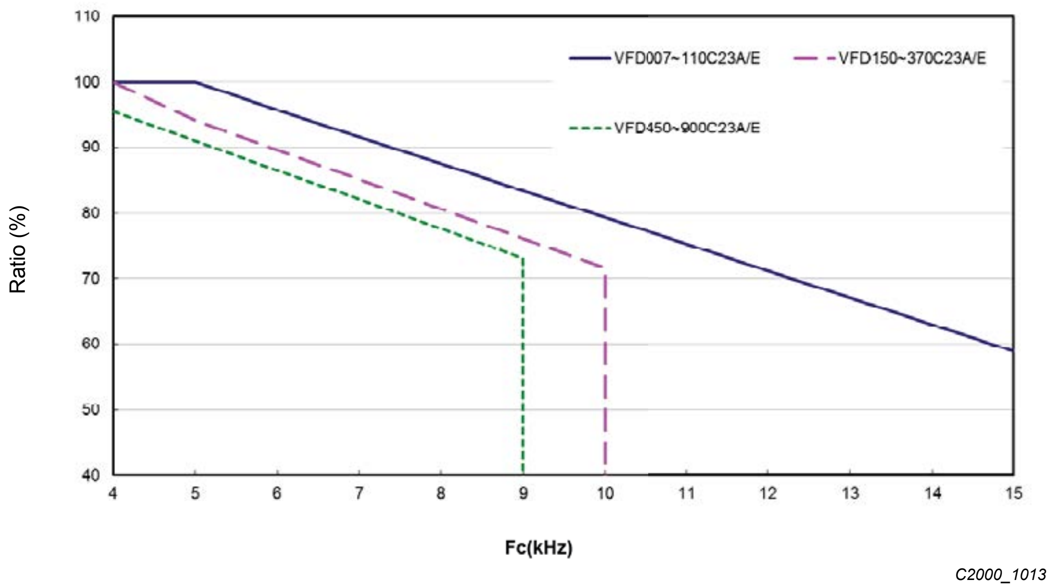


Fig. 12-61: Derating curve for sensorless control (230 V, HD)

Ambient temperature derating curve for advanced control mode

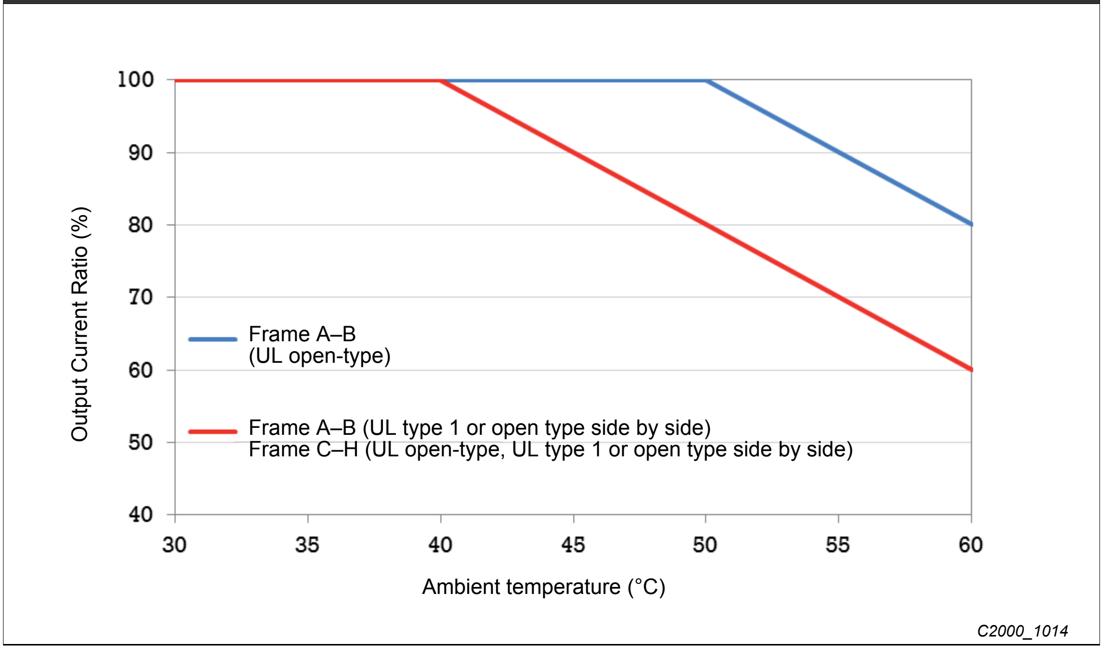


Fig. 12-62: Derating for high ambient temperature

06-56 ✔ PT100 detection level 1

Factory setting: 5.000

Settings	0.000–10.000 V

06-57 ✔ PT100 detection level 2

Factory setting: 7.000

Settings	0.000–10.000 V

- Make sure Pr. 06-57 > Pr. 06-56.

06-58 ✔ PT100 level 1 frequency protection

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

06-59	⌿ PT100 activation level delay time

Factory setting: 60 sec

Settings	0–6000 sec

■ PT100 operation

(1) Use AVI, AUI or ACI (set to 0-10 V) for analog voltage input and select PT100 mode.
(2) Choose one of the analog voltage input type: (a) AVI (Pr. 03-00 = 11), (b) AUI (Pr. 03-02 = 11), or (c) ACI (Pr. 03-01 = 11 and Pr. 03-29 = 1).
(3) When using ACI as analog voltage input, set Pr. 03-01=11 and Pr. 03-29=1. Then switch SW2 to 0-10 V on the I/O control terminal block.
(4) Set Pr. 03-23 = 23 and AFM2 to constant current output. Switch AFM2 (SW2) to 0–20 mA on the I/O control terminal block and set constant current output to 9 mA by setting Pr. 03-33=45. The AFM2 constant output current is 20 mA* 45 % = 9 mA.
(5) Pr. 03-33 is for adjusting the constant voltage or constant current of AFM2, the setting range is 0–100.00 %.
(6) There are two types of action level for PT100. The diagram of PT protecting action is shown as below:

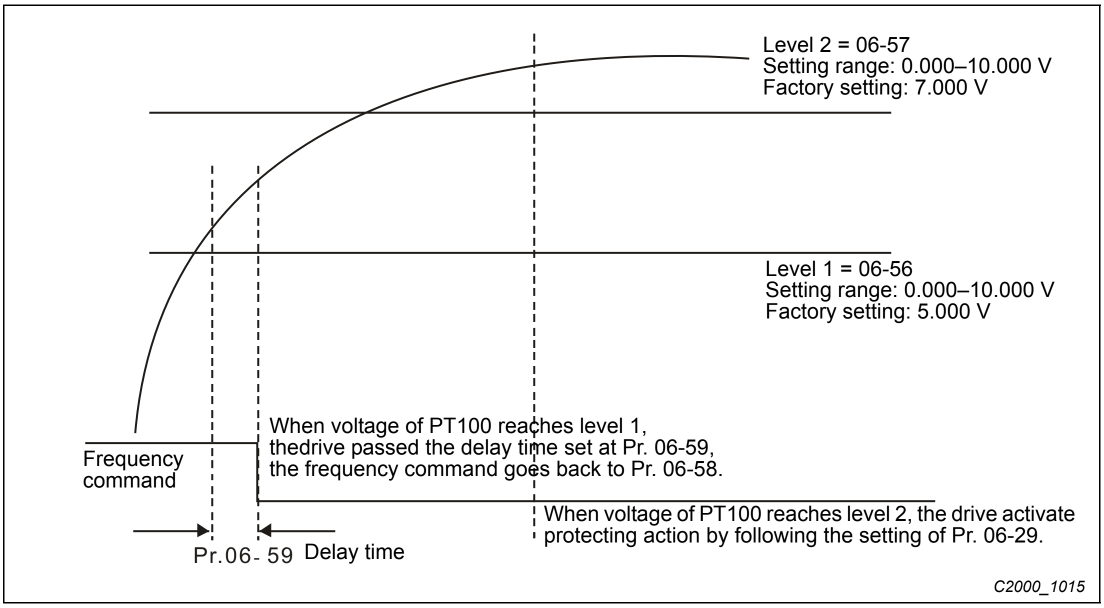


Fig. 12-63: Trigger threshold of PT100 sensor

(7) PT100 wiring diagram:

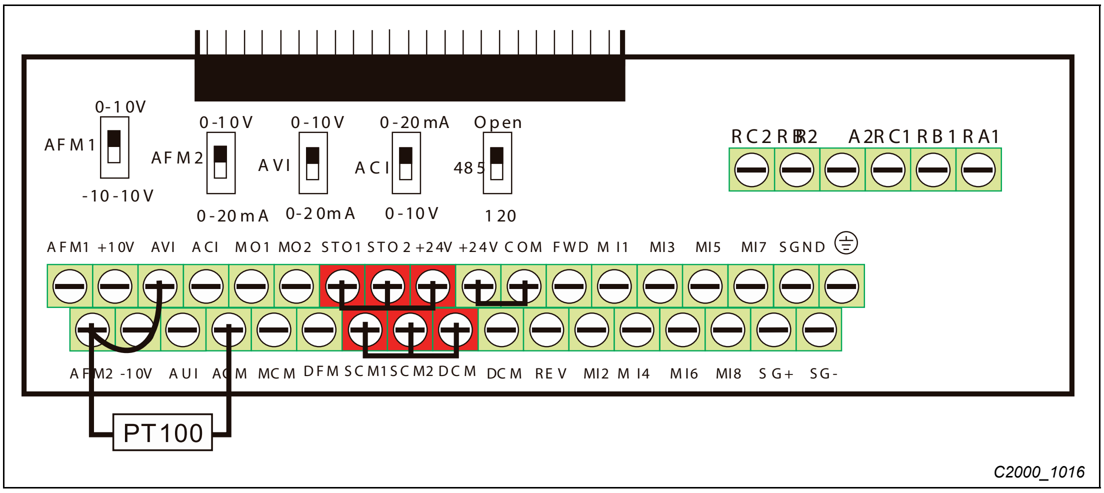


Fig. 12-64: Connection of a PT100 sensor to the I/O control terminal block

■ When Pr. 06-58 = 0.00 Hz, PT100 function is disabled.

EXAMPLE

A PT100 is installed to the drive. If motor temperature reaches 135 °C (275 °F) or higher, the drive will decrease motor frequency to the setting of Pr. 06-58. Motor will operate at this frequency (Pr. 06-58) till the motor temperature decreases to 135 °C (275 °F) or lower. If motor temperature exceeds 150 °C (302 °F), the motor will decelerate to stop and outputs an 'OH3' warning.

Set up process:

① Switch AFM2 (SW2) to 0–20 mA on the I/O control terminal block. (Refer to Figure 12-64, PT100 wiring diagram)

② Wiring (Refer to Figure 12-64, PT100 wiring diagram):
Connect external terminal AFM2 to (+)
Connect external terminal ACM to (–)
Connect external terminals AFM2 and AVI to short-circuit

③ Set Pr. 03-00=11 or Pr. 03-23=23 or Pr. 03-33 = 45 % (9 mA)

④ Refer to RTD temperature and resistance comparison table
Temperature = 135 °C, resistance = 151.71 Ω; Input current: 9 mA, voltage: approximately: 1.37 V DC
Temperature = 150 °C, resistance = 157.33 Ω; Input current: 9 mA, voltage: approximately: 1.42 V DC

⑤ Set Pr. 06-56 =1.37 and Pr. 06-58 =10 Hz. When RTD temperature increases to 135 °C or higher, the drive will decelerate to the selected frequency. When Pr. 06-58 = 0, the drive will not run.

⑥ Set Pr. 06-57 = 1.42 and Pr. 06-29 = 1 (warning and decelerate to stop). When RTD temperature increases to 150 °C or higher, the drive will decelerate to stop and outputs an 'OH3' warning.

06-60	⌿ Software detection GFF current level

Factory setting: 60.0

Settings	0.0–6553.5 %

06-61	⌿ Software detection GFF filter time

Factory setting: 0.10

Settings	0.00–655.35 sec

- When the motor drive detects the unbalanced three-phase out current is higher than the setting of Pr. 06-60, GFF protection will be activated. Then the motor drive will stop outputting.
- When 3-phase current output unbalance value has exceeds Pr. 06-60 setting, drive will trip up GFF and stop output immediately.

06-62	Reserved

06-63	Fault record 1 (day)
06-65	Fault record 2 (day)
06-67	Fault record 3 (day)
06-69	Fault record 4 (day)

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0–65535 days

06-64	Fault record 1 (min)
06-66	Fault record 2 (min)
06-68	Fault record 3 (min)
06-70	Fault record 4 (min)

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0–1439 min

■ When there is any malfunctions in motor drive operation, Pr. 06-17–22 will record 6 malfunctions recently, and Pr. 06-63–70 can record the operation time for 4 malfunctions in sequence. It can help to check if there is any wrong with the drive according to the recorded internal time.
For example: The first error: ocA occurs in 1000 minutes after motor drive start operation. The second error: ocd happens after another 1000 minutes. The 4th error: ocA happens after another 1000 minutes. Then, the 5th error is ocd, happening 1000 minutes following 4th error. Last, 6th error ocn happens 1000 minutes after 5th error.
Then Pr. 06-17–Pr. 06-22 and Pr. 06-63–Pr. 06-70 will be:

	1st fault	2nd fault	3rd fault	4th fault	5th fault	6th fault
06-17	ocA	ocd	ocn	ocA	ocd	ocn
06-18	0	ocA	ocd	ocn	ocA	ocd
06-19	0	0	ocA	ocd	ocn	ocA
06-20	0	0	0	ocA	ocd	ocn
06-21	0	0	0	0	ocA	ocd
06-22	0	0	0	0	0	ocA
06-63	1000	560	120	1120	680	240
06-64	0	1	2	2	3	4
06-65	0	1000	560	120	1120	680
06-66	0	0	1	2	2	3
06-67	0	0	1000	560	120	1120
06-68	0	0	0	1	2	2
06-69	0	0	0	1000	560	120
06-70	0	0	0	0	1	2

Tab. 12-12: Example of 6 fault entries in reference to the operating time

* From time record, it can be known that the last fault (Pr. 06-17) happened after the drive run for 4 days and 240 minutes.

06-71 ✎ Low current setting level

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.0–6553.5 %

06-72 ✎ Low current detection time

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.00–655.35 sec

06-73 ✎ Treatment for low current

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: No function
	1: warn and coast to stop
	2: warn and ramp to stop by 2nd deceleration time
	3: warn and operation continue

- The drive will operate as the setting of Pr. 06-73 when output current is lower than the setting of Pr. 06-71 and when low current continues for a period longer than the setting of Pr. 06-72. This parameter can also be used with external multi-function output terminal 44 (MO44) for low current output.
- The low current detection function will not be executed when drive is at sleep or standby status.

12.8 Special parameters

NOTE ⌿ This parameter can be set during operation.

07-00 ⌿ Software brake level

Factory setting: 380.0/760.0

Settings	230 V series: 350.0–450.0 V DC 460 V series: 700.0–900.0 V DC

- This parameter sets the DC-bus voltage at which the brake chopper is activated. Users can choose the suitable brake resistor to have the best deceleration. Refer to Chapter 7 Accessories for the information of the brake resistor.
- It is only valid for the models below 30 kW of 460 series and 22 kW of 230 series.

07-01 ⌿ DC brake current level

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–100 %

- This parameter sets the level of DC Brake Current output to the motor during start-up and stopping. When setting DC Brake Current, the Rated Current is regarded as 100 %. It is recommended to start with a low DC Brake Current Level and then increase until proper holding torque has been attained.
- When it is in FOCPG control mode, DC brake is zero-speed operation. It can enable DC brake function by setting to any value. The drive will output an appropriate current to meet the actual need.

07-02 ⌿ DC brake time at RUN

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.0–60.0 sec

- The motor may be in the rotation status due to external force or itself inertia. If the drive is used with the motor at this moment, it may cause motor damage or drive protection due to over current. This parameter can be used to output DC current before motor operation to stop the motor and get a stable start. This parameter determines the duration of the DC Brake current after a RUN command. When it is set to 0.0, it is invalid.

07-03	✐ DC brake time at stop

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.0–60.0 sec

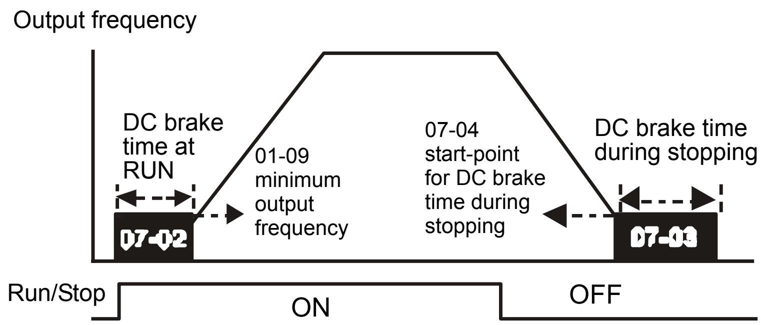
- The motor may be in the rotation status after drive stop outputting due to external force or itself inertia and can't stop accurately. This parameter can output DC current to force the motor drive stop after drive stops to make sure that the motor is stop.
- This parameter determines the duration of the DC Brake current during stopping. To DC brake at stop, this function will be valid when Pr. 00-22 is set to 0. When setting to 0.0, it is invalid.
- Related parameters: Pr. 00-22 Stop Method, Pr. 07-04 Start-point for DC Brake.

07-04	✐ DC brake frequency at stop

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- This parameter determines the frequency when DC Brake will begin during deceleration. When this setting is less than start frequency (Pr. 01-09), the start-point for DC brake will start from the min. frequency.



- DC Brake at Start-up is used for loads that may move before the AC drive starts, such as fans and pumps. Under such circumstances, DC Brake can be used to hold the load in position before setting it in motion.
- DC Brake at stop is used to shorten the stopping time and also to hold a stopped load in position, such as crane or cutting machine.

07-05	✗ Voltage incrasing gain

Factory setting: 100

Settings	1–200 %

- When the user is using speed tracking, adjust Pr. 07-05 to slow down the increasing of voltage if there are errors such as oL or oc.

07-06	✗ Restart after momentary power loss

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Stop operation 1: Speed search for last frequency command 2: Speed search for the minimum output frequency

- This parameter determines the operation mode when the AC motor drive restarts from a momentary power loss.
- The power connected to the drive may power off momentarily due to many reasons. This function allows the drive to keep outputting after power is on again after power off and won't cause drive stops.
- Setting 1: Operation continues after momentary power loss, speed search starts with the Master Frequency reference value after drive output frequency and motor rotator speed is synchronous. The motor has the characteristics of big inertia and small obstruction. For example, in the equipment with big inertia wheel, it doesn't need to wait to execute operation command until wheel is complete stop after re-start to save time.
- Setting 2: Operation continues after momentary power loss, speed search starts with the master frequency after drive output frequency and motor rotator speed is synchronous. The motor has the characteristics of small inertia and bigger obstruction.
- In PG control mode, the AC motor drive will execute the speed search function automatically by the PG speed when this setting isn't set to 0.

07-07	✗ Maximum power loss duration

Factory setting: 2.0

Settings	0.0–20.0 sec

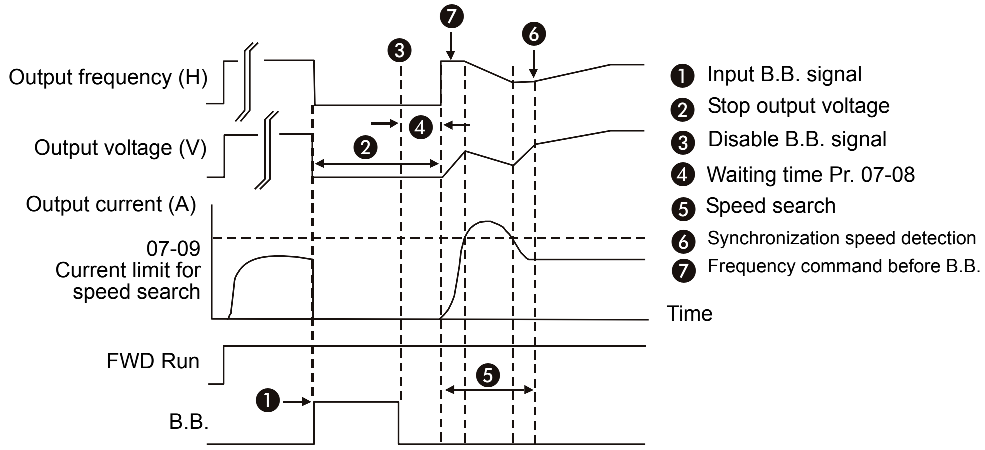
- If the duration of a power loss is less than this parameter setting, the AC motor drive will resume operation. If it exceeds the Maximum Allowable Power Loss Time, the AC motor drive output is then turned off (coast stop).
- The selected operation after power loss in Pr. 07-06 is only executed when the maximum allowable power loss time is ≤5 seconds and the AC motor drive displays "LU".
  But if the AC motor drive is powered off due to overload, even if the maximum allowable power loss time is ≤5 seconds, the operation mode as set in Pr. 07-06 is not executed. In that case it starts up normally.

07-08	✗ Base block time

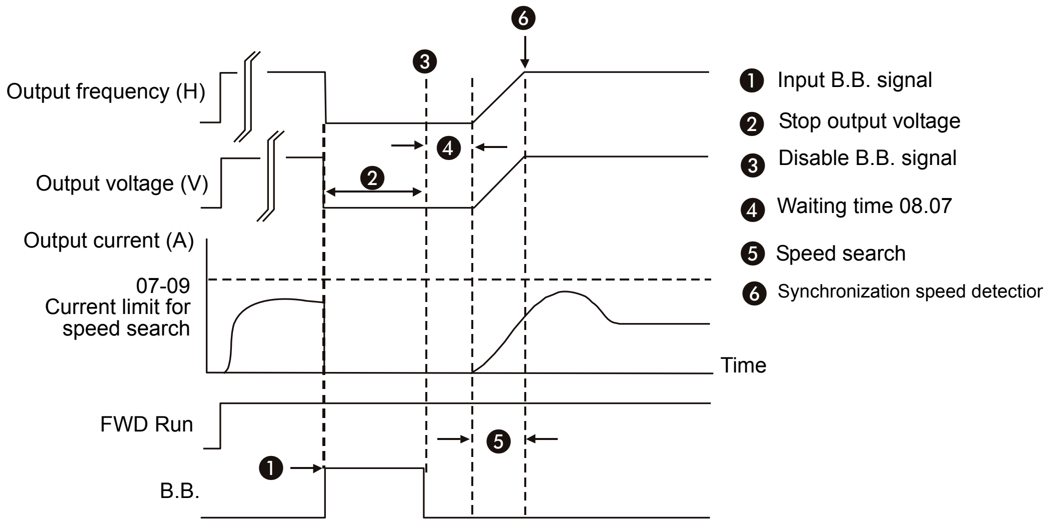
Factory setting: 0.5

Settings	0.1–5.0 sec

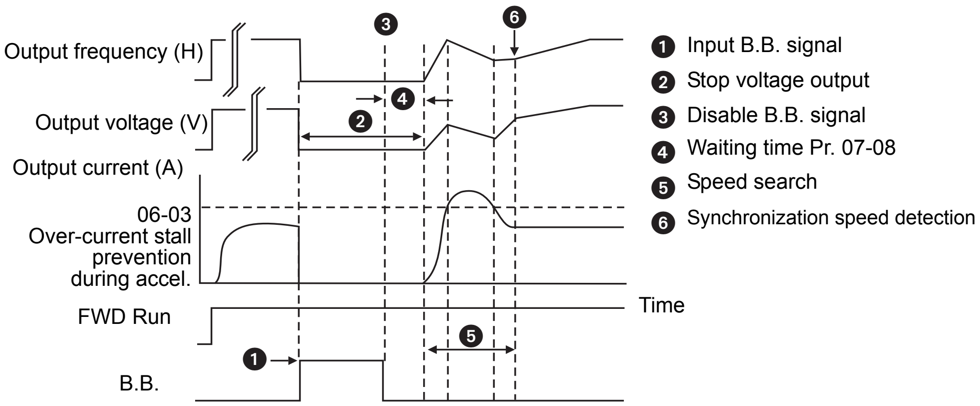
■ When momentary power loss is detected, the AC drive will block its output and then wait for a specified period of time (determined by Pr. 07-08, called Base-Block Time) before resuming operation. This parameter should be set at a value to ensure that any residual regeneration voltage from the motor on the output has disappeared before the drive is activated again.



B.B. Search with last output frequency downward timing chart C2000_1101



B.B. Search with minimum output frequency upward timing chart C2000_1102



B.B. Search with minimum output frequency upward timing chart C2000_1103

07-09 ⌿ Current limit for speed search

Factory setting: 100

Settings	20–200 %

- Following a momentary power loss, the AC motor drive will start its speed search operation only if the output current is greater than the value set by Pr. 07-09.
- When executing speed search, the V/f curve is operated by group 1 setting. The maximum current for the optimum accel./decel. and start speed search is set by Pr. 07-09.
- The maximum speed search level will affect the synchronous time. It will get the synchronization faster when this parameter is set to larger value. But too large value may activate overload protection.

07-10 ⌿ Treatment after fault

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Stop operation 1: Speed search starts with current speed 2: Speed search starts with minimum output frequency

- In PG control mode, the AC motor drive will execute the speed search function automatically by the PG speed when this setting isn't set to 0.
- Fault includes: bb,oc,ov,occ. To restart after oc, ov, occ, Pr. 07-11 can not be set to 0.

07-11 ⌿ Auto restart time after fault

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–10

- After fault (oc, ov, occ) occurs, the AC motor drive can be reset/restarted automatically up to 10 times.
- Setting this parameter to 0 will disable the reset/restart operation after any fault has occurred. When enabled, the AC motor drive will restart with Pr. 07-10 setting after fault auto reset.
- If the time of reset/restart exceeds Pr. 07-11 setting, the fault will not be restart /reset until user reset manually and run the motor drive again.

07-12 ⌿ Speed search during start-up

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable 1: Speed search from maximum output frequency 2: Speed search from start-up motor frequency 3: Speed search from minimum output frequency

- This parameter is used for starting and stopping a motor with a high inertia. A motor with high inertia will take 2–5 minutes or longer to stop completely. By setting this parameter, the user does not need to wait for the motor to come to a complete stop before restarting the AC motor drive. If a PG card and encoder is used on the drive and motor, then the speed search will start from the speed that is detected by the encoder and accelerate quickly to the commanded frequency. The output current is set by the Pr. 07-09.
- In PG control mode, the AC motor drive will execute the speed search function automatically by the PG speed when this setting isn't set to 0.

07-13 ✎ Decel. time at momentary power loss (dEb function)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable 1–6: Auto deceleration

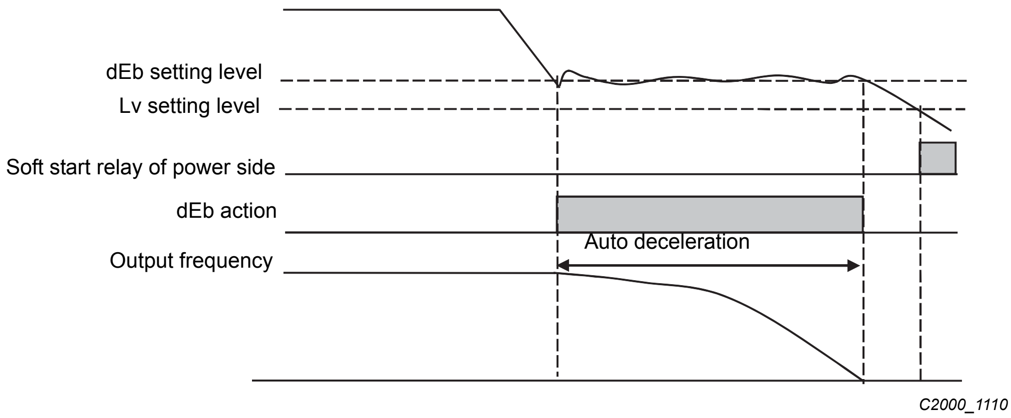
- This parameter is used for the decel. time selection for momentary power loss.

07-14 ✎ dEb return time

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.0–25.0 sec

dEb (Deceleration Energy Backup) let motor drive decelerates to stop when momentary power loss occurs.



07-15 Dwell time at accel.

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings 0.00–600.00 sec

07-16 Dwell frequency at accel.

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings 0.00–600.00 Hz

07-17 Dwell time at decel.

Factory setting: 0.00

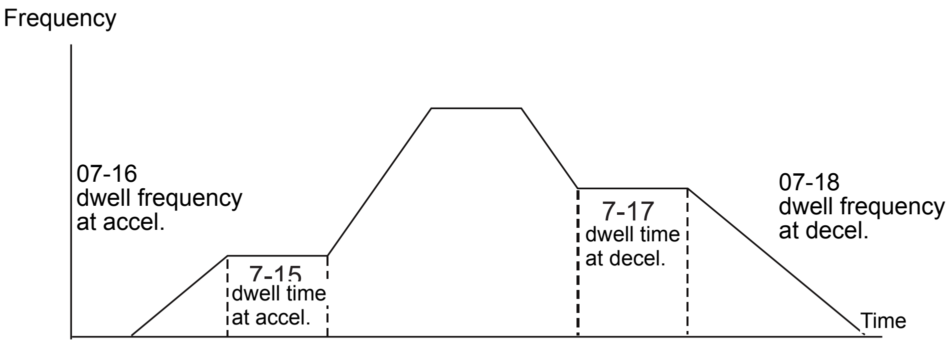
Settings 0.00–600.00 sec

07-18 Dwell frequency at decel.

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings 0.00–600.00 Hz

- In the heavy load situation, dwell can make stable output frequency temporarily, such as crane or elevator.
- Pr. 07-15 to Pr. 07-18 is for heavy load to prevent OV or OC occurs.



07-19 Fan cooling control

Factory setting: 0

Settings
0: Fan always ON
1: 1 minute after the AC motor drive stops, fan will be OFF
2: When the AC motor drive runs, the fan is ON. When the AC motor drive stops, the fan is OFF
3: Fan turns ON when preliminary IGBT temperature (around 60 °C) is attained.
4: Fan always OFF

- This parameter is used for the fan control.
- Setting 0: Fan will be ON as the drive's power is turned ON.
- Setting 1: 1 minute after AC motor drive stops, fan will be OFF.
- Setting 2: When the AC motor drive runs and fan will be ON. AC motor drive stops and fan will be OFF.
- Setting 3: Fan run according to IGBT and capacitance temperature. Fan will be ON when IGBT temperature is higher than 60 °C. Fan will be OFF, when capacitance temperature is lower than 40 °C.
- Setting 4: Fan is always OFF.

07-20 ⌿ Emergency stop (EF) & force stop

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Coast to stop 1: Stop by 1st deceleration time 2: Stop by 2nd deceleration time 3: Stop by 3rd deceleration time 4: Stop by 4th deceleration time 5: System deceleration (According to original deceleration time) 6: Automatic deceleration (Pr. 01-46)

- When the multi-function input terminal is set to 10 (EF) or 18 (Emergency stop) and is activated, the drive will stop according to the setting in Pr. 07-20.

07-21 ⌿ Auto energy-saving operation

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable 1: Enable

- When Pr. 07-21 is set to 1, the acceleration and deceleration will operate with full voltage. During constant speed operation, it will auto calculate the best voltage value by the load power for the load. This function is not suitable for the ever-changing load or near full-load during operation.
- When the output frequency is constant, i.e. constant operation, the output voltage will auto decrease by the load reduction. Therefore, the drive will operate with min. power, multiplication of voltage and current.

07-22 ⌿ Energy-saving gain

Factory setting: 100

Settings	10–1000 %

- When Pr. 07-21 is set to 1, this parameter can be used to adjust the gain of energy-saving. The factory setting is 100 %. If the result is not good, it can adjust by decreasing the setting. If the motor oscillates, it should increase the setting value.
- At some special application such as High speed spindle, the motor temperature rise is been highly concern. Thus, when the motor is not working with load, the motor current will requested to reduce to a lower level. To Lowering this parameter setting can meet this requirement.

07-23 ⌿ Auto voltage regulation (AVR) function

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Enable AVR 1: Disable AVR 2: Disable AVR during deceleration

- The rated voltage of the motor is usually 220 V/200 V AC 60 Hz/50 Hz and the input voltage of the AC motor drive may vary between 180 V to 264 V AC 50 Hz/60 Hz. Therefore, when the AC motor drive is used without AVR function, the output voltage will be the same as the input voltage. When the motor runs at voltages exceeding the rated voltage with 12 %–20 %, its lifetime will be shorter and it can be damaged due to higher temperature, failing insulation and unstable torque output.
- AVR function automatically regulates the AC motor drive output voltage to the motor rated voltage. For instance, if V/f curve is set at 200 V AC/50 Hz and the input voltage is at 200 V to 264 V AC, then the motor Output Voltage will automatically be reduced to a maximum of 200 V AC/50 Hz. If the input voltage is at 180 V to 200 V AC, output voltage to motor and input power will be in direct proportion.
- Setting 0: when AVR function is enabled, the drive will calculate the output voltage by actual DC-bus voltage. The output voltage won't be changed by DC bus voltage.
- Setting 1: when AVR function is disabled, the drive will calculate the output voltage by DC-bus voltage. The output voltage will be changed by DC bus voltage. It may cause insufficient/ over current.
- Setting 2: the drive will disable the AVR during deceleration, such as operated from high speed to low speed.
- When the motor ramps to stop, the deceleration time is longer. When setting this parameter to 2 with auto acceleration/deceleration, the deceleration will be quicker.
- When it is in FOCPG or TQCPG, it is recommended to set to 0 (enable AVR).

07-24 ⌿ Filter time of torque command (V/F and SVC control mode)

Factory setting: 0.020

Settings	0.001–10.000 sec

- When the setting is too long, the control will be stable but the control response will be delay. When the setting is too short, the response will be quickly but the control may be unstable. User can adjust the setting by the control and response situation.

07-25 ⌿ Filter time of slip compensation (V/F and SVC control mode)

Factory setting: 0.100

Settings	0.001–10.000 sec

- It can set Pr. 07-24 and 07-25 to change the response time of compensation.
- If Pr. 07-24 and 07-25 are set to 10seconds, the response time of compensation is the slowest. But the system may be unstable when the setting is too short.

07-26 ⌿ Torque compensation gain (V/F and SVC control mode)

Factory setting: 0
(1 in SVC mode)

Settings	0–10

- When the motor load is large, a part of drive output voltage is absorbed by the resistor of stator winding and causes insufficient voltage at motor induction and result in over output current and insufficient output torque. It can auto adjust output voltage by the load and keep the air gap magnetic fields stable to get the optimal operation.
- In the V/F control, the voltage will be decreased in direct proportion when the frequency is decreased. It'll cause decrease torque at low speed due to small AC resistor and the same DC resistor. Therefore, Auto torque compensation function will increase the output voltage in the low frequency to get higher start torque.
- When Pr. 07-26 is set to large, it may cause motor overflux and result in too large output current, motor overheat or triggers protection function.

07-27 ⌿ Slip compensation gain (V/F and SVC control mode)

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–10.00

- The induction motor needs the constant slip to produce magnetic torque. It can be ignore in the higher motor speed, such as rated speed or 2–3 % slip.
- In the operation with variable frequency, the slip and the synchronous frequency will be in reverse proportion to produce the same magnetic torque. That is the slip will be larger with the reduction of synchronous frequency. The motor may stop when the synchronous frequency is decreased to a specific value. Therefore, the slip serious affects the accuracy of motor speed at low speed.
- In another situation, when the drive uses with induction motor, the slip will be increased by the increasing load. It also affects the accuracy of motor speed.
- This parameter can be used to set compensation frequency and reduce the slip to close the synchronous speed when the motor runs in the rated current to raise the drive accuracy. When the drive output current is larger than Pr. 05-05 No-load Current of Induction Motor 1 (A), the drive will compensation the frequency by this parameter.
- When the control method (Pr. 00-11) is changed from V/f mode to vector mode, this parameter will auto be set to 1.00. Otherwise, it will be set to 0.00. Please do the compensation of slip after overload and acceleration. The compensation value should be increased from small to large gradually. That is to add the output frequency with motor rated slip X Pr. 07-27 Slip Compensation Gain when the motor is rated load. If the actual speed ratio is slow than expectation, please increase the setting. Otherwise, decrease the setting.

07-28 Reserved

07-29 ✎ Slip deviation level

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–100.0 % 0: No detection

07-30 ✎ Detection time of slip deviation

Factory setting: 1.0

Settings	0.0–10.0 sec

07-31 ✎ Over slip treatment

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: No warning

- The Pr. 07-29 to Pr. 07-31 are to set allowable slip level/time and over slip treatment when the drive is running.

07-32 ⌿ Motor hunting gain

Factory setting: 1000

Settings	0–10000 0: Disable

■ The motor will have current wave motion in some specific area. It can improve this situation by setting this parameter. (When it is high frequency or run with PG, it can be set to 0. when the current wave motion happens in the low frequency, please increase Pr. 07-32.)

07-33 ⌿ Autorestart internal of fault

Factory setting: 60.0

Settings	0.0–6000.0 sec

■ When a reset/restart after fault occurs, the drive will regards Pr. 07-33 as a time boundary and beging counting the numbers of faults occur within this time period. Within the period, if numbers of faults occurred did not exceed the setting in Pr. 07-11, the counting will be cleared and starts from 0 when next fault occurs. However, if the numbers of faults occurred within this time period have exceed the setting in Pr. 07-11, user will need to press RESET key manually for the drive to operate again.

12.9 High-function PID parameters

NOTE ⌿ This parameter can be set during operation.

08-00 ⌿ Input terminal for PID feedback

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: No function 1: Negative PID feedback: on analogue input acc. To setting 5 of Pr. 03-00 to Pr. 03-02. 2: Negative PID feedback from PG card (Pr. 10-02, skip direction) 3: Negative PID feedback from PG card (Pr. 10-02) 4: Positive PID feedback from external terminal AVI (Pr. 03-00) 5: Positive PID feedback from PG card (Pr. 10-02, skip direction) 6: Positive PID feedback from PG card (Pr. 10-02) 7: Negative PID feeback from communication protocol 8: Positive PID feedback from communication protocol

- Negative feedback means: + target value – feedback. It is used for the detection value will be increased by increasing the output frequency.
- When Pr. 03-00 to Pr. 03-02 have the same setting, then the AVI will be the prioritized selection.
- Positive feedback means: – target value + feedback. It is used for the detection value will be decreased by increasing the output frequency.
- If Pr. 08-00 ≠ 7 and ≠ 8, the function of Pr. 08-06 is deactivated. The value of the setting remain the same after the derive is off.

Common applications for PID control

– Flow control: A flow sensor is used to feedback the flow data and performs accurate flow control.

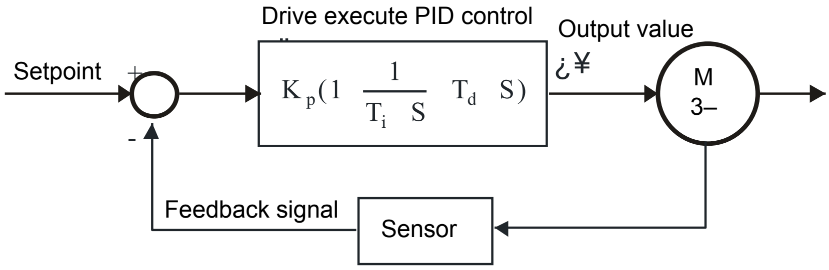
– Pressure control: A pressure sensor is used to feedback the pressure data and performs precise pressure control.

– Air volume control: An air volume sensor is used to feedback the air volume data to have excellent air volume regulation.

– Temperature control: A thermocouple or thermistor is used to feedback temperature data for comfortable temperature control.

– Speed control: a speed sensor or encoder is used to feedback motor shaft speed or input another machine speed as a target value for closed loop speed control of master-slave operation.

■ PID control loop:



K_p: Proportional gain (P) T_i: Integral time (I) T_d: Derivative control (D) S: Operator

Concept of PID control

■ Proportional gain (P): the output is proportional to input. With only proportional gain control, there will always be a steady-state error.

■ Integral time (I): the controller output is proportional to the integral of the controller input. To eliminate the steady-state error, an "integral part" needs to be added to the controller. The integral time decides the relation between integral part and error. The integral part will be increased by time even if the error is small. It gradually increases the controller output to eliminate the error until it is 0. In this way a system can be stable without steady-state error by proportional gain control and integral time control.

■ Differential control (D): the controller output is proportional to the differential of the controller input. During elimination of the error, oscillation or instability may occur. The differential control can be used to suppress these effects by acting before the error. That is, when the error is near 0, the differential control should be 0. Proportional gain (P) + differential control (D) can be used to improve the system state during PID adjustment.

When PID control is used in a constant pressure pump feedback application: Set the application's constant pressure value (bar) to be the set point of PID control. The pressure sensor will send the actual value as PID feedback value. After comparing the PID set point and PID feedback, there will be an error.
Thus, the PID controller needs to calculate the output by using proportional gain (P), integral time (I) and differential time (D) to control the pump. It controls the drive to have different pump speed and achieves constant pressure control by using a 4–20 mA signal corresponding to 0–10 bar as feedback to the drive.

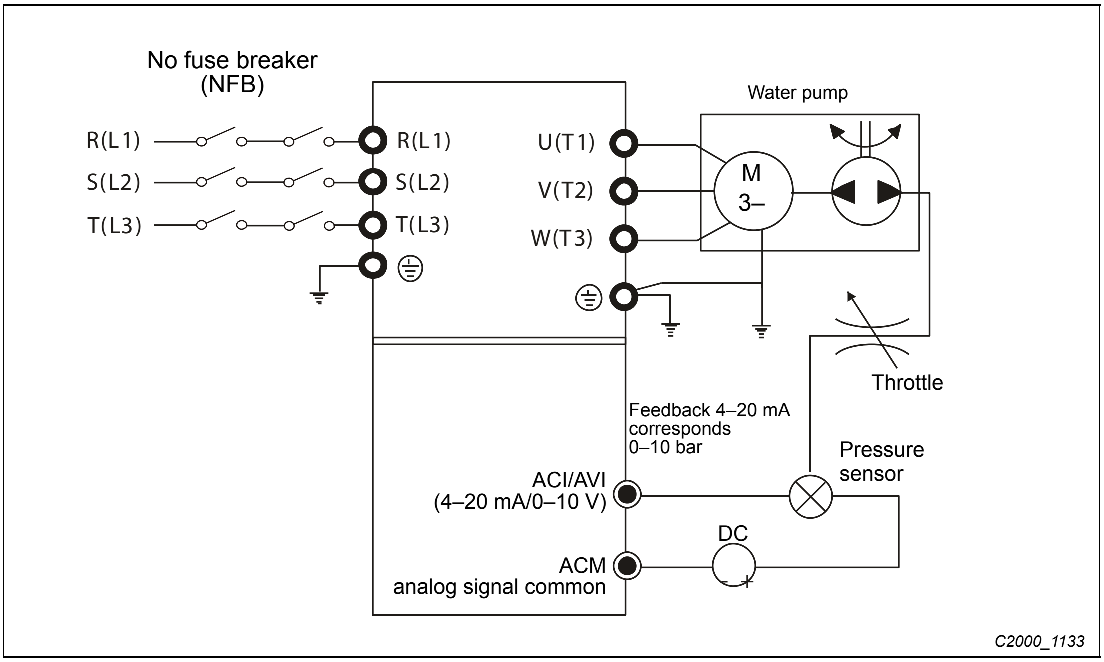


Fig. 12-65: Constant pump pressure control

Pr. 00-04 is set to 10 (Display PID analog feedback signal value (b) (%))

Pr. 01-12 Acceleration time will be set as required

Pr. 01-13 Deceleration time will be set as required

Pr. 00-21 = 0 to operate from the digital keypad

Pr. 00-20 = 0, the set point is controlled by the digital keypad

Pr. 08-00 = 1 (Negative PID feedback from analog input)

ACI analog input Pr. 03-01 set to 5, PID feedback signal.

Pr. 08-01-08-03 will be set as required:

- If there is no vibration in the system, increase Pr. 08-01 (Proportional gain (P))
- If there is no vibration in the system, reduce Pr. 08-02 (Integral time (I))
- If there is no vibration in the system, increase Pr. 08-03 (Differential time (D))

■ Refer to Pr. 08-00 to 08-21 for PID parameters settings.

08-01 ⌿ Proportional gain (P)

Factory setting: 80.0

Settings	0.0–500.0 %

■ When the setting is 1.0, it means Kp gain is 100 %; setting is 0.5, Kp gain means 50 %.

■ It is used to eliminate the system error. It is usually used to decrease the error and get the faster response speed. But if the value is set too high, it may cause the system oscillation and instability.

■ If the other two gains (I and D) are set to zero, proportional control is the only one effective.

08-02 ⌿ Integral time (I)

Factory setting: 1.00

Settings	0.00–100.00 sec 0.00: Disable

- The integral controller is used to eliminate the error during stable system. The integral control doesn't stop working until error is 0. The integral is acted by the integral time. The smaller integral time is set, the stronger integral action will be. It is helpful to reduce overshoot and oscillation to make a stable system. At this moment, the decreasing error will be slow. The integral control is often used with other two controls to become PI controller or PID controller.
- This parameter is used to set the integral time of I controller. When the integral time is long, it will have small gain of I controller, the slower response and bad external control. When the integral time is short, it will have large gain of I controller, the faster response and rapid external control.
- When the integral time is too small, it may cause system oscillation.
- If the integral time is set as 0.00, Pr. 08-02 will be disabled.

08-03 ⌿ Derivative control (D)

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–1.00 sec

- The differential controller is used to show the change of system error and it is helpful to preview the change of error. So the differential controller can be used to eliminate the error to improve system state. With the suitable differential time, it can reduce overshoot and shorten adjustment time. However, the differential operation will increase the noise interference. Please note that too large differential will cause big noise interference. Besides, the differential shows the change and the output of the differential will be 0 when there is no change. Therefore, the differential control can't be used independently. It needs to be used with other two controllers to make a PD controller or PID controller.
- This parameter can be used to set the gain of D controller to decide the response of error change. The suitable differential time can reduce the overshoot of P and I controller to decrease the oscillation and have a stable system. But too long differential time may cause system oscillation.
- The differential controller acts for the change of error and can't reduce the interference. It is not recommended to use this function in the serious interference.

08-04 ⌿ Upper limit of integral control

Factory setting: 100.0

Settings	0.0–100.0 %

- This parameter defines an upper bound or limit for the integral gain (I) and therefore limits the Master Frequency. The formula is: Integral upper bound = Maximum Output Frequency (Pr. 01-00) x (Pr. 08-04 %).
- Too large integral value will make the slow response due to sudden load change. In this way, it may cause motor stall or machine damage.

08-05 ✎ PID output frequency limit

Factory setting: 100.0

Settings	0.0–110.0 %

- This parameter defines the percentage of output frequency limit during the PID control. The formula is Output Frequency Limit = Maximum Output Frequency (Pr. 01-00) X Pr. 08-05 %.

08-06 ✎ PID feedback value by communication protocol

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	-200.00 %–200.00 %

- When PID feedback input is set as communication (Pr. 08-00 = 7 or 8), PID feedback value can be set by this value.

08-07 ✎ PID delay time

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.0–35.0 sec

08-20 PID mode selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Serial connection 1: Parallel connection

- When setting is 0, it uses conventional PID control structure.
- When setting is 1, proportional gain, integral gain and derivative gain are independent. The P, I and D can be customized to fit users' demand.
- Pr. 08-07 determines the primary low pass filter time when in PID control. Setting a large time constant may slow down the response rate of drive.
- Output frequency of PID control will filter by primary low pass function. This function could filtering a mix frequencies. A long primary low pass time means filter degree is high and vice versa.
- nappropriate setting of delay time may cause system error.
- PI Control: controlled by the P action only, and thus, the deviation cannot be eliminated entirely. To eliminate residual deviations, the P + I control will generally be utilized. And when the PI control is utilized, it could eliminate the deviation incurred by the targeted value changes and the constant external interferences. However, if the I action is excessively powerful, it will delay the responding toward the swift variation. The P action could be used solely on the loading system that possesses the integral components.
- PD Control: when deviation occurred, the system will immediately generate some operation load that is greater than the load generated single handedly by the D action to restrain the increment of the deviation. If the deviation is small, the effectiveness of the P action will be decreasing as well. The control objects include occasions with integral component loads, which are controlled by the P action only, and sometimes, if the integral component is functioning, the whole system will be vibrating. On such occasions, in order to make the P action's vibration subsiding and the system stabilizing, the PD control could be utilized. In other words, this control is good for use with loadings of no brake functions over the processes.
- PID Control: Utilize the I action to eliminate the deviation and the D action to restrain the vibration, thereafter, combine with the P action to construct the PID control. Use of the PID method could obtain a control process with no deviations, high accuracies and a stable system.

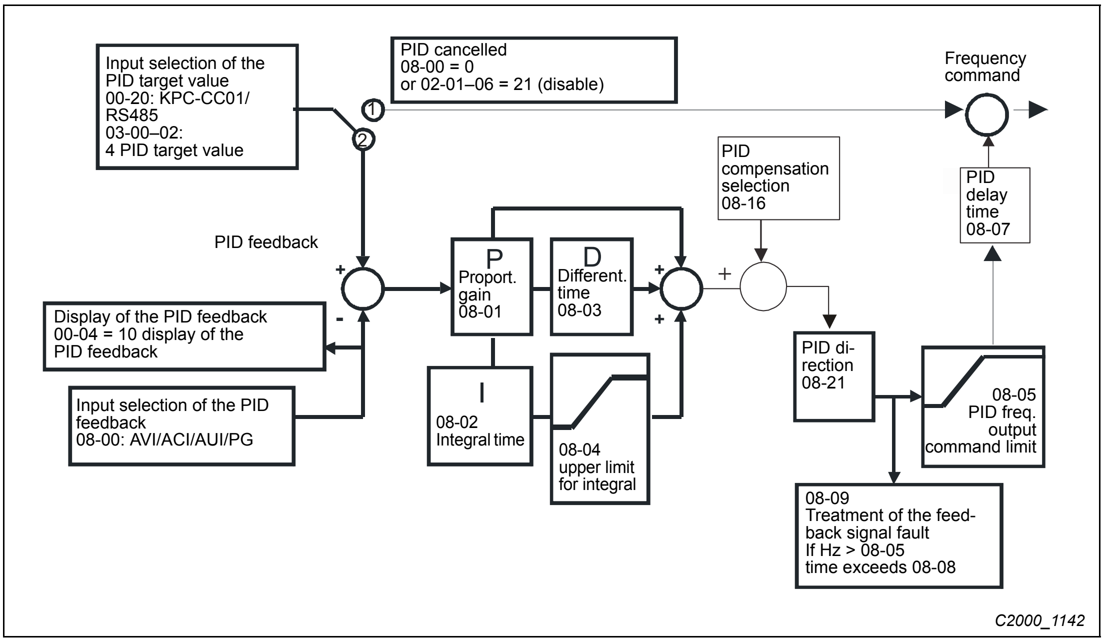


Fig. 12-66: Serial connection

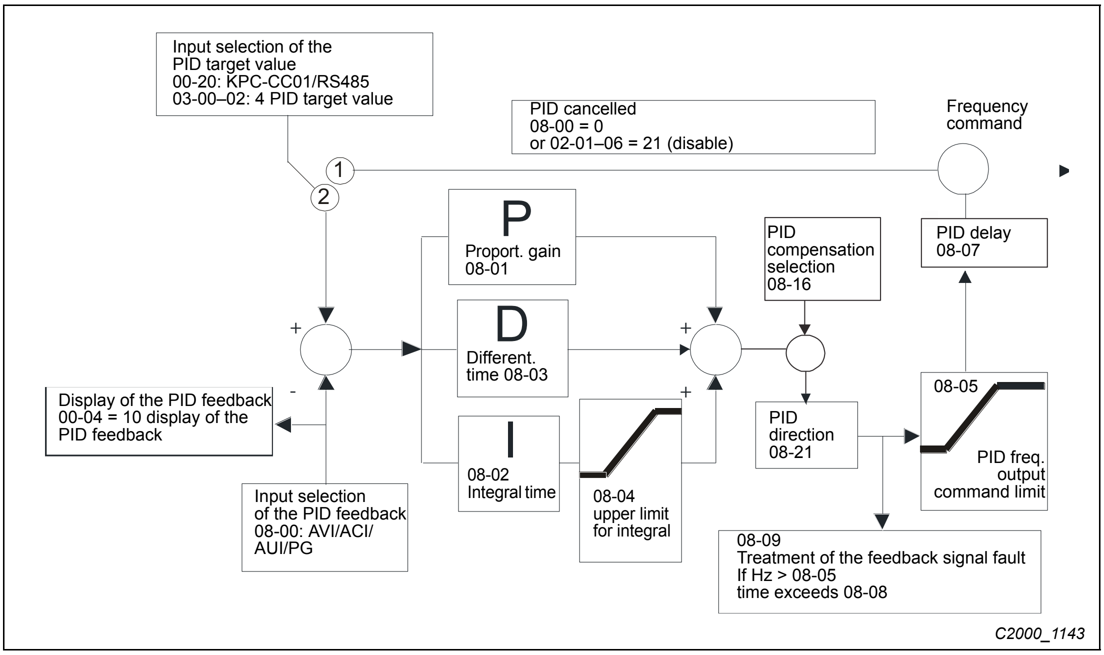


Fig. 12-67: Parallel connection

08-08 Feedback signal detection time

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.0–3600.0 sec

- Pr. 08-08 is valid only for ACI 4–20 mA.
- This parameter sets the detection time of a faulty PID actual value. If detection time is set to 0.0, detection function is disabled.

08-09 ✗ Feedback signal fault treatment

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: Warn and operate at last frequency

- This parameter is valid only for ACI 4–20 mA.
- acts when the feedback signals analog PID feedback is abnormal.

08-10 ✗ Sleep reference

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- Setting value of Pr. 08-10 determines if sleep reference and wake-up reference is enable or disable. When Pr. 08-10 = 0, it means disable. When 08-10 ≠ 0, it means enable.

08-11 ✗ Wake-up reference

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

- When Pr. 08-18 = 0, the unit of Pr. 08-10 and that of Pr. 08-11 become frequency. The settings then become 0–600.0 Hz.
- When Pr. 08-18 = 1, the unit of Pr. 08-10 and that of Pr. 08-11 switch to percentage. The settings then switch to 0–200.00 %.
- And the percentage is based on the input command not maximum. E. g. If the maximum is 100 Kg, the command now is 30 kg, if 08-11 = 40 %, it is 12 kg.
- The same to 08-10.

08-12 ✗ Sleep time

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.00–6000.0 sec

- When the frequency command is smaller than the sleep frequency and less than the sleep time, the frequency command is equal to the sleep frequency. However the frequency command remains at 0.00 Hz until the frequency command becomes equal to or bigger than the wake-up frequency.

08-13 ✎ PID deviation level

Factory setting: 10.0

Settings	1.0–50.0 %

08-14 ✎ PID deviation time

Factory setting: 5.0

Settings	0.1–300.0 sec

08-15 ✎ Filter time for PID feedback

Factory setting: 5.0

Settings	0.1–300.0 sec

- When the PID control function is normal, it should calculate within a period of time and close to the target value.
- Refer to the PID control diagram for details. When executing PID feedback control, if |PID reference target value – detection value| > Pr. 08-13 PID Deviation Level and exceeds Pr. 08-14 setting, it will be judged as the PID control fault. Multiple-funtion output MO = 15 (PID feedback error) will activate.

08-16 ✎ PID compensation selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Parameter setting (Pr. 08-17) 1: The PID compensation value is set via the analog input.

- Pr. 08-16 = 0: PID compensation value is given via Pr. 08-17 setting.
- Pr. 08-16 = 1: The PID compensation value is given via analog input (Pr. 03-00–03-02 = 13) and display at Pr. 08-17 (at this moment, Pr. 08-17 become read only).

08-17 ✎ PID compensation

Factory setting: 0

Settings	-100.0–+100.0 %

- The PID compensation value = Max. PID target value × Pr. 08-17. For example, the max. output frequency Pr. 01-00 = 60 Hz, Pr. 08-17 = 10.0 %, PID compensation value will increase output frequency 6.00 Hz. 60.00 Hz × 100.00 % × 10.0 % = 6.00 Hz.

08-18 Setting of sleep mode function

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Follow PID output command 1: Follow PID feedback signal

- When Pr. 08-18 = 0, the unit of Pr. 08-10 and that of Pr. 08-11 becomes frequency. The settings then become 0–600.00 Hz.
- When Pr. 08-18 = 1, the unit of Pr. 08-10 and that of Pr. 08-11 switches to percentage. The settings then switch to 0–200.00 %.

08-19 ⌿ Wake-up integral limit

Factory setting: 50.0

Settings	0.0–200.0 %

- The wake-up integral limit of the VFD is to prevent sudden high speed running when the VFD wakes up.
- The wake-up integral frequency limit = (01-00 × 08-19 %).
- The Pr. 08-19 is used to reduce the reaction time from sleep to wake-up.

08-21 Enable PID to change the operation direction

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable change of direction 1: Enable change of direction

08-22 ⌿ Wake-up delay time

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 sec.

- Refer to Pr. 08-18 for more information.

08-23 ⌿ PID control bit

Factory setting: 0

Settings	Bit 0 = 1, PID reverse running must follow the setting of Pr. 00-23 Bit 0 = 0, PID reverse running follows PID's calculated value

- Bit 0, When Pr. 08-21 = 1, PID reverse running is enable.
- Bit 0 = 0, if the PID calculated value is positive, it will be forward running. If the PID calculated value is negative, it will be reverse running.

There are three scenarios for sleep and wake-up frequency.

① Frequency command (PID is not in use, Pr. 08 = 00. Only works in VF mode)
When the output frequency ≤ the sleep frequency, and the VFD reaches the preset sleep time, then the VFD will be at the sleep mode.
When the frequency command reaches the wake-up frequency, the VFD will start to count the wake-up delay time. Then when the VFD reaches the wake-up delay time, the VFD will begin acceleration time to reach the frequency command.

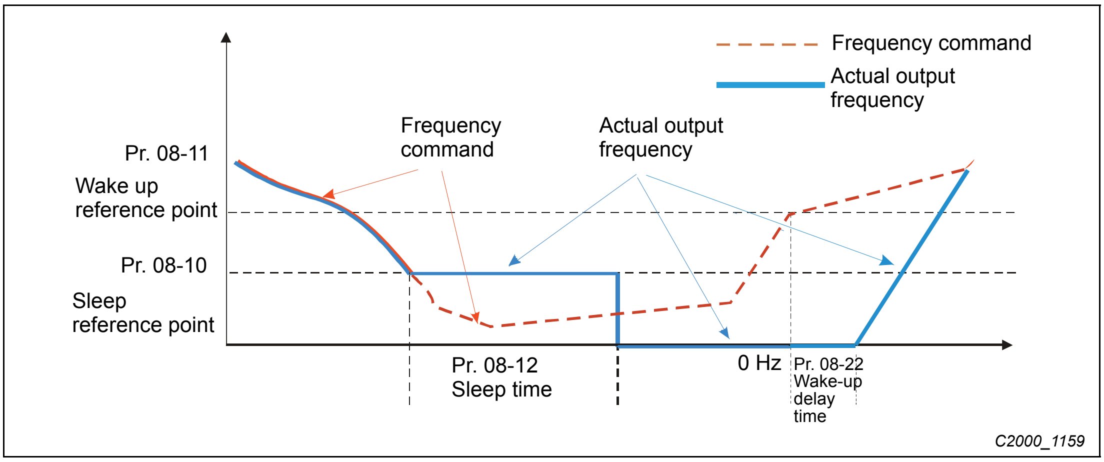


Fig. 12-68: Time history scenario 1

② Frequency command calculation of the internal PID.
When the PID calculation reaches the sleep frequency, the VFD will start to count the sleep time and the output frequency will start to decrease. If the VFD exceeds the preset sleep time, it will directly go to sleep mode which is 0 Hz. But if the VFD doesn't reach the sleep time, it will remain at the lower limit (if there is a preset of lower limit). Or it will remain at the lowest output frequency set at Pr. 01-07 and wait to reach the sleep time then go to sleep mode (0 Hz).
When the calculated frequency command reaches the wake-up frequency, the VFD will start to count the wake-up delay time. Once reaching the wake-up delay time, the VFD will start the acceleration time to reach the PID frequency command.

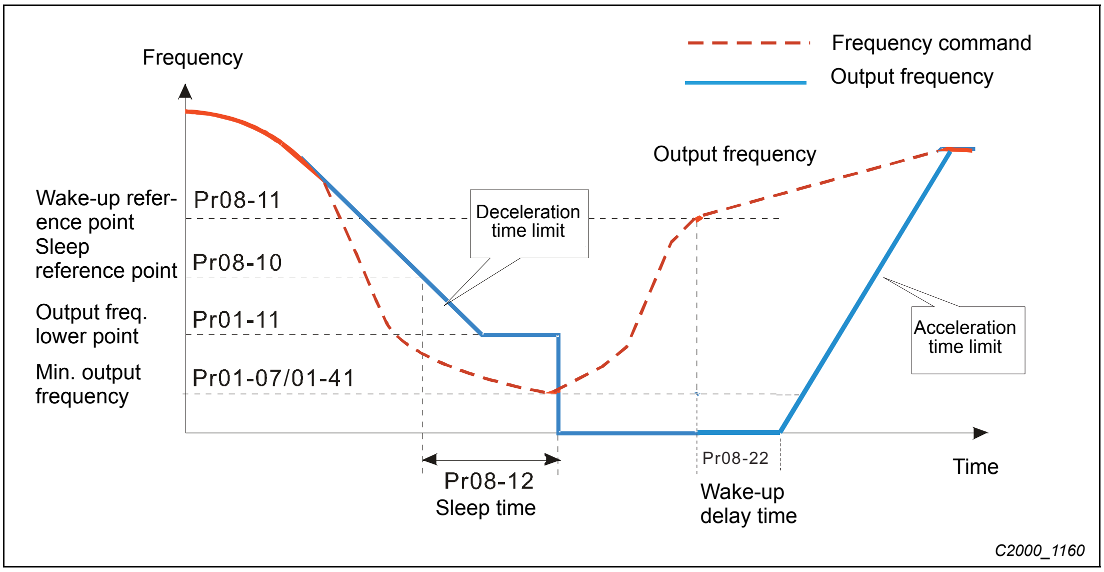


Fig. 12-69: Internal PID calculation frequency command

③ PID feedback rate percentage (Use PID, Pr. 08-00 ≠ 0 and Pr. 08-18 = 1)
When the PID feedback rate reaches the sleep level percentage, the VFD starts to count the sleep time. The output frequency will also decrease. If the VFD exceeds the preset sleep time, it will go to sleep mode which is 0 Hz. But if the VFD doesn't reach the sleep time, it will remain at the lower limit (if there is a preset of lower limit.). Or it will remain at the lowest output frequency set at Pr. 01-07 and wait to reach the sleep time then go to sleep mode (0 Hz).
When PID feedback value reaches the wake up percentagethe motor drive will start to count the wake up delay time. Once reaches the wake up delay time, the motor drives starts the accelerating time to reach PID frequency command.

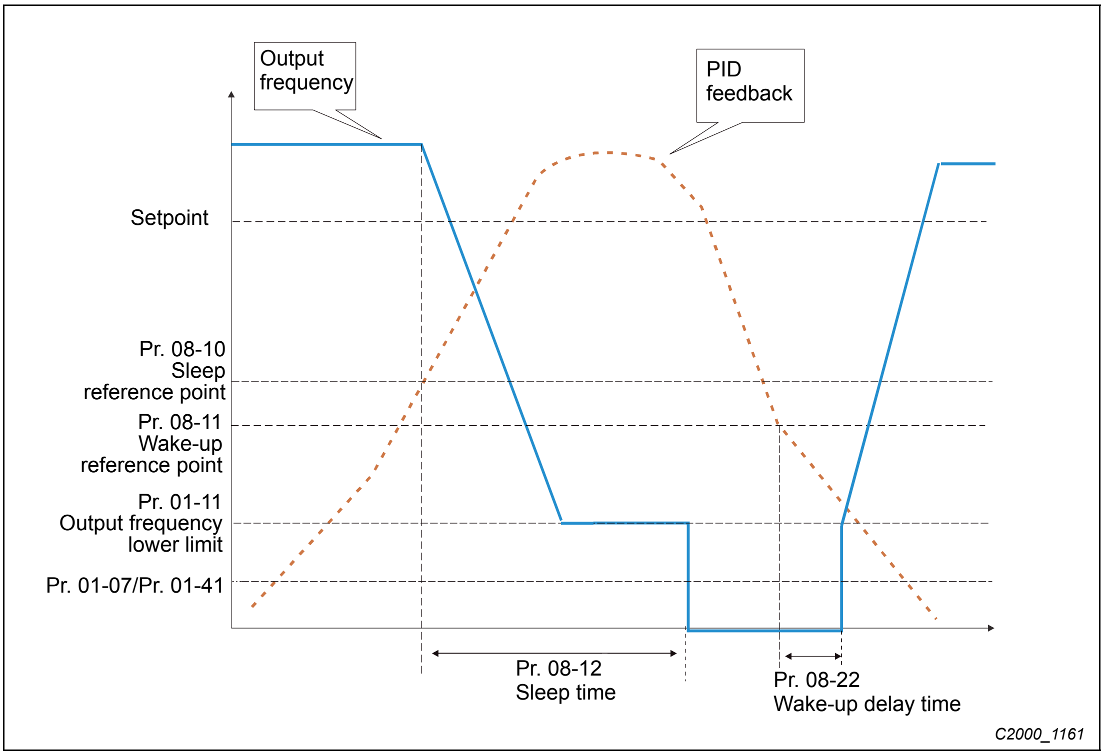


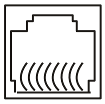
Fig. 12-70: Time history scenario 3

12.10 Communication parameters

NOTE ✐ This parameter can be set during operation.

When using communication devices, connects AC drive with PC by using Delta IFD6530 or IFD6500.

8 ← 1



RS485

Modbus RS-485
Pin 1–2,7,8: Reserved
Pin 3, 6: GND
Pin 4: SG-
Pin 5: SG+

09-00 ✐ COM1 communication address

Factory setting: 1

Settings	1–254

■ If the is controlled by RS485 serial communication, the communication address for this drive must be set via this parameter and each 's communication address must be different.

09-01 ✐ COM1 transmission speed

Factory setting: 9.6

Settings	4.8–115.2 Kbits/s

■ This parameter is for set up the RS485 communication transmission speed.

09-02 ✐ COM1 transmission fault treatment

Factory setting: 3

Settings	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop 3: No warning and continue operation

■ This parameter is to set the reaction of MODBUS transmission errors with the host. Detection time can be set in Pr. 09-03.

09-03 ✐ COM1 time-out detection

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	0.0–100.0 sec 0.0: Disable

■ It is used to set the communication transmission time-out.

09-04 ✐ COM1 communication protocol

Factory setting: 1

Settings	1: 7, N, 2 for ASCII 2: 7, E, 1 for ASCII 3: 7, O, 1 for ASCII 4: 7, E, 2 for ASCII 5: 7, O, 2 for ASCII 6: 8, N, 1 for ASCII 7: 8, N, 2 for ASCII 8: 8, E, 1 for ASCII 9: 8, O, 1 for ASCII 10: 8, E, 2 for ASCII 11: 8, O, 2 for ASCII 12: 8, N, 1 for RTU 13: 8, N, 2 for RTU 14: 8, E, 1 for RTU 15: 8, O, 1 for RTU 16: 8, E, 2 for RTU 17: 8, O, 2 for RTU

- Control by PC or PLC (Computer Link)
- A VFD-C2000 can be set up to communicate on Modbus networks using one of the following modes: ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) or RTU (Remote Terminal Unit). Users can select the desired mode along with the RS485 serial port communication protocol in Pr. 09-00
- MODBUS ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange): Each byte data is the combination of two ASCII characters. For example, a 1-byte data: 64 Hex, shown as '64' in ASCII, consists of '6' (36 Hex) and '4' (34 Hex).

12.10.1 Code description

Communication protocol is in hexadecimal, ASCII: "0", "9", "A", "F", every 16 hexadecimal represent ASCII code. For example:

Character	0	'1	'2	'3	4	5	6	7
ASCII code	30H	31H	32H	33H	34H	35H	36H	37H

Character	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
ASCII code	38H	39H	41H	42H	43H	44H	45H	46H

Tab. 12-13: Example for ASCII code

12.10.2 Data format

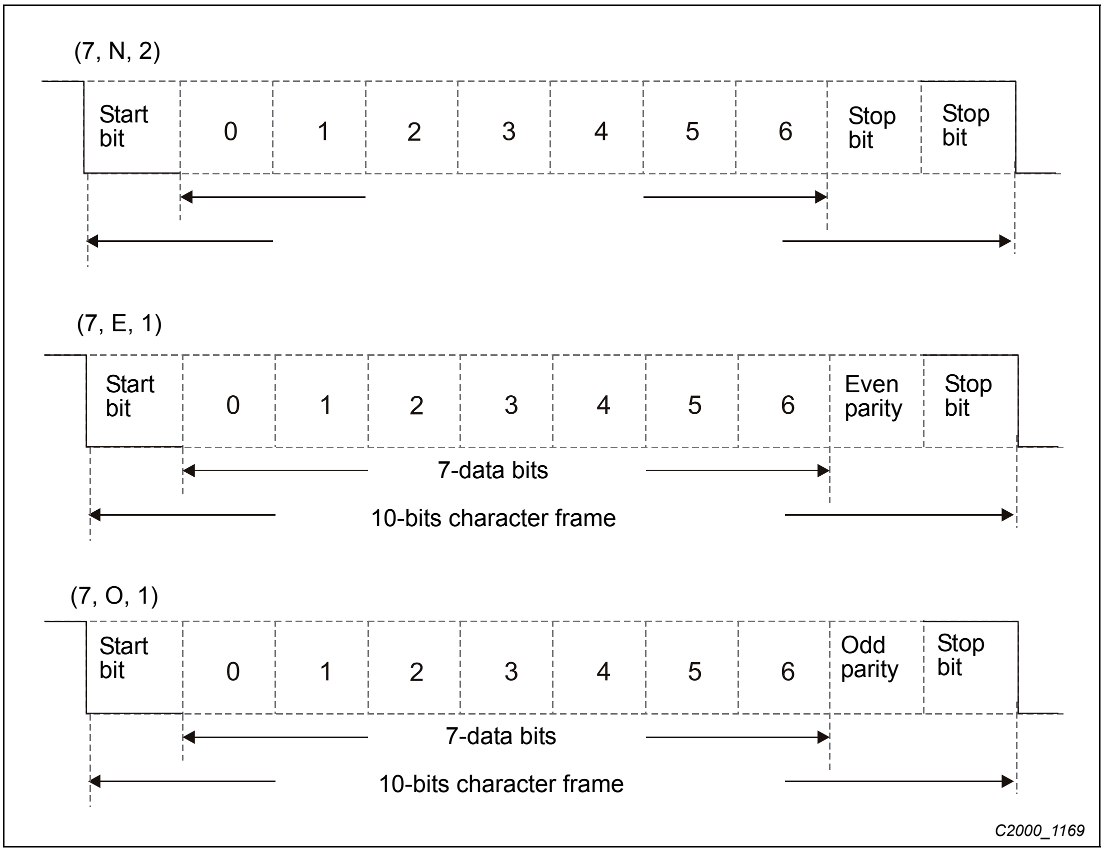


Fig. 12-71: 10-bit character frame (for ASCII)

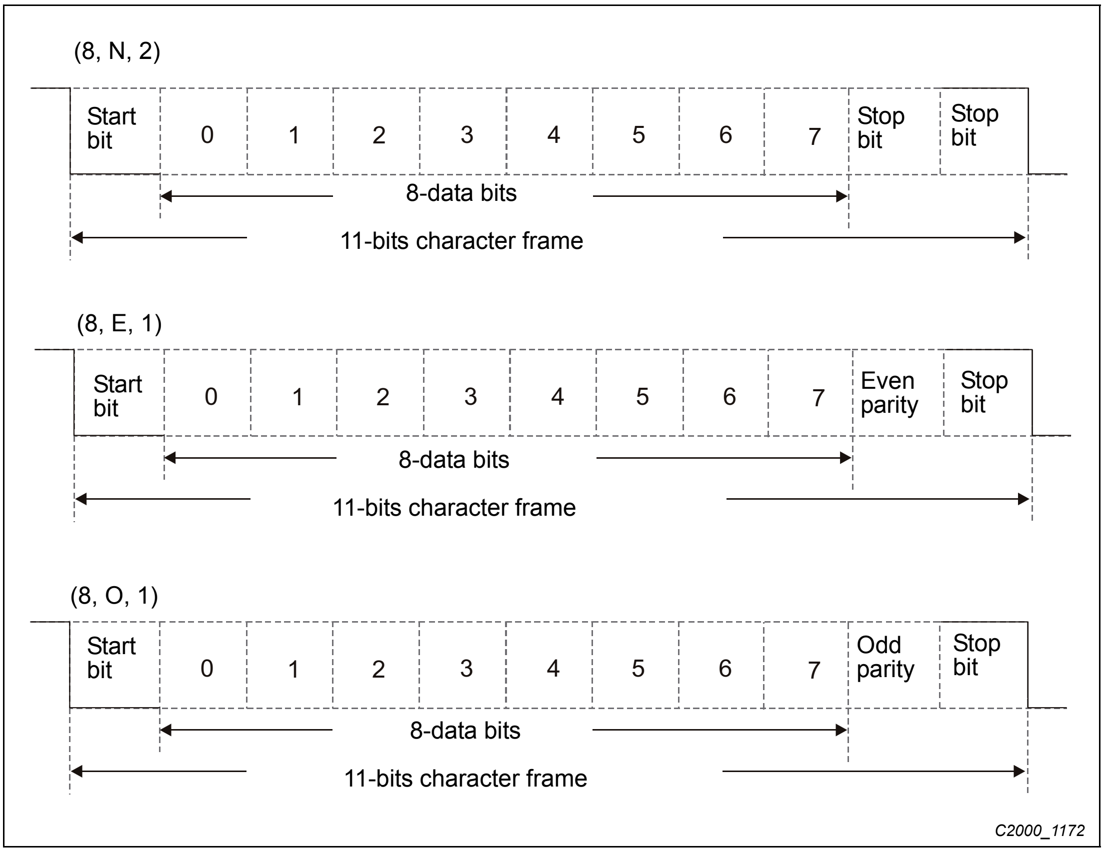


Fig. 12-72: 11-bit character frame (for RTU)

12.10.3 Communication protocol

STX	Start character = ':' (3AH)
Address Hi	Communication address: 8-bit address consists of 2 ASCII codes
Address Lo	
Function Hi	Command code: 8-bit command consists of 2 ASCII codes
Function Lo	
DATA (n-1)	Contents of data: Nx8-bit data consist of 2n ASCII codes n<=16, maximum of 32 ASCII codes
…….	
DATA 0	
LRC CHK Hi	LRC check sum: 8-bit check sum consists of 2 ASCII codes
LRC CHK Lo	
END Hi	End characters: END1 = CR (0DH), END0 = LF(0AH)
END Lo	

Tab. 12-14: Communication data frame: ASCII mode

START	A silent interval of more than 10 ms
Address	Communication address: 8-bit address
Function	Command code: 8-bit command
DATA (n-1)	Contents of data: n × 8-bit data, n<=16
…….	
DATA 0	
CRC CHK low	CRC check sum: 16-bit check sum consists of 2 8-bit characters
CRC CHK high	
END	A silent interval of more than 10 ms

Tab. 12-15: Communication data frame: RTU mode

Address (Communication address)

Valid communication addresses are in the range of 0 to 254. A communication address equal to 0, means broadcast to all AC drives (AMD). In this case, the AMD will not reply any message to the master device.

00H: broadcast to all AC drives

01H: AC drive of address 01

0FH: AC drive of address 15

10H: AC drive of address 16

:

FEH: AC drive of address 254

Function (Function code) and DATA (Data characters)

The format of data characters depends on the function code.

03H: read data from register

06H: write single register

EXAMPLE

■ Reading continuous 2 data from register address 2102H, AMD address is 01H.

ASCII mode

Command message	
STX	:
Address	0
	1
Function	0
	3
Starting register	2
	1
	0
	2
Number of register (count by word)	0
	0
	0
	2
LRC check	D
	7
END	CR
	LF

Response message	
STX	:
Address	0
	1
Function	0
	3
Number of register (count by byte)	0 4
Content of starting register 2102H	1
	7
	7
	0
Content of register 2103H	0
	0
	0
	0
LRC check	7
	1
END	CR
	LF

RTU mode

Command message	
Address	01H
Function	03H
Starting data register	21H
	02H
Number of register (count by world)	00H
	02H
CRC CHK low	6FH
CRC CHK high	F7H

Response message	
Address	01H
Function	03H
Number of register (count by byte)	04H
Content of register address 2102H	17H
	70H
Content of register address 2103H	00H
	00H
CRC CHK low	FEH
CRC CHK high	5CH

06H: single write, write single data to register.

EXAMPLE

■ Writing data 6000 (1770H) to register 0100H. AMD address is 01H.

ASCII mode

Command message	
STX	:
Address	0
	1
Function	0
	6
Target register	0
	1
	0
	0
Register content	1
	7
	7
	0
LRC check	7
	1
END	CR
	LF

Response message	
STX	:
Address	0
	1
Function	0
	6
Target register	0
	1
	0
	0
Register content	1
	7
	7
	0
LRC check	7
	1
END	CR
	LF

RTU mode

Command message	
Address	01H
Function	06H
Target register	01H
	00H
Register content	17H
	70H
CRC CHK low	86H
CRC CHK high	22H

Response message	
Address	01H
Function	06H
Target register	01H
	00H
Register content	17H
	70H
CRC CHK low	86H
CRC CHK high	22H

10H: write multiple registers
(write multiple data to registers) (at most 20 sets of data can be written simultaneously)

EXAMPLE

- Set the multi-step speed
  Pr. 04-00 = 50.00 (1388H), Pr. 04-01 = 40.00 (0FA0H). AC drive address is 01H.

ASCII mode

Command message	
STX	:
ADR 1	0
ADR 0	1
CMD 1	1
CMD 0	0
Target register	0
	5
	0
	0
Number of register (count by word)	0
	0
	0
	2
Number of register (count by byte)	0
	4
The first data content	1
	3
	8
	8
The second data content	0
	F
	A
	0
LRC check	9
	A
END	CR
	LF

Response message	
STX	:
ADR 1	0
ADR 0	1
CMD 1	1
CMD 0	0
Target register	0
	5
	0
	0
Number of register (count by word)	0
	0
	0
	2
LRC check	E
	8
END	CR
	LF

RTU mode

Command message	
ADR	01H
CMD	10H
Target register	05H
	00H
Number of register (Count by word)	00H
	02H
Quantity of data (byte)	04
The first data content	13H
	88H
The second data content	0FH
	A0H
CRC check low	9
CRC check high	A

Response message	
ADR	01H
CMD 1	10H
Target register	05H
	00H
Number of register (Count by word)	00H
	02H
CRC check low	41H
CRC check high	04H

Check sum

ASCII mode:

LRC (Longitudinal Redundancy Check) is calculated by summing up, module 256, and the values of the bytes from ADR1 to last data character then calculating the hexadecimal representation of the 2's-complement negation of the sum.

For example:
01H+03H+21H+02H+00H+02H=29H, the 2's-complement negation of 29H is D7H.

RTU mode:

CRC (Cyclical Redundancy Check) is calculated by the following steps:

① Load a 16-bit register (called CRC register) with FFFFH.

② Exclusive OR the first 8-bit byte of the command message with the low order byte of the 16-bit CRC register, putting the result in the CRC register.

③ Examine the LSB of CRC register.

④ If the LSB of CRC register is 0, shift the CRC register one bit to the right with MSB zero filling, then repeat step 3. If the LSB of CRC register is 1, shift the CRC register one bit to the right with MSB zero filling, Exclusive OR the CRC register with the polynomial value A001H, then repeat step 3.

⑤ Repeat step 3 and 4 until eight shifts have been performed. When this is done, a complete 8-bit byte will have been processed.

⑥ Repeat step 2 to 5 for the next 8-bit byte of the command message. Continue doing this until all bytes have been processed. The final contents of the CRC register are the CRC value. When transmitting the CRC value in the message, the upper and lower bytes of the CRC value must be swapped, i.e. the lower order byte will be transmitted first.

The following is an example of CRC generation using C language.

EXAMPLE Calculation program for cylical redundancy check (CRC) written in C language

```
unsigned int crc_chk(unsigned char *data, unsigned char length)      ❶
{
    int j;                                                            ❷
    unsigned int reg_crc = 0Xffff;                                    ❸
    while (length--) {                                                ❹
        reg_crc ^= *data++;                                           ❺
        for (j = 0; j < 8; j++) {                                     ❻
            if (reg_crc & 0x01) { /* LSB(b0)=1 */                     ❼
                reg_crc = (reg_crc >> 1) ^ 0Xa001;                    ❽
            } else {                                                  ❾
                reg_crc = reg_crc >> 1;                               ❿
            }
        }
    }
    return reg_crc;                    // return register CRC        ⓫
}
```

Number	Explanation of each step of the program example
❶	Declaration of the function: The type of the CRC value returned by the function is unsigned integer and the name of the function is "crc_chk" used for program call. The two arguments "unsigned char *data" and "unsigned char length" are handed over to the function. "unsigned char* data" is the pointer on the first element to be executed. "unsigned char length" is the number of the executed elements.
❷	"j" is of data type integer and is used for counting the 8 shift cycles later on.
❸	The hexadecimal value FFFF is assigned to the variable "reg_crc".
❹	This step checks the variable "length" (it contains the number of elements), if it is not equal zero. Is the variable equal zero the loop will be finished, otherwise the loop will be executed. Afterwards the variable "length" will be decreased by 1.
❺	The value of the current pointer position, pointing on the first element during the first cycle, is read. Afterwards every bit position of the variable "reg_crc" and of the element are compared bit by bit. At unequal bits the corresponding bit in "reg_crc" is set to 1, at equal bits it is set to 0. At the end the pointer will be increased, pointing on the next element for the following cycle.
❻	The loop has 8 cycles (0 to 7) for executing every bit of the byte.
❼	If the first bit has the value 1, all bits in "reg_crc" are shifted right wards by one position. During the shift process the first bit is lost and the last bit with the value 0 is added.
❽	The Exclusive OR operation is done with the hexadecimal value "A001" (0Xa001) what means, that every bit position of "reg_crc" and "A001" are compared. If both bits are equal, the bit is set to 1, otherwise it is set to 0. The operation result is written to "reg_crc".
❾/❿	If the first bit has not the value 1, all bits in "reg_crc" are shifted right wards by one position. During the shift process the first bit is lost and the last bit with the value 0 will be added. But the Exclusive OR operation of step ❽ is not executed.
⓫	This step returns the value of "reg_crc". The data type is the same as of the variable "reg_crc".

The shown function outputs the CRC value (reg_crc) as an integer value without sign.

12.10.4 Address list

Content	Register	Function	
AC drive parameters	GGnnH	GG means parameter group, nn means parameter number, for example, the address of Pr. 4-01 is 0401H.	
Command write only	2000H	Bit 1–0	00B: No function
			01B: Stop
			10B: Run
			11B: JOG+RUN
		Bit 3–2	Reserved
		Bit 5–4	00B: No function
			01B: FWD
			10B: REV
			11B: Change direction
		Bit 7–6	00B: 1st accel/decel.
			01B: 2nd accel/decel
			10B: 3rd accel/decel
			11B: 4th accel/decel
	2000H	Bit 11–8	000B: master speed
			0001B: 1st step speed frequency
			0010B: 2nd step speed frequency
			0011B: 3rd step speed frequency
			0100B: 4th step speed frequency
			0101B: 5th step speed frequencyy
			0110B: 6th step speed frequency
			0111B: 7th step speed frequency
			1000B: 8th step speed frequency
			1001B: 9th step speed frequency
			1010B: 10th step speed frequency
			1011B: 11th step speed frequencyy
			1100B: 12th step speed frequency
			1101B: 13th step speed frequency
			1110B: 14th step speed frequency
			1111B: 15th step speed frequency
		Bit 12	1: Enable bit06-11 function
		Bit 14–13	00B: No function
			01B: Operated by digital keypad
			10B: Operated by Pr. 00-21 setting
			11B: Change operation source
		Bit 15	Reserved
	2001H	Frequency command (XXX.XXHz)	
	2002H	Bit 0	1: EF (external fault) on
		Bit 1	1: Reset
		Bit 2	1: B.B ON
		Bit 15–3	Reserved

Tab. 12-16: Address list of instructions and the status output (1)

Content	Register		Function
Status monitor read only	2100H		High byte: Warn code Low byte: Error code
	2101H	Bit 1–0	AC Drive operation status 00B: Drive stops 01B: Drive decelerating 10B: Drive standby 11B: Drive operating
		Bit2	1: JOG Command
		Bit4–3	Operation direction 00B: FWD run 01B: From REV run to FWD run 10B: REV run 11B: From FWD run to REV run
		Bit 8	1: Master frequency controlled by communication interface
		Bit 9	1: Master frequency controlled by analog signal
		Bit 10	1: Operation command controlled by communication interface
		Bit 11	1: Parameter locked
		Bit 12	1: Enable to copy parameters from keypad
		Bit 15–13	Reserved
	2102H		Frequency command (XXX.XX Hz)
	2103H		Output frequency (XXX.XX Hz)
	2104H		Output current (XX.XXA). When current is higher than 655.35,it will shift decimal as (XXX.XA). The decimal can refer to high byte of 211F.
	2105H		DC-BUS Voltage (XXX.XV)
	2106H		Output voltage (XXX.XV)
	2107H		Current step number of multi-step speed operation
	2108H		Reserved
	2109H		Counter value
	210AH		Power Factor angle (XXX.X)
	210BH		Output torque (XXX.X%)
	210CH		Actual motor speed (XXXXXrpm)
	210DH		Number of PG feed back pulses (0–65535)
	210EH		Number of PG2 pulse commands (0–65535)
	210FH		Power output (X.XXX KWH)
	2116H		Multi-function display (Pr. 00-04)
	211BH		Max. operation frequency (Pr. 01-00) or Max. user defined value (Pr. 00-26) When Pr. 00-26 is 0, this value is equal to Pr. 01-00 setting When Pr. 00-26 is not 0, and the command source is Keypad, this value = Pr. 00-24 * Pr. 00-26/Pr. 01-00 When Pr. 00-26 is not 0, and the command source is RS485 communication, this value = Pr. 09-10 * Pr. 00-26 / Pr. 01-00
	211FH		High byte: decimal of current value (display)
	2200H		Display output current (A). When current is higher than 655.35,it will shift decimal as (XXX.XA). The decimal can refer to high byte of 211F.
	2201H		Display counter value (c)
	2202H		Actual output frequency (XXXXXHz)
	2203H		DC-BUS voltage (XXX.XV)
	2204H		Output voltage (XXX.XV)
	2205H		Power angle (XXX.X)

Tab. 12-16: Address list of instructions and the status output (2)

Content	Register	Function
Status monitor read only	2206H	Indication of the current output power of U, V, W (xxxxx kW)
	2207H	Display motor speed in rpm estimated by the drive or encoder feedback (XXXXXrpm)
	2208H	Display positive/negative output torque in %, estimated by the drive (t0.0: positive torque, -0.0: negative torque) (XXX.X%)
	2209H	Display PG feedback (as Pr. 00-04 NOTE 1)
	220AH	PID feedback value after enabling PID function (XXX.XX%)
	220BH	Display signal of AVI analog input terminal, 0-10V corresponds to 0.00–100.00 % (1.) (as Pr. 00-04 NOTE 2)
	220CH	Display signal of ACI analog input terminal, 4-20 mA/0–10 V corresponds to 0.00–100.00 % (2.) (as Pr. 00-04 NOTE 2)
	220DH	Display signal of AUI analog input terminal, -10 V–10 V corresponds to –100.00–100 % (3.) (as Pr. 00-04 NOTE 2)
	220EH	IGBT temperature of drive power module (XXX.X°C)
	220FH	The temperature of capacitance (XXX.X°C)
	2210H	The status of digital input (ON/OFF), refer to Pr. 02-12 (as Pr. 00-04 NOTE 3)
	2211H	The status of digital output (ON/OFF), refer to Pr. 02-18 (as Pr. 00-04 NOTE 4)
	2212H	The multi-step speed that is executing (S)
	2213H	The corresponding CPU pin status of digital input (d.) (as Pr. 00-04 NOTE 3)
	2214H	The corresponding CPU pin status of digital output (O.) (as Pr. 00-04 NOTE 4)
	2215H	Number of actual motor revolution (PG1 of PG card) (P.) it will start from 9 when the actual operation direction is changed or keypad display at stop is 0. Max. is 65535
	2216H	Pulse input frequency (PG2 of PG card) (XXX.XXHz)
	2217H	Pulse input position (PG card PG2), maximum setting is 65535.
	2218H	Position command tracing error
	2219H	Indication of the current output power of U, V, W (xxxxx kW)
	221AH	GFF (XXX.XX%)
	221BH	DCbus voltage ripples (XXX.XV)
	221CH	PLC register D1043 data (C)
	221DH	Pole of Permanent Magnet Motor
	221EH	User page displays the value in physical measure
	221FH	Output value of Pr. 00-05 (XXX.XXHz)
	2220H	Number of motor turns when drive operates (keeping when drive stops, and reset to zero when operation)
	2220H	Operation position of motor (keeping when drive stops, and reset to zero when operation)
	2221H	Operation position of motor (keeping when drive stops, and reset to zero when operation)
	2222H	Fan speed of the drive (XXX%)
	2223H	Control mode of the drive 0: speed mode 1: torque mode
	2224H	Carrier frequency of the drive (XXKHZ)
	2225H	Reserve

Tab. 12-16: Address list of instructions and the status output (3)

Content	Register	Function
Status monitor read only	2226H	Drive status bit 1–0 00b: No direction 01b: Forward 10b: Reverse bit 3–2 01b: Driver ready 10b: Error bit 4 0b: Motor drive did not output 1b: Motor drive did output bit 5 0b: No alarm 1b: Have alarm
	2227H	Drive's estimated output torque (positive or negative direction) (XXXX Nt-m)
	2228H	Torque command (XXX.X%)
	2229H	KWH display (XXXX.X)
	222AH	PG2 pulse input in low word
	222BH	PG2 pulse input in high word
	222CH	Motor actual position in low word
	222DH	Motor actual position in high word
	222EH	PID reference (XXX.XX%)
	222FH	PID offset (XXX.XX%)
	2230H	PID output frequency (XXX.XXHz)

Tab. 12-16: Address list of instructions and the status output (4)

12.10.5 Exception response

The is expected to return a normal response after receiving command messages from the master device. The following depicts the conditions when no normal response is replied to the master device.

The does not receive the messages due to a communication error; thus, the has no response. The master device will eventually process a timeout condition.

The receives the messages without a communication error, but cannot handle them. An exception response will be returned to the master device and an error message "CExx" will be displayed on the keypad of . The xx of "CExx" is a decimal code equal to the exception code that is described below.

In the exception response, the most significant bit of the original command code is set to 1, and an exception code which explains the condition that caused the exception is returned.

EXAMPLE

ASCII mode	
STX	:
Address	0
	1
Function	8
	6
Exception code	0
	2
LRC CHK	7
	7
END	CR
	LF

RTU mode	
Address	01H
Function	86H
Exception code	02H
CRC CHK Low	C3H
CRC CHK High	A1H

The explanation of exception codes

Exception code	Explanation
1	Function code is not supported or unrecognized.
2	Address is not supported or unrecognized.
3	Data is not correct or unrecognized.
4	Fail to execute this function code

09-05 – 09-08 Reserved

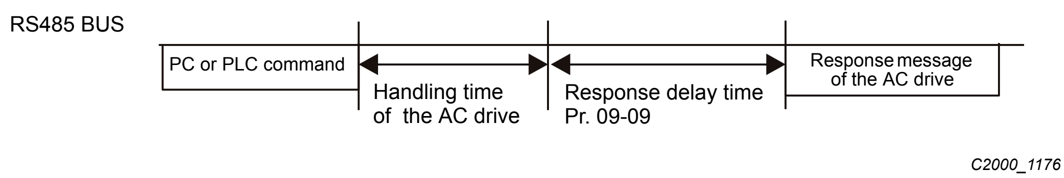
09-09 Response delay time

Factory setting: 2.0

Settings 0.0–200.0 ms

NOTE

This parameter is the response delay time after AC drive receives communication command as shown in the following.



09-10 Main frequency of the communication

Factory setting: 60.00

Settings 0.00–600.00 Hz

- When Pr. 00-20 is set to 1 (RS485 communication). The will save the last frequency command into Pr. 09-10 when abnormal turn-off or momentary power loss. After reboots the power, it will regard the frequency set in Pr. 09-10 if no new frequency command is inputted. When frequence command of RS485 communication is changed (the source of frequence command needs to be set as MODBUS), this parameter is also be changed.

09-11	⌿ Block transfer 1
09-12	⌿ Block transfer 2
09-13	⌿ Block transfer 3
09-14	⌿ Block transfer 4
09-15	⌿ Block transfer 5
09-16	⌿ Block transfer 6
09-17	⌿ Block transfer 7
09-18	⌿ Block transfer 8
09-19	⌿ Block transfer 9
09-20	⌿ Block transfer 10
09-21	⌿ Block transfer 11
09-22	⌿ Block transfer 12
09-23	⌿ Block transfer 13
09-24	⌿ Block transfer 14
09-25	⌿ Block transfer 15
09-26	⌿ Block transfer 16

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535

■ There is a group of block transfer parameter available in the (Pr. 09-11 to Pr. 09-26). Through communication code 03H, user can use them (Pr. 09-11 to Pr. 09-26) to save those parameters that you want to read.

09-27 – 09-29	Reserved

09-30	Communication decoding method

Factory setting: 1

Settings	0: Decoding method 1 1: Decoding method 2

		Decoding method 1	Decoding method 2
Source of operation control	Digital keypd	Digital keypad controls the drive action regardless decoding method 1 or 2.	
	External terminal	External terminal controls the drive action regardless decoding method 1 or 2.	
	RS-485	Refer to address: 2000h–20FFh	Refer to address: 6000h–60FFh
	CANopen	Refer to index: 2020-01h–2020-FFh	Refer to index: 2060-01h–2060-FFh
	Communication card	Refer to address: 2000h–20FFh	Refer to address: 6000h – 60FFh
	PLC	PLC commands the drive action regardless decoding method 1 or 2.	

Tab. 12-17: Decoding methods

09-31 ✓ Internal communication protocol

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Modbus 485 -1: Internal communication slave 1 -2: Internal communication slave 2 -3: Internal communication slave 3 -4: Internal communication slave 4 -5: Internal communication slave 5 -6: Internal communication slave 6 -7: Internal communication slave 7 -8: Internal communication slave 8 -9: Reserve -10: Internal communication master -11: Reserve -12: Internal PLC Control

- When it is defined as internal communication, see CH16-10 for information on Main Control Terminal of Internal Communication.
- When it is defined as internal PLC control, see CH16-12 for Remote IO control application (by using MODRW).

09-32 09-34 Reserved

09-33 ✓ PLC command force to 0

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535

- It defines the action that before PLC scans time sequence, the frequence command or speed command needs to be cleared as 0 or not.

Bit	Explanation
Bit0	Before PLC scan, set up PLC target frequency = 0
Bit1	Before PLC scan, set up the PLC target torque = 0
Bit2	Before PLC scan, set up the speed limit of torque control mode = 0

09-35 PLC address

Factory setting: 2

Settings	1–254

09-36 CANopen slave address

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable 1–127

09-37 CANopen speed

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: 1M 1: 500k 2: 250k 3: 125k 4: 100k (Delta only) 5: 50k

09-38 Reserved

09-39 CANopen warning record

Factory setting: 0

Settings	bit 0: CANopen guarding time out bit 1: CANopen Heartbeat time out bit 2: CANopen SYNC time out bit 3: CANopen SDO time out bit 4: CANopen SDO buffer overflow bit 5: Can bus Off bit 6: Error protocol of CANOPEN bit 8: The setting values of CANopen indexs are fail bit 9: The setting value of CANopen address is fail bit10: The checksum value of CANopen indexs is fail

09-40 CANopen decoding method

Factory setting: 1

Settings	0: Delta defined decoding method 1: CANopen Standard DS402 protocol

09-41 CANopen status

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Node reset state 1: Com reset state 2: Boot up state 3: Pre operation state 4: Operation state 5: Stop state

09-42 CANopen control status

Factory setting: Read only

Settings	0: Not ready for use state 1: Inhibit start state 2: Ready to switch on state 3: Switched on state 4: Enable operation state 7: Quick stop active state 13: Err reaction activation state 14: Error state

09-43	Reset CANopen index

Factory setting: 65535

Settings	bit0: reset address 20XX to 0 bit1: reset address 264X to 0 bit2: reset address 26AX to 0 bit3: reset address 60XX to 0

09-44	Reserved

09-45	CANopen master function

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable 1: Enable

09-46	CANopen master address

Factory setting: 100

Settings	1–127

09-47 – 09-59	Reserved

09-60	Identifications for communication card

Factory setting: ##

Settings	0: No communication card 1: DeviceNet slave 2: Profibus-DP slave 3: CANopen Slave/master 4: Modbus-TCP slave 5: EtherNet/IP slave 6–8: Reserved

09-61	Firmware version of communication card

Factory setting: ##

Settings	Read only

09-62	Product code

Factory setting: ##

Settings	Read only

- Different communication cards have their own product codes with different value. DeviceNet: As it connects to different kind of motor drive, it will have different product code.
  Profibus: ID number of a communication card. Each Profibus selling in the market must apply for an ID number at the Profibus International to be a unique product.

09-63	Fault code

Factory setting: ##

Settings	Read only

- For more information about Fault codes, refer to Pr. 06-17–06-22 and Chapter 14.

09-64 – 09-69	Reserved

09-70	✓ Address of communication card

Factory setting: 1

Settings	DeviceNet: 0-63 Profibus-DP: 1-125

09-71	⌿ Setting of deviceNet speed (according to Pr. 09-72)

Factory setting: 2

Settings	Standard DeviceNet: 0: 125 Kbps 1: 250 Kbps 2: 500 Kbps Non standard DeviceNet: (Delta only) 0: 10 Kbps 1: 20 Kbps 2: 50 Kbps 3: 100 Kbps 4: 125 Kbps 5: 250 Kbps 6: 500 Kbps 7: 800 Kbps 8: 1 Mbps

09-72	⌿ Other setting of deviceNet speed

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Standard DeviceNet 1: Non standard DeviceNet

- It needs to use with Pr. 09-71.
- Setting 0: the baud rate can only be set to 0, 1, 2 or 3.
- Setting 1: setting of DeviceNet communication rate can be the same as CANopen (setting 0-8).

09-73 09-74	Reserved

09-75	⌿ IP configuration of the communication card

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Static IP 1: Dynamic IP (DHCP)

- Setting 0: it needs to set IP address manually.
- Setting 1: IP address will be auto set by host controller.

09-76 09-77 09-78 09-79	✗ IP address 1 of the communication card ✗ IP address 2 of the communication card ✗ IP address 3 of the communication card ✗ IP address 4 of the communication card

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–255

■ Pr. 09-76–09-79 needs to use with communication card.

09-80 09-81 09-82 09-83	✗ Address Mask 1 of the Communication Card ✗ Address Mask 2 of the Communication Card ✗ Address Mask 3 of the Communication Card ✗ Address Mask 4 of the Communication Card

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–255

09-84 09-85 09-86 09-87	✗ Getway address 1 of the communication card ✗ Getway address 2 of the communication card ✗ Getway address 3 of the communication card ✗ Getway address 4 of the communication card

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–255

09-88 09-89	✗ Password for communication card (Low word) ✗ Password for communication card (High word)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–255

09-90	✗ Reset communication card

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable 1: Reset, return to factory setting

09-91	✓ Additional setting for communication card

Factory setting: 1

Settings	Bit 0: Enable IP filter Bit 1: Internet parameters enable (1bit) When IP address is set up, this bit need to be enabled to write down the parameters. This bit will change to disable when it finishes saving the update of internet parameters. Bit 2: Login password enable (1bit) When enter login password, this bit will be enabled. After updating the parameters of communication card, this bit will change to disable.

09-92	Status of communication card

Factory setting: 0

Settings	Bit 0: password enable When the communication card is set with password, this bit is enabled. When the password is clear, this bit is disabled.

12.11 PID control

NOTE ⌿ This parameter can be set during operation.

In this parameter group, ASR is the abbreviation for Adjust Speed Regulator and PG is the abbreviation for Pulse Generator.

10-00 Encoder type selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Disable 1: ABZ 2: ABZ (Delta encoder for Delta Servo motor) 3: Resolver 4: ABZ/UVW 5. MI8 single phase pulse input

- For PG extension card EMC-PG01L and EMC-PG01O, set Pr. 10-00 = 1. These extension cards are for IM motor only.
- For EMC-PG01U, when setting Pr. 10-00 = 2 (Delta encoder) make sure SW1 is switched to D (Delta type). If the setting for Pr. 10-00, 10-01 and 10-02 has changed, please turn off the drive’s power and reboots to prevent PM motor stall. This mode is suggested for PM motor.
- For EMC-PG01R, when setting Pr. 10-00 = 3; also set Pr. 10-01 to 1024 ppr.
- For EMC-PG01U, when setting Pr. 10-00 = 4 (standard ABZ/UVW encoder) make sure SW1 is switched to S (standard type). This mode is applicable for both IM and PM motor.
- When using MI8 single phase pulse input as frequency command, the Pr. 10-02 must set “5: Single-phase input”. This only can be use with VF, VFPG, SVC, IM/PM FOC sensor-less, IM/PM TQC sensor-less control mode.
- When using MI8 single phase pulse as speed feedback, the drive must at VFPG control mode only.

10-01 Encoder pulse

Factory setting: 600

Settings	1–20000

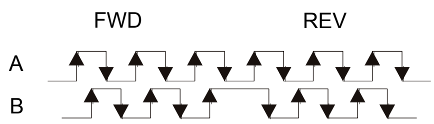
- A Pulse Generator (PG) or encoder is used as a sensor that provides a feedback signal of the motor speed. This parameter defines the number of pulses for each cycle of the PG control, i.e. the number of pulses for a cycle of A phase/B phase.
- This setting is also the encoder resolution. With the higher resolution, the speed control will be more accurate.
- An incorrect input to Pr. 10-00 may result drive over current, motor stall, PM motor magnetic pole origin detection error. If Pr. 10-00 setting has changed, please trace the magnetic pole again, set Pr. 05-00 = 4 (static test for PM motor magnetic pole and PG origin again).

10-02	Encoder input type setting

Factory setting: 0

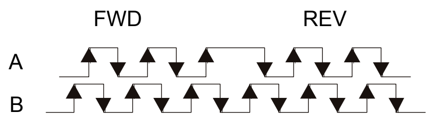
Settings 0: Disable

1: Phase A leads in a forward run command and phase B leads in a reverse run command



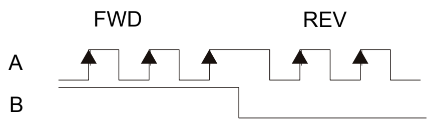
C2000_1243

2: Phase B leads in a forward run command and phase A leads in a reverse run command



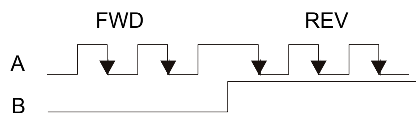
C2000_1244

3: Phase A is a pulse input and phase B is a direction input. (L = reverse direction, H= forward direction)



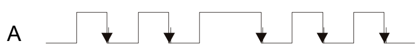
C2000_1245

4: Phase A is a pulse input and phase B is a direction input. (L= forward direction, H= reverse direction)



C2000_1246

5: Single-phase input



C2000_1247

10-03	⚡ Output setting for frequency division (denominator)

Factory setting: 1

Settings 1–255

NOTE This parameter is used to set the denominator for frequency division (for PG card EMC-PG01L or EMC-PG01O). For example, when it is set to 2 with feedback 1024 ppr. PG output will be 1024/2=512 ppr.

10-04	⚡ Electrical gear at load side A1

10-05	⚡ Electrical gear at motor side B1

10-06	⚡ Electrical gear at load side A2

10-07 ⌿ Electrical gear at motor side B2

Factory setting: 100

Settings	1–65535

- Parameters 10-04 to 10-07 can be used with the multi-function input terminal (set to 48) to switch to Pr. 10-04–10-05 or Pr. 10-06–10-07 as shown as follows

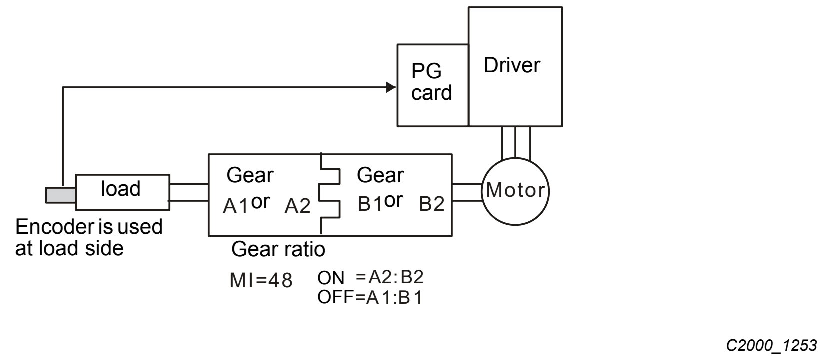


Fig. 12-73: Gear with encoder at the load side

10-08 ⌿ Treatment for encoder/speed observer feedback fault

Factory setting: 2

Settings	0: Warn and keep operating 1: Warn and RAMP to stop 2: Warn and COAST to stop

10-09 ⌿ Detection time of encoder/speed observer feedback fault

Factory setting: 1.0

Settings	0.0–10.0 sec. 0: No function

- When encoder loss, encoder signal error, pulse signal setting error or signal error, if time exceeds the detection time for encoder feedback fault (Pr. 10-09), the encoder signal error will occur. Refer to the Pr. 10-08 for encoder feedback fault treatment.
- When speed controller signal is abnormal, if time exceeds the detection time for encoder speed controller fault (Pr. 10-09), the feedback fault will occur. Refer to the Pr. 10-08 for encoder feedback fault treatment.

10-10 ✗ Encoder/speed observer stall level

Factory setting: 115

Settings	0–120 % 0: No function

■ This parameter determines the maximum encoder feedback signal allowed before a fault occurs. (Max. output frequency Pr. 01-00 =100 %)

10-11 ✗ Detection time of encoder/speed observer stall

Factory setting: 0.1

Settings	0.0–2.0 sec.

10-12 ✗ Treatment for encoder/speed observer stall

Factory setting: 2

Settings	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop

■ When the motor drive output frequency exceeds Pr. 10-10 setting and detection time exceeds Pr. 10-11, it will operate as Pr. 10-12 setting.

10-13 ✗ Encoder/speed observer slip range

Factory setting: 50

Settings	0–50 % 0: Disable

10-14 ✗ Detection time of encoder/speed observer slip

Factory setting: 0.5

Settings	0.0–10.0 sec.

10-15 ✗ Treatment for encoder/speed observer stall and slip error

Factory setting: 2

Settings	0: Warn and keep operation 1: Warn and ramp to stop 2: Warn and coast to stop

■ Action principle of Pr. 10-13–Pr. 10-15:
When the value of (rotation speed – motor frequency) exceeds Pr. 10-13 setting, detection time exceeds Pr. 10-14; it will start to accumulate time. If detection time exceeds Pr. 10-14, the encoder feedback signal error will occur. Refer to Pr. 10-15 encoder stall and slip error treatment.

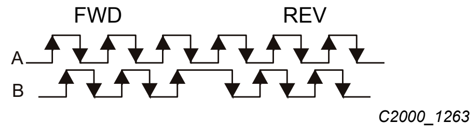
10-16 ⌿ Pulse input type setting (PG card: PG2)

Factory setting: 0

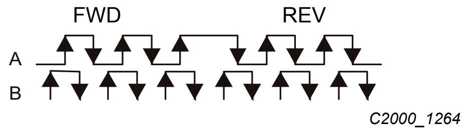
Settings

0: Disable

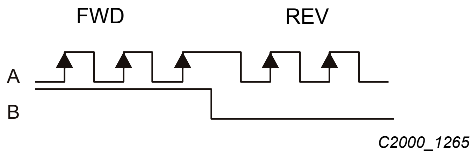
1: Phase A leads in a forward run command and phase B leads in a reverse run command



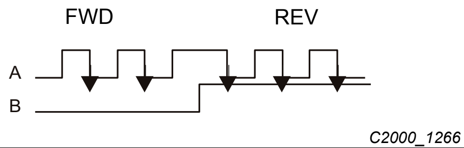
2: Phase B leads in a forward run command and phase A leads in a reverse run command



3: Phase A is a pulse input and phase B is a direction input.
(L= reverse direction, H= forward direction)



4: Phase A is a pulse input and phase B is a direction input.
(L= forward direction, H= reverse direction)



■ When this setting is different from Pr. 10-02 setting and the source of the frequency command is pulse input (Pr. 00-20 is set to 4 or 5), it may have 4 times frequency problem.
<u>Example 1:</u> Assume that Pr. 10-01 = 1024, Pr. 10-02 = 1, Pr. 10-16 = 3, Pr. 00-20 = 5, MI=37 and ON, it needs 4096 pulses to rotate the motor a revolution.
<u>Example 2:</u> Assume that Pr. 10-01 = 1024, Pr. 10 -02 = 1, Pr. 10-16 = 1, Pr. 00-20 = 5, MI=37 and ON, it needs 1024 pulses to rotate the motor a revolution.

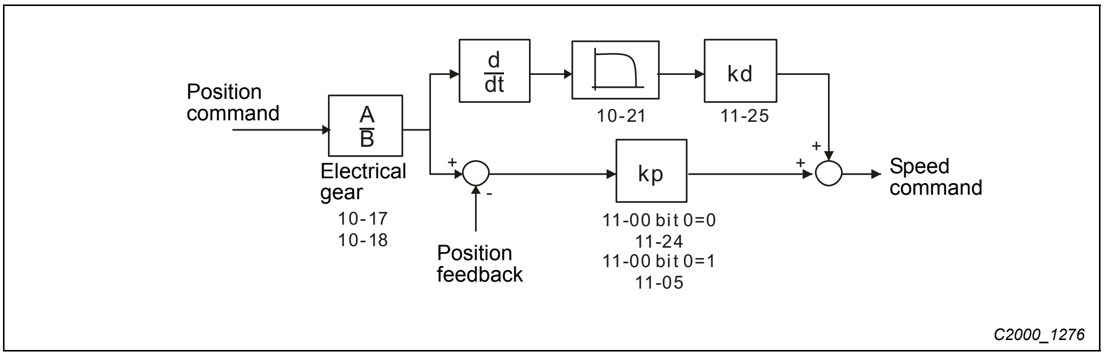


Fig. 12-74: Position control diagram

10-17 ⌿ Electrical gear A

10-18 ⌿ Electrical gear B

Factory setting: 100

Settings	1–65535

- Rotation speed = pulse frequency/encoder pulse (Pr.10-01) * PG electrical gear A/PG electrical gear B.

10-19 ⌿ Positioning for encoder position

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535 pulse

- This parameter determines the internal position in the position mode.
- It needs to be used with multi-function input terminal setting = 35 (enable position control).
- When it is set to 0, it is the Z-phase position of encoder.

10-20 ⌿ Range for encoder position attained

Factory setting: 10

Settings	0–65535 pulse

- This parameter determines the range for internal positioning position attained.
  For example:
  When the position is set by Pr.10-19 Positioning for encoder position and Pr. 10-20 is set to 1000, it reaches the position if the position is within 990-1010 after finishing the positioning.

10-21 ⌿ Filter time (PG2)

Factory setting: 0.100

Settings	0.000–65.535 sec

- When Pr. 00-20 is set to 5 and multi-function input terminal is set to 37 (OFF), the pulse command will be regarded as frequency command. This parameter can be used to suppress the jump of speed command.

10-22 Speed mode (PG2)

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Electronic frequency 1: Mechanical frequency (base on pole pair)

10-23 Reserved

10-24 ⌿ FOC&TQC function control

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–65535

Bit No.	Description
0	ASR control at sensorless torque ⓪: use PI as ASR ①: use P as ASR
1–10	NA
11	Activate DC braking when executing zero torque command ⓪: ON , ①: OFF
12	FOC Sensorless mode, cross zero means speed goes from negative to positive or positive to negative (forward to reverse direction or reverse to forward direction). ⓪: determine by stator frequency , ①: determine by speed command
13	NA
14	NA
15	Direction control at open loop status ⓪: Switch ON direction control ①: Switch OFF direction control

Tab. 12-18: Description of bit 0–bit 15

■ Except bit = 0 set to be used in closed loop, other bit settings are for open loop.

10-25 ⌿ FOC bandwidth of speed observer

Factory setting: 40.0

Settings	20.0–100.0 Hz

■ Setting speed observer to higher bandwidth could shorten the speed response time but will create greater noise interference during the speed observation.

10-26 ⌿ FOC minimum stator frequency

Factory setting: 2.0

Settings	0.0–10.0 % fN

■ This parameter is used to set the minimum level of stator frequency at operation status. This setting ensures the stability and accuracy of observer and avoid interferences from voltage, current and motor parameter. fN is motor rated frequency.

10-27 ⌿ FOC low-pass filter time constant

Factory setting: 50

Settings	1–1000 ms

■ This parameter sets the low-pass filter time constant of a flux observer at start up. If the motor can not be activated during the high-speed operation, please lower the setting in this parameter.

10-28 〆 FOC gain of excitation current rise time

Factory setting: 100

Settings	33–100 % Tr (Tr: rotor time constant)

- This parameter sets the drive's excitation current rise time when activates at sensorless torque mode. When the drive's activation time is too long at torque mode, please adjust this parameter to a shorter time constant.

10-29 〆 Top limit of frequency deviation

Factory setting: 20.00

Settings	0.00–200.00 Hz

- Pr. 10-29 is for setting the maximum of frequency deviation.
- When this parameter is set too large, resulting in abnormal PG feedback malfunction.
- If the application need higher setting of Pr. 10-29, please note that: Higher setting of Pr. 10-29 value will result in larger motor slip, which will cause PG Error (PGF3, PGF4) easily. In this case, set Pr. 10-10 and Pr. 10-13 as 0 will disable PGF3 and PGF4 detection, but it needs to make sure the PG wiring and application is correct. Or it may lose the instant PG protection. Too Higher Pr. 10-29 setting is not a common setting.

10-30 Resolver pole pair

Factory setting: 1

Settings	1–50

- To use Pr. 10-30 function, user must set Pr. 10-00 = 3 (resolver encoder) first.

10-33 Reserved

10-38 Reserved

10-31 〆 I/F mode, current command

Factory setting: 40

Settings	0–150 % Irated (rated current % of the motor)

10-32 〆 PM sensorless observer bandwidth for high speed zone

Factory setting: 5.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

10-34 〆 PM sensorless observer low-pass filter gain

Factory setting: 1.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 Hz

10-35	⌿ ARM (Kp)

Factory setting: 1.00

Settings	0.00–3.00

10-36	⌿ ARM (Ki)

Factory setting: 0.20

Settings	0.00–3.00

10-37	⌿ PM sensorless control word

Factory setting: 0000

Settings	0000–FFFFh

Bit No.	Function	Description
0	Reserved	
1	Reserved	
2	Choose a control mode to statrt.	0: Start by IF mode 1: Start by VF mode
3	Choose a mode to stop.	0: Stop by IF mode 1: Stop by VF mode
4	Reserved	
5	Choose a control mode to stop	0: When lower than Pr. 10-40, coast to stop 1: When lower than Pr. 10-40, ramp to stop
6	Reserved	
7	Reserved	

Tab. 12-19: Description of bit 0–bit 7

10-39	⌿ Frequency point when switch from I/F mode to PM sensorless mode

Factory setting: 20.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

10-40	⌿ Frequency point when switch from PM sensorless observation mode to I/F mode

Factory setting: 20.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

10-41	⌿ I/F mode, low pass-filter time

Factory setting: 0.2

Settings	0.0–6.0 sec

10-42	✗ Initial angle detection time

Factory setting: 5

Settings	0–20 ms

■ PM sensorless (I/f + FOC) adjustment procedure

① When executing static test for PM (IPM) (05-00 = 13), VFD software can be used to monitor adjustment procedure. To download VFD software go to:

http://www.delta.com.tw/product/em/download/download_-main.asp?act=3&pid=1&cid=1&tpid=3

② Testing PM high frequency standstill VFD (calculating of Rs, Ld, Lg)

Procedures:

- Set control mode as VF mode (Pr. 00-10 = 0, Pr. 00-11 = 0)
- Output frequency of motor 1 (Pr. 01-01)
- Output voltage of motor 1 (Pr. 01-02)
- Induction motor and permanent magnet motor selection (Pr. 05-33 = 1 or 2)
- Full-load current of permanent magnet motor (Pr. 05-34
- Set static test for PM (IPM) (05-00 = 13), then run the drive.
- Set control mode as PM sensorless mode (parameters 00-10 = 0, 00-11 = 6)

④ Set VFD parameters

- Pr. 05-35 rated power of permanent magnet motor
- Pr. 05-36 rated speed of permanent magnet motor
- Pr. 05-37 pole number of permanent magnet motor
- Pr. 05-38 inertia of permanent magnet motor

⑤ Set ASR parameters

- Pr. 11-00 bit0 = 1: Auto tuning for ASR and APR
- Pr. 11-02: ASR1/ASR2 switch frequency, it is recommended to set Pr. 10-39 higher than 10 Hz.
- Pr. 11-03: ASR1 low-speed bandwidth and Pr. 11-04, ASR2 high-speed bandwidth. Do not set low-speed bandwidth too high to avoid dissipation of the estimator.

⑥ Set speed estimator and speed control's parameter.

- Pr. 10-39 frequency when switch from I/F Mode to PM sensorless mode.
- Pr. 10-32 PM sensorless observer bandwidth for high speed zone

⑦ Zero-load test

- Refer to switch point procedure of I/F and FOC as shown in the image below.

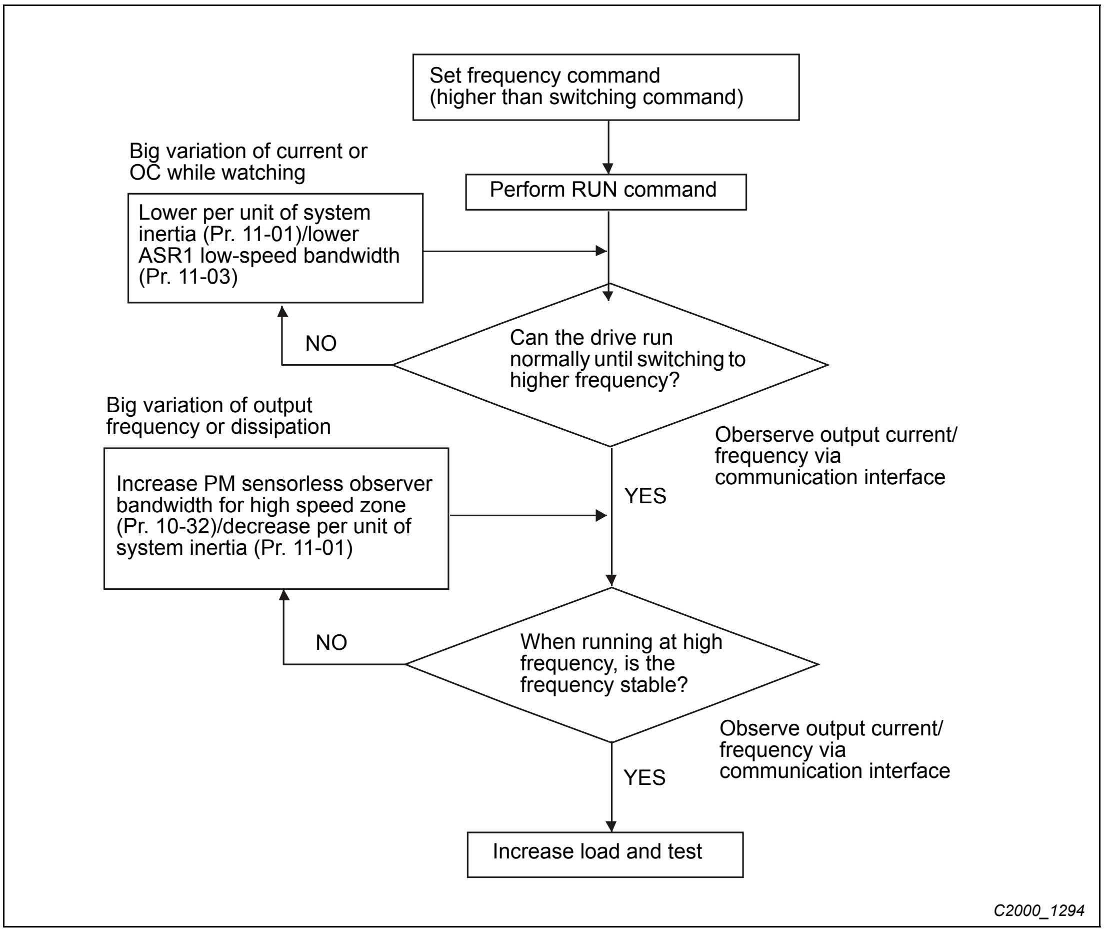


Fig. 12-75: Procedure for switching between I/F mode and FOC mode

IPM control method SOP

① Set up IPM motor: Pr. 05-33 = 2

② Set up motor parameter according to the motor Nameplate

Pr. 01-01 Output frequency of motor 1 (base frequency and motor rated frequency)

Pr. 01-02 Output voltage of motor 1 (base frequency and motor rated frequency)

Pr. 05-34 Full-load current of permanent magnet motor

Pr. 05-35 Rated power of permanent magnet motor

Pr. 05-36 Rated speed of permanent magnet motor

Pr. 05-37 Pole number of permanent magnet motor

③ Execute auto-tuning

Set up Pr. 05-00 = 13 for IPM motor tuning and press run (static-tuning). When the tuning is done, the following parameters will be obtained.

Pr. 05-39 Stator resistance of PM motor

Pr. 05-40 Permanent magnet motor Ld

Pr. 05-41 Permanent magnet motor Lq

④ Set up control mode: Pr. 00-10 = 0 velocity mode, Pr. 00-11 = 7 IPM sensor-less.

⑤ Turn OFF the power and power ON again.

⑥ Modify the ASR Kp and Ki according to system need.

10-43 PG card version

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–655.35

NOTE

Version reference:

- PG02U 21.XX
- PG01U31.XX
- PG01O/PG01L 11.XX
- PG02O/PG02L14.XX
- PG01R41.XX

10-44–10-48	Reserve

10-49	⌿ Zero voltage time while start up

Factory setting: 00.000 sec.

Settings	00.000–60.000 sec.

- When the motor is in static status at the startup, the accuracy to estimate angles will be increased. In order to make the motor in “static status”, the drive 3 phase U, V, W output 0 V to motor to reach this goal. The Pr. 10-49 setting time is the length of time when three-phase output 0 V.
- It is possible that even when this parameter is being applied but the motor at the installation site cannot go in to the “static status” caused by the inertia or by any external force. So, if the motor doesn’t go into a completer “static status” in 0.2 sec. increase appropriately this setting value.
- This parameter is functional only when the setting of Pr. 07-12 speed search during startup ≠ 0.

10-50	⌿ Reverse angle limit (electrical angle)

Factory setting: 10.00 degree

Settings	0.00–30.00 degree

- While forward run is starting, if there is a sudden reverse run and the reverse angle is bigger than the Pr. 10-50 setting, then, drive will has a ScRv error.
- This parameter is valid only when Pr. 07-28 = 11 enable textile machine’s function.
  (for use in textile machines - special parameter)

10-51	✎ Injection frequency

Factory setting: 500 Hz

Settings	0–2000 Hz

- This parameter is a high frequency injection command when the motor drive is under IPM HFI sensor-less control mode and it doesn't often need to be adjusted. But, if a motor's rated frequency (i.e. 400 Hz) is too close to the frequency setting of this parameter (i.e. 500 Hz), the accuracy of angles detected will be affected. Therefore, refer to the setting of Pr. 01-01 before adjusting this parameter.

10-52	✎ Injection magnitude

Factory setting: 15/30 V

Settings	0.0–200.0 V

- This parameter is the high frequency injection command's amplitude when the motor drive is under IPM HFI sensor-less control mode.
- By increase the setting value of this parameter, the accuracy of angles detected will also be increased. However, if the setting value is too big, it will cause a louder electromagnetic noise.

12.12 Advanced parameters

NOTE ⌿ This parameter can be set during operation.

In this parameter group, ASR is the abbreviation for Adjust Speed Regulator (**A**uto **S**peed **R**egulation).

11-00	System control

Factory setting: 0

Settings	Bit 0: Auto tuning for ASR and APR Bit 1: Inertia estimate (only in FOCPG mode) Bit 2: Zero servo Bit 3: Dead time compensation closed Bit 7: Selection to save or not save the freqeuncy Bit 8: Maximum speed of point to point position control

NOTES

- Bit 0 = 0: Pr. 11-06 to 11-11 will be valid and Pr. 11-03–11-05 are invalid.
- Bit 0 = 1: system will generate an ASR setting. At this moment, Pr. 11-06–11-11 will be invalid and Pr. 11-03–11-05 are valid.
- Bit 1 = 0: no function.
- Bit 1 = 1: Inertia estimate function is enabled. (Bit 1 setting would not activate the estimation process, please set Pr. 05-00=12 to begin FOC/TQC sensorless inertia estimating)
- Bit 2 = 0: no function.
- Bit 2 = 1: when frequency command is less than Fmin (Pr. 01-07), it will use zero servo function.

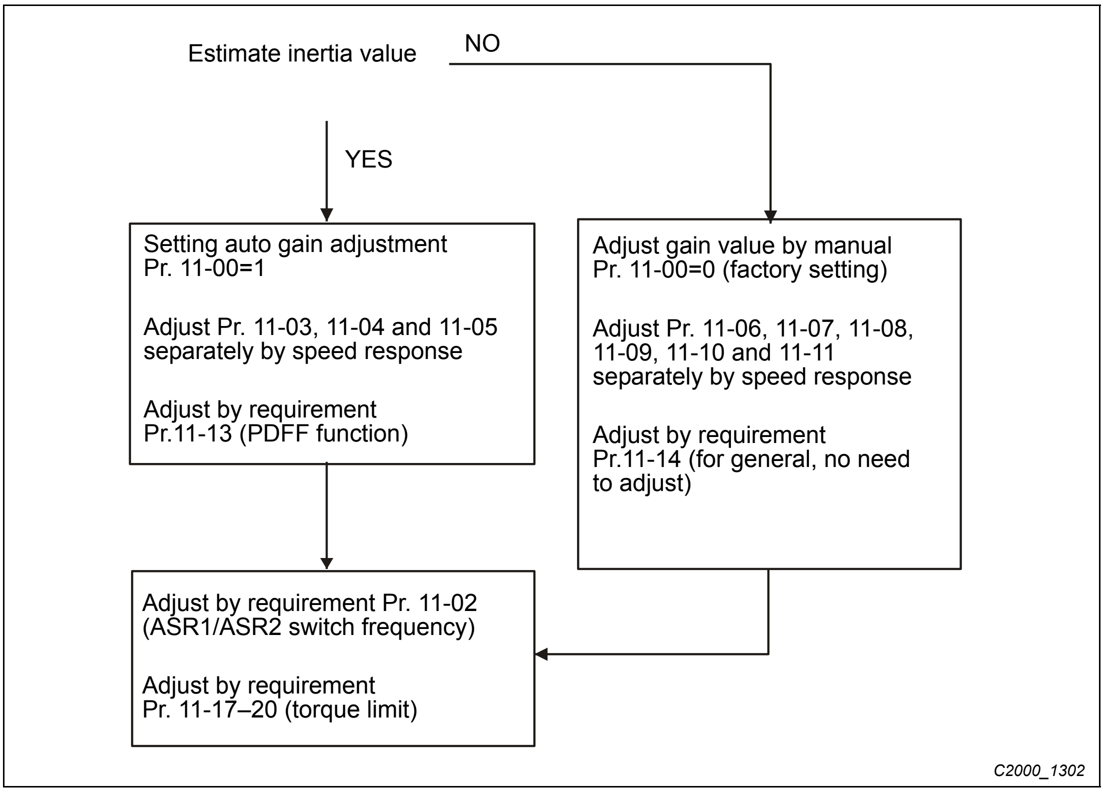


Fig. 12-76: Adjustment of operating functions

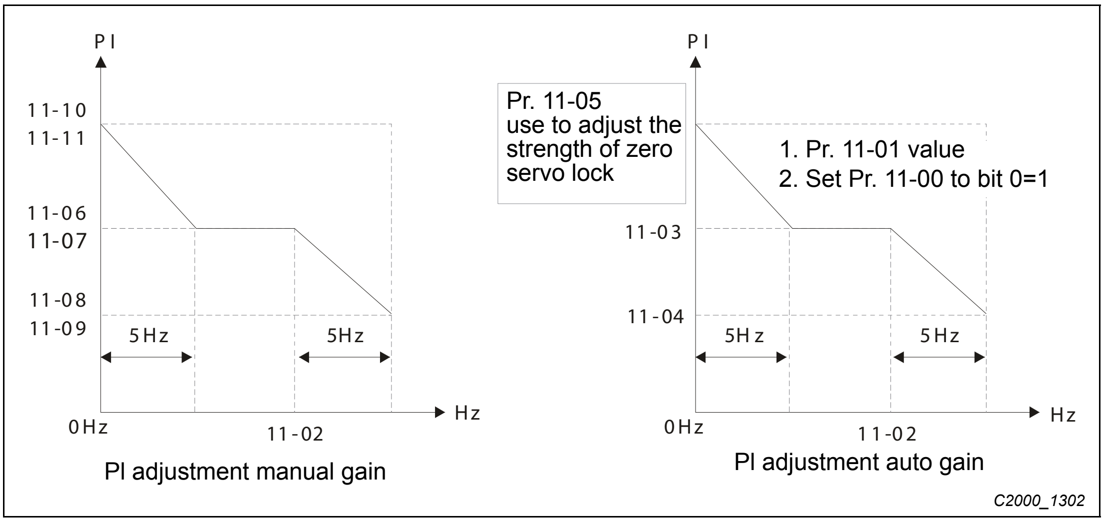


Fig. 12-77: PI gain adjustment

NOTES

- Bit 7 = 0: frequency is saved before power turns off. When power turns on again, the display frequency will be the memorized frequency.
- Bit 7 = 1: frequency is not saved before power turns off. When power turns ON again, the display frequency will be 0.00 Hz.
- Bit 8 = 0: maximum speed for point-to-point position control is control by the setting of Pr. 11-43.
- Bit 8 = 1: maximum speed for point-to-point position control is control by the multi-step speed setting of the external terminal device. When multi-step speed of the external device is set to 0, the maximum operation speed will bet the setting of Pr. 11-43.

11-01 Per unit of system inertia

Factory setting: 400

Settings	1–65535 (256 = 1PU)

NOTE

To get the system inertia from Pr. 11-01, user needs to set Pr. 11-00 to bit 1 = 1 and execute continuous forward/reverse running.

Unit of induction motor system inertia is 0.001 kg-m^2:

Power	Setting
1HP	2.3
2HP	4.3
3HP	8.3
5HP	14.8
7.5HP	26.0
10HP	35.8
15HP	74.3

Power	Setting
20HP	95.3
25HP	142.8
30HP	176.5
40HP	202.5
50HP	355.5
60HP	410.8
75HP	494.8

Power	Setting
100HP	1056.5
125HP	1275.3
150HP	1900.0
175HP	2150.0
215HP	2800.0
300HP	3550.0

The base value for induction motor system inertia is set by Pr. 05-38 and the unit is in 0.001 kg-m^2.

11-02	✎ ASR1/ASR2 switch frequency	
		Factory setting: 7.00
	Settings	5.00–600.00 Hz

11-03	✎ ASR1 low-speed bandwidth	
		Factory setting: 10
	Settings	1–40 Hz (IM)/1–100 Hz (PM)

11-04	✎ ASR2 high-speed bandwidth	
		Factory setting: 10
	Settings	1–40 Hz (IM)/1–100 Hz (PM)

11-05	✎ Zero-speed bandwidth	
		Factory setting: 10
	Settings	1–40 Hz (IM)/1–100 Hz (PM)

NOTES

- After estimating inertia and set Pr. 11-00 to bit 0 = 1 (auto tuning), user can adjust parameters Pr. 11-03, 11-04 and 11-05 separately by speed response. The larger number you set, the faster response you will get. Pr. 11-02 is the switch frequency for low-speed/ high-speed bandwidth.
- Position control pulse command (MIx = 37) and P2P position control Kp gain can adjust Pr. 11-05. The higher the value, the lower the steady-state error.

11-06	✎ ASR (Auto Speed Regulation) control (P) 1	
		Factory setting: 10
	Settings	0–40 Hz (IM)/1–100 Hz (PM)

11-07	✎ ASR (Auto Speed Regulation) control (P) 1	
		Factory setting: 0.100
	Settings	0.000–10.000 sec

11-08	✎ ASR (Auto Speed Regulation) control (PI) 2	
		Factory setting: 10
	Settings	0–40 Hz (IM)/0–100 Hz (PM)

11-09	✎ ASR (Auto Speed Regulation) control (I) 2	
		Factory setting: 0.100
	Settings	0.000–10.000 sec

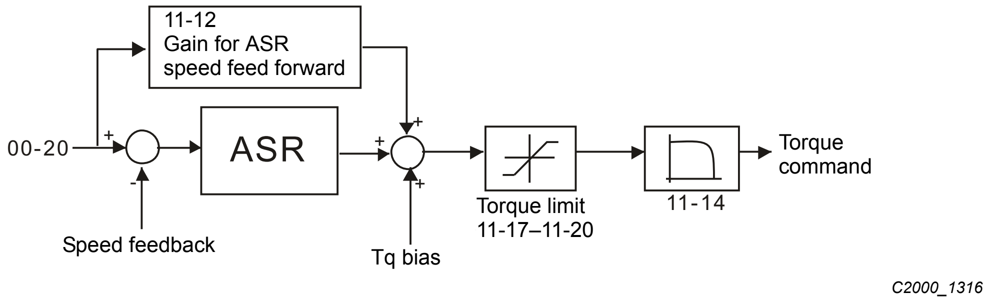
11-10	✎ ASR (Auto Speed Regulation) control (P) of zero speed	
		Factory setting: 10
	Settings	0–40 Hz (IM)/0–100 Hz (PM)

11-11	✎ ASR (Auto Speed Regulation) control (I) of zero speed	
		Factory setting: 0.100
	Settings	0.000–10.000 sec

11-12	✎ Gain for ASR speed feed forward	
		Factory setting: 0
	Settings	0–150 %

NOTE

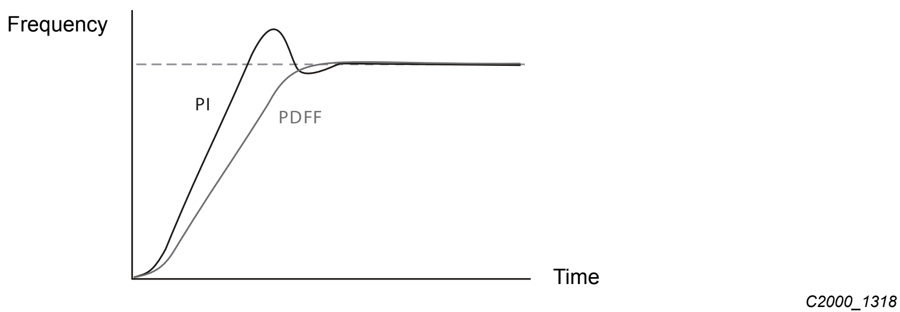
This parameter is used to improve speed response.



11-13	✎ PDFF gain value	
		Factory setting: 30
	Settings	0–200 %

NOTES

- After finishing estimating and set Pr. 11-00 to bit 0 = 1 (auto tuning), using Pr. 11-13 to reduce overshoot. Please adjust PDFF gain value by actual situation.
- This parameter will be invalid when Pr. 05-24 is set to 1.



11-14 ⌿ Low-pass filter time of ASR output

Factory setting: 0.008

Settings	0.000–0.350 sec

NOTE

It is used to set the filter time of ASR command.

11-15 ⌿ Notch filter depth

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0–20 db

11-16 ⌿ Notch filter frequency

Factory setting: 0.00

Settings	0.00–200.00 Hz

NOTES

- This parameter is used to set resonance frequency of mechanical system. It can be used to suppress the resonance of mechanical system.
- The larger number you set Pr. 11-15, the better suppression resonance function you will get.
- The notch filter frequency is the resonance of mechanical frequency.

11-17 ⌿ Forward motor torque limit
11-18 ⌿ Forward regenerative torque limit
11-19 ⌿ Reverse motor limit
11-20 ⌿ Reverse regenerative torque limit

Factory setting: 500

Settings	0–500 %

NOTES

- The motor drive rated current is 100 %. The settings for Pr. 11-17 to Pr. 11-20 will compare with Pr. 03-00 = 7, 8, 9, 10. The minimum of the comparison result will be torque limit. Please refer the chart as below.
- Calculation equation for motor rated torque:

$$\text{Motor rated torque} = T\,(N.M) = \frac{P\,(W)}{\varpi\,(rad/s)} \qquad P\,(W) \text{ value} = \text{Pr. } 05\text{-}02;$$

$$\varpi\,(rad/s) \text{ value} = \text{Pr. } 05\text{-}03 \ \frac{RPM \times 2\pi}{60} = rad/s$$

- FOCPG and FOC sensor-less control mode
  The drive rated current = 100 %. The setting value of parameters Pr. 11-17–Pr. 11-20 will compare to Pr. 03-00 = 7, 8, 9 and 10. The smallest value will become the torque limit value. Please refer to the torque limit diagram.
- TQCPG and TQC Sensor-less control mode
  The drive rated current = 100 %. The setting value of parameters Pr. 11-17–Pr. 11-20 will compare to Pr. 06-12. The smallest value will become the torque limit value.
- VF, VFPG and SVC control mode
  The Pr. 11-17–Pr. 11-20 are output current limit and its 100 % = drive rated current. The smallest value between the Pr. 11-17–Pr. 11-20 and Pr. 06-12 will become output current limit. If the output current has reach this limit during acceleration or normal running, drive will enable "over current stall" function. Until the output frequence drops to limit value, drive can run normally.

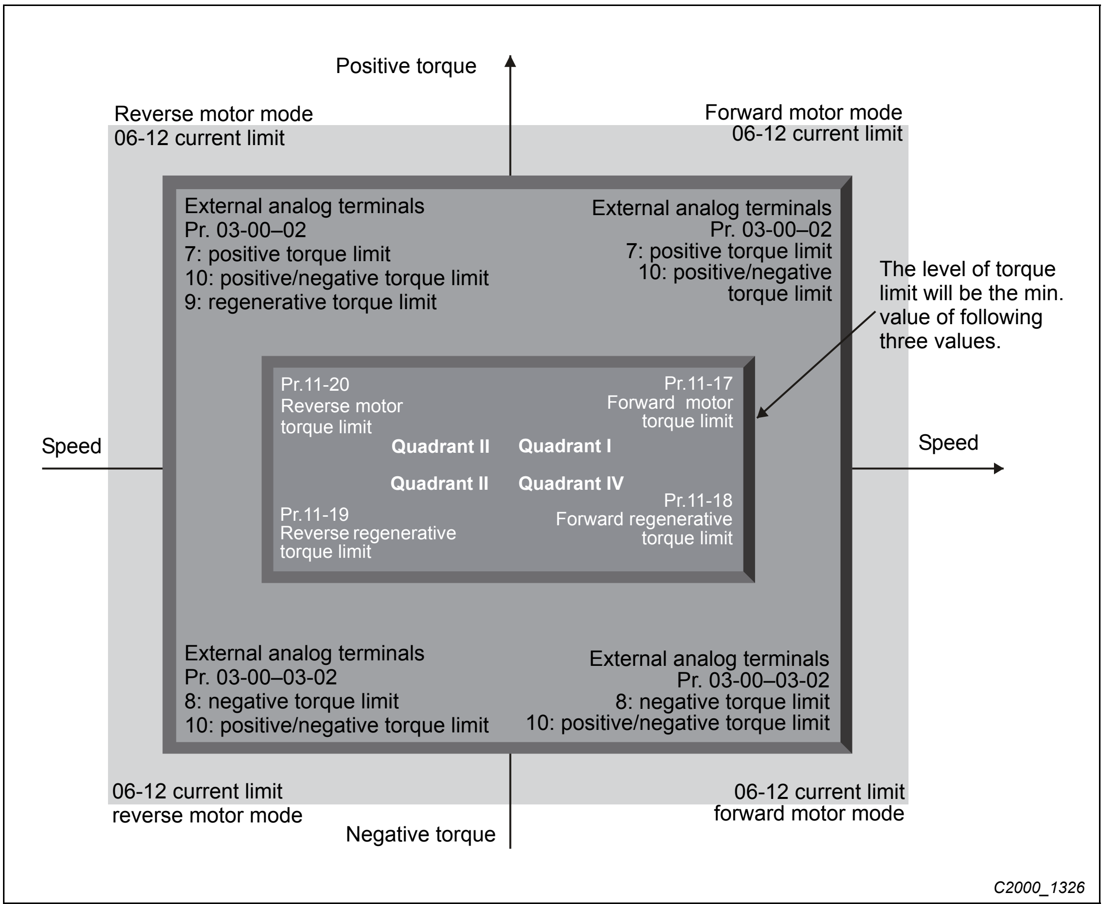


Fig. 12-78: Torque limiting in forward and reverse mode

11-21	✓ Gain value of flux weakening curve for motor 1

Factory setting: 90

Settings	0–200 %

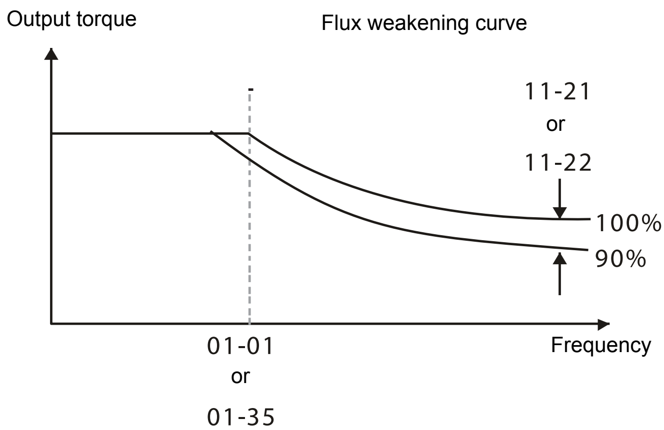
11-22	✓ Gain value of flux weakening curve for motor 2

Factory setting: 90

Settings	0–200 %

NOTES

- Pr. 11-21 and 11-22 are used to adjust the output voltage of flux weakening curve.
- For the spindle application, the adjustment method is
  - It is used to adjust the output voltage when exceeding rated frequency.
  - Monitor the output voltage
  - Adjust Pr. 11-21 (motor 1) or Pr. 11-22 (motor 2) setting to make the output voltage reach motor rated voltage.
  - The larger number it is set, the larger output voltage you will get.



C2000_1329

11-23	✓ Speed response of flux weakening area

Factory setting: 65

Settings	0: Disable 0–150 %

NOTE

It is used to control the speed in the flux weakening area. The larger value is set in Pr. 11-23, the faster acceleration/deceleration will generate. In general, it is not necessary to adjust this parameter.

11-24 ✎ APR gain

Factory setting: 10.00

Settings	0.00–40.00 (IM)/0–100.00 Hz (PM)

NOTE

Kip gain of internal position (MI = 35)

11-25 ✎ Gain value of APR feed forward

Factory setting: 30

Settings	0–100

NOTE

It works only for internal position (MI = 35) and position control pulse command (MI = 37). To set a larger value in Pr. 11-25, it can shorten the pulse differential and speed up the position response. But it may cause overshoot.

11-26 ✎ APR curve time

Factory setting: 3.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 sec

NOTE

It is valid when the multi-function input terminal is set to 35 (ON). The larger it is set, the longer the position time will be.

11-27 ✎ Max. torque command

Factory setting: 100

Settings	0–500 %

NOTES

- The upper limit of torque command is 100 %.
- Calculation equation for motor rated torque:

$$\text{Motor rated torque} = T\,(\text{N.M}) = \frac{P\,(\text{W})}{\varpi\,(\text{rad/s})} \qquad P\,(\text{W})\text{ value} = \text{Pr. 05-02;}$$

$$\varpi\,(\text{rad/s})\text{ value} = \text{Pr. 05-03}\ \frac{\text{RPM} \times 2\pi}{60} = \text{rad/s}$$

11-28 ✎ Source of torque offset

Factory setting: 0

Settings
0: Disable
1: Analog input (Pr. 03-00–Pr. 03-02)
2: Torque offset setting (Pr. 11-29)
3: Control by external terminal (by Pr. 11-30 to Pr. 11-32)

NOTES

- This parameter is the source of torque offset.
- When it is set to 3, source of torque offset would determine to follow Pr. 11-30, Pr. 11-31 or Pr. 11-32 as command by the combination of MI setting as 31, 32 or 33. Please refer following char:

N.O. switch status: ON = contact closed, OFF = contact open

Pr. 11-32	Pr. 11-31	Pr. 11-30	
MI=33(Low)	MI=32(Mid)	MI=31(High)	Torque Offset
OFF	OFF	OFF	None
OFF	OFF	ON	11-30
OFF	ON	OFF	11-31
OFF	ON	ON	11-30+11-31
ON	OFF	OFF	11-32
ON	OFF	ON	11-30+11-32
ON	ON	OFF	11-31+11-32
ON	ON	ON	11-30+11-31+11-32

11-29 ✎ Torque offset setting

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings -100.0 %–100.0 %

NOTES

- This parameter is torque offset. The motor rated torque is 100 %.
- Calculation equation for motor rated torque:

$$\text{Motor rated torque} = T\,(\text{N.M}) = \frac{P\,(\text{W})}{\varpi\,(\text{rad/s})} \qquad P\,(\text{W})\text{ value} = \text{Pr. 05-02;}$$

$$\varpi\,(\text{rad/s})\text{ value} = \text{Pr. 05-03} \quad \frac{\text{RPM} \times 2\pi}{60} = \text{rad/s}$$

11-30 ✎ High torque offset

Factory setting: 30.0

Settings -100.0%–100.0 %

11-31 ✎ Middle torque offset

Factory setting: 20.0

Settings -100.0%–100.0 %

11-32 ✎ Low torque offset

Factory setting: 10.0

Settings	-100.0 %–100.0 %

NOTES

- When Pr. 11-28 is set to 3, the source of torque offset will regard Pr. 11-30, Pr. 11-31 and Pr. 11-32 by the multi-function input terminals setting (31, 32 or 33). The motor rated torque is 100 %.
- Calculation equation for motor rated torque:

$$\text{Motor rated torque} = T\,(\text{N.M}) = \frac{P\,(\text{W})}{\varpi\,(\text{rad/s})} \qquad P\,(\text{W}) \text{ value} = \text{Pr. 05-02;}$$

$$\varpi\,(\text{rad/s}) \text{ value} = \text{Pr. 05-03} \quad \frac{\text{RPM} \times 2\pi}{60} = \text{rad/s}$$

11-33 ✎ Source of torque command

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Digital keypad (Pr. 11-34) 1: RS485 serial communication 2: Analog signal (Pr. 03-00) 3: CANopen 4: Reserved 5: Communication card

NOTES

- When Pr. 11-33 is set to 0 or 1, torque command can be set in Pr. 11-34.
- When Pr. 11-33 is set to 2, 3, and 5, Pr. 11-34 would only display the torque command.

11-34 ✎ Torque command

Factory setting: 0.0

Settings	-100.0–100.0 % (Pr. 11-27 = 100 %)

NOTES

- This parameter is for the torque command. When Pr. 11-27 is set to 250 % and Pr. 11-34 is set to 100 %, actual torque command = 250 x 100 % = 250 % motor rated torque.
- The drive will save the setting to the record before power turns off.

11-35 ✎ Low-pass filter time of torque command

Factory setting: 0.000

Settings	0.000–1.000 sec

NOTE

When the setting is too long, the control will be stable but the control response will be delay. When the setting is too short, the response will be quickly but the control maybe unstable. User can adjust the setting by the control and response situation.

11-36 Speed limit selection

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Set by Pr. 11-37 (forward speed limit) and Pr. 11-38 (reverse speed limit) 1: Set by Pr. 11-37,11-38 and Pr. 00-20 (source of master frequency command) 2: Set by Pr. 00-20 (source of master frequency command).

NOTES

- Speed limit function: in TQCPG, when the motor speed is accelerated to speed limit value (Pr. 11-36, 11-37 and 11-38), it will switch to speed control mode to stop acceleration.
- Pr. 11-36=1:
  When the torque command is positive, the forward speed limit is Pr. 00-20 and reverse speed limit is Pr. 11-38.
  When the torque command is negative, the forward speed limit is Pr. 11-37 and reverse speed limit is Pr. 00-20.
- Unwind application, Torque command direction is different to motor operating direction, this indicates that the motor is being load dragging. At this moment, the speed limit must be Pr. 11-37 or Pr. 11-38. When the torque command direction and speed limit have same direction, the speed limit will refer to the setting of Pr. 00-20.
- About the keypad display, please refer to the "LED function descriptions" in user manual chapter 10 "Digital Keypad". In torque control, F page of keypad display the present speed limit value.

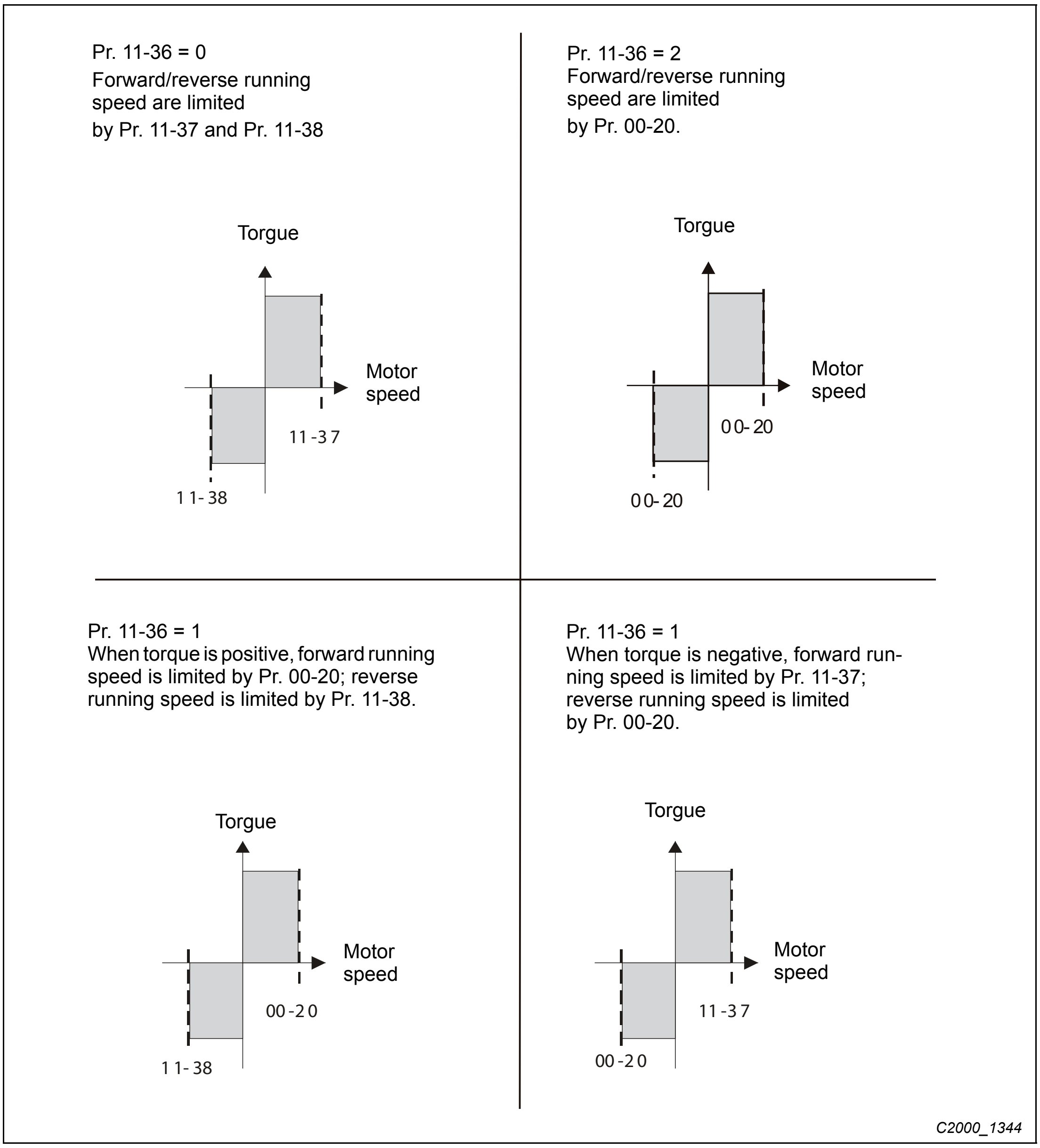


Fig. 12-79: Speed limiting in forward and reverse mode

11-37 Forward speed limit (torque mode)

Factory setting: 10

Settings	0–120 %

11-38 Reverse speed limit (torque mode)

Factory setting: 10

Settings	0–120 %

NOTE These parameters are used in the torque mode to limit the running direction and opposite direction. (Pr. 01-00 max. output frequency = 100 %)

11-39 ⌿ Zero torque command mode

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: Torque mode 1: Speed mode

- This parameter only works in TQCPG IM and TQCPG PM, and it defines the mode when speed limit is 0 % or 0 Hz.
- When Pr. 11-39 is set as 0 (the torque mode), and speed limit is 0 % or 0 Hz, the motor will generate excitation current but no torque current.
- When Pr. 11-39 is set as 1 (the speed mode), if torque command is 0 % and speed limit is 0 Hz, the can still produce torque current through speed controller (at this moment, the torque limit is Pr. 06-12) and the control mode will change from TQCPG to FOCPG mode. The motor will have a holding torque. If the speed command is not 0, motor drive will change to be 0.

11-40 ⌿ Command source of point-to-point position control

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: External terminal 1: Reserved 2: RS485 3: CAN 4: PLC 5: Communication card

11-41 Reserved
11-42 ⌿ System control flag

Factory setting: 0000

Settings	0000–FFFFh

Bit No.	Function	Description
0	Current limit selection of speed control at torque mode	0: Speed control at torque mode, the highest current limit is torque command. 1: Speed control at torque mode, the highest current limit is Pr. 06-12
1	FWD/REV action control	0: FWD/REV cannot be controlled by 02-12 bit 0 & 1 1: FWD/REV can be controlled by 02-12 bit 0 & 1
2–15	Reserved	

Tab. 12-20: Functions of bits from Pr. 11-42

11-43 ⌿ Max.frequency of point-to-point position control

Factory setting: 10.00

Settings	0.00–600.00 Hz

11-44	⌁ Accel. time of point-to-point position control

Factory setting: 1.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 sec

11-45	⌁ Decel. time of point-to-point position control

Factory setting: 3.00

Settings	0.00–655.35 sec

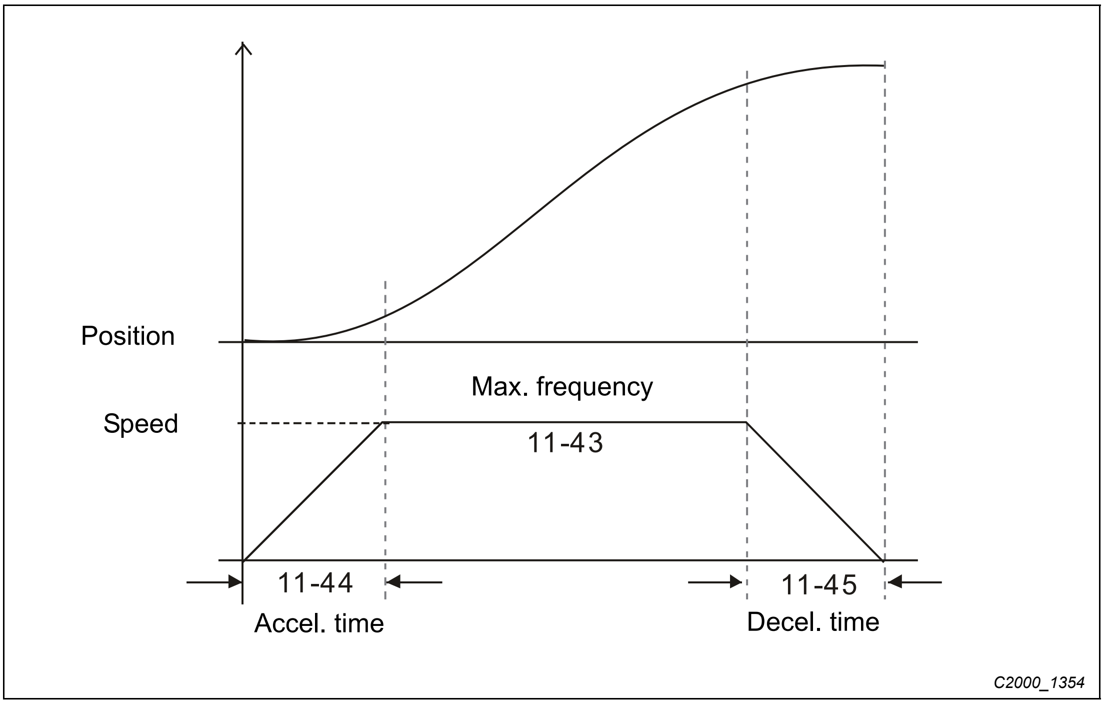
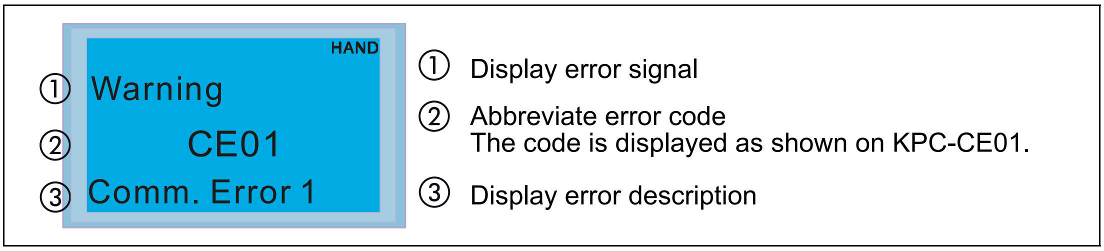


Fig. 12-80: Accelleration and deceleration time for point-to-point positioning

13 Warning Codes



C2000_1562

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
1	HAND Warning CE01 Comm. Error 1	Modbus function code error
2	HAND Warning CE02 Comm. Error 2	Address of Modbus data is error
3	HAND Warning CE03 Comm. Error 3	Modbus data error
4	HAND Warning CE04 Comm. Error 4	Modbus communication error
5	HAND Warning CE10 Comm. Error 10	Modbus transmission time-out
6	HAND Warning CP10 Keypad time out	Keypad transmission time-out
7	HAND Warning SE1 Save Error 1	Keypad COPY error 1 Keypad simulation error, including communication delays, communication error (keypad recived error FF86) and parameter value error.

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (1)

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
8	HAND Warning SE2 Save Error 2	Keypad COPY error 2 Keypad simulation done, parameter write error
9	HAND Warning oH1 Over heat 1 warn	IGBT over-heating warning
10	HAND Warning oH2 Over heat 2 warn	Capacity over-heating warning
11	HAND Warning PID PID FBK Error	PID feedback error
12	HAND Warning ANL Analog loss	ACI signal error When Pr03-19 is set to 1 and 2.
13	HAND Warning uC Under Current	Low current
14	HAND Warning AUE Auto-tune error	Auto tuning error
15	HAND Warning PGFB PG FBK Warn	PG feedback error
16	HAND Warning PGL PG Loss Warn	PG feedback loss

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (2)

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
17	HAND Warning oSPD Over Speed Warn	Over-speed warning
18	HAND Warning DAvE Deviation Warn	Speed deviation to high
19	HAND Warning PHL Phase Loss	Phase loss
20	HAND Warning ot1 Over Torque 1	Over torque 1
21	HAND Warning ot2 Over Torque 2	Over torque 2
22	HAND Warning oH3 Motor Over Heat	Motor over-heating
24	HAND Warning oSL Over Slip Warn	Over slip
25	HAND Warning tUn Auto tuning	Auto tuning processing
28	HAND Warning OPHL Output PHL Warn	Output phase loss

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (3)

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
30	HAND Warning SE3 Copy Model Err 3	Keypad COPY error 3 Copy between two frequency inverters with different output power ranges.
36	HAND Warning CGdn Guarding T-out	CAN guarding time-out 1
37	HAND Warning CHbn Heartbeat T-out	CAN heartbeat time-out 2
38	HAND Warning CSYn SYNC T-out	CAN synchrony time-out
39	HAND Warning CbFn Can Bus Off	CAN bus off
40	HAND Warning CIdn CAN/S Idx exceed	CAN index error
41	HAND Warning CAdn CAN/S Addres set	CAN station address error
42	HAND Warning CFrn CAN/S FRAM fail	CAN memory error
43	HAND Warning CSdn SDO T-out	CAN SDO transmission time-out

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (4)

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
44	HAND Warning CSbn Buf Overflow	CAN SDO received register overflow
45	HAND Warning Cbtn Boot up fault	CAN boot up error
46	HAND Warning CPtn Error Protocol	CAN format error
47	HAND Warning Plra RTC Adjust	Adjust RTC
50	HAND Warning PLod Opposite Defect	PLC download error
51	HAND Warning PLSv Save mem defect	Save error of PLC download
52	HAND Warning PLdA Data defect	Data error during PLC operation
53	HAND Warning PLFn Function defect	Function code of PLC download error
54	HAND Warning PLor Buf overflow	PLC register overflow

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (5)

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
55	HAND Warning PLFF Function defect	Function code of PLC operation error
56	HAND Warning PLSn Check sum error	PLC checksum error
57	HAND Warning PLEd No end command	PLC end command is missing
58	HAND Warning PLCr PLC MCR error	PLC MCR command error
59	HAND Warning PLdF Download fail	PLC download fail
60	HAND Warning PLSF Scane time fail	PLC scan time exceed
61	HAND Warning PCGd CAN/M Guard err	CAN Master guarding error
62	HAND Warning PCbF CAN/M bus off	CAN Master bus off
63	HAND Warning PCnL CAN/M Node Lack	CAN Master node error

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (6)

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
64	HAND Warning PCCt CAN/M Cycle Time	CAN/M cycle time-out
65	HAND Warning PCSF CAN/M SDO over	CAN/M SDOover
66	HAND Warning PCSd CAN/M Sdo Tout	CAN/M SDO time-out
67	HAND Warning PCAd CAN/M Addres set	CAN/M station address error
68	HAND Warning PCTo CAN/M T-Out	PLC/CAN Master Slave communication time out
70	HAND Warning ECid ExCom ID failed	Duplicate MAC ID error Node address setting error
71	HAND Warning ECLv ExCom pwr loss	Low voltage of communication card
72	HAND Warning ECtt ExCom Test Mode	Communication card in test mode
73	HAND Warning ECbF ExCom Bus off	DeviceNet bus-off

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (7)

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
74	HAND Warning ECnP ExCom No power	DeviceNet no power
75	HAND Warning ECFF ExCom Facty def	Factory default setting error
76	HAND Warning ECiF ExCom Inner err	Serious internal error
77	HAND Warning ECio ExCom IONet brk	IO connection break off
78	HAND Warning ECPP ExCom Pr data	Profibus parameter data error
79	HAND Warning ECPi ExCom Conf data	Profibus configuration data error
80	HAND Warning ECEF ExCom Link fail	Ethernet Link fail
81	HAND Warning ECto ExCom Inr T-out	Communication time-out for communication card and drive
82	HAND Warning ECCS ExCom Inr CRC	Check sum error for Communication card and drive

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (8)

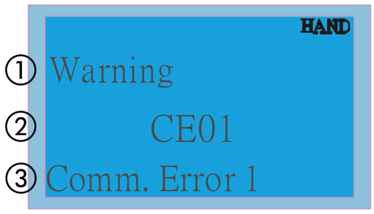
ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
83	HAND Warning ECrF ExCom Rtn def	Communication card returns to default setting
84	HAND Warning ECo0 ExCom MTCP over	Modbus TCP exceed maximum communication value
85	HAND Warning ECo1 ExCom EIP over	EtherNet/IP exceed maximum communication value
86	HAND Warning ECiP ExCom IP fail	IP fail
87	HAND Warning EC3F ExCom Mail fail	Mail fail
88	HAND Warning Ecby ExCom Busy	Communication card busy
90	HAND Warning CPLP Copy PLC PassWd	Copy PLC password error
91	HAND Warning CPL0 Copy PLC Mode Rd	Copy PLC Read mode error
92	HAND Warning CPL1 Copy PLC Mode Wt	Copy PLC Write mode error

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (9)

ID No.	Display on LCM Keypad	Descriptions
93	HAND Warning CPLv Copy PLC Version	Copy PLC Version error
94	HAND Warning CPLS Copy PLC Size	Copy PLC Capacity size error
96	HAND Warning CPLt Copy PLC Time Out	Copy PLC time out
101	HAND Warning ictn InrCOM Time Out	Internal communication is off

Tab. 13-1: Warning Codes (10)

14 Fault Codes and Descriptions



① Display error signal

② Abbreviate error code
The code is displayed as shown on KPC-CE01.

③ Display error description

C2000_1562

* Refer to setting of Pr06-17–Pr06–22.

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
1	HAND Fault ocA Oc at accel	Over-current during acceleration (Output current exceeds triple rated current during acceleration.)	1 Short-circuit at motor output: Check for possible poor insulation at the output. 2 Acceleration Time too short: Increase the Acceleration Time. 3 AC motor drive output power is too small: Replace the AC motor drive with the next higher power model.
2	HAND Fault ocd Oc at decel	Over-current during deceleration (Output current exceeds triple rated current during deceleration.)	1 Short-circuit at motor output: Check for possible poor insulation at the output. 2 Deceleration Time too short: Increase the Deceleration Time. 3 AC motor drive output power is too small: Replace the AC motor drive with the next higher power model.
3	HAND Fault ocn Oc at normal SPD	Over-current during steady state operation (Output current exceeds triple rated current during constant speed.)	1 Short-circuit at motor output: Check for possible poor insulation at the output. 2 Sudden increase in motor loading: Check for possible motor stall. 3 AC motor drive output power is too small: Replace the AC motor drive with the next higher power model.
4	HAND Fault GFF Ground fault	Ground fault	When (one of) the output terminal(s) is grounded, short circuit current is more than 50 % of AC motor drive rated current, the AC motor drive power module may be damaged. NOTE: The short circuit protection is provided for AC motor drive protection, not for protecting the user. 1 Check the wiring connections between the AC motor drive and motor for possible short circuits, also to ground. 2 Check whether the IGBT power module is damaged. 3 Check for possible poor insulation at the output.
5	HAND Fault occ Short Circuit	Short-circuit is detected between upper bridge and lower bridge of the IGBT module	Return to the factory
6	HAND Fault ocS Oc at stop	Hardware failure in current detection	Return to the factory

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (1)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
7	HAND Fault ovA Ov at accel	DC BUS over-voltage during acceleration (230 V: DC 450 V; 460 V: DC 900 V)	1 Check if the input voltage falls within the rated AC motor drive input voltage range. 2 Check for possible voltage transients. 3 If DC BUS over-voltage due to regenerative voltage, please increase the acceleration time or add an optional brake resistor.
8	HAND Fault ovd Ov at decel	DC BUS over-voltage during deceleration (230 V: DC 450 V; 460 V: DC 900 V)	1 Check if the input voltage falls within the rated AC motor drive input voltage range. 2 Check for possible voltage transients. 3 If DC BUS over-voltage due to regenerative voltage, please increase the Deceleration Time or add an optional brake resistor.
9	HAND Fault ovn Ov at normal SPD	DC BUS over-voltage at constant speed (230 V: DC 450 V; 460 V: DC 900 V)	1 Check if the input voltage falls within the rated AC motor drive input voltage range. 2 Check for possible voltage transients. 3 If DC BUS over-voltage due to regenerative voltage, please increase the Deceleration Time or add an optional brake resistor.
10	HAND Fault ovS Ov at stop	Hardware failure in voltage detection	1 Check if the input voltage falls within the rated AC motor drive input voltage range. 2 Check for possible voltage transients.
11	HAND Fault LvA Lv at accel	DC BUS voltage is less than Pr.06-00 during acceleration	1 Check if the input voltage is normal 2 Check for possible sudden load
12	HAND Fault Lvd Lv at decel	DC BUS voltage is less than Pr.06-00 during deceleration	1 Check if the input voltage is normal 2 Check for possible sudden load
13	HAND Fault Lvn Lv at normal SPD	DC BUS voltage is less than Pr.06-00 in constant speed	1 Check if the input voltage is normal 2 Check for possible sudden load
14	HAND Fault LvS Lv at stop	DC BUS voltage is less than Pr.06-00 at stop	1 Check if the input voltage is normal 2 Check for possible sudden load
15	HAND Fault OrP Phase lacked	Phase Loss	Check Power Source Input if all 3 input phases are connected without loose contacts. For models 40 hp and above, please check if the fuse for the AC input circuit is blown.
16	HAND Fault oH1 IGBT over heat	IGBT overheating IGBT temperature exceeds protection level	1 Ensure that the ambient temperature falls within the specified temperature range. 2 Make sure that the ventilation holes are not obstructed. 3 Remove any foreign objects from the heatsinks and check for possible dirty heat sink fins. 4 Check the fan and clean it. 5 Provide enough spacing for adequate ventilation.

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (2)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
17	HAND Fault oH2 Heat Sink oH	Heatsink overheating Capacitance temperature exceeds cause heatsink overheating.	1 Ensure that the ambient temperature falls within the specified temperature range. 2 Make sure heat sink is not obstructed. Check if the fan is operating 3 Check if there is enough ventilation clearance for AC motor drive.
18	HAND Fault tH1o Thermo 1 open	IGBT Hardware Error	Return to the factory
19	HAND Fault tH2o Thermo 2 open	Capacitor Hardware Error	Return to the factory
21	HAND Fault oL Over load	Overload The AC motor drive detects excessive drive output current.	1 Check if the motor is overloaded. 2 Take the next higher power AC motor drive model.
22	HAND Fault EoL1 Thermal relay 1	Electronics thermal relay 1 protection	1 Check the setting of electronics thermal relay (Pr.06-14) 2 Take the next higher power AC motor drive model
23	HAND Fault EoL2 Thermal relay 2	Electronics thermal relay 2 protection	1 Check the setting of electronics thermal relay (Pr.06-28) 2 Take the next higher power AC motor drive model
24	HAND Fault oH3 Motor over heat	Motor overheating The AC motor drive detecting internal temperature exceeds the setting of Pr.06-30 (PTC level) or Pr.06-57 (PT100 level 2).	1 Make sure that the motor is not obstructed. 2 Ensure that the ambient temperature falls within the specified temperature range. 3 Change to a higher power motor.
26	HAND Fault ot1 Over torque 1	These two fault codes will be displayed when output current exceeds the over-torque detection level (Pr.06-07 or Pr.06-10) and exceeds over-torque detection (Pr.06-08 or Pr.06-11) and it is set to 2 or 4 in Pr.06-06 or Pr.06-09.	1 Check whether the motor is overloaded. 2 Check whether motor rated current setting (Pr.05-01) is suitable 3 Take the next higher power AC motor drive model.
27	HAND Fault ot2 Over torque 2		
28	HAND Fault uC Under torque	Low current detection	Check Pr.06-71, Pr.06-72, Pr.06-73.

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (3)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
29	HAND Fault LMIT Limit Error	Limit error	
30	HAND Fault cF1 EEPROM write err	Internal EEPROM can not be programmed.	1 Press “RESET” key to the factory setting 2 Return to the factory.
31	HAND Fault cF2 EEPROM read err	Internal EEPROM can not be read.	1 Press “RESET” key to the factory setting 2 Return to the factory.
33	HAND Fault cd1 Ias sensor err	U-phase error	Reboots the power. If fault code is still displayed on the keypad please return to the factory
34	HAND Fault cd2 Ibs sensor err	V-phase error	Reboots the power. If fault code is still displayed on the keypad please return to the factory
35	HAND Fault cd3 Ics sensor err	W-phase error	Reboots the power. If fault code is still displayed on the keypad please return to the factory
36	HAND Fault Hd0 cc HW error	CC (current clamp)	Reboots the power. If fault code is still displayed on the keypad please return to the factory
37	HAND Fault Hd1 Oc HW error	OC hardware error	Reboots the power. If fault code is still displayed on the keypad please return to the factory
38	HAND Fault Hd2 Ov HW error	OV hardware error	Reboots the power. If fault code is still displayed on the keypad please return to the factory
39	HAND Fault Hd3 occ HW error	Occ hardware error	Reboots the power. If fault code is still displayed on the keypad please return to the factory

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (4)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
40	HAND Fault AUE Auto tuning err	Auto tuning error	1 Check cabling between drive and motor 2 Try again.
41	HAND Fault AFE PID Fbk error	PID loss (ACI)	1 Check the wiring of the PID feedback 2 Check the PID parameters settings
42	HAND Fault PGF1 PG Fbk error	PG feedback error	Check if encoder parameter setting is accurate when it is PG feedback control.
43	HAND Fault PGF2 PG Fbk loss	PG feedback loss	Check the wiring of the PG feedback
44	HAND Fault PGF3 PG Fbk over SPD	PG feedback stall	1 Check the wiring of the PG feedback 2 Check if the setting of PI gain and deceleration is suitable 3 Return to the factory
45	HAND Fault PGF4 PG Fbk deviate	PG slip error	1 Check the wiring of the PG feedback 2 Check if the setting of PI gain and deceleration is suitable 3 Return to the factory
46	HAND Fault PGr1 PG Ref error	Pulse input error	1 Check the pulse wiring 2 Return to the factory
47	HAND Fault PGr2 PG Ref loss	Pulse input loss	1 Check the pulse wiring 2 Return to the factory
48	HAND Fault ACE ACI loss	ACI loss	1 Check the ACI wiring 2 Check if the ACI signal is less than 4mA
49	HAND Fault EF External fault	External Fault	1 Input EF (N.O.) on external terminal is closed to GND. Output U, V, W will be turned off. 2 Give RESET command after fault has been cleared.

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (5)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
50	HAND Fault EF1 Emergency stop	Emergency stop	1 When the multi-function input terminals MI1 to MI6 are set to emergency stop, the AC motor drive stops output U, V, W and the motor coasts to stop. 2 Press RESET after fault has been cleared.
51	HAND Fault bb Base block	External Base Block	1 When the external input terminal (B.B) is active, the AC motor drive output will be turned off. 2 Deactivate the external input terminal (B.B) to operate the AC motor drive again.
52	HAND Fault Pcod Password error	Password is locked.	Keypad will be locked. Turn the power ON after power OFF to re-enter the correct password. See Pr.00-07 and 00-08.
54	HAND Fault CE1 PC err command	Illegal function code	Check if the function code is correct (function code must be 03, 06, 10, 63)
55	HAND Fault CE2 PC err address	Illegal data address (00H to 254H)	Check if the communication address is correct
56	HAND Fault CE3 PC err data	Illegal data value	Check if the data value exceeds max./min. value
57	HAND Fault CE4 PC slave fault	Data is written to read-only address	Check if the communication address is correct
58	HAND Fault CE10 PC time out	Modbus transmission time-out	
59	HAND Fault CP10 PU time out	Keypad transmission time-out	
60	HAND Fault bF Braking fault	Brake resistor fault	If the fault code is still displayed on the keypad after pressing “RESET” key, please return to the factory.

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (6)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
61	HAND Fault ydc Y-delta connect	Y-connection/Δ-connection switch error	1 Check the wiring of the Y-connection/ Δ-connection 2 Check the parameters settings
62	HAND Fault dEb Dec. Energy back	When Pr.07-13 is not set to 0 and momentary power off or power cut, it will display dEb during accel./decel. stop.	1 Set Pr.07-13 to 0 2 Check if input power is stable
63	HAND Fault oSL Over slip error	It will be displayed when slip exceeds Pr.07-29 setting and time exceeds Pr.07-30 setting.	1 Check if motor parameter is correct (please decrease the load if overload 2 Check the settings of Pr.07-29 and Pr.07-30
64	HAND Fault ryF MC Fault	Electric valve switch error when executing Soft Start. (This warning is for frame E and higher frame of AC drives) Do not disconnect RST when drive is still operating.	
65	HAND Fault PGF5 PG HW Error	Hardware error of PG Card Check if PG Card is insert to the right slot and parameter settings for encoder are accurate.	
68	HAND Fault SdRv SpdFbk Dir Rev	Rotaing direction is different from the commanding direction deteced by the sensorless. Solution Verify if the parameter setting of the motor drive is correct Increase the estimator's bandwidth and verify if parameters relating to the sensorless are correct.	
69	HAND Fault SdOr SpdFbk over SPD	Overspeed rotation detected by the sensorless Solution Verify if the parameter setting of the motor drive is correct Increase the estimator's bandwidth and verify if parameters relating to the sensorless are correct. Verify if the gains of the speed circuit is reasonable.	
70	HAND Fault SdDe SpdFbk deviate	Big difference between the rotating speed and the command deteced by the sensorless Solution Verify if the parameter setting of the motor drive is correct Increase the estimator's bandwidth and verify if parameters relating to the sensorless are correct. Verify if the gains of the speed circuit is reasonable.	
72	HAND Fault STOL STO Loss 1	STO1–SCM1 internal hardware detect error	
73	HAND Fault S1 S1-emergy stop	Emergency stop for external safety	

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (7)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
76	HAND Fault STO STO	Safety Torque Off function active	
77	HAND Fault STOL STO Loss 2	STO2–SCM2 internal hardware detect error	
78	HAND Fault STOL STO Loss 3	STO1–SCM1 and STO2–SCM2 internal hardware detect error	
79	HAND Fault Uoc U phase oc	Phase U short circuit	
80	HAND Fault Voc V phase oc	Phase V short circuit	
81	HAND Fault Woc W phase oc	W phase short circuit	
82	HAND Fault OPHL U phase lacked	Output phase loss (Phase U)	
83	HAND Fault OPHL V phase lacked	Output phase loss (Phase V)	
84	HAND Fault OPHL W phase lacked	Output phase loss (Phase W)	
85	HAND Fault AboF PG ABZ Line off	PG card ABZ signal loss Solution Verify if the parameter setting of PG card and PG card cable is correct.	

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (8)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
86	HAND Fault UvoF PG UVW Line off	PG card UVW signal loss	Solution Verify if the parameter setting of PG card and PG card cable is correct.
89	HAND Fault RoPd Rotor Pos. Error	Rotor position detection error	Solution Verify if the UVW output cable are loss. Verify if the motor internal coil is broken. Verify if the drive UVW output are normal.
90	HAND Fault Fstp For ce Stop	Internal PLC forced to stop	Verify the setting of Pr.00-32
101	HAND Fault CGdE Guarding T-out	CANopen® guarding error	
102	HAND Fault CHbE Heartbeat T-out	CANopen® heartbeat error	
103	HAND Fault CSYE SYNC T-out	CANopen® synchronous error	
104	HAND Fault CbFE Can bus off	CANopen® bus off error	
105	HAND Fault CIdE Can bus Index Err	CANopen® index error	
106	HAND Fault CAdE Can bus Add. Err	CANopen® station address error	
107	HAND Fault CFrE Can bus off	CANopen® memory error	

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (9)

ID*	Fault Name	Fault Descriptions	Corrective Actions
111	HAND Fault ictE InrCom Time Out	Internal communication time-out	
112	HAND Fault SfLK PMLess ShaftLock	Motor Shaft lock error(Motor does not turn but the output frequency is not zero) Solution Verify if the motor parameter setting is correct.	
113	HAND Fault SwOc Software OC	Software OC protection	

Tab. 14-1: Fault Codes and descriptions (10)

15 CANopen Overview

Built-in EMC-COP01 card is included in VFDXXXC23E/VFDXXXC43E models.

The built-in CANopen function is a kind of remote control. Master can control the by using CANopen protocol. CANopen is a CAN-based higher layer protocol. It provides standardized communication objects, including real-time data (Process Data Objects, PDO), configuration data (Service Data Objects, SDO), and special functions (Time Stamp, Sync message, and Emergency message). And it also has network management data, including Boot-up message, NMT message, and Error Control message. Refer to CiA website http://www.can-cia.org/ for details. The content of this instruction sheet may be revised without prior notice. Please consult our distributors or download the most updated version at http://www.delta.com.tw/industrialautomation.

NOTE

DELTA reserves the right to make technical changes of this manual at any time without special notification. The current version of this manual is available on the website http://www.delta.com.tw/industrialautomation for download.

Delta CANopen supporting functions:

- Support CAN2.0A Protocol;
- Support CANopen DS301 V4.02;
- Support DSP-402 V2.0.

Delta CANopen supporting services:

- PDO (Process Data Objects): PDO1– PDO4
- SDO (Service Data Object):
  - Initiate SDO Download;
  - Initiate SDO Upload;
  - Abort SDO;
  - SDO message can be used to configure the slave node and access the Object Dictionary in every node.
- SOP (Special Object Protocol):
  - Support default COB-ID in Predefined Master/Slave Connection Set in DS301 V4.02;
  - Support SYNC service;
  - Support Emergency service.
- NMT (Network Management):
  - Support NMT module control;
  - Support NMT Error control;
  - Support Boot-up.

Delta CANopen not supporting service:

- Time Stamp service

15.1 CANopen overview

15.1.1 CANopen protocol

CANopen is a CAN-based higher layer protocol, and was designed for motion-oriented machine control networks, such as handling systems. Version 4.02 of CANopen (CiA DS301) is standardized as EN 50325-4. The CANopen specifications cover application layer and communication profile (CiA DS301), as well as a framework for programmable devices (CiA 302), recommendations for cables and connectors (CiA 303-1) and SI units and prefix representations (CiA 303-2).

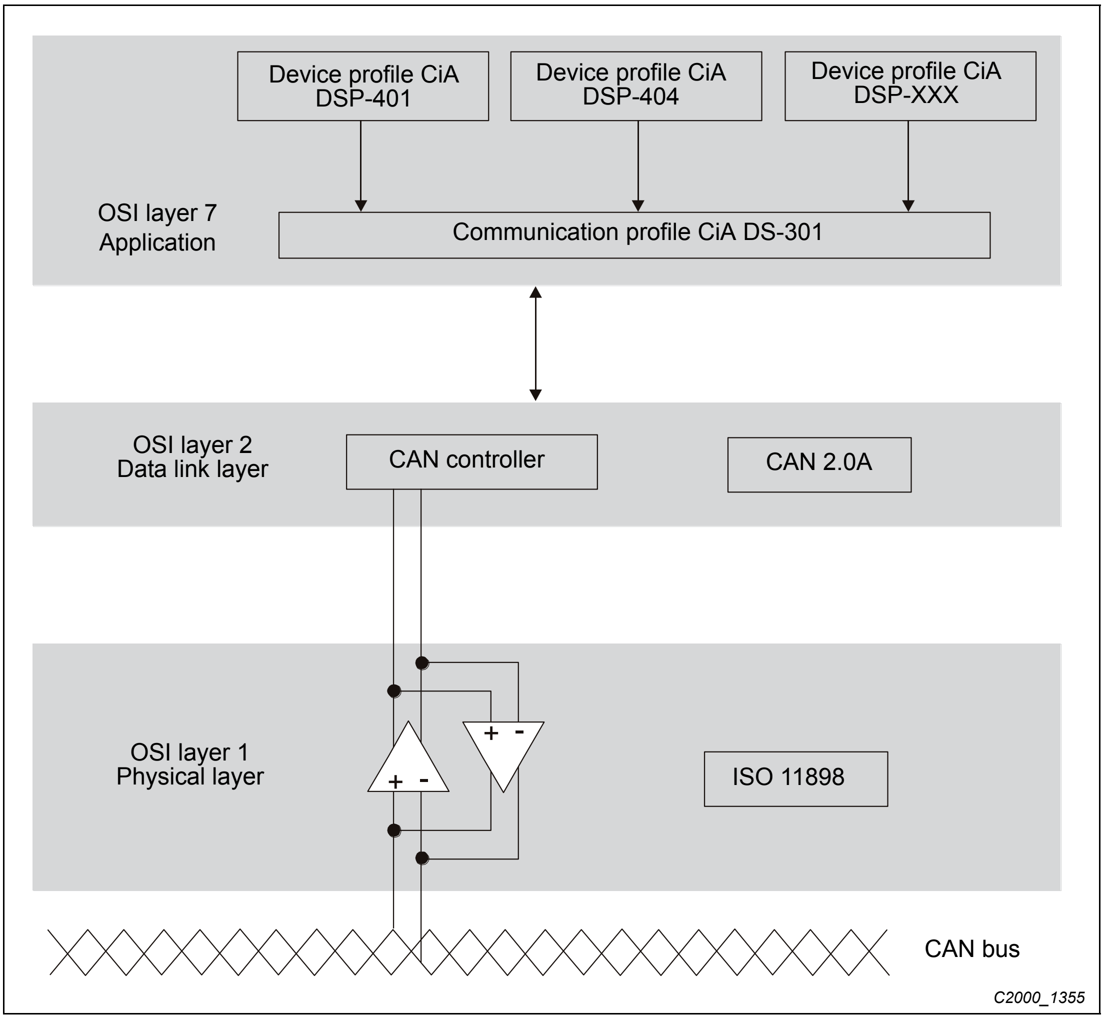


Fig. 15-1: CANopen structure®

15.1.2 CANopen communication protocol

It has services as follows:

- NMT (Network Management Object)
- SDO (Service Data Objects)
- PDO (Process Data Object)
- EMCY (Emergency Object)

NMT (Network Management Object)

The Network Management (NMT) follows a Master/Slave structure for executing NMT service. Only one NMT master is in a network, and other nodes are regarded as slaves. All CANopen nodes have a present NMT state, and NMT master can control the state of the slave nodes. The state diagram of a node is shown as follows:

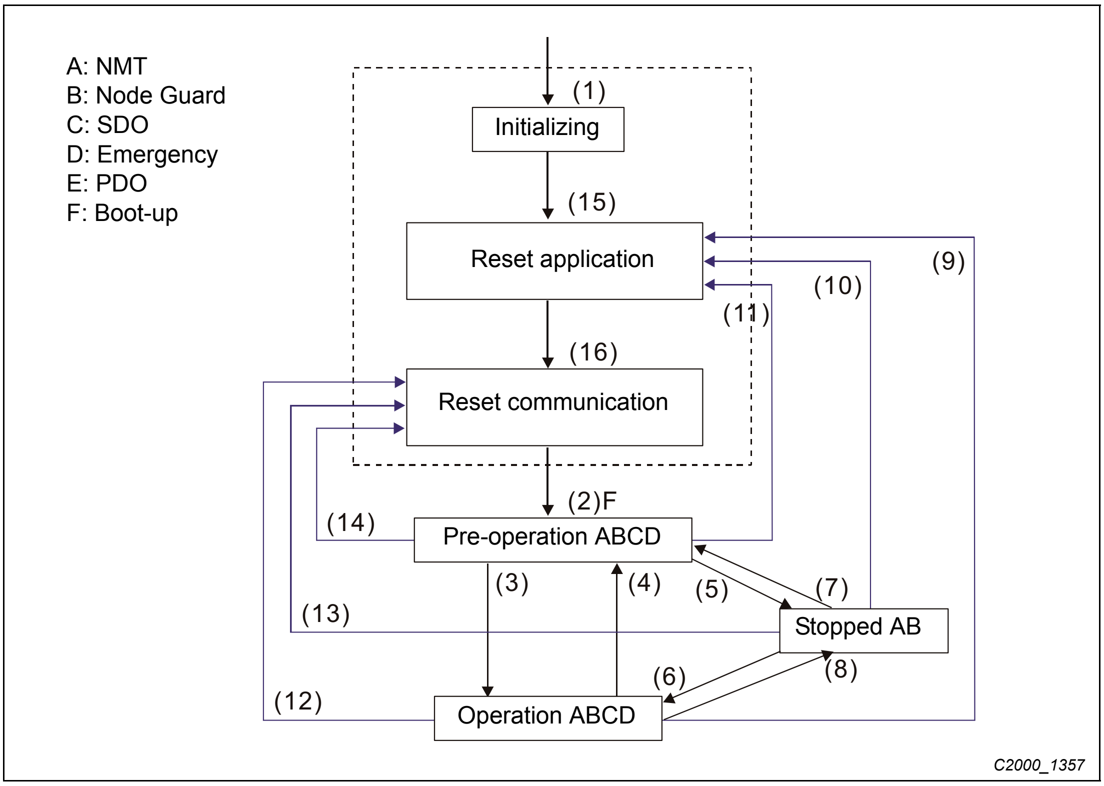


Fig. 15-2: NMT status diagram

❶ After power is applied, it is auto in initialization state

❷ Enter pre-operational state automatically

❸ and ❻: Start remote node

❹ and ❼: Enter pre-operational state

❺ and ❽: Stop remote node

❾, ❿ and ⓫: Reset node

⓬, ⓭ and ⓮: Reset communication

⓯ Enter reset application state automatically

⓰ Enter reset communication state automatically

	Initializing	Pre-operational	Operational	Stopped
PDO			●	
SDO		●	●	
SYNC		●	●	
Time Stamp		●	●	
EMCY		●	●	
Boot-up	●			
NMT		●	●	●

Tab. 15-1: Exchangeable communication objects

SDO (Service Data Objects)

SDO is used to access the Object Dictionary in every CANopen node by Client/Server model. One SDO has two COB-ID (request SDO and response SDO) to upload or download data between two nodes. No data limit for SDOs to transfer data. But it needs to transfer by segment when data exceeds 4 bytes with an end signal in the last segment.

The Object Dictionary (OD) is a group of objects in CANopen node. Every node has an OD in the system, and OD contains all parameters describing the device and its network behavior. The access path of OD is the index and sub-index, each object has a unique index in OD, and has sub-index if necessary.

PDO (Process Data Object)

PDO communication can be described by the producer/consumer model. Each node of the network will listen to the messages of the transmission node and distinguish if the message has to be processed or not after receiving the message. PDO can be transmitted from one device to one another device or to many other devices. Every PDO has two PDO services: a TxPDO and a RxPDO. PDOs are transmitted in a non-confirmed mode.

PDO Transmission type is defined in the PDO communication parameter index (1400h for the 1st RxPDO or 1800h for the 1st TxPDO), and all transmission types are listed in the following table:

Type Number	PDO*				
	Cyclic	Acyclic	Synchronous	Asynchronous	RTR only
0		●	●		
1-240①	●		●		
241-251			Reserved		
252②			●		●
253③				●	●
254④				●	
255⑤				●	

Tab. 15-2: Process data objects

① The type number indicates the number of SYNC message between two PDO transmissions.
② The type number indicates the data is updated (but not sent) immediately after receiving SYNC.
③ The type number indicates the data is updated immediately after receiving RTR.
④ The type number Delta CANopen doesn't support this transmission format.
⑤ The type number indicates the data is asynchronous transmission.
* All PDO transmission data must be mapped to index via Object Dictionary.

EMCY (Emergency Object)

When errors occurred inside the hardware, an emergency object will be triggered an emergency object will only be sent when an error is occurred. As long as there is nothing wrong with the hardware, there will be no emergency object to be served as a warning of an error message.

15.2 Wiring for CANopen

An external adapter card: EMC-COP01 is used for CANopen wiring to connect CANopen to VFD C2000. The link is enabled by using RJ45 cable. The two farthest ends must be terminated with 120 Ω terminating resistors.

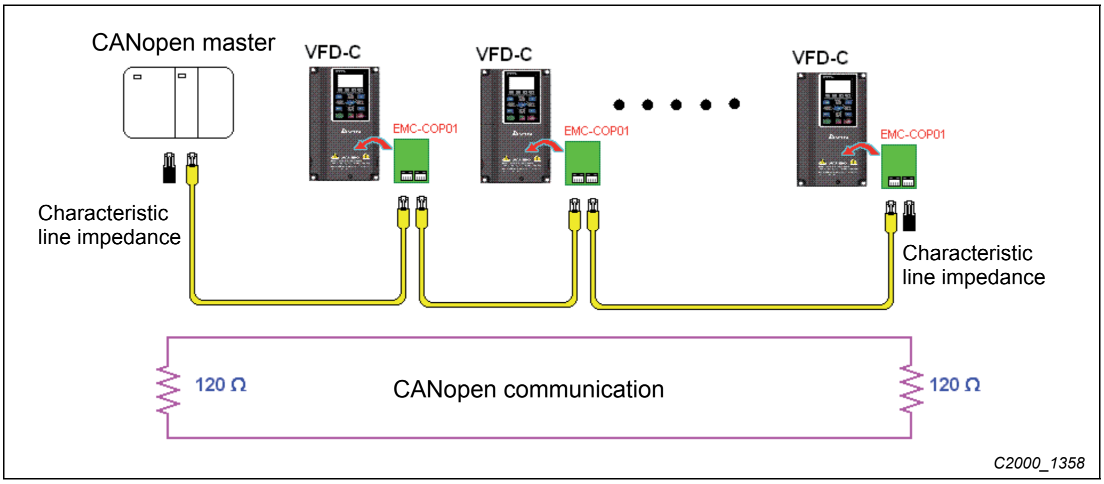
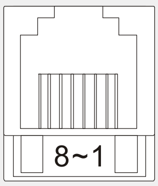


Fig. 15-3: Frequency inverter connection via CAN-Bus

RJ-45 pin definition

	PIN	Signal	Description
 plug	1	CAN_H	CAN_H bus line (dominant high)
	2	CAN_L	CAN_L bus line (dominant low)
	3	CAN_GND	Ground / 0V /V-
	6	CAN_GND	Ground / 0V /V-

Tab. 15-3: Pin assignment of the RJ45 sleeve for CAN-Bus connection

15.3 CANopen communication interface description

15.3.1 CANopen control mode selection

There are two control modes for CANopen; Pr. 09-40 set to 1 is the factory setting mode DS402 standard and Pr. 09-40 set to 0 is Delta's standard setting mode.

Actually, there are two control modes according to Delta's standard, one is the old control mode (Pr. 09-30 = 0). This control mode can only control the motor drive under frequency control. Another mode is a new standard (Pr. 09-30 = 1).

This new control mode allows the motor drive to be controlled under all sorts of mode. Currently, C2000 support speed, torque, position and home mode. The definition of relating control mode are:

CANopen control mode selection	Control mode							
	Speed		Torque		Position		Home	
	Index	Description	Index	Descrip-tion	Index	Descrip-tion	Index	Des-cription
DS402 standard Pr. 09-40 = 1	6042-00	Target rotating speed (RPM)	6071-00	Target torque (%)	607A-00	Target position	—	—
	—	—	6072-00	Max.torque limit (%)	—	—	—	—
Delta stand-ard (Old definition) Pr. 09-40 = 1, Pr. 09-30 = 0	2020-02	Target rotating speed (Hz)	—	—	—	—	—	—
Delta stand-ard (New definition) Pr. 09-40 = 0, Pr. 09-30 = 1	2060-03	Target rotating speed (Hz)	2060-07	Target torque (%)	2060-05	Target position	—	—
	2060-04	Torque limit (%)	2060-08	Speed limit (Hz)	—	—	—	—

Tab. 15-4: Indexes for target values and limits

CANopen control mode selection	Operation control	
	Index	Description
DS402 standard Pr. 09-40 = 1	6040-00	Operation command
	—	—
Delta standard (Old definition) Pr. 09-40 = 1, Pr. 09-30 = 0	2020-01	Operation command
Delta standard (New definition) Pr. 09-40 = 0, Pr. 09-30 = 1	2060-01	Operation command
	—	—

Tab. 15-5: Indexes for operation control instructions

CANopen control mode selection	Other	
	Index	Description
DS402 standard Pr. 09-40 = 1	605A-00	Quick stop processing mode
	605C-00	Disable operation processing mode
Delta standard (Old definition) Pr. 09-40 = 1, Pr. 09-30 = 0	—	—
Delta standard (New definition) Pr. 09-40 = 0, Pr. 09-30 = 1	—	—
	—	—

Tab. 15-6: Indexes for other instructions

NOTE

However, you can use some index regardless DS402 or Delta's standard.
For example:
- Index which are defined as RO attributes.
- Index correspond to parameters such as (2000–200B-XX)
- Accelerating/decelerating index: 604F and 6050

15.3.2 DS402 standard control mode

Related set up of (by following DS402 standard)

If you want to use DS402 standard to control the motor drive, please follow the steps below:

① Wiring for hardware (refer to chapter 15-2 Wiring for CANopen)

② Operation source setting: set Pr. 00-21 to 3 for CANopen communication card control.

③ Frequency source setting: set Pr. 00.20 to 6. (Choose source of frequency command from CANopen setting.)

④ Source of torque setting is set by Pr. 11-33. (Choose source of torque command from CANopen setting.)

⑤ Position source setting: set Pr. 11-40 (Choose source of position command from CANopen setting.)

⑥ Set DS402 as control mode: Pr. 09-40 = 1

⑦ CANopen station setting: set Pr. 09-36 (Range of setting is 1–127. When Pr. 09-36 = 0, CANopen slave function is disabled.) (Note: If error arise (CAdE or CANopen memory error) as station setting is completed, press Pr. 00-02 = 7 for reset.)

⑧ CANopen baud rate setting: set Pr. 09.37 (CANBUS Baud Rate: 1M(0), 500K(1), 250K(2), 125K(3), 100K(4) and 50K(5))

⑨ Set multiple input functions to Quick Stop (it can also be enable or disable, default setting is disable). If it is necessary to enable the function, set MI terminal to 53 in one of the following parameter: Pr. 02.01–Pr. 02.08 or Pr. 02.26–Pr. 02.31. (Note: This function is available in DS402 only.)

The status of the motor drive (by following DS402 standard)

According to the DS402 definition, the motor drive is divided into 3 blocks and 9 status as described below:

3 blocks

Power Disable: That means without PWM output.

Power Enable: That means with PWM output.

Fault: One or more than one error has occurred.

9 status

Start: Power On

Not ready to switch on: The motor drive is initiating.

Switch On Disable: When the motor drive finishes the initiation, it will be at this mode.

Ready to switch on: Warming up before running.

Switch On: The motor drive has the PWM output now, but the reference command is not effective.

Operate Enable: Able to control normally.

Quick Stop Active: When there is a Quick Stop request, you have to stop running the motor drive.

Fault Reaction Active: The motor drive detects conditions which might trigger error(s).

Fault: One or more errors has occurred to the motor drive.

Therefore, when the motor drive is turned on and finishes the initiation, it will remain at Ready to Switch on status. To control the operation of the motor drive, you need to change this status to Operate Enable status. The way to change it is to command the control word's bit 0–bit 3 and bit7 of the Index 6040H and to pair with Index Status Word (Status Word 0X6041). The control steps and index definition are described as below:

15–9	8	7	6–4	3	2	1	0
Reserved	Halt	Fault reset	Operation	Enable operation	Quick stop	Enable voltage	Switch ON

Tab. 15-7: Index 6040

15–14	13–12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved	Operation	Internal limit active	Target reached	Remote	Reserved	Warning	Switch on disabled	Quick stop	Voltage enabled	Fault	Operation enable	Switch on	Ready to switch on

Tab. 15-8: Index 6041

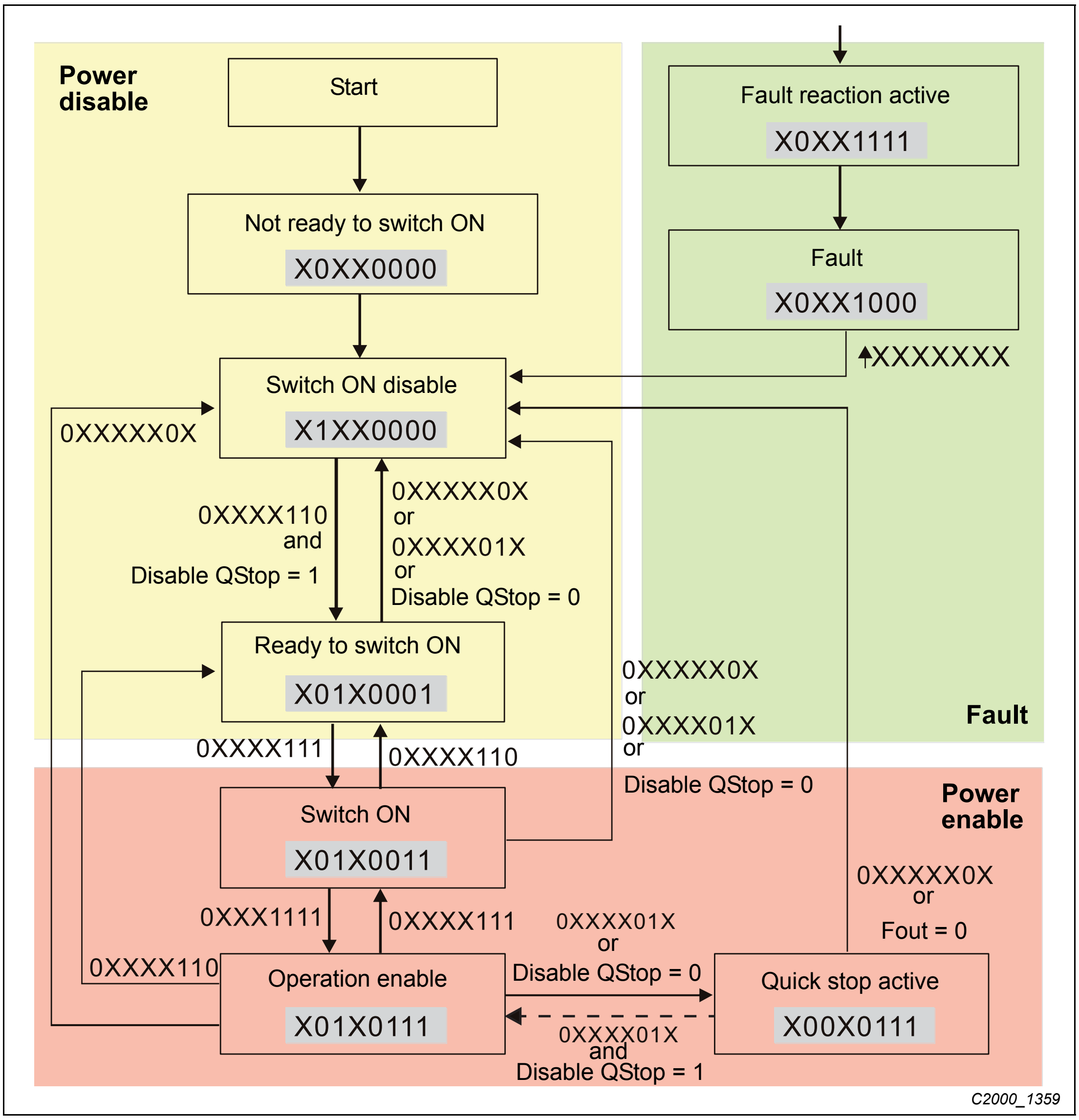


Fig. 15-4: Fault processing and status messages

Set command 6040 = 0xE, then set another command 6040 = 0xF. Then the motor drive can be switched to Operation Enable. The Index 605A decides the dashed line of Operation Enable when the control mode changes from Quick Stop Active (dotted line). (When the setting value is 0–2, this dashed line is active. But when the setting value of 605A is not 0–2, once he motor derive is switched to Quick Stop Active, it will not be able to switch back to Operation Enable.)

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory setting	R/W	Size	Unit	PDO map	Mode	Note
605Ah	0	Quick stop option code	2	RW	S16		No		0: disable drive function. 1: slow down on slow down ramp. 2: slow down on quick stop ramp. 5: slow down on slow down ramp and stay in QUICK STOP. 6: slow down on quick stop ramp and stay in QUICK STOP. 7: slow down on the current limit and stay in QUICK STOP.

Tab. 15-9: Index 605A

Besides, when the control section switches from Power Enable to Power Disable, use 605C to define parking method.

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory setting	R/W	Size	Unit	PDO map	Mode	Note
605Ch	0	Disable operation option code	1	RW	S16		No		0: Disable drive function 1: Slow down with slow down ramp; disable of the drive function.

Tab. 15-10: Index 605C

Various mode control method (by following DS402 standard)

Control mode of C2000, supporting speed, torque, position and home control are described as below.

Speed mode

① Let be at the speed control mode: Set Index 6060 to 2.

② Switch to Operation Enable mode: Set 6040 = 0xE, then set 6040 = 0xF.

③ To set target frequency: Set target frequency of 6042, since the operation unit of 6042 is rpm, there is a transformation:

$$n = f \times \frac{120}{p}$$

n: rotation speed (rpm) (rounds/minute)
P: motor's pole number (Pole)
f: rotation frequency (Hz)

For example:
Set 6042H = 1500 (rpm), if the motor drive's pole number is 4 (Pr. 05-04 or Pr. 05-16), then the motor drive's operation frequency is 1500 (120/4) = 50Hz.
Besides, the 6042 is defined as a signed operation. The plus or minus sign means to rotate clockwise or counter clockwise

④ To set acceleration and deceleration: Use 604F (Acceleration) and 6050 (Deceleration).

⑤ Trigger an ACK signal: In the speed control mode, the bit 6–4 of Index 6040 needs to be controlled. It is defined as below:

	Index 6040			SUM
	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	
Speed mode (Index 6060=2)	1	0	1	Locked at the current signal.
	1	1	1	Run to reach targeting signal.
		Other		Decelerate to 0 Hz.

Tab. 15-11: Speed control with bits 6 to 4 at index 6040

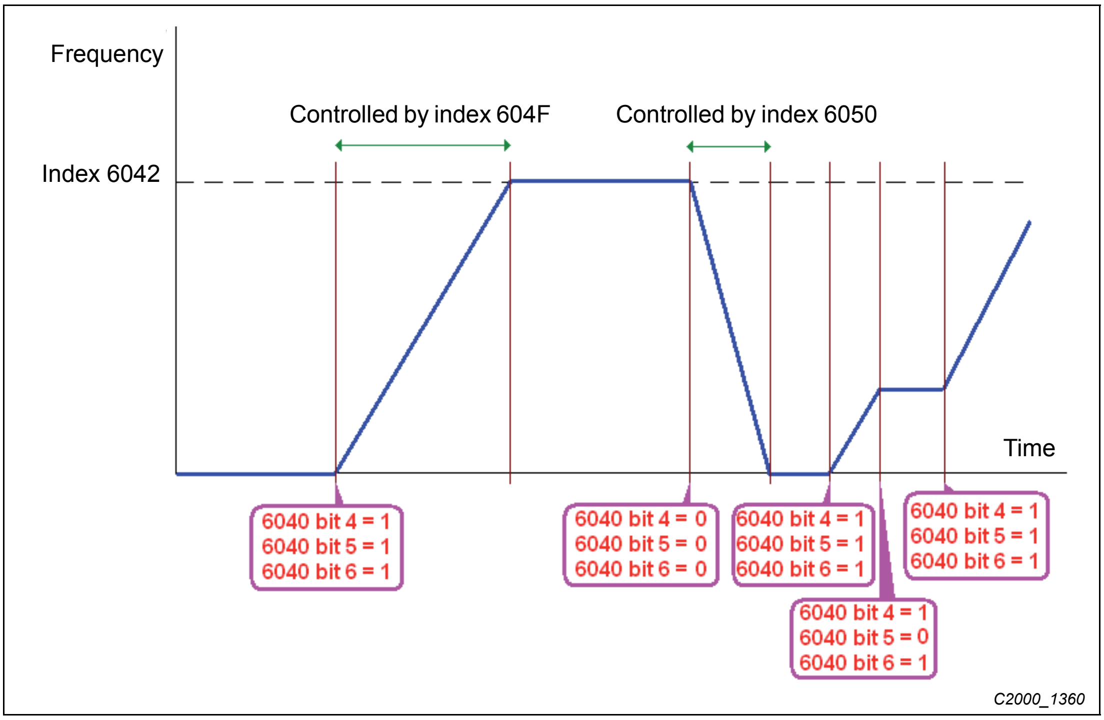


Fig. 15-5: Example for speed control

NOTES

- To know the current rotation speed, read 6043. (unit: rpm)
- To know if the rotation speed can reach the targeting value; read bit 10 of 6041. (0: Not reached; 1: Reached)

Torque mode

① Let be at the torque control mode: Set Index6060 = 4.

② Switch the current mode to Operation Enable, set 6040 = 0xE, then set 6040 = 0xF.

③ To set targeting torque: Set 6071 as targeting torque and 6072 as the largest output torque.

Torque mode (Index 6060 = 4)		Index 6040		SUM
	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	
	X	X	X	RUN to reach the targeting torque.

Tab. 15-12: Status of bits 6 to 4 is not relevant

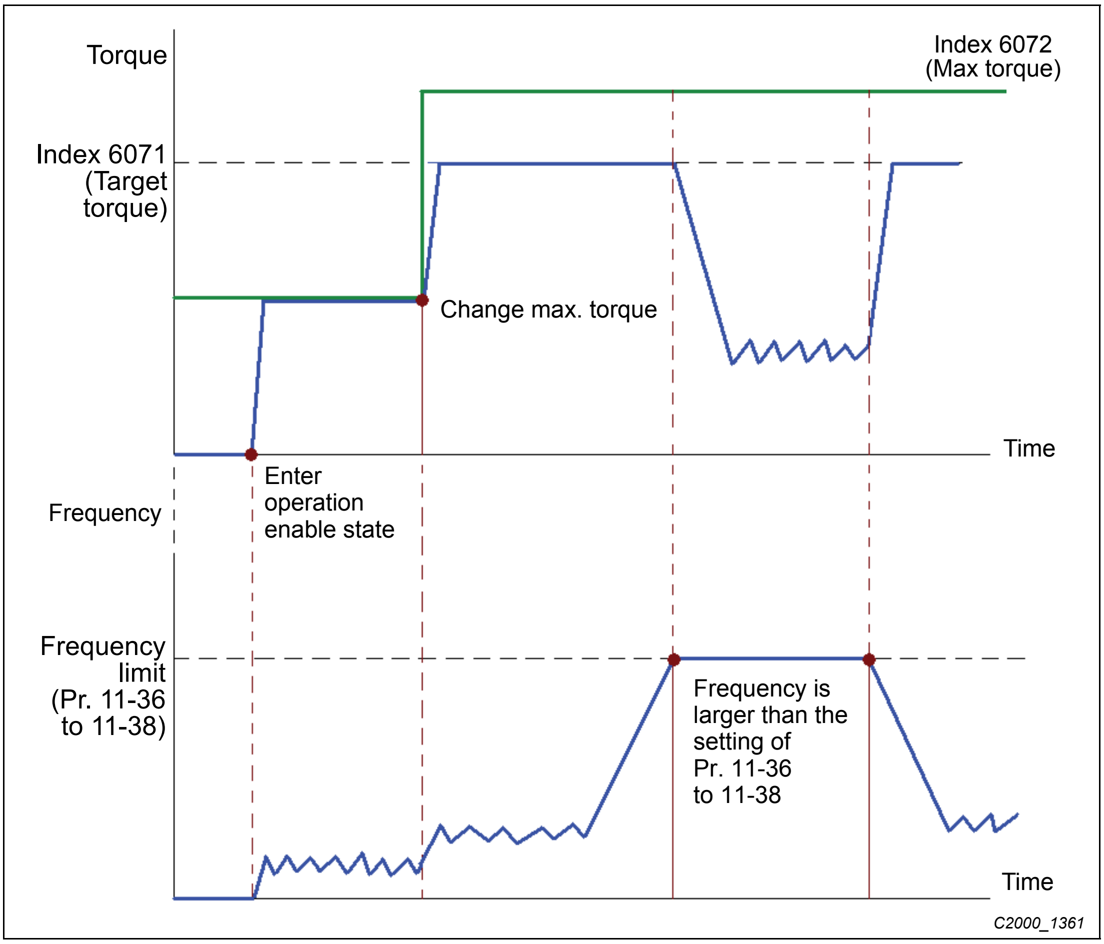


Fig. 15-6: Example for torque control

NOTES

- The standard DS402 doesn't regulate the highest speed limit. Therefore if the motor drive defines the control mode of DS402, the highest speed will go with the setting of Pr. 11-36 to Pr. 11-38.
- To know the current torque, read 6077 (unit: 0.1 %).
- To know if reaching the targeting torque, read bit 10 of 6041. (0: Not reached; 1: Reached)

Position mode

① Set the parameter of a trapezium curve to define position control (Pr. 11-43 Max. Frequency of Point- to-Point Position Control, Pr. 11-44 Accel. Time of Point-to Point Position Control and Pr. 11-45 Decel. Time of Point-to Point Position Control)

② Let be at the position control mode: Then set Index 6060 = 1.

③ Switch the current mode to Operation Enable, set 6040 = 0xE and then set 6040 = 0xF.

④ To set targeting position: set 607A as the targeting position.

⑤ Trigger an ACK signal: Set 6040 = 0x0F then set 6040 = 0x1F. (Bit4 changes from 0 to 1).

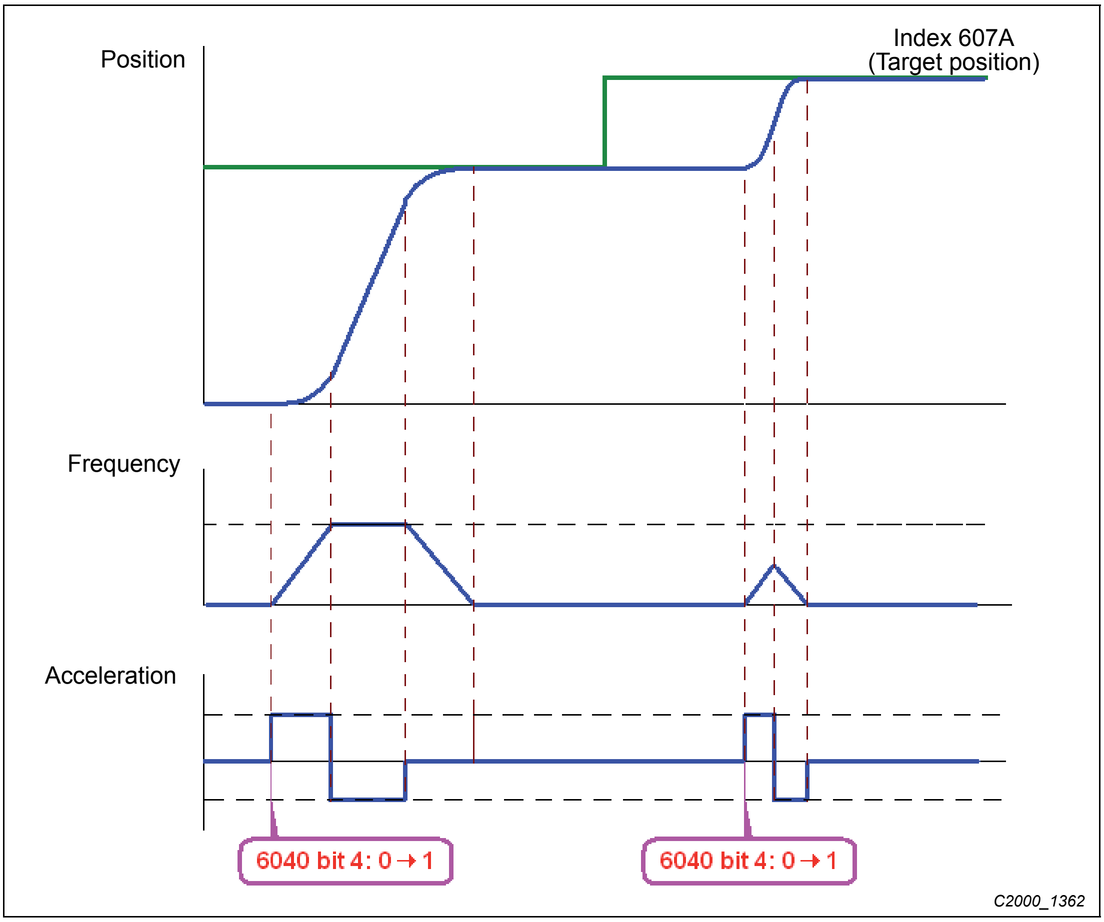


Fig. 15-7: Example for torque control

NOTES

- To know the current position, read 6064.
- To know if the position reaches the targeting position, read bit 10 of 6041 (0: reached, 1: Not reached.
- To know if the position is over the limited area, read bit 11 of 6041 (0: in the limit, 1: over the limit).

Home mode

① Set Pr. 00-12 to choose a home method.

② Set the left and right limits correspond to the position of MI terminal.

③ To switch control mode to Home mode: Set Index 6060 = 6.

④ To switch from current mode to Operation Enable: Set 6040 = 0xE, then set 6040 = 0xF.

⑤ To trigger an ACK signal: Set 6040 = 0x0F, then set 6040 = 0x1F (Bit4 changes from 0 to 1 and the motor drive will be back to home.)

NOTE

To know if the home mode is completed, read bit 12 of 6041. (0: reached, 1: Not reached)

15.3.3 By using Delta standard (Old definition, only support speed mode)

Various mode control method (by following Delta standard, old definition)

If you want to use the Delta standard (Old definition) to control the motor drive, please follow the steps below:

① Wiring for hardware (Refer to chapter 15.2 Wiring for CANopen)

② Operation source setting: set Pr. 00-21 to 3 for CANopen communication card control.

③ Frequency source setting: set Pr. 00.20 to 6. (Choose source of frequency command from CANopen setting.)

④ Set Delta Standard (Old definition, only support speed mode) as control mode: Pr. 09-40 = 0 and 09-30 = 0.

⑤ CANopen station setting: set Pr. 09-36 (Range of setting is 1–127. When Pr. 09-36 = 0, CANopen slave function is disabled.) (Note: If error arised (CAdE or CANopen memory error) as station setting is completed, press Pr. 00-02 = 7 for reset.)

⑥ CANopen baud rate setting: set Pr. 09.37 (CANBUS Baud Rate: 1M(0), 500K(1), 250K(2), 125K(3), 100K(4) and 50K(5)).

By speed mode

① Set the target frequency: Set 2020-02, the unit is Hz, with a number of 2 decimal places. For example 1000 is 10.00.

② Operation control: Set 2020-01 = 0002H for Running, and set 2020-01 = 0001H for Stopping.

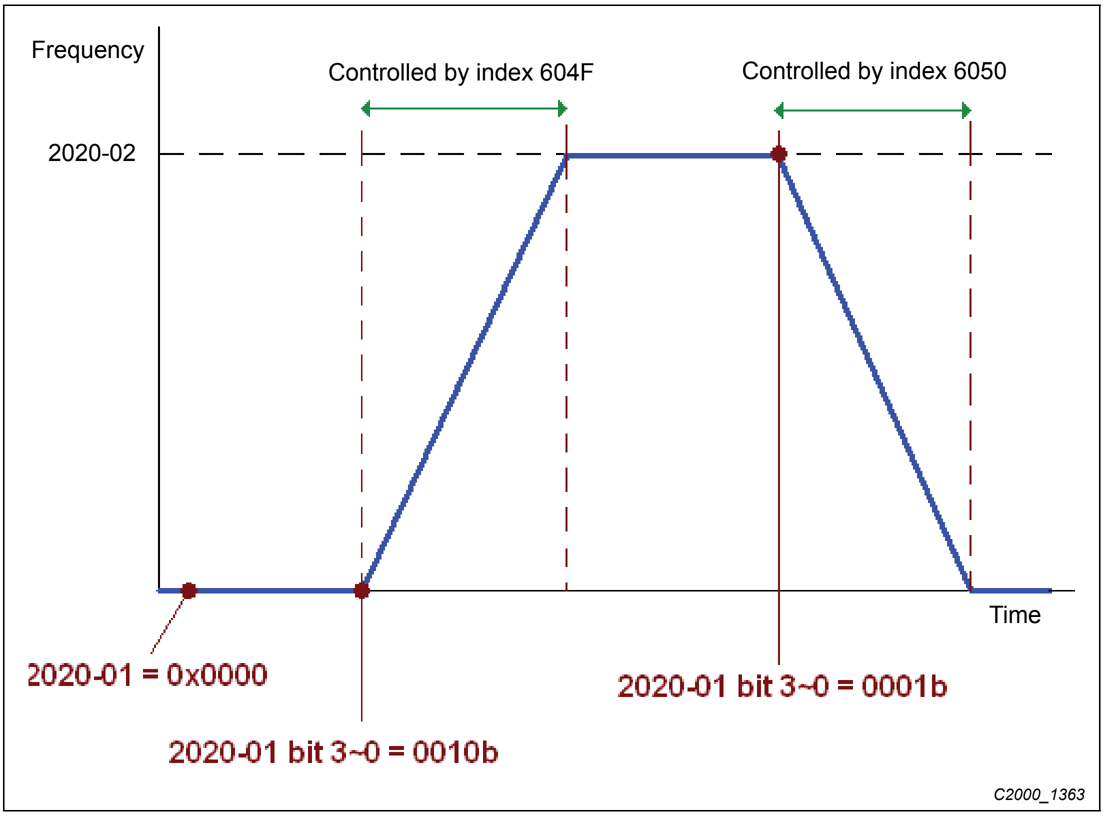


Fig. 15-8: Speed control

15.3.4 By using Delta standard (New definition)

Related set up of (Delta new standard)

If you want to use the Delta standard (New definition) to control the motor drive, please follow the steps below:

① Wiring for hardware (Refer to chapter 15.2 Wiring for CANopen).

② Operation source setting: set Pr. 00-21 to 3 for CANopen communication card control.

③ Frequency source setting: set Pr. 00.20 to 6. (Choose source of frequency command from CANopen setting.)

④ Source of torque setting is set by Pr. 11-33. (Choose source of torque command from CANopen setting.)

⑤ Position source setting: set Pr. 11-40 = 3 (Choose source of position command from CANopen setting.)

⑥ Set Delta Standard (New definition) as control mode: Pr. 09-40 = 0 and 09-30 = 1.

⑦ CANopen station setting: set Pr. 09-36 (Range of setting is 1–127. When Pr. 09-36=0, CANopen slave function is disabled.)

NOTE

If error arised (CAdE or CANopen memory error) as station setting is completed, press Pr. 00-02=7 for reset.)

⑧ CANopen baud rate setting: set Pr. 09.37 (CANBUS Baud Rate: 1M(0), 500K(1), 250K(2), 125K(3), 100K(4) and 50K(5)

Various mode control method (Delta new standard)

Speed mode

① Let be at the speed control mode: Set Index 6060 = 2.

② Set the target frequency: set 2060-03, unit is Hz, with a number of 2 decimal places. For example 1000 is 10.00Hz.

③ Operation control: set 2060-01 = 0080H for Server on, and set 2060-01 = 0081H for Running.

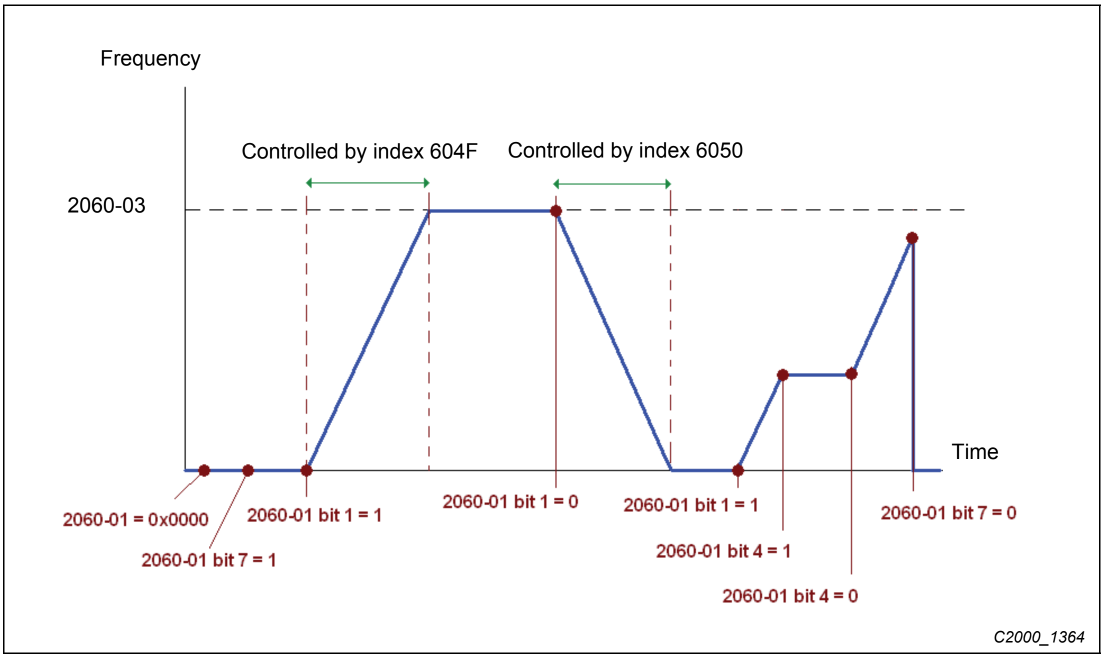


Fig. 15-9: Example for speed control by the new Delta standard

Torque mode

① Let be at torque control mode: set Index 6060 = 4.

② Set target torque: set 2060-07, unit is %, a number of 1 decimal place. For example 100 is 10.0 %.

③ Operation control: Set 2060-01 = 0080H for Server on, then the motor drive will start to run to reach target torque.

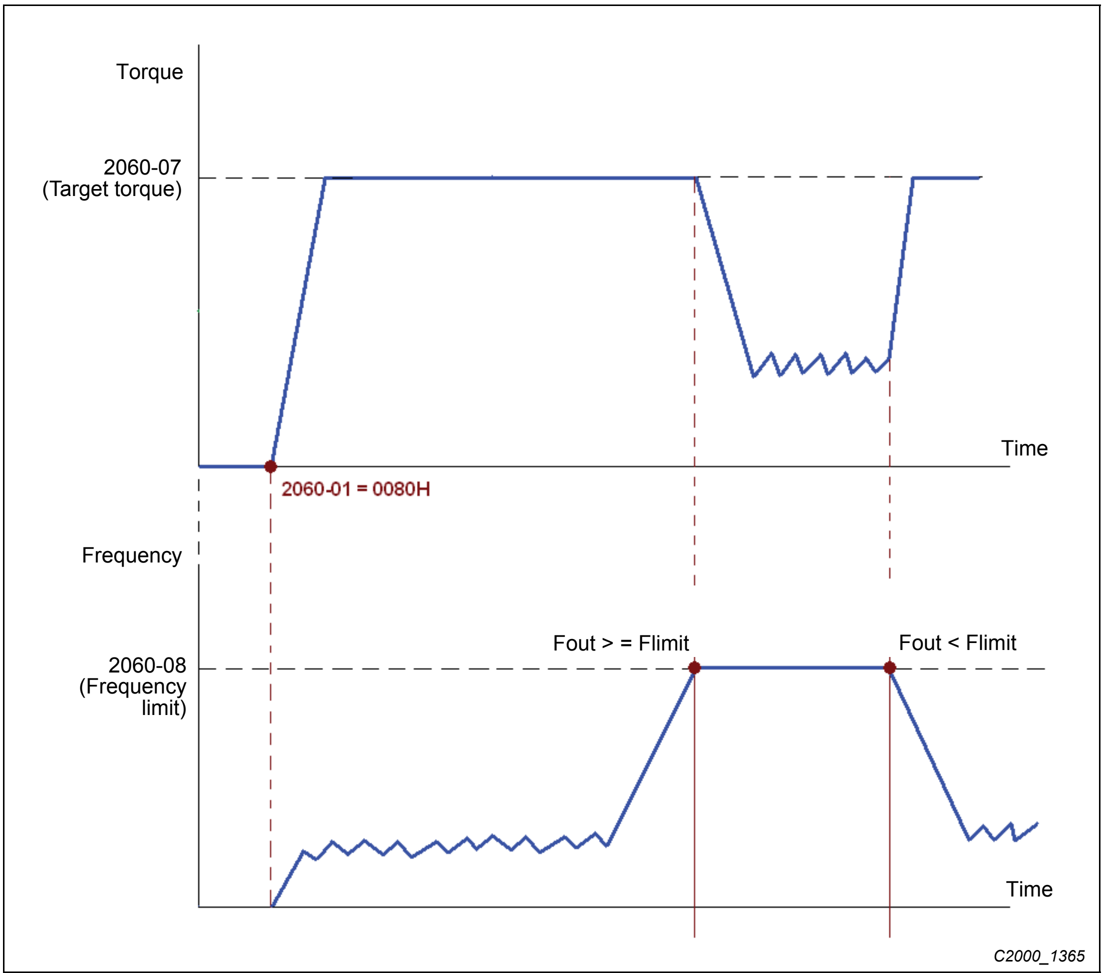


Fig. 15-10: Example for torque control by the new Delta standard

NOTES

- To know what the current torque is, read 2061-07 (unit is 0.1 %).
- To know whether the torque has reached the setting value, read the bit 0 of 2061-01 (0: Not reached, 1: Reached).
- When doing torque output and if the motor drive's speed reaches the speed limit, the output torque will decrease to ensure the speed is under the limit.

Position mode

① Set the parameter of a trapezium curve to define position control (Pr. 11-43 Max. Position Control Frequency), Pr. 11-44 Accel. Time of Position Control, Pr. 11-45 Decel. Time of Position Control)

② Let be at the position control mode, set Index 6060 = 1.

③ Set 2060-01 = 0080h, then motor drive will have server on.

④ Set target position: set 2060-05 = target position.

⑤ Set 2060-01 =0081h to trigger the motor drive to run to the target position.

⑥ To move to another position, simply repeat step ③ to ⑤.

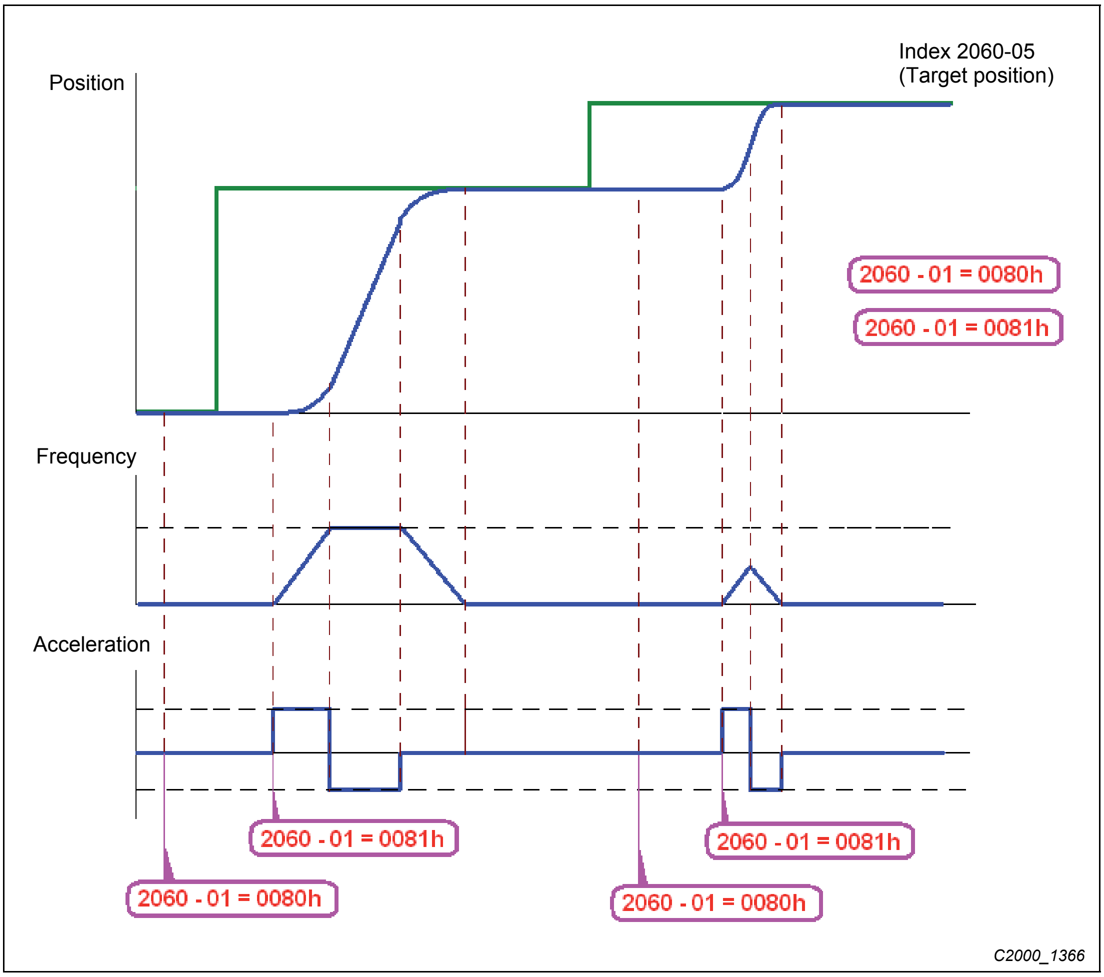


Fig. 15-11: Example for position control by the new Delta standard

NOTES

- To know the current position, read 2061-05.
- To know if reaching the target position, read bit 0 of 2061 (0: Not reached, 1: Reached).

Home mode

① Set Pr. 00-12 to choose how to return home.

② Set the left and right limits correspond to the position of MI terminal.

③ To switch C2000 control mode to Home mode: Set Index 6060 = 6.

④ Set 2060-01 = 0080h, then motor drive will have server on.

⑤ Set the ACK signal: set 2060-01 = 0081h, then the motor drive will start to go back home.

NOTE

To know if returning home is completed, read bit 12 of 6041 (0: Not reached, 1: Reached).

15.3.5 DI/DO AI AO are controlled via CANopen

To control the DO AO of the motor drive through CANopen, follow the steps below:

① To set the DO to be controlled, define this DO to be controlled by CANopen. For example, set Pr. 02-14 to control RY2.

② To set the DO to be controlled, define this AO to be controlled by CANopen. For example, set Pr. 03-23 to control AFM2.

③ To control the mapping index of CANopen. If you want to control DO, then you will need to control Index2026-41. If you want to control AO, then you will need to control 2026-A1 or 2026-A2. If you want to set RY2 as ON, set the bit 1 of Index 2026-41 = 1, then RY2 will output 1. If you want to control AFM2 output = 50.00 %, then you will need to set Index 2026-A2 = 5000, then AFM2 will output 50 %.

	Terminal	Related parameters	R/W	Mapping index
DI	FWD	==	R	2026-01 bit 0
	REV	==	R	2026-01 bit 1
	MI 1	==	R	2026-01 bit 2
	MI 2	==	R	2026-01 bit 3
	MI 3	==	R	2026-01 bit 4
	MI 4	==	R	2026-01 bit 5
	MI 5	==	R	2026-01 bit 6
	MI 6	==	R	2026-01 bit 7
	MI 7	==	R	2026-01 bit 8
	MI 8	==	R	2026-01 bit 9
	MI 10	==	R	2026-01 bit 10
	MI 11	==	R	2026-01 bit 11
	MI 12	==	R	2026-01 bit 12
	MI 13	==	R	2026-01 bit 13
	MI 14	==	R	2026-01 bit 14
	MI 15	==	R	2026-01 bit 15
DO	RY1	P2-13 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 0
	RY2	P2-14 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 1
		P2-15 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 2
	MO1	P2-16 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 3
	MO2	P2-17 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 4
	MO3	P2-18 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 5
	MO4	P2-19 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 6
	MO5	P2-20 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 7
	MO6	P2-21 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 8
	MO7	P2-22 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 9
	MO7	P2-23 = 50	RW	2026-41 bit 10
AI	AVI	==	R	Value of 2026-61
	ACI	==	R	Value of 2026-62
	AUI	==	R	Value of 2026-63
AO	AFM1	P3-20 = 20	RW	Value of 2026-A1
	AFM2	P3-23 = 20	RW	Value of 2026-A2

Tab. 15-13: Mapping table of CANopen DI, DO, AI, AO

15.4 CANopen® supporting index

15.4.1 C2000 index

Parameter index corresponds to each other as following:

Index	**sub-index**
2000H + Group	member+1

EXAMPLE Pr. 10.15 (Encoder Slip Error Treatment)

Group member
10 (0AH) — 15 (0FH)

Index = 2000H + 0AH = 200A

Sub Index = 0FH + 1H = 10H

15.4.2 C2000 control index

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory setting	R/W	Size	Note	
2020H	0	Number	3	R	U8		
	1	Control word	0	RW	U16	Bit 1–0	00B: Disable
							01B: Stop
							10B: Disable
							11B: JOG Enable
						Bit 3–2	Reserved
						Bit 5–4	00B: Disable
							01B: Direction forward
							10B: Reverse
							11B: Switch direction
						Bit 7–6	00B: 1st step Accel. /Decel.
							01B: 2nd step Accel. /Decel.
							10B: 3rd step Accel. /Decel.
							11B: 4th step Accel. /Decel.
						Bit11–8	0000B: Master speed
							0001B: 1st step speed
							0010B: 2nd step speed
							0011B: 3rd step speed
							0100B: 4th step speed
							0101B: 5th step speed
							0110B: 6th step speed
							0111B: 7th step speed
							1000B: 8th step speed
							1001B: 9th step speed
							1010B: 10th step speed
							1011B: 11th step speed
							1100B: 12th step speed
							1101B: 13th step speed
							1110B: 14th step speed
							1111B: 15th step speed
						Bit 12	1: Enable the function of Bit 6-11
						Bit 14–13	00B: No function
							01B: Operation command by the digital keypad
							10B: Operation command by Pr. 00-21 setting
							11B: Switch the source of operation command
						Bit 15	Reserved
	2	Freq. command (XXX.XXHz)	0	RW	U16		
	3	Other trigger	0	RW	U16	Bit 0	1: E.F. ON
						Bit 1	1: Reset
						Bit 15–2	Reserved

Tab. 15-14: Delta standard mode (Old definition) (1)

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory setting	R/W	Size	Note	
2021H	0	Number	DH	R	U8		
	1	Error code	0	R	U16		
	2	status	0	R	U16	Bit 1–0	00B: stop
							01B: decelerate to stop
							10B: waiting for operation command
							11B: in operation
						Bit 2	1: JOG command
						Bit 4–3	00B: forward running
							01B: switch from reverse running to forward running
							10B: switch from forward running to reverse running
							11B: reverse running
						Bit 7–5	Reserved
						Bit 8	1: master frequency command controlled by communication interface
						Bit 9	1: master frequency command controlled by analog signal input
						Bit 10	1: operation command controlled by communication interface
						Bit 15–11	Reserved
	3	Freq. command (XXX.XX Hz)	0	R	U16		
	4	Output freq. (XXX.XX Hz)	0	R	U16		
	5	Output current (XX.X A)	0	R	U16		
	6	DC bus voltage (XXX.X V)	0	R	U16		
	7	Output voltage (XXX.X V)	0	R	U16		
	8	The current segment run by the multi-segment speed command	0	R	U16		
	9	Reserved	0	R	U16		
	A	Display counter value (c)	0	R	U16		
	B	Display output power angle (XX.X°)	0	R	U16		
	C	Display output torque (XXX.X %)	0	R	U16		
	D	Display actual motor speed (rpm)	0	R	U16		
	E	Number of PG feed back pulses (0–65535)	0	R	U16		
	F	Number of PG2 pulse commands (0–65535)	0	R	U16		
	10	power output (X.XXX KWH)	0	R	U16		

Tab. 15-14: Delta standard mode (Old definition) (2)

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory setting	R/W	Size	Note
2022H	0	Reserved	0	R	U16	
	1	Display output current	0	R	U16	
	2	Display counter value	0	R	U16	
	3	Display actual output frequency (XXX.XX Hz)	0	R	U16	
	4	Display DC-BUS voltage (XXX.X V)	0	R	U16	
	5	Display output voltage (XXX.X V)	0	R	U16	
	6	Display output power angle (XX.X°)	0	R	U16	
	7	Display output power in kW	0	R	U16	
	8	Display actual motor speed (rpm)	0	R	U16	
	9	Display estimate output torque (XXX.X %)	0	R	U16	
	A	Display PG feedback	0	R	U16	
	B	Display PID feedback value after enabling PID function in % (To 2 decimal places)	0	R	U16	
	C	Display signal of AVI analog input terminal, 0-10 V corresponds to 0-100 % (To 2 decimal places)	0	R	U16	
	D	Display signal of ACI analog input terminal, 4-20 mA/0-10 V corresponds to 0-100 % (To 2 decimal places)	0	R	U16	
	E	Display signal of AUI analog input terminal, -10 V–10 V corresponds to -100–100 % (To 2 decimal places)	0	R	U16	
	F	Display the IGBT temperature of drive power module in °C	0	R	U16	
	10	Display the temperature of capacitance in °C	0	R	U16	
	11	The status of digital input (ON/OFF), refer to Pr. 02-12	0	R	U16	
	12	The status of digital output (ON/OFF), refer to Pr. 02-18	0	R	U16	
	13	Display the multi-step speed that is executing	0	R	U16	
	14	The corresponding CPU pin status of digital input	0	R	U16	
	15	The corresponding CPU pin status of digital output	0	R	U16	
	16	Number of actual motor revolution (PG1 of PG card). It will start from 9 when the actual operation direction is changed or keypad display at stop is 0. Max. is 65535	0	R	U16	
	17	Pulse input frequency (PG2 of PG card)	0	R	U16	
	18	Pulse input position (PG card PG2), maximum setting is 65535.	0	R	U16	

Tab. 15-14: Delta standard mode (Old definition) (3)

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory setting	R/W	Size	Note
2022H	19	Position command tracing error	0	R	U16	
	1A	Display times of counter overload (0.00–100.00 %)	0	R	U16	
	1B	Display GFF in %	0	R	U16	
	1C	Display DC bus voltage rip- ples (Unit: V DC)	0	R	U16	
	1D	Display PLC register D1043 data	0	R	U16	
	1E	Display Pole of Permanent Magnet Motor	0	R	U16	
	1F	User page displays the value in physical measure	0	R	U16	
	20	Output Value of Pr.00-05	0	R	U16	
	21	Number of motor turns when drive operates	0	R	U16	
	22	Operation position of motor	0	R	U16	
	23	Fan speed of the drive	0	R	U16	
	24	Control mode of the drive 0: speed mode 1: torque mode	0	R	U16	
	25	Carrier frequency of the drive	0	R	U16	

Tab. 15-14: Delta standard mode (Old definition) (4)

Index	Sub	R/W	Definition
2026H	01h	R	Each bit corresponds to the different input terminals
	02h	R	Each bit corresponds to the different input terminals
	03h–40h	R	Reserved
	41h	RW	Each bit corresponds to the different output terminals
	42h–60h	R	Reserved
	61h	R	AVI (%)
	62h	R	ACI (%)
	63h	R	AUI (%)
	64h–A0h	R	Reserved
	A1h	RW	AFM1 (%)
	A2h	RW	AFM2 (%)

Tab. 15-15: CANopen remote IO mapping

Index	Sub	R/W	Size	Description			Speed mode	Position mode	Home mode	Torque mode
				Bit	Defi-nition	Pri-ority				
2060h	00h	R	U8							
2060h	01h	RW	U16	0	Ack	4	0:fcmd =0 1:fcmd = Fset(Fpid)	Pulse 1: Position control	Pulse 1: Return to home	
				1	Dir	4	0: FWD run command 1: REV run command			
				2						
				3	Halt		0: drive run till target speed is attained 1: drive stop by declara-tion setting			
				4	Hold		0: drive run till target speed is attained 1: frequency stop at cur-rent frequency			
				5	JOG		0:JOG OFF Pulse 1:JOG RUN			
				6	QStop		Quick Stop			
				7	Power		0:Power OFF 1: Power ON	0:Power OFF 1: Power ON	0:Power OFF 1: Power ON	0:Power OFF 1: Power ON
				14–8	Cmd SW		Multi-step frequency switching	Multi-step position switching		
				15			Pulse 1: Fault code cleared	Pulse 1: Fault code cleared	Pulse 1: Fault code cleared	Pulse 1: Fault code cleared
	02h	RW	U16							
	03h	RW	U16				Speed command (unsigned decimal)			
	04h	RW	U16							
	05h	RW	S32					Position command		
	06h	RW								
2060h	07h	RW	U16							Torque command (signed decimal)
	08h	RW	U16							Speed limit (unsigned decimal)

Tab. 15-16: Delta standard mode (New definition) (1)

Index	Sub	R/W	Size	Description			Speed mode	Position mode	Home mode	Torque mode
				Bit	Definition	Priority				
2061h	01h	R	U16	0	Arrive		Frequency attained	Position attained	Homing complete	Torque attained
				1	Dir		0: Motor FWD run 1: Motor REV run	0: Motor FWD run 1: Motor REV run	0: Motor FWD run 1: Motor REV run	0: Motor FWD run 1: Motor REV run
				2	Warn		Warning	Warning	Warning	Warning
				3	Error		Error detected	Error detected	Error detected	Error detected
				4						
				5	JOG		JOG	JOG	JOG	JOG
				6	QStop		Quick stop	Quick stop	Quick stop	Quick stop
				7	Power ON		Switch ON	Switch ON	Switch ON	Switch ON
				15–8						
	02h	R								
	03h	R	U16				Actual output frequency	Actual output frequency	Actual output frequency	Actual output frequency
	04h	R								
	05h	R	S32				Actual position (absolute)	Actual position (absolute)	Actual position (absolute)	Actual position (absolute)
	06h	R								
	07h	R	S16				Actual torque	Actual torque	Actual torque	Actual torque

Tab. 15-16: Delta standard mode (New definition) (2)

DS402-Standard

Index	Sub	Definition	Factory setting	R/W	Size	Unit	PDO map	Mode*	Note
6007h	0	Abort connection option code	2	RW	S16		Yes		0: No action 2: Disable Voltage 3: quick stop
603Fh	0	Error code	0	R	U16		Yes		
6040h	0	Control word	0	RW	U16		Yes		
6041h	0	Status word	0	R	U16		Yes		
6042h	0	vl target velocity	0	RW	S16	rpm	Yes	vl	
6043h	0	vl velocity demand	0	R	S16	rpm	Yes	vl	
6044h	0	vl control effort	0	R	S16	rpm	Yes	vl	
604Fh	0	vl ramp function time	10000	RW	U32	1 ms	Yes	vl	
6050h	0	vl slow down time	10000	RW	U32	1 ms	Yes	vl	Unit must be: 100ms, and check if the setting is set to 0.
6051h	0	vl quick stop time	1000	RW	U32	1 ms	Yes	vl	
605Ah	0	Quick stop option code	2	RW	S16		No		0: disable drive function 1: slow down on slow down ramp 2: slow down on quick stop ramp 5: slow down on slow down ramp and stay in QUICK STOP 6: slow down on quick stop ramp and stay in QUICK STOP
605Ch	0	Disable operation option code	1	RW	S16		No		0: Disable drive function 1: Slow down with slow down ramp; disable of the drive function
6060h	0	Mode of operation	2	RW	S8		Yes		1: Profile Position mode 2: Velocity mode 4: Torque Profile mode 6: Homing mode
6061h	0	Mode of operation display	2	R	S8		Yes		Same as above
6064h	0	pp Position actual value	0	R	S32		Yes	pp	
6071h	0	tq Target torque	0	RW	S16	0.1 %	Yes	tq	Valid unit: 1%
6072h	0	tq Max torque	150	RW	U16	0.1 %	No	tq	Valid unit: 1%
6075h	0	tq Motor rated current	0	RO	U32	mA	No	tq	
6077h	0	tq torque actual value	0	RO	S16	0.1 %	Yes	tq	
6078h	0	tq current actual value	0	RO	S16	0.1 %	Yes	tq	
6079h	0	tq DC link circuit voltage	0	RO	U32	mV	Yes	tq	
607Ah	0	pp Target position	0	RW	S32	1	Yes	pp	

Tab. 15-17: DS402 standard

* Meaning of the entries in the row "Mode": "vl" = speed, "pp" = position, "tq" = torque.

15.5 CANopen® fault code

Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
HAND Fault ocA Oc at accel	0001H	Over-current during acceleration	2213H	1
HAND Fault ocd Oc at decel	0002H	Over-current during deceleration	2213H	1
HAND Fault ocn Oc at normal SPD	0003H	Over-current during steady status operation	2214H	1
HAND Fault GFF Ground fault	0004H	Ground fault. When (one of) the output terminal(s) is grounded, short circuit current is more than 50 % of rated current. NOTE: The short circuit protection is provided for protection, not for protection of the user.	2240H	1
HAND Fault occ Short Circuit	0005H	Short-circuit is detected between upper bridge and lower bridge of the IGBT module.	2250H	1
HAND Fault ocS Oc at stop	0006H	Over-current at stop. Hardware failure in current detection	2314H	1
HAND Fault ovA Ov at accel	0007H	Over-current during acceleration. Hardware failure in current detection	3210H	2
HAND Fault ovd Ov at decel	0008H	Over-current during deceleration. Hardware failure in current detection.	3210H	2

Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (1)

Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
HAND Fault ovn Ov at normal SPD	0009H	Over-current during steady speed. Hardware failure in current detection.	3210H	2
HAND Fault ovS Ov at stop	000AH	Over-voltage at stop. Hardware failure in current detection	3210H	2
HAND Fault LvA Lv at accel	000BH	DC BUS voltage is less than Pr. 06-00 during acceleration.	3220H	2
HAND Fault Lvd Lv at decel	000CH	DC BUS voltage is less than Pr. 06-00 during deceleration.	3220H	2
HAND Fault Lvn Lv at normal SPD	000DH	DC BUS voltage is less than’ Pr. 06-00 in constant speed.	3220H	2
HAND Fault LvS Lv at stop	000EH	DC BUS voltage is less than Pr. 06-00 at stop	3220H	2
HAND Fault OrP Phase Lacked	000FH	Phase Loss Protection	3130H	2
HAND Fault oH1 IGBT over heat	0010H	IGBT overheat IGBT temperature exceeds protection level. 1–15 HP: 90 °C 20–100 HP: 100 °C	4310H	3
HAND Fault oH2 Hear Sink oH	0011H	Heat sink overheat Heat sink temperature exceeds 90 °C	4310H	3

Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (2)

Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
HAND Fault tH1o Thermo 1 open	0012H	Temperature detection circuit error (IGBT) IGBT NTC	FF00H	3
HAND Fault tH2o Thermo 2 open	0013H	Temperature detection circuit error (capacity module) CAP NTC	FF01H	3
HAND Fault PWR Power RST OFF	0014H	Power RST off	FF02H	2
HAND Fault oL Inverter oL	0015H	Overload. The detects excessive drive output current. NOTE: The can withstand up to 150 % of the rated current for a maximum of 60 seconds.	2310H	1
HAND Fault EoL1 Thermal relay 1	0016H	Electronics thermal relay 1 protection	2310H	1
HAND Fault EoL2 Thermal relay 2	0017H	Electronics thermal relay 2 protection	2310H	1
HAND Fault ot1 Over torque 1	001AH	These two fault codes will be displayed when output current exceeds the over-torque detection level (Pr .06.07 or Pr. 06.10) and exceeds over-torque detection (Pr. 06.08 or Pr. 06.11) and it is set 2 or 4 in Pr. 06-06 or Pr. 06-09.	8311H	3
HAND Fault ot2 Over torque 2	001BH		8311H	3
HAND Fault uC Under torque 1	001CH	Low current	8321H	1

Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (3)

Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
HAND Fault cF1 EEPROM write Err	001EH	Internal EEPROM can not be programmed.	5530H	5
HAND Fault cF2 EEPROM read Err	001FH	Internal EEPROM can not be read.	5530H	5
HAND Fault cd1 Ias sensor Err	0021H	U-phase error	FF04H	1
HAND Fault cd2 Ibs sensor Err	0022H	V-phase error	FF05H	1
HAND Fault cd3 Ics sensor Err	0023H	W-phase error	FF06H	1
HAND Fault Hd0 cc HW Error	0024H	cc (current clamp) hardware error	FF07H	5
HAND Fault Hd1 oc HW Error	0025H	oc hardware error	FF08H	5
HAND Fault Hd2 ov HW Error	0026H	ov hardware error	FF09H	5
HAND Fault Hd3 GFF HW Error	0027H	GFF hardware error	FF0AH	5

Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (4)

Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
HAND Fault AUE Auto tuning Err	0028H	Auto tuning error	FF21H	1
HAND Fault AFE PID Fbk Error	0029H	PID loss (ACI)	FF22H	7
HAND Fault PGF1 PG Fbk Error	002AH	PG feedback error	7301H	7
HAND Fault PGF2 PG Fbk Loss	002BH	PG feedback loss	7301H	7
HAND Fault PGF3 PG Fbk Over SPD	002BH	PG feedback stall	7301H	7
HAND Fault PGF4 PG Fbk deviate	002CH	PG slip error	7301H	7
HAND Fault ACE ACI loss	0030H	ACI loss	FF25H	1
HAND Fault EF External Fault	0031H	External Fault When input EF (N.O.) on external terminal is closed to GND, stops output U, V, and W.	9000H	5
HAND Fault EF1 Emergency stop	0032H	Emergency stop When the multi-function input terminals MI1 to MI6 are set to emergency stop, the stops output U, V, W and the motor coasts to stop.	9000H	5

Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (5)

Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
HAND Fault bb Base block	0033H	External Base Block When the external input terminals MI1 to MI16 are set as bb and active, the output will be turned off	9000H	5
HAND Fault Pcod Password Error	0034H	Password will be locked if three fault passwords are entered	FF26H	5
HAND Fault ccod SW code Error	0035H	Software error	6100H	5
HAND Fault cE1 Modbus CMD err	0036H	Illegal function code	7500H	4
HAND Fault cE2 Modbus ADDR err	0037H	Illegal data address (00H to 254H)	7500H	4
HAND Fault cE3 Modbus DATA err	0038H	Illegal data value	7500H	4
HAND Fault cE4 Modbus slave FLT	0039H	Data is written to read-only address	7500H	4
HAND Fault cE10 Modbus time out	003AH	Modbus transmission timeout.	7500H	5
HAND Fault cP10 Keypad time out	003BH	Keypad transmission timeout.	7500H	4

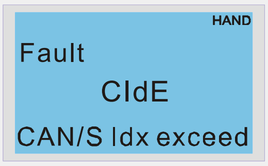
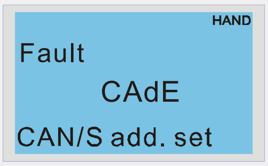
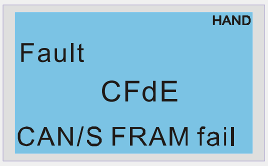
Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (6)

Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
HAND Fault bF Braking fault	003CH	Brake resistor fault	7110H	4
HAND Fault ydc Y-delta connect	003DH	Motor Y-Δ switch error	3330H	2
HAND Fault dEb Dec. Energy back	003EH	Energy regeneration when decelerating	FF27H	2
HAND Fault oSL Over slip Error	003FH	Over slip error. Slip exceeds Pr. 05.26 limit and slip duration exceeds Pr. 05.27 setting.	FF28H	7
HAND Fault PGF5 PG HW Error	0041H	PG Card Error	FF29H	5
HAND Fault ocU Unknow Over Apm	0042H	Over current caused by unknown reason	2310H	1
HAND Fault ovU Unknow Over volt.	0043H	Over voltage caused by unknown reason	3210H	2
HAND Fault S1 S1-Emergy stop	0049H	External safety emergency stop	FF2AH	5
HAND Fault OPHL U phase lacked	0052H	U phase output phase loss	2331H	2

Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (7)

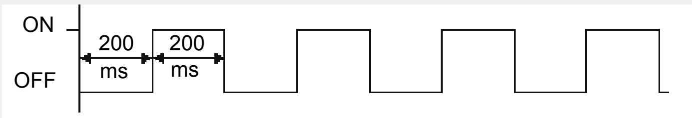
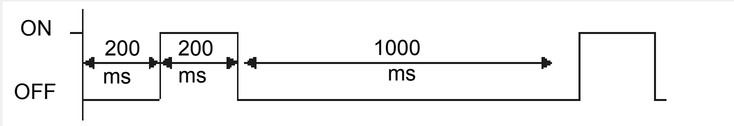
Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
HAND Fault OPHL U phase lacked	0053H	V phase output phase loss	2332H	2
HAND Fault OPHL U phase lacked	0054H	W phase output phase loss	2333H	2
HAND Fault aocc A phase short	004FH	A phase short	FF2BH	1
HAND Fault bocc B phase short	0050H	B phase short	FF2CH	1
HAND Fault cocc C phase short	0051H	C phase short	FF2DH	1
HAND Fault CGdE Guarding T-out	0065H	Guarding time-out 1	8130H	4
HAND Fault CHbE Heartbeat T-out	0066H	Heartbeat time-out	8130H	4
HAND Fault CSyE SYNC T-out	0067H	CAN synchrony error	8700H	4
HAND Fault CbFE CAN/S bus off	0068H	CAN bus off	8140H	4

Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (8)

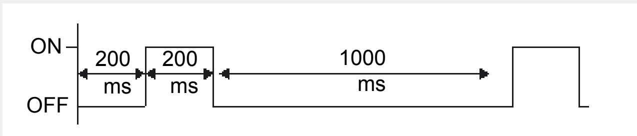
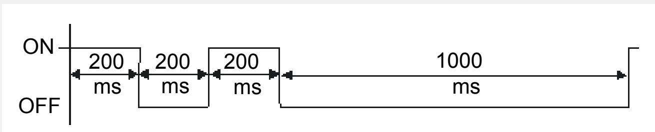
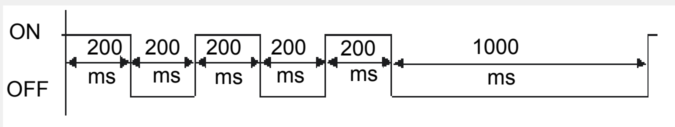
Display	Fault code	Description	CANopen fault code	CANopen fault register (bit 0–7)
	0069H	Can index exceed	8110H	4
	006AH	CAN address error	8100H	4
	006BH	CAN frame fail	8100H	4

Tab. 15-18: CANopen®- fault codes (9)

15.6 CANopen LED function

LED status	Condition	CANopen state
OFF		Initial
Blinking	 *C2000_1441*	Pre-operation
Single flash	 *C2000_1442*	Stopped
ON		Operation

Tab. 15-19: RUN LED

LED status	Condition	State
OFF		No error
Single flash	 *C2000_1443*	One Message fail.
Double flash	 *C2000_1444*	Guarding fail or heartbeat fail
Triple flash	 *C2000_1445*	SYNC fail
ON		Bus is off

Tab. 15-20: ERR LED

16 PLC Function Applications

16.1 PLC summary

16.1.1 Introduction

The commands provided by the C2000's built-in PLC functions, including the ladder diagram editing tool WPLSoft, as well as the usage of basic commands and applications commands, chiefly retain the operating methods of Delta's PLC DVP series.

16.1.2 WPLSoft ladder diagram editing tool

WPLSoft is Delta's program editing software for the DVP and C2000 programmable controllers in the Windows operating system environment. Apart from general PLC program design general Windows editing functions (such as cut, paste, copy, multiple windows, etc.), WPLSoft also provides many Chinese/English annotation editing and other convenience functions (such as registry editing, settings, file reading, saving, and contact graphic monitoring and settings, etc.).

The following basic requirements are needed to install WPLSoft editing software:

Item	System requirements
Operating system	Windows 95/98/2000/NT/ME/XP
CPU	At least Pentium 90
Memory	At least 16 MB (we recommend at least 32 MB)
Hard drive	Hard drive capacity: at least 100 MB free space One optical drive (for use in installing this software)
Display	Resolution: 640x480, at least 16 colors; it is recommended that the screen area be set at 800x600 pixels
Mouse	Ordinary mouse or Windows-compatible device
Printer	Printer with a Windows driver program
RS485 port	Must have at least an RS485 port to link to the PLC
Suitable PLC models	Delta's full DVP-PLC series, VFD-C2000 series

Tab. 16-1: Basic requirements for the editing software WPLSoft

16.2 Notes before PLC use

① The PLC has a preset communications format of 7, N, 2, 9600, with node 2; the PLC node can be changed in parameter 09-35, but this address may not be the same as the converter's address setting of 09-00.

② The C2000 provides 2 communications serial ports that can be used to download PLC programs (see figure below). Channel 1 has a fixed communications format of 19200, 8, N, 2 RTU.

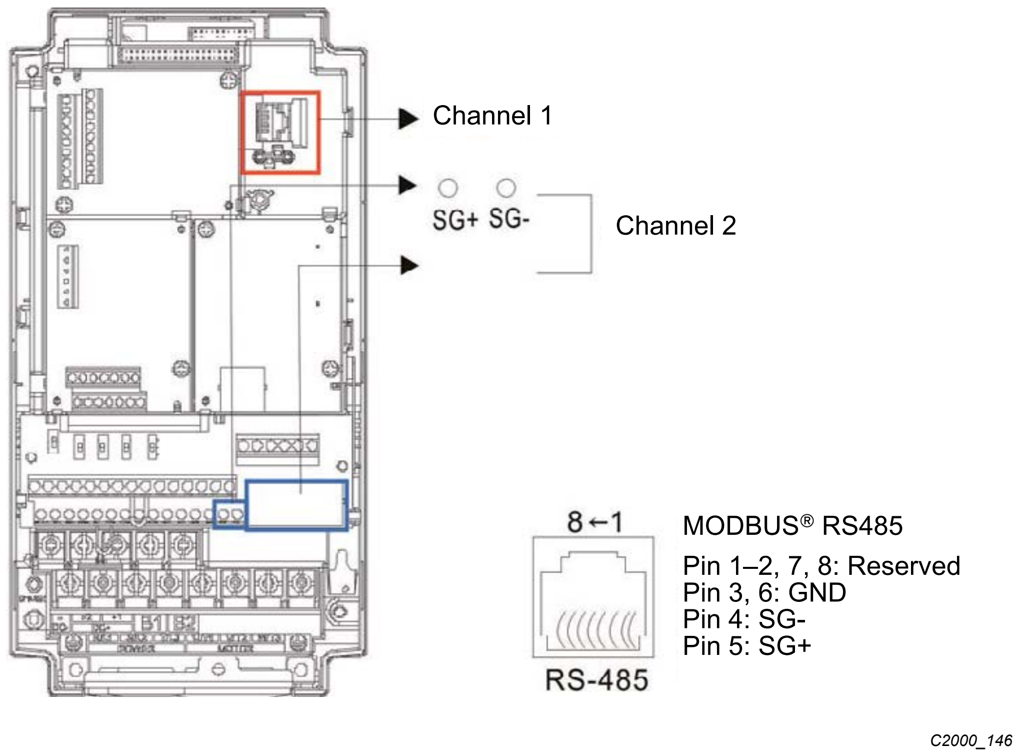


Fig. 16-1: Communication interface of an C2000 inverter

③ The client can simultaneously access data from the converter and internal PLC, which is performed through identification of the node. For instance, if the converter node is 1 and the internal PLC node is 2, then the client command will be:

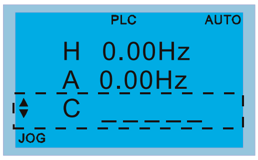
01 (node) 03 (read) 0400 (address) 0001 (1 data item), indicating that it must read the data in converter parameter 04-00.

02 (node) 03 (read) 0400 (address) 0001 (1 data item), indicating that it must read the data in internal PLC X0.

④ The PLC program will be disabled when uploading/downloading programs.

⑤ Please note when using WPR commands to write in parameters, values may be modified up to a maximum of 10^9 times, otherwise a memory write error will occur. The calculation of modifications is based on whether the entered value has been changed. If the entered value is left unchanged, the modifications will not increase afterwards. But if the entered value is different from before, the number of modifications will increase by one.

⑥ When parameter 00-04 is set as 28, the displayed value will be the value of PLC register D1043 (see figure below):

Digital keypad KPC-CC01 Can display 0–65535	Digital keypad KPC-CE01 0–9999 
	When more than 9999 

⑦ In the PLC Run and PLC Stop mode, the content 9 and 10 of parameter 00-02 cannot be set and cannot be reset to the default value.

⑧ The PLC can be reset to the default value when parameter 00-02 is set as 6.

⑨ The corresponding MI function will be disabled when the PLC writes to input contact X.

⑩ When the PLC controls converter operation, control commands will be entirely controlled by the PLC and will not be affected by the setting of parameter 00-21.

⑪ When the PLC controls converter frequency commands (FREQ commands), frequency commands will be entirely controlled by the PLC, and will not be affected by the setting of parameter 00-20 or the Hand ON/OFF configuration.

⑫ When the PLC controls converter torque (TORQ commands), torque commands will be entirely controlled by the PLC, and will not be affected by the setting of parameter 11-33 or the Hand ON/OFF configuration.

⑬ When the PLC controls converter positions (POS commands), position commands will be entirely controlled by the PLC, and will not be affected by the setting of parameter 11-40 or the Hand ON/OFF configuration.

⑭ When the PLC controls converter operation, if the keypad Stop setting is valid, this will trigger an FStP error and cause stoppage.

16.3 Turn on

16.3.1 Connect to PC

Start operation of PLC functions in accordance with the following four steps:

① After pressing the Menu key and selecting ***4: PLC*** on the KPC-CC01 digital keypad, press the Enter key (see figure below).

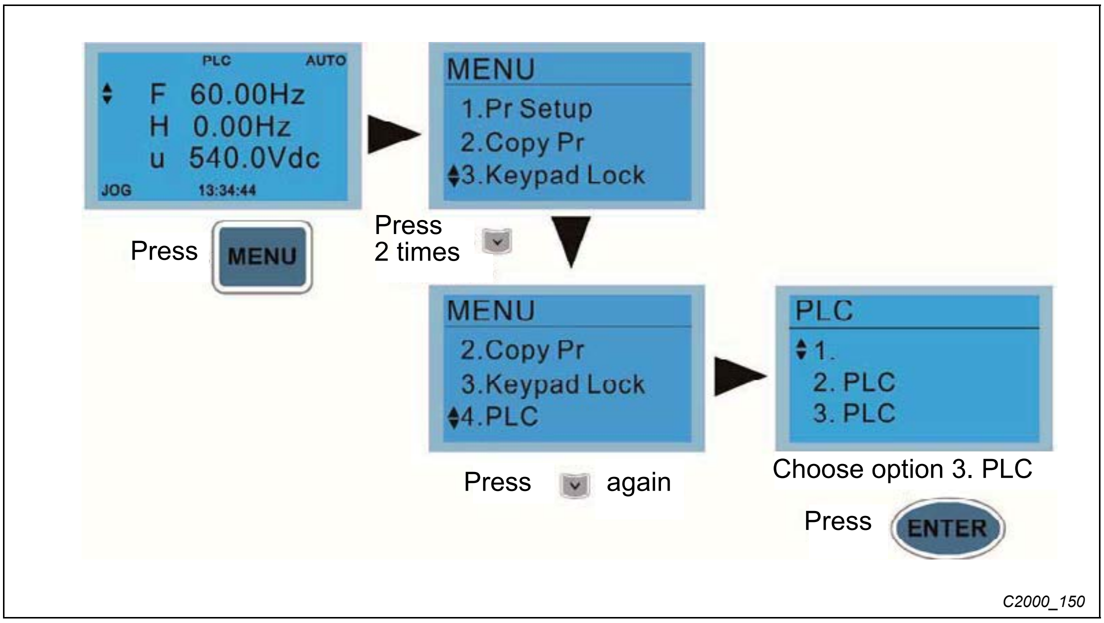


Fig. 16-2: Selection of the PLC function

NOTES

If the optional KPC-CE01 digital keypad is used, employ the following method:

Switch to the main PLC2 screen: After powering up the drivers, press the MENU key on the KPC-CE01 once to switch to the function screen, which will then display "PrSET." After using the up or down button to switch to the "PLC" screen, and then press ENTER to enter PLC function settings. Afterwards, press the Up key to switch to "PLC2," and then press ENTER.

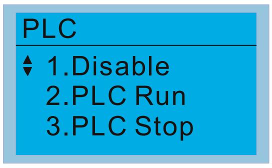
The screen will now display "PLSn" and flash, indicating that the internal PLC currently has no program, and this error message can be ignored. If the PLC has an editing program, the screen will display "End," and will jump back to "PLC2" after 1 to 2 seconds. When no program has been downloaded to the drivers, the program can continue to run even if a PLC warning message appears.

Disable PLC PLC

② Wiring

Fig. 16-3: Connecting the driver's RJ-45 communications interface to a PC via the RS485

③ PLC function usage

	PLC functions are as shown in the figure on the left; select item 2 and implement PLC functions. 1: No function (Disable) 2: Enable PLC (PLC Run) 3: Stop PLC functions (PLC Stop)
Optional product: PLC function display method on KPC-CE01 digital keypad	PLC 0 : Do not implement PLC functions PLC 1 : Initiate PLC Run PLC 2 : Initiate PLC Stop

When the external multifunctional input terminals (MI1 to MI8) are in PLC Mode select bit 0 (51) or PLC Mode select bit1 (52), and the terminal contact is closed or open, it will compulsorily switch to the PLC mode, and keypad switching will be ineffective. Corresponding actions are as follows:

PLC mode		PLC Mode select bit 1 (52)	PLC Mode select bit 0 (51)
Using KPC-CC01	Using KPC-CE01		
Disable	PLC 0	OFF	OFF
PLC Run	PLC 1	OFF	ON
PLC Stop	PLC 2	ON	OFF
Maintain previous state	Maintain previous state	ON	ON

Tab. 16-2: Selection of PLC modes with multifunctional input terminals

Use of KPC-CE01 digital keypad to implement PLC functions:

- When the PLC screen switches to the PLC1 screen, this will trigger one PLC action, and the PLC program start/stop can be controlled by communications via the WPL.
- When the PLC screen switches to the PLC2 screen, this will trigger one PLC stop, and the PLC program start/stop can be controlled by communications via the WPL.
- The external terminal control method is the same as shown in the table above.

NOTES

- When input/output terminals (FWD, REV, MI1 to MI8, MI10 to 15, Relay 1, Relay 2, RY10 to RY15, MO1 to MO2, MO10 to MO11) are included in the PLC program, these input/output terminals will only be used by the PLC. As an example, when the PLC program controls Y0 during PLC operation (PLC1 or PLC2), the corresponding output terminal relay (RA/RB/RC) will operate in accordance with the program. At this time, the multifunctional input/output terminal setting will be ineffective. Because these terminal functions are already being used by the PLC, the DI, DO, AO in use by the PLC can be determined by looking at parameter 02-52, 02-53, and 03-30.
- When the PLC's procedures use special register D1040, the corresponding AO contact AFM1 will be occupied, and AFM2 corresponding to special register D1045 will have the same situation.
- Parameter 03-30 monitors the state of action of the PLC function analog output terminal; Bit 0 corresponds to the AFM1 action state, and Bit 1 corresponds to the AFM2 action state.

16.3.2 I/O device explanation

Input devices

No	X0	X1	X2	X3	X4	X5	X6	X7	X10	X11	X12	X13	X14	X15	X16	X17
1①	FWD	REV	MI1	MI2	MI3	MI4	MI5	MI6	MI7	MI8						
2②											MI10	MI11	MI12	MI13	MI14	MI15
3③											MI10	MI11	MI12	MI13		

① Control I/O

② Expansion card EMC-D611A (D1022 = 4)

③ Expansion card EMC-D42A (D1022 = 5)

Output devices

No	Y0	Y1	Y2	Y3	Y4	Y5	Y6	Y7	Y10	Y11	Y12	Y13	Y14	Y15	Y16	Y17
1①	RY1	RY2		MO1	MO2											
2②						MO10	MO11									
3③						RY10	RY11	RY12	RY13	RY14	RY15					

① Control I/O

② Expansion card EMC-D42A (D1022 = 5)

③ Expansion card EMC-R6AA (D1022 = 6)

16.3.3 Installation of WPLSoft

See Delta's website for WPLSoft editing software:

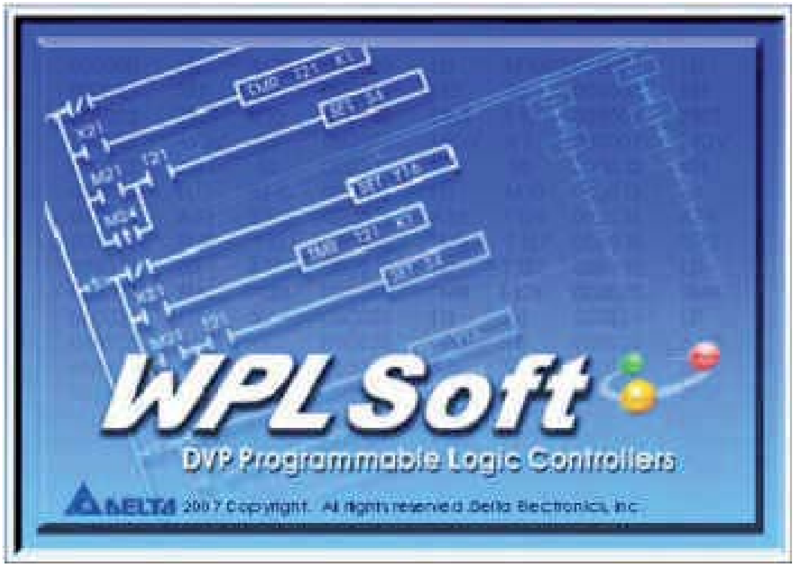
http://www.delta.com.tw/product/em/download/download_main.asp?act=3&pid=3&cid=1&tpid=3

16.3.4 Program writing

After completing the download, the WPLSoft program will be installed in the designated sub-folder:

C:\Program Files\Delta Industrial Automation\WPLSoft x.xx.

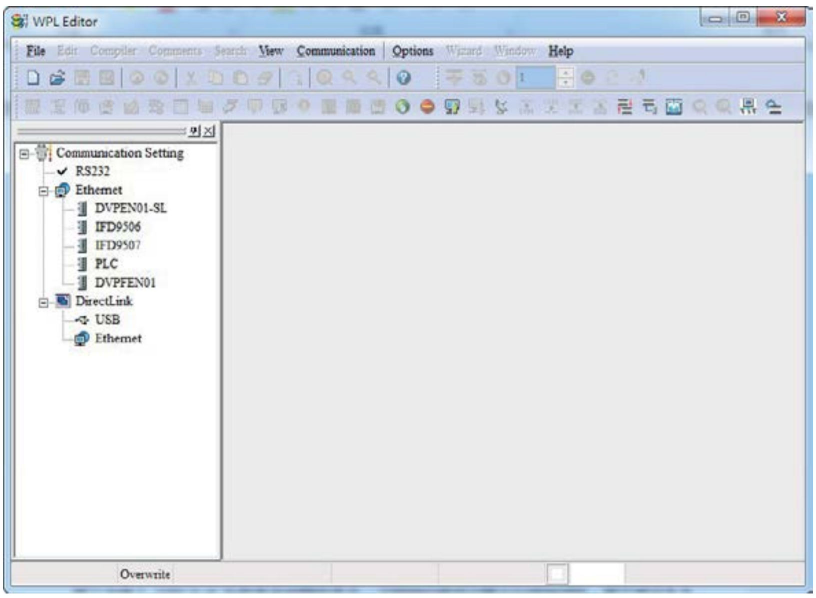
The editing software can now be run by clicking on the WPL icon using the mouse.



C2000_154

Fig. 16-4: Opening screen of WPLSoft

The WPL editing window will appear after 3 seconds (see figure below). When running WPLSoft for the first time, before "New file" has been used, only the "File", "Communications", " View", "Options", and "Help" columns will appear on the function toolbar.



C2000_155

Fig. 16-5: WPLSoft editing window

After running WPLSoft for the second time, the last file edited will open and be displayed in the editing window. The following figure provides an explanation of the WPLSoft editing software window:

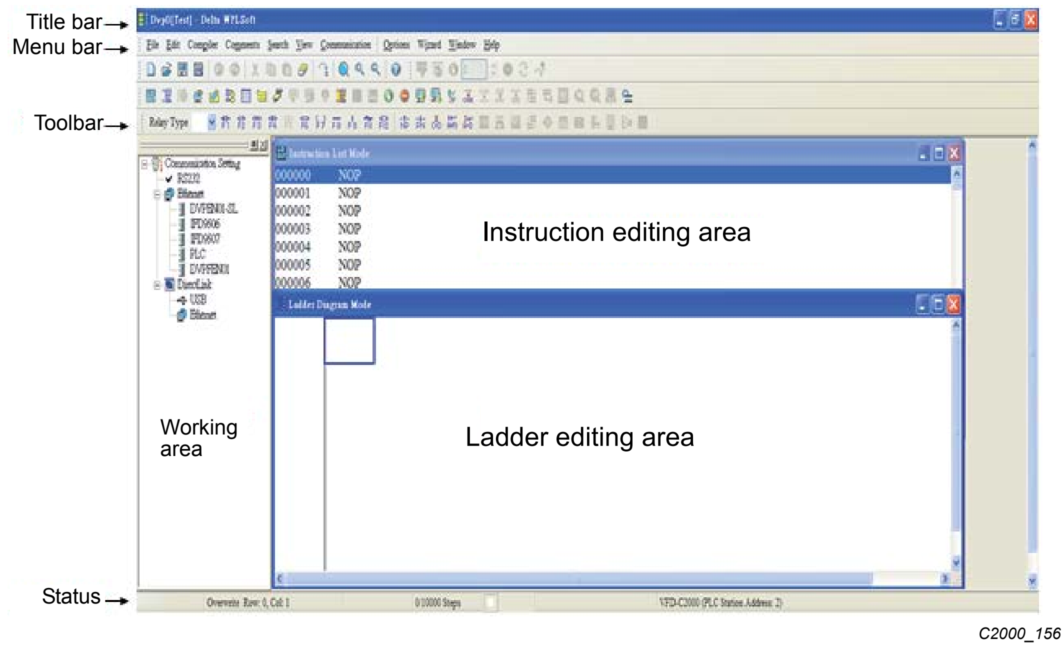


Fig. 16-6: Editing windows of WPLSoft

Click on the  icon on the toolbar in the upper left part of the screen: opens new file (Ctrl+N).

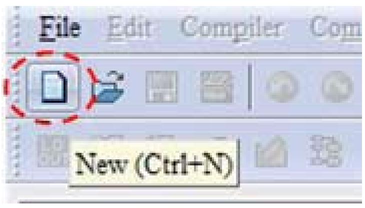


Fig. 16-7: Opening of a new file by clicking on the icon

You can also use "File (F)" => New file (N) (Ctrl+N)

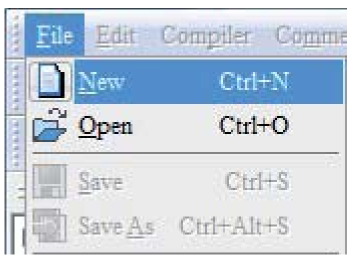


Fig. 16-8: Opening of a new file in the file menu

The "Device settings" window will appear after clicking. You can now enter the project title and filename, and select the device and communication settings to be used.

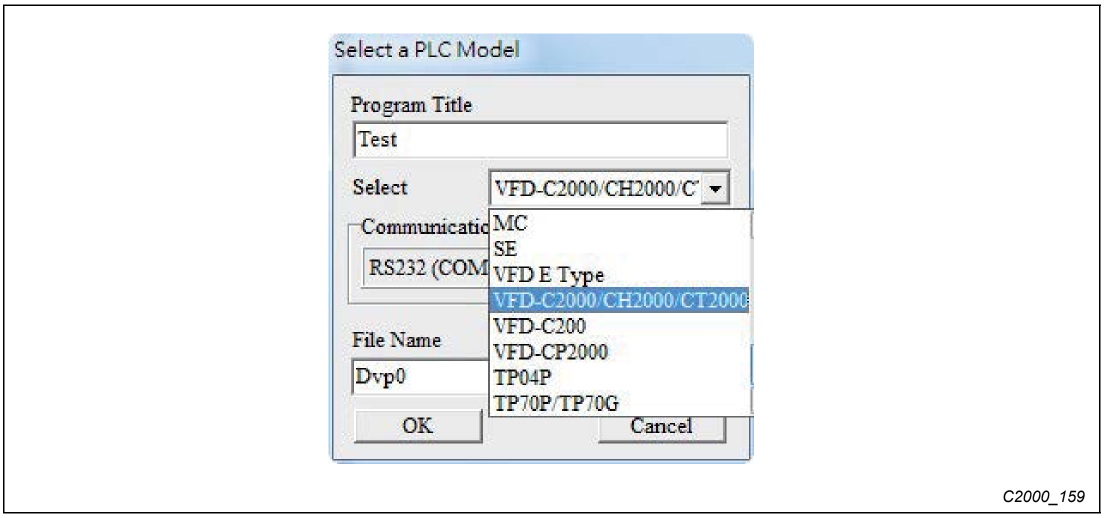


Fig. 16-9: Project settings

Perform settings in accordance with the desired communications method:

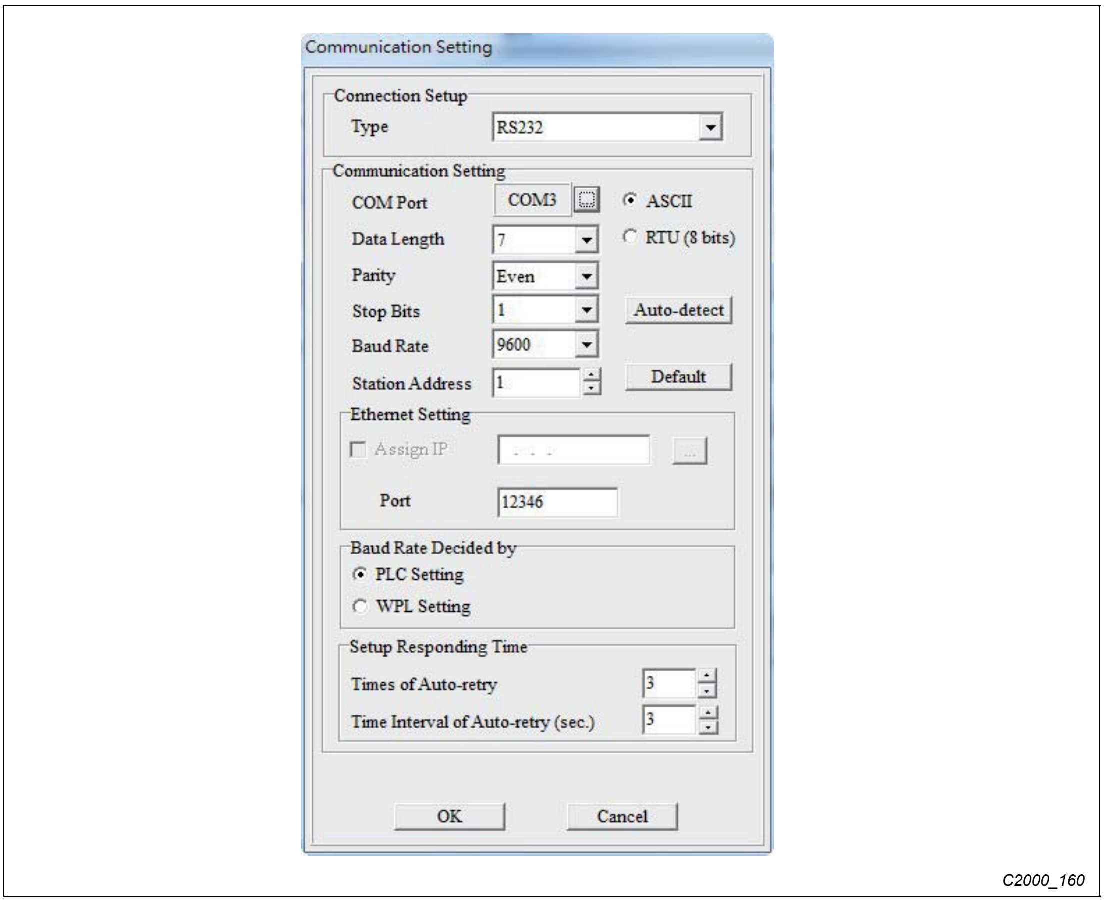
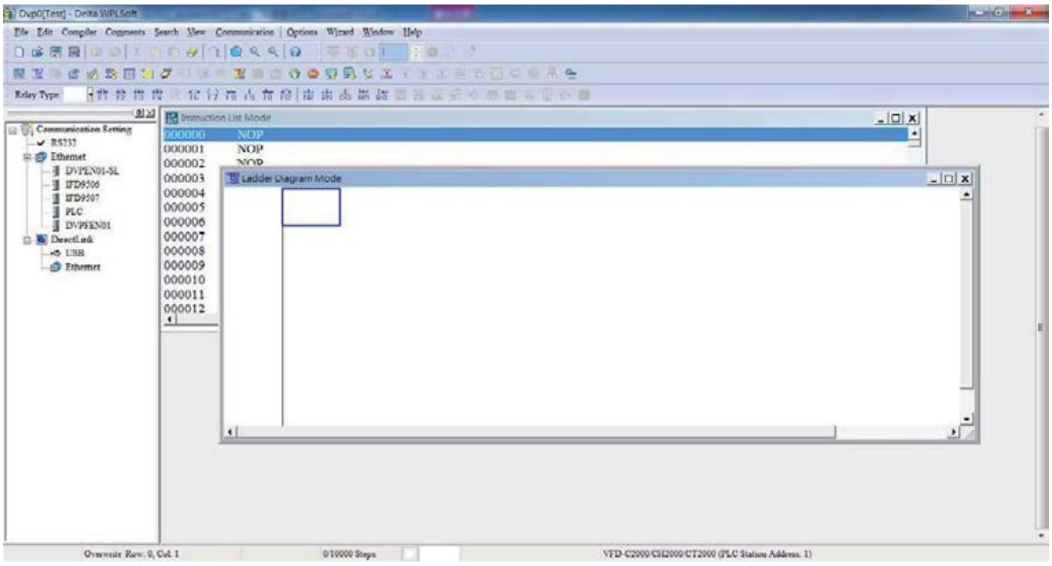


Fig. 16-10: Communications settings

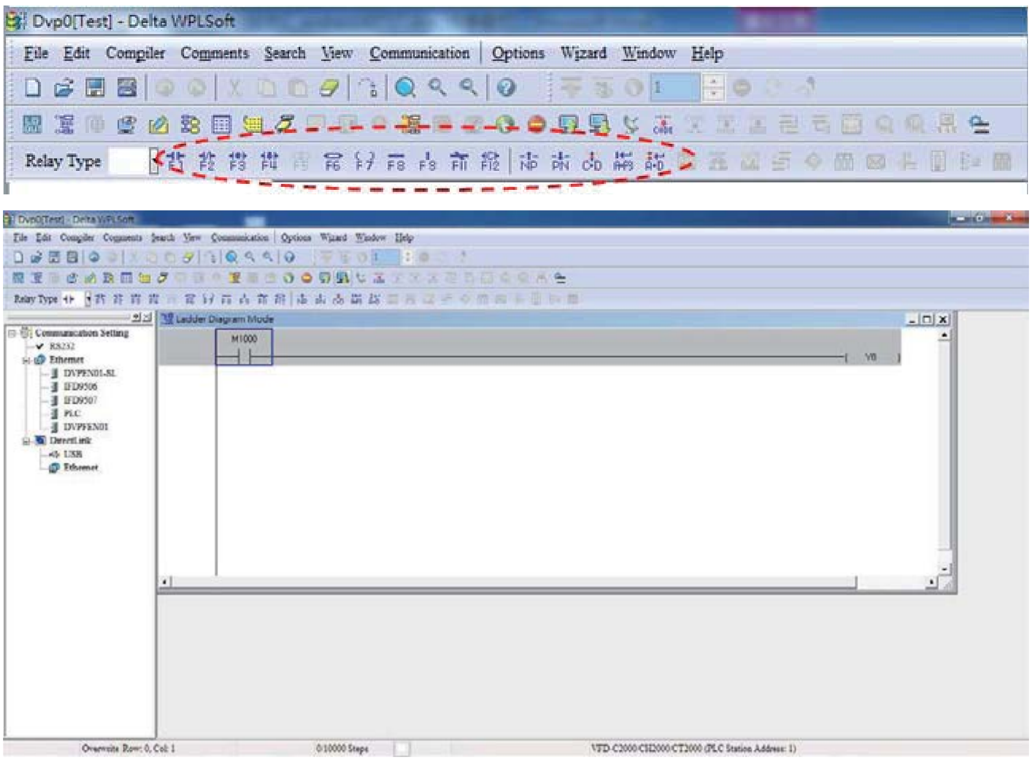
Press Confirm after completing settings and begin program editing. There are two program editing methods; you can choose whether to perform editing in the command mode or the ladder diagram mode.



C2000_161

Fig. 16-11: Editor windows for ladder and instruction list

In ladder diagram mode, you can perform program editing using the buttons on the function icon row.

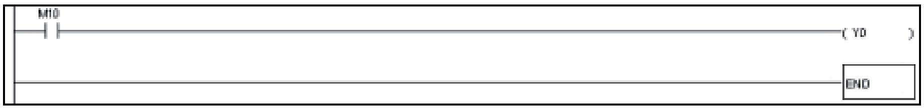


C2000_162

Fig. 16-12: Symbols for ladder programs in the tool bar

Input of a simple program

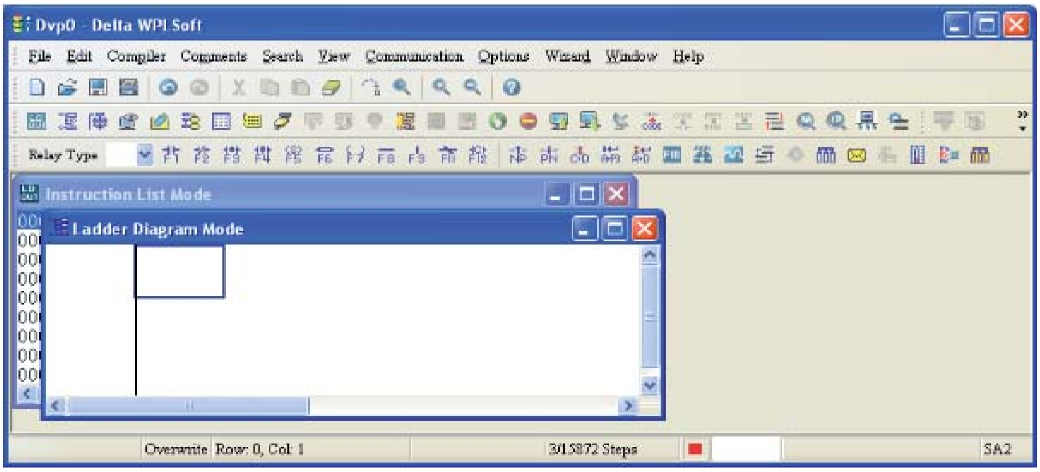
EXAMPLE The following ladder program outputs the status of the internal relay to Y10. The input is explained step by step.



C2000_163

■ Mouse operation and keyboard function key (F1 to F12) operation

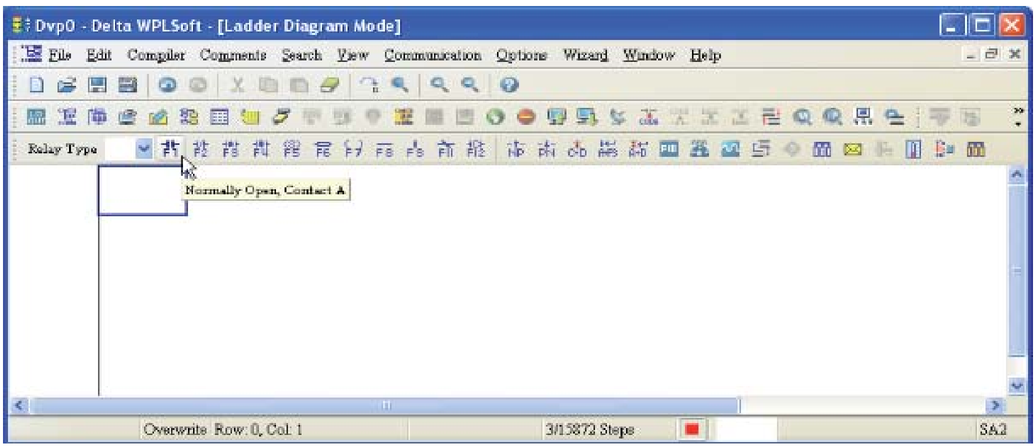
① The following screen will appear after a new file has been established:



C2000_164

Fig. 16-13: Empty ladder editor window

② Use the mouse to click on the always-open switch icon  or press the function key F1:



C2000_165

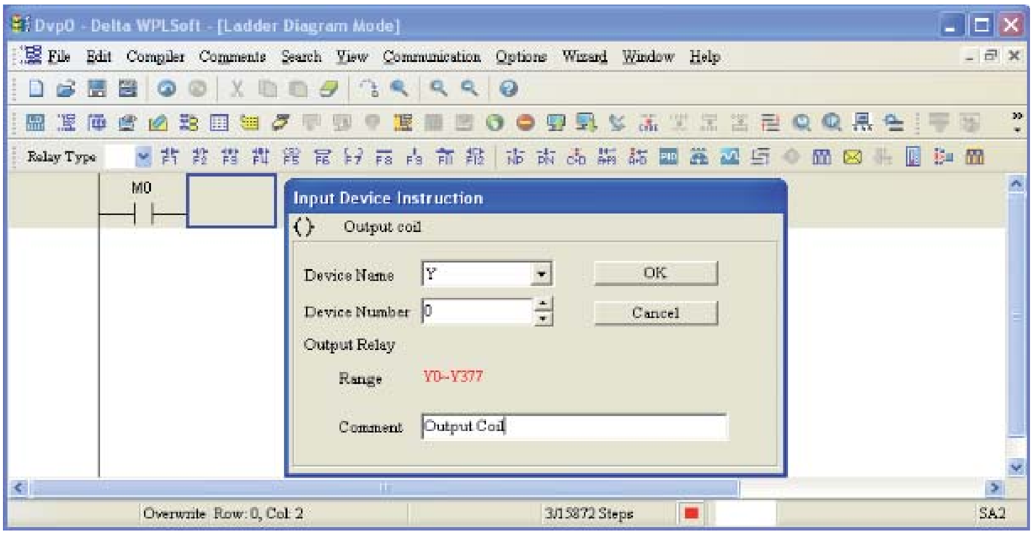
Fig. 16-14: Selection of an normally open (NO) contact

③ After the name of the input device and the comment dialog box have appeared, the device name (such as "M"), device number (such as "10"), and input comments (such as "auxiliary contact") can be selected; press the Confirm button when finished.

C2000_166

Fig. 16-15: Dialog box for allocation of a device

④ Click on the output coil icon or press function key F7. After the name of the input device and the comment dialog box have appeared, the device name (such as "Y"), device number (such as "0"), and input comments (such as "output coil") can be selected; press the Confirm button when finished.



C2000_167

Fig. 16-16: The output is allocated to the output instruction

⑤ Click on application command icon [F6] or press function key F6. Click on "All application commands" in the function classification field, and click on the End command in the application command pull-down menu, or use the keyboard to key in "End" in that field, and press the confirm button.

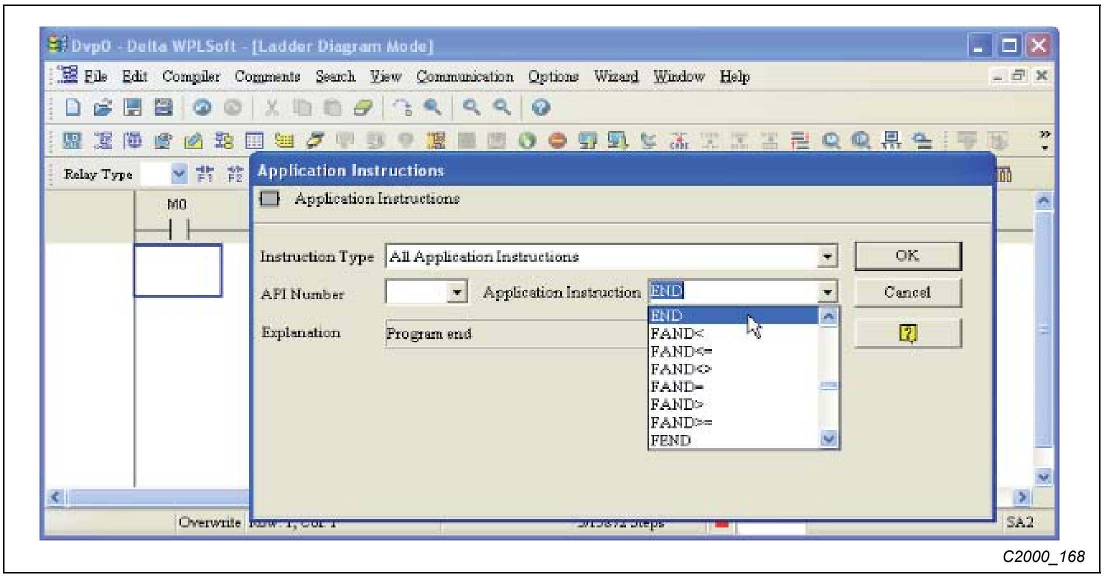


Fig. 16-17: Selection of an END instruction

⑥ Click on the [CODE] icon, which will compile the edited ladder diagram as a command program. After compiling, the number of steps will appear on the left side of the busbar.

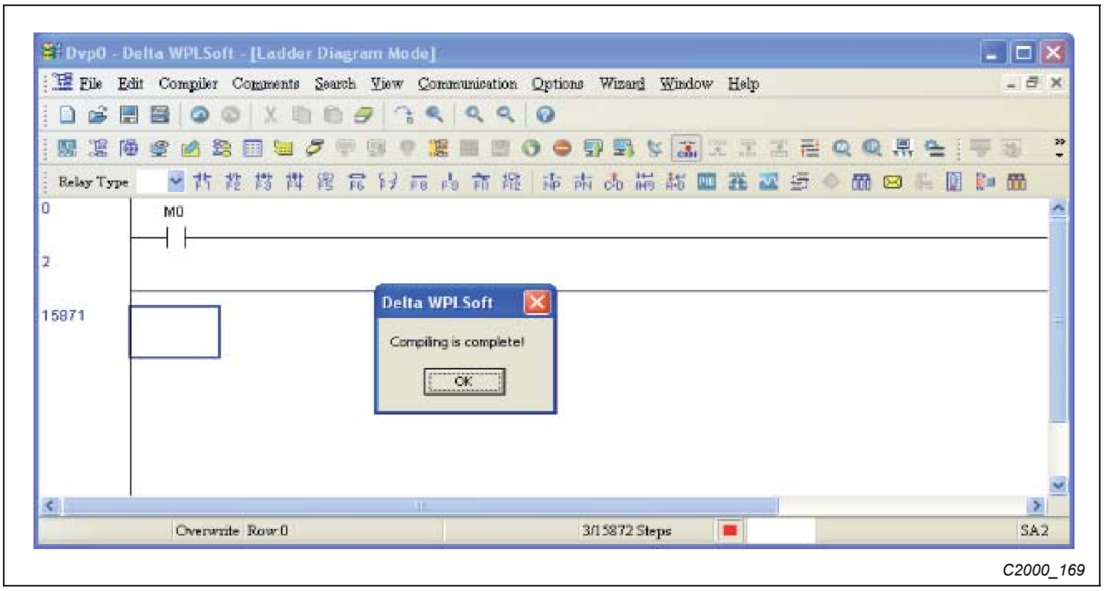


Fig. 16-18: The program has been compiled successfully

16.3.5 Program download

After inputting a program using WPLSoft, select compile . After completing compilation, select the  to download a program. WPLSoft will perform program download with the online PLC in the communications format specified in communications settings.

16.3.6 Program monitoring

While confirming that the PLC is in the Run mode, after downloading a program, click on  in the communications menu and select start ladder diagram control (see figure below):

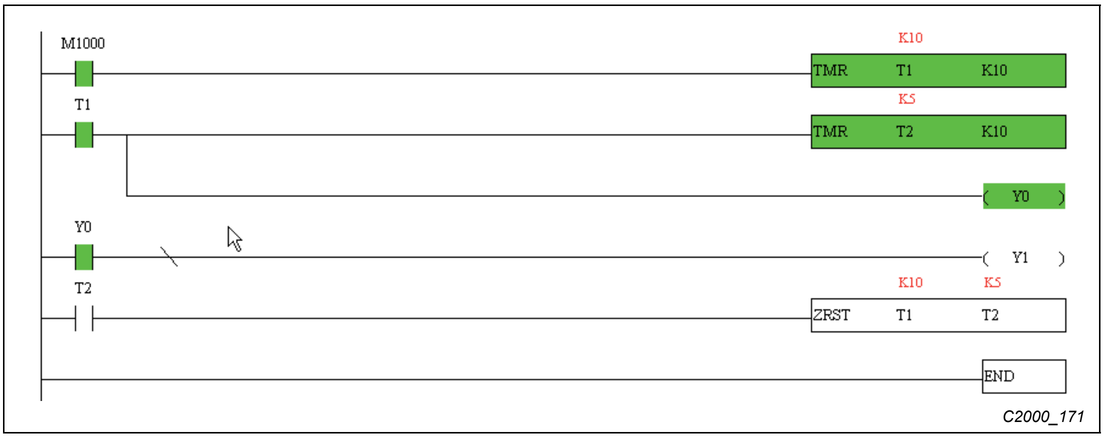


Fig. 16-19: Example for the display of the program in ladder diagram control mode

16.4 Basic principles of PLC ladder diagrams

16.4.1 Schematic diagram of PLC ladder diagram program scanning

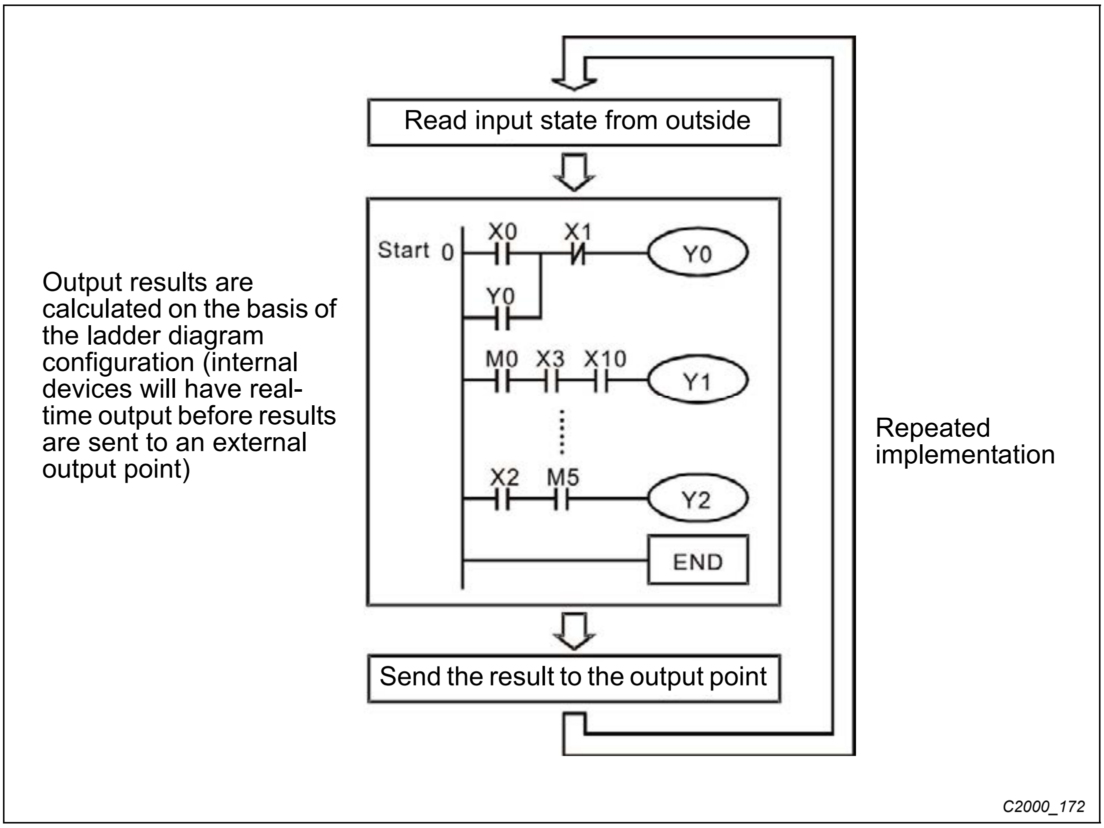


Fig. 16-20: Principle of cyclic program execution

16.4.2 Introduction to ladder diagrams

Ladder diagrams comprise a graphic language widely applied in automatic control, and employs common electrical control circuit symbols. After a ladder diagram editor has been used to create a ladder pattern, PLC program designed is completed. The use of a graphic format to control processes is very intuitive, and is readily accepted by personnel who are familiar with electrical control circuit technology. Many of the basic symbols and actions in a ladder diagram comprise commonly-seen electrical devices in conventional automatic control power distribution panels, such as buttons, switches, relays, timers, and counters.

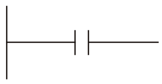
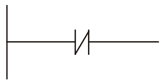
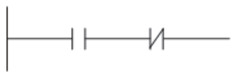
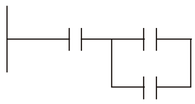
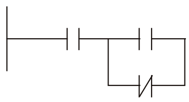
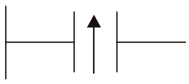
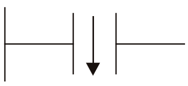
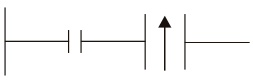
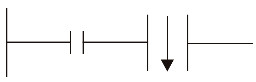
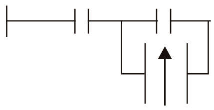
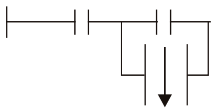
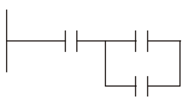
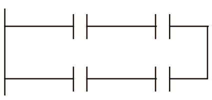
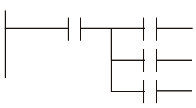
Internal PLC devices: The types and quantities of internal PLC devices vary in different brands of products. Although these internal devices use the same names as conventional electrical control circuit elements such as relays, coils, and contacts, a PLC does not actually contain these physical devices, and they instead correspond to basic elements in the PLC's internal memory (bits). For instance, if a bit is 1, this may indicate that a coil is electrified, and if that bit is 0, it will indicate that the coil is not electrified. An NO contact (Normal Open, or contact a) can be used to directly read the value of the corresponding bit, and an NC contact (Normal Close, or contact b) can be used to obtain the inverse of the bit's value. Multiple relays occupy multiple bits, and 8 bits comprise one byte; two bytes comprise one word, and two words comprise a double word. When multiple relays are processing at the same time (such as addition/subtraction or displacement, etc.), a byte, word, or double word can be used. Furthermore, a PLC contains two types of internal devices: a timer and a counter. It not only has a coil, but can count time and numerical values. Because of this, when it is necessary to process some numerical values, these values are usually in the form of bytes, words, or double words.

The various internal devices in a PLC all account for a certain quantity of storage units in the PLC's storage area. When these devices are used, the content of the corresponding storage area is red in the form of bits, bytes, or words.

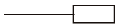
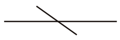
Device type	Description of function
Input relay	An input relay constitutes the basic unit of storage in a PLC's internal memory corresponding to an external input point (which serves as a terminal connecting with an external input switch and receiving external input signals). It is driven by external input signals, to which it assigns values of 0 or 1. A program design method cannot change the input relay status, and therefore cannot rewrite the corresponding basic units of an input relay, and WPLSoft cannot be used to perform compulsory On/Off actions. A relay's contacts (contacts a and b) can be used an unlimited number of times. An input relay with no input signal must be left idle and cannot be used for some other purpose. – Device indicated as: X0, X1, X7, X10, X11, etc. This device is expressed with the symbol "X," and a device's order is indicated with an octal number. Input point numbers are indicated in the main computer and in expansion devices.
Output relay	An output relay constitutes the basic unit of storage in a PLC's internal memory corresponding to an external output point (which connects with an external load). It may be driven by an input relay contact, a contact on another internal device, or its own contacts. It uses one NO contact to connect with external loads or other contacts, and, like input contacts, can use the contact an unlimited number of times. An output relay with no input signal will be idle, but may be used an internal relay if needed. – Device indicated as: Y0, Y1, Y7, Y10, Y11, etc. This device is expressed with the symbol "Y," and a device's order is indicated with an octal number. Output point numbers are indicated in the main computer and in expansion devices.
Internal relay	Internal relays have no direct connection with the outside. These relays are auxiliary relays inside a PLC. Their function is the same as that of an auxiliary (central) relay in an electrical control circuit: Each auxiliary relay corresponding to a basic unit of internal storage; they can be driven by input relay contacts, output relay contacts, and the contacts of other internal devices. An internal auxiliary relay's contact can also be used an unlimited number of times. Internal relays have no outputs to outside, and must output via an output point. – Device indicated as: M0, M1 to M799, etc. This device is expressed as the symbol "M," expressed, and its order is expressed as a decimal number.
Counter	A counter is used to perform counting operations. A count setting value (such as the number of pulses to be counted) must be assigned when a counter is used. A counter contains a coil, contact, and a counting storage device. When the coil goes from Off → On, this indicates that the counter has an input pulse, and one is added to its count. There are 16 bits that can be employed by the user. – Device indicated as: C0, C1 to C79, etc. This device is expressed as the symbol "C," expressed, and its order is expressed as a decimal number.
Timer	A timer is used to complete control of timing. The timer contains a coil, contact, and a time value register. When the coil is electrified, if the preset time is reached, the contact will be actuated (contact a will close, contact b will open), and the timer's fixed value be given by the set value. Timer has a regulated clock cycle (timing units: 100 ms). As soon as power to the coil is cut off, the contact will no longer be actuated (contact a will open, contact b will close), and the original timing value will return to zero. – Device indicated as: T0, T1 to T159, etc. The device is expressed as the symbol "T," and its order is expressed as a decimal number.
Data register	When a PLC is used to perform various types of sequence control and set time value and count value control, it most commonly perform data processing and numerical operations, and data registers are used exclusively for storage of data and various parameters. Each data register contains 16 bits of binary data, which means that it can store one word. Two data registers with adjacent numbers can be used to process double words. – Device indicated as: D0, D1 to D399, etc. The device is expressed as the symbol "D," and its order is expressed as a decimal number.

Tab. 16-3: Introduction to the basic internal devices in a PLC

Ladder diagram images and their explanation

Ladder diagram structures	Explanation of commands	Command	Using device
	NO switch, contact a	LD	X/Y/M/T/C
	NC switch, contact b	LDI	X/Y/M/T/C
	Series NO	AND	X/Y/M/T/C
	Series NC	ANI	X/Y/M/T/C
	Parallel NO	OR	X/Y/M/T/C
	Parallel NC	ORI	X/Y/M/T/C
	Positive edge-triggered switch	LDP	X/Y/M/T/C
	Negative edge-triggered switch	LDF	X/Y/M/T/C
	Positive edge-triggered series	ANDP	X/Y/M/T/C
	Negative edge-triggered series	ANDF	X/Y/M/T/C
	Positive edge-triggered parallel	ORP	X/Y/M/T/C
	Negative edge-triggered parallel	ORF	X/Y/M/T/C
	Block series	ANB	—
	Block parallel	ORB	—
	Multiple outputs	MPS MRD MPP	—

Tab. 16-4: Ladder diagram elements (1)

Ladder diagram structures	Explanation of commands	Command	Using device
	Coil driven output commands	OUT	—
	Some basic commands, applications commands	Some basic commands, Applications commands	Depends on the command
	Inverted logic	INV	—

Tab. 16-4: Ladder diagram elements (2)

16.4.3 Using switches and sensors

PLC programs need to be able respond to signals from switches, buttons and sensors to perform the correct functions. It is important to understand that program instructions can only poll the **binary signal state** of the specified input – irrespective of the type of input and how it is controlled.

This means that when you are writing your program you need to be aware whether the element connected to the input of your PLC is a make or a break device. An input connected to a normally open device must be treated differently to an input connected to a normally closed device.

Usually, switches with normally open contacts are used. Sometimes, however, normally closed contacts are used for safety reasons – for example for switching off drives.

16.4.4 Overview of PLC ladder diagram editing

The program editing method begins from the left busbar and proceeds to the right busbar (the right busbar is omitted when editing using WPLSoft). Continue to the next row after completing each row; there is a maximum of 11 contacts on each row. If this is not sufficient, a continuous line will be will be generated to indicate the continued connection and more devices can be added. A continuous series of numbers will be generated automatically and identical input points can be used repeatedly. See figure below:

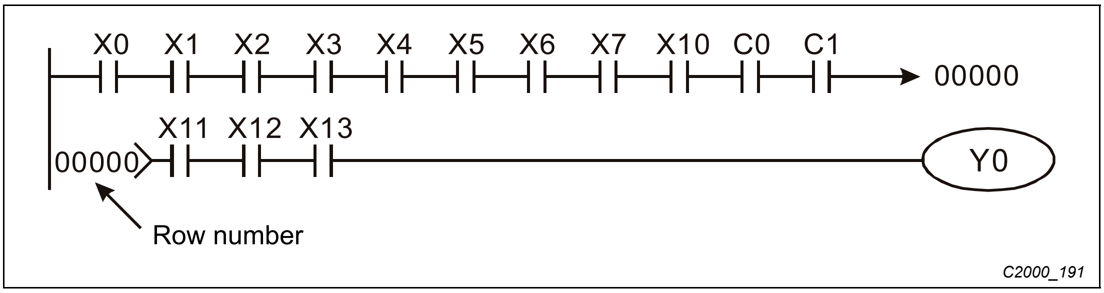


Fig. 16-21: The whole row contains more than 11 contacts and is therefore divided.

The ladder diagram programming method involves scanning from the upper left corner to the lower right corner. The coils and applications command computing box are handled in the output, and the ladder diagram is placed on the farthest right. Taking the figure below as an example, we can gradually analyze the procedural sequence of the ladder diagram. The number in the upper right corner gives the sequential order.

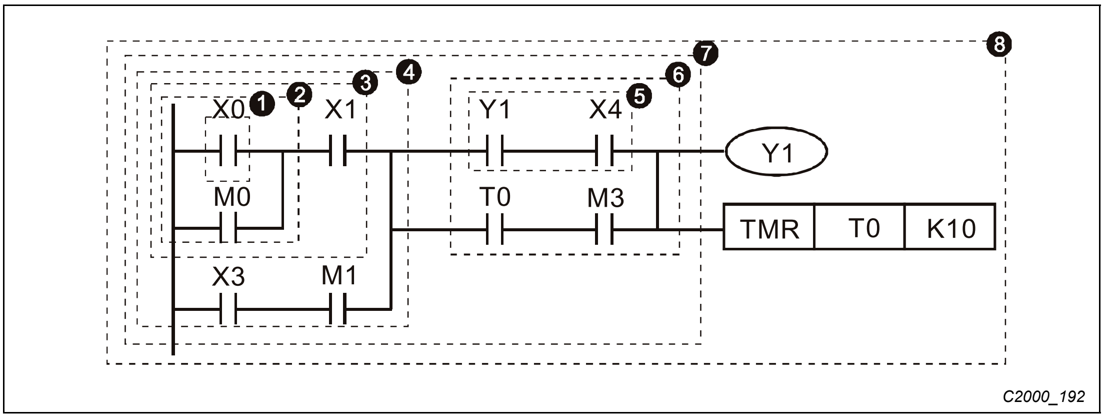


Fig. 16-22: Explanation of command sequence

❶ LD X0

❷ OR M0

❸ AND X1

❹ LD X3
AND M1
ORB

❺ LD Y1
AND X4

❻ LD T0
AND M3
ORB

❼ ANB

❽ OUT Y1
TMR T0 K10

Explanation of basic structure of ladder diagrams

■ LD and LDI command

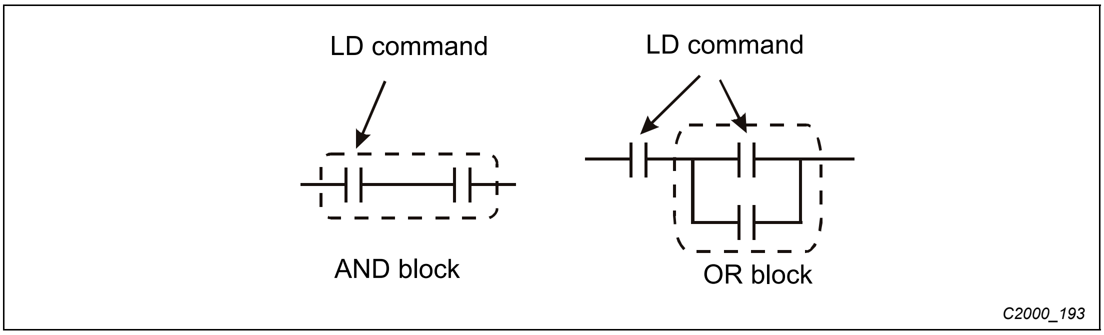


Fig. 16-23: LD command; the LDI command uses a normally closed contact

■ LDP and LDF command

LDP and LDF have this command structure, but there are differences in their action state. LDP, LDF only act at the rising or falling edge of a conducting contact. (see figure below):

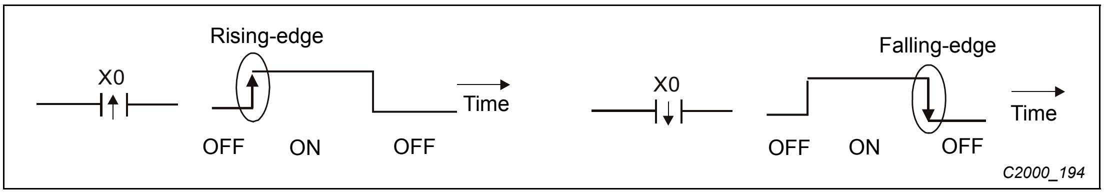


Fig. 16-24: LDP command (left) and LDF command (right)

■ AND and ANI command

A series configuration in which a single device is connected with one device or a block.

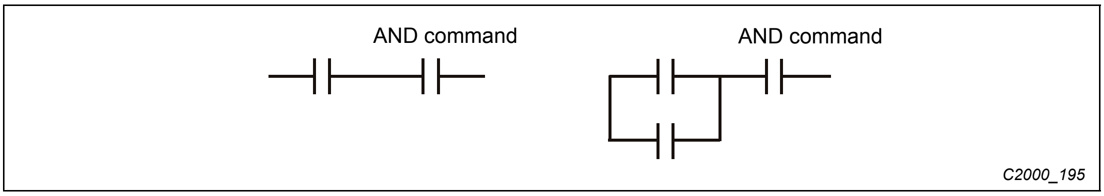


Fig. 16-25: AND command; the ANI command uses a normally closed contact

■ ANDP and ANDF command

ANDP, ANDF also have structures like this, but their action occurs at the rising and falling edge.

■ OR and ORI command

A single device is connected with one device or a block.

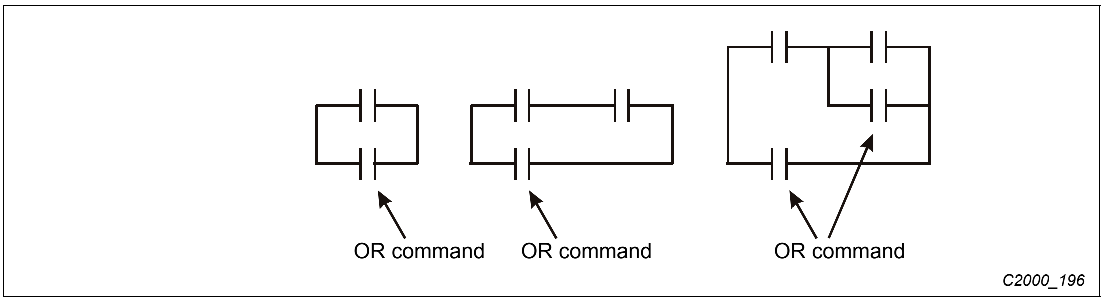


Fig. 16-26: OR command; the ORI command uses a normally closed contact

■ ORP and ORF command

ORP, ORF also have identical structures like OR and ORI, but their action occurs at the rising and falling edge.

■ ANB and ORB command

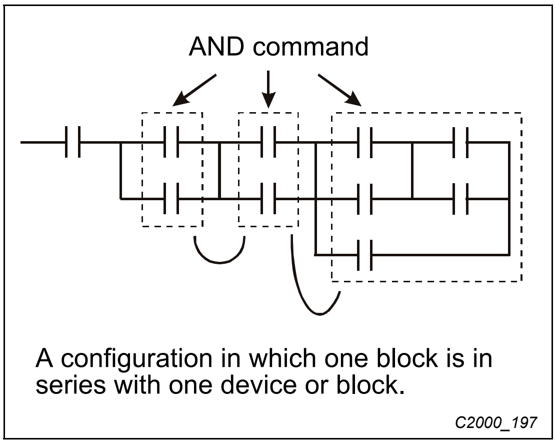


Fig.16-27: ANB commands

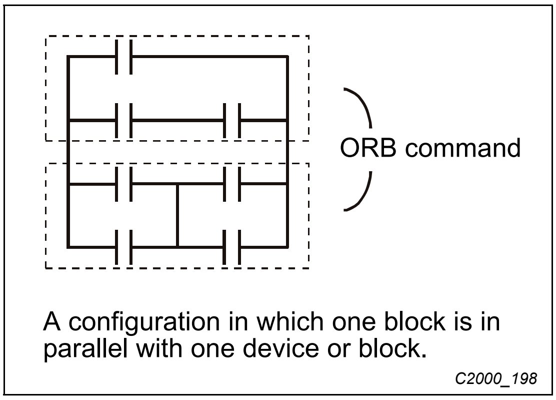


Fig.16-28: ORB commands

In the case of ANB and ORB operations, if a number of blocks are connected, they should be combined to form a block or network from the top down or from left to right.

■ MPS, MRD, MPP commands

Branching point memory for multiple outputs, enabling multiple, different outputs. The MPS command begins at a branching point, where the so-called branching point refers to the intersection of horizontal and vertical lines. We have to rely on the contact status along a single vertical line to determine whether the next contact can give a memory command. While each contact is basically able to give memory commands, in view of convenience and the PLC's capacity restrictions, this can be omitted from some places when converting a ladder diagram. The structure of the ladder diagram can be used to judge what kinds of contact memory commands are used.

MPS can be distinguished by use of the ┬ symbol; this command can be used consecutively for up to 8 times. The MRD command is read from branching point memory; because logic states along any one vertical line must be the same, in order to continue analysis of other ladder diagrams, the original contact status must be read.

MRD can be distinguished by use of the ├ symbol. The MPP command is read from the starting state of the uppermost branching point, and it is read from the stack (pop); because it is the final command along a vertical line, it indicates that the state of the vertical line can be concluded.

MPP can be distinguished by use of the └ symbol. Although there should basically be no errors when using the foregoing analytical approach, the compiling program may sometimes omit identical state output, as shown in the following figure:

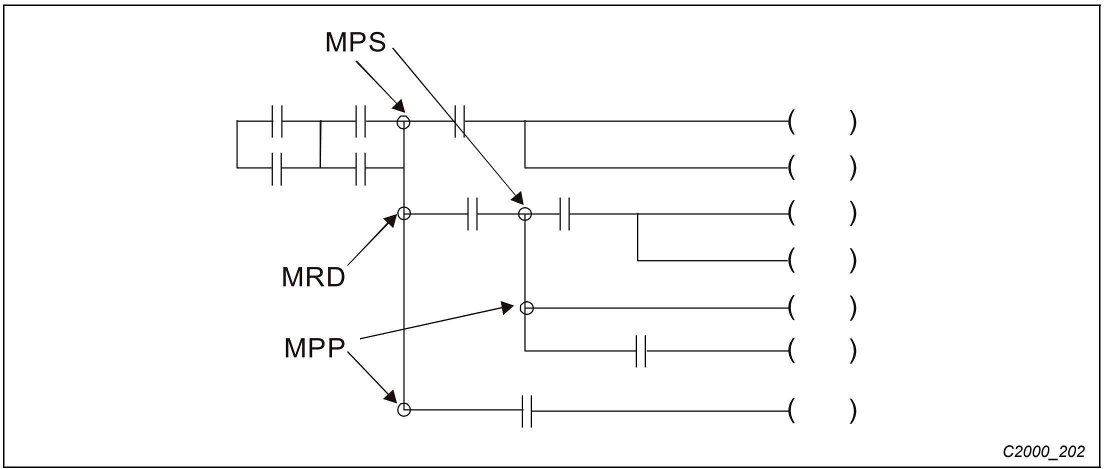


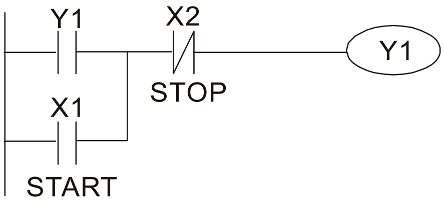
Fig. 16-29: MPS, MRD, and MPP commands

16.4.5 Commonly-used basic program design examples

Start, stop, and protection

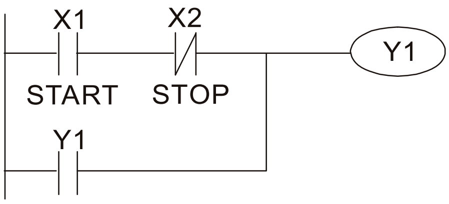
Some applications may require a brief close or brief break using the buttons to start and stop equipment. A protective circuit must therefore be designed to maintain continued operation in these situations; this protective circuit may employ one of the following methods:

EXAMPLE 1 Priority stop protective circuit
When the start NO contact X1 = On, and the stop NC contact X2 = Off, Y1 = On; if X2 = On at this time, coil Y1 will no longer be electrified, and this is therefore referred to as priority stop.



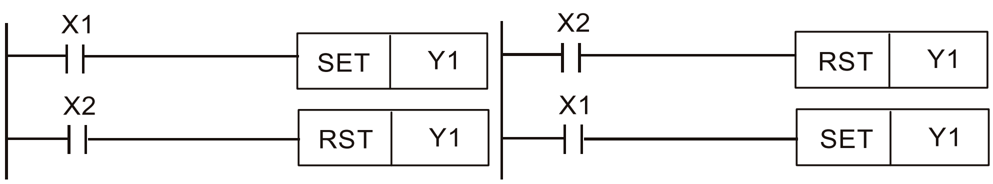
C2000_203

EXAMPLE 2 Priority start protective circuit
When start NO contact X1 = On, and the stop NC contact X2 = Off, Y1 = On, and coil Y1 will be electrified and protected. At this time, if X2 = On, coil Y1 will still protect the contact and continue to be electrified, and this is therefore priority start.



C2000_203

EXAMPLE 3 The following figure shows a protective circuit composed of RST and SET commands. Priority stop occurs when the RST command is placed after the SET command. Because the PLC executes programs from the top down, at the end of the program, the state of Y1 will indicate whether coil Y1 is electrified. When X1 and X2 are both actuated, Y1 will lose power, and this is therefore priority stop.
Priority start occurs when the SET command is placed after the RST command. When X1 and X2 are both actuated, Y1 will be electrified, and this is therefore priority start.

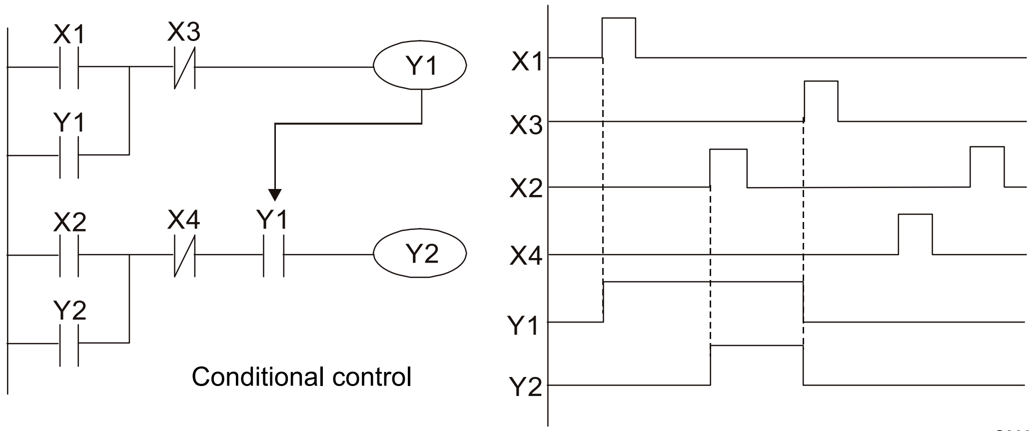


Setting (SET) and reset (RST) command protective circuit

C2000_205

Commonly-used control circuits

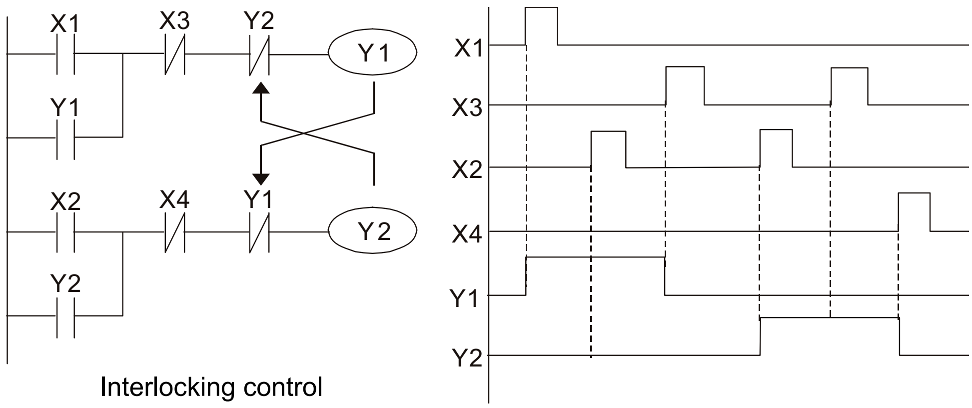
EXAMPLE 4 X1, X3 are respectively start/stop Y1, and X2, X4 are respectively start/stop Y2; all have protective circuits. Because Y1's NO contact is in series with Y2's circuit, it becomes an AND condition for the actuation of Y2. The action of Y1 is therefore a condition for the action of Y2, and Y1 must be actuated before Y2 can be actuated.



Conditional control

C2000_206

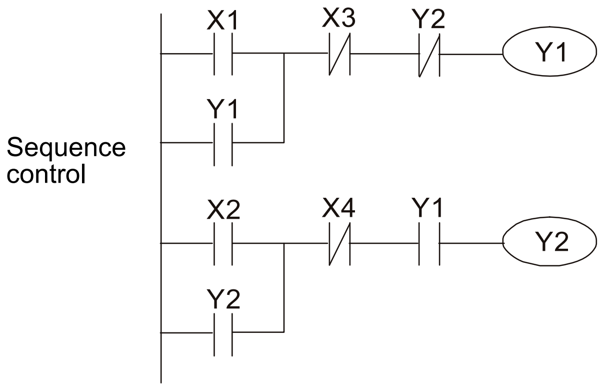
EXAMPLE 5 The figure below shows an interlocking control circuit. Depending on which of the start contacts X1, X2 is valid first, the corresponding output Y1 or Y2 will be actuated, and when one is actuated, the other will not be actuated. This implies that Y1 and Y2 cannot be actuated at the same time (interlocking effect). Even if both X1 and X2 are valid at the same time, because the ladder diagram program is scanned from the top down, it is impossible for Y1 and Y2 to be actuated at same time. This ladder diagram assigns priority only to Y1.



Interlocking control

C2000_207

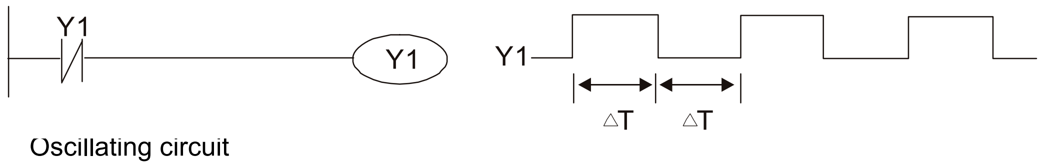
EXAMPLE 6 If the NC contact of Y2 in the interlocking control configuration of example 5 is put in series with the Y1 circuit, so that it is an AND condition for actuation of Y1 (see figure below), not only is Y1 a condition for the actuation of Y2 in this circuit, the actuation of Y2 will also stop the actuation of Y1. This configuration confirms the actuation order of Y1 and Y2.



C2000_208

EXAMPLE 7 Oscillating circuit with a period of △T + △T

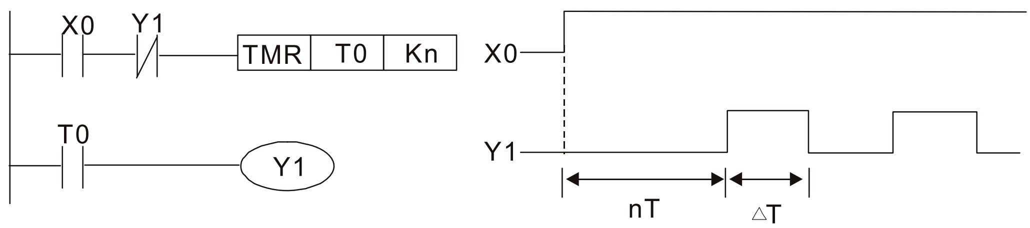
The figure below shows a very simple ladder diagram. When starting to scan the Y1 NC contact, because the Y1 coil has lost power, the Y1 NC contact will be closed. When the Y1 coil is then scanned, it will be electrified, and the output will be 1. When the Y1 NC contact is scanned in the scanning cycle, because Y1 coil is electrified, the Y1 NC contact will be open, the Y1 coil will then lose power, and the output will be 0. Following repeated scanning, the output of Y1 coil will have an oscillating waveform with a period of △T (On) +△T (Off).



C2000_209

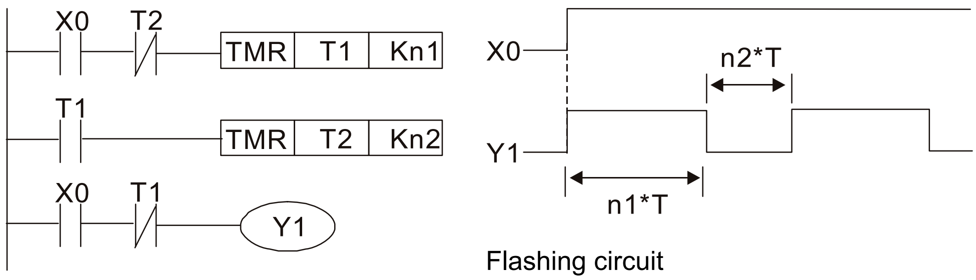
Oscillating circuit with a period of nT+△T

The program of the ladder diagram shown below uses timer T0 to control coil Y1's electrified time. After Y1 is electrified, it causes timer T0 to close during the next scanning cycle, which will cause the output from Y1 to have the oscillating waveform shown in the figure below. Here n is the timer's decimal setting value, and T is the clock cycle of the timer.



C2000_210

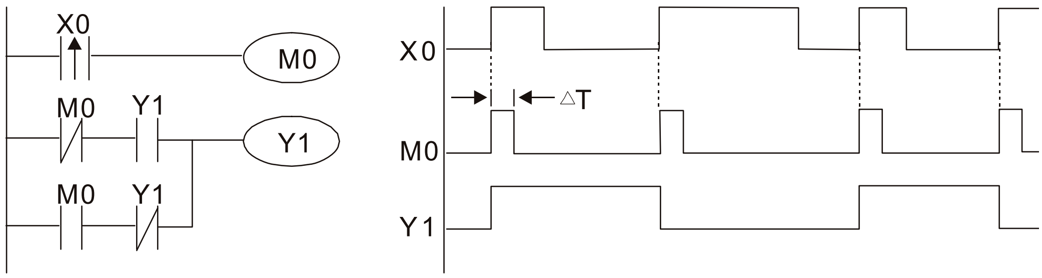
EXAMPLE 8 The following figure shows an oscillating circuit of a type commonly used to cause an indicator light to flash or a buzzers to buzz. It uses two timers to control the On and Off time of Y1 coil. Here n1, n2 are the timing set values of T1 and T2, and T is the clock cycle of the timer.



Flashing circuit

C2000_211

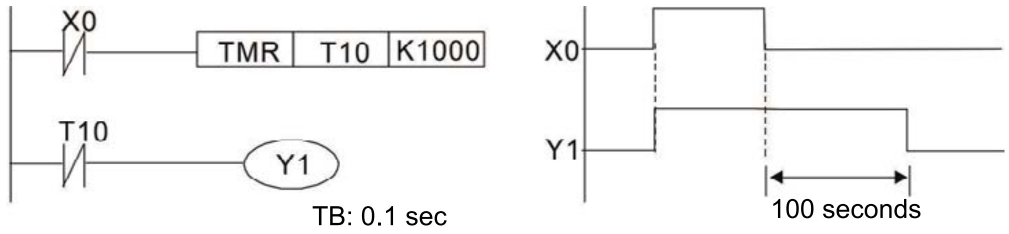
EXAMPLE 9 In the figure below, a command consisting of the differential of the rising edge of X0 causes coil M0 to generate a single pulse for △T (length of one scanning cycle), and coil Y1 is electrified during this scanning cycle. Coil M0 loses power during the next scanning cycle, and NC contact M0 and NC contact Y1 are both closed. This causes coil Y1 to stay in an electrified state until there is another rising edge in input X0, which again causes the electrification of coil M0 and the start of another scanning cycle, while also causing coil Y1 to lose power, etc. The sequence of these actions can be seen in the figure below. This type of circuit is commonly used to enable one input to perform two actions in alternation. It can be seen from the time sequence in the figure below that when input X0 is a square wave signal with a period of T, the output of coil Y1 will be a square wave signal with a period of 2T.



Triggering circuit

C2000_212

EXAMPLE 10 When input X0 is On, because the corresponding NC contact will be Off, the timer T10 will be in no power status, and output coil Y1 will be electrified. T10 will receive power and begin timing only after input X0 is Off, and output coil Y1 will be delayed for 100 sec. (K1000*0.1 sec. = 100 sec.) before losing power; please refer to the sequence of actions in the figure below.

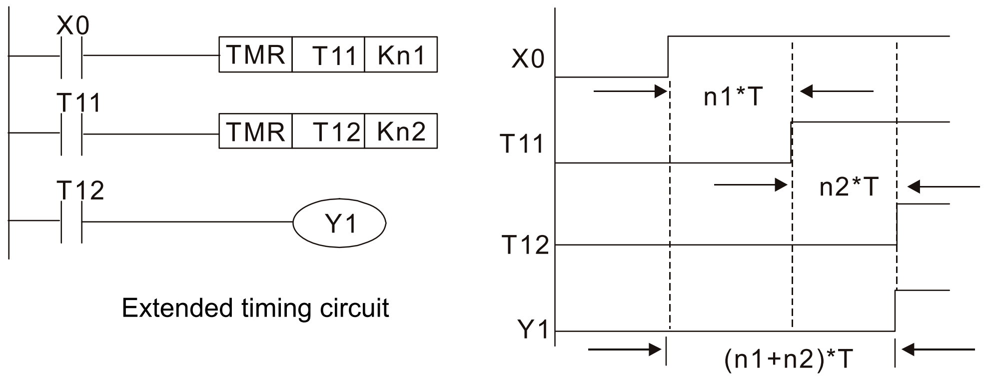


Delay circuit

C2000_213

EXAMPLE 11 The open/close delay circuit is composed of two timers; output Y4 will have a delay whether input X0 is On or Off.

EXAMPLE 12 The open/close delay circuit is composed of two timers; output Y4 will have a delay whether input X0 is On or Off.



C2000_214

16.5 Various PLC device functions

Item	Specifications	Notes
Algorithmic control method	Program stored internally, alternating back-and-forth scanning method	
Input/output control method	When it starts again after ending (after execution to the END command), the input/output has an immediate refresh command	
Algorithmic processing speed	Basic commands (several μs)	Applications command (1 μs to several tens of μs)
Programming language	Command and ladder diagram	
Program capacity	10000 steps	
Input/output terminal	Input (X): 10, output (Y): 4	This number of contacts constitutes C2000 input/output contacts; other devices have different correspondences

Tab. 16-5: General system data

Type	Device	Item		Range		Function
Relay bit form	X	External input relay		X0–X17, 16 points, octal number	Total 32 points	Corresponds to external input point
	Y	External output relay		Y0–Y17, 16 points, octal number		Corresponds to external output point
	M	Auxiliary relay	General use	M0–M799, 800 points	Total 880 points	Contact can switch On/Off within the program
			Special purpose	M1000–M1079, 80 points		
	T	Timer	100 ms timer	T0–T159, 160 points	Total 160 points	Timers referred to by the TMR command; contact of the T with the same number will go On when the time is reached
	C	Counter	16-bit counter, general use	C0–C79, 80 points	Total 80 points	Counter referred to by the CNT command; contact of the C with the same number will go On when the count is reached
Register word data	T	Current timer value		T0–T159, 160 points		The contact will be On when the time is reached
	C	Current counter value		C0–C79, 16-bit counter 80 points		The counter contact will come On when the count is reached
	D	Data register	Used to maintain power Off	D0–D399, 400 points	Total 1400 points	Used as data storage memory area
			Special purpose	D1000–D1199, 200 points D2000–D2799, 800 points		
Constant	K	Decimal	Single-byte	Setting range: K-32,768–K32,767		
			Double-byte	Setting range: K-2,147,483,648–K2,147,483,647		
	H	Hexa-decimal	Single-byte	Setting range: H0000–HFFFF		
			Double-byte	Setting range: H00000000–HFFFFFFFF		

Tab. 16-6: Devices of the build-in PLC

16.5.1 Introduction to device functions

Inputs (X)

Input contact X functions: Input contact X is connected with an input device, and reads input signals entering the PLC. The number of times that contact a or b of input contact X is used in the program is not subject to restrictions. The On/Off state of input contact X will change as the input device switches On and Off; a peripheral device (WPLSoft) cannot be used to force contact X On or Off.

Outputs (Y)

The job of output contact Y is to send an On/Off signal to drive the load connected with output contact Y. Output contacts consist of two types: relays and transistors. While number of times that contact a or b of each output contact Y is used in the program is not subject to restrictions, it is recommended that the number of output coil Y be used only once in a program, otherwise the right to determine the output state when the PLC performs program scanning will be assigned to the program's final output Y circuit.

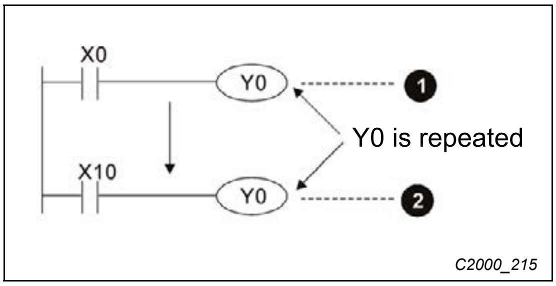


Fig.16-30: The output of Y0 will be decided by circuit 2, i.e. decided by On/Off of X10.

The PLC can use five types of numerical values to implement calculations based on its control tasks; the following is an explanation of the missions and functions of different numerical values.

Numbering systems

- Binary Number, BIN

The PLC's numerical operations and memory employ binary numbers. Binary nibbles and relevant terms are explained as follows:

Term	Description
Bit	Bits are the fundamental units of binary values, and have a state of either 1 or 0
Nibble	Comprised of a series of 4 bits (such as b3-b0); can be used to express a one-nibble decimal number 0-9 or hexadecimal number: 0-F.
Byte	Comprised of a series of two nibbles (i.e. 8 bits, b7-b0); can express a hexadecimal number: 00-FF.
Word	Comprised of a series of two bytes (i.e. 16 bits, b15-b0); can express a hexadecimal number with four nibbles: 0000-FFFF.
Double word	Comprised of a series of two words (i.e. 32 bits, b31-b0); can express a hexadecimal number with eight nibbles: 00000000-FFFFFFFF

Tab. 16-7: Terms in a binary system

Relationship between bits, digits, nibbles, words, and double words in a binary system (see figure below):

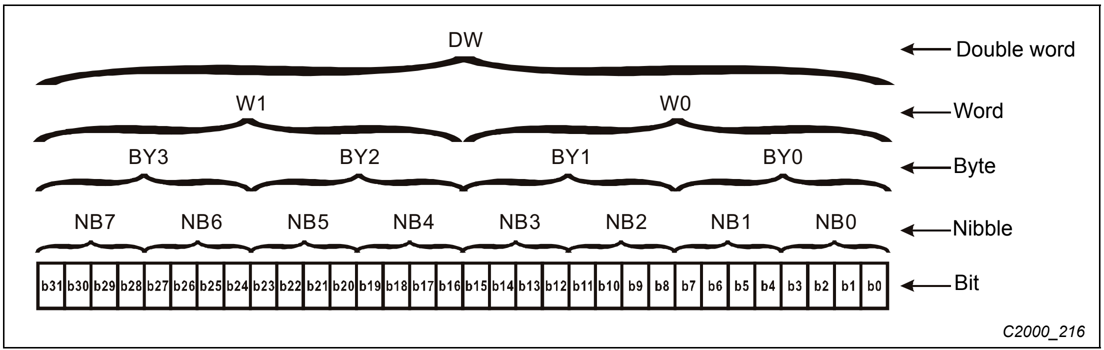


Fig. 16-31: Relationships in a binary system

■ Octal number, OCT

The external input and output terminals of a DVP-PLC are numbered using octal numbers

Example: External input: X0–X7, X10–X17…(Device number table);

External output: Y0–Y7, Y10–Y17…(Device number table)

■ Decimal number, DEC

Decimal numbers are used for the following purposes in a PLC system:

The setting values of timer T or counter C, such as TMR C0 K50. (K constant)

The numbers of devices including M, T, C, or D, such as M10 or T30. (device number)

Used as a operand in an application command, such as MOV K123 D0. (K constant)

■ Binary code decimal, BCD

Uses one nibble or 4 bits to express the data in a decimal number; a series of 16 bits can therefore express a decimal number with 4 nibbles. Chiefly used to read the input value of a fingerwheel numerical switch input or output a numerical value to a seven-segment display driver.

■ Hexadecimal number, HEX

Applications of hexadecimal numbers in a PLC system: Used as operands in application commands, such as MOV H1A2B D0. (H constant)

Constants

Device	Length	Symbol	System	Range
Constant	Single-byte	K	Decimal	K-32,768–K32,767
	Double-byte			K-2,147,483,648–K2,147,483,647
	Single-byte	H	Hexadecimal	H0000–HFFFF
	Double-byte			H00000000–HFFFFFFFF

Tab. 16-8: Numerical value, constant [K]/[H]

■ Constant K

Decimal numbers are usually prefixed with a "K" in a PLC system, such as K100. This indicates that it is a decimal number with a numerical value of 100.

Exceptions: K can be combined with bit device X, Y, M, or S to produce data in the form of a nibble, byte, word, or double word, such as in the case of K2Y10 or K4M100. Here K1 represents a 4-bit combination, and K2-K4 variously represent 8-, 12-, and 16-bit combinations.

■ Constant H

Hexadecimal numbers are usually prefixed with the letter "H" in a PLC system, such as in the case of H100, which indicates a hexadecimal number with a numerical value of 100.

Functions of auxiliary relays

Like an output relay Y, an auxiliary relay M has an output coil and contacts a and b, and the number of times they can be used in a program is unrestricted. Users can use an auxiliary relay M to configure the control circuit, but cannot use it to directly drive an external load. Auxiliary relays have the following two types of characteristics:

Ordinary auxiliary relays: Ordinary auxiliary relays will all revert to the Off state if a power outage occurs while the PLC is running, and will remain in the Off state if power is again turned down.

Special purpose auxiliary relays: Each special purpose auxiliary relay has its own specific use. Do not use any undefined special purpose auxiliary relays.

Timer functions

Timers take 100 ms as their timing units. When the timing method is an upper time limit, when the current timer value = set value, power will be sent to the output coil. Timer setting values consist of decimal K values, and the data register D can also serve as a setting value.

Actual timer setting time = timing units * set value

Counter

■ Counter features

Item	16-bit counter
Type	General Type
CT Direction:	Score
Setting	0–32,767
Designation of set value	Constant K or data register D
Change in current value	When the count reaches the set value, there is no longer a count
Output contact	When the count reaches the set value, the contact comes On and stays On
Reset	The current value reverts to 0 when an RST command is executed, and the contact reverts to Off
Contact actuation	All are actuated after the end of scanning

Tab. 16-9: Counter of the build-in PLC

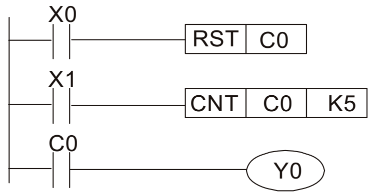
■ Counter functions

When a counter's counting pulse input signal goes Off → On, if the counter's current value is equal to the set value, the output coil will come On. The setting value will be a decimal K values, and the data register D can also serve as a setting value.

– 16-bit counter C0–C79

- ■ 16-bit counter setting range: K0-K32,767. (When K0 and K1 are identical, the output contact will immediately be On during the first count.)
- ■ The current counter value will be cleared from an ordinary counter when power is shut off to the PLC.
- ■ If the MOV command or WPLSoft is used to transmit a value greater than the set value to the C0 current value register, when the next X1 goes from Off → On, the C0 counter contact will change to On, and the current value will change to the set value.
- ■ A counter's setting value may be directly set using a constant K or indirectly set using the value in register D (not including special data registers D1000–D1199 and D2000–D2799).
- ■ If the set value employs a constant K, it may only be a positive number; the set value may be either a positive or negative number if the value in data register D is used. The current counter value will change from 32,767 to -32,768 as the count continues to accumulate.

EXAMPLE Example for counter




```
LD  X0
RSTC0
LD  X1
CNT C0  K
LD   C0
OUT Y0
```

C2000_218

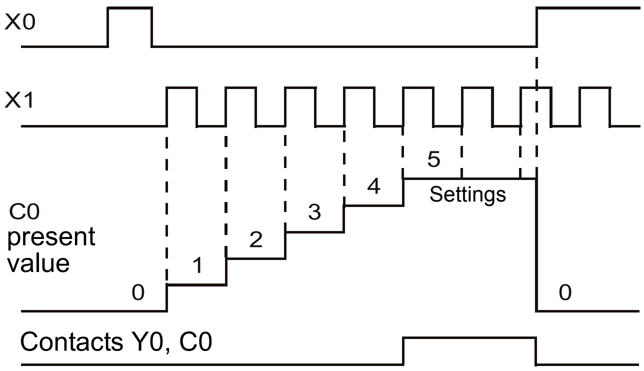


Fig. 16-32: Devices of the example

- When X0 = On and the RST command is executed, the current value of C0 will revert to 0, and the output contact will revert to Off.
- When X1 changes from Off → On, the current value of the counter will execute an increase (add one).
- When the count of counter C0 reaches the set value K5, the contact C0 will come On, and the current value of C0 = set value = K5. Afterwards, signal C0 triggered by X1 cannot be received, and the current value of C0 will remain K5.

16.5.2 Introduction to special relay functions (special M)

R/W items: R = Read only function; RW = Read and write function

Special M	Description of function	R/W
M1000	Operates monitor NO contact (contact a). NO while RUN, contact a. This contact is On while in the RUN state.	R
M1001	Operates monitor NC contact (contact b). NC while RUN, contact b. This contact is Off while in the RUN state.	R
M1002	Initiates a forward (the instant RUN is On) pulse. Initial pulse, contact a. Produces a forward pulse the moment RUN begins; its width = scan cycle	R
M1003	Initiates a reverse (the instant RUN is Off) pulse. Initial pulse, contact a. Produces a reverse pulse the moment RUN ends; the pulse width = scan cycle	R
M1004	Reserved	R
M1005	Driver malfunction instructions	R
M1006	Converter has no output	R
M1007	Driver direction FWD(0)/REV(1)	R
M1008 – M1010	—	—
M1011	10 ms clock pulse (5 ms On/5 ms Off)	R
M1012	100 ms clock pulse (50 ms On/50 ms Off)	R
M1013	1 sec. clock pulse (0.5 s On/0.5 s Off)	R
M1014	1 min. clock pulse (30 s On/30 s Off)	R
M1015	Frequency attained (when used together with M1025)	R
M1016	Parameter read/write error	R
M1017	Parameter write successful	R
M1018	—	—
M1019	—	—
M1020	Zero flag	R
M1021	Borrow flag	R
M1022	Carry flag	R
M1023	Divisor is 0	R
M1024	—	—
M1025	Driver frequency = set frequency (ON) Driver frequency =0 (OFF)	RW
M1026	Driver operating direction FWD(OFF)/REV(ON)	RW
M1027	Driver reset	RW
M1028	—	—
M1029	—	—
M1030	—	—
M1031	Compulsory setting of the current PID integral value equal to D1019 (0 change, 1 valid)	RW
M1032	Compulsory definition of FREQ command after PID control	RW
M1033	—	—
M1034	Initiates CANopen® real-time control	RW
M1035	Initiates internal communications control	RW
M1036	Ignore calendar error	RW
M1037	—	—
M1038	MI8 count begins	RW
M1039	Reset MI8 count value	RW
M1040	Hardware power (Servo On)	RW
M1041	—	—
M1042	Quick stop	RW
M1043	—	—
M1044	Pause	RW
M1045 – M1047	—	—
M1048	Move to new position	RW

Tab. 16-10: Special relays of the build-in PLC of the C2000 series (1)

Special M	Description of function	R/W
M1049	—	—
M1050	Absolute position/relative position (0: relative/1: absolute)	RW
M1051	—	—
M1052	Lock frequency (lock, frequency locked at the current operating frequency)	RW
M1053	—	—
M1054	Compulsory reset of absolute position	RW
M1055	Search Origin	RW
M1056	Hardware already has power (Servo On Ready)	R
M1057	—	—
M1058	On Quick Stopping	R
M1059	CANopen® Master setting complete	R
M1060	CANopen® Currently initializing slave station	R
M1061	CANopen® Slave station initialization failure	R
M1062	—	—
M1063	Torque attained	R
M1064	Target reached	R
M1065	Read/write CANopen® data time out	R
M1066	Read/write CANopen® data complete	R
M1067	Read/write CANopen® data successful	R
M1068	Calendar calculation error	R
M1069	—	—
M1070	Return home complete	R
M1071	Homing error	R
M1072 – M1075	—	—
M1076	Calendar time error or refresh time out	R
M1077	485 Read/write complete	R
M1078	485 Read-write error	R
M1079	485 Communications time out	R

Tab. 16-10: Special relays of the build-in PLC of the C2000 series (2)

16.5.3 Introduction to special register functions (special D)

R/W items: R = Read only function; RW = Read and write function

Special D	Description of function	R/W
D1000	—	—
D1001	Device system program version	R
D1002	Program capacity	R
D1003	Total program memory content	R
D1004 – D1009	—	—
D1010	Current scan time (units: 0.1 ms)	R
D1011	Minimum scan time (units: 0.1 ms)	R
D1012	Maximum scan time (units: 0.1 ms)	R
D1013 – D1017	—	—
D1018	Current integral value	R
D1019	Compulsory setting of PID I integral	RW
D1020	Output frequency (0.000–600.00 Hz)	R
D1021	Output current (####.#A)	R
D1022	AI AO DI DO Expansion card number 0: No expansion card 4: AC input card (6 in) (EMC-D611A) 5: I/O Card (4 in 2 out) (EMC-D42A) 6: Relay card (6 out) (EMC-R6AA)	R
D1023	Communication expansion card number 0: No expansion card 1: DeviceNet Slave 2: Profibus-DP Slave 3: CANopen® Slave 4: MODBUS®-TCP Slave 5: EtherNet/IP Slave	R
D1024 – D1026	—	—
D1027	PID calculation frequency command (frequency command after PID calculation)	R
D1028	AVI value (0.00–100.00 %)	R
D1029	ACI value (0.0–100.00 %)	R
D1030	AUI value (-100.0–100.00 %)	R
D1031 – D1035	—	—
D1036	Servo error bit	R
D1037	Driver output frequency	R
D1038	DC BUS voltage	R
D1039	Output voltage	R
D1040	Analog output value AFM1(-100.00–100.00 %)	RW
D1041 – D1042	—	—
D1043	Can be user-defined (will be displayed on panel when parameter 00-04 is set as 28; display method is C xxx)	RW
D1044	—	—
D1045	Analog output value AFM2(-100.00–100.00 %)	RW
D1046 – D1049	—	—

Tab. 16-11: Special registers of the build-in PLC of the C2000 series (1)

Special D	Description of function	R/W
D1050	Actual Operation Mode 0: Speed 1: Position 2: Torque 3: Homing Origin	R
D1051	Actual position (Low word)	R
D1052	Actual position (High word)	R
D1053	Actual torque	R
D1054	MI8 current calculated count value (L Word)	R
D1055	MI8 current calculated count value (H Word)	R
D1056	Calculated frequency of the pulses at MI8	R
D1057	Multiplication factor	RW
D1058	Calculation interval (gate time) for frequency measurement on MI8 [ms]	RW
D1059	Number of decimal points for frequency measurement on MI8 [0–3]	RW
D1060	Operation Mode setting 0: Speed 1: Position 2: Torque 3: Homing Origin	RW
D1061	485 COM1 communications time out time (ms)	RW
D1062	Torque command (torque limit in speed mode)	RW
D1063	Year (Western calendar) (display range 2000-2099) (must use KPC-CC01)	R
D1064	Week (display range 1-7) (must use KPC-CC01)	R
D1065	Month (display range 1-12) (must use KPC-CC01)	R
D1066	Day (display range 1-31) (must use KPC-CC01)	R
D1067	Hour (display range 0-23) (must use KPC-CC01)	R
D1068	Minute (display range 0-59) (must use KPC-CC01)	R
D1069	Second (display range 0-59) (must use KPC-CC01)	R
D1100	Target frequency	R
D1101	Target frequency (must be operating)	R
D1102	Reference frequency	R
D1103	Target L	R
D1104	Target H	R
D1105	Target torque	R
D1106	—	—
D1107	π (Pi) Low word	R
D1108	π (Pi) High word	R
D1109	Random number	R
D1110	Internal node communications number (set number of slave stations to be controlled)	RW
D1111	Encoder Pulses L	R
D1112	Encoder Pulses H	R
D1113	—	R
D1114	—	—
D1115	Internal node synchronizing cycle (ms)	R
D1116	Internal node error (bit 0 = Node 0, bit 1 = Node 1,…bit 7 = Node 7)	R
D1117	Internal node online correspondence (bit 0 = Node 0, bit 1 = Node 1,…bit 7 = Node 7)	R
D1118	—	—
D1119	—	—
D1120	Internal node 0 control command	RW
D1121	Internal node 0 mode	RW
D1122	Internal node 0 reference command L	RW
D1123	Internal node 0 reference command H	RW
D1124	—	—
D1125	—	—
D1126	Internal node 0 status	R
D1127	Internal node 0 reference status L	R
D1128	Internal node 0 reference status H	R

Tab. 16-11: Special registers of the build-in PLC of the C2000 series (2)

Special D	Description of function	R/W
D1129	—	—
D1130	Internal node 1 control command	RW
D1131	Internal node 1 mode	RW
D1132	Internal node 1 reference command L	RW
D1133	Internal node 1 reference command H	RW
D1134	—	—
D1135	—	—
D1136	Internal node 1 status	R
D1137	Internal node 1 reference status L	R
D1138	Internal node 1 reference status H	R
D1139	—	—
D1140	Internal node 2 control command	RW
D1141	Internal node 2 mode	RW
D1142	Internal node 2 reference command L	RW
D1143	Internal node 2 reference command H	RW
D1144	—	—
D1145	—	—
D1146	Internal node 2 status	R
D1147	Internal node 2 reference status L	R
D1148	Internal node 2 reference status H	R
D1149	—	—
D1150	Internal node 3 control command	RW
D1151	Internal node 3 mode	RW
D1152	Internal node 3 reference command L	RW
D1153	Internal node 3 reference command H	RW
D1154	—	—
D1155	—	—
D1156	Internal node 3 status	R
D1157	Internal node 3 reference status L	R
D1158	Internal node 3 reference status H	R
D1159	—	—
D1160	Internal node 4 control command	RW
D1161	Internal node 4 mode	RW
D1162	Internal node 4 reference command L	RW
D1163	Internal node 4 reference command H	RW
D1164	—	—
D1165	—	—
D1166	Internal node 4 status	R
D1167	Internal node 4 reference status L	R
D1168	Internal node 4 reference status H	R
D1169	—	—
D1170	Internal node 5 control command	RW
D1171	Internal node 5 mode	RW
D1172	Internal node 5 reference command L	RW
D1173	Internal node 5 reference command H	RW
D1174	—	RW
D1175	—	—

Tab. 16-11: Special registers of the build-in PLC of the C2000 series (3)

Special D	Description of function	R/W
D1176	Internal node 5 status	—
D1177	Internal node 5 reference status L	R
D1178	Internal node 5 reference status H	R
D1179	—	—
D1180	Internal node 6 control command	RW
D1181	Internal node 6 mode	RW
D1182	Internal node 6 reference command L	RW
D1183	Internal node 6 reference command H	RW
D1184	—	—
D1185	—	—
D1186	Internal node 6 status	R
D1187	Internal node 6 reference status L	R
D1188	Internal node 6 reference status H	R
D1189	—	—
D1190	Internal node 7 control command	RW
D1191	Internal node 7 mode	RW
D1192	Internal node 7 reference command L	RW
D1193	Internal node 7 reference command H	RW
D1194	—	—
D1195	—	—
D1196	Internal node 7 status	R
D1197	Internal node 7 reference status L	R
D1198	Internal node 7 reference status H	R
D1199	—	—

Tab. 16-11: Special registers of the build-in PLC of the C2000 series (4)

Special register for the CANopen® Master function

The following special D can be written in STOP state of the PLC only.

n = 0–7

R/W items: R = Read only function; RW = Read and write function

Special D	Description of function	PDO Map	Power off memory	Default	R/W
D1070	Channel opened by CANopen® initialization (bit 0 = Machine code 0 …….)	NO	NO	0	R
D1071	Error channel occurring in CANopen® initialization process (bit 0 = Machine code 0 …….)	NO	NO	0	R
D1072	Reserved	—	—		—
D1073	CANopen® break channel (bit 0 = Machine code 0 …….)	NO	NO		R
D1074	Error code of master error 0: No error 1: Slave station setting error 2: Synchronizing cycle setting error (too small)	NO	NO	0	R
D1075	Reserved	—	—		—
D1076	SDO error message (main index value)	NO	NO		R
D1077	SDO error message (secondary index value)	NO	NO		R
D1078	SDO error message (error code)	NO	NO		R
D1079	SDO error message (error code)	NO	NO		R
D1080	Reserved	—	—		—
D1081 – D1086	Reserved	—	—		—
D1087 – D1089	Reserved	—	—		—
D1090	Synchronizing cycle setting	NO	YES	4	RW
D1091	Sets slave station On or Off (bit 0-bit 7 correspond to slave stations number 0-7)	NO	YES	FFFFH	RW
D1092	Delay before start of initialization	NO	YES	0	RW
D1093	Break time detection	NO	YES	1000 ms	RW
D1094	Break number detection	NO	YES	3	RW
D1095 – D1096	Reserved	—	—		—
D1097	Corresponding real-time transmission type (PDO) Setting range: 1–240	NO	YES	1	RW
D1098	Corresponding real-time receiving type (PDO) Setting range: 1–240	NO	YES	1	RW
D1099	Initialization completion delay time Setting range: 1 to 60000 sec	NO	YES	15 sec	RW
D2000 + 100*n	Station number n of slave station Setting range: 0–127 0: No CANopen® function	NO	YES	0	RW

Tab. 16-12: Special register of the CANopen® master function

Special register with information about CANopen® slave stations

The C2000 supports 8 slave stations under the CANopen® protocol; each slave station occupies 100 special D locations; stations are numbered 1-8, total of 8 stations.

Station number	Special D	Description of function
1	D2000 D2001 – D2099	Node ID Slave station no. 1 torque restrictions – Address 4 (H) corresponding to receiving channel 4
2	D2100 D2101 – D2199	Node ID Slave station no. 2 torque restrictions – Address 4 (H) corresponding to receiving channel 4
3	D2200 D2201 – D2299	Node ID Slave station no. 3 torque restrictions – Address 4 (H) corresponding to receiving channel 4
8	D2700 D2701 – D2799	Node ID Slave station no. 8 torque restrictions – Address 4 (H) corresponding to receiving channel 4

Tab. 16-13: Assignment of the special registers to the slave stations

The range of n in the following table is 0–7.

Function	Special D	Description of function	Default	CAN index	PDO Default				R/W
					1	2	3	4	
General	D2000+100*n	Station number n of slave station Setting range: 0–127 0: No CANopen® function	0	—	—	—	—	—	RW
General	D2002+100*n	Manufacturer code of slave station number n (L)	0	—	—	—	—	—	R
General	D2003+100*n	Manufacturer code of slave station number n (H)	0	—	—	—	—	—	R
General	D2004+100*n	Manufacturer's product code of slave station number n (L)	0	—	—	—	—	—	R
General	D2005+100*n	Manufacturer's product code of slave station number n (H)	0	—	—	—	—	—	R
Basic definitions	D2006+100*n	Communications break handling method of slave station number n	0	6007H-0010H	○	○	○	○	RW
Basic definitions	D2007+100*n	Error code of slave station number n error	0	603FH-0010H	○	○	○	○	R
Basic definitions	D2008+100*n	Control word of slave station number n	0	6040H-0010H	●	○	●	●	RW
Basic definitions	D2009+100*n	Status word of slave station number n	0	6041H-0010H	▲	○	▲	▲	R
Basic definitions	D2010+100*n	Control mode of slave station number n	2	6060H-0008H	○	○	○	○	RW
Basic definitions	D2011+100*n	Actual mode of slave station number n	2	6061H-0008H	○	○	○	○	R
Velocity Control	D2001+100*n	Torque restriction on slave station number n	0	6072H-0010H	○	○	○	○	RW
Velocity Control	D2012+100*n	Target speed of slave station number n	0	6042H-0010H	●	○	○	○	RW
Velocity Control	D2013+100*n	Actual speed of slave station number n	0	6043H-0010H	▲	○	○	○	R
Velocity Control	D2014+100*n	Error speed of slave station number n	0	6044H-0010H	○	○	○	○	R
Velocity Control	D2015+100*n	Acceleration time of slave station number n	1000	604FH-0020H	○	○	○	○	R
Velocity Control	D2016+100*n	Deceleration time of slave station number n	1000	6050H-0020H	○	○	○	○	RW

Tab. 16-14: Special register with information about CANopen® slave stations (1)

Function	Special D	Description of function	Default	CAN index	PDO Default 1	PDO Default 2	PDO Default 3	PDO Default 4	R/W
Torque control	D2017+100*n	Target torque of slave station number n	0	6071H-0010H	○	○	○	●	RW
	D2018+100*n	Actual torque of slave station number n	0	6077H-0010H	○	○	○	▲	R
	D2019+100*n	Actual current of slave station number n	0	6078H-0010H	○	○	○	○	R
Position control	D2020+100*n	Target of slave station number n (L)	0	607AH-0020H	○	○	●	○	RW
	D2021+100*n	Target of slave station number n (H)	0						
	D2022+100*n	Actual position of slave station number n (L)	0	6064H-0020H	○	○	▲	○	R
	D2023+100*n	Actual position of slave station number n (H)	0						
	D2024+100*n	Speed chart of slave station number n (L)	10000	6081H-0020H	○	○	○	○	RW
	D2025+100*n	Speed chart of slave station number n (H)	0						
20XXH correspondences: MI MO AI AO	D2026+100*n	MI status of slave station number n	0	2026H-0110H	○	▲	○	○	RW
	D2027+100*n	MO setting of slave station number n	0	2026H-4110H	○	●	○	○	
	D2028+100*n	AI1 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-6110H	○	▲	○	○	
	D2029+100*n	AI2 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-6210H	○	▲	○	○	
	D2030+100*n	AI3 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-6310H	○	▲	○	○	
	D2031+100*n	AO1 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-A110H	○	●	○	○	
	D2032+100*n	AO2 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-A210H	○	●	○	○	
	D2033+100*n	AO3 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-A310H	○	●	○	○	
PDO reflection length setting	D2034+100*n	Real-time transmission setting of slave station number n	000AH	—	—	—	—	—	RW
	D2067+100*n	Real-time reception setting of slave station number n	0000H	—	—	—	—	—	

Tab. 16-14: Special register with information about CANopen® slave stations (2)

●: Indicates TXPDO

▲: Indicates RXPDO

○: Special D can be refreshed using the CANFLS command

R/W items: R = Read only function; RW = Read and write function

16.5.4 PLC Communication addresses for MODBUS® communication

Device	Range	Type	Address (Hex)
X	00–37 (Octal)	Bit	0400–041F
Y	00–37 (Octal)	Bit	0500–051F
T	00–159	Bit/word	0600–069F
M	000–799	Bit	0800–0B1F
M	1000–1079	Bit	0BE8–0C37
C	0–79	Bit/word	0E00–0E47
D	00–399	Word	1000–118F
D	1000–1099	Word	13E8–144B
D	2000–2799	Word	17D0–1AEF

Tab. 16-15: Communication addresses of the PLC devices

Command code that can be used

Function code	Description of function	Function target
01	Coil status read	Y, M, T, C
02	Input status read	X, Y, M, T, C
03	Read single unit of data	T, C, D
05	Compulsory single coil status change	Y, M, T, C
06	Write single unit of data	T, C, D
0F	Compulsory multiple coil status change	Y, M, T, C
10	Write multiple units of data	T, C, D

Tab. 16-16: Command codes for access to PLC devices

NOTE

When PLC functions have been activated, the C2000 can match PLC and driver parameters; this method employs different addresses for PLC and drivers. (Default station number for the driver is 1, PLC sets station number as 2.)

16.6 Introduction to the command window

16.6.1 Overview of basic commands

Command code	Function	Operand	Execution speed (µs)
LD	Load contact a	X/Y/M/T/C	0.8
LDI	Load contact b		0.8
AND	Connect contact a in series		0.8
ANI	Connect contact b in series		0.8
OR	Connect contact a in parallel		0.8
ORI	Connect contact b in parallel		0.8
ANB	Series circuit block	—	0.3
ORB	Parallel circuit block	—	0.3
MPS	Save to stack	—	0.3
MRD	Stack read (pointer does not change)	—	0.3
MPP	Read stack	—	0.3

Tab. 16-17: Ordinary commands

Command code	Function	Operand	Execution speed (µs)
OUT	Drive coil	Y/M	1
SET	Action continues (ON)	Y/M	1
RST	Clear contact or register	Y/M/T/C/D	1.2

Tab. 16-18: Output, set and reset commands

Command code	Function	Operand	Execution speed (µs)
TMR	16-bit timer	T-K or T-D commands	1.1
CNT	16-bit counter	C-K or C-D (16-bit)	0.5

Tab. 16-19: Timer, counter

Command code	Function	Operand	Execution speed (µs)
MC	Common series contact connection	N0–N7	0.4
MCR	Common series contact release		

Tab. 16-20: Main control command

Command code	Function	Operand	Execution speed (µs)
LDP	Start of forward edge detection action	X/Y/M/T/C	1.1
LDF	Start of reverse edge detection action		
ANDP	Forward edge detection series connection		
ANDF	Reverse edge detection series connection		
ORP	Forward edge detection parallel connection		
ORF	Reverse edge detection parallel connection		

Tab. 16-21: Contact rising edge/falling edge detection commands

Command code	Function	Operand	Execution speed (µs)
PLS	Upper differential output	Y/M	1.2
PLF	Lower differential output		

Tab. 16-22: Upper/lower differential output commands

Command code	Function	Operand	Execution speed (µs)
END	Program conclusion	N/A	0.2

Tab. 16-23: Programm end command

Command code	Function	Operand	Execution speed (µs)
NOP	No action	N/A	0.2
INV	Inverse of operation results	N/A	0.2
P	Index	P	0.3

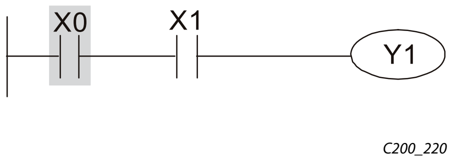
Tab. 16-24: Other commands

16.6.2 Detailed explanation of basic commands

Command	Function					
LD	Load contact a					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The LD command is used for contact a starting at the left busbar or contact a starting at a contact circuit block; its function is to save current content and save the acquired contact status in the cumulative register.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:

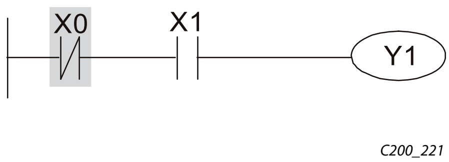


Command code		Description
LD	**X0**	**Load contact a of X0**
AND	X1	Create series connection to contact a of X1
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function					
LDI	Load contact b					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The LDI command is used for contact b starting at the left busbar or contact b starting at a contact circuit block; its function is to save current content and save the acquired contact status in the cumulative register.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:

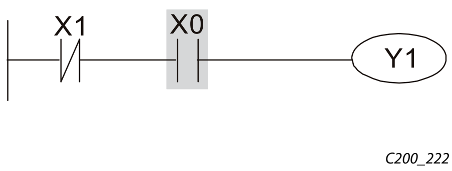


Command code		Description
LDI	**X0**	**Load contact b of X0**
AND	X1	Create series connection to contact a of X1
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function					
AND	Connect contact a in series					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The AND command is used to create a series connection to contact a; first reads current status of the designated series contact and logical operation results before contact in order to perform "AND" operation; saves results in cumulative register.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:

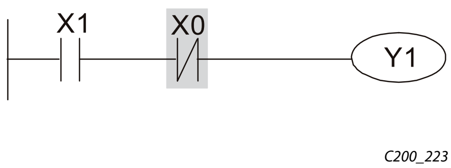


Command code		Description
LDI	X1	Load contact b of X1
AND	**X0**	**Create series connection to contact a of X0**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function					
ANI	Connect contact b in series					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The ANI command is used to create a series connection to contact b; its function is to first read current status of the designated series contact and logical operation results before contact in order to perform "AND" operation; saves results in cumulative register.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



Command code		Description
LD	X1	Load contact a of X1
ANI	**X0**	**Create series connection to contact b of X0**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

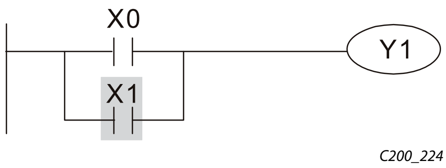
Command	Function					
OR	Connect contact a in parallel					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION

The OR command is used to establish a parallel connection to contact a; its function is to first read current status of the designated series contact and logical operation results before contact in order to perform "OR" operation; saves results in cumulative register.

EXAMPLE

Ladder diagram:



Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
OR	**X1**	**Create parallel connection to contact a of X1**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

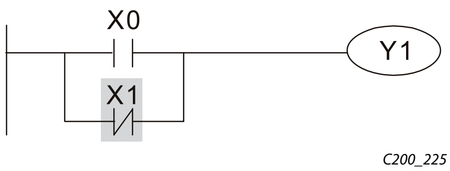
Command	Function					
ORI	Connect contact b in parallel					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION

The ORI command is used to establish a parallel connection to contact a; its function is to first read current status of the designated series contact and logical operation results before contact in order to perform "OR" operation; saves results in cumulative register.

EXAMPLE

Ladder diagram:

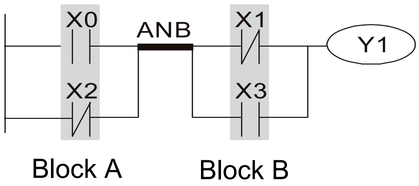


Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
ORI	**X1**	**Create parallel connection to contact b of X1**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function
ANB	Series circuit block
Operand	N/A

DESCRIPTION ANB performs an "AND" operation on the previously saved logic results and the current cumulative register content.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



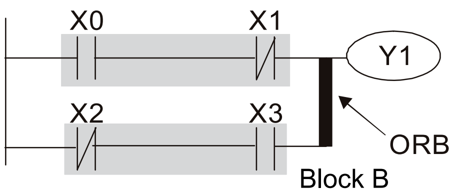
C200_226

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
ORI	X2	Establish parallel connection to contact b of X2
LDI	X1	Load contact b of X1
OR	X3	Establish parallel connection to contact a of X3
ANB		**Series circuit block**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function
ORB	Parallel circuit block
Operand	N/A

DESCRIPTION ORB performs an "OR" operation on the previously saved logic results and the current cumulative register content.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



C200_227

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
ANI	X1	Establish parallel connection to contact b of X1
LDI	X2	Load contact b of X2
AND	X3	Establish parallel connection to contact a of X3
ORB		**Parallel circuit block**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function
MPS	Save to stack
Operand	N/A

DESCRIPTION Save current content of cumulative register to the stack (Add one to stack pointer).

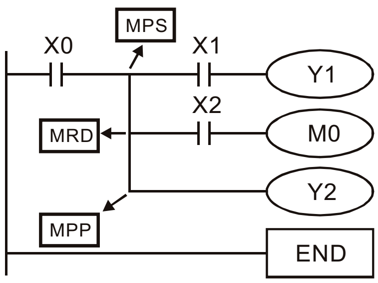
Command	Function
MRD	Read stack (pointer does not change)
Operand	N/A

DESCRIPTION Reads stack content and saves to cumulative register (Stack pointer does not change).

Command	Function
MPP	Read stack
Operand	N/A

DESCRIPTION Retrieves result of previously-save logical operation from the stack, and saves to cumulative register (Subtract one from stack pointer).

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
MPS		**Save to stack**
AND	X1	Create series connection to contact a of X1
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil
MRD		**Read stack (pointer does not change)**
AND	X2	Create series connection to contact a of X2
OUT	M0	Drive M0 coil
MPP		**Read stack**
OUT	Y2	Drive Y2 coil
END		Program conclusion

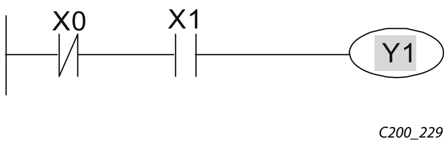
C200_228

Command	Function					
OUT	Drive coil					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	—	✓	✓	—	—	—

DESCRIPTION Outputs result of logical operation before OUT command to the designated element.
Coil contact action:

Result:	Out command		
	Coil	Access Point:	
		Contact a (NO)	Contact b (NC)
FALSE	Off	Not conducting	Conducting
TRUE	On	Conducting	Not conducting

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:

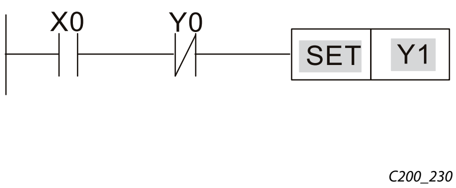


Command code		Description
LDI	X0	Load contact b of X0
AND	X1	Establish serial connection to contact a of X1
OUT	**Y1**	**Drive Y1 coil**

Command	Function					
SET	Action continues (On)					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	—	✓	✓	—	—	—

DESCRIPTION When the SET command is driven, the designated element will be set as On, and will be maintained in an On state, regardless of whether the SET command is still driven. The RST command can be used to set the element as Off.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
ANI	Y0	Establish serial connection to contact b of Y0
SET	**Y1**	**Action continues (On)**

Command	Function					
RST	Clear contact or register					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

DESCRIPTION

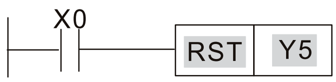
When the RST command is driven, the action of the designated element will be as follows:

Element	Mode
Y, M	Both coil and contact will be set as Off.
T, C	The current timing or count value will be set as 0, and both the coil and contact will be set as Off.
D	The content value will be set as 0.

If the RST command has not been executed, the status of the designated element will remain unchanged.

EXAMPLE

Ladder diagram:



C200_231

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
RST	**Y5**	**Clear contact or register**

Command	Function	
TMR	16-bit timer	
Operand	T-K	T0–T159 · K0–K32,767
	T-D	T0–T159 · D0–D399

DESCRIPTION

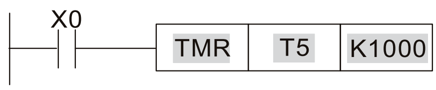
When the TMR command is executed, the designated timer coil will be electrified, and the timer will begin timing. The contact's action will be as follows when the timing value reaches the designated set value (timing value >= set value):

NO (Normally open) contact	Closed
NC (Normally close) contact	Open

If the RST command has not been executed, the status of the designated element will remain unchanged.

EXAMPLE

Ladder diagram:



C200_232

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
TMR	**T5 K1000**	**T5 timer set value as K1000**

Command	Function	
CNT	16-bit counter	
Operand	C-K	C0–C79 · K0–K32,767
	C-D	C0–C79 · D0–D399

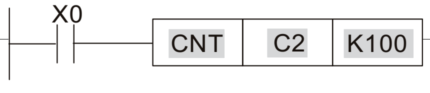
DESCRIPTION

When the CNT command is executed from Off → On, this indicates that the designated counter coil goes from no power → electrified, and 1 will be added to the counter's count value; when the count reaches the designated value (count value = set value), the contact will have the following action:

NO (Normally Open) contact	Closed
NC (Normally Close) contact	Open

After the count value has been reached, the contact and count value will both remain unchanged even if there is continued count pulse input. Please use the RST command if you wish to restart or clear the count.

EXAMPLE



C200_233

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
CNT	**C2 K100**	**C2counter set value as K100**

Command	Function
MC/MCR	Connect/release a common series contact
Operand	N0–N7

DESCRIPTION

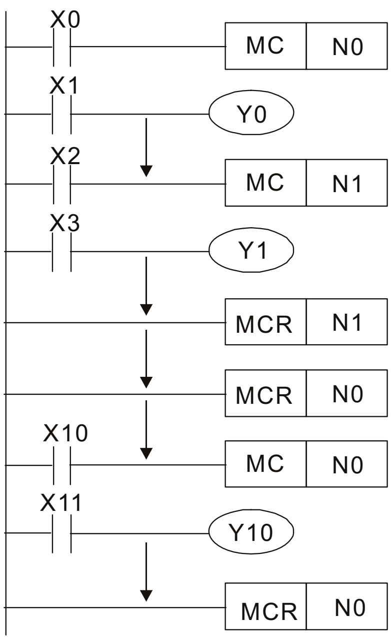
MC is the main control initiation command, and any commands between MC and MCR will be executed normally. When the MC command is Off, any commands between MC and MCR will act as follows:

Determination of commands	Description
Ordinary timer	The timing value will revert to 0, the coil will lose power, and the contact will not operate
Counter	The coil will lose power, and the count value and contact will stay in their current state
Coil driven by OUT command	None receive power
Elements driven by SET, RST commands	Will remain in their current state
Applications commands	None are actuated

MCR is the main control stop command, and is placed at the end of the main control program. There may not be any contact commands before the MCR command.
The MC-MCR main control program commands support a nested program structure with a maximum only 8 levels; use in the order N0-N7, please refer to the following program:

EXAMPLE

Ladder diagram:



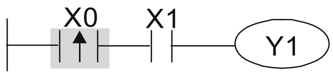
C200_234

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
MC	**N0**	**Connection of N0 common series contact**
LD	X1	Load contact a of X1
OUT	Y0	Drive Y0 coil
:		
LD	X2	Load contact a of X2
MC	**N1**	**Connection of N1 common series contact**
LD	X3	Load contact a of X3
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil
:		
MCR	**N1**	**Release N1 common series contact**
:		
MCR	**N0**	**Release N0 common series contact**
:		
LD	X10	Load contact a of X10
MC	**N0**	**Connection of N0 common series contact**
LD	X11	Load contact a of X11
OUT	Y10	Drive Y10 coil
:		
MCR	**N0**	**Release N0 common series contact**

Command	Function					
LDP	Start of forward edge detection action					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The LDP command has the same usage as LD, but its action is different; its function is to save current content, while also saving the detected state of the rising edge of the contact to the cumulative register.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



C200_235

Command code		Description
LDP	**X0**	**Start of X0 forward edge detection action**
AND	X1	Create series connection to contact a of X1
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

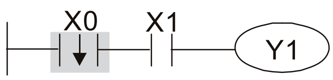
NOTES

- Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of usage of each operand.
- A rising edge contact will be TRUE after power is turned on if the rising edge contact is On before power is turned on to the PLC.

Command	Function					
LDF	Start of reverse edge detection action					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The LDF command has the same usage as LD, but its action is different; its function is to save current content while also saving the detected state of the falling edge of the contact to the cumulative register.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



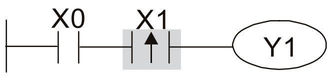
C200_236

Command code		Description
LDF	**X0**	**Start of X0 reverse edge detection action**
AND	X1	Create series connection to contact a of X1
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function					
ANDP	Forward edge detection series connection					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The ANDP command used for a contact rising edge detection series connection.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



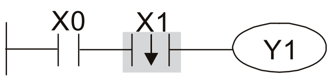
C200_237

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
ANDP	**X1**	**X1 Forward edge detection series connection**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function					
ANDF	Reverse edge detection series connection					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The ANDF command is used for a contact falling edge detection series connection.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



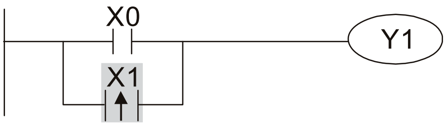
C200_238

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
ANDF	**X1**	**X1 Reverse edge detection series connection**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function					
ORP	Forward edge detection parallel connection					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The ORP command is used for a contact rising edge detection parallel connection.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



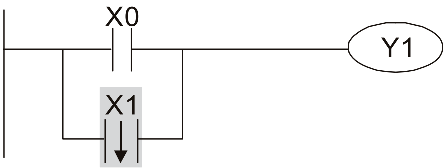
C200_239

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
ORP	**X1**	**X1 Forward edge detection parallel connection**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function					
ORF	Reverse edge detection parallel connection					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—

DESCRIPTION The ORF command is used for contact falling edge detection parallel connection.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



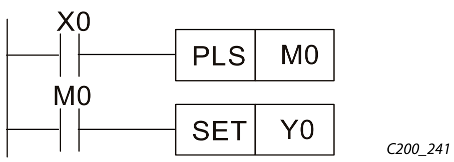
C200_240

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
ORF	**X1**	**X1 Reverse edge detection parallel connection**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

Command	Function					
PLS	Upper differential output					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	—	✓	✓	—	—	—

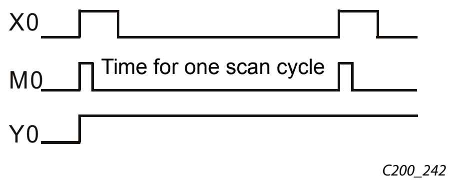
DESCRIPTION Upper differential output commands. When X0 = Off → On (positive edge-triggered), the PLS command will be executed, and M0 will send one pulse, with a pulse length consisting of one scanning period.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
PLS	**M0**	**M0 upper differential output**
LD	M0	Load contact a of M0
SET	Y0	Y0 Action continues (On)

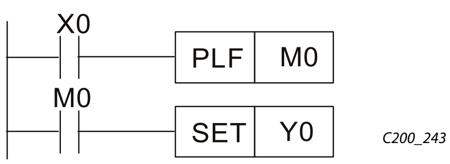
Time sequence diagram:



Command	Function					
PLF	Lower differential output					
Operand	X0–X17	Y0–Y17	M0–M799	T0–159	C0–C79	D0–D399
	—	✓	✓	—	—	—

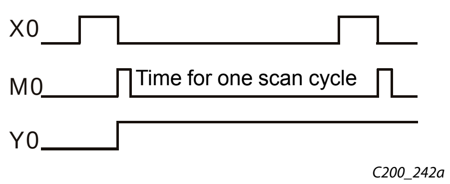
DESCRIPTION Lower differential output command. When X0 = On → Off (negative edge-triggered), the PLF command will be executed, and M0 will send one pulse, with pulse length consisting of one scanning period.

EXAMPLE Ladder diagram:



Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
PLF	**M0**	**M0 lower differential output**
LD	M0	Load contact a of M0
SET	Y0	Y0 Action continues (On)

Time sequence diagram:



Command	Function
END	Program conclusion
Operand	N/A

NOTE

An END command must be added to the end of a ladder diagram program or command program. The PLC will scan from address 0 to the END command, and will return to address 0 and begins scanning again after execution.

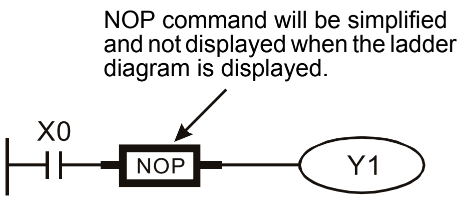
Command	Function
NOP	No action
Operand	N/A

NOTE

The command NOP does not perform any operation in the program. Because execution of this command will retain the original logical operation results, it can be used in the following situation: the NOP command can be used instead of a command that is deleted without changing the program length.

EXAMPLE

Ladder diagram:



C200_244

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
NOP		**No action**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

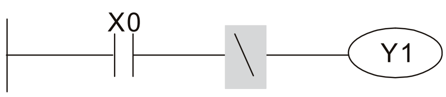
Command	Function
INV	Inverse of operation results
Operand	N/A

NOTE

Saves the result of the logic inversion operation prior to the INV command in the cumulative register.

EXAMPLE

Ladder diagram:



C200_245

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
INV		**Inverse of operation results**
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

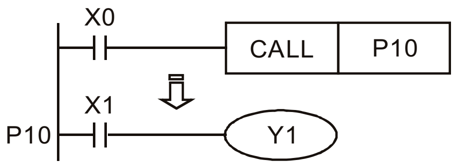
Command	Function
P	Index
Operand	P0–P255

NOTE

Pointer P is used to subprogram call command API 01 CALL. Use does not require starting from zero, but the number cannot be used repeatedly, otherwise an unpredictable error will occur.

EXAMPLE

Ladder diagram:



C200_246

Command code		Description
LD	X0	Load contact a of X0
CALL	P10	Call command CALL to P10
:		
P10		**Pointer P10**
LD	X1	Load Contact a of X1
OUT	Y1	Drive Y1 coil

16.6.3 Overview of application commands

Classification	API	Command code 16 bit	Command code 32 bit	P command	Function	Steps 16 bit	Steps 32 bit
Circuit control	01	CALL	—	✓	Call subprogram	3	—
	2	SRET	—	—	Conclusion of subprogram	1	—
	06	FEND	—	—	Conclusion a main program	1	—
Send comparison	10	CMP	DCMP	✓	Compares set output	7	13
	11	ZCP	DZCP	✓	Range comparison	9	17
	12	MOV	DMOV	✓	Data movement	5	9
	15	BMOV	—	✓	Send all	7	—
Four logical operations	20	ADD	DADD	✓	BIN addition	7	13
	21	SUB	DSUB	✓	BIN subtraction	7	13
	22	MUL	DMUL	✓	BIN multiplication	7	13
	23	DIV	DDIV	✓	BIN division	7	13
	24	INC	DINC	✓	BIN add one	3	5
	25	DEC	DDEC	✓	BIN subtract one	3	5
Rotational displacement	30	ROR	DROR	✓	Right rotation	5	—
	31	ROL	DROL	✓	Left rotation	5	—
Data Process	40	ZRST	—	✓	Clear range	5	—
	49	—	DFLT	✓	BIN whole number → binary floating point number transformation	—	9

Tab. 16-25: Overview of application commands (1)

Classi-fica-tion	API	Command code		P command	Function	Steps	
		16 bit	32 bit			16 bit	32 bit
Floating point operation	110	—	DECMP	✓	Comparison of binary floating point numbers	—	13
	111	—	DEZCP	✓	Comparison of binary floating point number range	—	17
	116	—	DRAD	✓	Angle → Diameter	—	9
	117	—	DDEG	✓	Diameter → angle	—	9
	120	—	DEADD	✓	Binary floating point number addition	—	13
	121	—	DESUB	✓	Binary floating point number subtraction	—	13
	122	—	DEMUL	✓	Binary floating point number multiplication	—	13
	123	—	DEDIV	✓	Binary floating point number division	—	13
	124	—	DEXP	✓	Binary floating point number obtain exponent	—	9
	125	—	DLN	✓	Binary floating point number obtain logarithm	—	9
	127	—	DESQR	✓	Binary floating point number find square root	—	9
	129	—	DINT	✓	Binary floating point number → BIN whole number transformation	—	9
	130	—	DSIN	✓	Binary floating point number SIN operation	—	9
	131	—	DCOS	✓	Binary floating point number COS operation	—	9
	132	—	DTAN	✓	Binary floating point number TAN operation	—	9
	133	—	DASIN	✓	Binary floating point number ASIN operation	—	9
	134	—	DACOS	✓	Binary floating point number ACOS operation	—	9
	135	—	DATAN	✓	Binary floating point number ATAN operation	—	9
	136	—	DSINH	✓	Binary floating point number SINH operation	—	9
	137	—	DCOSH	✓	Binary floating point number COSH operation	—	9
	138	—	DTANH	✓	Binary floating point number TANH operation	—	9
Com-munica-tion	150	MODRW	—	✓	MODBUS® read/write	7	—
Calendar	160	TCMP	—	✓	Compare calendar data	11	—
	161	TZCP	—	✓	Compare calendar data range	9	—
	162	TADD	—	✓	Calendar data addition	7	—
	163	TSUB	—	✓	Calendar data subtraction	7	—
	166	TRD	—	✓	Calendar data read	3	—
GRAY code	170	GRY	DGRY	✓	BIN → GRY code transformation	5	9
	171	GBIN	DGBIN	✓	GRY code → BIN transformation	5	9

Tab. 16-25: Overview of application commands (2)

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Classi-fica-tion</th><th rowspan="2">API</th><th colspan="2">Command code</th><th rowspan="2">P command</th><th rowspan="2">Function</th><th colspan="2">Steps</th></tr>
<tr><th>16 bit</th><th>32 bit</th><th>16 bit</th><th>32 bit</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="9">Contact form logical operation</td><td>215</td><td>LD&</td><td>DLD&</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="3">Contact form logical operation LD#</td><td rowspan="3">5</td><td rowspan="3">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>216</td><td>LD|</td><td>DLD|</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>217</td><td>LD^</td><td>DLD^</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>218</td><td>AND&</td><td>DAND&</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="3">Contact form logical operation AND#</td><td rowspan="3">5</td><td rowspan="3">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>219</td><td>ANDI</td><td>DANDI</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>220</td><td>AND^</td><td>DAND^</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>221</td><td>OR&</td><td>DOR&</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="3">Contact form logical operation OR#</td><td rowspan="3">5</td><td rowspan="3">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>222</td><td>OR|</td><td>DOR|</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>223</td><td>OR^</td><td>DOR^</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="18">Contact form compare command</td><td>224</td><td>LD=</td><td>DLD=</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="6">Contact form compare LD*</td><td rowspan="6">5</td><td rowspan="6">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>225</td><td>LD></td><td>DLD></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>226</td><td>LD<</td><td>DLD<</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>228</td><td>LD<></td><td>DLD<></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>229</td><td>LD<=</td><td>DLD<=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>230</td><td>LD>=</td><td>DLD>=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>232</td><td>AND=</td><td>DAND=</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="6">Contact form compare AND*</td><td rowspan="6">5</td><td rowspan="6">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>233</td><td>AND></td><td>DAND></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>234</td><td>AND<</td><td>DAND<</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>236</td><td>AND<></td><td>DAND<></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>237</td><td>AND<=</td><td>DAND<=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>238</td><td>AND>=</td><td>DAND>=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>240</td><td>OR=</td><td>DOR=</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="6">Contact form compare OR*</td><td rowspan="6">5</td><td rowspan="6">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>241</td><td>OR></td><td>DOR></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>242</td><td>OR<</td><td>DOR<</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>244</td><td>OR<></td><td>DOR<></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>245</td><td>OR<=</td><td>DOR<=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>246</td><td>OR>=</td><td>DOR>=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="18">Floating point com-pare com-mand</td><td>275</td><td>—</td><td>FLD=</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="3">Floating point number contact form compare LD*</td><td rowspan="3">—</td><td rowspan="3">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>276</td><td>—</td><td>FLD></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>277</td><td>—</td><td>FLD<</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>278</td><td>—</td><td>FLD<></td><td>—</td><td rowspan="3">Floating point number contact form compare LD*</td><td rowspan="3">—</td><td rowspan="3">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>279</td><td>—</td><td>FLD<=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>280</td><td>—</td><td>FLD>=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>281</td><td>—</td><td>FAND=</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="6">Floating point number contact form compare AND*</td><td rowspan="6">—</td><td rowspan="6">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>282</td><td>—</td><td>FAND></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>283</td><td>—</td><td>FAND<</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>284</td><td>—</td><td>FAND<></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>285</td><td>—</td><td>FAND<=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>286</td><td>—</td><td>FAND>=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>287</td><td>—</td><td>FOR=</td><td>—</td><td rowspan="6">Floating point number contact form compare OR*</td><td rowspan="6">—</td><td rowspan="6">9</td></tr>
<tr><td>288</td><td>—</td><td>FOR></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>289</td><td>—</td><td>FOR<</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>290</td><td>—</td><td>FOR<></td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>291</td><td>—</td><td>FOR<=</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>292</td><td>—</td><td>FOR>=</td><td>—</td></tr>
</table>

Tab. 16-25: Overview of application commands (3)

Classi-fica-tion	API	Command code		P command	Function	Steps	
		16 bit	32 bit			16 bit	32 bit
Driver special command	139	RPR	—	✓	Read servo parameter	5	—
	140	WPR	—	✓	Write servo parameter	5	—
	141	FPID	—	✓	Driver PID control mode	9	—
	142	FREQ	—	✓	Driver torque control mode	7	—
	262	—	DPOS	✓	Set target	—	5
	263	TORQ	—	✓	Set target torque	5	—
	261	CANRX	—	✓	Read CANopen® slave station data	9	—
	264	CANTX	—	✓	Write CANopen® slave station data	9	—
	265	CANFLS	—	✓	Refresh special D corresponding to CANopen®	3	—
	320	ICOMR	DICOMR	✓	Internal communications read	9	17
	321	ICOMW	DICOMW	✓	Internal communications write	9	17

Tab. 16-25: Overview of application commands (4)

16.6.4 Detailed explanation of applications commands

API		CALL	P	S	Call subprogram
01					

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (3 STEP)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	CALL	Continuous execution type	CALLP	Pulse execution type
Notes on operand usage: The S operand can designate P; C2000 series device: The S operand can designate P0-P63												32-bit command			
												—	—	—	—
												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

Call subprogram pointer.
Write the subprogram after the FEND command.
The subprogram must end after the SRET command.
Refer to the FEND command explanation and sample content for detailed command functions.

API		SRET	P	—	Conclusion of subprogram
02					

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (1 STEP)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	FEND	Continuous execution type	—	—
Notes on operand usage: No operand; A contact-driven command is not needed												32-bit command			
												—	—	—	—
												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

A contact-driven command is not needed. Automatically returns next command after CALL command
Indicates end of subprogram. After end of subprogram, SRET returns to main program, and executes next command after the original call subprogram CALL command. Refer to the FEND command explanation and sample content for detailed command functions.

API	FEND	—	Conclusion a main program
06			

Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (1 STEP)			
X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	FEND	Continuous execution type	—	—
Notes on operand usage: No operand A contact-driven command is not needed											32-bit command			
											—	—	—	—
											Flag signal: none			

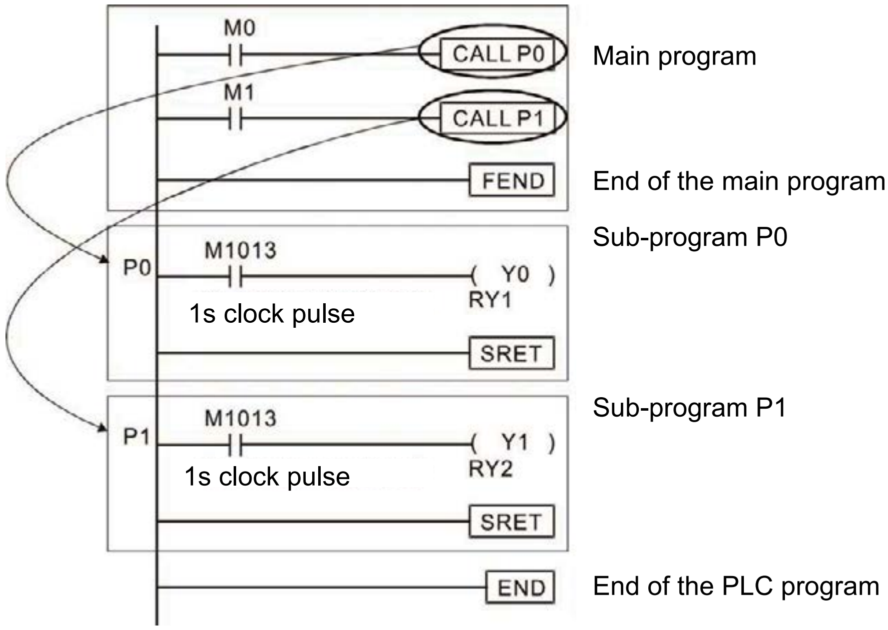
DESCRIPTION

This command indicates the end of the main program. It is the same as the END command when the PLC executes this command.

The CALL command program must be written after the FEND command, and the SRET command added to the end of the subprogram.

When using the FEND command, an END command is also needed. However, the END command must be placed at the end, after the main program and subprogram.

EXAMPLE CALL command process



C2000_247

API					
10	D	CMP	P	S1 S2 D	Compares set output

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
D		*	*								

Notes on operand usage:
The operand D occupies three consecutive points

16-bit command (7 STEP)			
CMP	Continuous execution type	CMPP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (13 STEP)			
DCMP	Continuous execution type	DCMPP	Pulse execution type

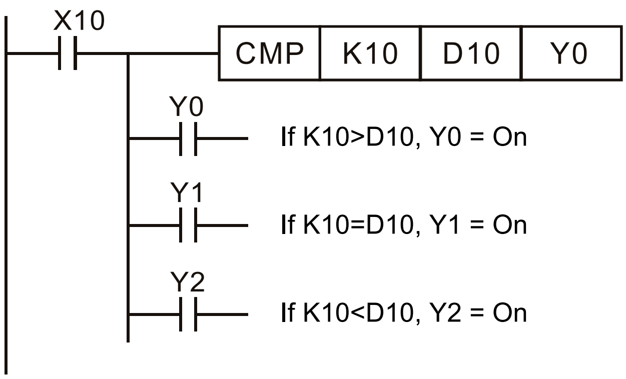
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

S1: Compare value 1. S2: Compare value 2. D: Results of comparison.
Compares the size of the content of operand S1 and S2; the results of comparison are expressed in D.
Size comparison is performed algebraically. All data is compared in the form of numerical binary values. Because this is a 16-bit command, when b15 is 1, this indicates a negative number.

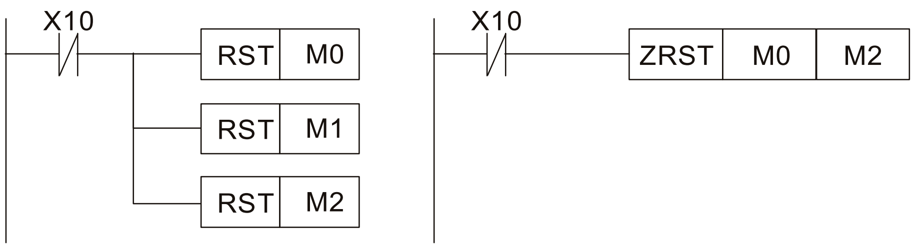
EXAMPLE

When the designated device is Y0, it automatically occupies Y0, Y1 and Y2.
When X10=On, the CMP command executes, and Y0, Y1 or Y2 will be On. When X10=Off, the CMP command will not execute, and the state of Y0, Y1 and Y2 will remain in the state prior to X10=Off.
If ≥, ≤, or ≠ results are needed, they can be obtained via series/parallel connections of Y0-Y2.



C2000_248

To clear results of comparison, use the RST or ZRST command.



C2000_249

API				
11	D ZCP P	(S1) (S2) (S) (D)	Range comparison	

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
D		*	*								

Notes on operand usage:
The content value of operand S1 is less than the content value of S2 operand
The operand D occupies three consecutive points

16-bit command (9 STEP)			
ZCP	Continuous execution type	ZCPP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (17 STEP)			
DZCP	Continuous execution type	DZCPP	Pulse execution type

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

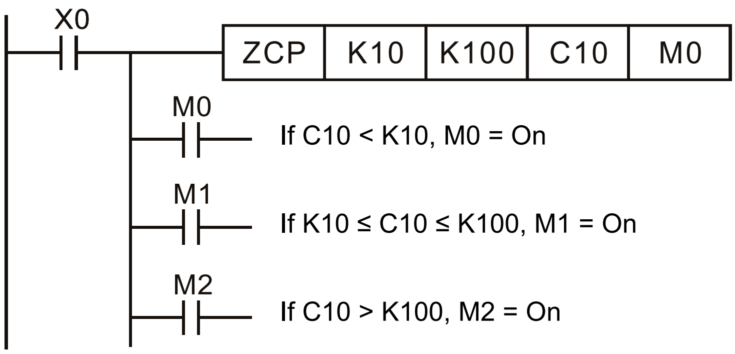
(S1): Lower limit of range comparison. (S2): Upper limit of range comparison. (S): Comparative value. (D): Results of comparison.

When the comparative value (S) is compared with the lower limit (S1) and upper limit (S2), the results of comparison are expressed in (D).

When lower limit (S1) > upper limit (S2), the command will use the lower limit (S1) to perform comparison with the upper and lower limit.
Size comparison is performed algebraically. All data is compared in the form of numerical binary values. Because this is a 16-bit command, when b15 is 1, this indicates a negative number.

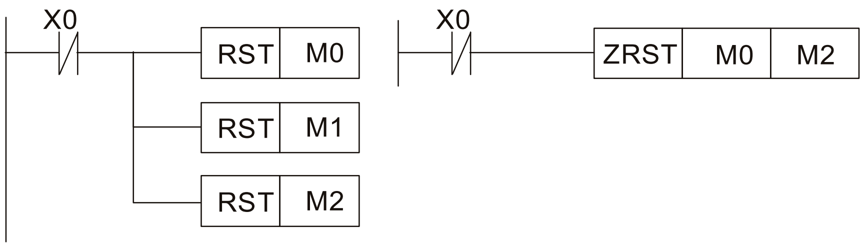
EXAMPLE

When the designated device is M0, it automatically occupies M0, M1 and M2.
When X0=On, the ZCP command executes, and M0, M1 or M2 will be On. When X0=Off, the ZCP command will not execute, and the state of M0, M1 or M2 will remain in the state prior to X0=Off.
If ≥, ≤, or ≠ results are needed, they can be obtained via series/parallel connections of M0-M2.



C2000_250

To clear results of comparison, use the RST or ZRST command.



C2000_251

API					
12	D	MOV	P	(S) (D)	Data movement

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
D							*	*	*	*	*

Notes on operand usage: none

16-bit command (5 STEP)			
MOV	Continuous execution type	MOVP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (9 STEP)			
DMOV	Continuous execution type	DMOVP	Pulse execution type
Flag signal:			

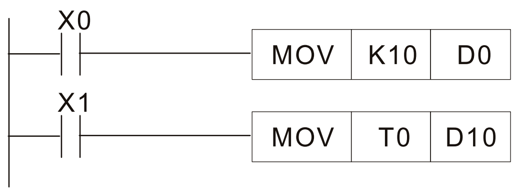
DESCRIPTION

(S): Data source. (D): Destination of data movement.

When this command is executed, the content of (S) content will be directly moved to (D): When the command is not executed, the content of (D) will not change.

EXAMPLE

When X0=Off, the content of D10 will not change; if X0=On, the value K10 will be sent to data register D10.
When X1=Off, the content of D10 will not change; if X1=On, the current value of T0 will be sent to data register D10.



C2000_252

API 15	BMOV P	S D n	Send all

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S						*	*	*	*	*	*
D							*	*	*	*	*
n				*	*				*	*	

16-bit command (7 STEP)			
BMOV	Continuous execution type	BMOV P	Pulse execution type
32-bit command			
—	—	—	—

Notes on operand usage:
n operand scope n = 1 to 512

Flag signal: none

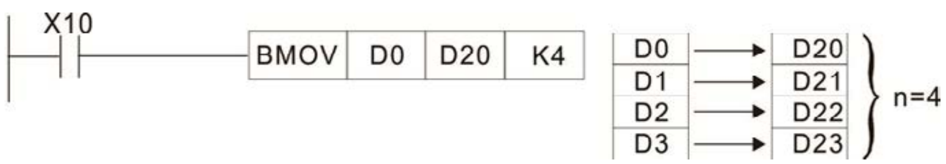
DESCRIPTION

S: Initiate source device. D: Initiate destination device. n: Send block length.

The content of n registers starting from the initial number of the device designated by S will be sent to the n registers starting from the initial number of the device designated by D.

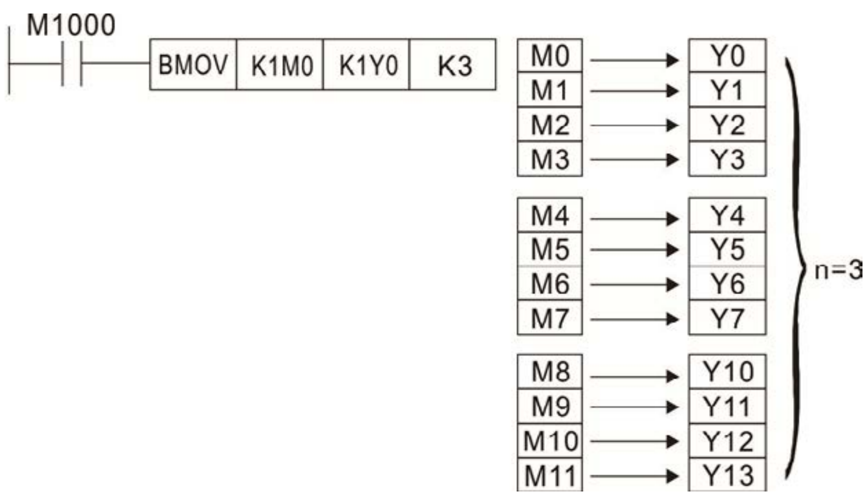
If the number of points referred to by n exceeds the range used by that device, only points within the valid range will be sent.

EXAMPLE 1 When X10=On, the content of registers D0-D3 will be sent to the four registers D20 to D23.



C2000_253

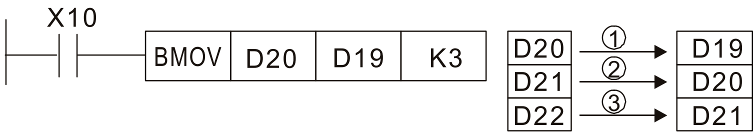
EXAMPLE 2 If the designated bit devices KnX, KnY, and KnM are sent, S and D must have the same number of nibbles, which implies that n must be identical.



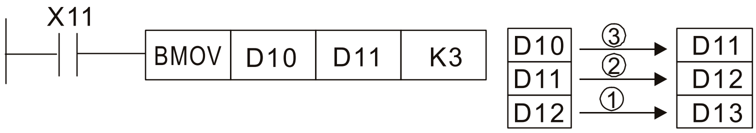
C2000_254

EXAMPLE 3 In order to prevent overlap between the transmission addresses of two operands, which would cause confusion, make sure that the addresses designated by the two operands have different sizes, as shown below:

When S > D, send in the order ① → ② → ③



When S < D, send in the order ③ → ② → ①



C2000_255

API	D	ADD	P	(S1) (S2) (D)	BIN addition
20					

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (7 STEP)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	ADD	Continuous execution type	ADDP	Pulse execution type
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*				
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	32-bit command (13 STEP)			
D							*	*	*	*	*	DADD	Continuous execution type	DADDP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage: none

Flag signal:
M1020 Zero flag
M1021 Borrow flag
M1022 Carry flag
Please refer to the following supplementary explanation

DESCRIPTION

(S1): Augend. (S2): Addend. (D): Sum.

Using two data sources: The result of adding (S1) and (S2) using the BIN method will be stored in (D).

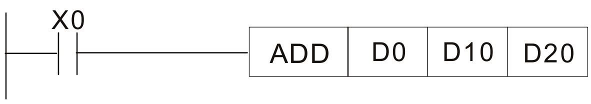
The highest bit of any data is symbolized as 0: indicating positive, 1: indicating negative, enabling the use of algebraic addition operations. (for instance: 3 + (-9)= -6)

Flag changes connected with the addition.

– When calculation results are 0, the zero flag M1020 will be On.
– When calculation results are less than -32,768 (16-bit command) resp. -2,147,483,648 (32-bit command), the borrow flag M1021 will be On.
– When calculation results are greater than 32,767 (16-bit command) resp. 2,147,483,647 (32-bit command), the carry flag M1022 will be On.

EXAMPLE

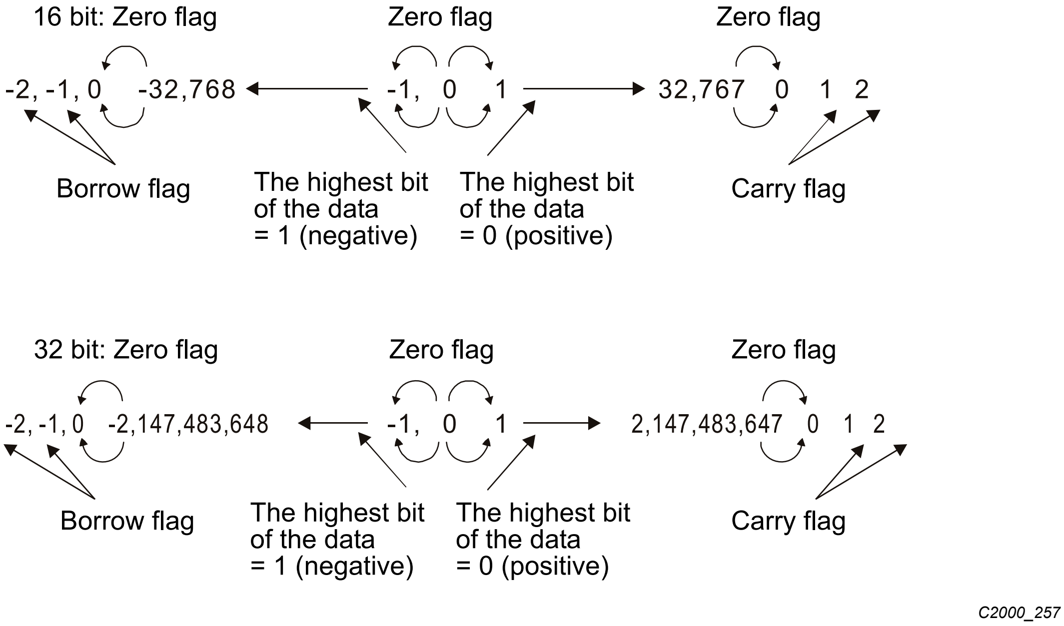
16-bit BIN addition: When X0=On, the result of the content of addend D0 plus the content of augend D10 will exist in the content of D20.



C2000_256

NOTE

Relationship between flag actions and negative/positive numbers:



API				
21	D	SUB	P	S1 S2 D	BIN subtraction

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
D							*	*	*	*	*

16-bit command (7 STEP)			
SUB	Continuous execution type	SUBP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (13 STEP)			
DSUB	Continuous execution type	DSUBP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage: none

Flag signal:
M1020 Zero flag
M1021 Borrow flag
M1022 Carry flag
Please refer to the following supplementary explanation

DESCRIPTION

S1: Minuend. S2: Subtrahend. D: Difference.

Using two data sources: The result of subtraction of S1 and S2 using the BIN method is stored in D.

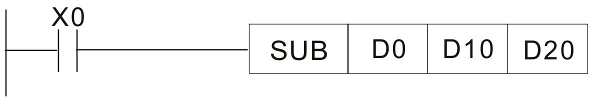
The highest bit of any data is symbolized as 0: indicating positive, 1: indicating negative, enabling the use of algebraic subtraction operations.

Flag changes connected with subtraction.

– When calculation results are 0, the zero flag M1020 will be On.
– When calculation results are less than -32,768 (16-bit command) resp. -2,147,483,648 (32-bit command), the borrow flag M1021 will be On.
– When calculation results are greater than 32,767 (16-bit command) resp. 2,147,483,647 (32-bit command), the carry flag M1022 will be On.

EXAMPLE

16-bit BIN subtraction: When X0=On, the content of D10 is subtracted from the content of D0, and the difference is stored in D20.



C2000_258

API					
22	D	MUL	P	S1 S2 D	BIN multiplication

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
D							*	*	*	*	*

Notes on operand usage:
The 16-bit command operand D will occupy 2 consecutive points
The 32-bit command operand D will occupy 4 consecutive points.

16-bit command (7 STEP)			
MUL	Continuous execution type	MULP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (13 STEP)			
DMUL	Continuous execution type	DMULP	Pulse execution type

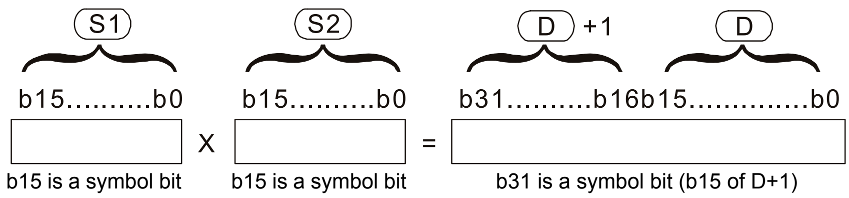
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

S1: Multiplicand. S2: Multiplier. D: Product.

Using two data sources: When S1 and S2 are multiplied using the BIN method, the product is stored in D.

16-bit BIN multiplication operation:

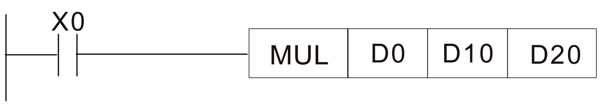


Symbol bit = 0 refers to a positive value.
Symbol bit = 1 refers to a negative value.

When D is a bit device, K1–K4 can be designated as a hexadecimal number, which will occupy 2 consecutive units.

EXAMPLE

When 16-bit D0 is multiplied by 16-bit D10, the result will be a 32-bit product; the upper 16 bits will be stored in D21, and the lower 16 bits will be stored in D20. Whether the bit at the farthest left is Off or On will indicate the sign of the result.



C2000_260

API	D	DIV	P	S1 S2 D	BIN division
23	D	DIV	P	(S1) (S2) (D)	BIN division

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
D							*	*	*	*	*

16-bit command (7 STEP)			
DIV	Continuous execution type	DIVP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (13 STEP)			
DDIV	Continuous execution type	DDIVP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage:
The 16-bit command operand D will occupy 2 consecutive points
The 32-bit command operand D will occupy 4 consecutive points.

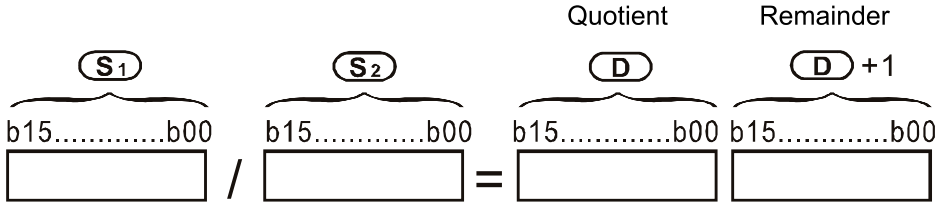
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

(S1): Dividend. (S2): Divisor. (D): Quotient and remainder.

Using two data sources: The quotient and remainder will be stored in (D) when (S1) and (S2) are subjected to division using the BIN method. The sign bit for (S1), (S2) and (D) must be kept in mind when performing a 16-bit operation.

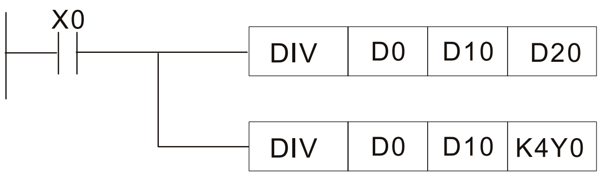
16-bit BIN division:



If (D) is a bit device, K1-K4 can be designated 16 bits, which will occupy 2 consecutive units and yield the quotient and remainder.

EXAMPLE

When X0=On, the quotient resulting from division of dividend D0 by divisor D10 will be placed in D20, and the remainder will be placed in D21. Whether the highest bit is Off or On will indicate the sign of the result.



C2000_262

API					
24	D	INC	P	(D)	BIN add one

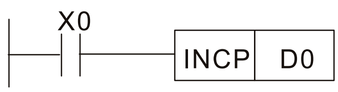
	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (3 STEP)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	INC	Continuous execution type	INCP	Pulse execution type
D							✻	✻	✻	✻	✻				
Notes on operand usage: none												32-bit command (5 STEP)			
												DINC	Continuous execution type	DINCP	Pulse execution type
												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

(D): Destination device.
If a command is not the pulse execution type, when the command is executed, the program will add 1 to the content of device (D) for each scanning cycle.
This command is ordinarily used as a pulse execution type command (INCP).
During 16-bit operation, 32,767 +1 will change the value to -32,768. During 32 bit operation, 2,147,483,647 +1 will change the value to -2,147,483,648.

EXAMPLE

When X0 = Off → On, 1 is automatically added to the content of D0.



C2000_263

API				
25	D	DEC	P	(D)	BIN subtract one

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (3 STEP)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	DEC	Continuous execution type	DECP	Pulse execution type
D				*	*	*	*	*							
Notes on operand usage: none												32-bit command (5 STEP)			
												DDEC	Continuous execution type	DDECP	Pulse execution type
												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

(D): Destination device.

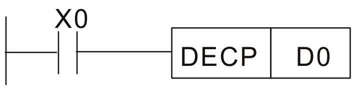
If a command is not the pulse execution type, when the command is executed, the program will add 1 to the content of device (D) for each scanning cycle.

This command is ordinarily used as a pulse execution type command (DECP).

During 16-bit operation, -32,768 -1 will change the value to 32,767. During 32 bit operation, -2,147,483,648 -1 will change the value to 2,147,483,647.

EXAMPLE

When X0 = Off → On, 1 is automatically subtracted from the content of D0.



C2000_264

API					
30	D	ROR	P	(D) (n)	Right rotation

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
D							*	*	*	*	*
n				*	*						

Notes on operand usage:

16-bit command:

Only K4 (16-bit) will be valid if the operand D is designated as KnY or KnM.

32-bit command:

Only K8 (32-bit) will be valid if the operand D is designated as KnYor KnM.

16-bit command (5 STEP)			
ROR	Continuous execution type	RORP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (9 STEP)			
DROR	Continuous execution type	DRORP	Pulse execution type

Flag signal:

M1022 Carry flag

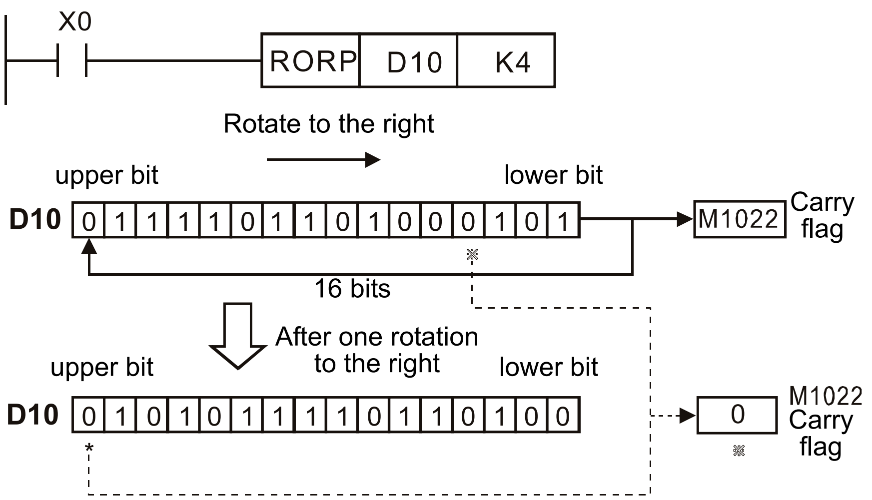
DESCRIPTION

(D): Device to be rotated. (n): Number of bits for one rotation.

Rotates the device designated by (D) to the right (n) bits.
This command is ordinarily used as a pulse execution type command (RORP).

EXAMPLE

When X0 = Off → On, 4 of the 16 bits in D10 specify a right rotation; the content of the bit indicated with * (see figure below) will be sent to the carry flag signal M1022.



C2000_265

API				
31	D	ROL	P	D n	Left rotation

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
D							*	*	*	*	*
n				*	*						

16-bit command (5 STEP)			
ROL	Continuous execution type	ROLP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (9 STEP)			
DROL	Continuous execution type	DROLP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage:

16-bit command:

Only K4 (16-bit) will be valid if the operand D is designated as KnY or KnM.

32-bit command:

Only K8 (32-bit) will be valid if the operand D is designated as KnYor KnM.

Flag signal:

M1022 Carry flag

DESCRIPTION

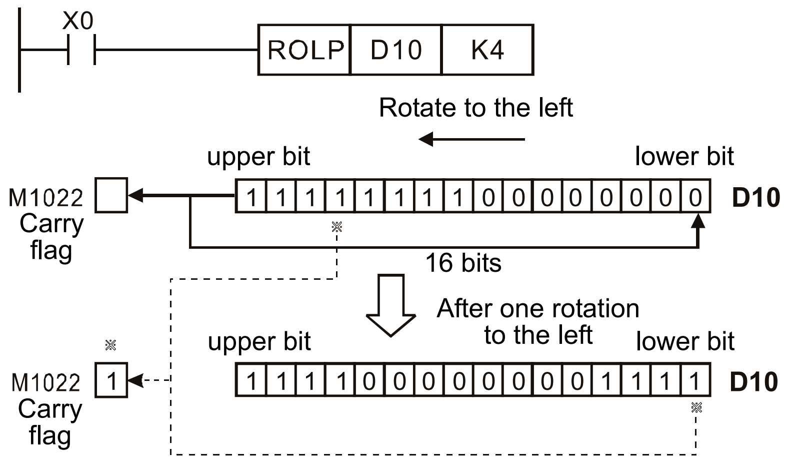
D: Device to be rotated. n: Number of bits for one rotation.

Rotates the device designated by D to the left n bits.

This command is ordinarily used as a pulse execution type command (ROLP).

EXAMPLE

When X0 = Off → On, 4 of the 16 bits in D10 specify a left rotation; the content of the bit indicated with * (see figure below) will be sent to the carry flag signal M1022.



C2000_266

API	ZRST			
40		P	(D1) (D2)	Clear range

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (5 STEP)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	ZRST	Continuous execution type	ZRSTP	Pulse execution type
D1		✻	✻						✻	✻	✻				
D2		✻	✻						✻	✻	✻	32-bit command			
												—	—	—	—

Notes on operand usage:

- Number of operand D_1 operand ≤ number of operand D_2
- Operands D_1, D_2 must designate the same type of device
- Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage

Flag signal: none

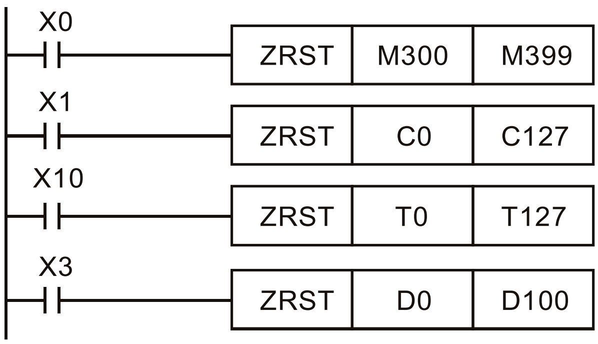
DESCRIPTION

(D1): Clear range's initial device. (D2): Clear range's final device.

When the number of operand (D1) > number of operand (D2), only the operand designated by (D2) will be cleared.

EXAMPLE

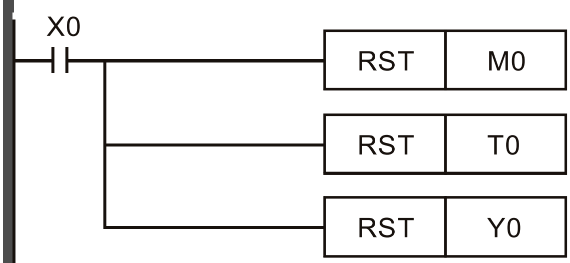
When X0 is On, auxiliary relays M300–M399 will be cleared and changed to Off.
When X1 is On, 16-bit counters C0–C127 will all be cleared. (Writes 0, and clears and changes contact and coil to Off).
When X10 is On, timer T0–T127 will all be cleared. (Writes 0, and clears and changes contact and coil to Off).
When X3 is On, the data in data registers D0–D100 will be cleared and set as 0.



C2000_267

NOTE

Devices can independently use the clear command (RST), such as bit device Y, M and word device T, C, D.



C2000_268

API				
49	D	FLT	P	(S) (D)	BIN whole number → binary decimal transformation

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S		✻	✻						✻	✻	✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
D		✻	✻						✻	✻	✻	DFLT	Continuous execution type	DFLTP	Pulse execution type

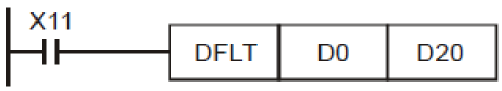
Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage
The operands S and D will occupy 2 consecutive points each.

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S): Transformation source device. (D): Device storing transformation results.
- Transforms BIN whole number into a binary decimal value.

EXAMPLE When X11 is On, converts the whole number of values corresponding to D0 and D1 into floating point numbers, which are placed in D20 and D21.



C2000_269

API				
110	D	ECMP	P	S1 S2 D	Comparison of binary floating point numbers

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				✻	✻						✻
S2				✻	✻						✻
D		✻	✻								

Notes on operand usage:
The operand D occupies three consecutive points.
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (13 steps)			
DECMP	Continuous execution type	DECMPP	Pulse execution type

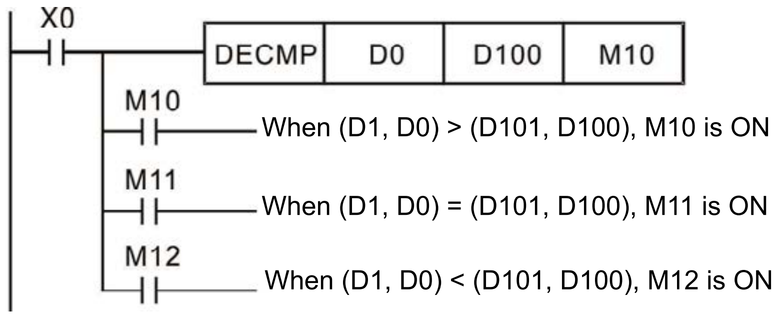
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Comparison of binary floating point numbers value 1. S2: Comparison of binary floating point numbers value 2. D: Results of comparison, occupies 3 consecutive points.
- When binary floating point number 1 is compared with comparative binary floating point number 2, the result of comparison (>, =, <) will be expressed in D.
- **If the source operand** S1 or S2 designates a constant K or H, the command will transform the constant to a binary floating-point number for the purpose of comparison.

EXAMPLE

When the designated device is M10, it will automatically occupy M10-M12.
When X0=On, the DECMP command executes, and one of M10-M12 will be On. When X0=Off, the DECMP command will not execute, and M10-M12 will remain in the X0=Off state.
If results in the form of ≥, ≤, or ≠ are needed, they can be obtained by series and parallel connection of M10-M12.
Please use the RST or ZRST command to clear the result.



C2000_271

API				
111	D EZCP P	S1 S2 S D	Comparison of binary floating point number range	

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				✻	✻						✻
S2				✻	✻						✻
S				✻	✻						✻
D		✻	✻								

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (17 steps)			
DEZCP	Continuous execution type	DEZCPP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage:
The operand D occupies three consecutive points.
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

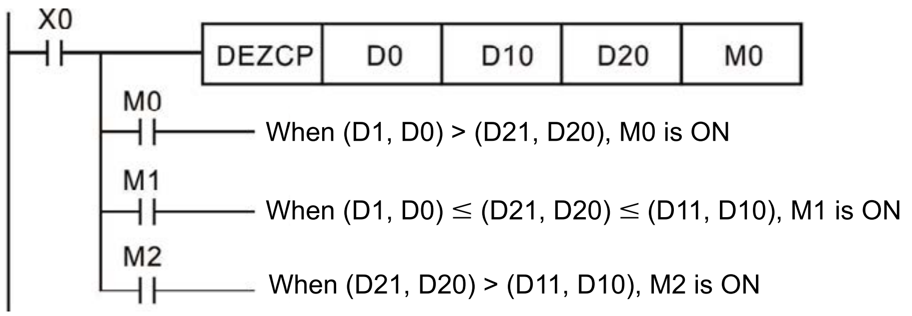
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Lower limit of binary floating point number in range comparison. S2: Upper limit of binary floating point number in range comparison. S: Comparison of binary floating point numerical values. D: Results of comparison, occupies 3 consecutive points.
- Comparison of binary floating point numerical value S with binary floating point number lower limit value S1 and binary floating point number upper limit value S2, the results of comparison are expressed in D.
- **If the source operand** S1 or S2 designates a constant K or H, the command will transform the constant to a binary floating-point number for the purpose of comparison.
- When the lower limit binary floating point number S1 is greater than the upper limit binary floating point number S2, a command will be issued to perform comparison with the upper and lower limits using the binary floating point number lower limit value S1.

EXAMPLE

When the designated device is M0, it will automatically occupy M0–M2.
When X0=On, the DEZCP command will be executed, and one of M0-M2 will be On. When X0=Off, the EZCP command will not execute, and M0–M2 will continue in the X0=Off state. Please use the RST or ZRST command to clear the result.



C2000_272

API					
116	D	RAD	P	(S) (D)	Angle → Diameter

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S				✻	✻						✻				
D											✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
Notes on operand usage: Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.												DRAD	Continuous execution type	DRADP	Pulse execution type
												Flag signal: none			

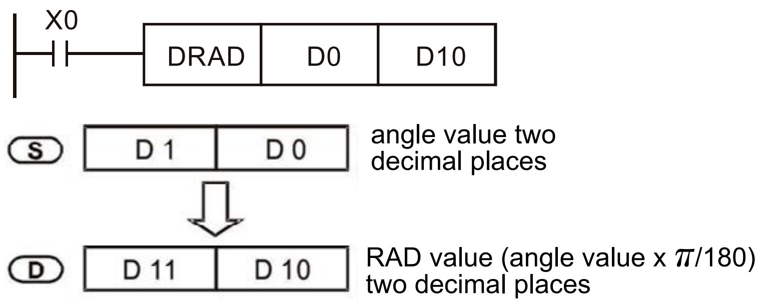
DESCRIPTION

- (S): data source (angle). (D): result of transformation (diameter).
- Uses the following formula to convert angles to radians.

  Diameter = Angle x (π/180)

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the angle of the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be converted to radians and stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_273

API					
117	D	DEG	P	S D	Diameter → Angle

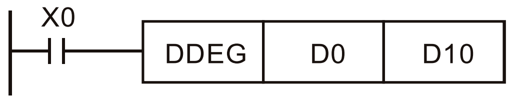
	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S				✻	✻						✻				
D											✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
Notes on operand usage: Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.												DDEG	Continuous execution type	DDEGP	Pulse execution type
												Flag signal: none			

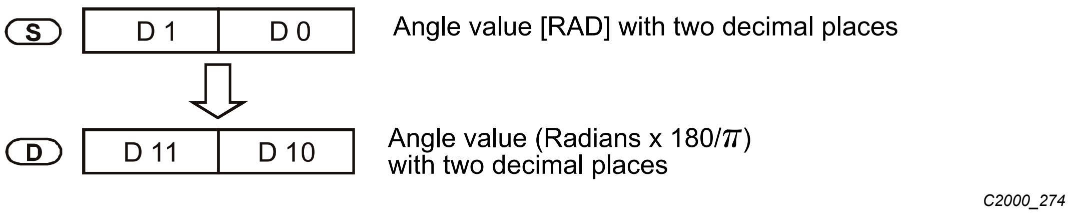
DESCRIPTION

- S: data source (diameter). D: result of transformation (angle).
- Uses the following formula to convert radians to an angle.
- Angle = Radians x (180/π)

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, angle of the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) in radians will be converted to an angle and stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.





API					
120	D	EADD	P	S1 S2 D	Adding binary floating point numbers

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S1				*	*						*	32-bit command (9 steps)			
S2				*	*						*	DEADD	Continuous execution type	DEADDP	Pulse execution type
D											*	Flag signal: none			

Notes on operand usage:

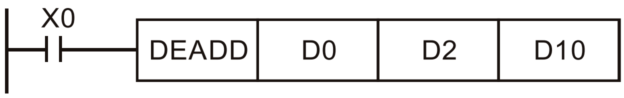
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

DESCRIPTION

- S1: addend. S2: augend. D: sum.
- When the content of the register designated by S2 is added to the content of the register designated by S1, and the result is stored in the register designated by D. Addition is performed entirely using binary floating-point numbers.
- **If the source operand** S1 or S2 designates a constant K or H, the command will transform that constant into a binary floating point number for use in addition.
- **In the situation when** S1 and S2 designate identical register numbers, if a "continuous execution" command is employed, when conditional contact is On, the register will perform addition once during each scan. Pulse execution type commands (DEADDP) are generally used under ordinary circumstances.

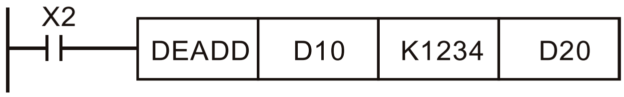
EXAMPLE

When X0=On, a binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be added to a binary floating point number (D3, D2), and the results stored in (D11, D10).



C2000_275

When X2=On, a binary floating point number (D11, D10) will be added to K1234 (which has been automatically converted to a binary floating-point number), and the results stored in (D21, D20).



C200_276

API					
121	D	ESUB	P	S1 S2 D	Subtraction of binary floating point numbers

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*						*
S2				*	*						*
D											*

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

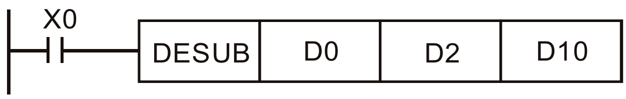
16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (13 steps)			
DESUB	Continuous execution type	DESUBP	Pulse execution type

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- S1: minuend. S2: subtrahend. D: difference.
- When the content of the register designated by S2 is subtracted from the content of the register designated by S1, the difference will be stored in the register designated by D, subtraction is performed entirely using binary floating-point numbers.
- **If the source operand** S1 or S2 designates a constant K or H, the command will transform that constant into a binary floating point number for use in subtraction.
- **In the situation when** S1 and S2 designate identical register numbers, if a "continuous execution" command is employed, when conditional contact is On, the register will perform subtraction once during each scan. Pulse execution type commands (DESUBP) are generally used under ordinary circumstances.

EXAMPLE When X0 = On, a binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be subtracted to a binary floating point number (D3, D2), and the results stored in (D11, D10).



C2000_277

When X2 = On, the binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be subtracted from K1234 (which has been automatically converted to a binary floating-point number), and the results stored in (D11, D10).

C2000_278

API					
122	D	EMUL	P	S1 S2 D	Multiplication of binary floating point numbers

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				✻	✻						✻
S2				✻	✻						✻
D											✻

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (13 steps)			
DEMUL	Continuous execution type	DEMULP	Pulse execution type

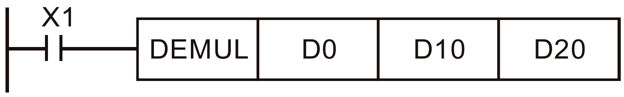
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- S1: multiplicand. S2: multiplier. D: product.
- When the content of the register designated by S1 is multiplied by the content of the register designated by S2, the product will be stored in the register designated by D, multiplication is performed entirely using binary floating-point numbers.
- **If the source operand** S1 or S2 designates a constant K or H, the command will transform that constant into a binary floating point number for use in multiplication.
- **In the situation when** S1 and S2 designate identical register numbers, if a "continuous execution" command is employed, when conditional contact is On, the register will perform multiplication once during each scan. Pulse execution type commands (DEMULP) are generally used under ordinary circumstances.

EXAMPLE

When X1 = On, the binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be multiplied by the binary floating point number (D11, D10), and the product will be stored in the register designated by (D21, D20).



C2000_280

When X2 = On, the binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be multiplied by K1234 (which has been automatically converted to a binary floating-point number), and the results stored in (D11, D10).

C2000_281

API				
123	D	EDIV	P	(S1) (S2) (D)	Division of binary floating point numbers

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*						*
S2				*	*						*
D											*

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (13 steps)			
DEDIV	Continuous execution type	DEDIVP	Pulse execution type

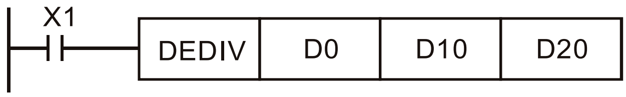
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S1): dividend (S2): divisor (D): quotient
- When the content of the register designated by (S1) is divided by the content of the register designated by (S2), the quotient will be stored in the register designated by (D), division is performed entirely using binary floating-point numbers.
- **If the source operand** (S1) or (S2) designates a constant K or H, the command will transform that constant into a binary floating point number for use in division.

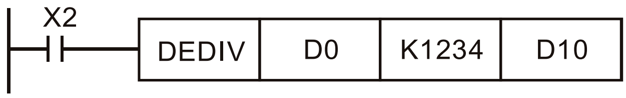
EXAMPLE

When X1 = On, the binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be divided by the binary floating point number (D11, D10), and the quotient stored in the register designated by (D21, D20).



C2000_282

When X2 = On, the binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be divided by K1,234 (which has been automatically converted to a binary floating-point number), and the results stored in (D11, D10).



C2000_283

API					
124	D	EXP	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number obtain exponent

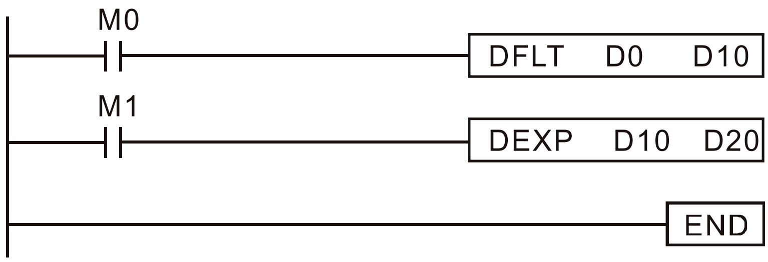
	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S				*	*						*				
D											*	32-bit command (9 steps)			
Notes on operand usage: Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.												DEXP	Continuous execution type	DEXPP	Pulse execution type
												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

- (S): operation source device. (D): operation results device.
- Taking e = 2.71828 as a base, (S) is the exponent in the EXP operation.
- [(D) +1, (D)] = EXP [(S) + 1, (S)]
- Valid regardless of whether the content of (S) has a positive or negative value. The designated register (D) must have a 32-bit data format. This operation is performed using floating-point numbers, and (S) must therefore be converted to a floating point number.
- Content of operand (D) = e^{S} ; e = 2.71828, (S) is the designated source data.

EXAMPLE

When M0 is On, the value of (D1, D0) will be converted to a binary floating point number, which will be stored in register (D11, D10).
When M1 is On, the EXP operation is performed on the exponent of (D11, D10); its value is a binary floating point number stored in register (D21, D20).



C2000_284

API				
125	D	LN	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number obtain logarithm

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S				✻	✻						✻
D											✻

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DLN	Continuous execution type	DLNP	Pulse execution type

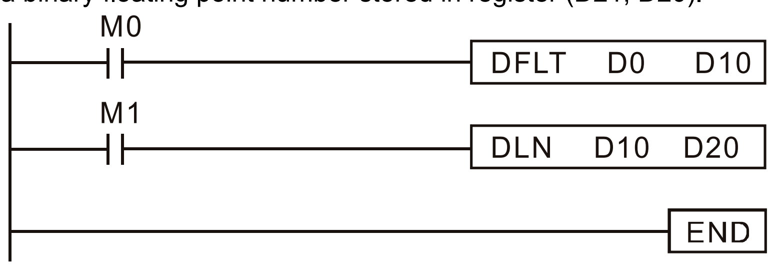
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S): operation source device. (D): operation results device.
- Natural logarithm (logarithm whose base is "e (2.71828)") of (S) and (S)+1 is calculated, and the operation result is stored to (D) and (D)+1.
- [(D) +1, (D)] = EXP [(S) + 1, (S)]
- Valid regardless of whether the content of (S) has a positive or negative value. The designated register (D) must have a 32-bit data format. This operation is performed using floating-point numbers, and (S) must therefore be converted to a floating point number.
- Content of operand (D) = e^{S}; e = 2.71828, (S) is the designated source data.

EXAMPLE

When M0 is On, the value of (D1, D0) will be converted to a binary floating point number, which will be stored in register (D11, D10).
When M1 is On, the EXP operation is performed on the exponent of (D11, D10); its value is a binary floating point number stored in register (D21, D20).



C2000_285

API					
127	D	ESQR	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number find square root

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S				✻	✻						✻
D											✻

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command

—	—	—	—

32-bit command (9 steps)

DESQR	Continuous execution type	DESQRP	Pulse execution type

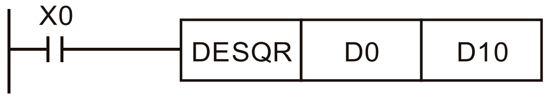
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S): source device for which square root is desired. (D): result of finding square root.
- When the square root is taken of the content of the register designated by (S), the result is temporarily stored in the register designated by (D). Taking square roots is performed entirely using binary floating-point numbers.
- If the source operand (S) refers to a constant K or H, the command will transform that constant into a binary floating point number for use in the operation.

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the square root is taken of the binary floating point number (D1, D0), and the result is stored in the register designated by (D11, D10).

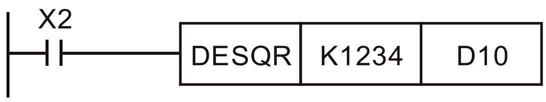


$\sqrt{(D1, D0)} \longrightarrow (D11, D10)$

Binary floating point   Binary floating point

C2000_286

When X2 = On, the square root is taken of K1, 234 (which has been automatically converted to a binary floating-point number), and the results stored in (D11, D10).



C2000_287

API					
129	D	INT	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number → BIN whole number transformation

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S											✻				
D											✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
												DINT	Continuous execution type	DINTP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

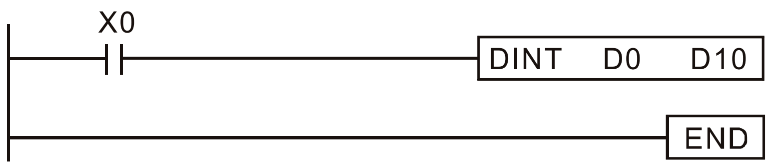
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S): the source device to be transformed. (D): results of transformation.
- The content of the register designated by (S) is transformed from a binary floating point number format into a BIN whole number, and is temporarily stored in (D). The BIN whole number floating point number will be discarded.
- The action of this command is the opposite of that of command API 49 (FLT).

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the binary floating point number (D1, D0) is transformed into a BIN whole number, and the result is stored in (D10); the BIN whole number floating point number will be discarded.



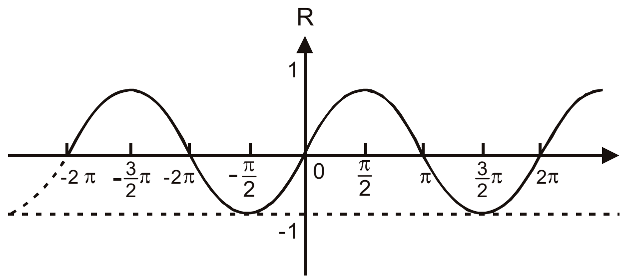
C2000_288

API 130	D	SIN	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number SIN operation

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S				✻	✻						✻				
D											✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
Notes on operand usage: Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.												DSIN	Continuous execution type	DSINP	Pulse execution type
												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

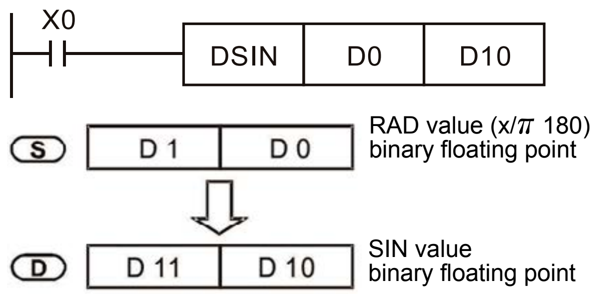
- (S): the designated source value. (D): the SIN value result.
- (S) is the designated source in radians.
- The value in radians (RAD) is equal to (angle x π/180).
- The SIN obtained from the source value designated by (S) is stored in (D).
- The following figure displays the relationship between the arc and SIN results:



S: Radian
R: Result (SIN value)

C2000_289

EXAMPLE When X0 = On, the SIN value of the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) in radians (RAD) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_279

API				
131	D	COS	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number COS operation

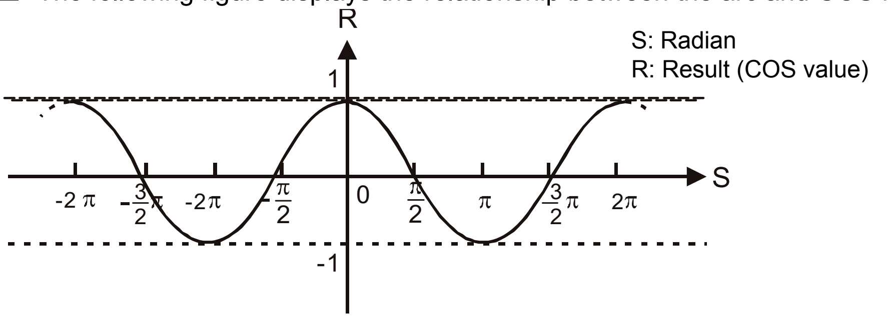
	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S				✻	✻						✻
D											✻

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DCOS	Continuous execution type	DCOSP	Pulse execution type
Flag signal: none			

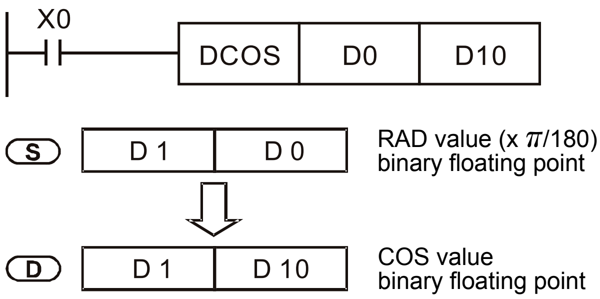
DESCRIPTION

- (S): the designated source value. (D): the COS value result.
- When calculation results yield 0, M1020 = On.
- The COS obtained from the source value designated by (S) is stored in (D).
- The following figure displays the relationship between the arc and COS results:



C2000_290

EXAMPLE When X0 = On, the SIN value of the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) in radians (RAD) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



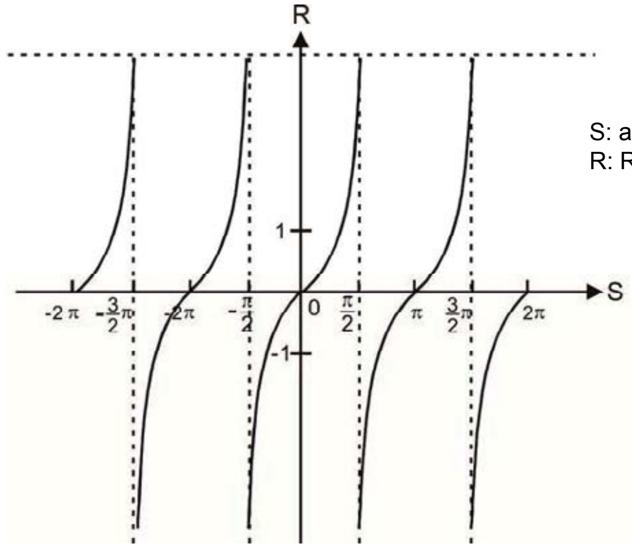
C2000_291

API				
132	D	TAN	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number TAN operation

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S				✻	✻						✻				
D											✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
Notes on operand usage: Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.												DTAN	Continuous execution type	DTANP	Pulse execution type
												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

- (S): the designated source value. (D): the TAN value result.
- **The source designated by (S) can be given as radians or an angle; this is decided by flag M1018.**
- When M1018 = Off, the operation is in radians mode, where the radians (RAD) value is equal to (angle x π/180).
- When M1018 = On, the operation is in the angle mode, where the angular range is 0 °≤ angle <360 °.
- When calculation results yield 0, M1020 = On.
- The TAN obtained from the source value designated by (S) is stored in (D).
- The following figure displays the relationship between the arc and TAN results:

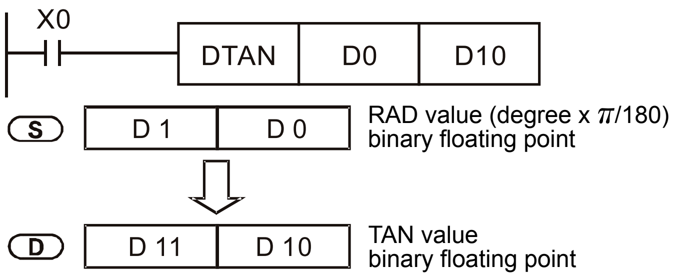


S: arc angle data
R: Result (TAN value)

C2000_292

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the TAN value of the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) in radians (RAD) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_293

API					
133	D	ASIN	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number ASIN operation

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S				✻	✻						✻
D											✻

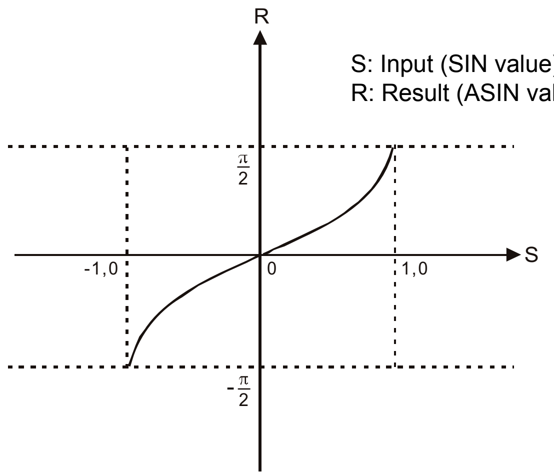
Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DASIN	Continuous execution type	DASINP	Pulse execution type

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

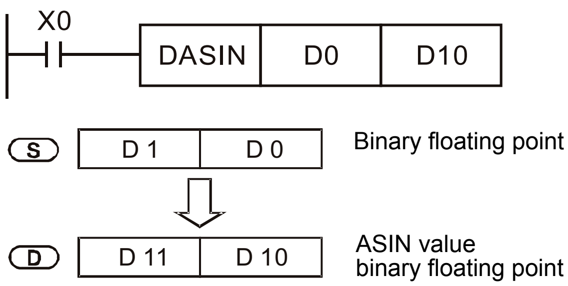
- (S): the designated source (binary floating point number). (D): the ASIN value result.
- ASIN value = sin^{-1}
- When M1018 = On, the operation is in the angle mode, where the angular range is 0 °≤ angle <360 °.
- The figure below shows the relationship between input data and result:



C2000_294

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the ASIN value obtained from the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_295

API				
134	D ACOS P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number ACOS operation	

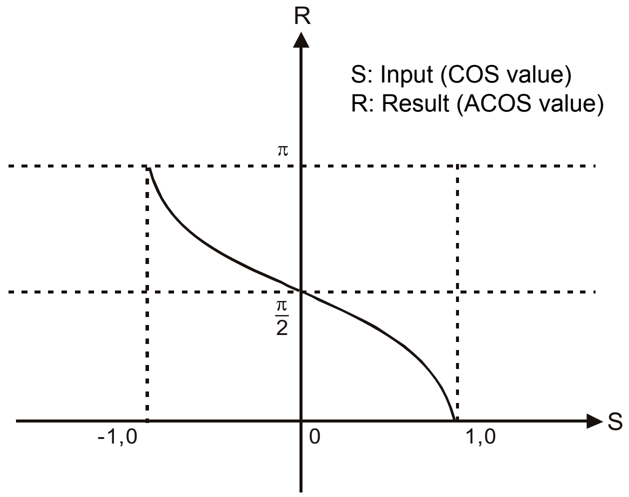
	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S				✻	✻						✻				
D											✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
												DACOS	Continuous execution type	DACOSP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

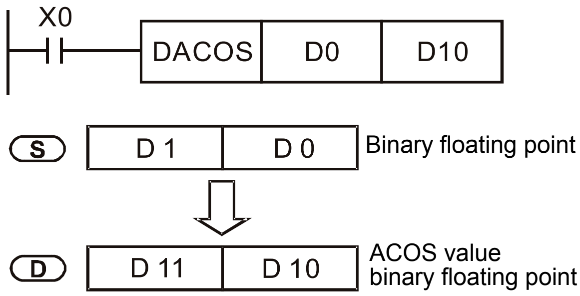
- (S): the designated source (binary floating point number). (D): the ACOS value result.
- ACOS value = $\cos^{-1}$
- The figure below shows the relationship between input data and result:



C2000_296

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the ACOS value obtained from the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_297

API				
135	D	ATAN	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number ATAN operation

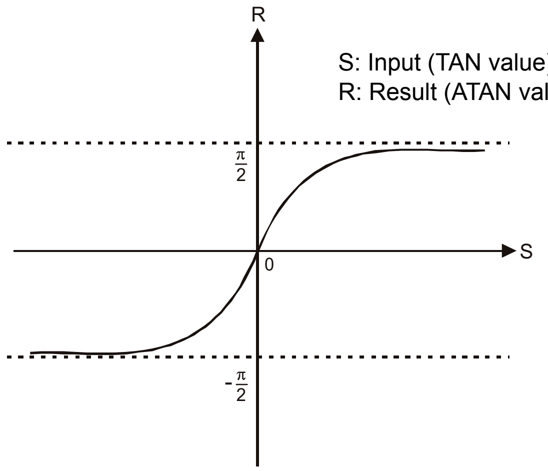
	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	—	—	—	—
S				✻	✻						✻				
D											✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
												DATAN	Continuous execution type	DATANP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

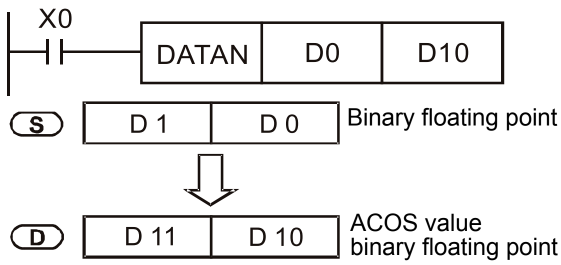
- (S): the designated source (binary floating point number). (D): the ATAN value result.
- ATAN value = $\tan^{-1}$
- The figure below shows the relationship between input data and result:



C2000_298

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the TAN value obtained from the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_299

API					
136	D	SINH	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number SINH operation

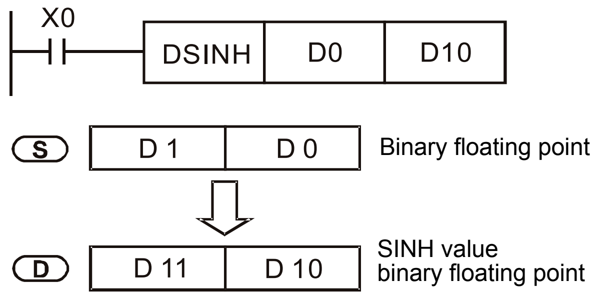
	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	–	–	–	–
S				✻	✻						✻				
D											✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
Notes on operand usage: Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.												DSINH	Continuous execution type	DSINHP	Pulse execution type
												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

- (S): the designated source (binary floating point number). (D): the SINH value result.
- SINH value = $(e^{S} – e^{-S})/2$

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the SINH value obtained from the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_300

API	D	COSH	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number COSH operation
137					

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S				✻	✻						✻
D											✻

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DCOSH	Continuous execution type	DCOSH P	Pulse execution type

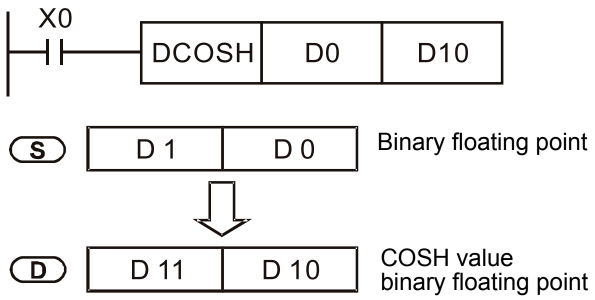
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S): the designated source (binary floating point number). (D): the COSH value result.
- COSH value = $(e^{S} + e^{-S})/2$

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the COSH value obtained from the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_301

API					
138	D	TANH	P	(S) (D)	Binary floating point number TANH operation

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S				✻	✻						✻
D											✻

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

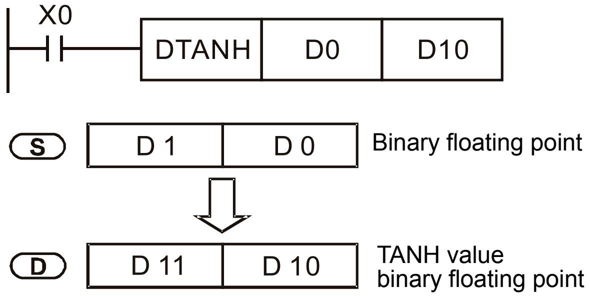
16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DTANH	Continuous execution type	DTANHP	Pulse execution type
Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

- (S): the designated source (binary floating point number). (D): the TANH value result.
- TANH value = $(e^{S} - e^{-S})/(e^{S} + e^{-S})$

EXAMPLE

When X0 = On, the TANH value obtained from the designated binary floating point number (D1, D0) will be stored in (D11, D10), with the content consisting of a binary floating point number.



C2000_302

API	RPR	P	S1 S2	Read servo parameter
139				

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (5 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	RPR	Continuous execution type	RPRP	Pulse execution type
S1				✻	✻						✻	32-bit command			
S2											✻	—	—	—	—
Notes on operand usage: none												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

■ (S1): Parameter address of data to be read. (S2): Register where data to be read is stored.

API	WPR	P	S1 S2	Write servo parameter
140				

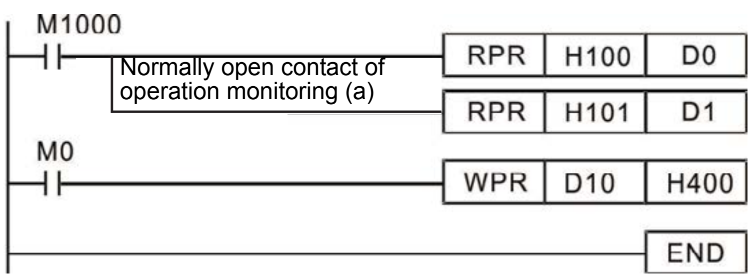
	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (5 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	WPR	Continuous execution type	WPRP	Pulse execution type
S1				✻	✻						✻	32-bit command			
S2				✻	✻						✻	—	—	—	—
Notes on operand usage: none												Flag signal: none			

DESCRIPTION

(S1): Data to write to specified page. (S2): Parameter address of data to be written.

EXAMPLE

- When the data in the C2000 driver's parameter H01.00 is read and written to D0, data from H01.01 will be read and written to D1.
- When M0 = On, the content of D10 will be written to the C2000 driver parameter 04.00 (first speed of multiple speed levels).
- When the parameter has been written successfully, M1017 = On.
- The C2000's WPR command does not support writing to the 20XX address, but the RPR command supports reading of 21XX, 22XX.



C2000_328

NOTE

Take care when using the WPR command. When writing parameters, because most parameters are recorded as they are written, these parameters may only be revised 109 times; a memory write error may occur if parameters are written more than 109 times.
Because the following commonly-used parameters have special processing, there are no restrictions on the number of times they may be written:

Parameter	Description
P00-10	Control method
P00-11	Speed mode selection
P00-12	P2P position mode
P00-13	Torque mode select
P00-27	User-defined value
P01-12	Acceleration time 1
P01-13	Deceleration time 1
P01-14	Acceleration time 2
P01-15	Deceleration time 2
P01-16	Acceleration time 3
P01-17	Deceleration time 3
P01-18	Acceleration time 4
P01-19	Deceleration time 4
P02-12	Select MI Conversion Time mode
P02-18	Select MO Conversion Time mode
P04-50–P04-69	PLC register parameter 0–19
P08-04	Upper limit of integral
P08-05	PID output upper limit
P10-17	Electronic gear A
P10-18	Electronic gear B
P11-34	Torque command
P11-43	P2P highest frequency
P11-44	Position control acceleration time
P11-45	Position control deceleration time

Calculation of the number of times written is based on whether the written value is modified. For instance, writing the same value 100 times at the same time counts as writing only once. When writing a PLC program, if unsure of usage of the WPR command, we recommend that you use the WPRP command.

API			
141	FPID P	(S1) (S2) (S3) (S4)	Driver PID control mode

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				✻	✻						✻
S2				✻	✻						✻
S3				✻	✻						✻
S4				✻	✻						✻

Notes on operand usage: none

16-bit command (9 steps)			
FPID	Continuous execution type	FPIDP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command			
—	—	—	—

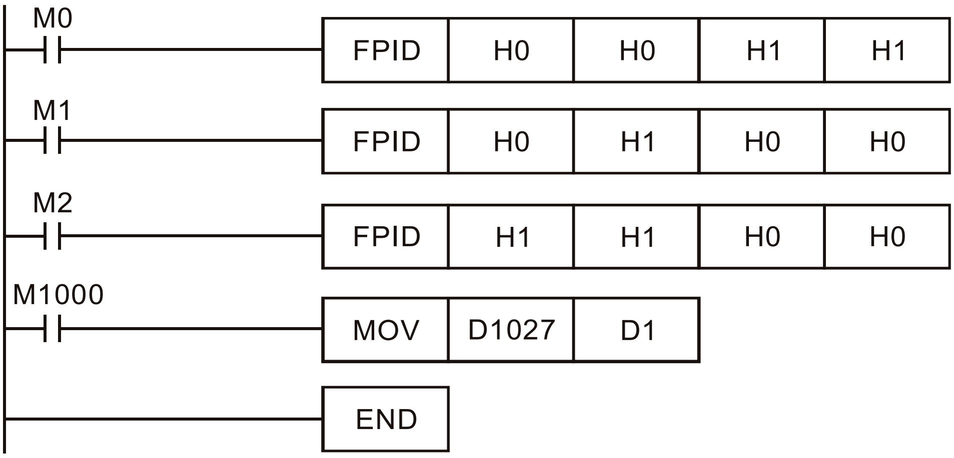
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S1): PID reference target value input terminal select. (S2): PID function proportional gain P. (S3): PID function integral time I. (S4): PID function differential time D.
- The FPID command can directly control the driver's feedback control of PID parameter 08-00 PID reference target value input terminal selection, 08-01 proportional gain P, 08-02 integral time I, and 08-03 differential time D.

EXAMPLE

- When M0 = On, the set PID reference target value input terminal selection is 0 (no PID function), the PID function proportional gain P is 0, the PID function integral time I is 1 (units: 0.01 sec.), and the PID function differential time D is 1 (units: 0.01 sec.).
- When M1 = On, the set PID reference target value input terminal selection is 0 (no PID function), the PID function proportional gain P is 1 (units: 0.01), the PID function integral time I is 0, and the PID function differential time D is 0.
- When M2 = On, the set PID reference target value input terminal selection is 1 (Negative PID feedback: on analogue input. To setting 5 of Pr. 03-00 to Pr. 03-02.), the PID function proportional gain P is 1 (units: 0.01), the PID function integral time I is 0, and the PID function differential time D is 0.
- D1027: Frequency command after PID operation.



C2000_329

API	FREQ	P	S1 S2 S3	Driver speed control mode
142				

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				✻	✻						✻
S2				✻	✻						✻
S3				✻	✻						✻

Notes on operand usage: none

16-bit command (7 steps)			
FREQ	Continuous execution type	FREQP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command			
—	—	—	—

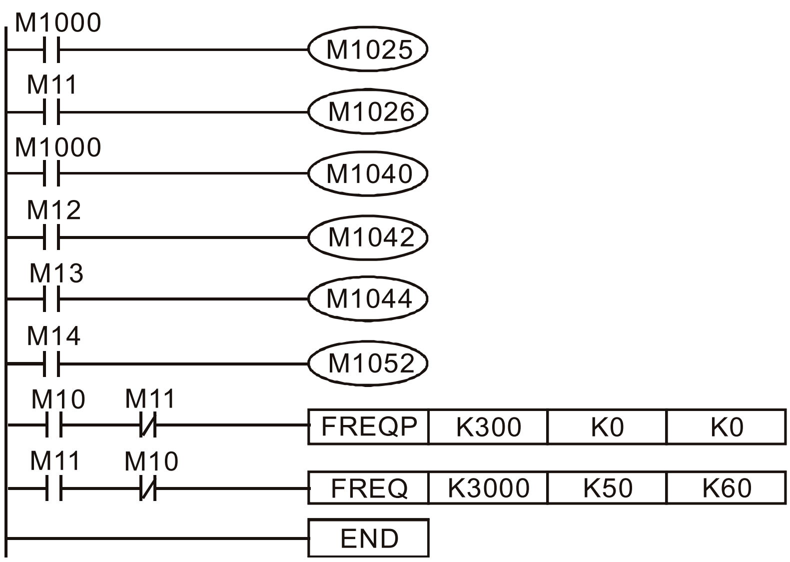
Flag signal: M1015

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Frequency command. S2: Acceleration time. S3: Deceleration time.
- S2, S3: In acceleration/deceleration time settings, the number of decimal places is determined by the definitions of Pr. 01-45.

EXAMPLE

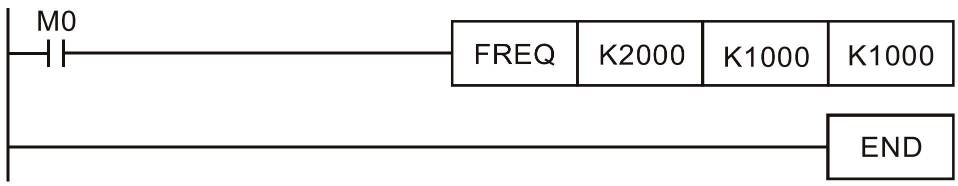
- When 01-45 = 0: units of 0.01 sec. The setting of 50 for S2 (acceleration time) in the ladder diagram below implies 0.5 sec, and the S3 (deceleration time) setting of 60 implies 0.6 sec.
- The FREQ command can control driver frequency commands, and acceleration and deceleration time; it also uses special register control actions, such as:
  - M1025: Control driver RUN (ON)/STOP (OFF) (RUN requires Servo ON (M1040 ON) to be effective)
  - M1026: Control driver operating direction FWD (OFF)/REV (ON)
  - M1040: Control Servo ON/Servo OFF
  - M1042: Trigger quick stop (ON)/does not trigger quick stop (OFF)
  - M1044: Pause (ON)/release pause (OFF)
  - M1052: Lock frequency (ON)/release lock frequency (OFF)
  - M1025: Driver RUN (On)/STOP (Off)
  - M1026: driver operating direction FWD (Off)/REV (On)
  - M1015: frequency reached.
- When M10 = ON, sets the driver frequency command K300 (3.00 Hz), with an acceleration/deceleration time of 0.
  When M11 = ON, sets the driver frequency command K3000 (30.00 Hz), with an acceleration time of 50 (0.5 sec.) and deceleration time of 60 (0.6 sec.). (When 01-45 = 0)
- When M11 = OFF, the driver frequency command will now change to 0.



C2000_330

EXAMPLE

- Parameter 09-33 are defined on the basis of whether reference commands have been cleared before PLC operation:
  - Bit 0: Prior to PLC scanning procedures, whether the target frequency has been cleared is 0. (This will be written to the FREQ command when the PLC is On.)
  - Bit 1: Prior to PLC scanning procedures, whether the target torque has been cleared is 0. (This will be written to the TORQ command when the PLC is On.)
  - Bit 2: Prior to PLC scanning procedures, whether speed limits in the torque mode have been cleared is 0. (This will be written to the TORQ command when the PLC is On.)
- In the following program, if we force M0 to be 1, the frequency command will be 20.00 Hz; but when M0 is set as 0, there will be a different situation:



C2000_331

  - Case 1: When the 09-33 bit 0 is 0, and M0 is set as 0, the frequency command will remain at 20.00 Hz.
  - Case 2: When the 09-33 bit 0 is 1, and M0 is set as 0, the frequency command will change to 0.00 Hz
  - The reason for this is that when the 09-33 bit 0 is 1 prior to PLC scanning procedures, the frequency will first revert to 0.
  - When the 09-33 bit 0 is 0, the frequency will not revert to 0.

API	MODRW		S1 S2 S3 S n	MODBUS® data read/write
150		P		

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (5 STEP)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	MODRW	Continuous execution type	MODRWP	Pulse execution type
S1				✻	✻						✻				
S2				✻	✻						✻	32-bit command			
S3				✻	✻						✻	—	—	—	—
S				✻	✻						✻	Flag signal: M1077, M1078, M1079			
n				✻	✻						✻				

DESCRIPTION

- S1: online device address. S2: communications function code. S3: address of data to read/write. S: register for data to be read/written is stored. n: length of data to be read/written.
- COM1 must be defined as controlled by the PLC (set P9-31 = -12) before using this command, and the corresponding communications speed and format must also be set (set P09-01 and P09-04). S2: communications function code. Currently only supports the following function code; the remaining function code cannot be executed.

Function	Description
H 02	Input read
H 03	Read word
H 06	Write single word
H 0F	Write multiple coils
H 10	Write multiple word

- After executing this command, M1077, M1078 and M1079 will be immediately changed to 0. As an example, when C2000 must control another converter and PLC, if the converter has a station number of 10 and the PLC has a station number of 20, see the following example:

Control slave device converter

Serial No.	Example	MODRW command				
		S1	S2	S3	S4	n
		Node ID	Function code	Address	Register	Length
1	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the converter slave device parameters P01-00 to P01-03, and saves the read data in D0 to D3	K10	H3	H100	D0	K4
2	Reads 3 sets of data comprising the converter slave device addresses H2100 to H2102, and saves the read data in D5 to D7	K10	H3	H2100	D5	K3
3	Writes 3 sets of data comprising the converter slave device parameters P05-00 to P05-03, and writes the values as D10 to D12	K10	H10	H500	D10	K3
4	Writes 2 sets of data comprising the converter slave device addresses H2000 to H2001, and writes the values as D15 to D16	K10	H10	H2000	D15	K2

DESCRIPTION

PLC controlling slave device

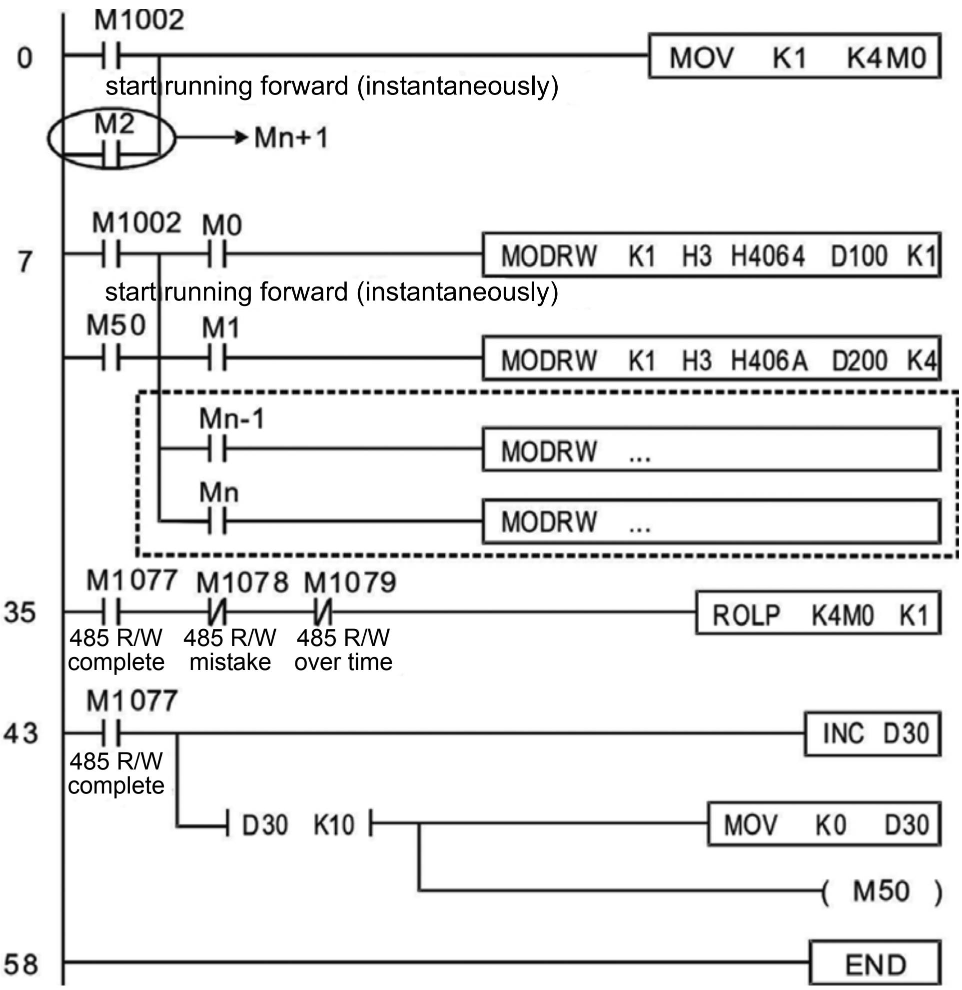
Serial No.	Example	MODRW command				
		S1	S2	S3	S4	n
		Node ID	Function code	Address	Register	Length
1	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the PLC slave device's X0 to X3 state, and saves the read data in bits 0 to 3 of D0	K20	H2	H400	D0	K4
2	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the PLC slave device's Y0 to Y3 state, and saves the read data in bits 0 to 3 of D1	K20	H2	H500	D1	K4
3	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the PLC slave device's M0 to M3 state, and saves the read data in bits 0 to 3 of D2	K20	H2	H800	D2	K4
4	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the PLC slave device's T0 to T3 state, and saves the read data in bits 0 to 3 of D3	K20	H2	H600	D3	K4
5	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the PLC slave device's C0 to C3 state, and saves the read data in bits 0 to 3 of D4	K20	H2	HE00	D4	K4
6	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the PLC slave device's T0 to T3 count value, and saves the read data of D10 to D13	K20	H3	H600	D10	K4
7	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the PLC slave device's C0 to C3 count value, and saves the read data of D20 to D23	K20	H3	HE00	D20	K4
8	Reads 4 sets of data comprising the PLC slave device's D0 to D3 value, and saves the read data of D30 to D33	K20	H3	H1000	D30	K4
9	Writes 4 sets of the PLC slave device's Y0 to Y3 state, and writes the values as bits 0 to 3 of D1	K20	HF	H500	D1	K4
10	Writes 4 sets of the PLC slave device's M0 to M3 state, and writes the values as bits 0 to 3 of D2	K20	HF	H800	D2	K4
11	Writes 4 sets of the PLC slave device's T0 to T3 state, and writes the values as bits 0 to 3 of D3	K20	HF	H600	D3	K4
12	Writes 4 sets of the PLC slave device's C0 to C3 state, and writes the values as bits 0 to 3 of D4	K20	HF	HE00	D4	K4
13	Writes 4 sets of the PLC slave device's T0 to T3 state, and writes the values of D10 to D13	K20	H10	H600	D10	K4
14	Writes 4 sets of the PLC slave device's C0 to C3 state, and writes the values of D20 to D23	K20	H10	HE00	D20	K4
15	Writes 4 sets of the PLC slave device's D0 to D3 state, and writes the values of D30 to D33	K20	H10	H1000	D30	K4

EXAMPLE Will trigger M0 On when the PLC begins to operate, and sends instruction to execute one MODRW command.

After receiving the slave device's response, if the command is correct, it will execute one ROL command, which will cause M1 to be On.

After receiving the slave device's response, will trigger M50 = 1 after a delay of 10 PLC scanning cycles, and then execute one MODRW command.

After again receiving the slave device's response, if the command is correct, it will execute one ROL command, and M2 will change to On at this time (and M2 can be defined as a repeat of M); K4M0 will change to K1, and only M0 will remain 1. Transmission can proceed in a continuous cycle. If you wish to add a command, merely add the desired command in the empty frame, and change repeat M to Mn+1.



C2000_270

API			Operands	Function
160	D	TCMP P	(S1) (S2) (S3) (S) (D)	Comparison of calendar data

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S3				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S									*	*	*
D		*	*								

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command (11 steps)			
TCMP	Continuous execution type	TCMPP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command			
—	—	—	—

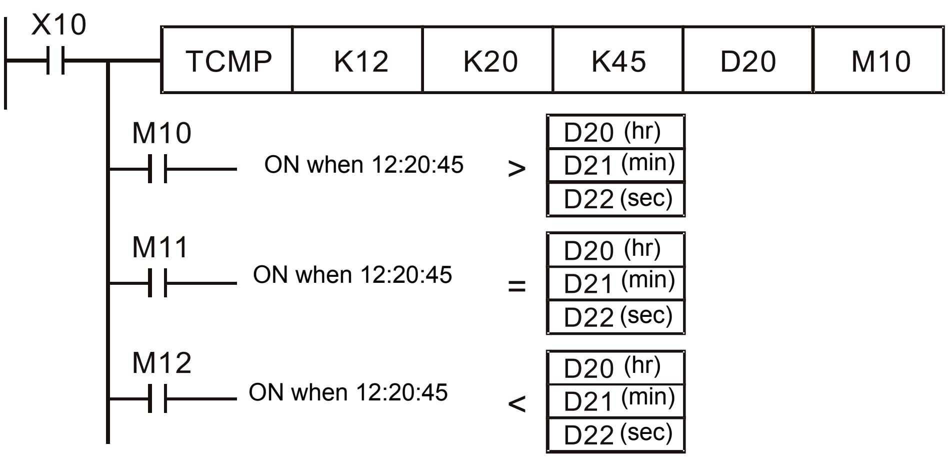
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S1): Sets the hours of the comparison time, setting range is "K0-K23." (S2): Sets the minutes of the comparison time, setting range is "K0-K59." (S3): Sets the seconds of the comparison time, setting range is "K0-K59." (S): current calendar time. (D): Results of comparison.
- Compares the time in hours, minutes, and seconds set in (S1) (S2) (S3) with the current calendar time in hours, minutes, and seconds, with the results of comparison expressed in (D).
- (S): The hour content of the current calendar time is "K0-K23." (S)+1 comprises the minutes of the current calendar time, and consists of "K0-K59." (S)+2 comprises the seconds of the current calendar time, and consists of "K0-K59."
- The current calendar time designated by (S) is usually compared using the TCMP command after using the TRD command to read the current calendar time. If the content value of (S) exceeds the range, this is considered an operating error, the command will not execute, and M1068 = On.

EXAMPLE

- When X10 = On, the command will execute, and the current calendar time in D20-D22 will be compared with the preset value of 12:20:45; the results will be displayed in M10-M12. When X10 On → Off, the command will not be executed, but the On/Off status prior to M10-M12 will be maintained.
- If results in the form of ≥, ≤, or ≠ are needed, they can be obtained by series and parallel connection of M10-M12.



C2000_303

API				
161	D	TZCP	P	S1 S2 S D: Comparison of calendar data

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1									*	*	*
S2									*	*	*
S									*	*	*
D		*	*								

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command (9 steps)			
TZCP	Continuous execution type	TZCPP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command			
—	—	—	—

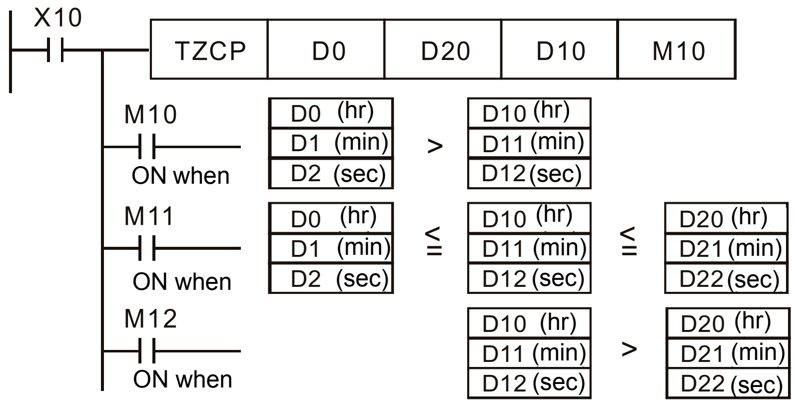
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Sets the lower limit of the comparison time. S2: Sets the upper limit of the comparison time. S: current calendar time. D: Results of comparison.
- Performs range comparison by comparing the hours, minutes, and seconds of the current calendar time designated by S with the lower limit of the comparison time set as S1 and the upper limit of the comparison time set as S2, and expresses the results of comparison in D.
- S1, S1+1, S1+2: Sets the hours, minutes, and seconds of the lower limit of the comparison time.
- S2, S2+1, S2+2: Sets the hours, minutes, and seconds of the upper limit of the comparison time.
- S, S+1, S+2: The hours, minutes, and seconds of the current calendar time.
- The D0 designated by the S listed in this program is usually obtained by comparison using the TZCP command after using the TRD command in advance to read the current calendar time. If the value of S1, S2, or S exceeds the range, this is considered an operating error, the command will not execute, and M1068 = On.
- When the current time S is less than the lower limit value S1 and S is less than the upper limit value S2, D will be On. When the current time S is greater than the lower limit value S1 and S is greater than the upper limit value S2, D+2 will be On; D+1 will be On under other conditions.

EXAMPLE

When X10 = On, the TZCP command executes, and one of M10-M12 will be On. When X10 = Off, the TZCP command will not execute, and M10-M12 will remain in the X10 = Off state.



C2000_304

API					
162	D	TADD	P	S1 S2 D	Calendar data addition

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (7 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	TADD	Continuous execution type	TADDP	Pulse execution type
S1									*	*	*	32-bit command			
S2									*	*	*	—	—	—	—
D									*	*	*				

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

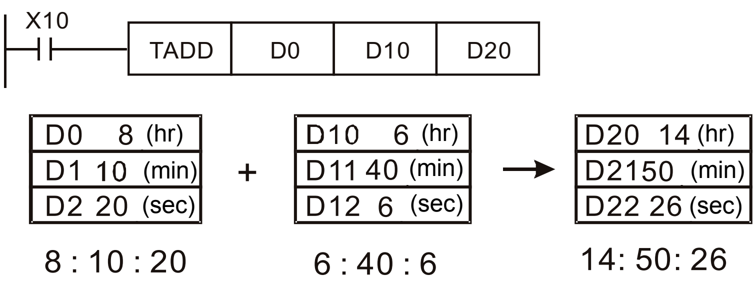
Flag signal:
M1020 Zero flag
M1022 Carry flag
M1068 Calendar error

DESCRIPTION

- S1: time addend. S2: time augend. D: time sum.
- The calendar data in hours, minutes, and seconds designated by S2 is added to the calendar data in hours, minutes, and seconds designated by S1, and the result is stored as hours, minutes, and seconds in the register designated by D.
- If the value of S1 or S2 exceeds the range, this is considered an operating error, the command will not execute, and M1068 is set to On.
- If the results of addition are greater than or equal to 24 hours, carry flag M1022 = On, and D will display the results of addition minus 24 hours.
- If the results of addition are equal to 0 (0 hours, 0 minutes, 0 seconds), zero flag M1020 = On.

EXAMPLE

When X10 = On, the TADD command will be executed, and the calendar data in hours, minutes, and seconds designated by D0 to D2 will be added to the calendar data in hours, minutes, and seconds designated by D10 to D12, and the results are stored as a total number of hours, minutes, and seconds in the registers designated by D20 to D22.



C2000_305

API				
163	D TSUB P	S1 S2 D		Calendar data subtraction

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (7 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	TSUB	Continuous execution type	TSUBP	Pulse execution type
S1									*	*	*	32-bit command			
S2									*	*	*	—	—	—	—
D									*	*	*				

Notes on operand usage:

Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal:

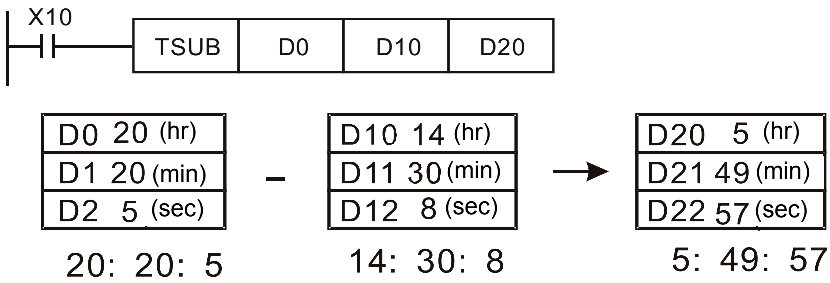
M1020 Zero flag
M1021 Borrow flag
M1068 Calendar error

DESCRIPTION

- S1: time minuend. S2: time augend. D: time difference.
- Subtracts the calendar data in hours, minutes, and seconds designated by S2 from the calendar data in hours, minutes, and seconds designated by S1, and the result is temporarily stored as hours, minutes, and seconds in the register designated by D.
- If the value of S1 or S2 exceeds the range, this is considered an operating error, the command will not execute, and M1068 is set to On.
- If subtraction results in a negative number, borrow flag M1021 = On, and the result of that negative number plus 24 hours will be displayed in the register designated by D.
- If the results of subtraction are equal to 0 (0 hours, 0 minutes, 0 seconds), zero flag M1020 = On.

EXAMPLE

When X10 = On, the TSUB command will be executed, and the calendar data in hours, minutes, and seconds designated by D10 to D12 will be subtracted from the calendar data in hours, minutes, and seconds designated by D0 to D2, and the results are stored as a total number of hours, minutes, and seconds in the registers designated by D20 to D22.



C2000_306

API					
166	D	TRD	P	(D)	Calendar data read

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (3 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	TRD	Continuous execution type	TRDP	Pulse execution type
D									*	*	*	32-bit command			
												—	—	—	—

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

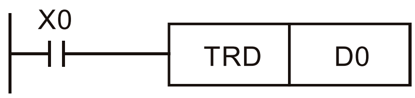
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (D): device used to store the current calendar time after reading.
- The C2000 series has a built-in calendar clock, and the clock provides seven sets of data comprising year, week, month, day, hour, minute, and second stored in D1063 to D1069. The TRD command function allows program designers to directly read the current calendar time into the designated seven registers.
- D1063 only reads the two right digits of the Western calendar year.

EXAMPLE

- When X0 = On, the current calendar time is read into the designated registers D0 to D6.
- In D1064, 1 indicates Monday, 2 indicates Tuesday, and so on, with and 7 indicating Sunday.



C2000_307

Special D	Item	Content		General D	Item
D1063	Year (Western)	00–99	→	D0	Year (Western)
D1064	Weeks	1–7	→	D1	Weeks
D1065	Month	1–12	→	D2	Month
D1066	Day	1–31	→	D3	Day
D1067	Hour	0–23	→	D4	Hour
D1068	Minute	0–59	→	D5	Minute
D1069	Second	0–59	→	D6	Second

API					
170	D	GRY	P	S D	BIN → GRAY code transformation

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
D							*	*	*	*	*

16-bit command (5 steps)			
GRY	Continuous execution type	GRYP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DGRY	Continuous execution type	DGRYP	Pulse execution type

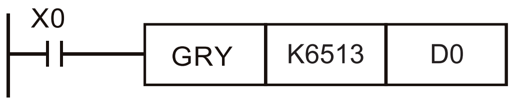
Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

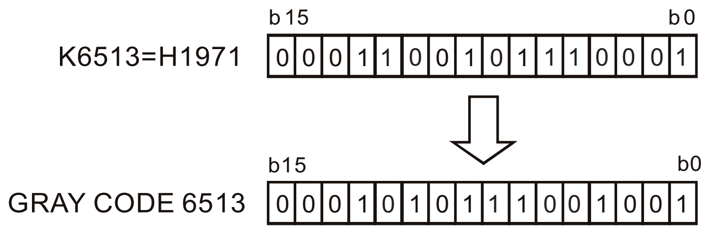
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- S: source device. D: device storing GRAY code.
- Transforms the content value (BIN value) of the device designated by S to GRAY code, which is stored in the device designated by D.
- The valid range of S is as shown below; if this range is exceeded, it will be considered an error, and the command will not execute.
  - 16-bit command: 0–32,767
  - 32-bit command: 0–2,147,483,647

EXAMPLE When X0 = On, the constant K6513 will be transformed to GRAY code and stored in D0.





C2000_325

API				
171	D	GBIN	P	(S) (D)

GRAY code → BIN transformation

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (5 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	GBIN	Continuous execution type	GBINP	Pulse execution type
S				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	32-bit command (9 steps)			
D							*	*	*	*	*	DGBIN	Continuous execution type	DGBINP	Pulse execution type

Notes on operand usage:
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

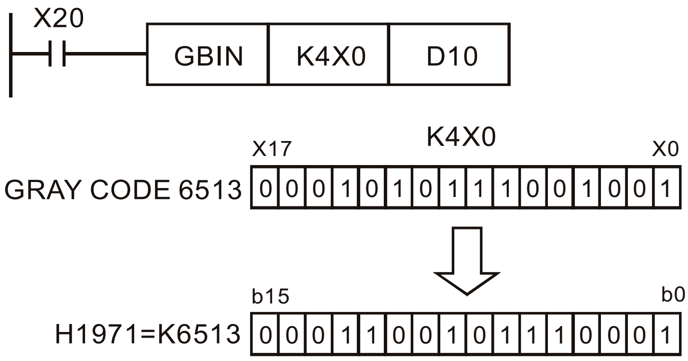
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- (S): source device used to store GRAY code. (D): device used to store BIN value after transformation.
- The GRAY code corresponding to the value of the device designated by (S) is transformed into a BIN value, which is stored in the device designated by (D).
- This command will transform the value of the absolute position encoder connected with the PLC's input and (this encoder usually has an output value in the form of GRAY code) into a BIN value, which is stored in the designated register.
- The valid range of (S) is as shown below; if this range is exceeded, it will be considered an error, and the command will not execute.
  - 16-bit command: 0–32,767
  - 32-bit command: 0–2,147,483,647

EXAMPLE

When X20 = On, the GRAY code of the absolute position encoder connected with input points X0 to X17 will be transformed into BIN value and stored in D10.



C2000_308

API				
215–217	D	LD#	S1 S2	Contact form logical operation LD#

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

16-bit command (5 steps)			
LD#	Continuous execution type	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DLD#	Continuous execution type	—	—

Notes on operand usage #: &, |, ^
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

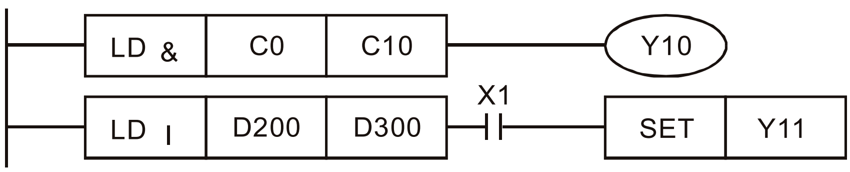
- S1: data source device 1. S2: data source device 2.
- This command performs comparison of the content of S1 and S2; when the result of comparison is not 0, this command will be activated, but this command will not be activated when the result of comparison is 0.
- The LD# command can be used while directly connected with the busbar.

API No.	16-bit commands	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
215	LD&	DLD&	S1 &① S2 ≠ 0	S1 &① S2 = 0
216	LD|	DLD|	S1 |② S2 ≠ 0	S1 |② S2 = 0
217	LD^	DLD^	S1 ^③ S2 ≠ 0	S1 ^③ S2 = 0

① logical AND operation
② logical OR operation
③ logical XOR operation

EXAMPLE

- When the content of C0 and C10 is subjected to the logical AND operation, and the result is not equal to 0, Y10 = On.
- When the content of D200 and D300 is subjected to the logical OR operation, and the result is not equal to 0, and X1 = On, Y11 = On and remains in that state.



C2000_310

API				
218–220	D	AND#	(S1) (S2)	Contact form logical operation AND#

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (5 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	AND#	Continuous execution type	—	—
S1				✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	32-bit command (9 steps)			
S2				✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	DAND#	Continuous execution type	—	—

Notes on operand usage #: &, |, ^
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

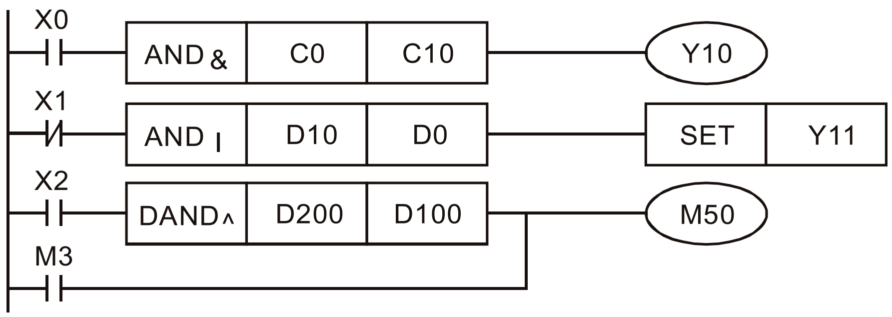
- (S1): data source device 1. (S2): data source device 2.
- This command performs comparison of the content of (S1) and (S2); when the result of comparison is not 0, this command will be activated, but this command will not be activated when the result of comparison is 0.
- The AND#: command is an operation command in series with the contact.

API No.	16-bit commands	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
218	AND&	DAND&	(S1) &① (S2) ≠ 0	(S1) &① (S2) = 0
219	AND|	DAND|	(S1) |② (S2) ≠ 0	(S1) |② (S2) = 0
220	AND^	DAND^	(S1) ^③ (S2) ≠ 0	(S1) ^③ (S2) = 0

① logical AND operation
② logical OR operation
③ logical XOR operation

EXAMPLE

- When X0 = On **and** the content of C0 and C10 is subjected to the logical AND operation, and the result is not equal to 0, Y10 = On.
- When X1 = Off **and** D10 and D0 is subjected to the logical OR operation, and the result is not equal to 0, Y11 = On and remains in that state.
- When X2 = On **and** the content of the 32-bit register D200(D201) and 32-bit register D100(D101) is subjected to the logical XOR operation, and the result is not equal to 0 **or** M3 = On, M50 = On.



C2000_312

API				
221–223	D	OR#	(S1) (S2)	Contact form logical operation OR#

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (5 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	OR#	Continuous execution type	—	—
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	32-bit command (9 steps)			
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	DOR#	Continuous execution type	—	—

Notes on operand usage #: &, |, ^
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

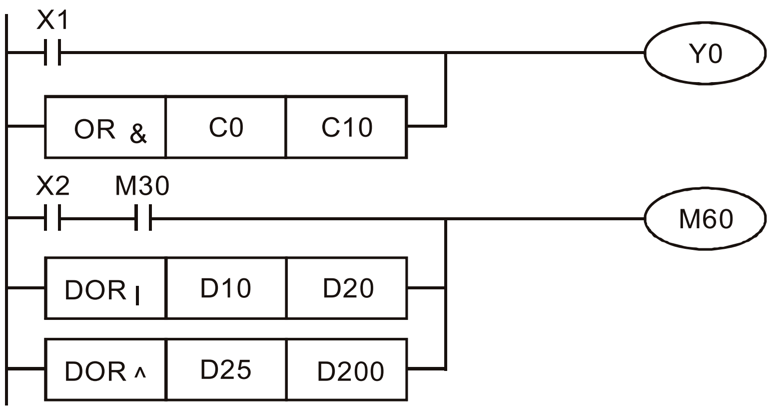
- (S1): data source device 1. (S2): data source device 2.
- This command performs comparison of the content of (S1) and (S2); when the result of comparison is not 0, this command will be activated, but this command will not be activated when the result of comparison is 0.
- The OR# command is an operation command parallel with the contact.

API No.	16-bit commands	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
221	OR&	DOR&	(S1) &① (S2) ≠ 0	(S1) &① (S2) = 0
222	OR|	DOR|	(S1) |② (S2) ≠ 0	(S1) |② (S2) = 0
223	OR^	DOR^	(S1) ^③ (S2) ≠ 0	(S1) ^③ (S2) = 0

① logical AND operation
② logical OR operation
③ logical XOR operation

EXAMPLE

- When X1 = On **or** the content of C0 and C10 is subjected to the logical AND operation, and the result is not equal to 0, Y0 = On.
- When X2 and M30 are both equal to On, or the content of 32-bit register D10 (D11) and 32-bit register D20 (D21) is subjected to the logical OR operation, and the result is not equal to 0, **or** the content of the 32-bit register D25(D26) and the 32-bit register D200 (D201) is subjected to the logical XOR operation, and the result is not equal to 0, M60 = On.



C2000_314

API				
224–230	D	LD*	S1 S2	Contact form compare LD*

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

16-bit command (5 steps)			
LD*	Continuous execution type	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DLD*	Continuous execution type	—	—

Notes on operand usage *: =, >, <, ≠, ≤, ≥
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

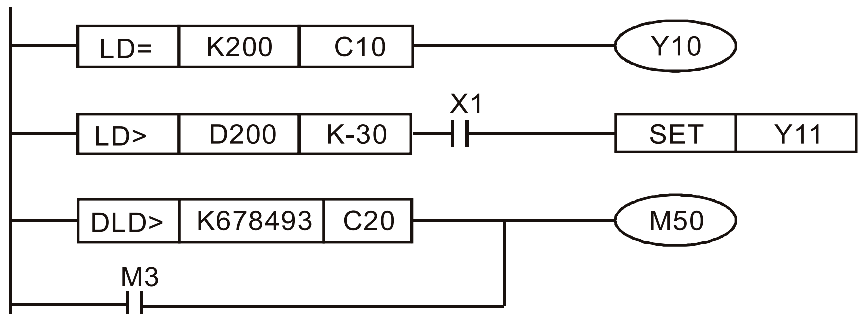
DESCRIPTION

- S1: data source device 1. S2: data source device 2.
- This command compares the content of S1 and S2. Taking API 224 (LD=) as an example, this command will be activated when the result of comparison is "equal," and will not be activated when the result is "unequal."
- The LD* can be used while directly connected with the busbar.

API No.	16-bit commands	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
224	LD =	DLD =	S1 = S2	S1 ≠ S2
225	LD >	DLD >	S1 > S2	S1 ≤ S2
226	LD <	DLD <	S1 < S2	S1 ≥ S2
228	LD ≠	DLD ≠	S1 ≠ S2	S1 = S2
229	LD ≤	DLD ≤	S1 ≤ S2	S1 > S2
230	LD ≥	DLD ≥	S1 ≥ S2	S1 < S2

EXAMPLE

- When the content of C10 is equal to K200, Y10 = On.
- When the content of D200 is greater than K-30, **and** X1 = On, Y11 = On and remains in that state.
- When the content of C20 < K678,493 **or** M3 = On, M50 = On.



C2000_316

API				
232–238	D	AND*	S1 S2	Contact form compare AND*

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻
S2				✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻	✻

16-bit command (5 steps)			
AND*	Continuous execution type	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DAND*	Continuous execution type	—	—

Notes on operand usage *: =, >, <, ≠, ≤, ≥
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

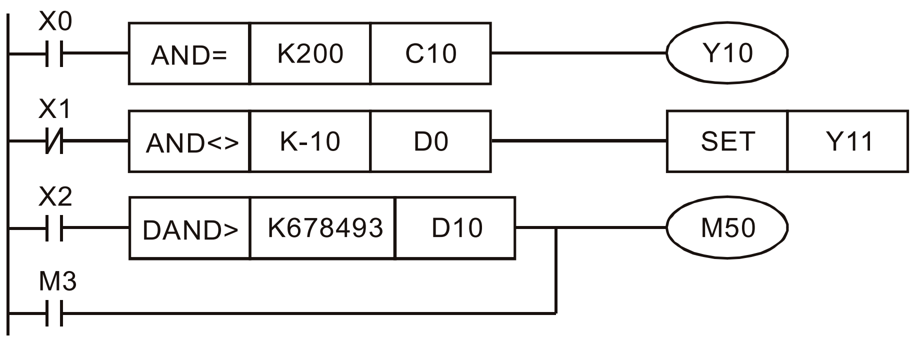
DESCRIPTION

- S1: data source device 1. S2: data source device 2.
- This command compares the content of S1 and S2. Taking API 232 (AND=) as an example, when the result of comparison is equal, this command will be activated; when the result of comparison is unequal, this command will not be activated.
- The AND* command is a comparison command in series with a contact.

API No.	16-bit commands	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
232	AND =	DAND =	S1 = S2	S1 ≠ S2
233	AND >	DAND >	S1 > S2	S1 ≤ S2
234	AND <	DAND <	S1 < S2	S1 ≥ S2
236	AND ≠	DAND ≠	S1 ≠ S2	S1 = S2
237	AND ≤	DAND ≤	S1 ≤ S2	S1 > S2
238	AND ≥	DAND ≥	S1 ≥ S2	S1 < S2

EXAMPLE

- When X0 = On **and** the current value of C10 is also equal to K200, Y10 = On.
- When X1 = Off **and** the content of register D0 is not equal to K-10, Y11 = On and remains in that state.
- When X2 = On **and** the content of the 32-bit register D0(D11) is less than 678,493, **or** M3 = On, M50 = On.



C2000_318

API				
240–246	D	OR*	S1 S2	Contact form compare OR*

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
S2				*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*

16-bit command (5 steps)			
OR*	Continuous execution type	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
DOR*	Continuous execution type	—	—

Notes on operand usage *: =, >, <, ≠, ≤, ≥
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

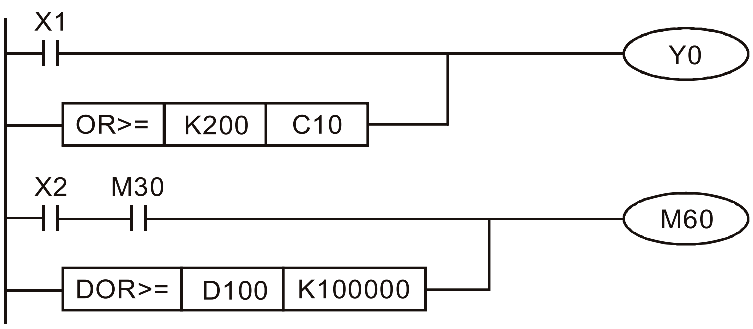
DESCRIPTION

- S1: data source device 1. S2: data source device 2.
- This command compares the content of S1 and S2. Taking API 240 (OR=) as an example, when the result of comparison is equal, this command will be activated; when the result of comparison is unequal, this command will not be activated.
- The OR* command is a compare command in parallel with a contact.

API No.	16-bit commands	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
240	OR =	DOR =	S1 = S2	S1 ≠ S2
241	OR >	DOR >	S1 > S2	S1 ≤ S2
242	OR <	DOR <	S1 < S2	S1 ≥ S2
244	OR ≠	DOR ≠	S1 ≠ S2	S1 = S2
245	OR ≤	DOR ≤	S1 ≤ S2	S1 > S2
246	OR ≥	DOR ≥	S1 ≥ S2	S1 < S2

EXAMPLE

- When X1 = On **or** the current value of C10 is also equal to K200, Y0 = On.
- M60 will be On when X2 = On **and** M30 = On **or** the content in 32-bit register D100 (D101) is greater than or equal to K100,000.



C2000_320

API	CANRX	P	S1 S2 S3 D	Read CANopen® slave station data
261				

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*						
S2				*	*						
S3				*	*						
D									*	*	*

Notes on operand usage: none

16-bit command (9 steps)			
CANRX	Continuous execution type	CANRXP	Pulse execution type
32-bit command			
—	—	—	—

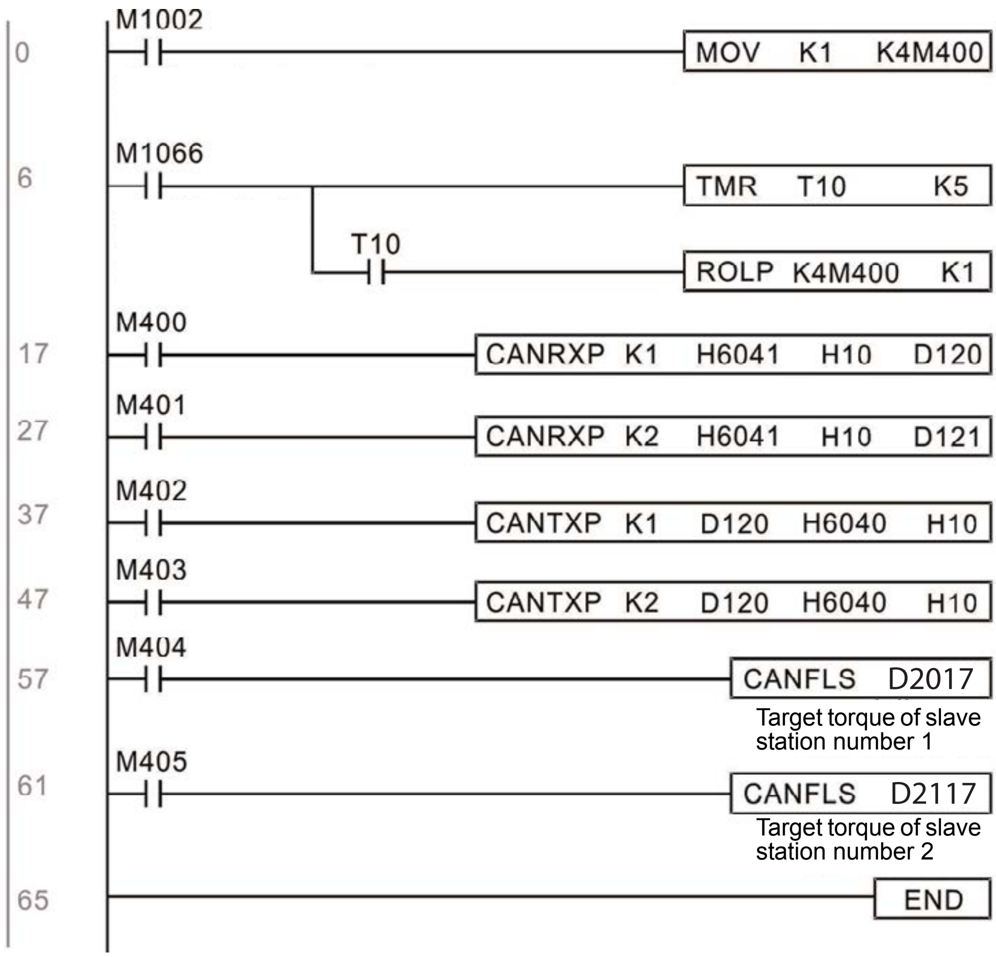
Flag signal: none

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Slave station number. S2: Main index. S3: Subindex + bit length. D: Preset address.
- The CANRX command can read the index of the corresponding slave station. When it is executed, it will send the SDO message format to the slave station. M1066 and M1067 will both be 0 at that time, and M1066 will be set as 1 after reading. If the slave station gives the correct response, it will write the value to the preset register, and set M1067 as 1. If the slave station has a response error, M1067 will be set as 0, and an error message will be recorded to D1076 to D1079.

EXAMPLE

- M1002: When the PLC runs, the command will be triggered once and will set K4M400 = K1.
- Afterwards, each time M1066 is 1, it will switch to a different message.



C2000_335

API	DPOS	P	S1	Driver point-to-point control
262				

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1				*	*						*

Notes on operand usage: none

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (5 steps)			
DPOS	Continuous execution type	DPOSP	Pulse execution type

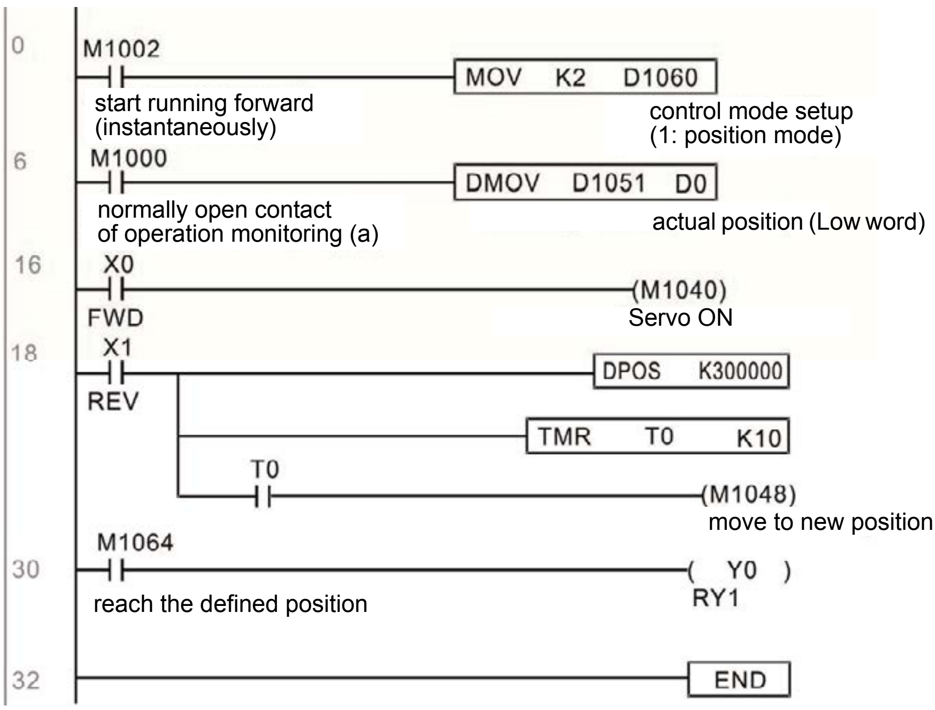
Flag signal: M1064, M1070

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Target (must have a number).
- The DPOS command can control the driver's position commands, and employs special register control actions, such as:
  M1040: Control Servo ON/Servo OFF. M1055 search for origin. M1048 move to new position. If the control mode is position mode (D1060 = 1), and the converter is in the Servo ON state (M1040 = 1), if the DPOS command is executed, the driver will move to a new position in conjunction with activation of M1048 once (OFF to ON).

EXAMPLE

- M1040: Control Servo On/Servo Off. M1064: set position attained. D1060 is the mode control. D1051(L) and D1052(H) are the actual position points.
- When X0 = On, M1040 will be On (Servo On).
- When X1 = On, sets DPOS position as +300000, and M1048 will change to On (move to new position) after a delay of 1 sec. Check whether the value of D1051 has changed at this time; after the set position point has been reached, M1064 will go On, and Y0 will output On.



C2000_334

API		TORQ	P	(S1) (S2)	Driver torque control mode
263					

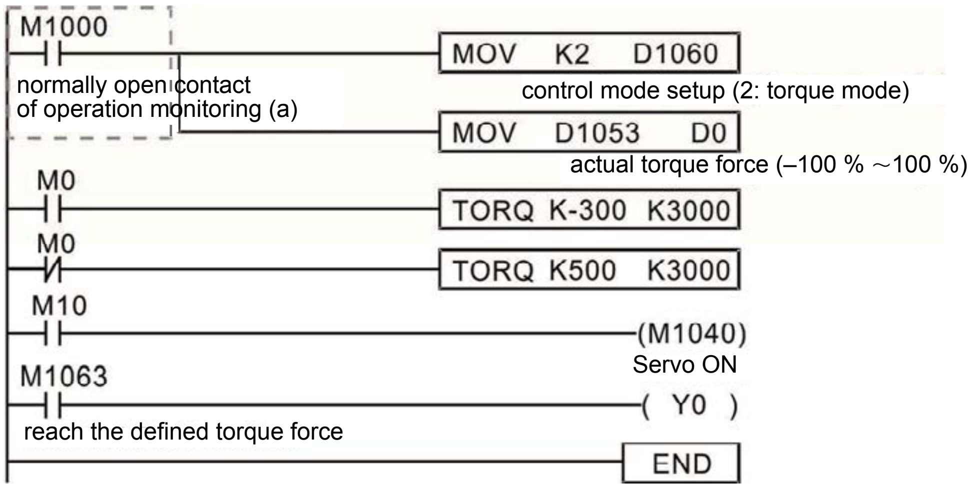
	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (5 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	TORQ	Continuous execution type	TORQP	Pulse execution type
S1				✻	✻						✻	32-bit command			
S2				✻	✻						✻	—	—	—	—
Notes on operand usage: none												Flag signal: M1063			

DESCRIPTION

- (S1): Torque command (numbered, no more than one digit). (S2): Speed limit.
- The TORQ command can control the driver torque command and speed limits; it also uses special register control actions, such as:
  M1040: Controls Servo On/Servo Off. When Servo is ON, if a TORQ command is executed, the torque will output the torque defined by the TORQ command, and the frequency restrictions will similarly be controlled by the TORQ command.

EXAMPLE

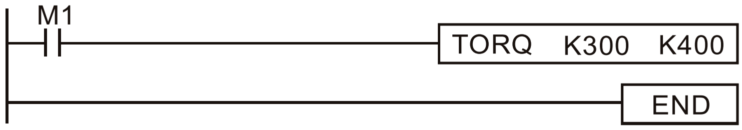
- M1040: Control Servo On/Servo Off. M1063: set torque attained. D1060 is the mode controls. D1053 is the actual torque
- When M0 = Off, set the driver torque command K+500 (+50.0 %), rotational speed restrictions is 3000 (30 Hz).
- When M0 = On, sets the driver torque command K–300 (–30.0 %), rotational speed restrictions is 3000 (30 Hz).
- When M10 = On, driver began output torque command
- When set torque is attained, M1063 will go On; this flag usually jumps continuously, however.



C2000_332

EXAMPLE

- Parameter 09-33 are defined on the basis of whether reference commands have been cleared before PLC operation:
  - Bit 0: Prior to PLC scanning procedures, whether the target frequency has been cleared is 0. (This will be written to the FREQ command when the PLC is On.)
  - Bit 1: Prior to PLC scanning procedures, whether the target torque has been cleared is 0. (This will be written to the TORQ command when the PLC is On.)
  - Bit 2: Prior to PLC scanning procedures, whether speed limits in the torque mode have been cleared is 0. (This will be written to the TORQ command when the PLC is On.)
- If we now force M1 to be 1, the torque command will be K+300 (+30 %), and the speed limit will be 400 (40 Hz). But when M1 is set as 0, there will be a different situation:
  - Case 1: When bit 1 and bit 2 of 09-33 are both set as 0, and M1 is set as 0, the torque command will remain at +30 %, and the speed limit will be set as 40 Hz.
  - Case 2: When bit 1 and bit 2 of 09-33 are both 1, and M1 is set as 0, the torque command will revert 0 %, and the speed limit will be set as 0 Hz.



C2000_333

API				
264	CANTX	P	S1 S2 S3 S4	Write CANopen® slave station data

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (9 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	CANTX	Continuous execution type	CANTX P	Pulse execution type
S1				✻	✻							32-bit command			
S2				✻	✻				✻	✻	✻	—	—	—	—
S3				✻	✻							Flag signal: none			
S4				✻	✻										

Notes on operand usage: none

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Slave station number. S2: Address to be written. S3: Main index. S4: Subindex + bit length.
- The CANTX command can write a value to the index of the corresponding slave station. When it is executed, it will send the SDO message format to the slave station. M1066 and M1067 will both be 0 at that time, and M1066 will be set as 1 after reading. If the slave station gives the correct response, it will write the value to the preset register, and set M1067 as 1. If the slave station has a response error, M1067 will be set as 0, and an error message will be recorded to D1076 to D1079.

API				
265	CANFLS	P	D	Refresh special D corresponding to CANopen®

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (3 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	CANFLS	Continuous execution type	CANFLS P	Pulse execution type
D				✻	✻							32-bit command			
												—	—	—	—
												Flag signal: none			

Notes on operand usage: none

DESCRIPTION

- D: Special D to be refreshed.
- The CANFLS command can refresh special D commands. When is a read only attribute, executing this command will send a message equivalent to that of CANRX to the slave station, and the number of the slave station will be transmitted back and refreshed to this special D. When there is a read/write attribute, executing this command will send a message equivalent to that of CANTX to the slave station, and the value of this special D will be written to the corresponding slave station.
- When M1066 and M1067 are both 0, and M1066 is set as 1 after reading, if the slave station gives a correct response, the value will be written to the designated register, and M1067 will be set as 1. If the slave station's response contains an error, then M1067 will be set as 0, and an error message will be recorded to D1076-D1079.

API			
275–280	**FLD***	(S1) (S2)	Floating point number contact form compare LD*

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1									*	*	*
S2									*	*	*

Notes on operand usage *: =, >, <, ≠, ≤, ≥
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
FLD*	Continuous execution type	—	—

Flag signal: none

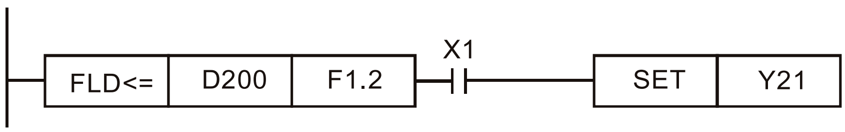
DESCRIPTION

- (S1): data source device 1. (S2): data source device 2.
- This command compares the content of (S1) and (S2). Taking "FLD=" as an example, if the result of comparison is "equal," this command will be activated; but it will not be activated when the result is "unequal."
- The FLD* command can directly input floating point numerical values (for instance: F1.2) to the (S1), (S2) operands, or store floating-point numbers in register D for use in operations.
- This command can be used while directly connected with the busbar.

API No.	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
275	FLD =	(S1) = (S2)	(S1) ≠ (S2)
276	FLD >	(S1) > (S2)	(S1) ≤ (S2)
277	FLD <	(S1) < (S2)	(S1) ≥ (S2)
278	FLD ≠	(S1) ≠ (S2)	(S1) = (S2)
279	FLD ≤	(S1) ≤ (S2)	(S1) > (S2)
280	FLD ≥	(S1) ≥ (S2)	(S1) < (S2)

EXAMPLE

When the floating point number of register D200 (D201) is less than or equal to F1.2, and X1 activated, contact Y21 will be activated and remain in that state.



C2000_322

API			
281–286	FAND*	S1 S2	Floating point number contact form compare AND*

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1									✻	✻	✻
S2									✻	✻	✻

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
FAND*	Continuous execution type	—	—

Notes on operand usage *: =, >, <, ≠, ≤, ≥
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

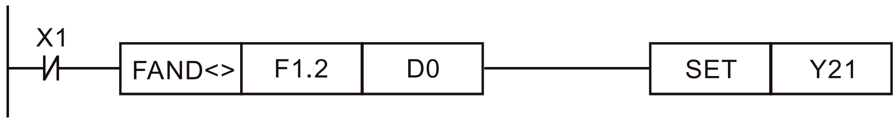
DESCRIPTION

- S1: data source device 1. S2: data source device 2.
- This command compares the content of S1 and S2. Taking "FAND=" as an example, if the result of comparison is "equal," this command will be activated; but it will not be activated when the result is "unequal."
- The FAND* command can directly input floating point numerical values (for instance: F1.2) to the S1, S2 operands, or store floating-point numbers in register D for use in operations.
- The FAND* command is a comparison command in series with a contact.

API No.	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
281	FAND =	S1 = S2	S1 ≠ S2
282	FAND >	S1 > S2	S1 ≤ S2
283	FAND <	S1 < S2	S1 ≥ S2
284	FAND ≠	S1 ≠ S2	S1 = S2
285	FAND ≤	S1 ≤ S2	S1 > S2
286	FAND ≥	S1 ≥ S2	S1 < S2

EXAMPLE

When X1 = Off, **and** the floating point number in register D0 (D1) is not equal to F1.2, Y21 = On and remains in that state.



C2000_324

API			
287–292	FOR*	S1 S2	Floating point number contact form compare OR*

	Bit device			Word device							
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D
S1									*	*	*
S2									*	*	*

16-bit command			
—	—	—	—
32-bit command (9 steps)			
FOR*	Continuous execution type	—	—

Notes on operand usage *: =, >, <, ≠, ≤, ≥
Please refer to the function specifications table for each device in series for the scope of device usage.

Flag signal: none

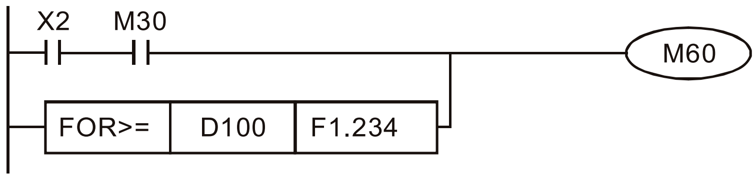
DESCRIPTION

- S1: data source device 1. S2: data source device 2.
- This command compares the content of S1 and S2. Taking "FOR=" as an example, if the result of comparison is "equal," this command will be activated; but it will not be activated when the result is "unequal."
- The FOR* command can directly input floating point numerical values (for instance: F1.2) to the S1, S2 operands, or store floating-point numbers in register D for use in operations.
- The FOR* command is a compare command in parallel with a contact.

API No.	32-bit commands	Conditions for activation	Conditions for inactivation
287	FOR =	S1 = S2	S1 ≠ S2
288	FOR >	S1 > S2	S1 ≤ S2
289	FOR <	S1 < S2	S1 ≥ S2
290	FOR ≠	S1 ≠ S2	S1 = S2
291	FOR ≤	S1 ≤ S2	S1 > S2
292	FOR ≥	S1 ≥ S2	S1 < S2

EXAMPLE

When both X2 and M30 are "On," **or** the floating point number in register D100 (D101) is greater than or equal to F1.234, M60 = On.



C2000_327

API					
320	D	ICOMR	P	S1 S2 S3 S4	Internal communications read

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (9 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	ICOMR	Continuous execution type	ICOMRP	Pulse execution type
S1				✻	✻						✻				
S2				✻	✻						✻				
S3				✻	✻						✻	32-bit command (17 steps)			
S4				✻	✻						✻	DICOMR	Continuous execution type	DICOMRP	Pulse execution type
Notes on operand usage: none												Flag signal: M1077, M1078, M1079			

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Selection of slave device. S2: Device selection (0: converter, 1: internal PLC). S3: The address to write in. S4: The data to be written in.
- The ICOMR command can obtain the slave station's converter and the internal PLC's register value.

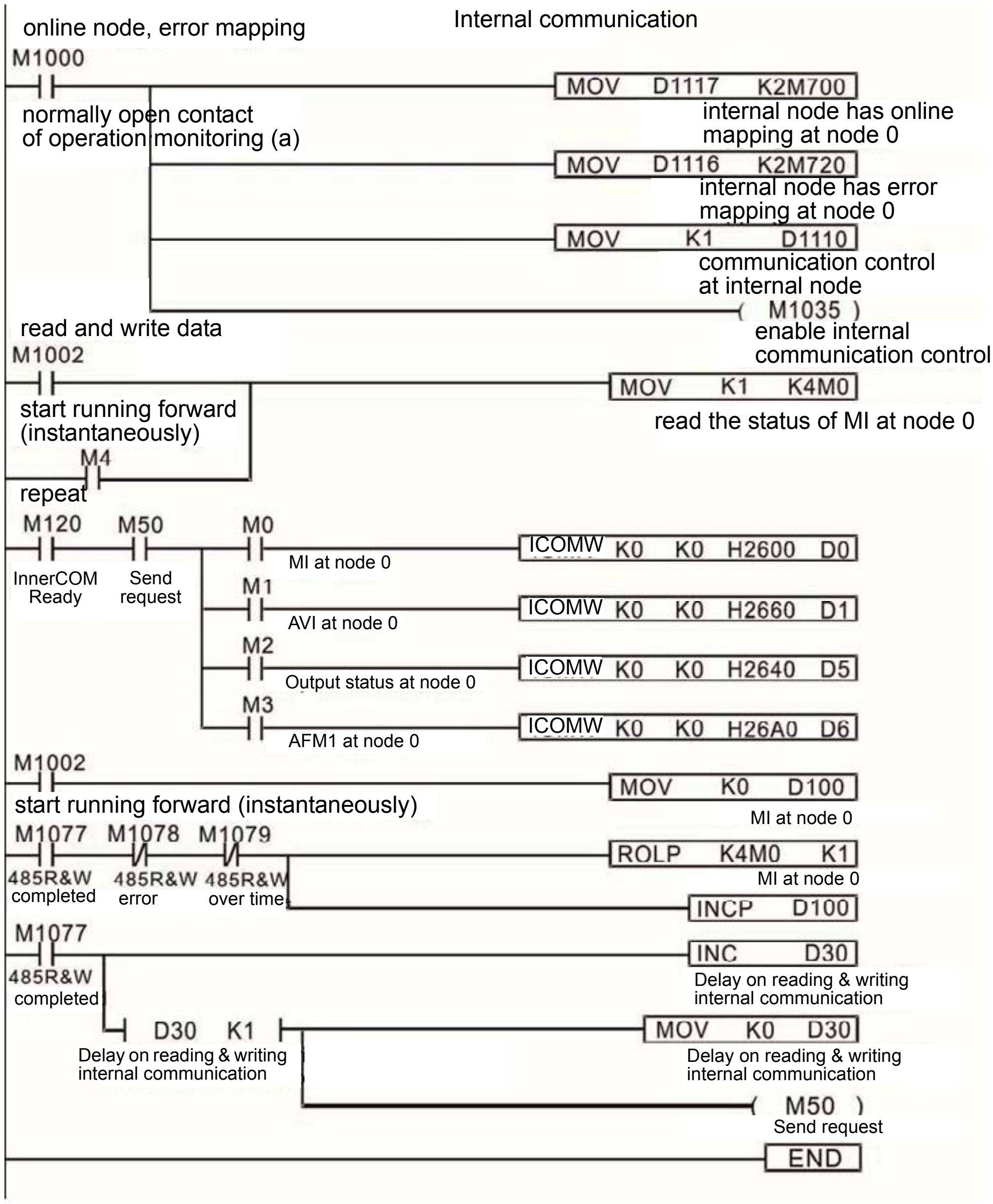
API					
321	D	ICOMW	P	S1 S2 S3 D	Internal communications write

	Bit device			Word device								16-bit command (9 steps)			
	X	Y	M	K	H	KnX	KnY	KnM	T	C	D	ICOMW	Continuous execution type	ICOMWP	Pulse execution type
S1				✻	✻						✻				
S2				✻	✻						✻				
S3				✻	✻						✻	32-bit command (17 steps)			
D				✻	✻						✻	DICOMW	Continuous execution type	DICOMWP	Pulse execution type
Notes on operand usage: none												Flag signal: M1077, M1078, M1079			

DESCRIPTION

- S1: Selection of slave device. S2: Device selection (0: converter, 1: internal PLC). S3: Read address. D: Saving target.
- The ICOMW command write a value to the slave station's converter or the internal PLC's register.

EXAMPLE Please refer to the following example:



C2000_336

16.7 Error display and handling

Code	ID	Description	Recommended handling approach
PLrA	47	RTC time check	Turn power on and off when resetting the keypad time.
PLrt	49	(incorrect RTC mode)	Turn power on and off after making sure that the keypad is securely connected.
PLod	50	Data writing memory error	Check whether the program has an error and download the program again.
PLSv	51	Data write memory error during program execution	Restart power and download the program again.
PLdA	52	Program transmission error	Try uploading again; if the error persists, sent to the manufacturer for service.
PLFn	53	Command error while downloading program	Check whether the program has an error and download the program again.
PLor	54	Program exceeds memory capacity or no program	Restart power and download the program again.
PLFF	55	Command error during program execution	Check whether the program has an error and download the program again.
PLSn	56	Check code error	
PLEd	57	Program has no END stop command	
PLCr	58	MC command has been used continuously more than nine times	
PLdF	59	Download program error	
PLSF	60	PLC scan time excessively long	Check whether the program code has a writing error and download again.

Tab. 16-26: Error codes

16.8 CANopen® Master control applications

Control of a simple multi-axis application is required in certain situations. If the device supports the CANopen® protocol, a C2000 can serve as the master in implementing simple control (position, speed, homing, and torque control). The setting method comprises the following seven steps:

Step 1: Activating CANopen® master functions

① Parameter 09-45 = 1 (initiates Master functions); restart power after completing setting, the status bar on the KPC-CC01 digital keypad will display "CAN Master".

② Parameter 00-02 = 6 reset PLC (please note that this action will reset the program and PLC registers to the default values).

③ Turn power off and on again.

④ Use the KPC-CC01 digital keypad to set the PLC control mode as **"PLC Stop"** (if the KPC-CE01 digital keypad is used, set as "PLC 2"; if a newly-introduced driver is used, the blank internal PLC program will cause a PLFF warning code to be issued).

Step 2: master memory settings

① After connecting the 485 communications cable, use WPL Soft to set the PLC **status** as Stop (if the PLC mode has been switched to the **"PLC Stop"** mode, the PLC **status** should already be Stop).

② Set the address and corresponding station number of the slave station to be controlled. For instance, if it is wished to control two slave stations (a maximum of 8 stations can be controlled simultaneously), and the station numbers are 20 and 21, it is only necessary to set D2000 and D2100 as 20 and 21, and then set D2200, D2300, D2400, D2500, D2600, and D2700 as 0.

③ The setting method involves use of the PLC's WPL editing software WPL as follows:

– Open WPL and implement communications > register edit (T C D) function.

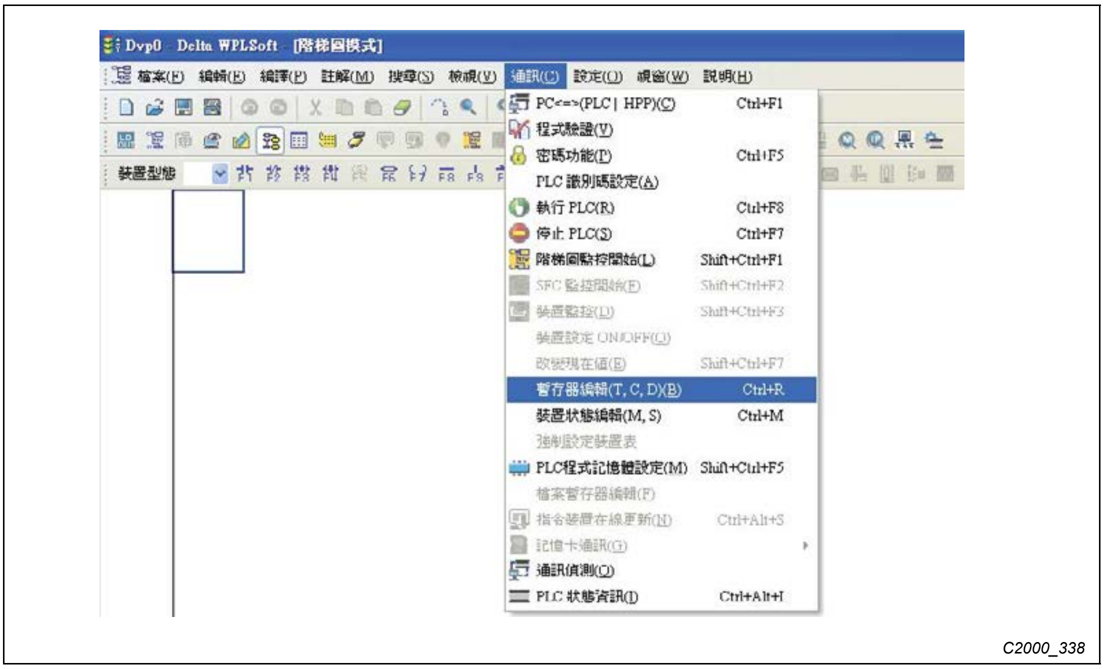
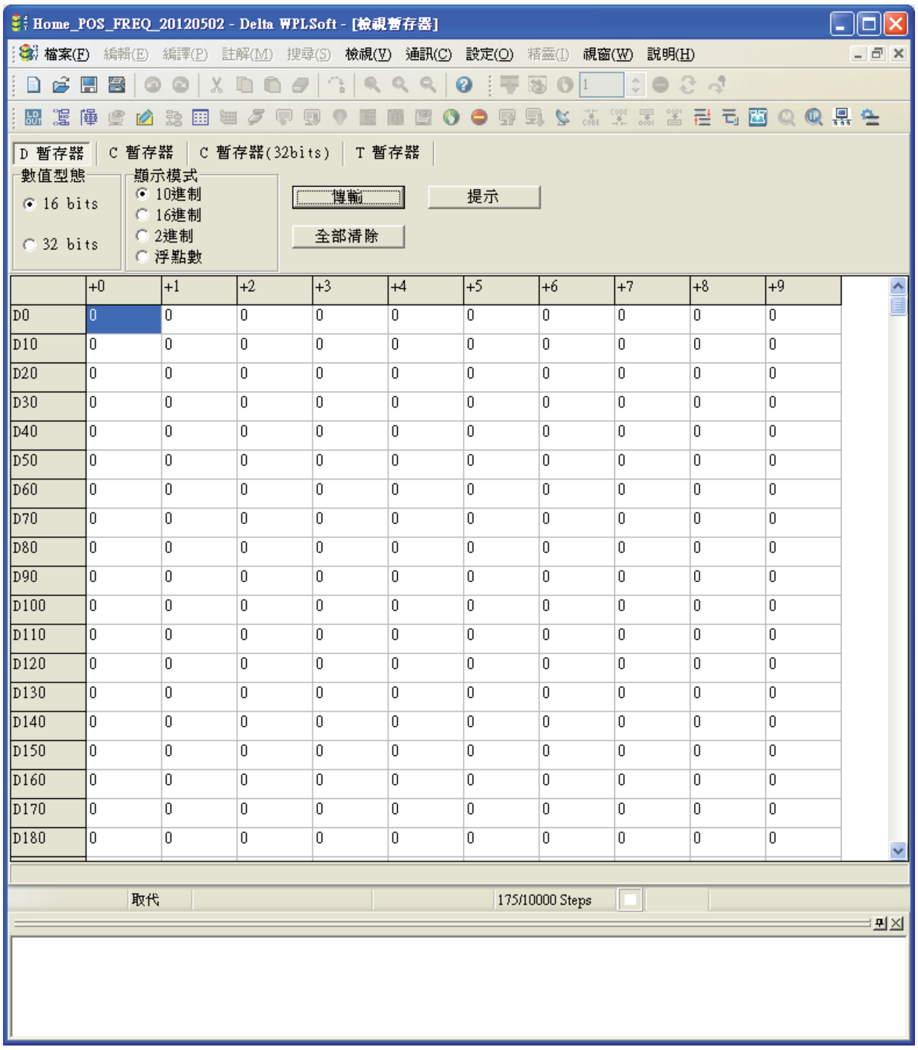


Fig. 16-33: Selection for register edit

– After leaving the PLC register window, the register setting screen will appear, as shown below:



C2000_339

Fig. 16-34: Dialog for register content edit

If there is a new PLC program and no settings have yet been made, you can read default data from the converter, and merely edit it to suit the current application.

If settings have already been made, however, the special D in the CANopen® area will display the saved status (the CANopen® D area is located at D1070 to D1099 and D2000 to D2799).

Assuming it is a new program, we will first read the default data from the converter; check the communications format if there is no communications link (the default PLC station number is 2, 9600, 7N2, ASCII). Perform the following steps:

1. Switch the PLC to Stop status

2. Press the transmit button

3. Click on read memory after exiting the window

4. Ignore D0-D399

5. Click on the confirm button.

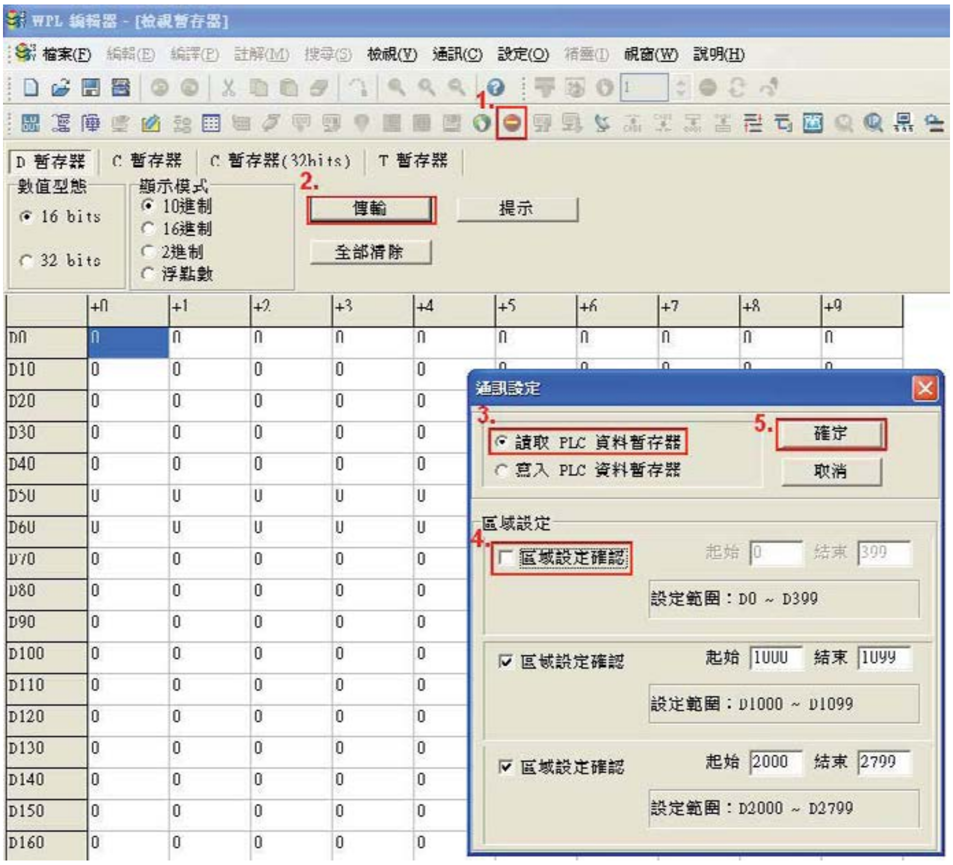


Fig. 16-35: Upload of the default values from the CANopen® area of the PLC

After reading the data, it is necessary to perform some special D settings. Before proceeding, we will first introduce the special D implications and setting range.

The CANopen® Master's special D range is currently D1070 to D1099 and D2000 to D2799; this range is divided into 3 blocks:

– The first block is used to display CANopen®'s current status, and has a range of D1070 to D1089;

– The second block is used for CANopen®'s basic settings, and has a range of D1090 to D1099;

– The third block is the slave station mapping and control area, and has a range of D2000 to D2799.

D1070 to D1089 (CANopen® status display)

When the master initializes a slave station, we can from find out from D1070 whether configuration of the slave device has been completed; we can find out whether an error occurred in the configuration process from D1071 and whether the configuration is inappropriate from D1074.

After entering normal control, we can find out whether the slave device is offline from D1073. In addition, we can check the slave device's read/write information using the CANRX, CANTX, and CANFLS commands; error information can be obtained from D1076 to D1079 if there has been a read/write failure.

Special D	Description of function	R/W
D1070	Channel opened by CANopen® initialization (bit 0 = Machine code 0 …….)	R
D1071	Error channel occurring in CANopen® initialization process (bit 0 = Machine code 0 …….)	R
D1072	Reserved	—
D1073	CANopen® break channel (bit 0 = Machine code 0 …….)	R
D1074	Error code of master error 0: No error 1: Slave station setting error 2: Synchronizing cycle setting error (too small)	R
D1075	Reserved	—
D1076	SDO error message (main index value)	R
D1077	SDO error message (secondary index value)	R
D1078	SDO error message (error code L)	R
D1079	SDO error message (error code H)	R

Tab. 16-27: Special register D1070 to D1079

D1090 to D1099 (basic CANopen® settings)

NOTE For settings in the area D1090 bis D1099, the PLC must be **stopped**.

We must set the information exchange time for the master and slave station,

Special D	Description of function	Default	R/W
D1090	Synchronizing cycle setting	4	RW

Use D1090 to perform settings; setting time relationships include:

$$\text{Synchronizing cycle [ms]} \geq \frac{1\ \text{MBit/s}}{v} * \frac{N}{4}$$

v: Transmission speed
N: TXPDO + RXPDO

For instance, when communications speed is 500K, TXPDO + RXPDO have 8 sets, and synchronizing time will require more than 4 ms.

We must also define how many slave stations will be open. D1091 is the channel for defining station opening, and D2000 + 100*n is the station number defining this channel. See the detailed explanation below.

Slave station number **n** = 0–7:

Special D	Description of function	R/W
D1091	Sets slave station On or Off (bit 0–bit 7 correspond to slave stations number 0–7)	RW
D2000 +100*n	Slave station number	RW

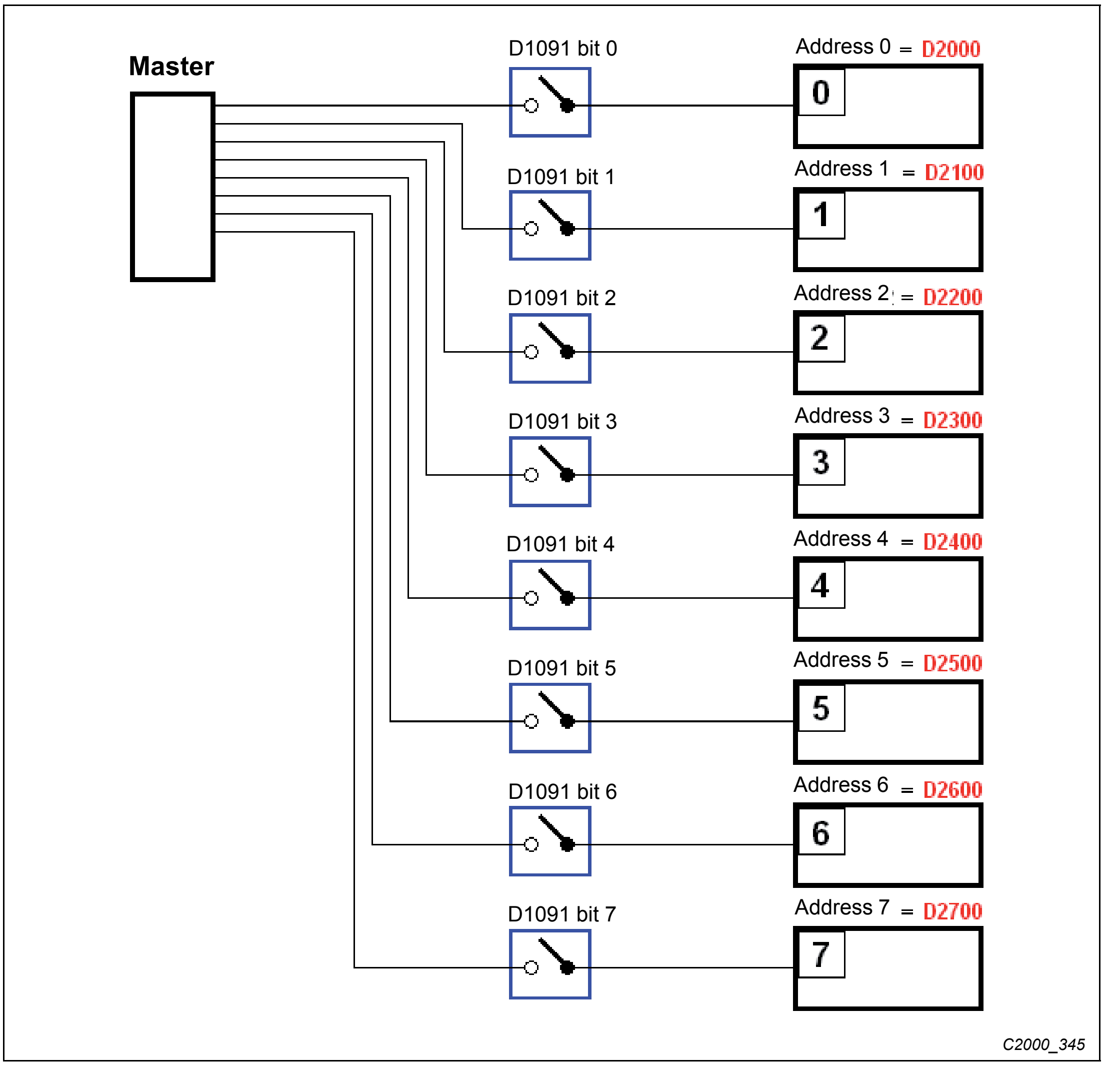


Fig. 16-36: The contents of D1091 determines the slave to communicate with

If slave devices have a slow start-up, the master can delay for a short time before performing slave station configuration; this time delay can be set via D1092.

Special D	Description of function	Default	R/W
D1092	Delay before start of initialization	0	RW

With regard to slave device initialization, a delay time can be set to judge whether failure has occurred. If the communications speed is relatively slow, the delay time can be adjusted to judge whether initialization has been completed, which will ensure that there is time to perform slave device initialization.

Special D	Description of function	Default	R/W
D1099	Initialization completion delay time Setting range: 1 to 60000 sec	15 sec.	RW

After communication is successful, the system must detect whether there is a break in communications with the slave station. D1093 is used to set detection time, and D1094 sets the number of consecutive errors that will trigger a break error.

Special D	Description of function	Default	R/W
D1093	Break time detection	1000 ms	RW
D1094	Break number detection	3	RW

The packet type transmitted by PDO is set before establishing normal communications and generally does not require adjustment.

Special D	Description of function	Default	R/W
D1097	Corresponding real-time transmission type (PDO) Setting range: 1–240	1	RW
D1098	Corresponding real-time receiving type (PDO) Setting range: 1–240	1	RW

D2000 to D2799 (slave station mapping and control area)

CANopen® provides a PDO method to perform mapping of the master and slave station memory, and enables the master to directly access read/write data in a certain memory area. The master will automatically perform data exchange with the corresponding slave device, and the read/write values can be seen directly from the special D area after real-time exchange (M1034 = 1 time) has been established.

The C2000 currently supports real-time mapping of four PDOs, and there are two types of PDOs: RXPDO (reads slave device information) and TXPDO (writes to slave device). In addition, in order to facilitate control, the C2000 cannot perform mapping of commonly-used registers; the following is an overview of the current PDO mapping situation:

TXPDO							
PDO4 (Torque)		PDO3 (Position)		PDO2 (Remote I/O)		PDO1 (Speed)	
Description	Special D	Description	Special D	Description	Special D	Description	Special D
Controller Word	D2008 + 100*n	Controller Word	D2008 + 100*n	Slave device MO	D2027 + 100*n	Controller Word	D2008 + 100*n
Target torque	D2017 + 100*n	Target	D2020 + 100*n	Slave device AO1	D2031 + 100*n	Target speed	D2012 + 100*n
			D2021 + 100*n				
Control method	D2010 + 100*n	Control method	D2010 + 100*n	Slave device AO2	D2032+ 100*n		
				Slave device AO3	D2033+ 100*n		

Tab. 16-28: Mapping of TXPDOs in special register

RXPDO							
PDO4 (Torque)		PDO3 (Position)		PDO2 (Remote I/O)		PDO1 (Speed)	
Description	Special D	Description	Special D	Description	Special D	Description	Special D
Mode word	D2009 + 100*n	Mode word	D2009 + 100*n	Slave device MI	D2026 + 100*n	Mode word	D2009 + 100*n
Actual torque	D2018 + 100*n	Actual position	D2022 + 100*n D2023 + 100*n	Slave device AI1	D2028 + 100*n	Actual frequency	D2013 + 100*n
Actual mode	D2011 + 100*n	Actual mode	D2011 + 100*n	Slave device AI2	D2029 + 100*n		
				Slave device AI3	D2030 + 100*n		

Tab. 16-29: Mapping of RXPDOs in special register

Because usage requires only simple to open the corresponding PDO, where TXPDO employs D2034 + 100*n settings and RXPDO employs D2067 + 100*n settings.

These two special D areas are defined as follows:

	PDO4		PDO3		PDO2		PDO1	
Default definition	Torque		Position		Remote I/O		Speed	
Bit	15	14 – 12	11	10 – 8	7	6 – 4	3	2 – 0
Definition	En①	Length②	En①	Length②	En①	Length②	En①	Length②

Tab. 16-30: Statement for the length of a PDO

① indicates whether PDO is used

② indicates mapping of several variables

In a simple example, if we wish to control a C2000 slave device and cause it to operate in speed mode, we only have to make the following settings:

Setting D2034 + 100*n = 000AH

TXPDO								
	PDO4		PDO3		PDO2		PDO1	
Length	Description	Special D	Description	Special D	Description	Special D	Description	Special D
1	Controller Word	D2008 + 100*n	Controller Word	D2008 + 100*n	Slave device MO	D2027 + 100*n	Controller Word	D2008 + 100*n
2	Target torque	D2017 + 100*n	Target	D2020 + 100*n D2021 + 100*n	Slave device AO1	D2031 + 100*n	Target torque	D2012 + 100*n
3	Control method	D2010 + 100*n	Control method	D2010 + 100*n	Slave device AO2	D2032 + 100*n		
4					Slave device AO3	D2033 + 100*n		

Tab. 16-31: For this example the TXPDO1 (Speed) is used

	PDO4		PDO3		PDO2		PDO1	
Definition	Torque		Position		Remote I/O		Speed	
Bit	15	14 – 12	11	10 – 8	7	6 – 4	3	2 – 0
Definition	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	2

Tab. 16-32: Meaning of the setting in D2034 + 100*n: PDO1 with 2 Words is used (Bit 3 = 1, bit 1 = 1, which results in the value Wert 000AH)

Setting D2067 + 100*n = 000Ah

TX PDO								
	PDO4		PDO3		PDO2		PDO1	
Length	Description	Special D	Description	Special D	Description	Special D	Description	Special D
1	Controller Word	D2009 + 100*n	Controller Word	D2009 + 100*n	Slave device MI	D2026 + 100*n	Controller Word	D2009 + 100*n
2	Actual torque	D2018 + 100*n	Actual position	D2022 + 100*n D2023 + 100*n	Slave device AI1	D2028 + 100*n	Actual frequency	D2013 + 100*n
3	Actual mode	D2011 + 100*n	Actual mode	D2011 + 100*n	Slave device AI2	D2029 + 100*n		
4					Slave device AI3	D2030 + 100*n		

Tab. 16-33: For this example the RXPDO1 (Speed) is used

	PDO4		PDO3		PDO2		PDO1	
Definition	Torque		Position		Remote I/O		Speed	
Bit	15	14 – 12	11	10 – 8	7	6 – 4	3	2 – 0
Definition	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	2

Tab. 16-34: Meaning of the setting in D2067 + 100*n: PDO1 with 2 Words is used (Bit 3 = 1, bit 1 = 1, which results in the value Wert 000AH)

Switch the PLC to Run after completing settings. Now wait for successful initialization of CANopen® (M1059 = 1 and M1061 = 0), and then initiate CANopen® memory mapping (M1034 = 1). The control word and frequency command will now automatically refresh to the corresponding slave device (D2008 + n*100 and D2012 + n*100), and the slave device's status word and currently frequency will also be automatically sent back to the master station (D2009 + n*100 and D2013 + n*100). This also illustrates how the master can handle these tasks through read/write operations in the special D area.

Furthermore, it should be noted that the remote I/O of PDO2 can obtain the slave device's current DI and AI status, and can also control the slave device's DO and AO status. Nevertheless, after introducing a fully automatic mapping special D, the C2000 CANopen master also provides additional information refreshes. For instance, while in speed mode, acceleration/deceleration settings may have been refreshed. The special D therefore also stores some seldom-used real-time information, and these commands can be refreshed using the CANFLS command. The following is the C2000's current CANopen® master data conversion area, which has a range of D2001 + 100*n – D2033 + 100*n, as shown below:

The range of n in the following table is 0–7.

Function	Special D	Description of function	Default	CAN index	PDO Default				R/W
					1	2	3	4	
General	D2000+100*n	Station number n of slave station Setting range: 0–127 0: No CANopen® function	0	—	—	—	—	—	RW
	D2002+100*n	Manufacturer code of slave station number n (L)	0	—	—	—	—	—	R
	D2003+100*n	Manufacturer code of slave station number n (H)	0	—	—	—	—	—	R
	D2004+100*n	Manufacturer's product code of slave station number n (L)	0	—	—	—	—	—	R
	D2005+100*n	Manufacturer's product code of slave station number n (H)	0	—	—	—	—	—	R

Tab. 16-35: Special register with information about CANopen® slave stations

Function	Special D	Description of function	Default	CAN index	PDO Default 1	PDO Default 2	PDO Default 3	PDO Default 4	R/W
Basic definitions	D2006+100*n	Communications break handling method of slave station number n	0	6007H-0010H	○	○	○	○	RW
	D2007+100*n	Error code of slave station number n error	0	603FH-0010H	○	○	○	○	R
	D2008+100*n	Control word of slave station number n	0	6040H-0010H	●	○	●	●	RW
	D2009+100*n	Status word of slave station number n	0	6041H-0010H	▲	○	▲	▲	R
	D2010+100*n	Control mode of slave station number n	2	6060H-0008H	○	○	○	○	RW
	D2011+100*n	Actual mode of slave station number n	2	6061H-0008H	○	○	○	○	R
Velocity Control	D2001+100*n	Torque restriction on slave station number n	0	6072H-0010H	○	○	○	○	RW
	D2012+100*n	Target speed of slave station number n	0	6042H-0010H	●	○	○	○	RW
	D2013+100*n	Actual speed of slave station number n	0	6043H-0010H	▲	○	○	○	R
	D2014+100*n	Error speed of slave station number n	0	6044H-0010H	○	○	○	○	R
	D2015+100*n	Acceleration time of slave station number n	1000	604FH-0020H	○	○	○	○	R
	D2016+100*n	Deceleration time of slave station number n	1000	6050H-0020H	○	○	○	○	RW
Torque control	D2017+100*n	Target torque of slave station number n	0	6071H-0010H	○	○	○	●	RW
	D2018+100*n	Actual torque of slave station number n	0	6077H-0010H	○	○	○	▲	R
	D2019+100*n	Actual current of slave station number n	0	6078H-0010H	○	○	○	○	R
Position control	D2020+100*n	Target of slave station number n (L)	0	607AH-0020H	○	○	●	○	RW
	D2021+100*n	Target of slave station number n (H)	0						
	D2022+100*n	Actual position of slave station number n (L)	0	6064H-0020H	○	○	▲	○	R
	D2023+100*n	Actual position of slave station number n (H)	0						
	D2024+100*n	Speed chart of slave station number n (L)	10000	6081H-0020H	○	○	○	○	RW
	D2025+100*n	Speed chart of slave station number n (H)	0						
20XXH correspondences: MI MO AI AO	D2026+100*n	MI status of slave station number n	0	2026H-0110H	○	▲	○	○	RW
	D2027+100*n	MO setting of slave station number n	0	2026H-4110H	○	●	○	○	
	D2028+100*n	AI1 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-6110H	○	▲	○	○	
	D2029+100*n	AI2 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-6210H	○	▲	○	○	
	D2030+100*n	AI3 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-6310H	○	▲	○	○	
	D2031+100*n	AO1 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-A110H	○	●	○	○	
	D2032+100*n	AO2 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-A210H	○	●	○	○	
	D2033+100*n	AO3 status of slave station number n	0	2026H-A310H	○	●	○	○	
PDO reflection length setting	D2034+100*n	Real-time transmission setting of slave station number n	000AH	—	—	—	—	—	RW
	D2067+100*n	Real-time reception setting of slave station number n	0000H	—	—	—	—	—	

Tab. 16-35: Special register with information about CANopen® slave stations

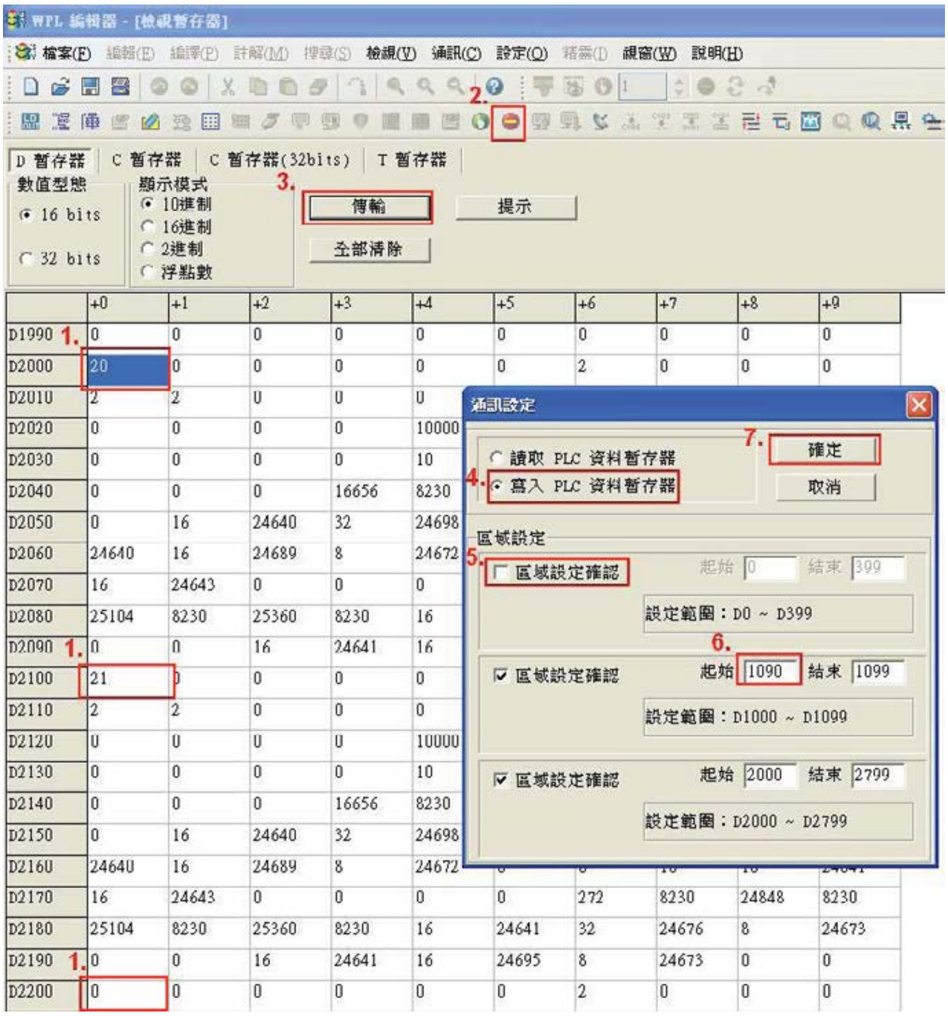
●: Indicates TXPDO

▲: Indicates RXPDO

○: Special D can be refreshed using the CANFLS command

After gaining an understanding of special D definitions, we return to setting steps. After entering the values corresponding to D1090 to D1099, D2000 + 100*n, D2034 + 100*n and D2067+100*n, we can begin to perform downloading, which is performed in accordance with the following steps:

1. D2000 and D2100 are set as 20 and 21, and D2200, D2300, D2400, D2500, D2600, and D2700 are set as 0; if a setting of 0 causes problems, D1091 can be set as 3, and slave stations 2 to 7 can be closed.
2. Switch PLC to Stop status.
3. Press the transmit button.
4. Click on write memory after exiting the window.
5. Ignore D0-D399.
6. Change the second range to D1090-D1099.
7. Click on Confirm.



C2000_346

Fig. 16-37: Changing the contents of the special registers for CANopen® and download to the PLC

Another method can be used to set D1091: Determine which of slave stations 0 to 7 will not be needed, and set the corresponding bits to 0. For instance, if it is not necessary to control slave stations 2, 6 and 7, merely set D1091 = 003B, and the setting method is the same as described above: Use WPL to initiate **communications > use register edit (T C D)** function to perform settings.

Step 3: set the master's communications station number and communications speed

① When setting the master's station number (parameter 09-46, default is set as 100), make sure not to use the same number as a slave station.

② Set the CANopen® communications speed (parameter 09-37); regardless of whether the driver is defined as a master or slave station, the communications speed is set via this parameter.

Step 4: write program code

- Real-time access: Can directly read/write to or from the corresponding D area.
- Non real-time access:

Read command: Use the CANRX command for reading. M1066 will be 1 when reading is complete; M1067 will be 1 if reading is successful, and M1067 will be 0 if an error has occurred.

Write command: Use the CANTX command for writing. M1066 will be 1 when writing is complete; M1067 will be 1 if writing is successful, and M1067 will be 0 if an error has occurred.

Refresh command: Use CANFLS command to refresh (if there are RW attributes, the master will write to the slave station; if there are R attributes, the slave station will return the read values to the master); M1066 will be 1 if refresh has been completed; M1067 will be 1 if refresh is successful, and M1067 will be 0 if an error has occurred.

NOTE When using CANRX, CANTX or CANFLS, internal implementation commands will wait until M1066 is completed before executing the next CANRX, CANTX or CANFLS.

Afterwards, download program to the driver (Please note that the PLC's default communications format is ASCII 7N2 9600, and the station number is 2. The WPL must therefore be modified, and the WPL setting pathway is settings > communications settings.)

Step 5: set the slave stations' station numbers, communications speed, control source, and command source

Delta's C2000 and EC series devices currently support the CANopen® communications interface driver, and the corresponding slave station numbers and communications speed parameters are as follows:

Setting	Corresponding device parameters C2000	Corresponding device parameters EC	Value	Definition
Slave station address	09-36	09-20	0	Disable CANopen® hardware interface
			1–127	CANopen® Communication address
Communication speed	09-37	09-21	0	1 Mbps
			1	500 kbps
			2	250 kbps
			3	125 kbps
			4	100 kbps
			5	50 kbps
Control source	00-21	—	3	
	—	02-01	5	
Frequency source	00-20	—	6	
	—	02-00	5	
Torque source	11-33	—	3	
	—	—	—	
Position source	11-40	—	3	
	—	—	—	

Tab. 16-36: Parameter for CANopen® Communication in C2000 and EC

Delta's A2 Servo currently supports the CANopen® communications interface, and the corresponding slave station numbers and communications speed parameters are as follows:

Setting	Corresponding device parameters A2	Value	Definition
Slave station address	03-00	1–127	CANopen® Communication address
Communication speed	03-01 bit 8-11 XRXX	R = 0	125 kbps
		R = 1	250 kbps
		R = 2	500 kbps
		R = 3	750 kbps
		R = 4	1 Mbps
Control/command source	01-01	B	

Tab. 16-37: Parameter for CANopen® Communication in an A2 Servo

Step 6: connect hardware wiring

When performing wiring, note the head and tail terminal resistance; connection methods are as follows:

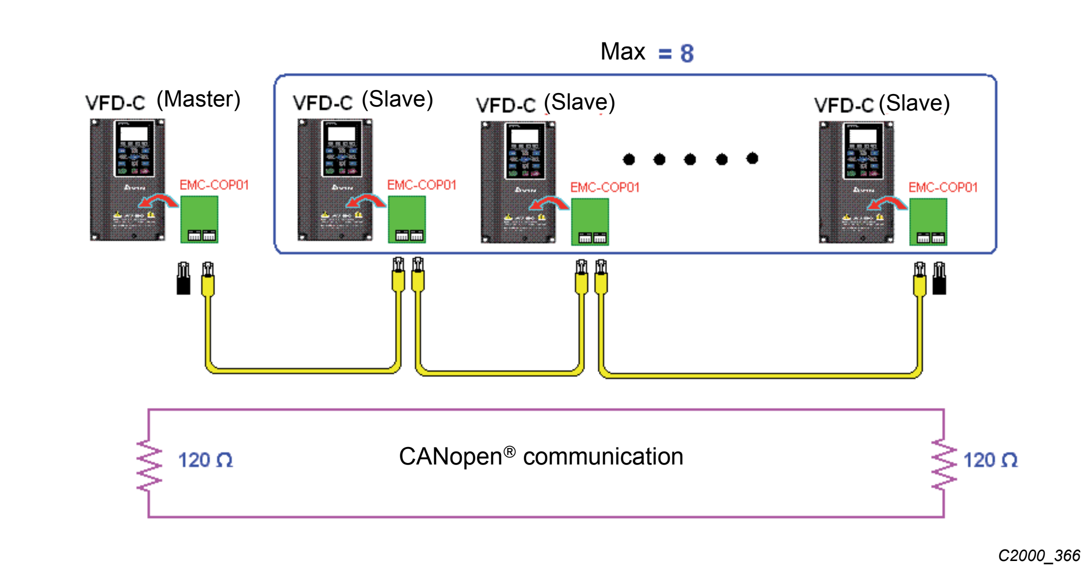


Fig. 16-38: Example for the connection of VFDs via CAN

Step 7: Initiate control

After a program has been written and downloaded, switch the PLC mode to Run. Merely turn power to master and slave stations off and then on again.

Refer to CANMasterTest 1 vs. 2 driver.dvp.

EXAMPLE C2000 driver one-to-two control

① Activating CANopen® Master functions

② Master memory correspondences

③ Set the master's communications station number and communications speed

– Master station number (Parameter 09-46, default is „100“)

– Communications speed: 1 MBit/s (Parameter 09-37 = 0)

④ Write program code

⑤ Set the slave station’s station numbers and communications speed

– Slave station 1: Communication speed 1 Mbps (Parameter 09-37 = 0)
Station number 10 (Parameter 09-36 = 10)

– Slave station 2: Communication speed 1 Mbps (Parameter 09-37 = 0)
Station number 11 (Parameter 09-36 = 11)

⑥ Connect hardware wiring

⑦ Initiate control

16.9 Explanation of various PLC mode controls (speed, torque, homing, and position)

The torque mode and position mode are based on FOC vector control and speed mode also supports FOC vector control. Control therefore cannot be performed successfully unless you study motor parameters ahead of time for the torque mode and position mode, and the speed mode based on FOC.

In addition, motors are classified as two types: IM and PM. You therefore need to study IM motor parameters. For PM motors, after completing motor parameter study, you must also complete study of motor origin angle of deviation. Please refer to parameters Pr. 05-00 detailed explanation.

NOTE If a PM motor belongs to Delta's ECMA series, motor parameters can be directly input from data in the servo motor catalog, and parameter study will not be needed.

Control methods and settings are explained as follows:

Special M Special D		Description of function	Attributes
Control special M	M1025	Driver frequency = set frequency (ON)/driver frequency = 0 (OFF)	RW
	M1026	Driver operating direction FWD (OFF)/REV(ON)	RW
	M1040	Hardware power (Servo ON)	RW
	M1042	Quick stop	RW
	M1044	Pause (Halt)	RW
	M1052	Lock frequency (lock, frequency locked at the current operating frequency)	RW
Status special M	M1015	Frequency attained (when used together with M1025)	R
	M1056	Servo On Ready	R
	M1058	On Quick Stopping	R
Control special D	D1060	Mode setting (speed mode is 0)	RW
Status special D	D1037	Converter output frequency (0.00–600.00)	R
	D1050	Actual operating mode (speed mode is 0)	R

Tab. 16-38: Special relays and special register for speed mode

Speed mode control commands FREQ (P)

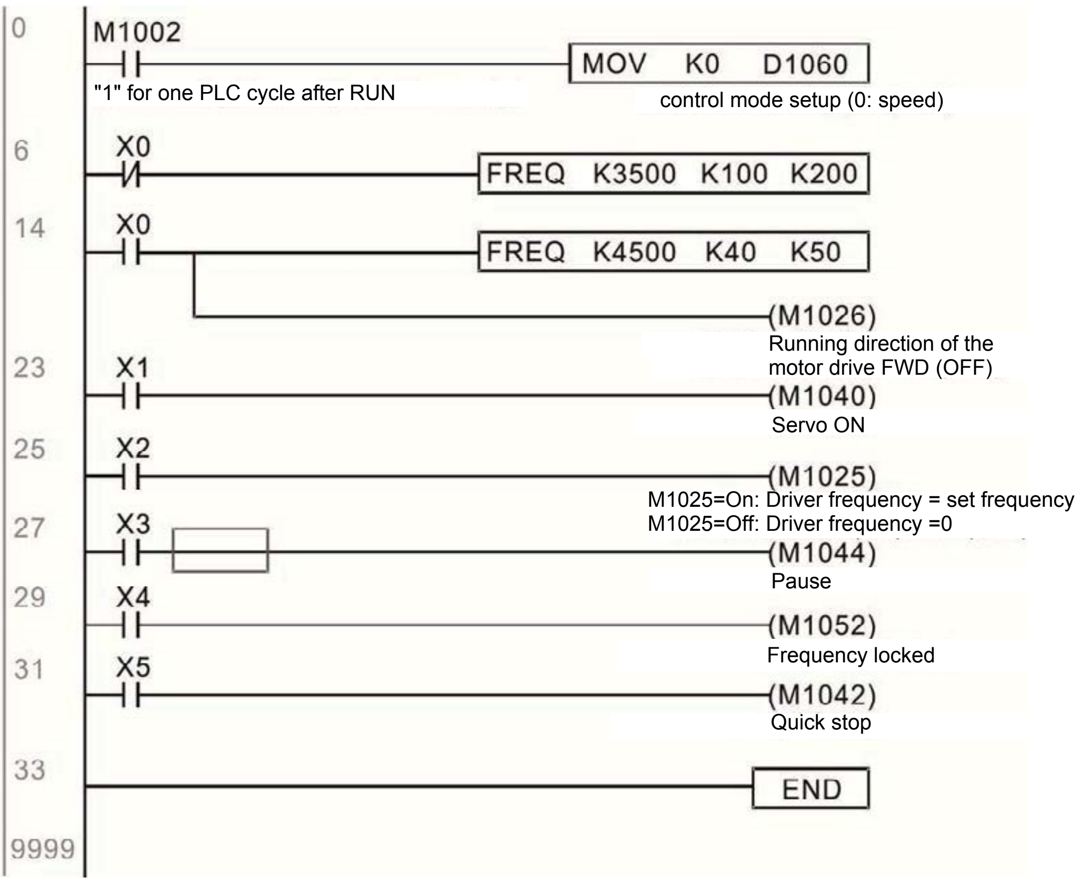
(S1): Target speed

(S2): The first acceleration time setting

(S3): The first deceleration time setting

EXAMPLE Before performing speed control, if the FOC (magnetic field orientation) control method is used, setting of electromechanical parameters must first be completed.

- Setting D1060 = 0 will shift the converter to the speed mode (default).
- Use the FREQ command to control frequency, acceleration time, and deceleration time.
- Set M1040 = 1, the driver will now be excited, but the frequency will be 0.
- Set M1025 = 1, the driver frequency command will now jump to the frequency designated by FREQ, and acceleration/deceleration will be controlled on the basis of the acceleration time and deceleration time specified by FREQ.
- M1052 can be used to lock the current operating frequency.
- M1044 can be used to temporarily pause operation, and the deceleration method will comply with deceleration settings.
- M1042 can be used to perform quick stop, and deceleration will be as quick as possible without giving rise to an error. (There may still be a jump error if the load is too large.)
- Control user rights: M1040 (Servo ON) > M1042 (Quick Stop) > M1044 (Halt) > M1052 (LOCK)



C2000_372

Torque control

	Special M Special D	Description of function	Attributes
Control special M	M1040	Servo On	RW
Status special M	M1056	Servo On Ready	R
	M1063	Torque attained	R
Control special D	D1060	Operating mode setting (torque mode is 2)	RW
Status special D	D1050	Actual operating mode (torque mode is 2)	R
	D1053	Actual torque	R

Tab. 16-39: Special relays and special register for torque mode

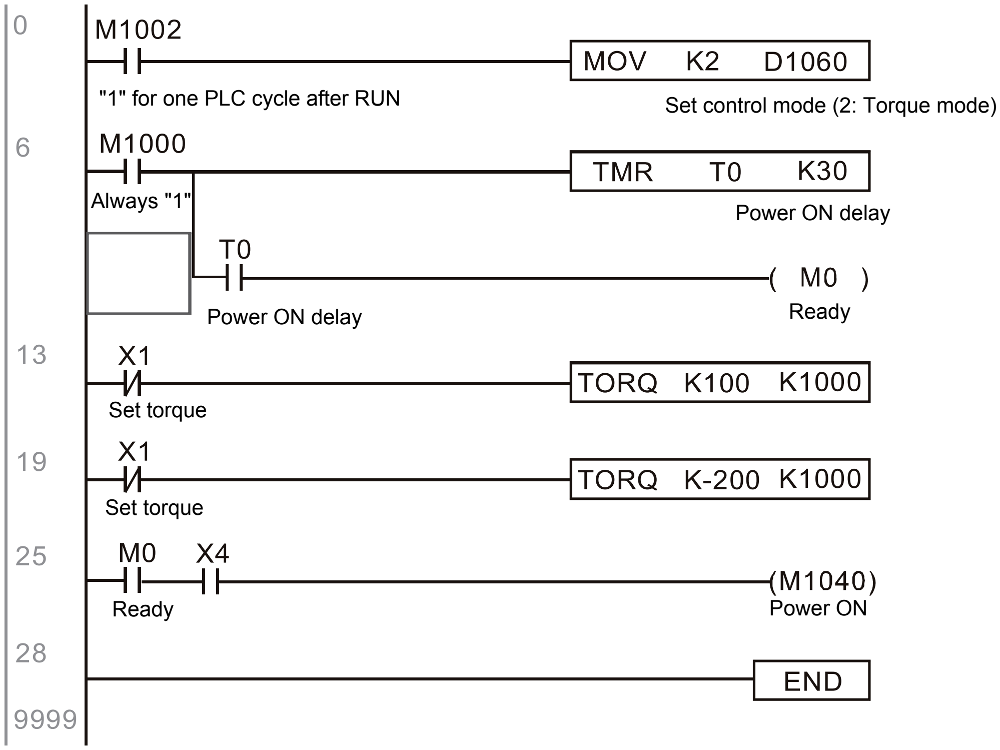
Torque mode control commands TORQ (P)

S1: Target torque (with numbers)

S2: Frequency restrictions

EXAMPLE The setting of electromechanical parameters involved in torque control must be completed before implementing torque control.

- Set D1060 = 2 to change the converted to the torque mode.
- Use the TORQ command to implement torque control and speed limits.
- Set M1040 = 1; the driver will now be excited, and immediately jump to the target torque or speed limit. D1053 can be used to find out the current torque.



C2000_377

Homing control/position control

	Special M Special D	Description of function	Attributes
Control special M	M1040	Servo ON	RW
	M1048	Move to new position, must use control mode as position mode (D1060 = 1) and M1040 = 1	RW
	M1050	Absolute position/relative position (0: relative/1: absolute)	RW
	M1055	Search for origin (home start), must use control mode as homing mode (D1060 = 3) and M1040 = 1	RW
Status special M	M1064	Target reached	R
	M1070	Return home complete	R
	M1071	Homing error	R
Control special D	D1060	Operating mode setting (position mode is 1, homing mode is 3)	RW
Status special D	D1050	Actual operating mode (homing mode is 3)	R
	D1051*	Actual position (Low word)	R
	D1052*	Actual position (High word)	R

Tab. 16-40: Special relays and special register for homing mode/position mode

* D1051 and D1052 must be combined to give the actual location.

Position mode control commands DPOS (P)

S1: Target (with numbers)

EXAMPLE First complete setting of electromechanical parameters connected with position before implementing homing control or position control.

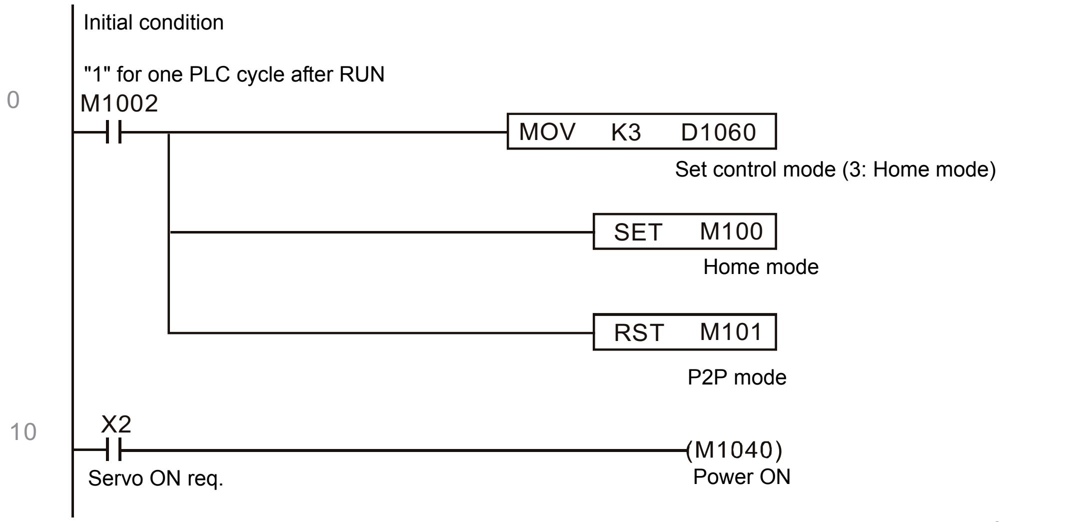
- Set 00-40 to select the homing method and the corresponding limit sensors and origin. (Setting the MI function gives a reverse rotation limit of 44, a forward rotation limit of 45, and an origin proximity of 46. Because the C2000 current only supports a Z-phase origin, the encoder card must a provide Z-phase.)
- Set D1060 = 3 to change the converter to the homing mode.
- Set M1040 = 1

  In the VF/SVC/VFPG mode, will enter the STANDBY mode (01-34 can be used to access the STANDBY mode's action options).

  In the FOC + PG mode, zero speed holding will occur
- Set M1055 = 1, and the driver will now start to search for the origin.
- When homing is complete, M1070 will change to ON. If you now set D1060 = 1, the control mode will switch to position mode (please note that M1040 will not change to OFF; this mechanical origin move).
- The DPOS command can now be used to designate the driver's target location. M1050 or parameter 00-12 can be used to set a change in absolute or relative position.
- Implement M1048 Pulse ON once (must be more than 1 ms in duration), and the converter will begin to move toward the target (M1040 must be 1 to be effective). The current position can be obtained from D1051 and D1052.

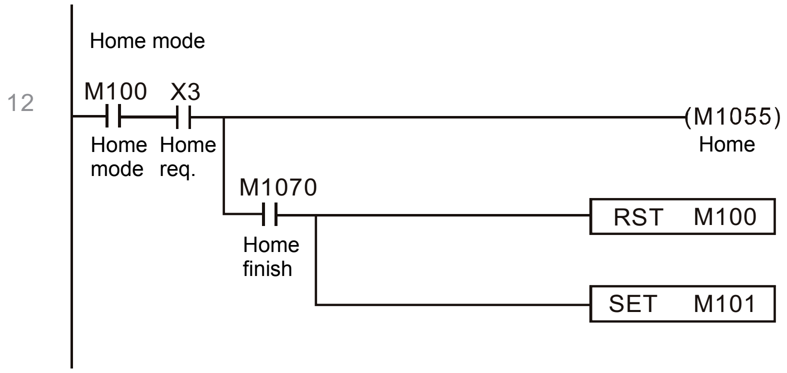
EXAMPLE (CONTINUATION)

Part 1: The initialization mode is defined as the "homing" mode from the beginning (set D1060 = 3). X2 is used to implement converter excitation.



C2000_382

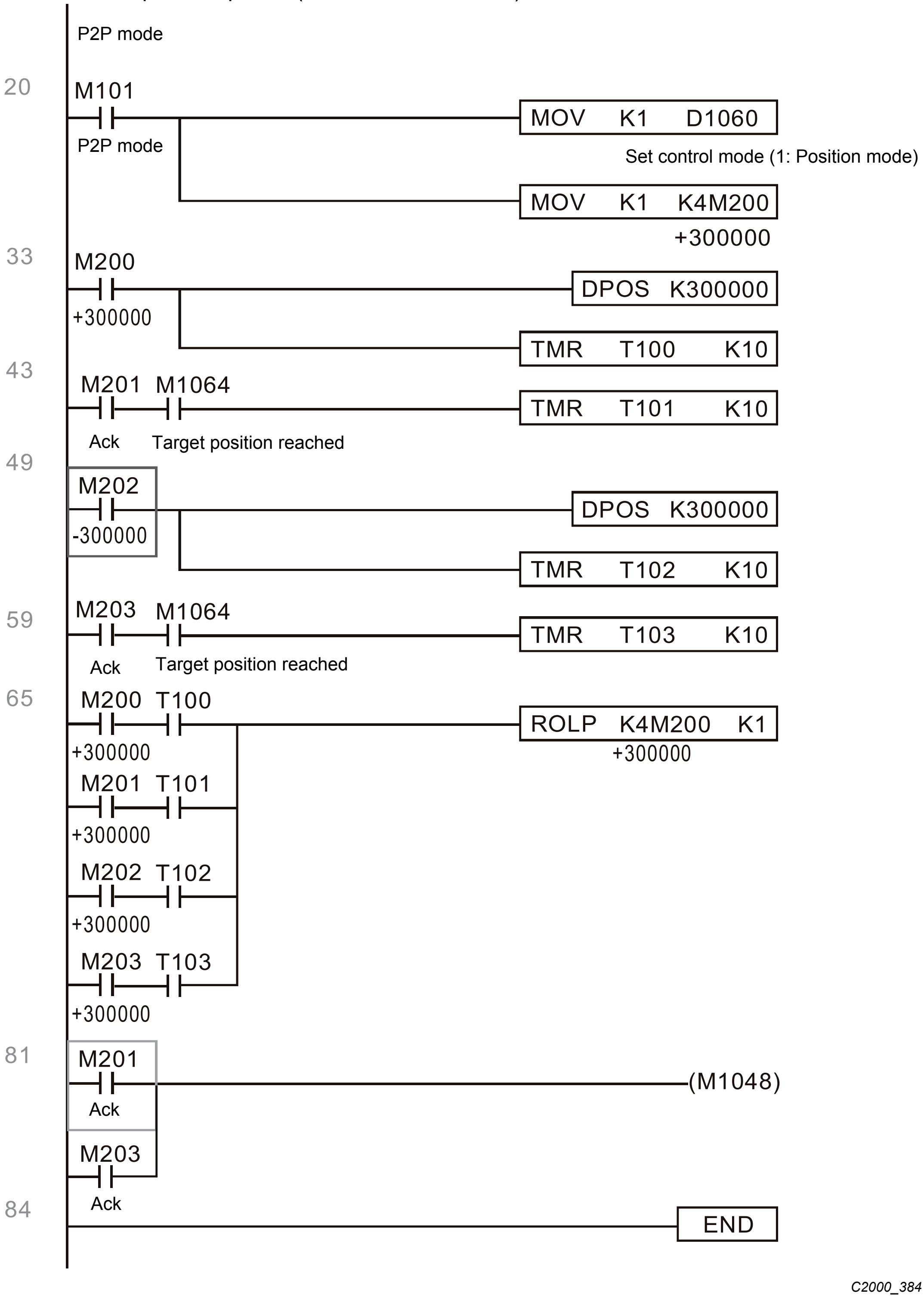
Part 2: Homing; Use X3 to trigger homing action; will automatically switch to position mode after completion.



C2000_383

EXAMPLE (CONTINUATION)

Part 3-point-to-point movement: Switch to position mode (set D1060 = 1), and move back and forth between position points (+300000 to –300000).



If homing is not needed in an application, the first and second parts can be skipped. However, the M1040 condition from Part 1 must be included, and the writing method in Part 1 involve the use of X2 to achieve direct access. In addition, when M101 is used at the beginning of Part 3 to set the control mode, it can be rewritten as M1002, which will put the PLC immediately into the position mode when it starts running.

16.10 Internal communications main node control

The protocol has been developed in order to facilitate the use of 485 instead of CANopen® in certain application situations. The 485 protocol offers similar real-time characteristics as CANopen®; this protocol can only be used on the C2000 and CT2000 devices. The maximum number of slave devices is 8.

Internal communications have a master-slave structure. The initiation method is very simple:

- Slave device

  Set parameter 09-31 = -1 to -8 in order to access 8 nodes, and set parameter 00-20 = 1 to define the control source as 485 and access the reference sources that must be controlled, namely speed mode (00-21 = 2), torque mode (11-33 = 1), and position mode (11-40=2). This will complete slave device settings. (PLC functions do not need to be activated)

- Master

  Setting the master is even simpler; it is only necessary to set parameter 09-31 = -10, and enable the PLC.

- Hardware wiring

  The master and slave stations are connected via the 485 serial port. The C2000 provide two types of 485 serial port interfaces, see the figure below (please refer to 06 Control terminals concerning detailed terminal connections).

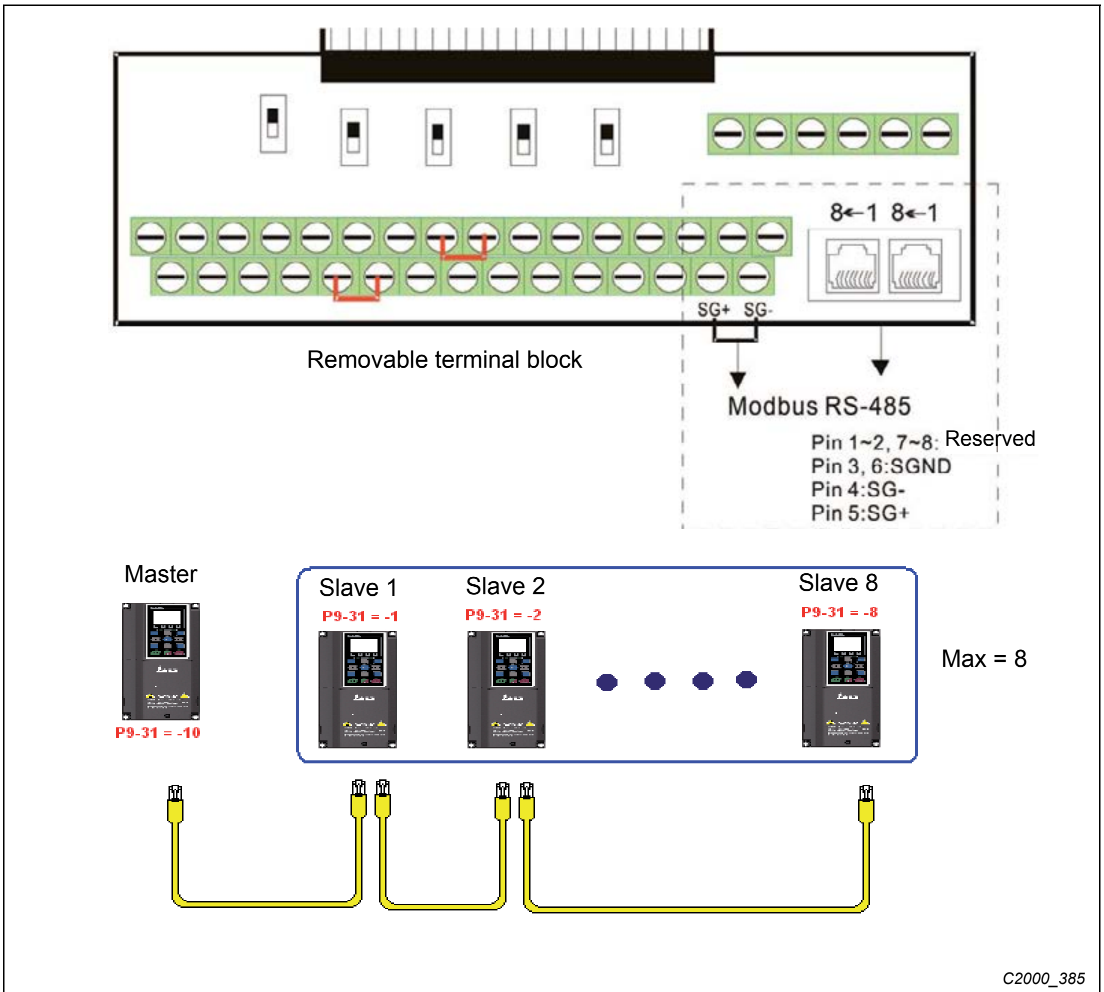


Fig. 16-39: Connection between master stations and slave stations

Master programming

In a program, D1110 can be used to define a slave station to be controlled (1-8, if set as 0, can jump between 8 stations). Afterwards, M1035 is set as 1, and the memory positions of the master and slave stations will correspond. At this time, it is only necessary to send commands to the correlation slave station address to control that station. The following is a register table connected with internal communications.

Special M Special D		Description of function	Attributes
Control special M	M1035	Initiates internal communications control	RW
Control special D	D1110	Internal node communications number 1-8 (set the station number of the slave station to be controlled)	RW

Special D		Definition	Bit	User rights	Speed mode	Location mode	Torque mode	Homing mode	Attributes
Control special D	D1120 + 10*N	Internal node N control command	0	4	Command functions	—	—	Homing origin	RW
			1	4	Reverse rotation requirements	Immediate change	—	—	
			2	4	—	—	—	—	
			3	3	Temporary pause	Temporary pause	—	—	
			4	4	Frequency locking	—	—	Temporary pause	
			5	4	JOG	—	—	—	
			6	2	Quick Stop	Quick Stop	Quick Stop	Quick Stop	
			7	1	Servo ON	Servo ON	Servo ON	Servo ON	
			11–8	4	Speed interval switching	Speed interval switching	—	—	
			13–12	4	Deceleration time change	—	—	—	
			14	4	Enable Bit 13 – 8	Enable Bit 13 – 8	—	—	
			15	4	Clear error code	Clear error code	Clear error code	Clear error code	
	D1121 + 10*N	Internal node N control mode			0	1	2	3	RW
	D1122 + 10*N	Internal node N reference command L			Speed command (no number)	Position command (with numbers)	Torque command (with numbers)	—	RW
	D1123 + 10*N	Internal node N reference command H			—		Speed limit	—	RW

Special D		Description of function	Attributes
Status special D	D1115	Internal node synchronizing cycle (ms)	R
	D1116	Internal node error (bit 0 = slave device 1, bit 1 = slave device 2, bit 7 = slave device 8)	R
	D1117	Internal node online correspondence (bit 0 = slave device 1, bit 1 = slave device 2, bit 7 = slave device 8)	R

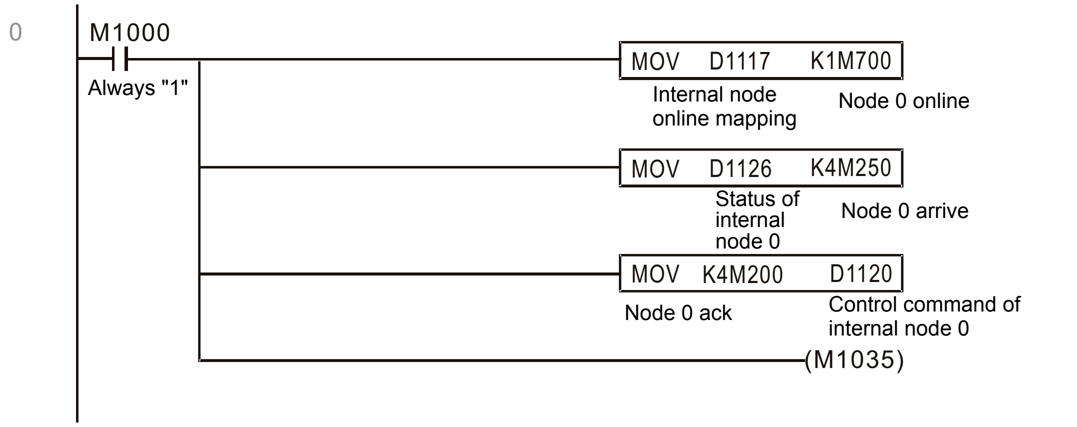
Tab. 16-41: Special relays and registers for internal communication (1)

Special D		Bit	Speed mode	Location mode	Torque mode	Homing mode	Attri-butes
			Description of Function				
Status special D	D1126 + 10*N	0	Frequency command arrival	Position command attained	Torque command attained	Zero command completed	R
		1	Clockwise	Clockwise	Clockwise	Clockwise	
			Counterclockwise	Counterclockwise	Counterclockwise	Counter-clockwise	
		2	Warning	Warning	Warning	Warning	
		3	Error	Error	Error	Error	
		5	JOG				
		6	Quick Stop	Quick Stop	Quick Stop	Quick Stop	
		7	Servo ON	Servo ON	Servo ON	Servo ON	
	D1127 + 10*N		Actual frequency	Actual position (with numbers)	Actual torque (with numbers)	—	R
	D1128 + 10*N		—		—	—	

Tab. 16-42: Special relays and registers for internal communication (2)

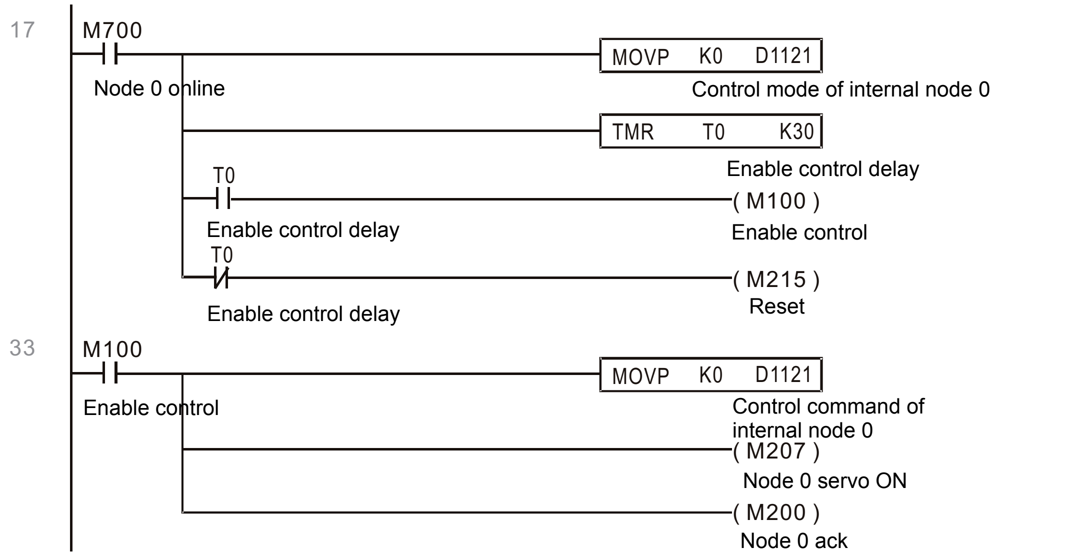
* N = 0–7

EXAMPLE Assume it is desired to control slave station 1 operation at frequencies of 30.00 Hz and 60.00 Hz, status, and online node correspondences:



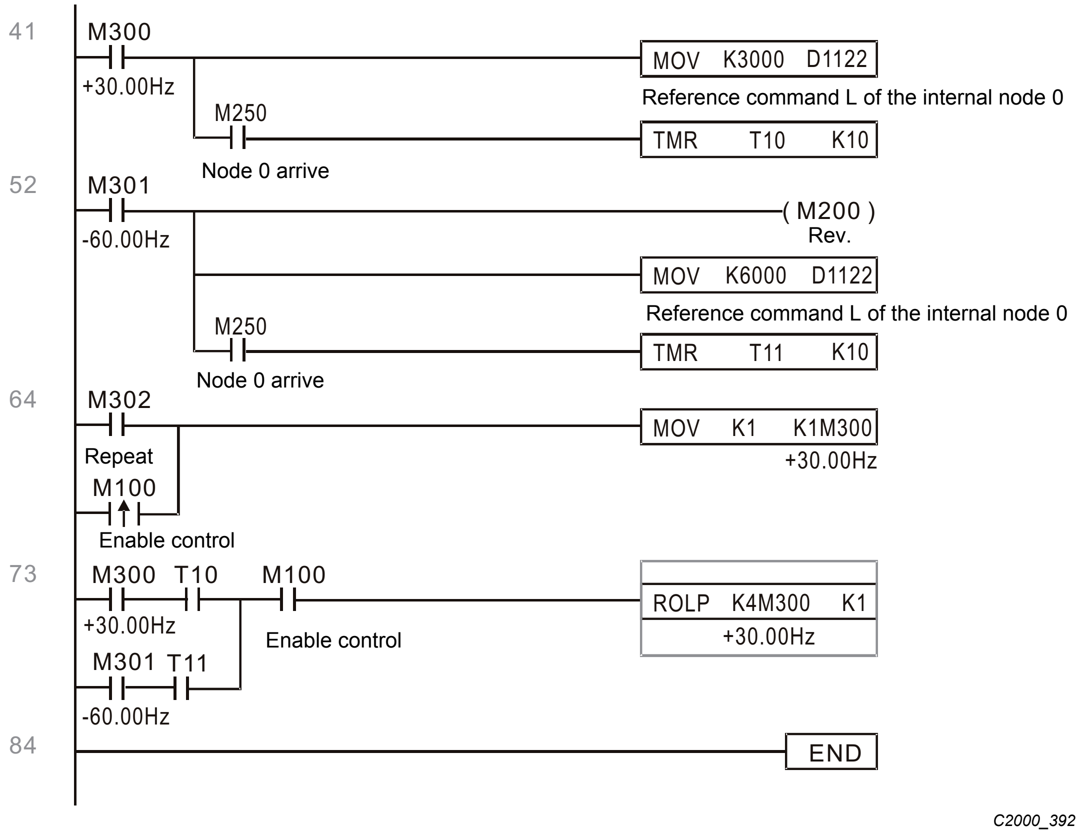
C2000_390

When it is judged that slave station 1 is online, delay 3 sec. and begin control:



C2000_391

EXAMPLE (CONTINUATION) It is required slave station 1 maintain forward rotation at 30.00 Hz for 1 sec., and maintain reverse rotation at 60.00 Hz for 1 sec., and repeat this cycle continuously.



16.11 Count function using MI8

16.11.1 High-speed count function

The C2000's MI8 supports one-way pulse counting, and the maximum speed is 100K. The starting method is very simple, and only requires setting M1038 to begin counting. The 32 bit count value is stored on D1054 and D1055 in non-numerical form. M1039 can reset the count value to 0.

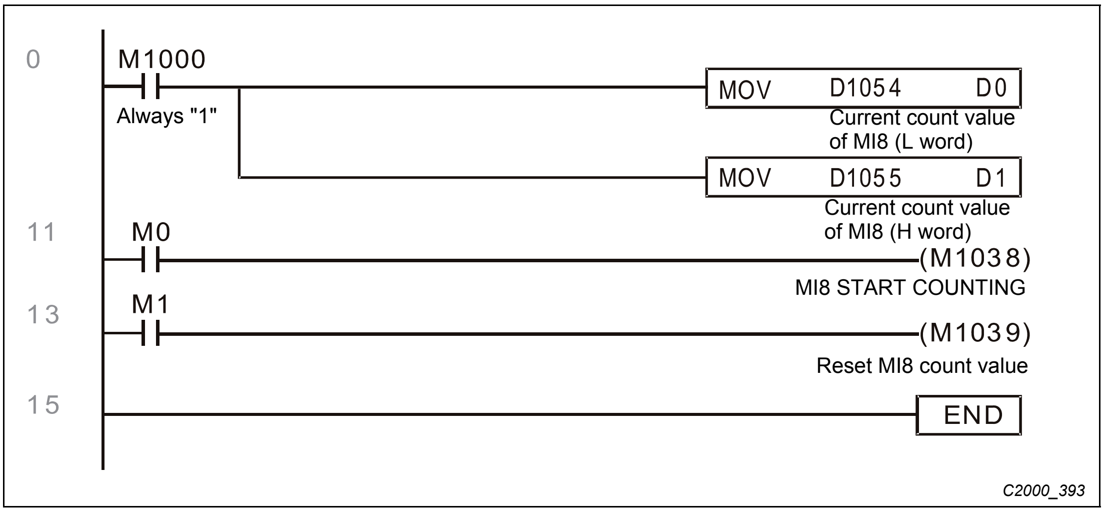


Fig. 16-40: Program example for high-speed count function using MI8

NOTE

When the PLC program defines MI8 for use as a high-speed counter, and also for use in PLC procedures, it must be written to M1038 or M1039, and the original MI8 functions will be disabled.

16.11.2 Frequency calculation function

Apart from high-speed counting, the C2000's MI8 can also convert a received pulse to frequency. The following figure shows that there is no conflict between frequency conversion and count calculations, which can be performed simultaneously.

In D1058 the calculation interval (gate time) for frequency measurement on MI8 is stored in the unit "milliseconds". For a calculation interval of one second D1058 must contain the value 1000 [ms] = 1,0 s.

Assuming that there are 5 input pulses each second, (see figure below) we set D1058 = 1000 ms = 1.0 sec. as the calculation interval. This enables five pulses to be sent to the converter each second.

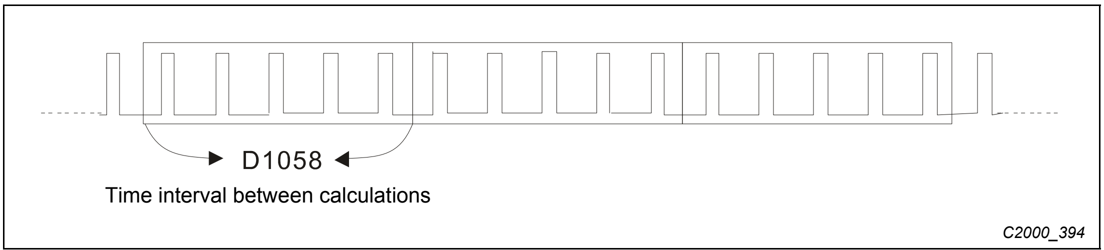


Fig. 16-41: Example for pulses on terminal MI8 of the variable frequency drive

The result of the calculation is stored in D1056.

In D1057 a multiplication factor can be set. Assuming that each 5 pulses correspond to 1 Hz, we set D1057 = 5.

D1059 contains information about decimal places. Assuming that we wish to display numbers to two decimal places, we set D1059 = 2. A calculated frequency of 1.00 Hz will therefore be stored as 100 in D1059.

The D1056 calculation formula is shown below:

D1056: Calculated frequency of the pulses at MI8
D1057: Multiplication factor
D1058: Calculation interval (gate time) for frequency measurement on MI8 [ms]
D1059: Number of decimal points for frequency measurement on MI8 [0–3]

$$D1056 = \frac{\textbf{Pulses per second}}{D1057} \times \frac{1000}{D1058} \times 10^{D1059}$$

C2000_395

Fig. 16-42: MI8 frequency calculation formula

For this example the following frequency is calculated:

Frequency = 5/1000 x 1000/5 x 100 = 100 > 1,00 Hz (because of [D1059] = 2)

16.12 MODBUS® remote IO control applications (MODRW)

The C2000's internal PLC supports 485 read/write functions, which can be realized using the MODRW command. However, the 485 serial port must be defined as available for the PLC's 485 use before writing a program, and the parameter 09-31 must be set as -12. After completing settings, the standard functions defined by 485 can be used to implement read/write commands at other stations. Communications speed is defined by parameter 09-01, the communications format is defined by parameter 09-04, and the PLC's current station number is defined by parameter 09-35.

The C2000 currently supports the functions read coil (0 x 01), read input (0 x 02), read register (0 x 03), write to single register (0 x 06), write to several coils (0 x 0F), and write to several registers (0 x 10). Explanations and the usage of these functions are provided as follows:

MODRW command							
S1 Node ID	S2 Command	S3 Address	S Register	n Length	General meaning	Slave device is Delta's PLC meaning	Slave device is Delta's converter meaning
K3	H01	H500	D0	K18	Read coil (Bit)	Read 18 bits of data corresponding to slave station 3 PLC Y0 to Y21. This data is stored by bit 0 to 15 of the this station's D0 and bit 0 to bit 3 of D1.	Does not support this function
K3	H02	H400	D10	K10	Read input (Bit)	Read 10 bits of data corresponding to slave station 3 PLC X0 to X11. This data is stored by bit 0 to 9 of this station's D10.	Does not support this function
K3	H03	H600	D20	K3	Read register (word)	Read 3 words of data corresponding to slave station 3 PLC T0 to T2. This data is stored by D20 to D22.	Read 3 words of data corresponding to slave station 3 converter parameters 06-00 to 06-02. This data is stored by D20 to D22.
K3	H06	H610	D30	XX*	Write to single register (word)	Writes this station's D30 value to slave station 3 PLC's T16.	Writes this station's D30 value to slave station 3 converter parameter 06-10.
K3	H0F	H509	D40	K10	Write to multiple coils (Bit)	Writes bit 0 to 9 of D40 to slave station 3 PLC's Y11 to Y22.	Does not support this function
K3	H10	H602	D50	K4	Write to multiple registers (word)	Writes D50 to D53 to slave station 3 PLC's T2 to T5.	Writes his station's D50 to D53 to slave station 3 converter parameters 06-02 to 06-05

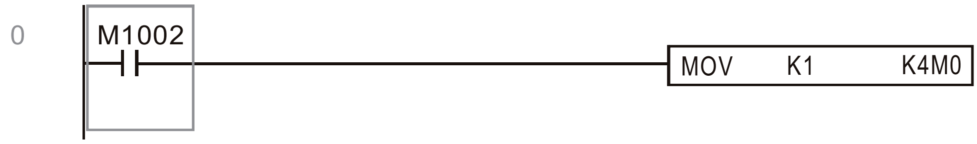
Tab. 16-43: Examples for MODRW commands

* Indicates doesn't matter.

After implementing MODRW, the status will be displayed in M1077 (485 read/write complete), M1078 (485 read/write error), and M1079 (485 read/write time out). M1077 is defined so as to immediately revert to 0 after the MODRW command has been implemented. However, any of three situations-a report of no error, a data error report, or time out with no report-will cause the status of M1077 to change to On.

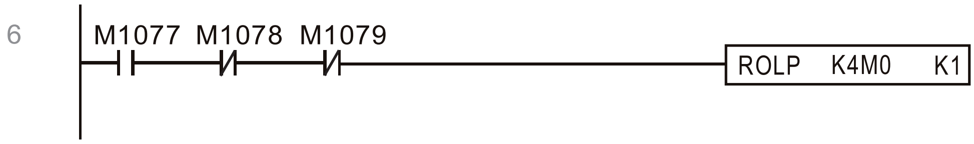
EXAMPLE Testing of various functions

At the start, will cause the transmitted time sequence to switch to the first data unit:



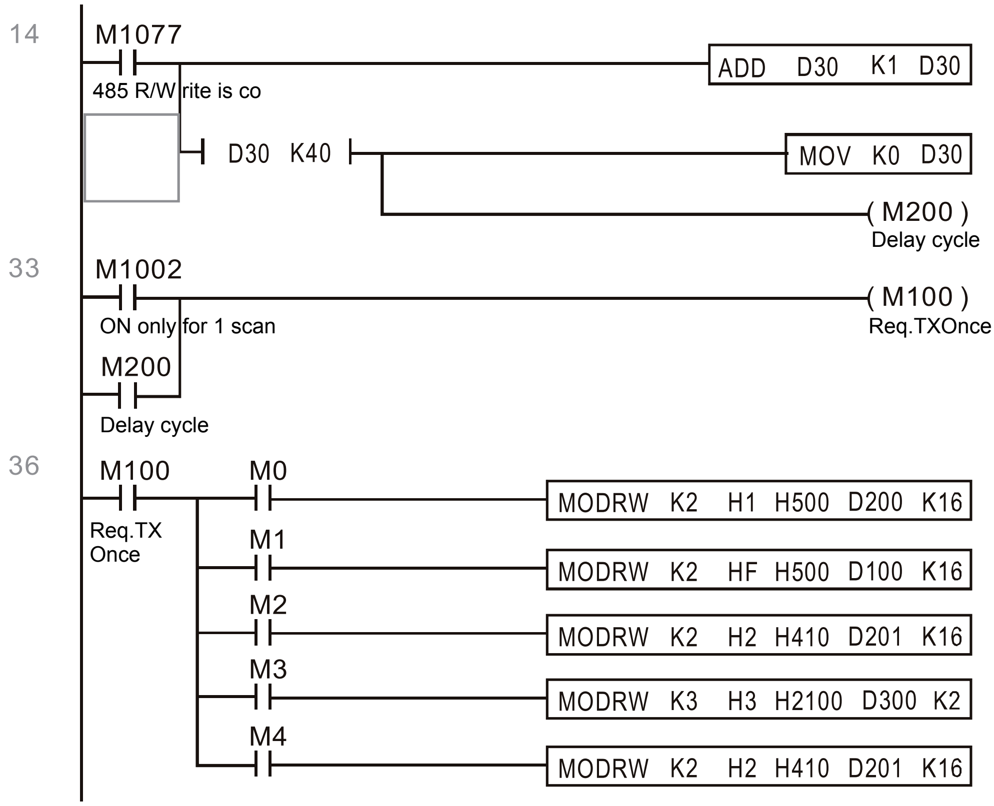
C2000_397

When the reported message indicates no error, it will switch to the next transmitted command:



C2000_398

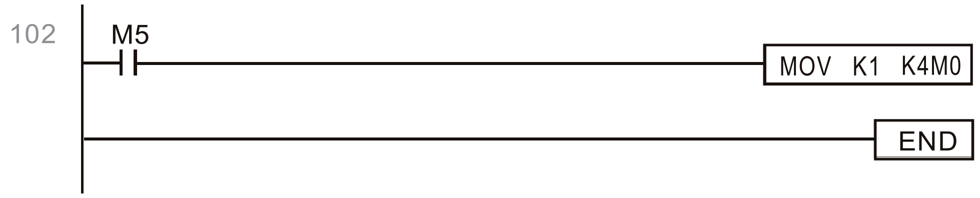
If time out occurs or an error is reported, the M1077 will change to On. At this time, after a delay of 40 scanning cycles, it will re-issue the original command once.



C2000_399

EXAMPLE (CONTINUA-TION)

It will repeat after sending all commands:



C2000_400

Actual use to control the RTU485 module

① Set the communications format. Assume that the communications format is 115200, 8, N, 2, RTU

– C2000: The default PLC station number is set as 2 (09-35); 09-31=-12 (COM1 is controlled by the PLC), 09-01=115.2 (The communication speed is 115200); 09-04=13 (The format is 8,N,2, RTU)

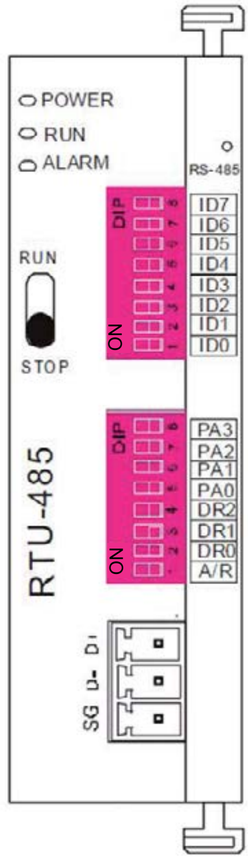
– RTU485: The station number is 8 (refer to the figure below).

Station number setting

ID7	ID6	ID5	ID4	ID3	ID2	ID1	ID0
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0

Communication protocoll/speed setting

PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0	DR2	DR1	DR0	A/R
1	0	0	0	1	1	1	0



Communication station #:
ID0–ID7 are defined as 2^0, 2^1, 2^2–2^6, 2^7

Communication protocol

PA3	PA2	PA1	PA0	A/R	Commun. protocol
OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	7, E, 1, ASCII
OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	7, O, 1, ASCII
OFF	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	7, E, 2, ASCII
OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	7, O, 2, ASCII
OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	7, N, 2, ASCII
OFF	ON	OFF	ON	ON	8, E, 1, ASCII
OFF	ON	ON	OFF	ON	8, O, 1, ASCII
OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON	8, N, 1, ASCII
ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	8, N, 2, ASCII
OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	8, E, 1, RTU
OFF	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	8, O, 1, RTU
OFF	ON	ON	ON	OFF	8, N, 1, RTU
ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	8, N, 2, RTU

DR2	DR1	DR0	Commun. speed
OFF	OFF	OFF	1,200 bps
OFF	OFF	ON	2,400 bps
OFF	ON	OFF	4,800 bps
OFF	ON	ON	9,600 bps
ON	OFF	OFF	19,200 bps
ON	OFF	ON	38,400 bps
ON	ON	OFF	57,600 bps
ON	ON	ON	115,200 bps

C2000_401, C2000_402

Fig. 16-43: Setting of station number, communication protocol, and communication speed

② Install control equipment. We sequentially connect to the RTU-485:

– DVP-16SP (8 IN, 8 OUT)

– DVP-04AD (4 channels AD)

– DVP-02DA (2 channels DA), and

– DVP-08ST (8 switches)

The following corresponding locations can be obtained from the RTU-485's configuration definitions:

Module	Terminals	485 Address
DVP-16SP	X0 – X7	0400H – 0407H
	Y0 – Y7	0500H – 0507H
DVP-04AD	AD0 – AD3	1600H – 1603H
DVP-02DA	DA0 – DA1	1640H – 1641H
DVP-08ST	Switch 0 – 7	0408H – 040FH

Tab. 16-44: Devices and addresses for this example

③ Physical configuration

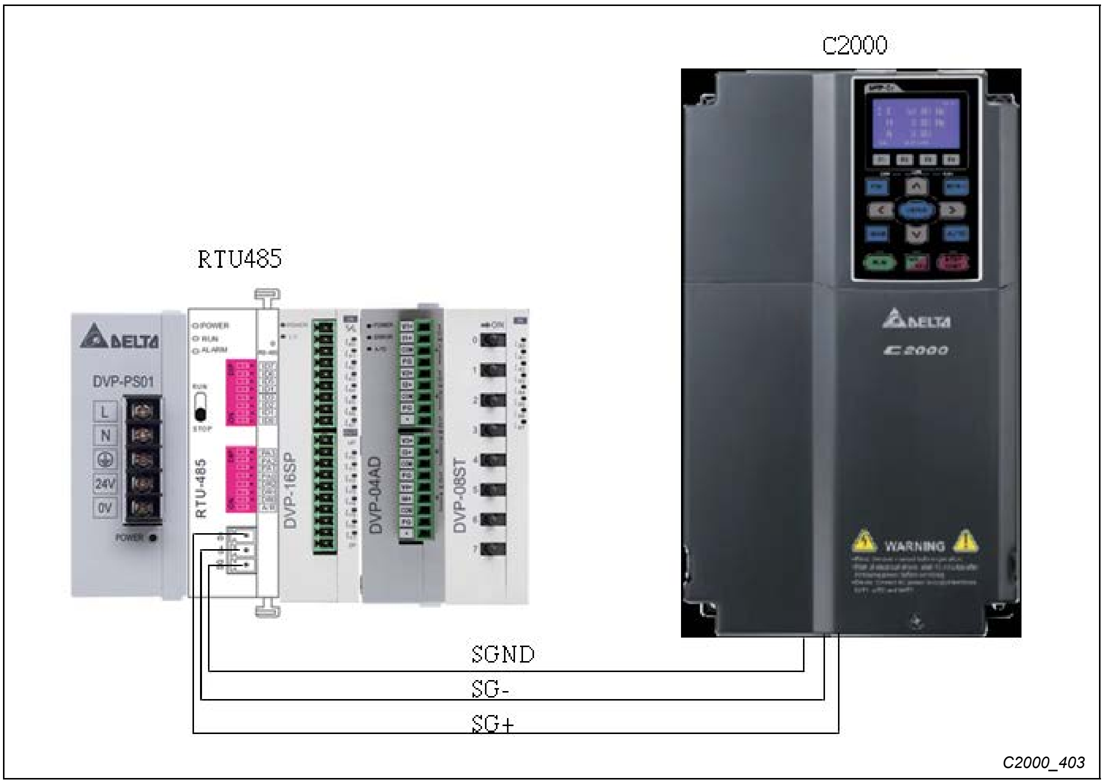


Fig. 16-44: The C2000 communicates with the RTU-485 via the RS485 interface

④ Write to PLC program

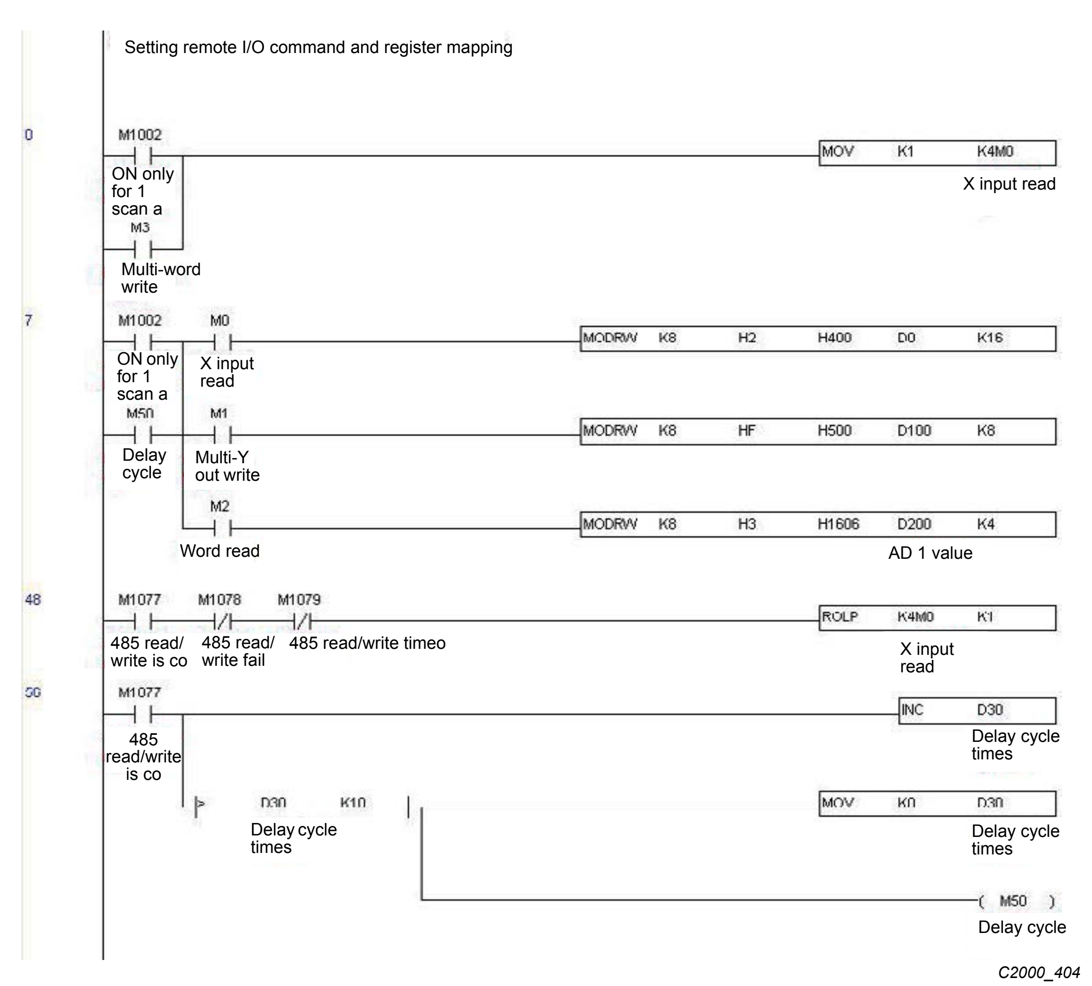


Fig. 16-45: PLC program for communication between C2000 and RTU-485 (1)

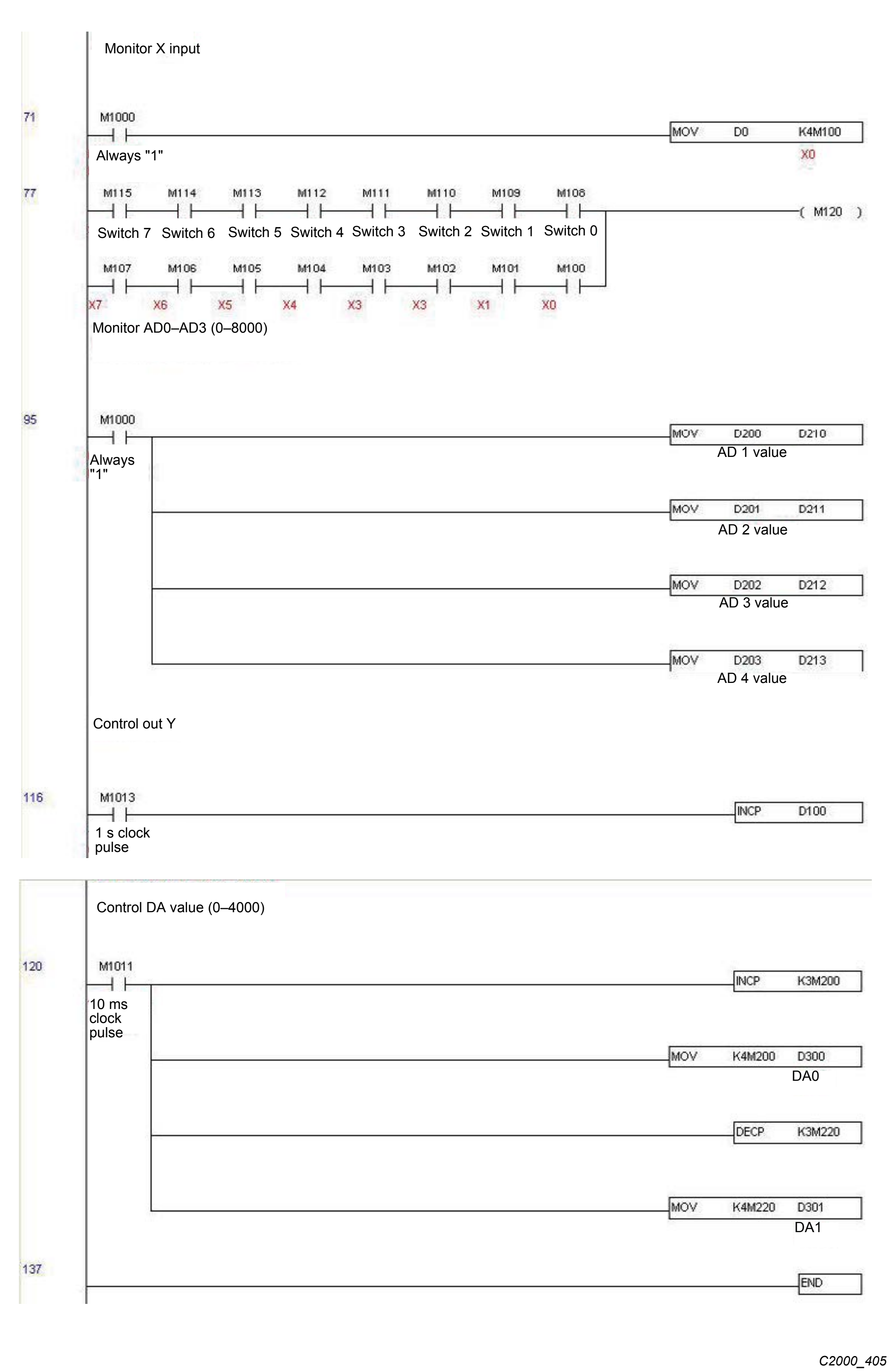
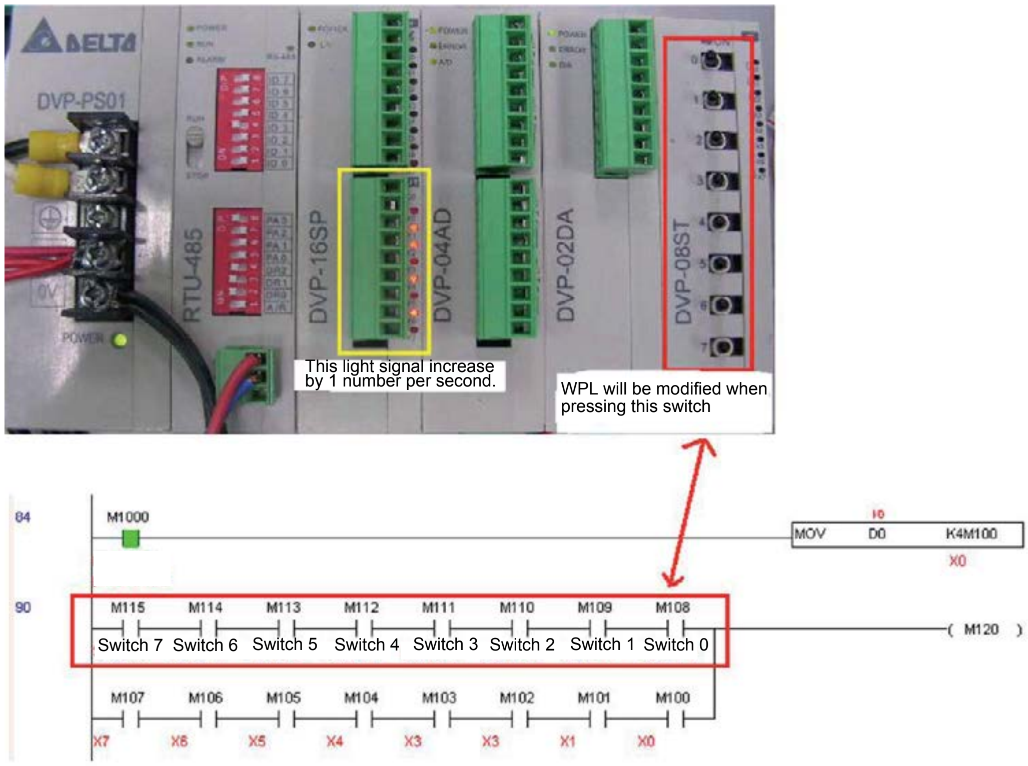


Fig. 16-46: PLC program for communication between C2000 and RTU-485 (2)

⑤ Actual testing situation

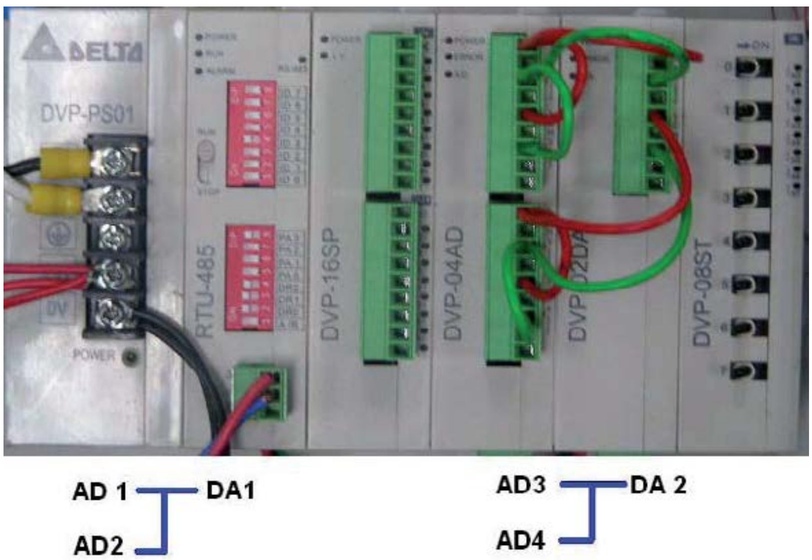
– I/O testing: When the switch is activated, it can be discovered that the display corresponds to M115–M108. Furthermore, it can be seen that one output point light is added every 1 sec. (the display uses a binary format).



C2000_406

Fig. 16-47: Displaying the status of inputs and switches in WPLSoft

– AD DA testing: It can be discovered that D200 and D201 are roughly twice the D300, and continue to increase progressively. For their part, the D202 and D203 are roughly twice the D301, and continue to decrease progressively.



C2000_407

Fig. 16-48: For testing, the analog inputs and outputs are connected.

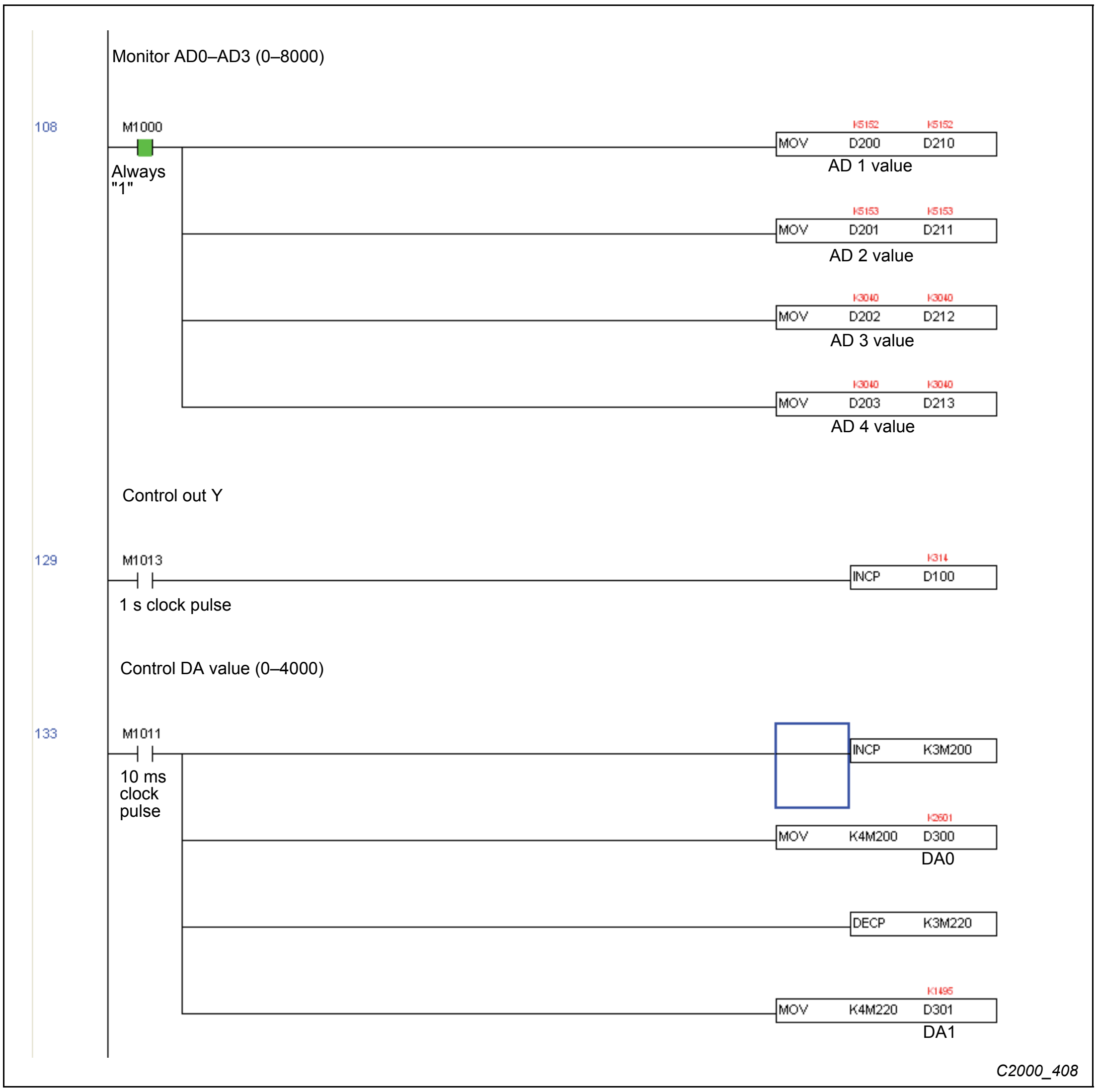


Fig. 16-49: Program part for analog inputs and outputs

16.13 Calendar functions

The C2000's internal PLC includes calendar functions, but these may only be used when a keypad (KPC-CC01) is connected, and otherwise cannot be used. Currently-support commands include TCMP (comparison of calendar data), TZCP (calendar data range comparison), TADD (calendar data addition), TSUB (calendar data subtraction), and TRD (calendar reading). Please refer to the explanation of relevant commands and functions for the usage of these commands.

In real applications, the internal PLC can judge whether calendar function have been activated; if they have been activated, calendar warning codes may be displayed in some situations. The basis for whether a calendar function has been activated is whether the program has written the calendar time (D1063 to D1069) in connection with the foregoing calendar commands or programs.

The calendar's time display is currently assigned to D1063 to D1069, and is defined as follows:

Special D	Item	Content	Attributes
D1063	Year (Western)	20xx (2000–2099)	R
D1064	Weeks	1–7	R
D1065	Month	1–12	R
D1066	Day	1–31	R
D1067	Hour	0–23	R
D1068	Minute	0–59	R
D1069	Second	0–59	R

Tab. 16-45: The special registers D1063 to D1069 contain date and time

Calendar-related special M items are defined as follows:

Special D	Item	Attributes
M1068	Calendar time error	R
M1076	Calendar time error or refresh time out	R
M1036	Ignore calendar warning	RW

Tab. 16-46: Special relays for the calendar function

NOTES

- When a program writes to the commands TCMP, TZCP, TADD, or TSUB, if it is discovered that a value exceeds the reasonable range, M1068 will be 1.
- When the keypad display is PLra (RTC correction warning) or PLrt (RTC time out warning), M1076 will be ON.
- When M1036 is 1, the PLC will ignore the calendar warning.

Calendar trigger warning code is defined as follows:

Warning	Description	Reset approach	Whether it affects PLC operation
PLra	Calendar time correction	Requires power restart	Will not have any effect
PLrt	Calendar time refresh time out		

Tab. 16-47: Warnings for the PLC clock

NOTES

- When the PLC's calendar functions are operating, if the keypad is replaced with another keypad, it will jump to PLra.
- When it is discovered at startup that the keypad has not been powered for more than 7 days, or the time is wrong, PLra will be triggered.
- When it is discovered that the C2000 has no keypad 10 sec. after startup, PLrt will be triggered.
- If the keypad is suddenly pulled out while the calendar is operating normally, and is not reconnected for more than 1 minute, PLrt will be triggered.

Practical applications

We will perform a demo of simple applications. We first correct the keypad time. After pressing Menu on the keypad, select the 9th time setting option. After selection, set the current time.

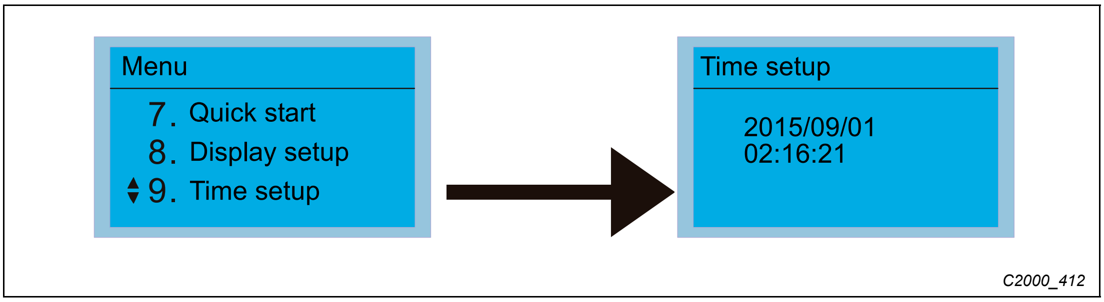
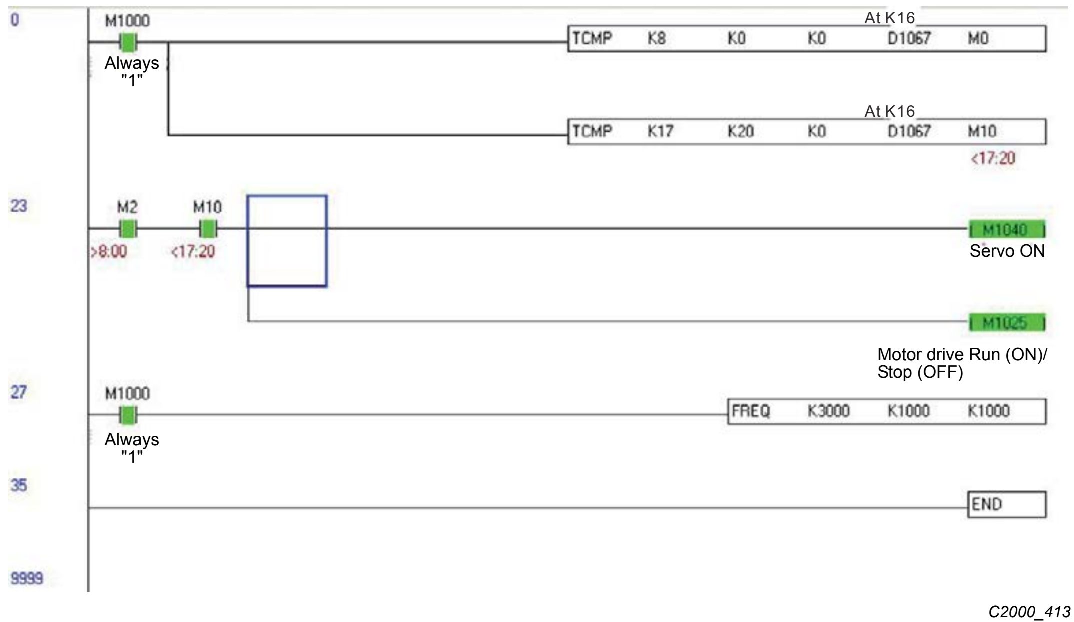


Fig. 16-50: Setting the time and date on the keypad KPC-CC01

We set converter ON during the period of 8:00-17:20, which allows us to write the following example.

EXAMPLE



17 How to select the right AC motor drive

The choice of the right AC motor drive for the application is very important and has great influence on its lifetime. If the capacity of AC motor drive is too large, it cannot offer complete protection to the motor and motor maybe damaged. If the capacity of AC motor drive is too small, it cannot offer the required performance and the AC motor drive maybe damaged due to overloading.

But by simply selecting the AC motor drive of the same capacity as the motor, user application requirements cannot be met completely. Therefore, a designer should consider all the conditions, including load type, load speed, load characteristic, operation method, rated output, rated speed, power and the change of load capacity. The following table lists the factors you need to consider, depending on your requirements.

Item		Related Specification			
		Speed and torque characteristics	Time ratings	Overload capacity	Starting torque
Load type	Friction load and weight load Liquid (viscous) load Inertia load Load with power transmission	●			●
Load speed and torque characteristics	Constant torque Constant output Decreasing torque Decreasing output	●	●		
Load characteristics	Constant load Shock load Repetitive load High starting torque Low starting torque	●	●	●	●
Continuous operation, Short-time operation Long-time operation at medium/low speeds			●	●	
Maximum output current (instantaneous) Constant output current (continuous)		●		●	
Maximum frequency, Base frequency		●			
Power supply transformer capacity or percentage impedance Voltage fluctuations and unbalance Number of phases, single phase protection Frequency				●	●
Mechanical friction, losses in wiring				●	●
Duty cycle modification			●		

Tab. 17-1: Selection criterion for frequency inverters

17.1 Capacity formulas

17.1.1 When one AC motor drive operates one motor

The starting capacity should be less than 1.5x rated capacity of AC motor drive

The starting capacity=

$$\frac{k \times N}{973 \times \eta \times \cos\varphi}\left(T_L + \frac{GD^2}{375} \times \frac{N}{t_A}\right) \le 1.5\ the\_capacity\_of\ AC\_motor\_drive\ [kVA]$$

17.1.2 When one AC motor drive operates more than one motor

The starting capacity should be less than the rated capacity of AC motor drive

- Acceleration time ≤60 seconds

  The starting capacity=

$$\frac{k \times N}{\eta \times \cos\varphi}\left[n_T + n_s(k_{s-1})\right] = P_{C1}\left[1 + \frac{n_s}{n_T}(k_{s-1})\right] \le 1.5 \times the\_capacity\_of\_AC\_motor\_drive\ [kVA]$$

- Acceleration time ≥60 seconds

  The starting capacity=

$$\frac{k \times N}{\eta \times \cos\varphi}\left[n_T + n_s(k_{s-1})\right] = P_{C1}\left[1 + \frac{n_s}{n_T}(k_{s-1})\right] \le the\ capacity\ of\ AC\ motor\ drive\ [kVA]$$

The current should be less than the rated current of AC motor drive(A)

- Acceleration time ≤60 seconds

$$n_T + I_M\left[1 + \frac{n_s}{n_T}(k_s\text{-}1)\right] \le 1{,}5 \times the\_rated\_current\_of\_AC\_motor\_drive\ [A]$$

- Acceleration time ≥60 seconds

$$n_T + I_M\left[1 + \frac{n_s}{n_T}(k_s\text{-}1)\right] \le the\_rated\_current\_of\_AC\_motor\_drive\ [A]$$

When it is running continuously

- The requirement of load capacity should be less than the capacity of AC motor drive [kVA]
  The requirement of load capacity=

$$\frac{k \times P_M}{\eta \times \cos\varphi} \le the\_capacity\_of\_AC\_motor\_drive(kVA)$$

- The motor capacity should be less than the capacity of AC motor drive

  $k \times \sqrt{3} \times V_M \times I_M \times 10^{-3} \le$=the_capacity_of_AC_motor_drive [kVA]

- The current should be less than the rated current of AC motor drive [A]

  $k \times I_M \le$ the_rated_current_of_AC_motor_drive [A]

Symbol explanation

P_M	: Motor shaft output for load [kW]
η	: Motor efficiency (normally, approx. 0.85)
$\cos\varphi$	: Motor power factor (normally, approx. 0.75)
V_M	: Motor rated voltage [V]
I_M	: Motor rated current [A], for commercial power
k	: Correction factor calculated from current distortion factor (1.05-1.1, depending on PWM method)
P_{C1}	: Continuous motor capacity [kVA]
k_S	: Starting current/rated current of motor
n_T	: Number of motors in parallel
n_S	: Number of simultaneously started motors
GD^2	: Total inertia [GD^2] calculated back to motor shaft [kg m^2]
T_L	: Load torque
t_A	: Motor acceleration time
N	: Motor speed

17.2 General precaution

Selection Note

① When the AC Motor Drive is connected directly to a large-capacity power transformer (600 kVA or above) or when a phase lead capacitor is switched, excess peak currents may occur in the power input circuit and the converter section may be damaged. To avoid this, use an AC input reactor (optional) before AC Motor Drive mains input to reduce the current and improve the input power efficiency.

② When a special motor is used or more than one motor is driven in parallel with a single AC Motor Drive, select the AC Motor Drive current ≥1.25x(Sum of the motor rated currents).

③ The starting and accel./decel. characteristics of a motor are limited by the rated current and the overload protection of the AC Motor Drive. Compared to running the motor D.O.L. (Direct On-Line), a lower starting torque output with AC Motor Drive can be expected. If higher starting torque is required (such as for elevators, mixers, tooling machines, etc.) use an AC Motor Drive of higher capacity or increase the capacities for both the motor and the AC Motor Drive.

④ When an error occurs on the drive, a protective circuit will be activated and the AC Motor Drive output is turned off. Then the motor will coast to stop. For an emergency stop, an external mechanical brake is needed to quickly stop the motor.

Parameter Settings Note

WARNING:
The AC Motor Drive can be driven at an output frequency up to 400 Hz (less for some models) with the digital keypad. Setting errors may create a dangerous situation. For safety, the use of the upper limit frequency function is strongly recommended.

CAUTION:
High DC brake operating voltages and long operation time (at low frequencies) may cause overheating of the motor. In that case, forced external motor cooling is recommended.

- Motor accel./decel. time is determined by motor rated torque, load torque, and load inertia.
- If the stall prevention function is activated, the accel./decel. time is automatically extended to a length that the AC Motor Drive can handle. If the motor needs to decelerate within a certain time with high load inertia that can't be handled by the AC Motor Drive in the required time, either use an external brake resistor and/or brake unit, depending on the model, (to shorten deceleration time only) or increase the capacity for both the motor and the AC Motor Drive.

17.3 How to choose a suitable motor

Standard motor

When using the AC Motor Drive to operate a standard 3-phase induction motor, take the following precautions:

① The energy loss is greater than for an inverter duty motor.

② Avoid running motor at low speed for a long time. Under this condition, the motor temperature may rise above the motor rating due to limited airflow produced by the motor's fan. Consider external forced motor cooling.

③ When the standard motor operates at low speed for long time, the output load must be decreased.

④ The load tolerance of a standard motor is as follows:

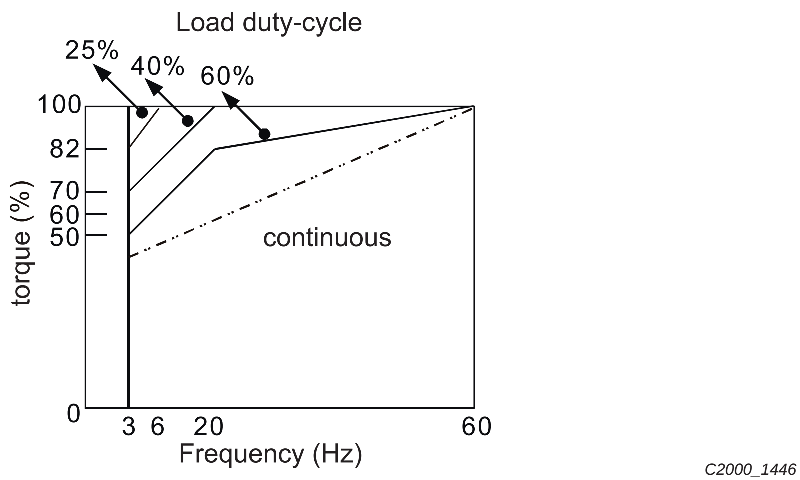


Fig. 17-1: Motor characteristics

⑤ If 100 % continuous torque is required at low speed, it may be necessary to use a special inverter duty motor.

⑥ Motor dynamic balance and rotor endurance should be considered once the operating speed exceeds the rated speed (60 Hz) of a standard motor.

⑦ Motor torque characteristics vary when an AC Motor Drive instead of commercial power supply drives the motor. Check the load torque characteristics of the machine to be connected.

⑧ Because of the high carrier frequency PWM control of the VFD series, pay attention to the following motor vibration problems:

- Resonant mechanical vibration: anti-vibration (damping) rubbers should be used to mount equipment that runs at varying speed.
- Motor imbalance: special care is required for operation at
- 50 or 60 Hz and higher frequency.
- To avoid resonances, use the Skip frequencies.

⑨ The motor fan will be very noisy when the motor speed exceeds 50 or 60 Hz.

Special motors:

① Pole-changing (Dahlander) motor:
The rated current is differs from that of a standard motor. Please check before operation and select the capacity of the AC motor drive carefully. When changing the pole number the motor needs to be stopped first. If over current occurs during operation or regenerative voltage is too high, please let the motor free run to stop (coast).

② Submersible motor:
The rated current is higher than that of a standard motor. Please check before operation and choose the capacity of the AC motor drive carefully. With long motor cable between AC motor drive and motor, available motor torque is reduced.

③ Explosion-proof (Ex) motor:
Needs to be installed in a safe place and the wiring should comply with the (Ex) requirements. Delta AC Motor Drives are not suitable for (Ex) areas with special precautions.

④ Gear reduction motor:
The lubricating method of reduction gearbox and speed range for continuous operation will be different and depending on brand. The lubricating function for operating long time at low speed and for high-speed operation needs to be considered carefully.

⑤ Synchronous motor:
The rated current and starting current are higher than for standard motors. Please check before operation and choose the capacity of the AC motor drive carefully. When the AC motor drive operates more than one motor, please pay attention to starting and changing the motor.

Power transmission mechanism

Pay attention to reduced lubrication when operating gear reduction motors, gearboxes, belts and chains, etc. over longer periods at low speeds. At high speeds of 50/60 Hz and above, lifetime reducing noises and vibrations may occur.

Motor torque

The torque characteristics of a motor operated by an AC motor drive and commercial mains power are different.

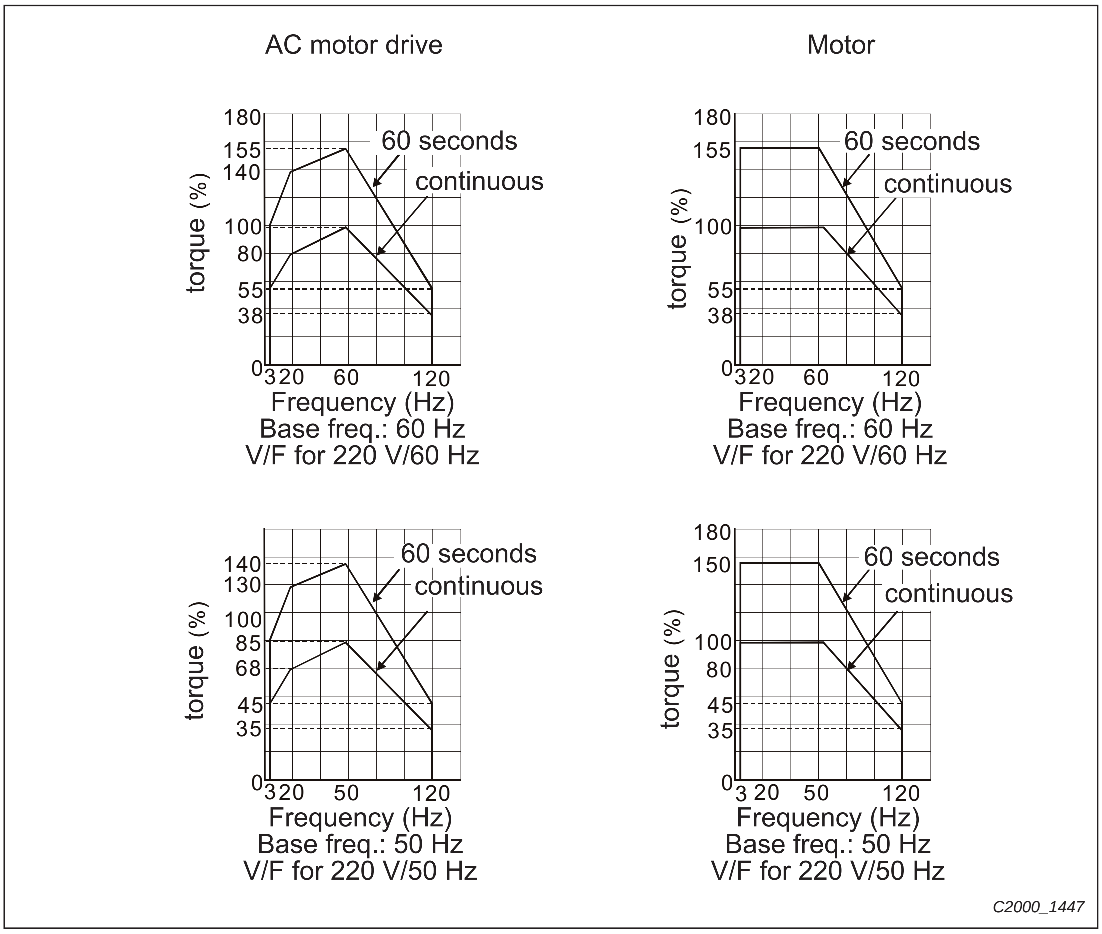


Fig. 17-2: Torque-speed characteristics of a standard motor (4-pole, 15 kW)

18 Suggestions and Error Corrections for Standard AC Motor Drives

The AC motor drive has a comprehensive fault diagnostic system that includes several different alarms and fault messages. Once a fault is detected, the corresponding protective functions will be activated. The following faults are displayed as shown on the AC motor drive digital keypad display. The six most recent faults can be read from the digital keypad or communication.

The AC motor drive is made up by numerous components, such as electronic components, including IC, resistor, capacity, transistor, and cooling fan, relay, etc. These components can't be used permanently. They have limited-life even under normal operation. Preventive maintenance is required to operate this AC motor drive in its optimal condition, and to ensure a long life.

Check your AC motor drive regularly to ensure there are no abnormalities during operation and follows the precautions

CAUTION:

- Wait 5 seconds after a fault has been cleared before performing reset via keypad of input terminal.
- When the power is off after 5 minutes for ≤22 kW models and 10 minutes for ≥30 kW models, please confirm that the capacitors have fully discharged by measuring the voltage between + and -. The voltage between + and - should be less than 25 V DC.
- Only qualified personnel can install, wire and maintain drives. Please take off any metal objects, such as watches and rings, before operation. And only insulated tools are allowed.
- Never reassemble internal components or wiring.
- Make sure that installation environment comply with regulations without abnormal noise, vibration and smell.

18.1 Maintenance and Inspections

Before the check-up, always turn off the AC input power and remove the cover. Wait at least 10 minutes after all display lamps have gone out, and then confirm that the capacitors have fully discharged by measuring the voltage between DC+ and DC-. The voltage between DC+ and DC-should be less than 25 VDC.

Ambient environment

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
Check the ambient temperature, humidity, vibration and see if there are any dust, gas, oil or water drops	Visual inspection and measurement with equipment with standard specification	○		
If there are any dangerous objects	Visual inspection	○		

Tab. 18-1: Ambient environment

Voltage

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
Check if the voltage of main circuit and control circuit is correct	Measure with multimeter with standard specification	○		

Tab. 18-2: Voltage

Digital keypad display

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
Is the display clear for reading	Visual inspection	○		
Any missing characters	Visual inspection	○		

Tab. 18-3: Digital keypad display

Mechanical parts

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any abnormal sound or vibration	Visual and aural inspection		○	
If there are any loose screws	Tighten the screws		○	
If any part is deformed or damaged	Visual inspection		○	
If there is any color change by overheating	Visual inspection		○	
If there is any dust or dirt	Visual inspection		○	

Tab. 18-4: Mechanical parts

Main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there are any loose or missing screws	Tighten or replace the screw	○		
If machine or insulator is deformed, cracked, damaged or with color change due to overheating or ageing	Visual inspection **NOTE: Please ignore the color change of copper plate**		○	
If there is any dust or dirt	Visual inspection		○	

Tab. 18-5: Main circuit

Terminals and wiring of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If the terminal or the plate is color change or deformation due to overheat	Visual inspection		○	
If the insulator of wiring is damaged or color change	Visual inspection		○	
If there is any damage	Visual inspection	○		

Tab. 18-6: Terminals and wiring of main circuit

DC capacity of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any leak of liquid, color change, crack or deformation	Visual inspection	○		
If the safety valve is not removed? If valve is inflated?	Visual inspection	○		
Measure static capacity when required		○		

Tab. 18-7: DC capacity of main circuit

Resistor of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any peculiar smell or insulator cracks due to overheat	Visual inspection, smell	○		
If there is any disconnection	Visual inspection	○		
If connection is damaged?	Measure with multimeter with standard specification	○		

Tab. 18-8: Resistor of main circuit

Transformer and reactor of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any abnormal vibration or peculiar smell	Visual, aural inspection and smell	○		

Tab. 18-9: Transformer and reactor of main circuit

Magnetic contactor and relay of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there are any loose screws	Visual and aural inspection	○		
If the contact works correctly	Visual inspection	○		

Tab. 18-10: Magnetic contactor and relay of main circuit

Printed circuit board and connector of main circuit

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there are any loose screws and connectors	Tighten the screws and press the connectors firmly in place.		○	
If there is any peculiar smell and color change	Visual and smell inspection		○	
If there is any crack, damage, deformation or corrosion	Visual inspection		○	
If there is any liquid is leaked or deformation in capacity	Visual inspection		○	

Tab. 18-11: Printed circuit board and connector of main circuit

Cooling fan of cooling system

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any abnormal sound or vibration	Visual, aural inspection and turn the fan with hand (turn off the power before operation) to see if it rotates smoothly		○	
If there is any loose screw	Tighten the screw		○	
If there is any color change due to overheat	Change fan		○	

Tab. 18-12: Cooling fan of cooling system

Ventilation channel of cooling system

Check Items	Methods and Criterion	Maintenance Period		
		Daily	Half Year	One Year
If there is any obstruction in the heat sink, air intake or air outlet	Visual inspection		○	

Tab. 18-13: Ventilation channel of cooling system

NOTE Please use the neutral cloth for clean and use dust cleaner to remove dust when necessary.

18.2 Greasy dirt problem

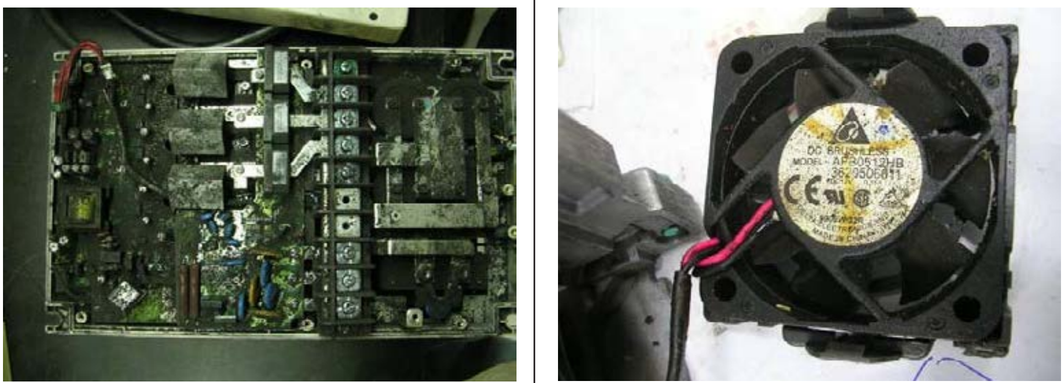
Serious greasy dirt problems generally occur in processing industries such as machine tools, punching machines and so on. Please be aware of the possible damages that greasy oil may cause to your drive:

① Electronic components that silt up with greasy oil may cause the drive to burn out or even explode.

② Most greasy dirt contains corrosive substances that may damage the drive.

Solution:

Install the AC motor drive in a standard cabinet to keep it away from dirt. Clean and remove greasy dirt regularly to prevent damage of the drive.



C2000_1515 C2000_1516

Fig. 18-1: Greasy dirt inside the frequency inverter and at the cooling fans

18.3 Fiber dust problem

Serious fiber dust problems generally occur in the textile industry. Please be aware of the possible damages that fiber may cause to your drives:

① Fiber that accumulates or adheres to the fans will lead to poor ventilation and cause overheating problems.

② Plant environments in the textile industry have higher degrees of humidity that may cause the drive to burn out, become damaged or explode due to wet fiber dust adhering to the devices.

Solution:

Install the AC motor drive in a standard cabinet to keep it away from fiber dust. Clean and remove fiber dust regularly to prevent damage to the drive.

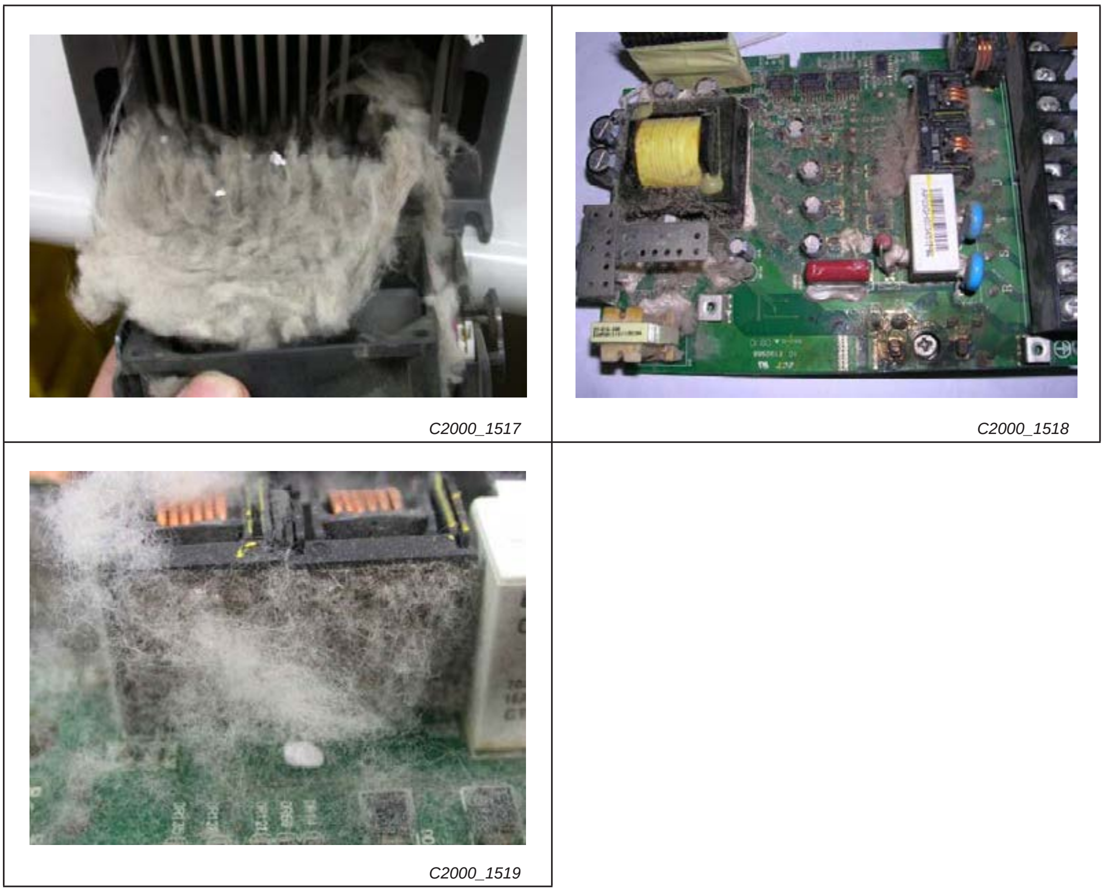


Fig. 18-2: Collection of fiber dust inside the frequency inverter

18.4 Erosion problem

Erosion problems may occur if any fluids flow into the drives. Please be aware of the damages that erosion may cause to your drive.

① Erosion of internal components may cause the drive to malfunction and possibility to explode.

Solution:

Install the AC motor drive in a standard cabinet to keep it away from fluids. Clean the drive regularly to prevent erosion.

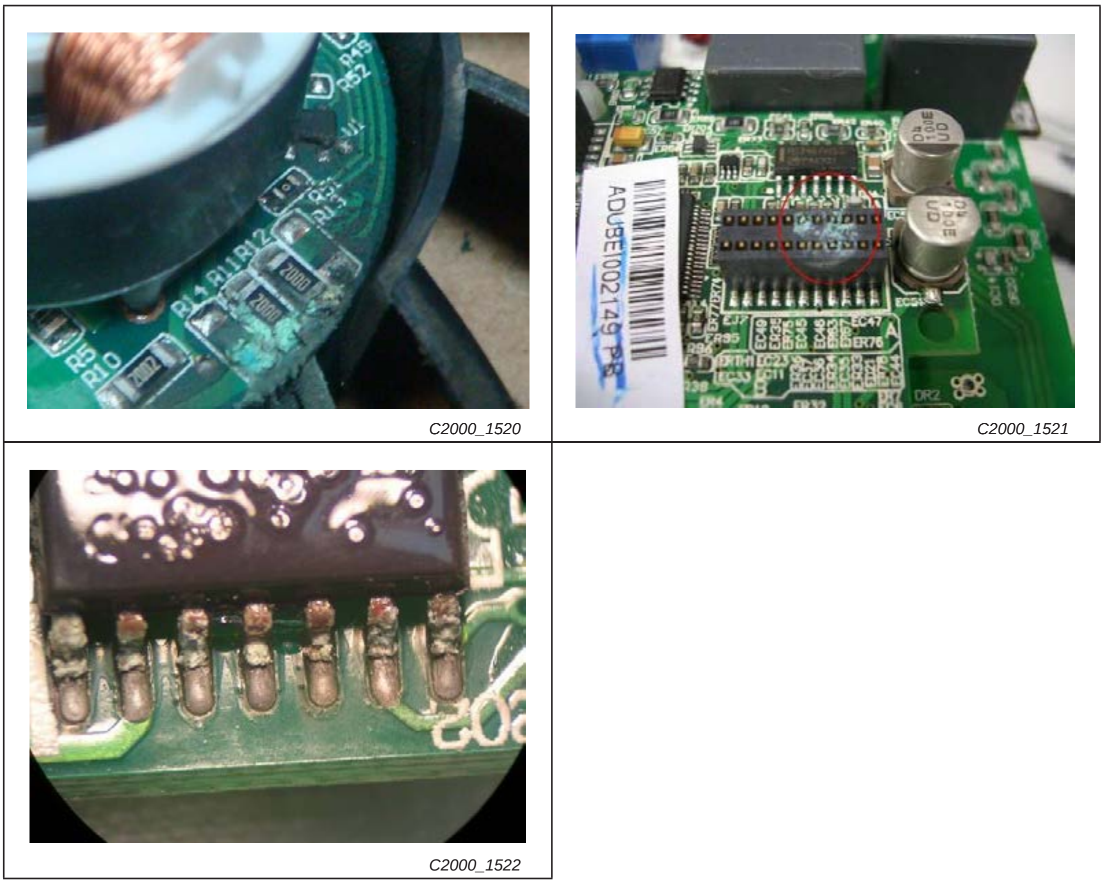


Fig. 18-3: Damage from corrosion

18.5 Industrial dust problem

Serious industrial dust pollution frequently occurs in stone processing plants, flour mills, cement plants, and so on. Please be aware of the possible damage that industrial dust may cause to your drives:

① Dust accumulating on electronic components may cause overheating problem and shorten the service life of the drive.

② Conductive dust may damage the circuit board and may even cause the drive to explode.

Solution:

Install the AC motor drive in a standard cabinet and cover the drive with a dust cover. Clean the cabinet and ventilation hole regularly for good ventilation.

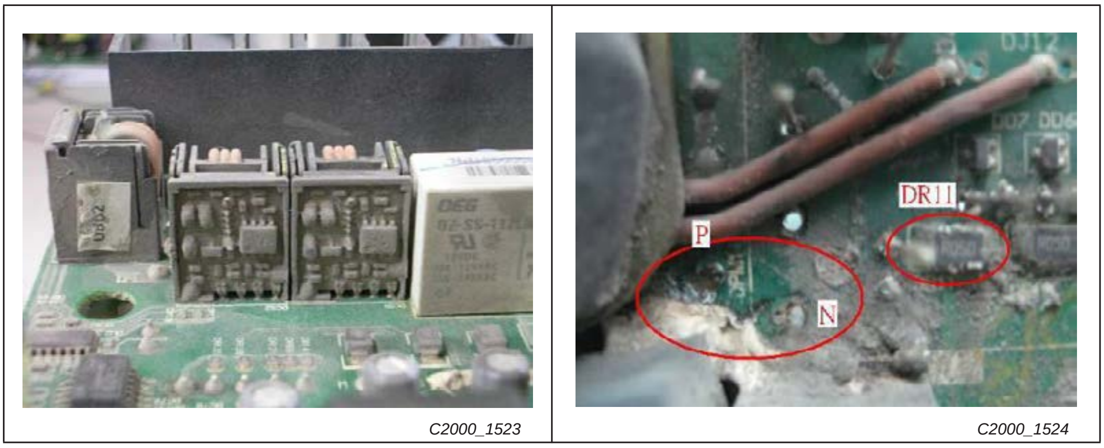


Fig. 18-4: Residue of industrial dust inside the frequency inverter

18.6 Wiring and installation problem

When wiring the drive, the most common problem is wrong wire installation or poor wiring. Please be aware of the possible damages that poor wiring may cause to your drives:

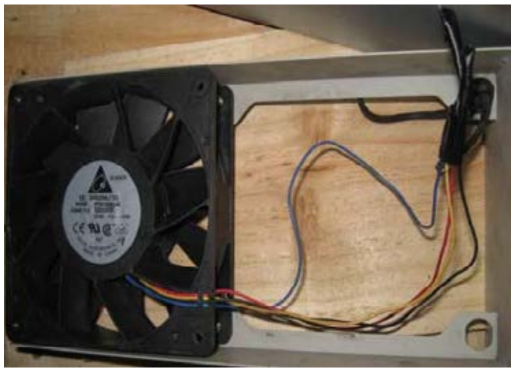
① Screws are not fully fastened. Occurrence of sparks as impedance increases.

② If a customer has opened the drive and modified the internal circuit board, the internal components may have been damaged.

Solution:

Ensure all screws are fastened when installing the AC motor drive. If the AC motor drive functions abnormally, send it back to the repair station. DO NOT try to reassemble the internal components or wire.

C2000_1525



C2000_1526

C2000_1527

Fig. 18-5: Poor wiring is an often error cause

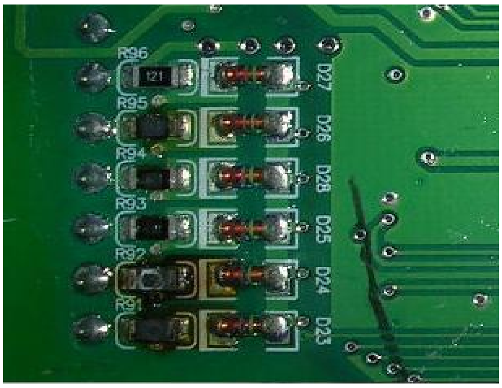
18.7 Multi-function input/output terminals problem

Multi-function input/output terminal errors are generally caused by over usage of terminals and not following specifications. Please be aware of the possible damages that errors on multi-function input/output terminals may cause to your drives:

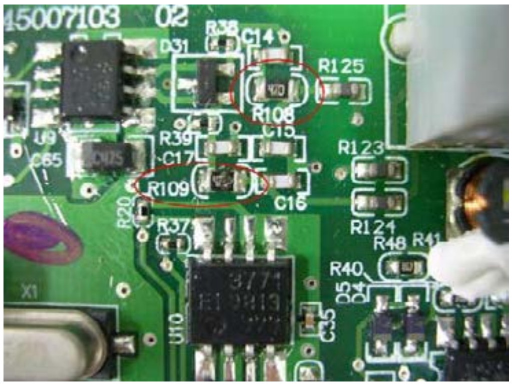
① Input/output circuit may burns out when the terminal usage exceeds its limit.

Solution:

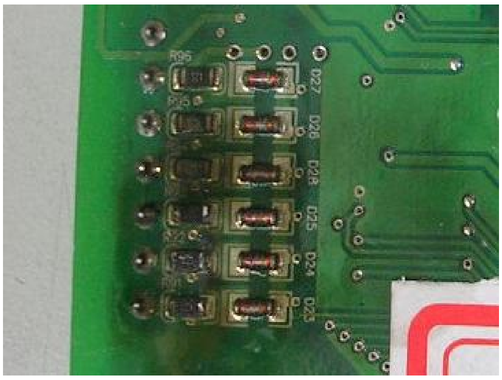
Refer to the user manual for multi-function input output terminals usage and follow the specified voltage and current. DO NOT exceed the specification limits.



C2000_1528



C2000_1529



C2000_1530

Fig. 18-6: Damage due to overload of the input/output terminals

19 EMC Standard Installation Guide

19.1 Introduction

19.1.1 What is EMC?

Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) is the ability of an electrical device to function properly in electromagnetic environments. It does not emit electromagnetic noise to surrounding equipment and is immune to interference from surrounding equipment. The goal is to achieve high immunity and low emission; these two properties define the quality of EMC. In general, electrical devices react to high and low frequency phenomena. High frequency phenomena are electrostatic discharge (ESD); pulse interference; radiated electromagnetic field; and conducted high frequency electrical surge. Low frequency phenomena refer to mains power harmonics and imbalance.
The standard emission and immunity levels for compliance depend on the installation location of the drive. A Power Drive System (PDS) is installed in an industrial or domestic environment. A PDS in a domestic environment must have lower emission levels and is allowed to have lower immunity levels. A PDS in an industrial environment is allowed to have higher emission levels but must have more severe immunity levels.

19.1.2 EMC for AC motor drive

When an AC motor drive is put into operation, harmonic signal will occur at the AC drive's power input and output side. It creates a certain level of electromagnetic interference to the surrounding electrical devices and the mains power network. An AC motor dive is usually applied in industrial environments with a strong electromagnetic interference. Under such conditions, an AC drive could disturb or be disturbed.

Delta's AC motor drives are designed for EMC and comply with EMC standard EN 61800-3 2004. Installing the AC motor drive accurately will decrease EMI influences and ensure long term stability of the electricity system. It is strongly suggested to follow Delta's user manual for wiring and grounding. If any difficulties or problems arise, please follow the instructions and measures as indicated in this EMC Standard Installation Guide.

19.2 How to prevent EMI

19.2.1 Types of EMI: Common-mode and differential-mode noise

The electromagnetic noise of an AC motor drive can be distinguished into common-mode and differential-mode noise. Differential-mode noise is caused by the stray capacitance between the conducting wires and common-mode noise is caused by the common-mode coupling current path created by the stray capacitance between the conducting wires and ground.

Basically, differential-mode noise has a greater impact to the AC motor drive and common-mode noise has a greater impact to high-sensitivity electronic devices. An excessive amount of differential-mode noise may trigger the circuit protection system of the AC motor drive. Common-mode noise affects peripheral electronic devices via the common ground connection.

EMC problems can be more serious when the following conditions apply:

- When a large horsepower AC motor drive is connected to a large horsepower motor.
- The AC motor drive's operation voltage increases.
- Fast switching of the IGBTs.
- When a long cable is used to connect the motor to the AC motor drive.

19.2.2 How does EMI transmit? (Noise transmission path)

Noise disturbs peripheral high-sensitivity electrical devices/systems via conduction and radiation, their transmission paths are shown hereafter:

① Noise current in the unshielded power cable is conducted to ground via stray capacitances into a common-mode voltage. Whether or not other modules are capable to resist this common-mode noise depends on their Common-Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR), as shown in the following figure.

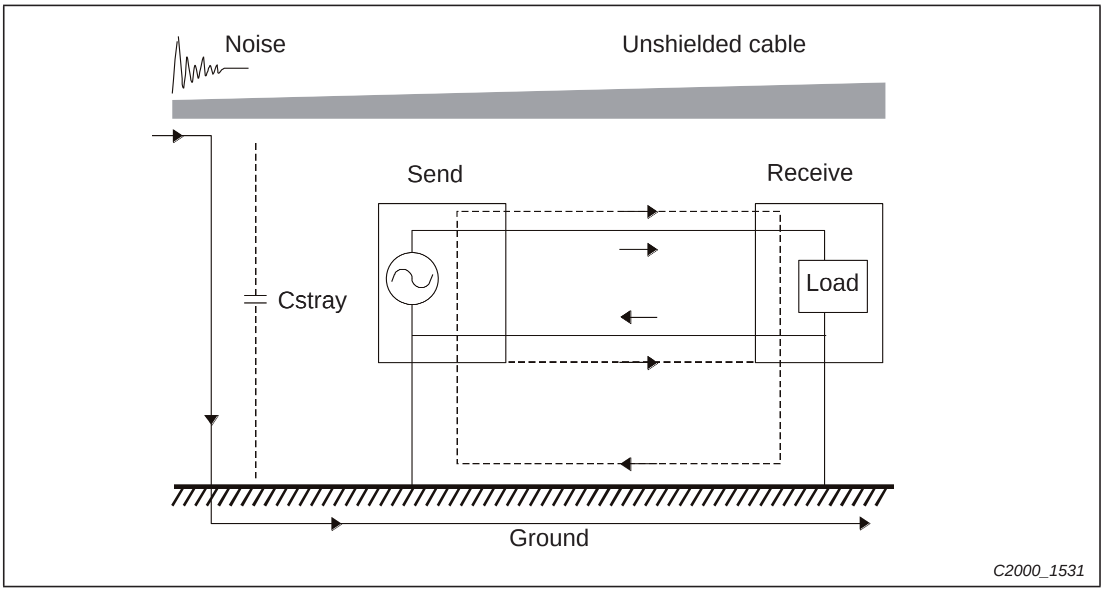


Fig. 19-1: Noise transmission to the ground via stray capacitances

② Common-mode noise in the power cable is transmitted through the stray capacitance and coupled into the adjacent signal cable, as shown in Figure 2. Several methods can be applied to reduce the effect of this common-mode noise; for example, shield the power cable and/or the signal cables, separate the power and signal cables, take the input and output side of the signal cable and twist them together to balance out the stray capacitance, let power cables and signal cables cross at 90°, etc.

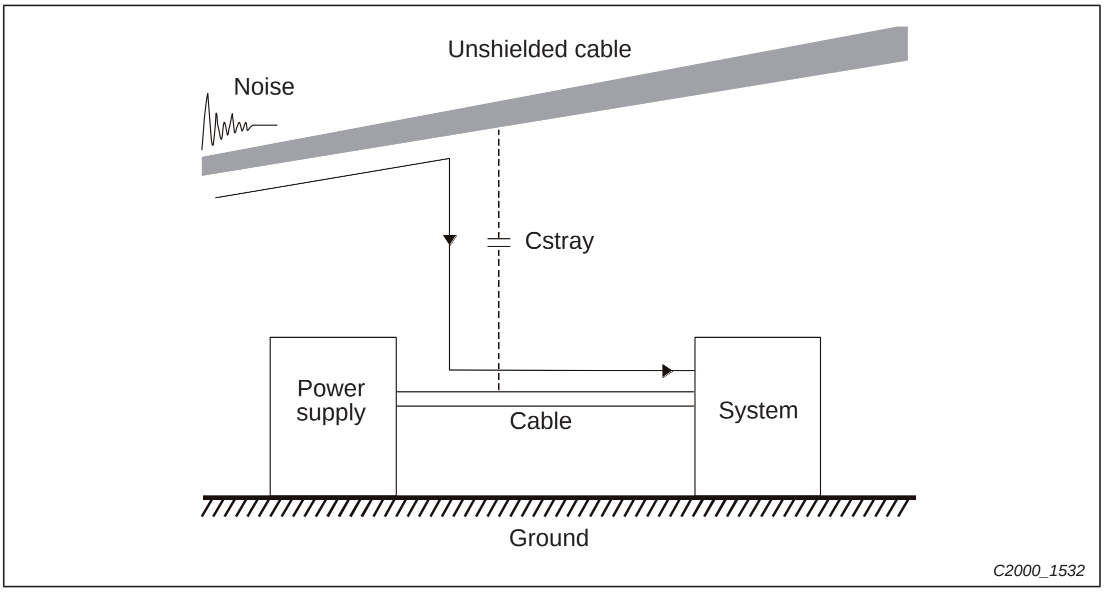


Fig. 19-2: Noise transmission to other wires via stray capacitances

③ Common-mode noise is coupled via the power cable to other power systems then the cable of such a power system is coupled to the transmission system, as shown in figure below.

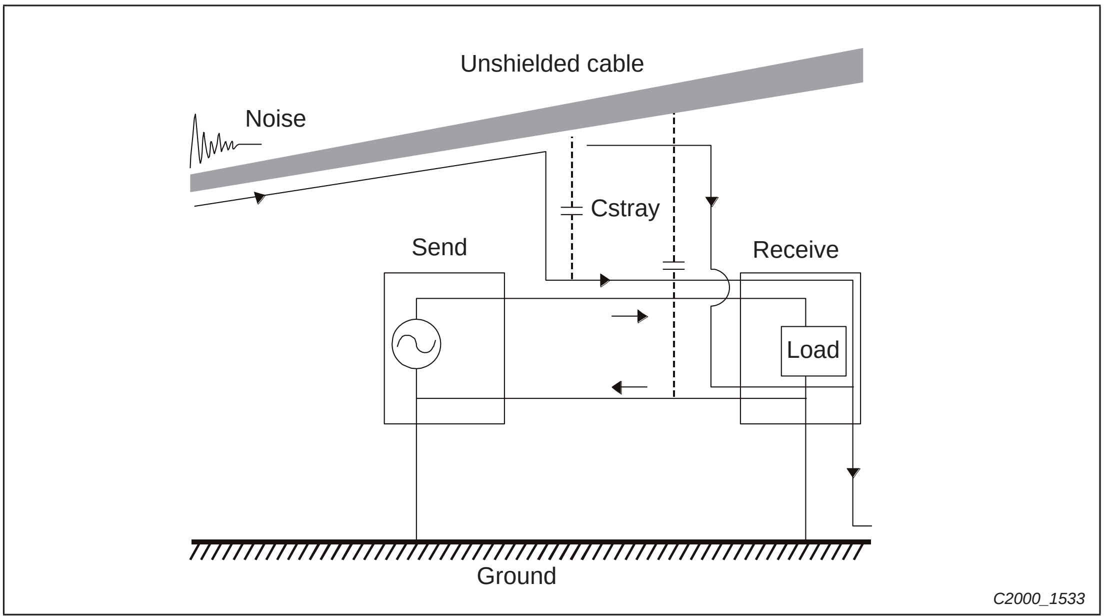


Fig. 19-3: Noise transmission to other systems via stray capacitances

④ The common-mode noise of an unshielded power cable is transmitted to the ground via the stray capacitance. Since both shielded wire and unshielded wire are connected to a common ground, other systems can be interfered with by the common-mode noise that is transmitted from the ground back to the system via the shield. See the figure below.

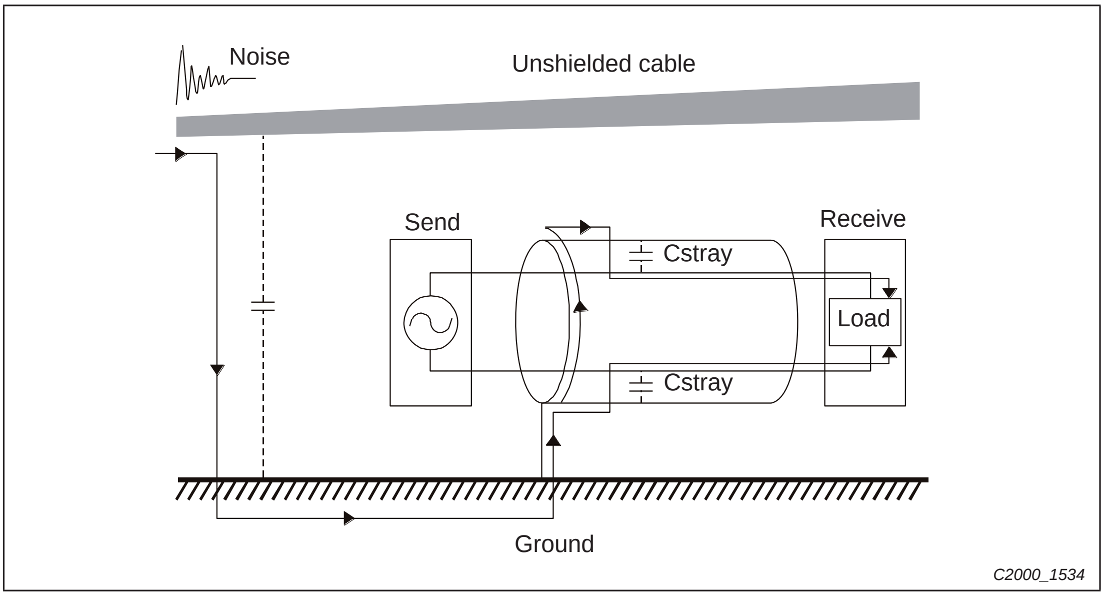


Fig. 19-4: Noise transmission to wire shields via stray capacitances

⑤ When excessive pulse modulated currents pass through an un-grounded AC drive cable, it acts as an antenna and creates radiated interference.

19.3 Solution to EMI: grounding

The leakage current of an electronic equipment is conducted to ground via the grounding wire and the ground electrode. According to Ohm's law, potential differences may arise when the electrode's earth resistance and the ground's earth resistance are different.

19.3.1 Protective grounding & functional grounding

Please carefully read the following instruction if two types of grounding are applied at the same time.

Protective grounding is applied outside buildings and must have low resistance. On the other hand, functional grounding can be applied inside buildings and must have low impedance.

The goal of EMC is to avoid any interference effects. Grounding for EMC can be distinguished by frequency. For frequencies lower than 10 kHz, a single-point ground system should be used and for frequencies higher than 10 kHz, a multiple point ground system should be used.

- Single Point Grounding: all signal grounds of all IT equipment are connected in series to form a single reference point. This point can be grounded directly to earth; to the designated grounding point or to the safety point that is already grounded.
- Multiple Point Grounding: all signals of all IT equipment are grounded independently.
- Hybrid Grounding: this type of grounding behaves differently for low and high frequencies. When two pieces of IT equipment (A and B) are connected via a shielded cable, one end is connected directly to ground while the other end is connected to ground via a capacitor. This type of grounding system fulfils the criteria for high and low frequency grounding.
- Floating grounding: the signals of all IT equipment are isolated from each other and are not grounded.

DC current flows evenly throughout the conductor section. But AC current flows towards the conductor's surface as frequency increases; this is called the "skin effect". It causes the effective cross-section area to be reduced with increasing frequency. Therefore it is suggested to increase the effective ground cross-section area for high frequencies by replacing pigtail grounding by braided conductors or strip conductors. Refer to the following figure.

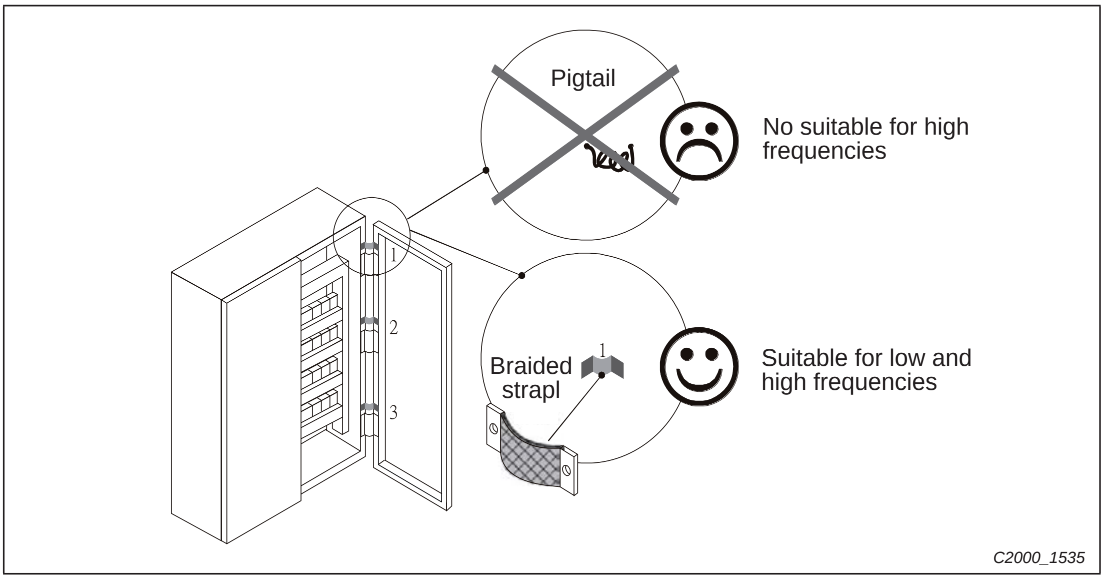


Fig. 19-5: Door connection of a control cabinet with a ground strap.

This is why a thick short ground wire must be implemented for connecting to the common grounding path or the ground busbar. Especially when a controller (e.g. PLC) is connected to an AC motor drive, it must be grounded by a short and thick conducting wire. It is suggested to use a flat braided conductor (ex: metal mesh) with a lower impedance at high frequencies.

If the grounding wire is too long, its inductance may interfere structure of the building or the control cabinet and form mutual inductance and stray capacitance. As shown in the following figure, a long grounding wire could become a vertical antenna and turn into a source of noise.

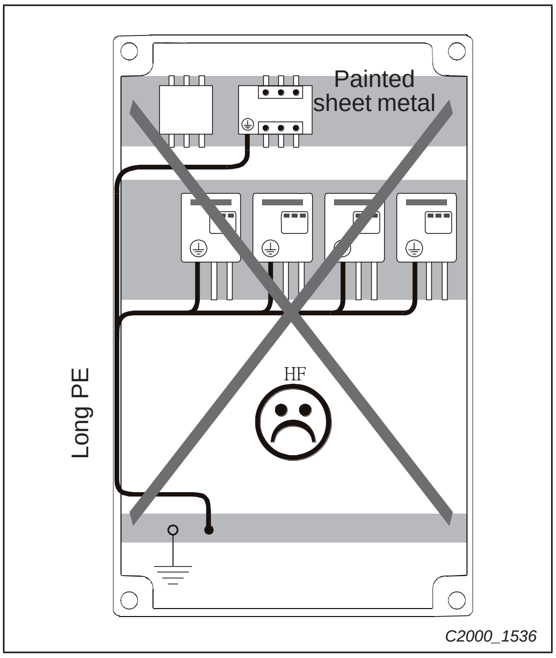


Fig.19-6: A long ground wire is bad at high frequencies

19.3.2 Ground loops

A ground loop occurs when the pieces of equipment are connected to more than one grounding path. In this case, the ground current may return to the grounding electrode via more than one path. There are three methods to prevent ground loops:

① Use a common power circuit.

② Single point grounding

③ Isolate signals, e.g. by photocouplers.

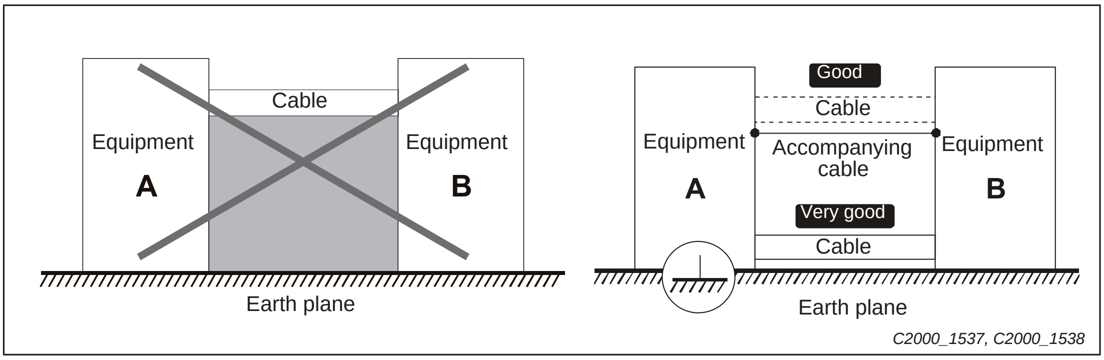


Fig. 19-7: EMC conform connection of two devices

In order to avoid "Common Mode Noise", please use parallel wires or twisted pair wiring. Follow this rule and also avoid long wires, it is suggested to place the two wires as close to each other as possible.

19.3.3 Earthing systems

The international standard IEC60364 distinguishes three different earthing system categories, using the two-letter codes TN, TT, IT.

- The ***first letter*** indicates the type of earthing for the power supply equipment (generator or transformer).

  T: One or more points of the power supply equipment are connected directly to the same earthing point.

  I: Either no point is connected to earth (isolated) or it is connected to earth via a high impedance.

- The ***second letter*** indicates the connection between earth and the power supply equipment.

  T: Connected directly to earth (This earthing point is separate from other earthing points in the power supply system.)

  N: Connected to earth via the conductor that is provided by the power supply system

- The ***third and forth letter*** indicate the location of the earth conductor.

  S: Neutral and earth conductors are separate

  C: Neutral and earth are combined into a single conductor

TN system

TN: The neutral point of the low voltage transformer or generator is earthed, usually the star point in a three-phase system. The body of the electrical device is connected to earth via this earth connection at the transformer.

Protective earth (PE): The conductor that connects the exposed metallic parts of the consumer.

Neutral (N): The conductor that connects to the start point in a 3-phase system or that carries the return current in a single phase system.

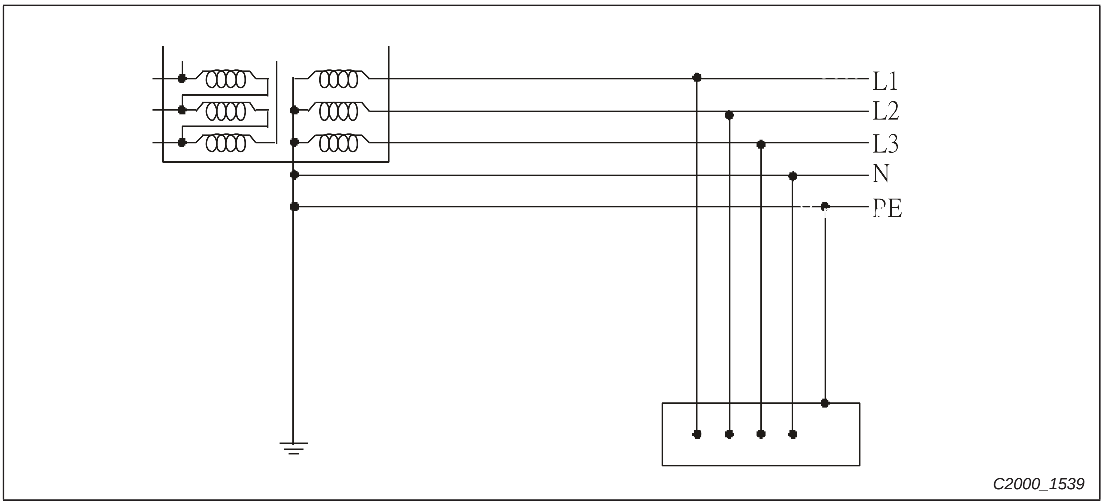


Fig. 19-8: TN system

TN-S system

TN-S: PE and N are two separate conductors that are combined together only near the power source (transformer or generator). It is the same as a three-phase 5-wire system.

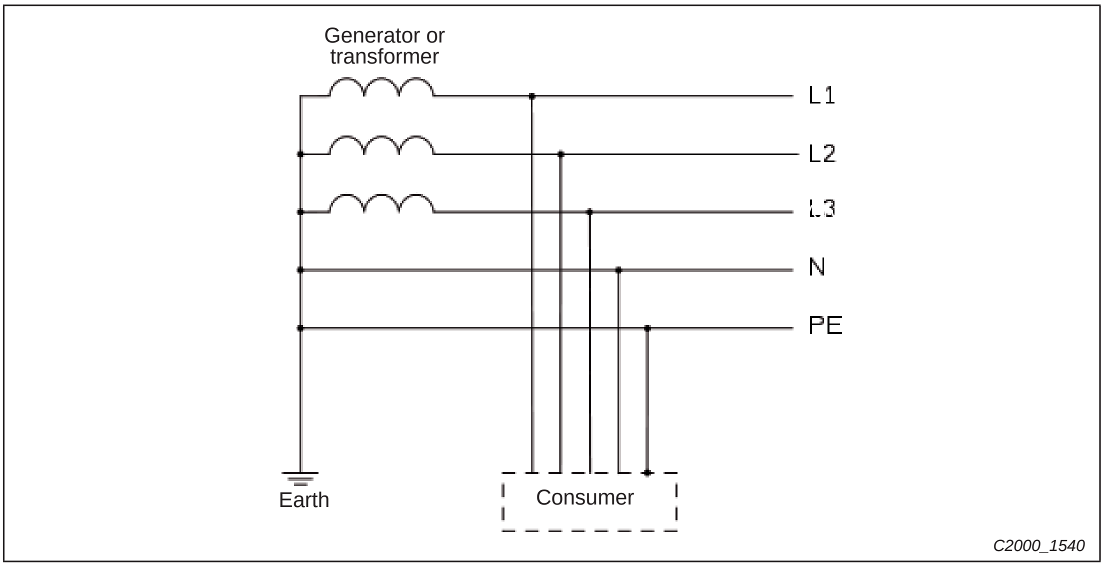


Fig. 19-9: TN-S system

TN-C system

TN-C: PE and N are combined into a PEN conductor similar to a three-phase 4 wire system.

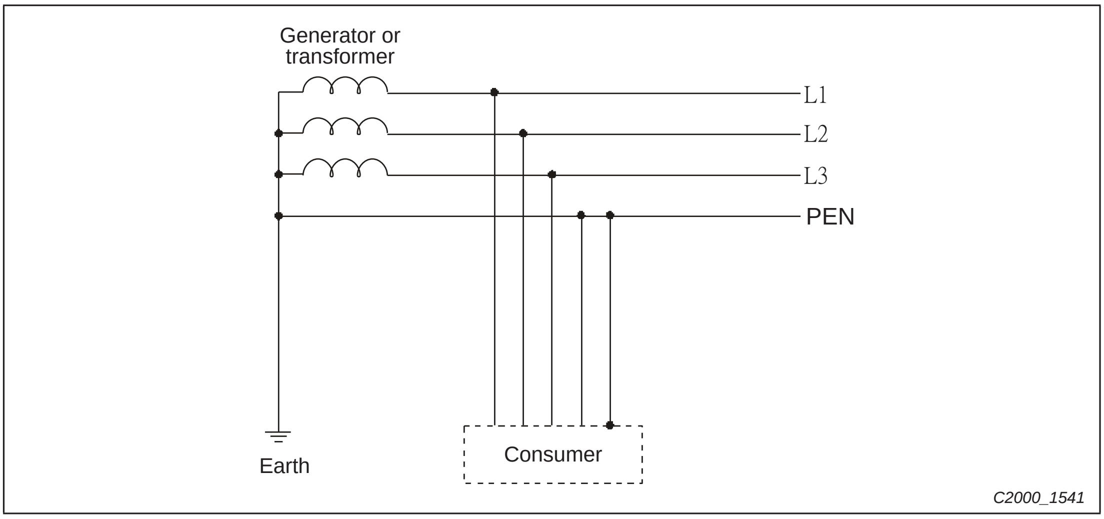


Fig. 19-10: TN-C system

TN-C-S system

TN-C-S: A combined earth and neutral system (PEN conductor) is used in certain systems but eventually split up into two separate conductors PE and N. A typical application of combined PEN conductor is from the substation to the building but within the building PEN is separated into the PE and N conductors. Direct connection of PE and N conductors to many earthing points at different locations in the field will reduce the risk of broken neutrals. Therefore this application is also known as *protective multiple earthing* (PME) in the UK or as *multiple earthed neutral (MEN)* in Australia.

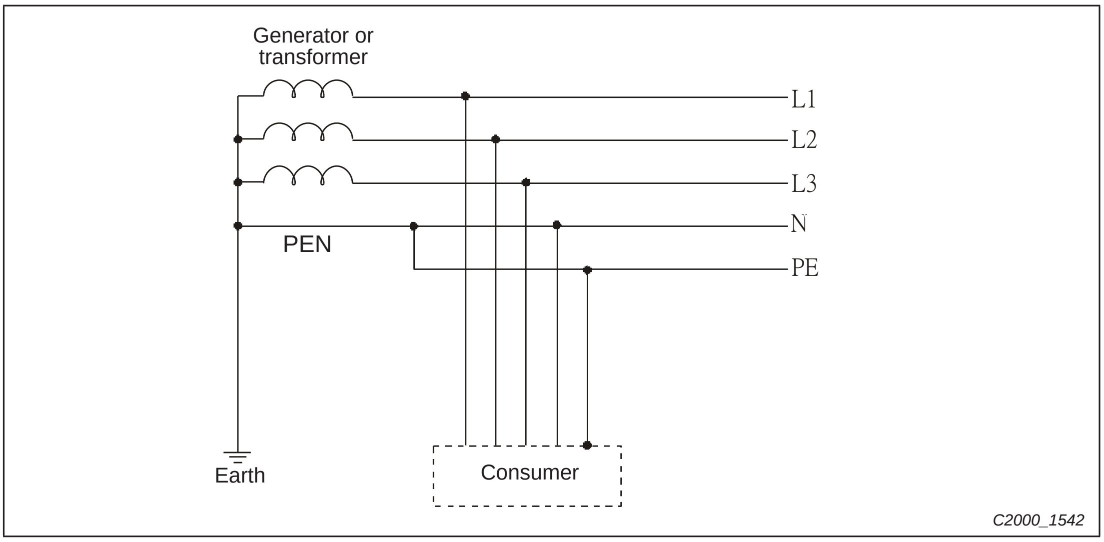


Fig. 19-11: TN-C-S system

TT system

TT: The neutral point (N) of the low voltage transformer and the equipment frames (PE) are connected to a separate earthing point. The Neutral (N) of the transformer and electrical equipment are connected.

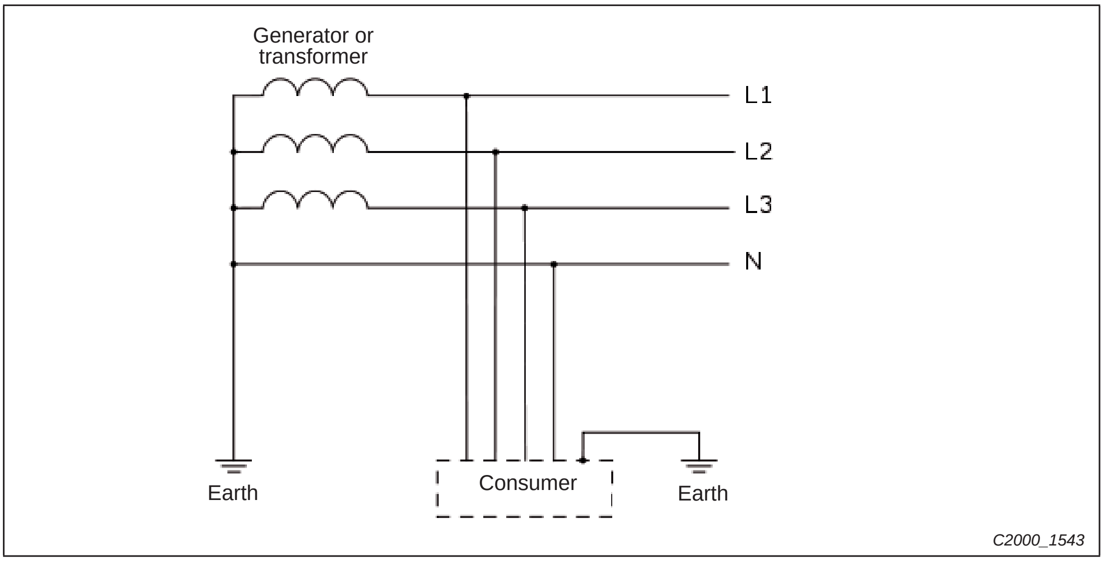


Fig. 19-12: TT system

IT system

IT: The neutral point of the transformer and electrical equipment are not earthed, only the equipment frames PE are earthed.

In the IT network, the power distribution system Neutral is either not connected to earth or is earthed via a high impedance. In such a system, an insulated monitoring device is used for impedance monitoring.

A built-in filter should be disconnected by the RFI-jumper and an external filter should not be installed when the AC motor drive or the AC servo motor drive is connected to an IT system.

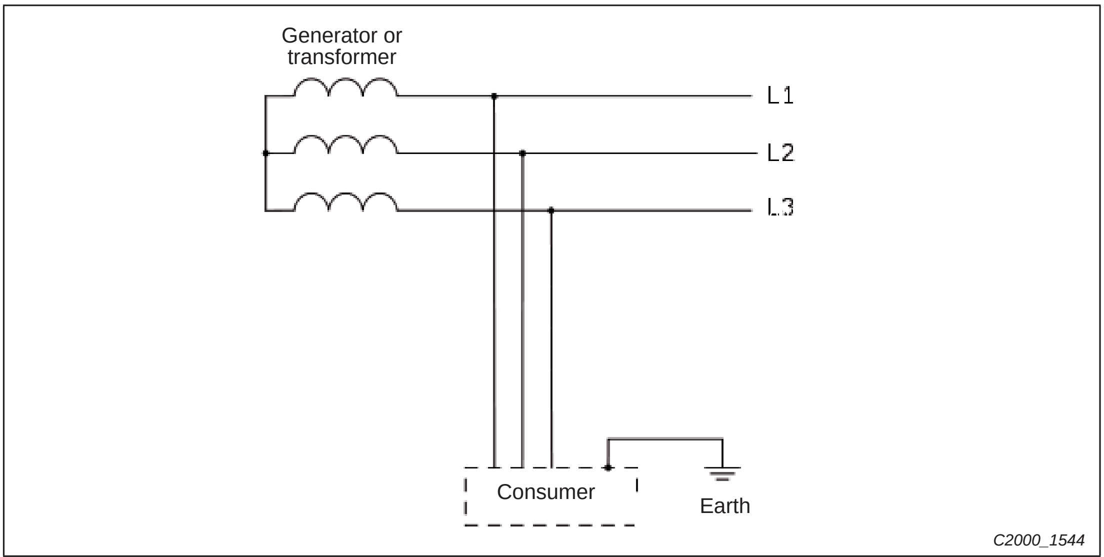


Fig. 19-13: IT system

	TN-S	TN-C	TT	IT
Safety of personnel	Good Continuity of the PE conductor must be ensured throughout the installation	Good Continuity of the PE conductor must be ensured throughout the installation	Good RCD is mandatory	Good Continuity of the PE conductor must be ensured throughout the installation
Safety of property	Poor High fault current (around 1 kA)	Poor High fault current (around 1 kA)	Good Medium fault current (< a few dozen amperes)	Good Low current at the first fault (< a few dozen mA) but high current at the second fault
Availability of energy	Good	Good	Good	Excellent
EMC behavior	Excellent Few equipotential Problems: – Need to handle the high leaking currents problem of the device – High fault current (transient disturbances)	Poor (prohibited) – Neutral and PE are the same – Circulation of disturbance currents in exposed conductive parts (high magnetic-field radiation) – High fault currents (transient disturbances)	Good – Over-voltage risk – Equipotential Problems: – Need to handle the high leaking currents problem of the device – RCD (Residualcurrent device)	Poor (should be avoided) – Over-voltage risk – Common-mode filters and surge arrestors must handle the phase to phase voltage. – RCDs subject to nuisance tripping when common-mode capacitors are present – Equivalent to TN system for second fault

Tab. 19-1: Criteria for earthing system and EMC

19.4 Solution to EMI: shielding

19.4.1 What is shielding?

Electrostatic shielding is used to isolate equipment so that it will not create electromagnetic field interference or be influenced by an external electromagnetic field. A conductive material is used for electrostatic shielding to achieve this isolation.

A *Faraday cage* can be made from a mesh of metal or a conductive material.

One characteristic of metal is that it is highly conductive and not electrostatic, which offers shielding and prevents interference by external electrical fields. Metal with its high conductivity protects the internal devices from high voltages-no voltage will enter the cage even when the cage is experiencing a high current. In addition, electromagnetic fields can also pass through the Faraday cage without causing any disturbance.

Electromagnetic shielding is applied to some electrical devices and measurement equipment for the purpose of blocking interference. Examples of shielding include:

- earth high-voltage indoor equipment using a metal frame or a high-density metal mesh
- shielding a power transformer is achieved by wrapping a metal sheet between the primary and secondary windings or by adding an enamel wire to the winding wire which is then earthed.
- a shielding coating, which is made of metal mesh or conductive fibres to provide effective protection for the workers who work in a high-voltage environment.

In the picture below, the radio appears to be not fully covered by metal but if the conductivity of the metal is high, radio waves are completely blocked and the radio will not receive any signal.

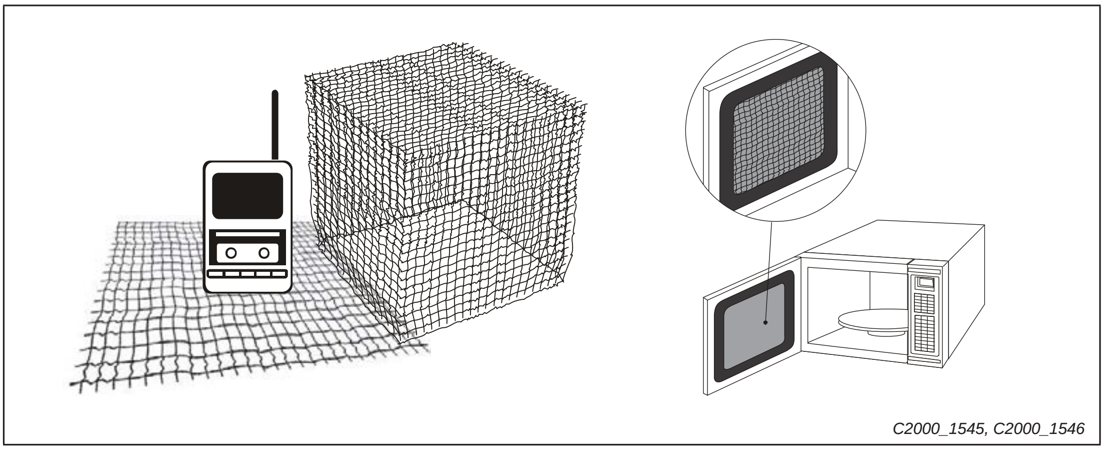


Fig. 19-14: Shielding of radio waves (left) and micro waves (right)

Mobile phone connections are also established through the transmission of radio waves. This is why the mobile phone reception is often cut off when we walk into an elevator. The metal walls of the elevator create the same shielding effect just as if we had entered a metal cage. Another example is a microwave oven. The microwave door may seem transparent in visible light, but the density of the metal mesh in the microwave door blocks the electromagnetic waves. A higher density of the metal mesh offers better shielding.

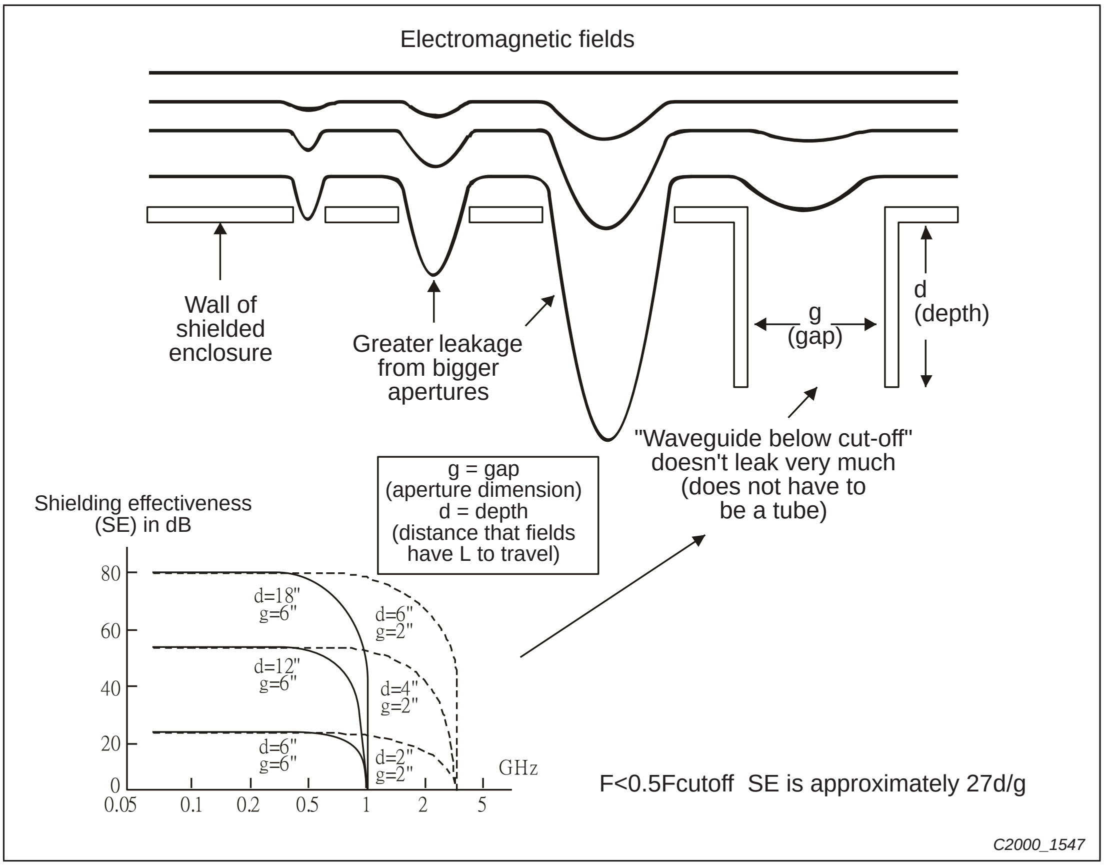


Fig. 19-15: Influence of the size of the holes and the depth to the shielding

19.4.2 How to reduce EMI by shielding?

Iron and other metals are high conductivity materials that provide effective shielding at extremely low frequencies. But conductivity will decrease as:

- High frequency signals are applied to the conductor.
- Equipment is located in a strong magnetic field.
- The shielding frame is forced into a specific form by machines.

It is difficult to select a suitable high-conductivity material for shielding without the help from a shielding material supplier or a related EMI institution.

Metallic shielding effectiveness

Shielding Effectiveness (SE) is used to assess the applicability of the shielding shell. The formula is:

SEdB = A + R + B (Measures in dB) where

A = Absorption loss (dB)

R= Reflection loss (dB)

B = Correction factor (dB)
(for multiple reflections in thin shields)

The absorption loss refers to the amount of energy loss as the electromagnetic wave travels through the shield. The formula is:

AdB = 1.314 (f$s\mu$) 1/2t where

f = frequency (MHz)

μ = permeability relative to copper

s = conductivity relative to copper

t = thickness of the shield in centimetres

The reflection loss depends on the source of the electromagnetic wave and the distance from that source. For a rod or straight wire antenna, the wave impedance increases as it moves closer to the source and decreases as it moves away from the source until it reaches the impedance of free space (377 Ω) and shows no change. If the wave source is a small wire loop, the magnetic field is dominant and the wave impedance decreases as it moves closer to the source and increases as it moves away from the source; but it levels out at 377 Ω when the distance exceeds one-sixth of the wavelength.

Electrical cabinet design

In a high frequency electric field, shielding can be achieved by painting a thin layer of conductive metal on the enclosure or on the internal lining material. However, the coating must be thorough and all parts should be properly covered without any seams or gaps (just like a Faraday cage). That is only the ideal. Making a seamless shielding shell is practically impossible since the cage is composed of metal parts. In some conditions, it is necessary to drill holes in the shielding enclosure for installation of accessories (like optional cards and other devices).

① If the metallic components are properly welded using sophisticated welding technology to form an electrical cabinet, deformation during usage is unlikely to occur. But if the electrical cabinet is assembled with screws, the protective insulating layer under the screw must be properly removed before assembly to achieve the greatest conductivity and best shielding.

② Drilling holes for the installation of wires in the electrical cabinet lowers the shielding effectiveness and increases the chance of electric waves leaking through the openings and emitting interference. We recommend that the drilled holes are as narrow as possible. When the wiring holes are not used, properly cover the holes with metal plates or metal covers. The paint or the coating of the metal plate and metal cover should be thoroughly removed to ensure a metal-to-metal contact or a conductive gasket should be installed.

③ Install industrial conductive gaskets to completely seal the electrical cabinet and the cabinet door without gaps. If conductive gaskets are too costly, please screw the cabinet door to the electrical cabinet with a short distance between the screws.

④ Reserve a grounding terminal on the electrical cabinet door. This grounding terminal shall not be painted. If the paint already exists, please remove the paint before grounding.

Electrical wires and cables

Shielded Twisted Pair (STP) is a type of cable where two insulated copper wires are twisted together with a metal mesh surrounding the twisted pair that forms the electromagnetic shielding and can also be used for grounding.

The individual electrical wires and complete cable are surrounded by (synthetic) rubber, that provides insulation and also protects against damage.

There are two types of electrical cables: high voltage and low voltage. The high voltage cable differs from the low voltage cable in that it has an additional insulation layer called the dielectric insulator within the plastic sleeve. The dielectric insulator is the most important component in insulation. The low voltage cable is usually only filled with a soft polymer material for keeping the internal copper wire in place.

The shield has two functions.

① To shield the electrical wire and cable.

– Electric currents increase as power flows through the power cable and generate an electrical field. Such interference can be suppressed inside the cable by shielding the power cables or the electrical wires.

– To form a protective earthing. When the cable core is damaged, the leakage current will flow via the shield to ground.

② To protect the cable. A power cable used for the computer control purpose generates only relatively low amount of current inside the cable. Such power cable will not become the source of interferences but has great possibility to be interfered by the surrounding electrical devices.

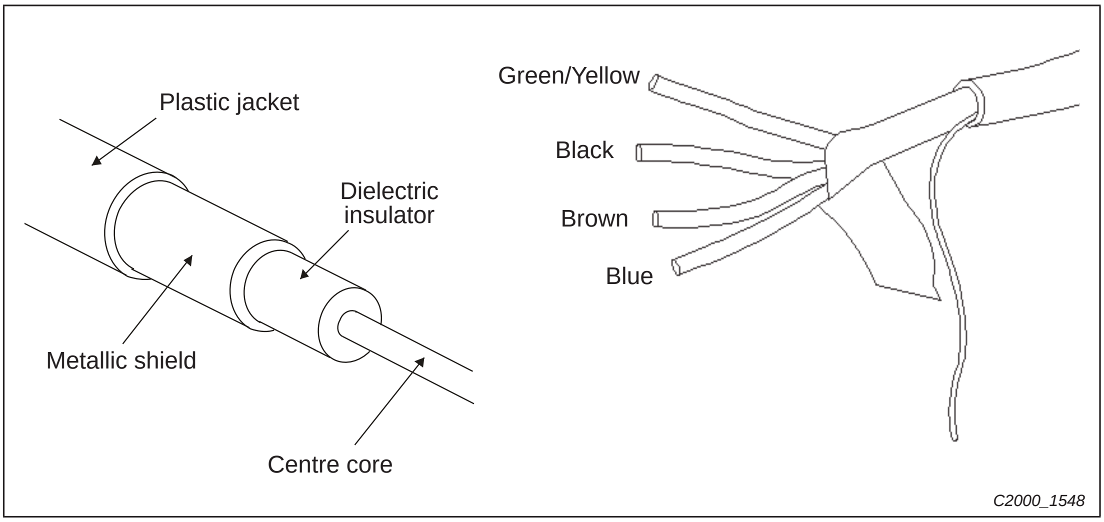


Fig. 19-16: Shielded cable structures

19.5 Solution to EMI: filter

19.5.1 Filter

Electromagnetic interference is transmitted in two ways, by radiation and by conduction. The most effective and economical method of reducing radiated interference is to use shielding and of reducing conducted interference is to use an electromagnetic filter.

Noise interference can be divided into two categories: high frequency (150 kHz–300 MHz) and low frequency (100 Hz–3000 Hz). High-frequency noise fades more over distance and has a shorter wave-length, while low-frequency noise fades less over distance and has a longer wave-length. Both types of interference are transmitted through power cables and power leads, affecting the power supply side.

High-frequency interference at the power side can be eliminated or attenuated by mounting a filter. The filter consists of coils and capacitors. Some drives do not have a built-in filter, in which case the installation of an external option filter is required. The drawing below shows a standard filter diagram:

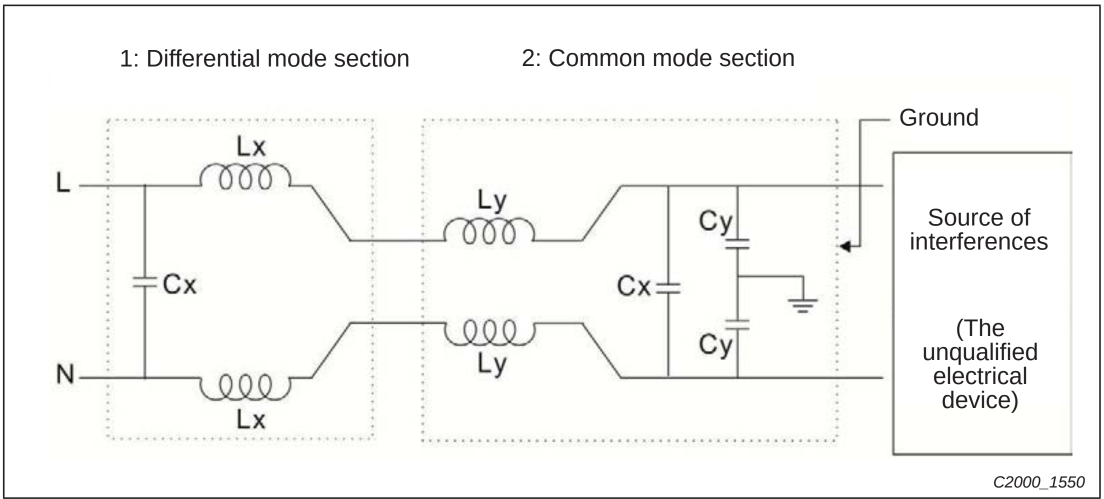


Fig. 19-17: Typical wire diagram of a noise filter

A filter is composed of a Differential Mode section (to eliminate noise below 150 kHz) and a Common Mode section (to eliminate noise above 150 kHz). For high-frequency noise, the inductor acts as a high impedance to form an open circuit and the capacitor acts as a low impedance to form a short circuit. Proper design and dimensioning of inductors and capacitors give a resonant circuit to absorb harmonic currents. Capacitor Cy is earthed to lead the harmonic currents to the ground.

External filter

The filter and the AC drive should be installed in the control cabinet or on the mounting plate that is earthed to ground. The motor cable must be shielded and as short as possible. Please use the filters recommended by Delta to ensure compliance with EMC standards.

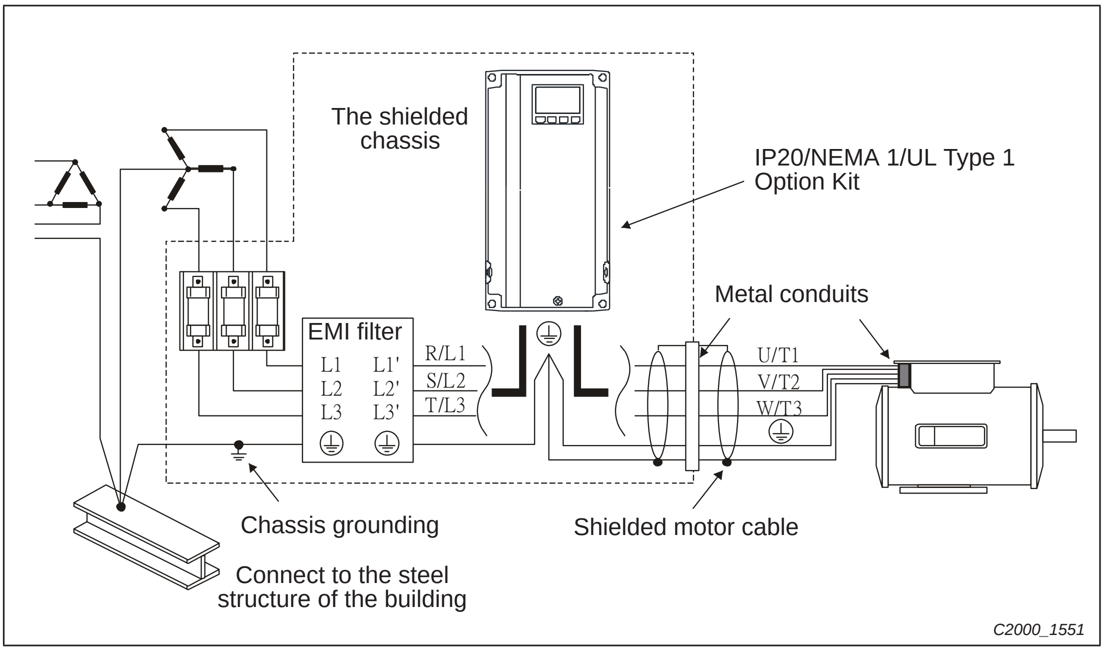


Fig. 19-18: Installation of an external noise filter

AC motor drives with built-in filter

- Since interferences are suppressed by installing an earthed capacitor in the filter, the amount of current to ground (leakage current) could result in electric shocks to personnel or the power system. Please be aware of this problem.
- Since the leakage current to ground can be high, it is crucial to implement protective earthing to prevent electrical shocks.

Filter installation (with and without)

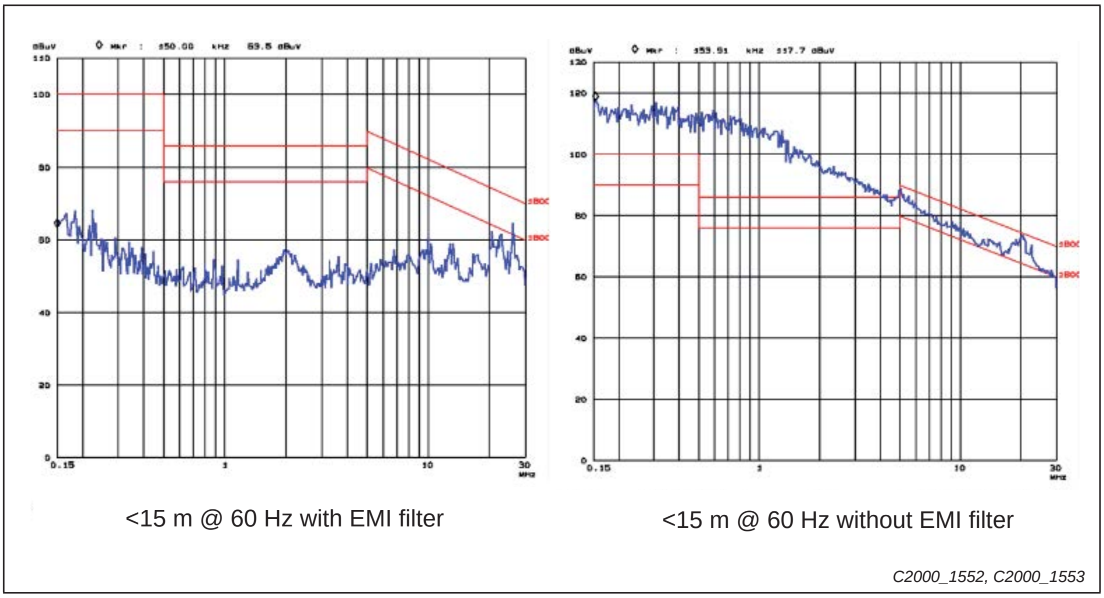


Fig. 19-19: Interferences (blue line) will be supressed by a noise filter

Zero phase reactor (choke)

Interferences can also be suppressed by installing a zero phase reactor at the power supply side and/or the AC Motor Drive's output, depending on where the interference is. Since currents are large at the power input and the AC Motor Drive's output, please carefully select the magnetic core with suitable current handling capability. An ideal magnetic material for large currents is compound magnetic powder. It has a higher current handling capability and higher impedance compared to pure metallic magnetic cores. It is therefore suitable to implement in a high frequency environment. The impedance can also be enhanced by increasing the turn ratio.

- Zero phase reactor installation

There are two installation methods, depending on the size of the zero phase reactor and the motor cable length.

① Wind the motor cable through the middle of a zero-phase reactor 4 times. Place the reactor and the AC Motor Drive as close to each other as possible.

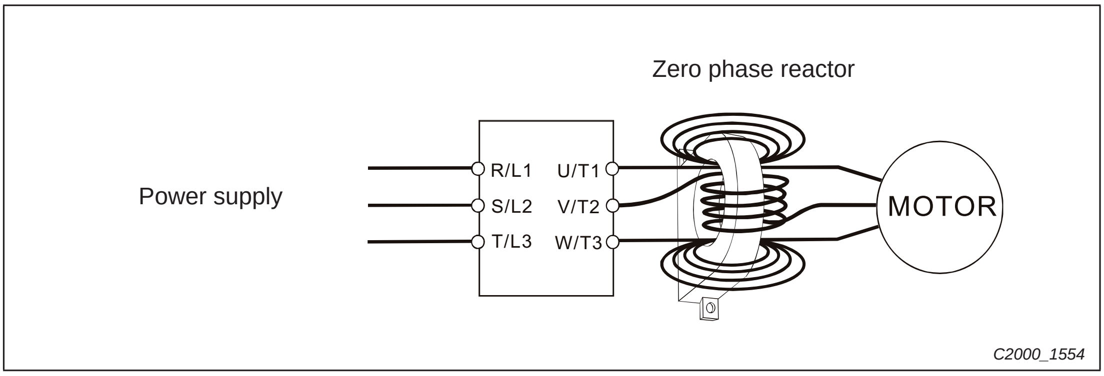


Fig. 19-20: The motor wire is winded through the middle of the zero phase reactor

② Place all wires through the middle of four zero-phase reactors without winding.

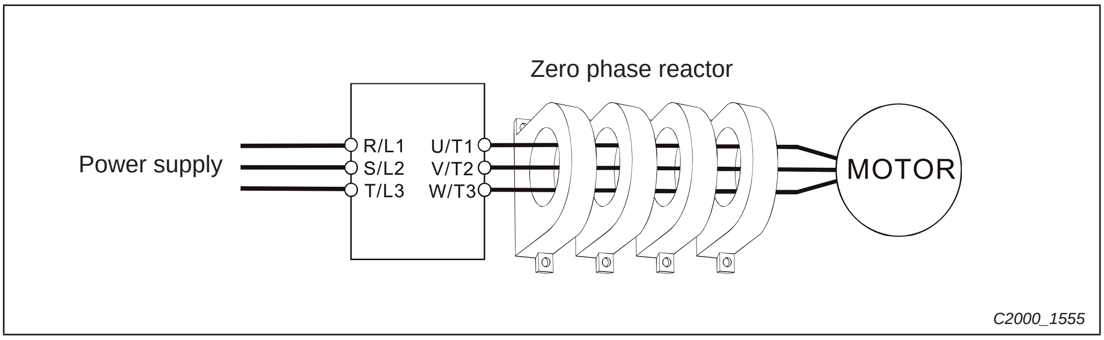


Fig. 19-21: The motor wire is winded through 4 zero phase reactors

Analog input signals

If the analog input signals are affected by noise from the AC motor drive, please connect a capacitor and a ferrite core as indicated in the following diagram.

Wind the wires around the core in same direction for 3 times or more.

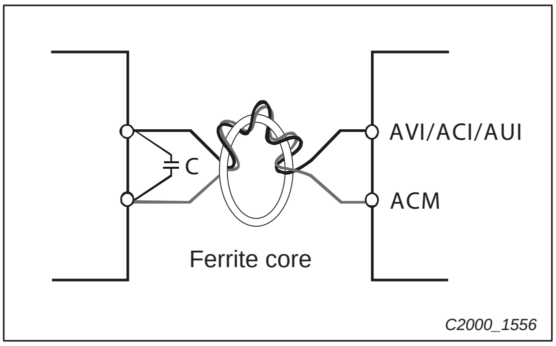


Fig.19-22: Wiring the ferrite core

19.5.2 Harmonic interference

The AC motor drive's input current is non-linear, the input rectifier generates harmonics. Harmonics must be limited to within a certain range to avoid impact the mains power and to avoid current distortion to ensure surrounding devices are not influenced. An AC Motor Drive with built-in DC reactor suppresses harmonic currents (Total Harmonic Current Distortion THID) effectively and therefore reduces the harmonic voltage peaks (Total Harmonic Voltage Distortion).

Harmonic current at the power supply side

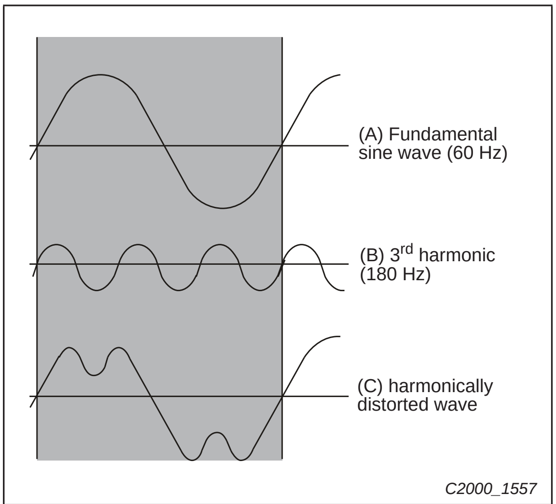


Fig.19-23: Harmonic current at the power supply side (3rd Harmonic 180 Hz)

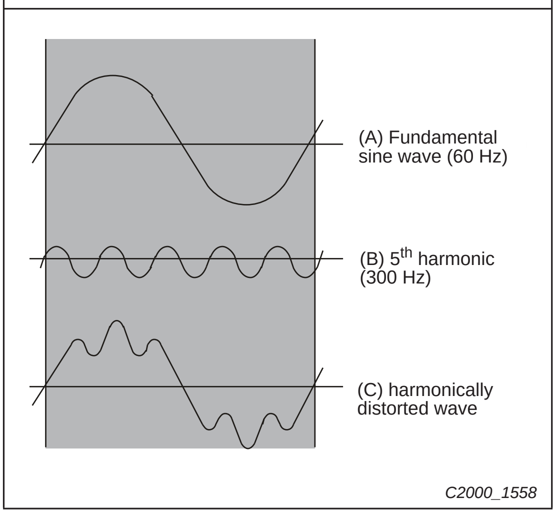


Fig.19-24: Harmonic current at the power supply side (5th Harmonic 300 Hz)

Suppression of harmonic currents

When a large portion of lower order harmonic currents (5^{th}, 7^{th}, 11^{th}, etc) occur at the power input, surrounding devices will be disturbed and the power factor will be low as a result of reactive power. Installing a reactor at the AC Motor Drive's input effectively suppresses lower order harmonic currents.

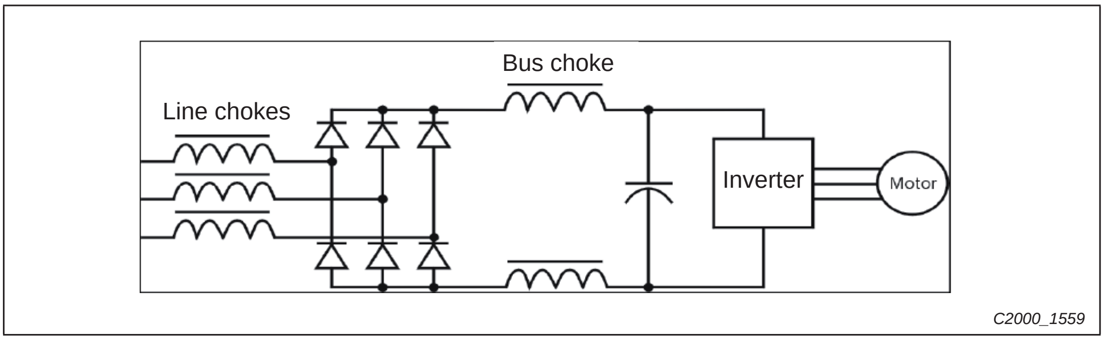


Fig. 19-25: Schematic diagram of a frequency inverter

AC reactor

Installed in series with the power supply and is effective in reducing low order current harmonics.

Features of an AC reactor include:

- Reduces the harmonic currents to the AC Motor Drive and increases the impedance of the power supply.
- Absorbs interferences generated by surrounding devices (such as surge voltages, currents, and mains surge voltages) and reduce their effect on the AC Motor Drive.
- Increases the power factor.

DC reactor

A DC-Reactor is installed between the rectifier and the DC-bus capacitor to suppress harmonic currents and to achieve a higher power factor.

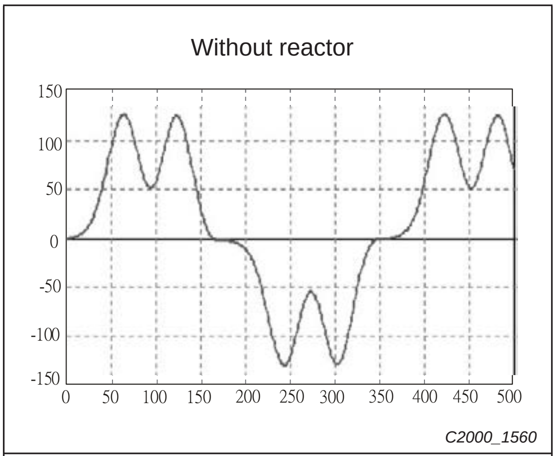


Fig.19-26: Current wave diagram 1

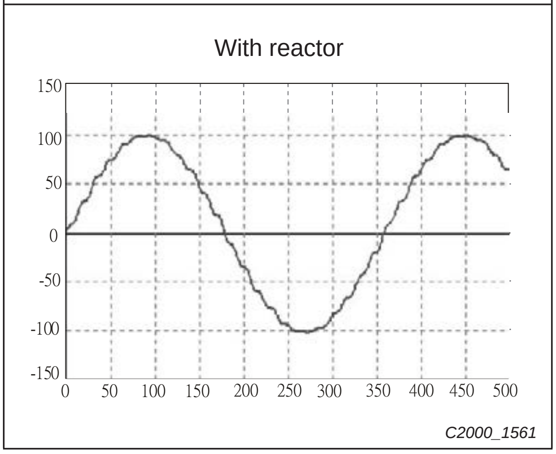


Fig.19-27: Current wave diagram 2

20 Safety Torque off Function

20.1 The drive safety function failure rate

Item	Definition	Standard	Performance
SFF	Safe Torque Off	IEC61508	Channel 1: 80.08 % Channel 2: 68.91 %
HFT (Type A subsystem)	Hardware Fault Tolerance	IEC61508	1
SIL	Safety Integrity Level	IEC61508	SIL 2
		IEC62061	SILCL 2
PFH	Average frequency of dangerous failure [h-1]	IEC61508	9.56×10^{-10}
PFD_{av}	Probability of Dangerous Failure on Demand	IEC61508	4.18×10^{-6}
Category	Category	ISO13849-1	Category 3
PL	Performance level	ISO13849-1	d
$MTTF_d$	Mean time to dangerous failure	ISO13849-1	High
DC	Diagnostic coverage	ISO13849-1	Low

Tab. 20-1: Features of the functional safety

20.2 Safety torque off terminal function description

The safety Torque Off function is to cut off the power supply to motor through the hardware, thereby the motor couldn't produce torque.

The safety Torque Off function is respectively by two independent hardware to control the motor current drive signal, and thus cut off the inverter power module output in order to achieve the status of safety stop.

Operation principle description as below table:

Signal	Channel	Photo-coupler status			
STO signal	STO1–SCM1	ON (High)	ON (High)	OFF (Low)	OFF (Low)
	STO2–SCM2	ON (High)	OFF (Low)	ON (Low)	OFF (Low)
Driver Output status		Ready	STL2 mode (Torque output off)	STL1 mode (torque output off)	STO mode (Torque output off)

Tab. 20-2: Terminal operation description

- STO means Safe Torque Off
- STL1–STL3 means Safety Torque Off hardware abnormal.
- STL3 means STO1–SCM1 and STO2–SCM2 internal circuit detected abnormal.
- STO1–SCM1 ON (High): means STO1–SCM1 has connect to a +24 V DC power supply.
- STO2–SCM2 ON (High): means STO2–SCM2 has connect to a +24 V power supply.
- STO1–SCM1 OFF (Low): means STO1–SCM1 hasn't connect to a +24 V DC power supply.
- STO2–SCM2 OFF (Low): means STO2–SCM2 hasn't connect to a +24 V DC power supply.

20.3 Wiring diagram

20.3.1 Internal STO circuit

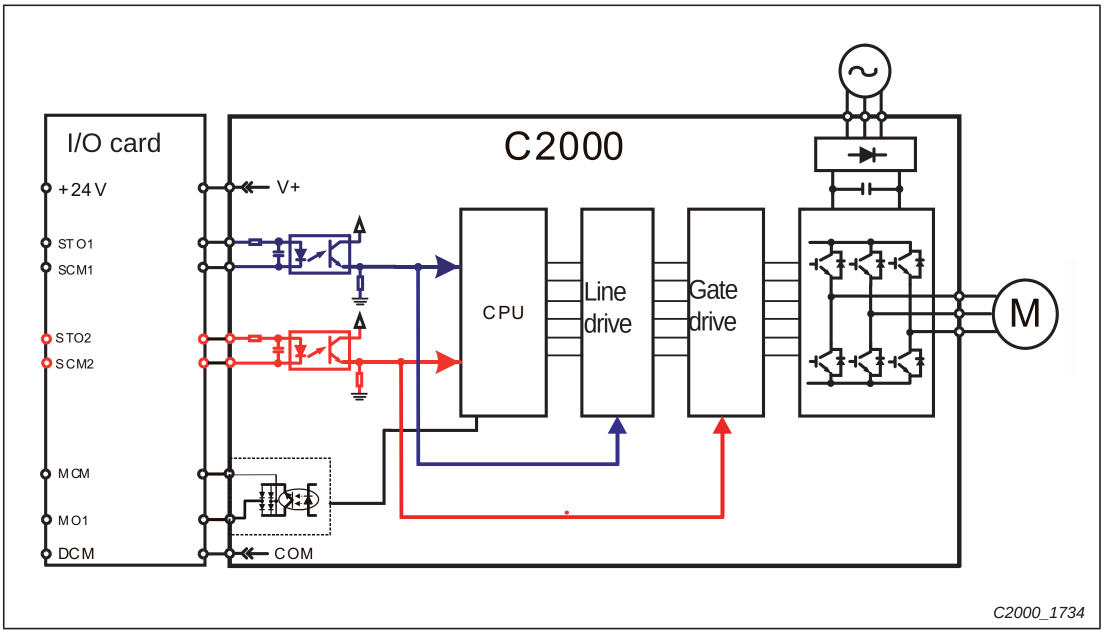


Fig. 20-1: Block diagram of the internal STO circuit

20.3.2 Factory wiring of the terminals STO1, STO2, SCM1 and SCM2

In the figure below, the factory setting for +24V-STO1-STO2 and SCM1-SCM2-DCM is short circuit:

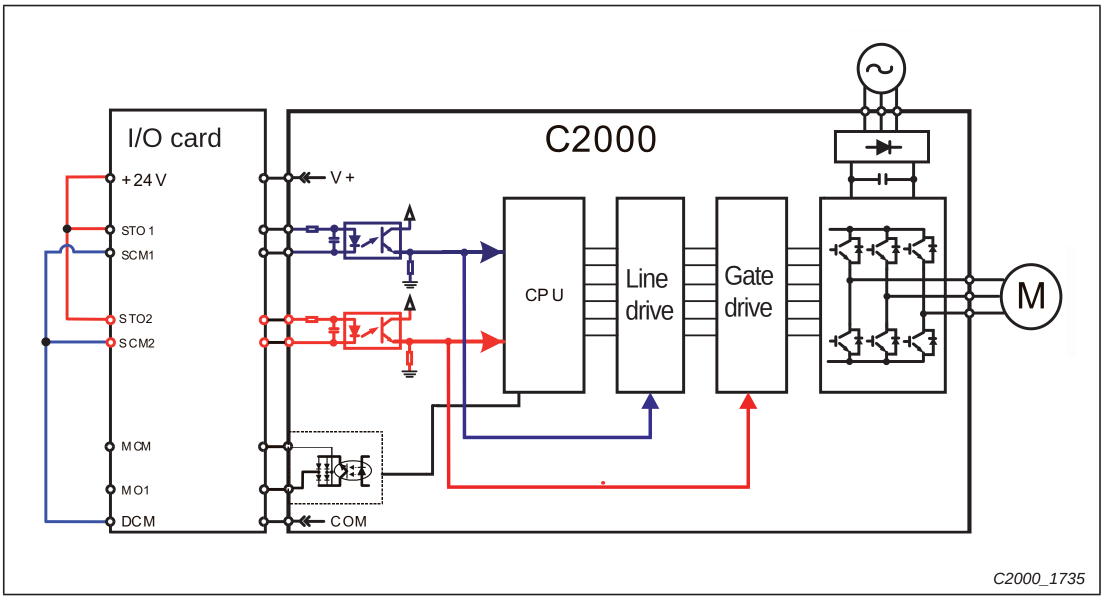


Fig. 20-2: Wiring of STO1/STO2 with +24V and SCM1/SCM2 with DCM

20.3.3 The control loop wiring diagram:

① Remove the shot-circuit of +24 V-STO1-STO2 and DCM-SCM1-SCM2.

② The wiring as below diagram. The ESTOP switch must at Close status in normal situation and drive will be able to Run.

③ STO mode, switch ESTOP open. Drive output stop and keypad display STO.

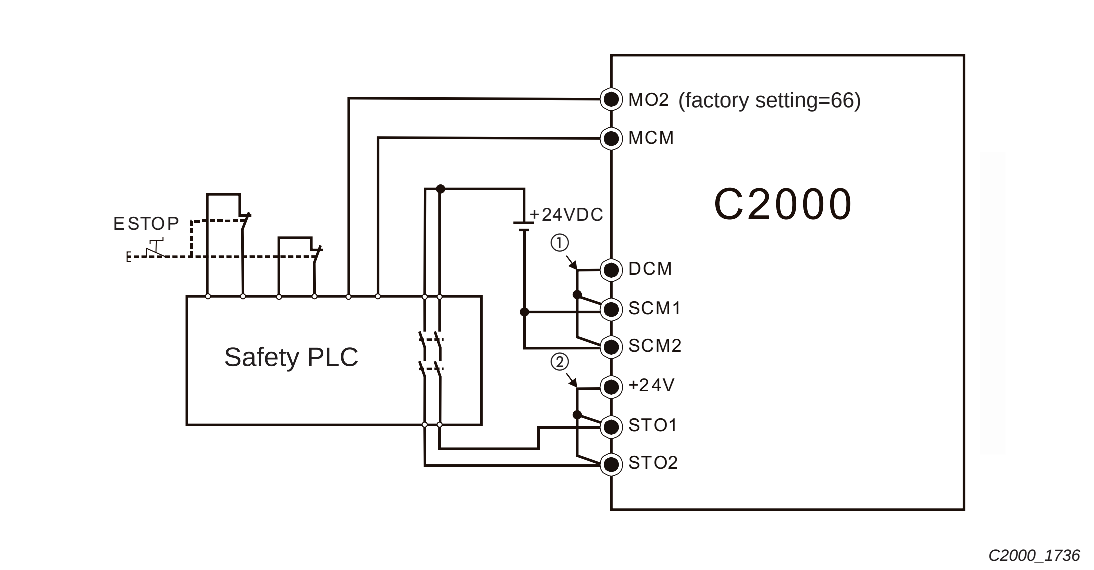


Fig. 20-3: Security circuit with safety PLC

① factory short circuit of DCM-SCM1-SCM2. To use the Safety function, please remove this short circuit.

② factory short circuit of +24 V-STO1-STO2. To use the Safety function please remove this short circuit.

20.4 Parameter

06-44 ⚡ STO Alarm Latch

Factory setting: 0

Settings	0: STO Alarm Latch
	1: STO Alarm no Latch

- Pr. 06-44=0 STO Alarm Latch: after the reason of STO Alarm is cleared, a Reset command is need to clear STO Alarm.
- Pr. 06-44=1 STO Alarm no Latch: after the reason of STO Alarm is cleared, the STO Alarm will be cleared automatically.
- All of STL1–STL3 error are "Alarm latch" mode (in STL1–STL3 mode, the Pr. 06-44 function is no effective).

02-13 ⚡ Multi-function Output 1 (Relay1)

Factory setting: 11

02-14 ⚡ Multi-function Output 2 (Relay2)

Factory setting: 1

02-16 ⚡ Multi-function Output 3 (MO1)

Factory setting: 0

02-17 ⚡ Multi-function Output 4 (MO2)

Factory setting: 66

Settings	66: SO N.O. output
	68: SO N.C. output

Settings	Functions	Descriptions
66	SO Logic A output	Safety Output Normal Open
68	SO Logic B output	Safety Output Normal Close

Tab. 20-3: SO Safety output scheme

- C2000 factory setting Pr. 02-17 (MO2) = 66 (N.O.) and Multi-function Output setting item has add 2 new function: 66 and 68.

Drive status	Safety Output status	
	N.O. (MO=66)	N.C. (MO=68)
Normal run	Open	Close
STO	Close	Open
STL1–STL3	Close	Open

Tab. 20-4: MO2 output scheme

.

00-04	Content of Multi-function Display

Factory setting: 3

Settings	45: Hardware version

00-04=45	Hardware version

20.5 Operating sequence description

20.5.1 Normal operation status

As shown in Figure 3: When the STO1–SCM1 and STO2–SCM2=ON (no STO function is need), the drive will execute “Operating” or “Output Stop” according to RUN/STOP command (Fig. 20-4)

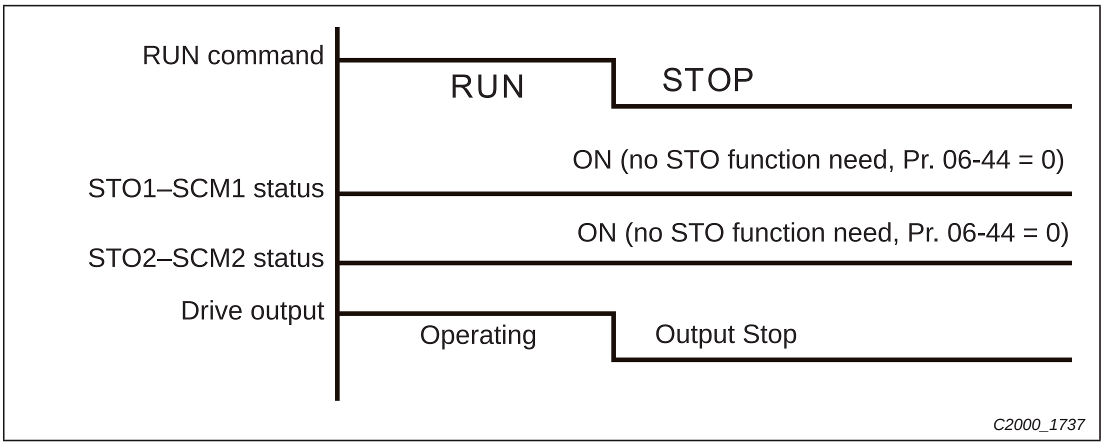


Fig. 20-4: Signal course at normal operation

20.5.2 STO · Pr. 06-44 = 0 · Pr. 02-35 = 0

As shown in Figure 4: When both of STO1–SCM1 and STO2–SCM2 channel has turn off during operating, the STO function enabling and the drive will stop output regardless of Run command is ON or OFF status.

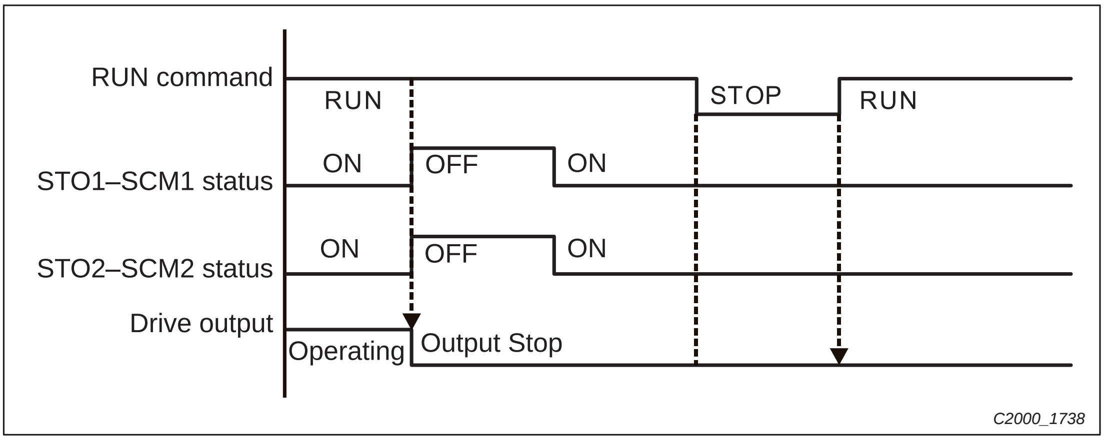


Fig. 20-5: Signal course when enabling STO1-SCM1 and STO2-SCM2

20.5.3 STO · Pr. 06-44 = 0 · Pr. 02-35 = 1

As shown in Figure 5: As same as the figure 4. But, because the Pr. 02-35 = 1, therefore, after the Reset command, if the operating command still exists, then the drive will immediately execute the run command again.

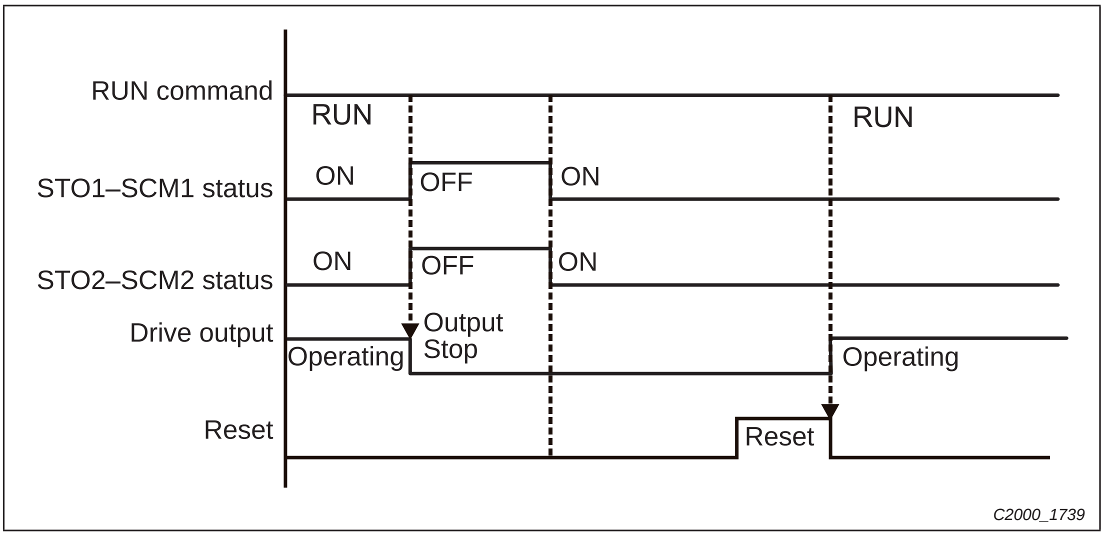


Fig. 20-6: Signal course when enabling STO1-SCM1, STO2-SCM2 with Pr. 02-35 = 1

20.5.4 STO · Pr. 06-44 = 1

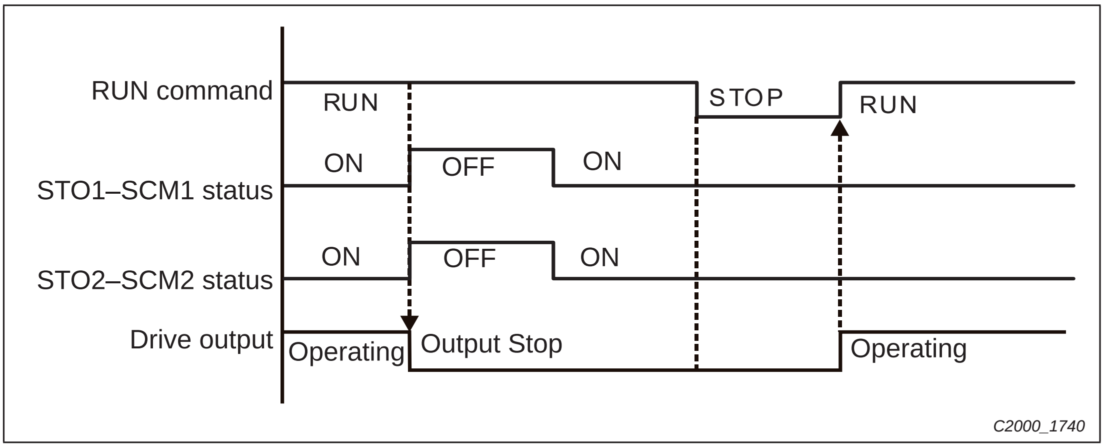


Fig. 20-7: Signal course when enabling STO1-SCM1, STO2-SCM2 with Pr. 06-44 = 1

20.5.5 STL1

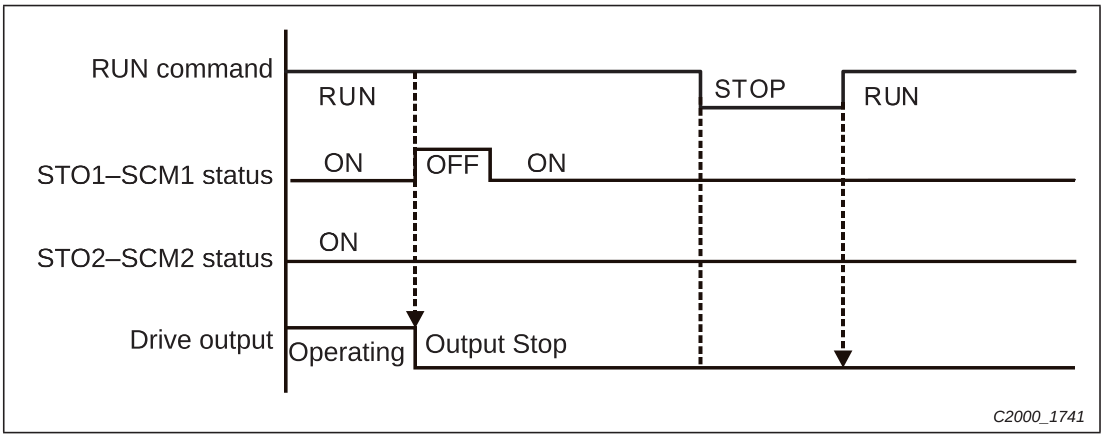


Fig. 20-8: Signal course when enabling STL1

20.5.6 STL2

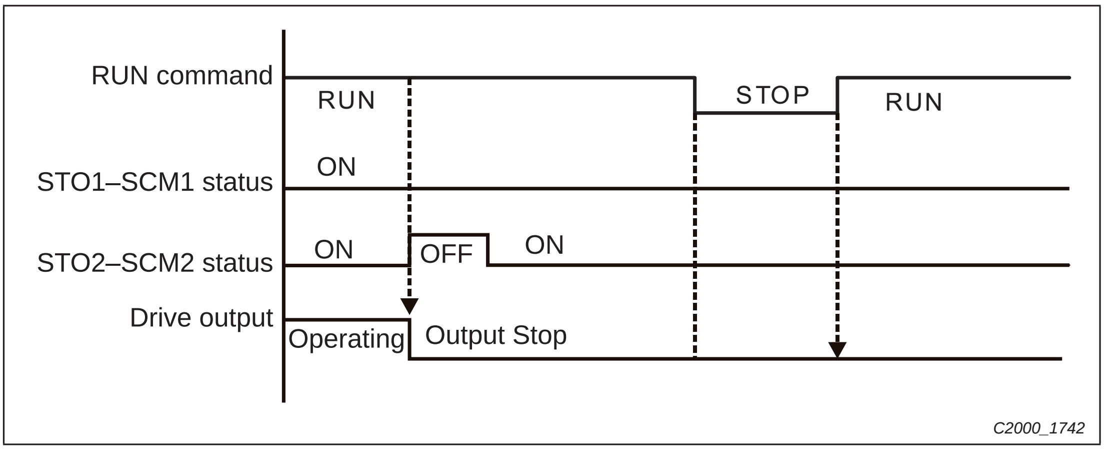


Fig. 20-9: Signal course when enabling STL2

20.6 New error code for STO function

06-17	Present Fault Record

06-18	Second Most Recent Fault Record

06-19	Third Most Recent Fault Record

06-20	Fourth Most Recent Fault Record

06-21	Fifth Most Recent Fault Record

06-22	Sixth Most Recent Fault Record

Settings	72: Channel 1 (STO1–SCM1)internal hardware error (Signal lost STO1)
	76: STO (Safety Torque Off)
	77: Channel 2 (STO2–SCM2) internal hardware error (Signal lost STO2)
	78: Channel 1 and Channel 2 internal hardware error (Signal lost STO3)

Error code	Name	Description
76	STO	Safety Torque Off function active
72	STL1 (STO1–SCM1)	STO1–SCM1 internal hardware detect error
77	STL2 (STO2–SCM2)	STO2–SCM2 internal hardware detect error
78	STL3	STO1–SCM1 and STO2–SCM2 internal hardware detect error

Tab. 20-5: Error codes

The Old/New control board and Old/New I/O card:

C2000	v1.12 firmware	v1.20 firmware
v1.12 control board + old I/O card(no STO function)	OK	OK
v1.12 control board + new I/O card(with STO function)	Error	Error
v1.20 control board + old I/O card(no STO function)	Error	Error
v1.20 control board + new I/O card(with STO function)	Error	OK

Tab. 20-6: Possible combination of control boards and I/O cards

Index

A

ACOS command 16-99
ADD command 16-72
ANB command 16-49
AND command 16-47
AND* command 16-123
AND# command 16-120
ANDF command 16-56
ANDP command 16-56
ANI command 16-47
ASIN command 16-98
ATAN command 16-100

B

Binary 16-101
Binary floating point number ASIN operation 16-98
BMOV command 16-70

C

CALL command 16-65
CANFLS command 16-129
CANopen
  Master control applications 16-136
  Read slave station data 16-125
  Refresh special D corresponding 16-129
  Write slave station data 16-129
CANRX command 16-125
CANTX command 16-129
CMP command 16-67
CNT command 16-53
COS 16-96
COSH command 16-102

D

DEC command 16-78
DEG command 16-86
Diameter 16-86
DIV command 16-76
DPOS command 16-126
Driver torque
  Control mode via TORQ 16-127

E

EADD command 16-87
ECMP command 16-83
EDIV command 16-90
EMUL command 16-89
END command 16-59
ESQR command 16-93
ESUB command 16-88
EXP command 16-91
EZCP command 16-84

F

FAND* command 16-131
FEND command 16-66
FLD* command 16-130
FLT command 16-82
FOR* command 16-132
FPID command 16-106
FREQ command 16-107

G

GBIN command 16-118
GRY command 16-117

I

ICOMR command 16-133
ICOMW command 16-133
INC command 16-77
INT command 16-94
INV command 16-59

L

LD command 16-46
LD* command 16-122
LD# command 16-119
LDF command 16-55
LDI command 16-46
LDP command 16-55
LN command 16-92

M

MC command 16-54
MCR command 16-54
MI8
    Frequency calculation 16-161
    High-speed count function 16-160
MODBUS
    Command code 16-43
    Communication addresses 16-43
    MODRW command 16-109
    Remote IO control applications 16-162
MODRW command 16-109
MOV command 16-69
MPP command 16-50
MPS command 16-50
MRD 16-50
MUL command 16-75

N

NOP 16-59

O

OR command 16-48
OR* command 16-124
OR# command 16-121
ORB command 16-49
ORF command 16-57
ORI command 16-48
ORP command 16-57
OUT command 16-51

P

PLC Function
    ACOS command 16-99
    Activate 16-4
    ADD command 16-72
    AND command 16-47, 16-49
    AND* command 16-123
    AND# command 16-120
    ANDF command 16-56
    ANDP command 16-56
    ANI command 16-47
    ASIN command 16-98
    ATAN commamd 16-100
    Binary floating point number ACOS operation 16-99
    Binary floating point number ATAN operation 16-100
    Binary floating point number COS operation 16-96
    Binary floating point number COSH operation 16-102
    Binary floating point number SIN operation 16-95
    Binary floating point number SINH operation 16-101
    Binary floating point number TAN operation 16-97
    Binary floating point number TANH operation 16-103
    BMOV 16-70
    Calendar functions 16-170
    CALL command 16-65
    CANFLS command 16-129
    CANRX command 16-125
    CMP command 16-67
    COS command 16-96
    COSH command 16-102
    Count function using MI8 16-160
    Counter 16-32
    DEC command 16-78
    DEG command 16-86
    DIV command 16-76
    DPOS command 16-126
    EADD command 16-87
    ECMP command 16-83
    EDIV command 16-90
    EMUL command 16-89
    END command 16-59
    Error codes 16-135
    ESQR command 16-93
    ESUB command 16-88
    EXP command 16-91
    EZCP command 16-84
    FAND* command 16-131
    FEND command 16-66
    FLD* command 16-130
    FLT command 16-82
    FOR* command 16-132
    FPID command 16-106
    FREQ command 16-107
    Functions of auxiliary relays 16-31
    GBIN command 16-118
    GRY command 16-117
    ICOMR command 16-133
    ICOMW command 16-133
    INC command 16-77
    Inputs 16-29
    INT command 16-94
    Introduction to special register functions 16-36
    Introduction to special relay functions 16-34
    INV command 16-59
    LD command 16-46
    LD* command 16-122
    LD# command 16-119
    LDF command 16-55

LDI command 16-46
LDP command 16-55
LN command 16-92
MC command 16-54
MCR command 16-54
MI8 frequency calculation 16-161
MODRW command 16-109
MOV command 16-69
MPP command 16-50
MPS command 16-50
MRD command 16-50
MUL command 16-75
NOP command 16-59
Notes before PLC use 16-2
Numbering systems 16-29
OR command 16-48
OR* command 16-124
OR# command 16-121
ORB command 16-49
ORF command 16-57
ORI command 16-48
ORP command 16-57
OUT command 16-51
Outputs 16-29
PLF command 16-58
PLS command 16-58
Pointer 16-60
Program scanning 16-15
RAD command 16-85
ROL command 16-80
ROR command 16-79
RPR command 16-104
RST command 16-52
SET command 16-51
SIN command 16-95
SINH command 16-101
SRET command 16-65
SUB command 16-74
TADD command 16-114
TAN command 16-97
TANH command 16-103
TCMP command 16-112
Timer 16-31
TMR command 16-52
TORQ command 16-127
TRD command 16-116
TSUB command 16-115
TZCP command 16-113
WPR command 16-104
ZCP command 16-68
ZRST command 16-81
PLC ladder diagram
Basic structure 16-20
Program download 16-14
Symbols 16-17
PLF command 16-58
PLS command 16-58

R

RAD command 16-85
ROL command 16-80
ROR 16-79
RPR command 16-104
RS485 network
Overview 16-156
Programming example 16-158
Special relays and registers 16-157
RST command 16-52

S

SET command 16-51
SIN command 16-95
SINH command 16-101
SRET command 16-65
SUB command 16-74

T

TADD command 16-114
TAN command 16-97
TANH command 16-103
TCMP command 16-112
TMR command 16-52
TORQ command 16-127
TRD command 16-116
TSUB command 16-115
TZCP command 16-113

W

WPLSoft
Editing windows 16-8
Installation 16-6
Overview 16-1
Start 16-7
WPR command 16-104

Z

ZCP command 16-68
ZRST command 16-81

Revisions

Delta C2000 series frequency inverter user's manual		
Version		**Changes / Additions / Corrections**
A	07/2015	First edition

Smarter. Greener. Together.

Industrial Automation Headquarters

Delta Electronics, Inc.
Taoyuan Technology Center
18 Xinglong Road, Taoyuan District,
Taoyuan City 33068, Taiwan (R.O.C.)
TEL: 886-3-362-6301 / FAX: 886-3-371-6301

Asia

Delta Electronics (Jiangsu) Ltd.
Wujiang Plant 3
1688 Jiangxing East Road,
Wujiang Economic Development Zone
Wujiang City, Jiang Su Province,
People's Republic of China (Post code: 215200)
TEL: 86-512-6340-3008 / FAX: 86-769-6340-7290

Delta Greentech (China) Co., Ltd.
238 Min-Xia Road, Pudong District,
ShangHai, P.R.C.
Post code : 201209
TEL: 86-21-58635678 / FAX: 86-21-58630003

Delta Electronics (Japan), Inc.
Tokyo Office
2-1-14 Minato-ku Shibadaimon,
Tokyo 105-0012, Japan
TEL: 81-3-5733-1111 / FAX: 81-3-5733-1211

Delta Electronics (Korea), Inc.
1511, Byucksan Digital Valley 6-cha, Gasan-dong,
Geumcheon-gu, Seoul, Korea, 153-704
TEL: 82-2-515-5303 / FAX: 82-2-515-5302

Delta Electronics Int'l (S) Pte Ltd
4 Kaki Bukit Ave 1, #05-05, Singapore 417939
TEL: 65-6747-5155 / FAX: 65-6744-9228

Delta Electronics (India) Pvt. Ltd.
Plot No 43 Sector 35, HSIIDC
Gurgaon, PIN 122001, Haryana, India
TEL : 91-124-4874900 / FAX : 91-124-4874945

Americas

Delta Products Corporation (USA)
Raleigh Office
P.O. Box 12173,5101 Davis Drive,
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709, U.S.A.
TEL: 1-919-767-3800 / FAX: 1-919-767-8080

Delta Greentech (Brasil) S.A
Sao Paulo Office
Rua Itapeva, 26 - 3° andar Edificio Itapeva One-Bela Vista
01332-000-São Paulo-SP-Brazil
TEL: +55 11 3568-3855 / FAX: +55 11 3568-3865

Europe

Deltronics (The Netherlands) B.V.
Eindhoven Office
De Witbogt 20, 5652 AG Eindhoven, The Netherlands
TEL: 31-40-2592850 / FAX: 31-40-2592851

5011694504
2014-08